VISIT…

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

The ART of WATCHING FILMS

Seventh Edition

Joseph M. Boggs
Dennis W. Petrie

Using both contemporary and classic films, *The Art of Watching Films* helps students develop critical skills in the analysis and evaluation of film. By suggesting what to look for and how to look for it, the text challenges students to sharpen their powers of observation, establish habits of perceptive watching, and discover complex aspects of cinematic art that will further enhance their enjoyment of watching films.

REVISION HIGHLIGHTS

- A new full-color design, including new color photos and movie stills throughout, adds to the book's attractiveness and appeal to students; more importantly, it helps them better understand concepts discussed in such chapters as Color, Cinematography, and Visual Design.
- New coverage of such thought-provoking topics as the treatment of sex, violence, and language; censorship and the MPAA Rating System; the "foreignness" of foreign films; and social problem films is now highlighted in new Chapter 15, Film and Society.
- The new "Flashback" feature gives students a brief historical overview of such topics as the history of film editing (Chapter 6); the use of color in filmmaking (Chapter 7); voice dubbing (Chapter 8); acting in silent films (Chapter 10); and the role of the screenwriter (Chapter 13).

STUDENT CD-ROM WITH FILM CLIPS AND COMMENTARY

This CD-ROM, designed specifically for *The Art of Watching Films*, provides short film clips that reinforce the key concepts and topics in each chapter. Along with each film clip is commentary that relates the film clip to the ideas discussed in the text. A short quiz accompanies each clip and commentary. Film clips are from such movies as *The Graduate, Psycho, Pleasantville, Meet the Parents, Do the Right Thing, Vertigo,* and *Shakespeare in Love.*

VISIT THE ONLINE LEARNING CENTER AT www.mhhe.com/awf7

This Web site for *The Art of Watching Films* includes tools for both instructors and students. For instructors, the Online Learning Center (OLC) offers a new instructor's manual; a test bank; EZ Test Computerized Test Bank; a PowerPoint presentation including outlines for each chapter and discussion questions; and multiple-choice questions for use with the Classroom Performance System. Instructors also have access to all the assets in the Student edition of the OLC, which include a special feature "Writing About Film;" a selected bibliography and list of resource materials; self-testing quizzes for each chapter, including multiple-choice and true-false questions; and study materials for every chapter, including chapter outline, Internet exercises, and Web links.

ISBN 978-0-07-353507-4
MHID 0-07-353507-9

EAN
9 780073 535074 90000
www.mhhe.com

The McGraw·Hill Companies

McGraw-Hill Higher Education

The ART *of Watching* FILMS

The ART *of Watching* FILMS

Seventh Edition

JOSEPH M. BOGGS
Late of Western Kentucky University

DENNIS W. PETRIE
Tri-State University

Mc
Graw
Hill

Boston Burr Ridge, IL Dubuque, IA Madison, WI New York San Francisco St. Louis
Bangkok Bogotá Caracas Kuala Lumpur Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City
Milan Montreal New Delhi Santiago Seoul Singapore Sydney Taipei Toronto

The McGraw·Hill Companies

Higher Education

Published by McGraw-Hill, an imprint of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., 1221 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. Copyright © 2008. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., including, but not limited to, in any network or other electronic storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 DOC/DOC 0 9 8 7

ISBN-13: 978-0-07-353507-4
MHID: 0-07-353507-9

Editor in Chief: *Emily Barrosse*
Publisher: *Lisa Moore*
Sponsoring Editor: *Christopher Freitag*
Developmental Editor: *Nancy Crochiere*
Marketing Manager: *Pamela Cooper*
Media Producer: *Stacy Bentz*
Production Editor: *Brett Coker*
Interior Designer: *Kay Fulton*
Cover Designer: *Preston Thomas*
Art Editor: *Ayelet Arbel*
Photo Research Coordinator: *Sonia Brown*
Production Supervisor: *Richard DeVitto*
Composition: *10.5/13 Janson by Thompson Type*
Printing: *45# Publishers Matte Plus by R.R. Donnelley & Sons*

Credits: The credits section for this book begins on page C-1 and is considered an extension of the copyright page.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Boggs, Joseph M.
The art of watching films / Joseph M. Boggs, Dennis W. Petrie.—7th ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-07-353507-4
MHID: 0-07-353507-9
1. Film criticism. I. Petrie, Dennis W. II. Title.

PN1995.B525 2008
791.43'015—dc22

2006048155

The Internet addresses listed in the text were accurate at the time of publication. The inclusion of a Web site does not indicate an endorsement by the authors or McGraw-Hill, and McGraw-Hill does not guarantee the accuracy of the information presented at these sites.

www.mhhe.com

For ELIZABETH PETRIE GILL
and ROBERT D. BRILES

Contents

PREFACE XIII

Lord of the Rings

1
The Art of Watching Films 2

THE UNIQUENESS OF FILM 3
THE CHALLENGES OF FILM ANALYSIS 5
THE VALUE OF FILM ANALYSIS 6
BECOMING A RECEPTIVE VIEWER 9
THE FILM-VIEWING ENVIRONMENT 11
PREPARING TO SEE A FILM 15
DEEPENING OUR RESPONSES TO FILMS 17
Analyzing Your Responses to a Film 18

The New World

2
Thematic Elements 19

THEME AND FOCUS 20
    Focus on Plot 20
    Focus on Emotional Effect or Mood 20
    Focus on Character 22
    Focus on Style or Texture or Structure 23
    Focus on Ideas 24
IDENTIFYING THE THEME 32
EVALUATING THE THEME 34
Analyzing Theme 36
Video Exercises 37
Films for Study 38

Finding Neverland

3
Fictional and Dramatic Elements 40

FILM ANALYSIS AND LITERARY ANALYSIS 41
THE ELEMENTS OF A GOOD STORY 41
    A Good Story Is Unified in Plot 42
    A Good Story Is Credible 42
    A Good Story Is Interesting 46
    A Good Story Is Both Simple and Complex 48
    A Good Story Handles Emotional Material with Restraint 51
THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE TITLE 53
DRAMATIC STRUCTURE 54
    Linear, or Chronological, Structure 54
    Nonlinear Structures 55
    Endings: Fine-Tuning the Dénouement 56
CONFLICT 57
CHARACTERIZATION 59
    Characterization Through Appearance 60
    Characterization Through Dialogue 61

Characterization Through External Action 62
Characterization Through Internal Action 62
Characterization Through Reactions of Other Characters 64
Characterization Through Contrast: Dramatic Foils 64
Characterization Through Caricature and Leitmotif 65
Characterization Through Choice of Name 66
Varieties of Characters 67

ALLEGORY 70

SYMBOLISM 71

Universal and Natural Symbols 72
Creating Symbolic Meanings 73
Symbolic Patterns and Progressions 76
Symbolic Values in Conflict 78
Metaphors 78
Overreading Symbolism 79

IRONY 80

Dramatic Irony 80
Irony of Situation 81
Irony of Character 82
Irony of Setting 82
Irony of Tone 82
Cosmic Irony 83

Analyzing Fictional and Dramatic Elements 84

Video Exercises 86

Mini-Movie Exercise 88

DVD Filmmaking Extras 88

Films for Study 89

Memoirs of a Geisha

4

Visual Design 90

COLOR VERSUS BLACK AND WHITE 91

SCREEN FORMAT (ASPECT RATIO) 92

FILM STOCK 93

PRODUCTION DESIGN/ART DIRECTION 97

The Script: The Starting Point 97
Setting and Its Effects 101
Studio Versus Location Shooting 105
Period Pieces 106
Living Spaces and Offices 107
Fantasy Worlds 108

COSTUME AND MAKEUP DESIGN 110

LIGHTING 114

THE BUDGET'S EFFECT ON THE FILM'S LOOK 119

Analyzing Visual Design 119

Video Exercises 120

Mini-Movie Exercise 121

DVD Filmmaking Extras 121

Films for Study 122

Brokeback Mountain

5

Cinematography and Special Visual Effects 124

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE VISUAL IMAGE 125

THE CINEMATIC FILM 125

CINEMATIC POINTS OF VIEW 126

Objective Point of View 127
Subjective Point of View 128
Indirect-Subjective Point of View 130
Director's Interpretive Point of View 132

ELEMENTS OF CINEMATIC COMPOSITION 133

Focusing Attention on the Most Significant Object 134
Keeping the Image in Motion 138
Creating an Illusion of Depth 143

SPECIALIZED CINEMATIC TECHNIQUES 151

Handheld Camera 151
Camera Angles 152
Color, Diffusion, and Soft Focus 153
Special Lenses 155
Fast Motion 157
Special Lighting Effects 157

MOVIE MAGIC: VISUAL EFFECTS IN THE MODERN FILM 158

THE F/X OF ANIMATED FEATURE FILMS . . . ESPECIALLY FOR ADULTS 166

FLASHBACK: ANIMATION BECOMES THE MAIN EVENT 168

Analyzing Cinematography and Special Visual Effects 175

Video Exercises 176

Mini-Movie Exercise: Cinematography 177

***Mini-Movie Exercise: Animated FX* 177**
***DVD Filmmaking Extras* 178**
***Films for Study* 183**

The Constant Gardener

6
Editing 185

SELECTIVITY 187
FLASHBACK: SAVING THE MOVIES: WHAT FILM EDITORS HAVE ALWAYS DONE 188
COHERENCE, CONTINUITY, AND RHYTHM 190
TRANSITIONS 190
RHYTHMS, TEMPO, AND TIME CONTROL 198
EXPANSION AND COMPRESSION OF TIME 202
SLOW MOTION 203
THE FREEZE FRAME, THE THAWED FRAME, AND STILLS 212
  The Freeze Frame 212
  The Thawed Frame 213
  Stills 214
CREATIVE JUXTAPOSITION: MONTAGE 215
***Questions for Analyzing Editing* 216**
***Video Exercises* 216**
***Mini-Movie Exercise* 219**
***Mini-Movie Exercise* 220**
***DVD Filmmaking Extras* 220**
***Films for Study* 220**

Gone With the Wind

7
Color 222

COLOR IN THE MODERN FILM 225
  Effects of Color on the Viewer 225
FLASHBACK: DISCOVERING COLOR AT THE MOVIES 226
  Color as a Transitional Device 233
  Expressionistic Use of Color 236
  Color as Symbol 238
  Surrealistic Use of Color 238
  Leitmotifs in Color 239
  Color to Enhance Mood 240
  Comic Book Color 240
  Comic Strip Color 241
  Painterly Effects in Color 242
  Ironic Use of Color 244
  Special Color Effects 244
COLOR VERSUS BLACK AND WHITE 246
***Analyzing Color* 252**
***Video Exercises* 252**
***Mini-Movie Exercise* 253**
***DVD Filmmaking Extras* 253**
***Films for Study* 254**

A Prairie Home Companion

8
Sound Effects and Dialogue 256

SOUND AND THE MODERN FILM 257
DIALOGUE 258
THREE-DIMENSIONALITY IN SOUND 259
VISIBLE AND INVISIBLE SOUND 262
POINTS OF VIEW IN SOUND 264
SPECIAL USES OF SOUND EFFECTS AND DIALOGUE 266
  Sound Effects to Tell an Inner Story 267
  Distortion of Sound to Suggest Subjective States 268
  The "Personality" of Mechanical Sounds 268
  Slow-Motion Sound 269
  Ironic Juxtaposition of Sound and Image 269
  Placing Unusual Emphasis on Sound 269
  Using Sound for Texture, Time, and Temperature 272
SOUND AS A PLOT DEVICE 273
SOUND AS A TRANSITIONAL ELEMENT 274
VOICE-OVER NARRATION 275

SILENCE AS A SOUND EFFECT 281
RHYTHMIC QUALITIES OF DIALOGUE AND SOUND EFFECTS 281
THE "SOUNDS" OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE OR INTERNATIONAL FILMS 281
    Voice Dubbing 282
    Subtitles 283
FLASHBACK: DUBIOUS DUBBING 284
Analyzing Sound Effects and Dialogue 285
Video Exercises 286
Mini-Movie Exercise 286
DVD Filmmaking Extras 287
Films for Study 288

Walk the Line

9

The Musical Score 290

THE REMARKABLE AFFINITY OF MUSIC AND FILM 291
THE IMPORTANCE OF THE MUSICAL SCORE 291
GENERAL FUNCTIONS OF THE MUSICAL SCORE 292
SPECIAL FUNCTIONS OF THE MUSICAL SCORE 294
    Heightening the Dramatic Effect of Dialogue 294
    Telling an Inner Story 295
    Providing a Sense of Time and Place 296
    Foreshadowing Events or Building Dramatic Tension 297
    Adding Levels of Meaning to the Visual Image 298
    Characterization Through Music 298
    Triggering Conditioned Responses 301
    Traveling Music 302
    Providing Important Transitions 302
    Setting an Initial Tone 303
    Musical Sounds as Part of the Score 304
    Music as Interior Monologue 304
    Music as a Base for Choreographed Action 304
    Covering Possible Weaknesses in the Film 307
SYNTHESIZER SCORING 307
BALANCING THE SCORE 309
Analyzing the Musical Score 311
Video Exercises 312
Mini-Movie Exercise 312
DVD Filmmaking Extras 313
Films for Study 316

Capote

10

Acting 318

THE IMPORTANCE OF ACTING 319
THE GOAL OF THE ACTOR 319
BECOMING THE CHARACTER 320
DIFFERENCES BETWEEN FILM ACTING AND STAGE ACTING 322
FLASHBACK: SILENT FILMS: ACTING ON THE PAST 330
TYPES OF ACTORS 332
    Impersonators 332
    Interpreters and Commentators 332
    Personality Actors 333
THE STAR SYSTEM 333
CASTING 335
    Casting Problems 339
    The Typecasting Trap 340
    Supporting Players 344
    Special Casting Challenges 347
    Extras and Small Parts 349
ACTORS AS CREATIVE CONTRIBUTORS 351
SUBJECTIVE RESPONSES TO ACTORS 354
Analyzing Acting 356
Video Exercises 357
Mini-Movie Exercise 357
Mini-Movie Exercise 358
DVD Filmmaking Extras 359
Films for Study 361

King Kong (2005)

11

The Director's Style 363

THE CONCEPT OF STYLE 367

SUBJECT MATTER 367

CINEMATOGRAPHY 371

EDITING 373

SETTING AND SET DESIGN 374

SOUND AND SCORE 374

CASTING AND ACTING PERFORMANCES 375

SCREENPLAYS AND NARRATIVE STRUCTURE 377

EVOLVING STYLES AND FLEXIBILITY 381

SPECIAL EDITION: THE DIRECTOR'S CUT 383

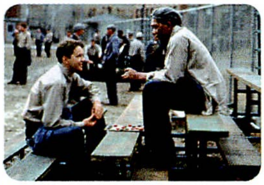
A PORTFOLIO OF FOUR DIRECTORS 386

Analyzing a Director's Style 396

Mini-Movie Exercise 397

DVD Filmmaking Extras 397

Films for Study 400



The Shawshank Redemption

12

Analysis of the Whole Film 403

THE BASIC APPROACH:
WATCHING, ANALYZING,
AND EVALUATING THE FILM 404

- *Theme 405*
- *The Relationship of the Parts to the Whole 405*
- *The Film's Level of Ambition 407*
- *Objective Evaluation of the Film 407*
- *Subjective Evaluation of the Film 408*

OTHER APPROACHES TO ANALYSIS, EVALUATION, AND DISCUSSION 409

- *The Film as Technical Achievement 409*
- *The Film as Showcase for the Actor: The Personality Cult 409*
- *The Film as Product of a Single Creative Mind: The Auteur Approach 410*
- *The Film as Moral, Philosophical, or Social Statement 411*
- *The Film as Emotional or Sensual Experience 412*
- *The Film as Repeated Form: The Genre Approach 412*
- *The Film as Political Statement 414*
- *The Film as Gender Statement 415*
- *The Film as Insight to the Mind: The Psychoanalytical Approach 416*
- *The Eclectic Approach 418*

REREADING THE REVIEWS 420

EVALUATING THE REVIEWER 420

DEVELOPING PERSONAL CRITERIA 422

Analyzing the Whole Film 424

Mini-Movie Exercise I 425

Mini-Movie Exercise II 426

DVD Filmmaking Extras 427

Films for Study 428

The Chronicles of Narnia

13

Adaptations 429

THE PROBLEMS OF ADAPTATION 430

- *Change in Medium 430*
- *Change in Creative Artists 431*
- *Cinematic Potential of the Original Work 432*

ADAPTATIONS OF PROSE FICTION 433

- *Literary Versus Cinematic Points of View 433*

FLASHBACK:
THE WRITER'S PLACE IN HOLLYWOOD 436

- *Third-Person Point of View: Challenges 438*
- *First-Person Point of View: Challenges 439*
- *The Problem of Length and Depth 440*
- *Philosophical Reflections 442*
- *Summarizing a Character's Past 444*
- *The Challenge of Summarizing Events 446*

Literary Past Tense Versus Cinematic Present Tense 447
Other Factors Influencing Adaptations of Fiction 448
ADAPTATIONS OF PLAYS 449
Structural Divisions 450
Sense of Space 451
Film Language Versus Stage Language 454
Stage Conventions Versus Cinema Conventions 455
Other Changes 567
FROM FACT TO FILM: REALITY TO MYTH 457
***Analyzing Adaptations* 463**
***Mini-Movie Exercise* 465**
***DVD Filmmaking Extras* 466**
***Films for Study* 468**

Superman Returns

14
Genre Films, Remakes, and Sequels 470

GENRE FILMS 471
Values 472
The Strengths of Genre Films 473
Basic Genre Conventions—and Their Variations 473
REMAKES AND SEQUELS 490
Remakes 492
Sequels 495
***Analyzing Genre Films, Remakes, and Sequels* 501**
***Mini-Movie Exercise* 502**
***DVD Filmmaking Extras* 503**
***Films for Study* 505**

Grey Gardens

15
Film and Society 512

FILM FOREIGNNESS 513
"Strange Silents" 515
DOES AMERICAN FILM SHAPE OR REFLECT SOCIAL AND CULTURAL VALUES? 516
THE MOTION PICTURE PRODUCTION CODE, 1930–1960 518
BOX 1: EXCERPTS FROM THE MOTION PICTURE PRODUCTION CODE 519
CENSORSHIP IN TRANSITION, 1948–1968 523
THE MPAA RATING SYSTEM 525
BOX 2: MOTION PICTURE ASSOCIATION OF AMERICA VOLUNTARY MOVIE RATING SYSTEM 527
CENSORSHIP AND FILMS ON TELEVISION 531
BEYOND THE CODE AND RATING SYSTEM 533
CHANGING FORMULAS FOR THE TREATMENT OF SEX, VIOLENCE, AND LANGUAGE 535
SOCIAL PROBLEM FILMS 538
FLASHBACK: REALLY REEL LIFE 542
***Analyzing Films in Society* 546**
***Mini-Movie Exercise* 548**
***DVD Filmmaking Extras* 549**
***Films for Study* 551**

NOTES N-1

GLOSSARY G-1

INDEX I-1

CREDITS C-1

ONLINE APPENDIXES

www.mhhe.com/awf7

Writing a Film Analysis

SAMPLE STUDENT PAPER 1:
ANALYSIS OF A COMPLETE FILM
(John Ford's *The Grapes of Wrath*)
SAMPLE STUDENT PAPER 2:
ANALYSIS OF SELECTED FILM ELEMENTS
(Martin Scorsese's *Taxi Driver*)
SAMPLE STUDENT PAPER 3: ANALYSIS FOR STUDY
(Martin Scorsese's *The Age of Innocence*)

Selected Bibliography and Study Materials

REFERENCE
FILM HISTORY AND CULTURE
SILENT FILM
DIRECTORS
FILM TYPES AND TOPICS
SPECIFIC FILMS
COLLECTIONS OF REVIEWS, ESSAYS, AND INTERVIEWS
FILM AESTHETICS AND THEORY
FILM PERIODICALS
MULTIMEDIA SOURCES
INTERNET SITES
DVD/VIDEOCASSETTE SOURCES VIA MAIL

Preface

Not only is there an art to making films, there is also an art to watching films. We wrote this book to challenge students in introduction to film courses to sharpen their powers of observation, develop the skills and habits of perceptive watching, and discover complex aspects of film art that they might otherwise overlook. We designed the text to complement any film studied; its analytical framework can be applied to films as distinctly different as *The Grapes of Wrath*, *Caché*, *Dreamgirls*, *Batman Begins*, *Little Miss Sunshine*, and *Flags of our Fathers.*

We are excited to offer this new seventh edition of *The Art of Watching Films* in full color. The addition of color photos and movie stills throughout not only adds to the book's attractiveness, but also helps students better understand concepts discussed in such chapters as Color, Cinematography, and Visual Design. In all, more than 450 images with extensive, informative captions illustrate key points in the text.

As in previous editions, we have tried to include as examples a large number of contemporary films that today's students are likely to have seen. We do this with the understanding that students learn better and are more engaged by the subject matter when they start with what they know. However, we also include numerous examples from American film classics, which are discussed in a way that does not assume prior knowledge. Moreover, throughout the text, we examine and include examples from films from other countries, documentaries, and animated films.

ORGANIZATION

In its formal organization and intent, *The Art of Watching Films* is as straightforward as possible, with a focus on narrative film. The first chapter offers a rationale for film analysis while providing suggestions for deepening film appreciation from day one of the course. The text then develops a foundation for understanding theme and story (Chapters 2 and 3) and moves on to discuss dramatic and cinematic elements (Chapters 4–11). Chapter 12 provides a framework for integrating knowledge of all these elements into an analysis of the whole film. Subsequent chapters explore special topics: adaptations (13); genre films, remakes, and sequels (14); and film and society (15).

Based on extensive reviewer feedback, we have made the following organizational changes to the seventh edition:

- The topic of special visual effects is now covered in Chapter 5 on Cinematography.
- A special section on animated feature Films was added to Chapter 5.
- Examples from silent films are integrated throughout, but special coverage of silent films can be found in Chapter 10, Acting, and Chapter 15, Film and Society.
- As with silent films, examples and discussion of foreign films are integrated throughout, with special coverage in Chapter 8, Sound Effects and Dialogue, and Chapter 15, Film and Society.

FEATURES

New—"Flashback" Features

New to this seventh edition of the text are seven boxed features that explore important aspects of film history. "Flashback" features are illustrated by one or more photos and give students a brief historical overview of such topics as the history of film editing (Chapter 6); the use of color in filmmaking (Chapter 7); voice dubbing (Chapter 8); acting in silent films (Chapter 9) and the role of the screenwriter (Chapter 13) and the underrated art of documentary filmmaking (Chapter 15).

New—Chapter on Film and Society

A new chapter on Film and Society covers such thought-provoking topics as the treatment of sex, violence, and language; censorship and the MPAA Rating System; the "foreignness" of foreign language and silent films; and social problem films, including documentaries.

Student CD-ROM with Film Clips and Commentary

This CD-ROM, designed specifically for *The Art of Watching Films*, provides short film clips that reinforce the key concepts and topics in each chapter. Along with each film clip is commentary that relates the film clip to the ideas discussed in the text. A short quiz accompanies each clip and commentary. Film clips are from such movies as *The Graduate*, *Psycho*, *Pleasantville*, *Meet the Parents*, *Do the Right Thing*, *Vertigo*, and *Shakespeare in Love*. The CD-ROM was created by Donna Davidson-Symonds of College of the Canyons, Santa Clarita, CA.

Unique Chapter on Adaptation

Chapter 13, Adaptation, treats a major aspect of current filmmaking that is rarely covered in textbooks: the adaptation not only of works of literature, but also television series, computer games, graphic novels, children's books, and even magazine articles, into feature films.

Video Exercises

End-of-chapter video exercises offer a hands-on immediacy to the study of film. Assuming that most students have at least limited access to a VCR or DVD player, we have devised video exercises for nine of the chapters in the text.

- **For VCR:** To view the section of film dealt with in each exercise, set the VCR counter at "0000" (or the real-time counter at 0:00:00) at the very end of the studio logo, just as the "movie proper" begins. (The "movie proper" includes such things as "Paramount Pictures Presents," opening credits, and the main title). Then fast-forward until the numbers given in the exercise appear.
- **For DVD player:** For examination of comparable scenes on any available DVD, merely follow the descriptive references in the "chapters" indicator of the main menu.

Questions for Analyzing Film Themes and Techniques

Questions at the end of every chapter help students apply chapter concepts to the analysis of any film. They increase students' involvement in the film experience, encouraging them to participate actively in an engaging quest rather than respond passively to the surface details.

Mini-Movie Exercises

Chapters 3 through 15 also provide students with exercises for examining a short film or "cinema sampler" (part of a feature film that is virtually self-contained). These exercises permit scrutiny of "complete," unified works rather than just fragmented bits and pieces of a feature-length film. They should be especially helpful to students and teachers who necessarily work within limited time periods.

DVD Filmmaking Extras

Chapters 3 through 15 contain annotated lists of topic-specific materials about the filmmaking process to be found on DVD versions of many movies. In addition, instructions are given for locating many "Easter eggs" (special hidden features) on DVDs.

Writing About Film

Many instructors ask students to write about the films they watch—either informally in a journal or formally in an essay to give structure and logic to their own critical responses. In this text's Web site (www.mhhe.com/awf7), we offer guidelines for writing a film analysis and three sample student essays. The first is a lengthy, complete examination of John Ford's *The Grapes of Wrath*, showing how a student might approach a paper assigned as a major class project. The second is a shorter, simpler paper focusing on important techniques employed in Martin Scorsese's *Taxi Driver.* Both of these essays illustrate the types of analysis that one might expect students to write by using this text and a video source for multiple viewings. So that students using this book can grasp the interrelationship of the text, film, and finished essay, we have noted in the margins of both papers the pages in *The Art of Watching Films* that helped each student writer. The third student essay is a sharply focused analysis of Scorsese's *The Age of Innocence* without textual annotations.

ONLINE LEARNING CENTER

An Online Learning Center (OLC) for *The Art of Watching Films* can be found at www.mhhe.co/awf7. The Web site includes tools for both instructors and students.

For instructors, the OLC offers:

- **An instructor's manual** including chapter outlines, chapter summaries, lecture ideas, discussion questions, and lists of recommended films.
- **A test bank** containing, for each chapter, over 30 multiple-choice, matching, and true-false questions.
- **EZ Test Computerized Test Bank,** a flexible and easy-to-use electronic testing program that allows instructors to add their own questions and export tests for use with course management systems such as Blackboard or WebCT. It is available for Windows and Macintosh environments.
- **A Powerpoint presentation** includes chapter outlines and discussion questions.
- Questions for use with the **Classroom Performance System (CPS),** a revolutionary wireless response system that allows instructors to pose questions to students and have their responses tabulated instantly. Go to www.mhhe.com/cps or ask your McGraw-Hill sales representative for further details.

Instructors also have access to all the assets in the Student edition of the OLC, including:

- **The special feature "Writing about Film,"** described above, which provides guidelines for writing a film analysis and three sample student essays.
- **A selected bibliography** and list of resource materials.
- **Self-testing quizzes** for each chapter, including multiple-choice and true-false questions.
- **Study materials** for every chapter, including chapter outline, internet exercises, and web links.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This new, all-color seventh edition of *The Art of Watching Films* exists primarily because readers have embraced its predecessors enthusiastically. I wish to express enormous gratitude to the past and current users of my work and that of Joe Boggs.

In addition, I offer my sincere thanks to my family, friends, colleagues, and students for their ardent encouragement throughout the making of this book. Immensely praiseworthy among those who actively supported my efforts are Michael Blaz, Carol L. Briles, Miriam J. Briles, Elizabeth Gill, Sandy S. Ridlington, Jeanine Samuelson, Jane A. Tubergen, Robert J. Whelchel—and, especially, Robert D. Briles, Roberta Tierney, Suzanne K. Van Wagner, and Thomas P. Tierney.

Many valuable kindnesses also came my way from Marcia Adams, Deborah Blaz, Jeanne Braham, Ray Hatton, Mary E. Heltsley, Miles Hession II, Jacqueline E. Orsagh, and Robert C. Petersen. And co-workers whose thoughtfulness eased my labor include Timothy Hopp, Donald P. Jones, Joan Karbach, Jeanine Samuelson, Jan Schlegel, Lisa Toner, Kathie Wentworth, and Vicki Frey.

Within McGraw-Hill Higher Education, senior sponsoring editor Chris Freitag, sponsoring editor Gina Boedeker, development editor Nomi Sofer, photo editor Sonia Brown, and copy editor Patricia Ohlenroth were particularly helpful. To senior production editor Brett Coker I owe many thanks for his extremely effective leadership and wise counsel. Most of all, I offer my heartfelt appreciation to senior development editor Nancy Crochiere, whose intelligence, creative wit, and patient professionalism sustained me throughout the progress of our challenging tasks.

Finally, I thank all of my colleagues who served as reviewers for this edition:

Brian J. Benson, North Carolina A & T State University
Timothy Case, University of South Dakota
John Ernst, Heartland Community College
Mark Freeman, San Diego State University
Robert Gore, Sacramento City College
James Gorham, Midwestern State University

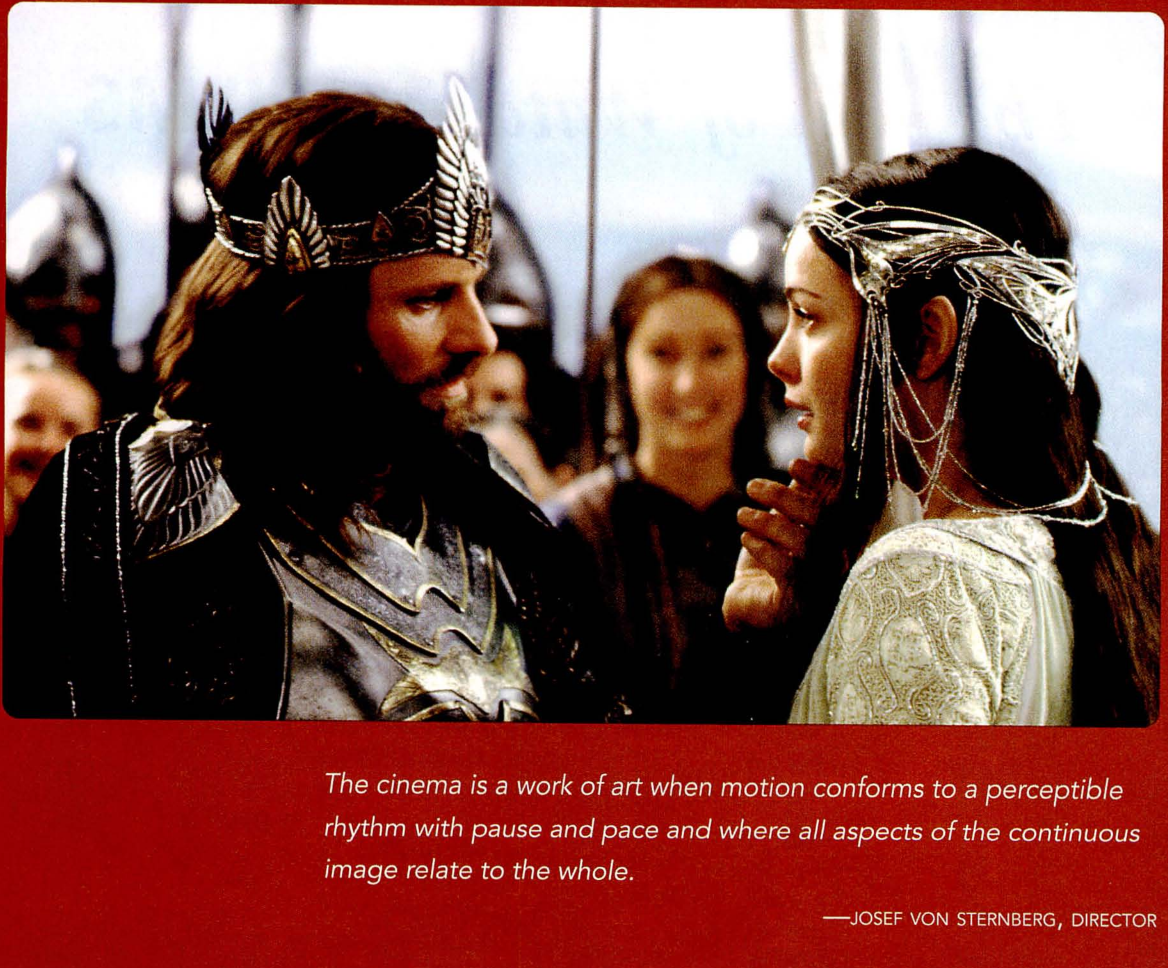
Michael Haddock, Florida Community College
Robert Kagan, Manchester Community College
Julie Levinson, Babson College
Cynthia Lucia, Rider University
Valjoan Myers, Oakland Community College
David Popowski, Minnesota State University
Jan Quinn-Weyent, Long Beach City College
John P. Smead, Central Missouri State University
Janice Vierk, Metropolitan Community College

A very special thanks to Donna Davidson-Symonds of College of the Canyons for her superb work on the student tutorial CD-ROM that accompanies this text.

Dennis W. Petrie

The ART *of Watching* FILMS

The ART *of* WATCHING FILMS



The cinema is a work of art when motion conforms to a perceptible rhythm with pause and pace and where all aspects of the continuous image relate to the whole.

—JOSEF VON STERNBERG, DIRECTOR

THE UNIQUENESS OF FILM

The tremendous expense involved in producing motion pictures reminds us that film is both an industry and an art form. Each film is the child of a turbulent marriage between businesspeople and artists. Yet despite an ongoing battle between aesthetic and commercial considerations, film is recognized as a unique and powerful art form on a par with painting, sculpture, music, literature, and drama. A. O. Scott, a film reviewer for *The New York Times*, has eloquently identified other tensions within our insatiable appetite for going to the movies:

> The essential paradox . . . is that it is at once collective and radically solitary, an amalgam of the cohesive social ritual of theatergoing and the individualist reverie of novel-reading. The movies offer visions of a better world even as they are symptoms of everything wrong with this one. As such, moviegoing is perhaps still . . . the exemplary modern cultural activity. It splices together individualism and mass culture—the insistence on the particularity of identity and the standardization of experience, the line at the box office and the solitary dreaming in the dark—like a serendipitous art-house double feature programmed by a deity with perverse tastes and an odd sense of humor.[1]

As a form of expression, the motion picture is similar to other artistic media, for the basic properties of other media are woven into its own rich fabric. Film employs the compositional elements of the visual arts: line, form, mass, volume, and texture. Like painting and photography, film exploits the subtle interplay of light and shadow. Like sculpture, film manipulates three-dimensional space. But, like pantomime, film focuses on *moving* images, and as in dance, the moving images in film have rhythm. The complex rhythms of film resemble those of music and poetry, and like poetry in particular, film communicates through imagery, metaphor, and symbol. Like the drama, film communicates visually *and* verbally: visually, through action and gesture; verbally, through dialogue. Finally, like the novel, film expands or compresses time and space, traveling back and forth freely within their wide borders.

Despite these similarities, film is unique, set apart from all other media by its quality of free and constant motion. The continuous interplay of sight, sound, and motion allows film to transcend the static limitations of painting and sculpture—in the complexity of its sensual appeal as well as in its ability to communicate simultaneously on several levels. Film even surpasses drama in its unique capacity for revealing various points of view, portraying action, manipulating time, and conveying a boundless sense of space. Unlike the stage play, film can provide a continuous, unbroken flow, which blurs and minimizes transitions without compromising the story's unity. Unlike the novel and the poem, film communicates directly, not through abstract symbols like words on a page but through concrete images and sounds. What's more, film can treat an almost infinite array of subjects:

> It is impossible to conceive of anything which the eye might behold or the ear hear, in actuality or imagination, which could not be represented in the medium of film. From the poles to the equator, from the Grand Canyon to the minutest flaw in a piece of steel, from the whistling flight of a bullet to the slow growth of a flower, from the flicker of thought across an almost impassive face to the frenzied ravings of a madman, there is no point in space, no degree of magnitude or speed of movement within the apprehension of man which is not within reach of the film.[2]

Film is unlimited not only in its choice of subject but also in its approach to that material. A film's mood and treatment can range from the lyric to the epic. In point of view, a film can cover the full spectrum from the purely objective to the intensely subjective; in depth, it can focus on the surface realities and the purely sensual, or it can delve into the intellectual and philosophical. A film can look to the remote past or probe the distant future; it can make a few seconds seem like hours or compress a century into minutes. Film can run the gamut of feeling from the most fragile, tender, and beautiful to the most brutal, violent, and repulsive.

Of even greater importance than film's unlimited range in subject matter and treatment, however, is the overwhelming sense of reality it can convey. The continuous stream of sight, sound, and motion creates a here-and-now excitement that immerses the viewer in the cinematic experience. Thus, through film, fantasy assumes the shape and emotional impact of reality (Figure 1.1). The technological history of film can in fact be viewed as a continual evolution toward greater realism, toward erasing the border between art and nature. The motion picture has progressed step by step from drawings, to photographs, to projected images, to sound, to color, to wide screen, to 3-D and beyond. Attempts have been made to add the sense of smell to the film experience by releasing fragrances in the theater. Aldous Huxley's novel *Brave New World* depicts a theater of the future in which a complex electrical apparatus at each seat provides tactile images to match the visuals:

> Going to the Feelies this evening, Henry? . . . I hear the new one at the Alhambra is first-rate. There's a love scene on a bearskin rug; they say it's marvelous. Every hair of the bear reproduced. The most amazing tactual effects.[3]

Although Huxley's "Feelies" have not yet become reality, the motion picture has succeeded—through Cinerama, IMAX, and other wide-screen, curved-screen, large-screen projection or computerized virtual reality techniques—in intensifying our experience to a remarkable degree. In fact, by creating images that are larger than life, films have sometimes been made to seem more real than reality. A cartoon published shortly after the release of the first Cinerama film (*This Is Cinerama*, 1952) illustrates the effectiveness of this device. The drawing pictures a man groping for a seat during the famous roller-

FIGURE 1.1 **Making Fantasy Become Reality** The film medium gives such fantasy movies as Ang Lee's *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* the texture and emotional impact of reality.

coaster sequence. As he moves across a row of theater seats, another spectator, in a panic, grabs his arm and screams hysterically, "Sit down, you fool! You'll have us all killed!" This comic exclamation echoed similar ones from early silent film patrons who reacted nervously to the first train that swiftly entered a cinema's "station." What awesome delights must await us consumers of movie **CGI (computer generated imaging)** in future decades.

THE CHALLENGES OF FILM ANALYSIS

The properties that make film the most powerful and realistic of the arts also make analysis challenging. A motion picture moves continuously in time and space. Once frozen, a film is no longer a "motion" picture, and the unique property of the medium is gone. Therefore, film analysis requires us to respond sensitively to the simultaneous and continuous interplay of image, sound, and movement on the screen. This necessity creates the most challenging part of the task: We must somehow remain almost totally immersed in the experience of a film while we maintain a high degree of objectivity and critical detachment. Difficult though it may seem, this skill can be developed, and we must consciously cultivate it if we desire to become truly "cineliterate." Innovations in videocassette recorders (VCRs), laserdisc players, and now digital videodisc (DVD) players and recorders can help, initially at least, by simply making screenings (as well as multiple viewings) of a film easier than in the past.

The technical nature of the medium also creates challenges. It would be ideal if we all had some experience in cinematography and film editing. In the absence of such experience, we should become familiar with the basic techniques of film production so that we can recognize them and evaluate their effectiveness. Because a certain amount of technical language or jargon is necessary for the analysis and intelligent discussion of any art form, we must also add a number of important technical terms to our vocabularies.

The most challenging part of our task has already been stated: We must become almost totally immersed in the experience of a film and at the same time maintain a high degree of objectivity and critical detachment. The complex nature of the medium makes it difficult to consider all the elements of a film in a single viewing; too many things happen too quickly on too many levels to allow for a complete analysis. Therefore, if we wish to develop the proper habits of analytical viewing, we should see a film at least twice whenever possible. In the first viewing we can watch the film in the usual manner, concerning ourselves primarily with plot elements, the total emotional effect, and the central idea or theme. Then, in subsequent viewings, because we are no longer caught up in the suspense of what happens, we can focus our full attention on the hows and whys of the filmmaker's art. Constant practice of the double- or multiple-viewing technique should make it possible for us to gradually combine the functions of two or more viewings into one.

We must also remember that film analysis does not end when the film is over. In a sense, this is when it really begins. Most of the questions posed in this book require the reader to reflect on the film after viewing it, and a mental replay of some parts of the film will be necessary for any complete analysis.

Finally, as we move through the chapters that follow toward the analysis of individual films, we must always remind ourselves that if the medium can truly be called an "art," then it is definitely a *collaborative* one. Scores, if not hundreds, of commercial professionals are involved in the production of the average "picture" (to use the term that many filmmakers themselves prefer). When we analyze a literary work such as a novel or poem, we judge the toil of a single creative individual. By contrast, our close examination of a film requires an awareness of the talents of many different artists, including producers, directors, production/costume/makeup designers, and, of course, actors. Usually, though, in the beginning is still the word, and the screenwriter—who has historically been viewed as the least respected major team player in Hollywood—remains the primary *originating* force within cinematic art.

THE VALUE OF FILM ANALYSIS

Before we turn to the actual process of film analysis, it may be worthwhile to look into certain fundamental questions that have been raised about the value of analysis in general. Perhaps the most vocal reactions against analysis come from those who see it as a destroyer of beauty, claiming that it kills our love for the object under study. According to this view, it is better to accept all art intu-

FIGURE 1.2 Learning to Dive Watching classic film dramas like Ingmar Bergman's *The Seventh Seal* helps us to understand our human selves with a depth that might elude us otherwise.

itively, emotionally, and subjectively, so that our response is full, warm, and vibrant, uncluttered by the intellect. However, an either/or, black-and-white polarization of intuition and analysis is flawed. It denies the possibility of some middle ground—a synthesis that retains the best qualities of both approaches and embraces as equally valid both the emotional/intuitive and the intellectual/analytical approaches. This book rests on that middle ground. It assumes that the soul of the poet and the intellect of the scientist can coexist within all of us, enriching and enhancing the film experience. Analysis need not murder our love of the movies. We can experience beauty, joy, and mystery intellectually as well as intuitively. With the tools of analysis, we can discover the deepest reaches of understanding that only the poet within us can fully appreciate (Figure 1.2). By creating new avenues of awareness, analysis can make our love for movies stronger, more real, more enduring. The analytical approach is essential to the art of watching films, for it enables us to see and understand how each part functions to contribute its vital energy to the pulsing, dynamic whole.

Analysis, generally, means breaking up the whole to discover the nature, proportion, function, and interrelationships of the parts. Film analysis, then, presupposes the existence of a unified and rationally structured artistic whole. Therefore, the usefulness of this book is restricted to structured or narrative films—films developed with a definite underlying purpose and unified around a central theme. Limiting our approach to structured films does not necessarily deny the artistic value of unstructured films. Many of the movies that experimental and underground filmmakers produce do communicate effectively on a purely subjective, intuitive, or sensual plane and are meaningful to some degree as experiences. But because these films are not structured or unified around a central purpose or theme, they cannot be successfully approached through analysis.

It would be foolish to suggest that a structured film cannot be appreciated or understood at all without analysis. If a film is effective, we should possess an intuitive grasp of its overall meaning. The problem is that this intuitive grasp is generally weak and vague; it limits our critical response to hazy generalizations and half-formed opinions. The analytical approach allows us to raise this intuitive grasp to a conscious level, bring it into sharp focus, and thereby make more valid and definite conclusions about the film's meaning and value. The analytical approach, however, does not reduce film art to rational and manageable proportions. Analysis neither claims nor attempts to explain everything about film. The elusive, flowing stream of images will always escape complete analysis and complete understanding. In fact, no final answers exist about any work of art. A film, like anything else of true aesthetic value, can never be entirely captured by analysis.

But the fact that there are no final answers should not prevent us from pursuing some important questions. Our hope is that, through analysis, we can reach a higher level of understanding about films, a level where we are reflecting on the most significant aspects of the film art as opposed to the merely mundane, the practical, and the technical. Film analysis enables us to understand some elements habitually, thus freeing our minds to concentrate on the most significant questions.

Analysis helps us to lock an experience in our minds so that we may savor it in memory. By looking at a film analytically, we engage ourselves with it intellectually and creatively and thus make it more truly our own. Furthermore, because our critical judgments enter into the process, analysis should fine-tune our tastes. A mediocre film can impress us more than it should at first, but we might like it less after analyzing it. A great film or a very good one will stand up under analysis; our admiration for it will increase the more deeply we look into it.

Film analysis, then, offers several clear benefits. It allows us to reach valid conclusions on a movie's meaning and value; it helps us to capture the experience of a film in our minds; and it sharpens our critical judgments overall. But the ultimate purpose of analysis, and its greatest benefit, is that it opens up new channels of awareness and new depths of understanding. It seems logical to assume that the more understanding we have, the more completely we will appreciate art. If the love we have for an art form rests on rational understanding, it will be more solid, more enduring, and of greater value than love based solely on irrational and totally subjective reactions. This is not to claim that analysis will create a love of films where no such love exists. Love of movies does not emerge from a book or from any special critical approach. It comes only from that secret, personal union between film and viewer in a darkened room. If that love does not already exist for the viewer, this book and its analytical approach can do little to create it.

But if we truly love films, we will find that analysis is worth the effort, for the understanding it brings will deepen our appreciation. Instead of canceling out the emotional experience of watching the movie, analysis will enhance and enrich that experience. As we become more perceptive and look more deeply into the film, new levels of emotional experience will emerge.

BECOMING A RECEPTIVE VIEWER

Before we begin our analysis, we need to consider obstacles to objectivity and maximum enjoyment that we create through our prejudices and misconceptions and by the particular circumstances in which we watch the film. Each of us reacts in a unique and complex way to internal and external forces that are beyond the filmmaker's control. Although these forces lie outside the film itself, they can have an effect on how we experience a film. Awareness of these forces should help us overcome them or at least minimize their effect.

One of the most difficult prejudices to overcome is that which leads us to dismiss certain categories of films. Although it is natural to prefer some types to others, most of us can appreciate or enjoy aspects of almost any film. We should keep in mind that not all films will fit our preconceived notions. For example, a person who dislikes gangster movies might stay away from *Bonnie and Clyde;* another, who dislikes musicals, might shun *Chicago*, and a third, who dislikes fantasy movies, might ignore *The Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King* (Figure 1.3). All would lose a memorable film experience, for those three films are more than simple formula pieces.

Others may reject worthwhile movies because of their unwillingness to venture beyond the norm. Some may stay away from black-and-white films, always preferring color. Others may shun foreign-language films because they dislike reading subtitles or because they are bothered by dubbing that is not perfectly synchronized with mouth movement.

Also narrow in their outlook are filmgoers who have inflexible preconceptions about what movies are supposed to be. This type of categorical rejection may be illustrated by two extreme examples. At one end of the spectrum are filmgoers who say, "I just want to be entertained," and are offended by a film that is grim and depressing. At the other end are viewers, equally limited in their outlook, who expect every film to make a profound artistic statement about the human condition and who are disappointed if a film is *not* grim and depressing. Closely related are those who set up their own criteria for what makes a good film and reject movies that operate under different rules. Viewers who demand to comprehend all the plot details by the film's end would reject, for example, Christopher Nolan's *Memento*, which deliberately requires multiple viewings. Moviegoers who insist that a film hold them in a tight grip may dismiss Stanley Kubrick's *2001: A Space Odyssey* for its slow-moving segments. Excellent films may be discounted because the characters are not sympathetic or the action is not realistic. We must avoid these kinds of misconceptions and instead try to be open to the film's goals and meanings.

FIGURE 1.3 Suspending Our Disbelief To enjoy movies such as *Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King,* we must undergo the memorable experience of challenging our preconceived notions of reality—or, as the Romantic poet Samuel Taylor Coleridge suggested, "suspend our sense of disbelief" in narratives that break the natural, logical rules of everyday existence.

Almost as detrimental as categorical rejection is the blindness caused by over-responding to individual elements rather than to the film as a whole. An example of this prejudice is offered by viewers who are infected with a near-fatal case of actor worship or antipathy: "I just love all Russell Crowe pictures!" or "I can't stand Julia Roberts movies!" Such extreme reactions are certainly common among viewers who refuse to see the actor as subordinate to the film.

Less radical illustrations of this blindness include over-response to certain film elements. The two ingredients most likely to cause this kind of reaction are sex and violence. Certainly, some filmmakers exploit these ingredients and emphasize them to the point of the ridiculous, but this is not always the case. Films sometimes demand the use of nudity or violence to present honestly the story they have to tell. Thus, a perceptive filmgoer does not condemn the use of sex or violence per se, without considering the film as a whole, and neither does he or she reject or praise a movie simply because of its treatment of sex or violence. For example, many would argue that the violent ending of *Bonnie and Clyde* does not, by itself, determine the overall quality of that film. And works as diverse as *Boys Don't Cry* and *Mrs. Henderson Presents* actually require some emphasis on sexual encounters to tell their stories. Recently, the popular film reviewer Roger Ebert, in responding to an objection by one of his readers about the sexual scenes in Paul Schrader's *Auto Focus*, repeated what Ebert has often identified as one of his favorite and most telling critical observations: "a crucial rule for anyone seriously interested in movies: It's not *what* the movie is about that makes it good or bad, but *how* it is about it." Even if viewers reject this suggestion about the supremacy of style or "form," they also must surely not insist that subject matter or "content" is always most significant.

Another subjective factor that influences film evaluation is expecting too much from a movie, whether it has won awards, critical acclaim, or great reviews from our friends. Expectations may also run too high if we are particularly fond of a novel that is later adapted to film. When our expectations are too high, a film can't possibly measure up, and our disappointment clouds a work that we would otherwise have liked immensely.

THE FILM-VIEWING ENVIRONMENT

Many movie lovers argue that ideally we should view any film in what they call its "proper" environment: a comfortable and attractive theater, preferably one with modern stadium seating and the highest quality projection and audio equipment. There, these advocates further claim, we may not only consume films in their state-of-the-art glory, but we can also participate in one of the primary social rituals of modern life: watching movies with others in a public setting (Figure 1.4). In fact, our theater-going experiences are often much less than perfect. Noisy patrons chat and argue over and about the film's dialogue, rattling their popcorn bags and candy wrappers; often, they not only allow cell phones to ring repeatedly, but then talk loudly into them. Certainly, in a well-equipped theater, sound and image wash over you, immerse you, massage you. You need not direct your attention. Seeing a movie in a good theater is like diving into heavy surf with the tide coming in; seeing a movie on a standard television screen is like taking a sponge bath out of a gallon pail. As actor Richard Dreyfuss describes it:

> [F]ilm has a power over us. When we sit in a darkened room and symbolically hold hands with one another and say, "Give me this experience"—we are investing religiosity to that experience . . . we will be swept up with it. . . . But if it's on TV, who cares? Because TV has no impact, it is simply part of the furniture sitting next to the potted palm or the refrigerator. It has no impact on a primal level.[4]

Still, even as attendance at movie theaters continues to grow (although probably never again to the numbers during the glory days of American film in the late 1940s), more and more of us most frequently view films in our own homes via the domestic magic of modern technologies. Increasingly, we have larger and sharper television screens—some of them wondrously flat and lightweight, constructed of LCD and plasma panels. The wealthiest movie watchers, of course, may also be able to afford spacious, elaborate, and elegantly appointed home theaters. But even those viewers must be aware that the home film-watching experience still differs radically from that in the multiplexes—in both negative and positive ways.

Most of the negative aspects of home viewing center upon the quality of the sight and sound delivery systems. First, consider the simple factor of size. An image approximately twenty feet high on the average movie screen is reduced to a maximum height of about two feet on the typical home TV. Becoming physically involved in the action of a narrative as we would in a theater is

FIGURE 1.4 Sharing Happiness With Others in the Dark Here, in a scene from one of Woody Allen's most popular films, *Annie Hall*, the title character (Diane Keaton) and her boyfriend (Woody Allen) wait in a cinema queue. While impatiently discussing their own relationship, they interact with other offbeat moviegoers, who provide laughs and groans in equal measure for this film's "mirror" audience.

nearly impossible at home. For example, a theater viewer who is susceptible to motion sickness may get a little queasy during the racing scenes in *Seabiscuit* or the Quidditch matches in the Harry Potter movies. But the same visceral sensation is nearly always lacking, as Richard Dreyfuss says, when we're watching that little box across the room. The events occurring on television seem remote, locked in the safety of a 27-inch (or even a 65-inch) screen. The change in size reduces the intensity of our experience and decreases our involvement (Figure 1.5).

Not only is the size of the image changed, but in many cases, the basic shape of the composition is altered as well. For instance, when a film shot in a **wide-screen** (rectangular) **format** (see Figures 4.1 and 4.2 in Chapter 4, pp. 94–95) is squeezed onto an essentially square TV screen, crucial visual information is often lost. Wide-screen formats are adapted to the standard television shape by a special editing process called **panning and scanning.** A scanning device determines when the most significant information in each frame is so far to the left or right of center as to be outside the perimeter of the narrower television picture. TV (and also video and DVD) producers then adjust accordingly by centering this peripheral information in the transmitted or re-recorded image. Of course, the cinematographer's art suffers from this process, because the visual composition is compromised when a large portion of the original image

FIGURE 1.5 Reducing Viewers' Involvement Watching such larger-than-life films as *King Kong* (2005) on a small television screen may decrease the intensity of our involvement and, hence, the quality of our total movie experience.

is sliced off each side. The process frequently introduces camera movement not intended by the film's creators, and thereby can alter significantly the visual rhythms of the film. The alternative to this cinematic mutilation—at least when the "square" TV shape is involved (vs. the newer high-definition television's [HDTV] 16 [wide] × 9 [high] aspect ratio)—is the use of black bands at the top and bottom of the screen. This feature irritates many viewers and, ironically, makes some believe that they are being cheated of the whole original image.

Throughout its brief history, the videocassette (whose use is now in rapid decline) seldom presented wide-screen films in their original format, and, even now, among television cable channels, few except Turner Classic Movies adamantly present films in what is called their "theatrical release aspect ratio." Initially, the advent of the DVD format brought great hopefulness to enthusiasts of watching wide-screen films at home. Often, in fact, the enormous storage space on DVDs allowed producers to satisfy everyone by offering both the wide-screen and the pan and scan version on opposite sides of the same disc. More recently, however, large-volume video rental and sales companies such as Blockbuster have reportedly convinced producers to release more of their films exclusively in the "standard," "full-screen" version, fearing that their customers will be too naïve to understand the beauty *and* practicality of widescreen films.

Television viewing of films has traditionally compromised sound even more than image. A modern movie theater equipped with multiple speakers can surround viewers with sound, immersing them in an encompassing aural environment. In the *Jurassic Park* movies, for instance, the rumble of a dinosaur passing back and forth in a landscape moves all over the theater as the sound dramatically increases and decreases in volume and shifts from place to place. Historically, most common television sets, even the largest ones, have had inadequate speakers by comparison, and many didn't even have tone controls. However, electronics manufacturers have been vastly improving sound quality, and so-called "home theater sound systems" have become commercially successful during the past few years.

Thus, seeing (and hearing) movies at home, though still not "ideal" for many of us, may rapidly be gaining desirability. The sales momentum of the DVD player since the device's first wide availability in the fall of 2001 has greatly outperformed even that of the audio compact disc. Its potential for swiftly increasing our "cineliteracy" surpasses even that of the so-called "video revolution" with the advent of the videocassette in the late 1970s. DVDs are beginning to re-educate film viewers about the art form's possibilities. Director David Cronenberg (*Spider* [2003], *eXistenZ*, *Crash* [1996], *The Fly* [1986], *A History of Violence*) has expressed well what many filmmakers and fans now feel:

> I love, love, love DVDs, and I pushed for them years ago when people were dubious. The first thing for a filmmaker is always picture quality and sound quality; those to me are the real reason that you want a DVD. . . . You have to understand, when I was a kid, you had to see the movie when it came to the theater, and that was it. This was before televison and before movies were shown on television. There was a time when Hollywood wouldn't even allow a television set to be shown in a movie, they were so afraid of it. So the idea that you could possess a movie like a book on your bookshelf, that you could take it out and look at favorite scenes, is fantastic. Now you can have a genuinely cinematic experience at home and have it in your control. I must confess I watch more movies at home on DVD than I do in the theater. . . . I don't think a filmmaker can afford to be afraid of technology. . . . [I]t's really an extension of our bodies and our minds into the universe which then comes back to change us.[5]

The editors at *IFCRant* (a publication of the Independent Film Channel) agree: DVDs "allow film aficionados a chance to get better insight into the people who brought the film to life" and also "the . . . format encourages other forms of expression beyond just the release title. . . . [W]ho knows what crazy things people might start making in the form of supplementary material for these

DVDs."[6] And Peter M. Nichols has begun to answer, in summary form, this implied question:

> As the DVD audience broadens, so does appreciation of the disc's extra features. Consumer studies by the DVD Entertainment Group, a trade association, rank improved picture and sound as DVD's most valued attributes. Extra scenes, outtakes and especially bloopers (always a favorite with fans) and behind-the-scenes looks at movies being made also score highly.
>
> Even the most time-consuming of extras, the movie-length director's commentary, is proving popular enough to encourage reams of filmmakers' reflection in special editions of newer films and increasingly with simpler releases of older ones. The casual viewer may feel no compulsion to dive into this material, but it is there and often well worth a look.[7]

This book attempts to encourage the reader to explore the frequently rich elements of data contained in DVDs beyond these entertainments and routine audio commentaries. At the ends of Chapters 3 through 15 in this edition of *The Art of Watching Films*, we have provided a feature called "DVD Filmmaking Extras," which is a kind of road map for digitally augmenting the various topics discussed.

PREPARING TO SEE A FILM

How much should we know about a film before we see it? There is no simple answer to this question. Often we have little control over how much we know about a movie before we see it. Sometimes it is pleasurable (if now almost impossible) to enter a theater without one bit of information about what we are going to watch. Then we can see it free from others' opinions and judge it purely on its own merits. But given the increased price of movies, few of us can afford this freedom. We find other ways to gauge our interest in seeing the newest films. In any case, a few general guidelines on how to prepare for watching a film might be helpful.

An easy way to gain some knowledge about a film before seeing it is to read reviews, which usually provide factual information: film credits, running time, MPAA (Motion Picture Association of America) rating (G, PG, PG-13, R, or NC-17), a summary of the subject matter and plot. Most reviews also mention the elements in the film that are significant and worthy of attention. They may help us place the film in context by relating it to similar films by other directors or to other films by the same director or production team. The review may analyze the film, breaking it into its parts and examining the nature, proportions, function, and interrelationship of these parts. Although most newspaper and magazine reviews are written quickly against deadlines, they almost always include some kind of value judgment, some negative or positive opinions of the film's overall worth (Figure 1.6).

FIGURE 1.6 Reading Movie Reviews When we consult movie reviews before watching a film new to us, we are almost always vulnerable to the kinds of value judgments they offer, whether negative or positive. Such critical opinions of the film *Munich,* for example, influenced many viewers about the overall quality of the fact-based work.

In those cases where we do consult the opinions of reviewers before we head out to the multiplex, we should remember not to place too much faith in any one notice, unless we are already familiar with the tastes and biases of its author. Better, we might choose to read several reviewers' work, preferably published in sources that we know represent a variety of philosophical bents.

Indeed, when reading reviews, we must remember that criticism—journalistic, academic, or otherwise—is a highly subjective process. If we take any single review or even a series of reviews too seriously before seeing a film, we will restrict our ability to judge the work independently. Also, if we rely too much on the reviews, we may completely lose faith in our own judgment and end up in a tug-of-war between critical opinions.

Reviews, of course, are not the only source of information and attitudes about films. The enormous amount of publicity generated for almost every movie (both by producers and studios and also, frequently, the media outlets owned by conglomerates that also own the studios) can influence our reactions. Ubiquitous television talk shows continuously feature interviews with actors and directors of recently released films. A great deal of important information can also be picked up from the grapevine, the word-of-mouth reviews by friends who have seen the movie (Figure 1.7). And now most moviegoers also have the vast cinema resources of the World Wide Web at their immediate command. Two indispensable sites are the Internet Movie Database (*www.imdb.com*) and Rotten Tomatoes (*www.rottentomatoes.com*). The latter's idiosyncratic name and

FIGURE 1.7 Succeeding by Word of Mouth Sometimes, filmmakers with very modest expectations for their movie's commercial success discover an enormous audience for their work via the grapevine: oral recommendations by friends and relatives who have seen and enjoyed the movie. In this manner, *March of the Penguins*, an independent film produced on a miniscule budget, became one of the greatest box office successes in the history of motion pictures.

the gossipy tone of the former's very visible daily news entries may at first repel some readers. Nevertheless, film students should perhaps begin their "cine-literacy" journey with *The Art of Watching Films* by visiting each site at length, becoming familiar with the multipaged insights and delight available there, including everything from movie facts and still photos to preview clips that we can download and view.

DEEPENING OUR RESPONSES TO FILMS

As students of film, once we have gathered facts, decided what movies to see, and attempted to clear our minds of preconceptions, then what? We should begin to deepen our perceptions.

After watching a film, we naturally start to think about our reactions to it. Sometimes, though, we hesitate to speak with others about our experience. Typically, we want to deal with our personal, emotional responses first, perhaps silently, perhaps while we "savor the moment" during the movie's end credits or even throughout the ride home. At other times, we are compelled immediately to speak out loudly with friends or family members who have accompanied us on our cinematic journey, sharing their joy or misery, or arguing not only about the work's emotional landscape, but also about its logical sharpness or stupidity. If the film has indeed encouraged any cerebral responses, we may especially desire to record our reactions in written form, all the better to understand our experience. Now, as we turn directly to the analytical approach to film viewing, consider keeping a movie journal. Record what movies you see and, quite literally, what you see in them. Take note of both the emotional and the intellectual levels of your watching. Ask yourself questions about every aspect of the film, and let these questions lead you to other, more complex ones in your continuing to read this book. As you progress, stop to consider the questions for analysis that accompany each of the following chapters.

ANALYZING YOUR RESPONSES TO A FILM

1. Do you have any strong prejudices against this particular type of film? If so, how did these prejudices affect your responses to the film? Does this film have any special qualities that set it apart from other films of the same type?
2. How much do your personal and highly subjective responses to the following aspects of the film affect your judgment: actors in the film, treatment of sexual material, and scenes involving violence? Can you justify the sex and violence in the film aesthetically, or are these scenes included strictly to increase box-office appeal?
3. What were your expectations before seeing the film? How did these expectations influence your reaction to the film?
4. Was your mood, mental attitude, or physical condition while seeing the movie less than ideal? If so, how was your reaction to the film affected?
5. If the physical environment in which you watched the film was less than ideal, how did this fact influence your perception?
6. If you watched the movie on a TV screen, in which scenes do you feel you lacked the intensity of involvement needed to enjoy the film most completely? In which scenes does the small-screen format work?
7. If you read reviews or scholarly essays before your viewing, what observations or opinions caught your interest? What is your own opinion after having seen the movie?

2

THEMATIC ELEMENTS

Movies are about things—even bad movies are about things. Rambo III *is about something. It has a theme, even if it doesn't want to have a theme. . . . You have to know in some way what you are about to do. Even if that theme gets rerouted or ends up in subtext, somehow there has to be some sense of why you are doing this.*

——PAUL SCHRADER, DIRECTOR AND SCREENWRITER

THEME AND FOCUS

In the context of novels, plays, and poetry, the word *theme* connotes an idea—the central idea, the point, the message, or the statement made by the work as a whole. For film analysis, however, that definition of theme is too narrow. The theme of a film is not necessarily an idea at all.

In the context of film analysis, **theme** refers to the unifying central concern of the film, the special focus that unifies the work. As the director Sidney Lumet has observed,

> What the movie is about will determine how it will be cast, how it will look, how it will be edited, how it will be musically scored, how it will be mixed, how the titles will look, and, with a good studio, how it will be released. What it's about will determine how it is to be made.[1]

A filmmaker may choose to focus on ideas but is just as likely to emphasize one of the four other major elements: 1) plot (2) emotional effect or mood, (3) character, and (4) style or texture. All five elements are present in *all* films; but in any given film, one is predominant. Keeping in mind this broader concept of theme will help us to analyze films ranging from *Capote* to *The Producers* (2005) or from *Sin City* to *The New World*.

Focus on Plot

In adventure stories and detective stories, the filmmaker focuses on plot—on what happens. The aim of such films is generally to provide escape from the boredom and drabness of everyday life, so the action is exciting and fast paced. Characters, ideas, and emotional effects are subordinate to events, and the final outcome is all-important. Events and the final outcome, however, are important only within the context of the specific story being told; they have little real significance. The theme of such a film can best be captured in a concise summary of the plot (Figure 2.1).

Focus on Emotional Effect or Mood

In a relatively large number of films, the director creates a highly specialized mood or emotional effect. In such films, it is possible to identify a single mood or emotion that prevails throughout the film or to view each segment of the film as a step leading to a single powerful emotional effect. Although plot may be very important in such a movie, events are subordinate to the emotional response they produce. Most horror films, the Alfred Hitchcock suspense thrillers, and romantic tone poems such as *A Man and a Woman* can be interpreted as having a mood or emotional effect as their primary focus and unifying element.

FIGURE 2.1 Focus on Plot *Gladiator*, *Spider-Man*, and *Hidalgo* (2004) are fast-paced action films that focus on what happens.

The theme of such films can best be stated by identifying the prevailing mood or emotional effect that the filmmaker has created (Figure 2.2).

In some films, a balanced combination of two emotions may make it difficult to tell which emotion is dominant. *The Squid and the Whale*, for example,

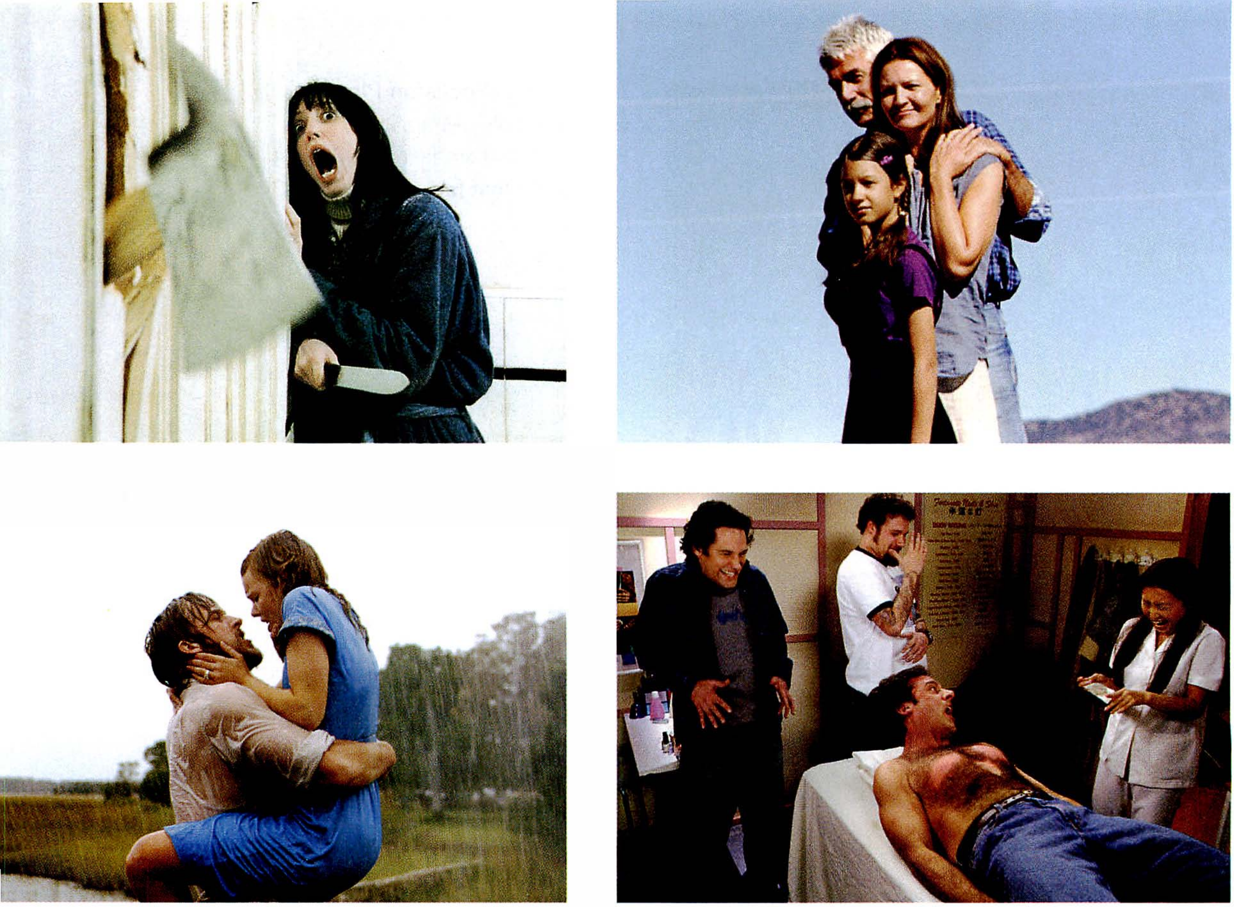


FIGURE 2.2 **Focus on Emotional Effect or Mood** A wide variety of emotional effects or moods can serve as a thematic concern in modern films. There are movies to scare us, like *The Shining* (top left), movies to make us cry, like *Off the Map* (top right), movies to make us laugh, like *The 40-Year-Old Virgin* (bottom right), and movies to make us feel romantic, like *The Notebook* (bottom left).

might be classified as a comedy/drama, *The Ice Harvest* as a comedy/horror film. An analysis of such films needs to consider the elements that contribute to each effect and the way the two prevalent emotions play off each other (Figure 2.3).

Focus on Character

Some films, through both action and dialogue, focus on the clear delineation of a single unique character. Although plot is important in such films, what happens is important primarily because it helps us understand the character being developed. The major appeal of these characters lies in the qualities that

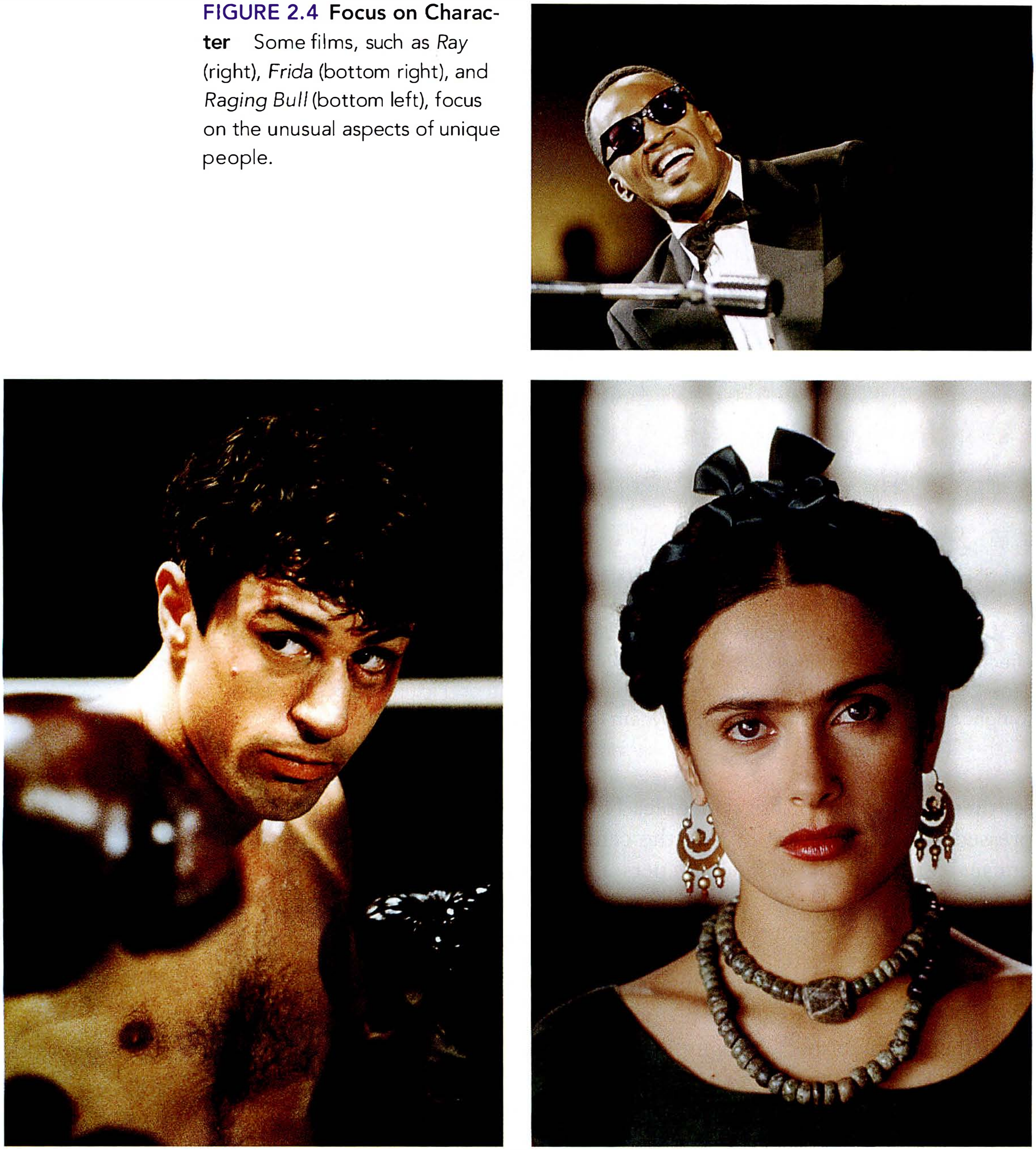
FIGURE 2.3 Mixed Emotions Some films do not focus on building a single emotional effect but instead blend two different emotions in the same story, as does *The Royal Tenenbaums*, with its idiosyncratic blend of comedy and pathos. Pictured here from left to right are Ben Stiller, Danny Glover, Gwyneth Paltrow, and Angelica Huston.

set them apart from ordinary people. The theme of such films can best be expressed in a brief description of the central character, with emphasis on the unusual aspects of the individual's personality (Figure 2.4).

Focus on Style or Texture or Structure

In a relatively small number of films, the director tells the story in such a different way that the film's style or texture or structure becomes its dominant and most memorable aspect, making a stronger impact on our minds and senses than any of the other thematic elements. Such films have a quality that sets them apart—a unique look, feel, rhythm, atmosphere, tone, or organization that echoes in our minds and senses long after we leave the theater. The unique style, texture, or shape permeates the film (not just isolated segments), and all the cinematic elements are woven together into one rich tapestry. Such films are often not commercially successful because the mass audience may not be prepared for or comfortable with the unique viewing experience that they provide (Figure 2.5).

FIGURE 2.4 Focus on Character Some films, such as *Ray* (right), *Frida* (bottom right), and *Raging Bull* (bottom left), focus on the unusual aspects of unique people.



Focus on Ideas

In most serious films, the action and characters have a significance beyond the context of the film itself—a significance that helps to clarify some aspect of life, experience, or the human condition. The idea may be communicated directly

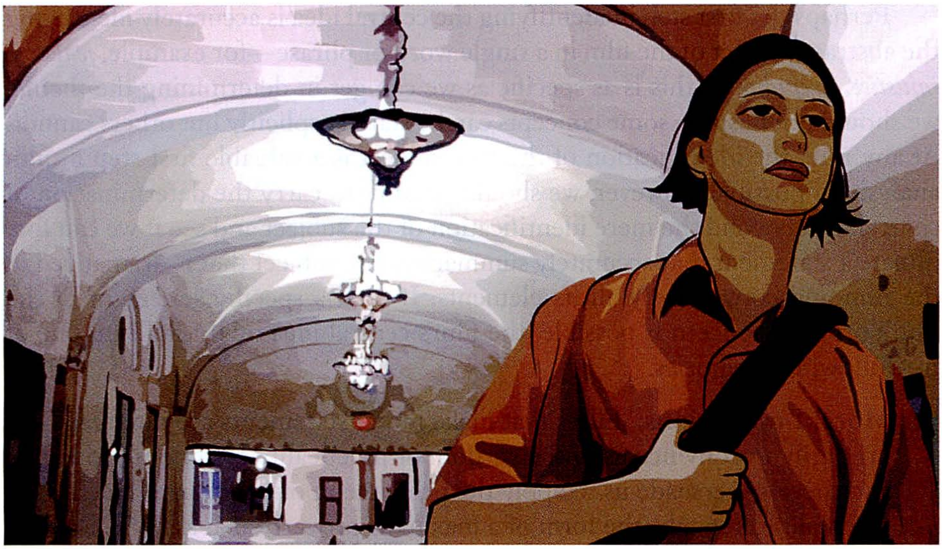


FIGURE 2.5 Focus on Style, Texture, and/or Structure Both *Memento* (top) and *Waking Life* (bottom) leave us feeling we have experienced a one-of-a-kind movie.

through a particular incident or stated by a particular character. Most often, however, the idea is presented more subtly, and we are challenged to find an interpretation that we feel best fits the film as a whole. This indirect approach increases the likelihood of varying interpretations, but varying interpretations

Phone
POLICE LINE DO NOT CROSS
POLICE LINE DO NOT CROSS
T.V. 73 DINNER
START

FIGURE 2.6 Moral Implications Such films as *Crash* (left) and *The Prize Winner of Defiance Ohio* (right) lead us to think carefully about the consequences of the moral decisions we make in our lives.

are not necessarily contradictory. They may be equally valid, complementary statements saying essentially the same things in different terms or approaching the same idea from different angles.

Perhaps the first step in identifying the central idea is accurately identifying the abstract subject of the film in a single word or phrase—for example, *jealousy*, *injustice*, *prejudice*. If this is as specific as we can get in determining the theme, we should not despair; some concepts can be stated explicitly but others cannot. At any rate, the identification of the true subject is a valuable first step in film analysis. If possible, however, we should attempt to carry the determination of central idea beyond the mere identification of the subject and see if we can formulate a statement that accurately summarizes the subject that is dramatized in the film and conveyed by all its elements. If such a specific statement of the film's primary concern is possible, the film's central idea might fall into one of the following categories.

1. **Moral Implications.** Films that make moral statements are intended primarily to convince us of the wisdom or practicality of a moral principle and thereby persuade us to apply the principle in our own lives. Such principles often take the form of a maxim or proverb such as "The love of money is the root of all evil." Although many modern films have important moral implications, very few are structured around a single moral statement, and we must be careful not to mistake a moral implication for a moral statement or judgment (Figure 2.6).
2. **The Truth of Human Nature.** Quite different from films that focus on unique characters are those that focus on universal or representative characters. The characters in such films take on significance beyond them-

FIGURE 2.7 The Truth of Human Nature Films like *Lord of the Flies* (1963) and *Deliverance* take a penetrating look at the nature of humankind when the thin veneer of civilization has been removed.

selves and the context of the particular film in which they appear. These characters are representative of humanity in general, and they serve as cinematic vehicles to illustrate some widely or universally acceptable truth about human nature (Figure 2.7).

3. **Social Problems.** Modern filmmakers are very concerned with social problems and show their concern in films that expose social vices and follies or criticize social institutions. Although the underlying purpose of such films is social reform, they rarely spell out specific methods of reform; usually they concentrate instead on defining the problem and emphasizing its importance. A social problem film may treat its subject in a light, satirical, or comic manner, or it may attack the subject in a savage, harsh, and brutal manner. The social problem film, unlike the human nature film, concerns itself not with criticism of the human race in general or with the universal aspects of human nature but with the special functions of human beings as social animals and with the social institutions and traditions they have created (Figure 2.8).
4. **The Struggle for Human Dignity.** Many serious films portray a basic conflict or tension between two opposing sides of human nature. One is the desire to surrender to animal instincts and wallow in the slime of human weakness, cowardice, brutality, stupidity, and sensuality. The other is the struggle to stand erect, to display courage, sensitivity, intelligence, a spiritual and moral sense, and strong individualism. This conflict is best shown when the central characters are placed in a position of disadvantage,

FIGURE 2.8 Social Problem Films Films like *Do the Right Thing* (racial prejudice), *Dead Man Walking* (capital punishment), and *Vera Drake* (abortion) force us to examine current social problems.

FIGURE 2.9 The Struggle for Human Dignity In *The Insider,* a network television producer (Al Pacino) struggles to protect the sense of identity and dignity of a former tobacco company executive (Russell Crowe) who is his journalistic source.

having been dealt a bad hand in some way, so that they must play against tremendous odds. The conflict may be external, with the character struggling against some dehumanizing force, system, institution, or attitude. Or the conflict may be internal, with the character struggling for dignity against the human weaknesses present in his or her own personality (Figure 2.9).

A triumphant victory is sometimes, but certainly not always, achieved. However, the struggle itself gives us some respect for the character, win or lose. Boxers are often treated in films with the dignity theme. In *On the Waterfront*, Terry Malloy (Marlon Brando) achieves his dignity by leading the dock workers to rebel against a corrupt union, but Malloy's summary of his boxing career echoes clearly his personal struggle: "I could'a had class . . . I could'a been a contender . . . I could'a been *somebody!* . . . Instead of just a bum, which is what I am." Sylvester Stallone takes the character of Terry Malloy and gives him the chance to be "somebody" in each film of the *Rocky* series. In *Requiem for a Heavyweight*, over-the-hill fighter Mountain Rivera (Anthony Quinn) fails to achieve dignity but wins respect for his effort. Recently, protagonists in two popular boxing

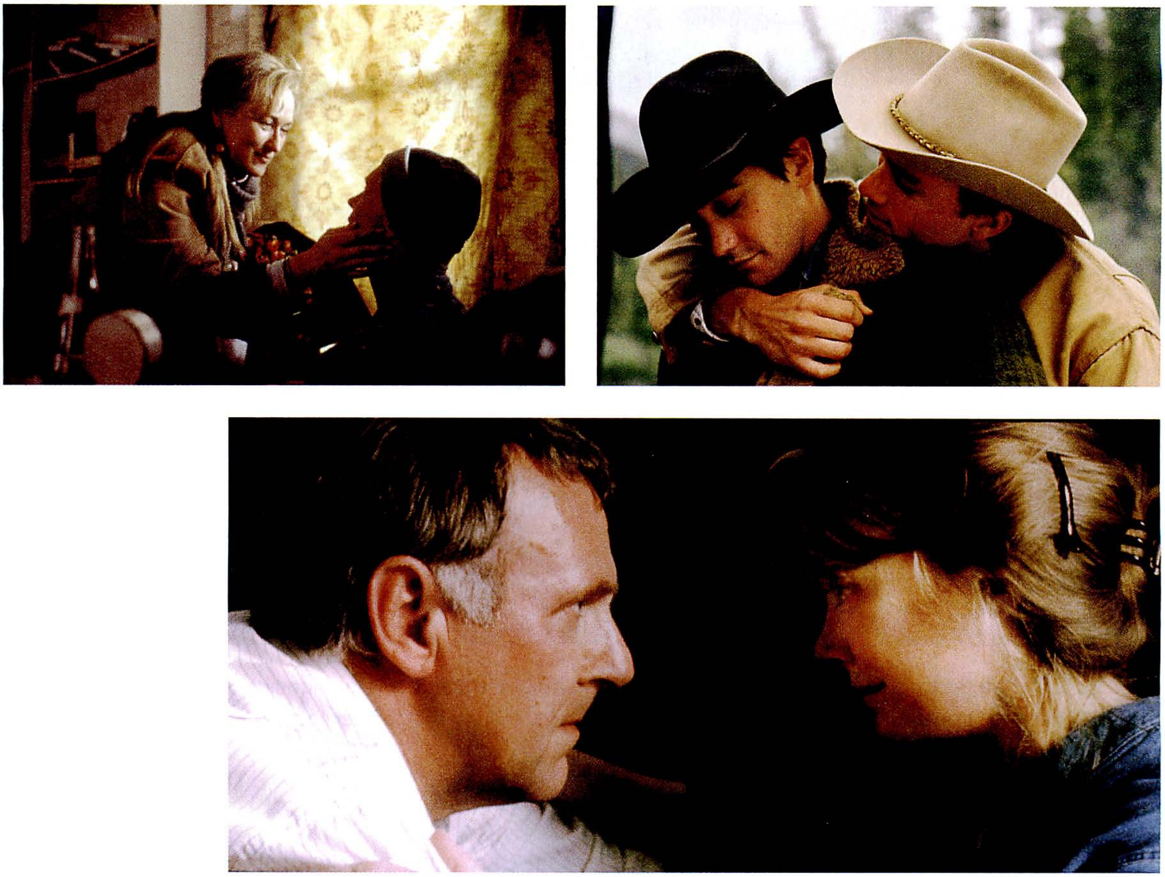


FIGURE 2.10 The Complexity of Human Relationships Meryl Streep, in *The Hours,* attempts to comfort her former lover (Ed Harris) who is dying of AIDS (top left). Heath Ledger and Jake Gyllenhaal play illicit lovers who lose all for love in *Brokeback Mountain* (top right). Tom Wilkinson and Sissy Spacek, as the parents in *In the Bedroom,* confront their separate and mutual grief after the violent death of their young son (bottom).

narratives—Hilary Swank in *Million Dollar Baby* and Russell Crowe in *Cinderella Man*—have constituted studies in this theme.

5. **The Complexity of Human Relationships.** Some films focus on the problems, frustrations, pleasures, and joys of human relationships: love, friendship, marriage, divorce, family interactions, sexuality, and so on (Figure 2.10). Some show the gradual working out of a problem; others help us gain insight into a problem without providing any clear resolution. Although a great many films of this sort deal with universal problems in the relationships between men and women, we must also be on the lookout for unusual treatments such as *Midnight Cowboy* (a "love" story about two men).

FIGURE 2.11 **Coming of Age** In movies like *American Graffiti* (left) and *Undertow* (right), young people go through experiences that cause them to become more aware or more mature.

6. **Coming of Age/Loss of Innocence/Growing Awareness.** The major character or characters in such films are usually, but not always, young people going through experiences that force them to become more mature or to gain some new awareness of themselves in relation to the world around them. Such concepts can be treated comically, seriously, tragically, or satirically. The central character of these films is always dynamic—that is, different in some way at the end of the film from what he or she was at the beginning. The changes that occur may be subtle internal changes or drastic changes that significantly alter the character's outward behavior or lifestyle (Figures 2.11, 2.12).
7. **A Moral or Philosophical Riddle.** Sometimes a filmmaker may purposely strive to evoke a variety of subjective interpretations by developing a film around a riddle or puzzling quality. The filmmaker attempts to suggest or mystify instead of communicating clearly and attempts to pose moral or philosophical questions rather than provide answers. The typical reaction to such films is "What's it all about?" This type of film communicates primarily through symbols or images, so a thorough analysis of these elements will be required for interpretation. After even the most perceptive analysis, a degree of uncertainty will remain. Such films are wide open to subjective interpretation. But the fact that subjective interpretation is required does not mean that the analysis of all film elements can be ignored. Individual interpretation should be supported by an examination of all elements (Figure 2.13).

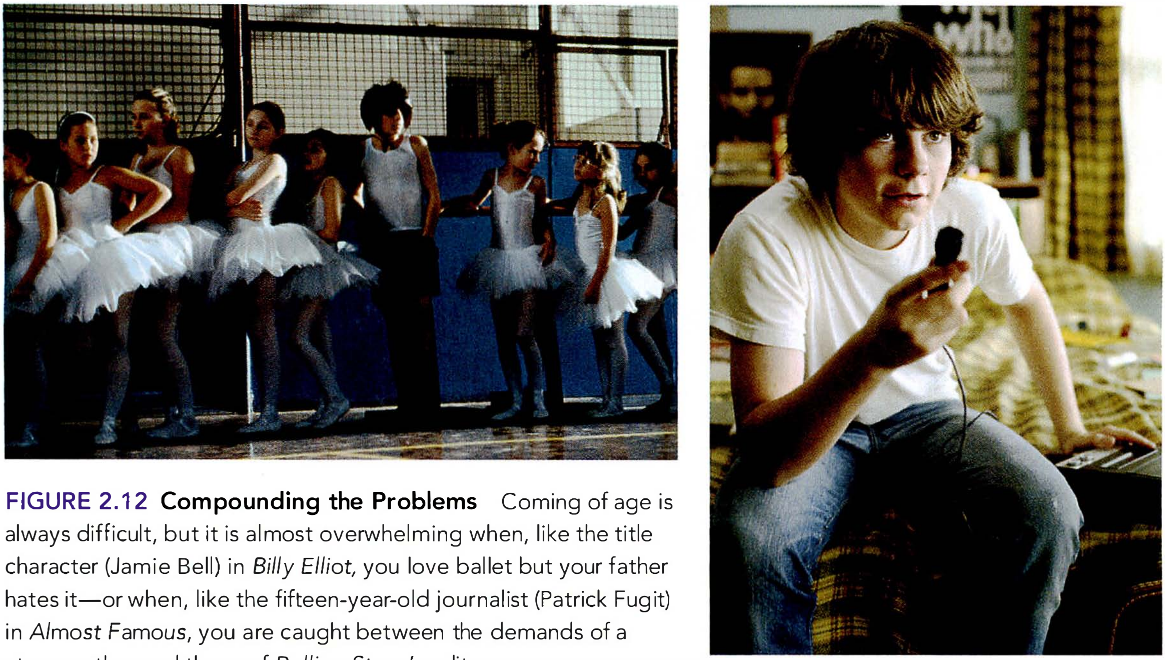


FIGURE 2.12 Compounding the Problems Coming of age is always difficult, but it is almost overwhelming when, like the title character (Jamie Bell) in *Billy Elliot,* you love ballet but your father hates it—or when, like the fifteen-year-old journalist (Patrick Fugit) in *Almost Famous,* you are caught between the demands of a stern mother and those of *Rolling Stone*'s editors.

IDENTIFYING THE THEME

Identifying the theme of a film is often difficult. The theme is not likely to reveal itself in a flash of light midway through the screening. Although simply watching a film may give us a vague, intuitive grasp of its basic meaning, accurately stating the theme is quite another matter. Sometimes we cannot do so until we leave the theater and begin thinking about or discussing the film. Frequently, just describing the movie to someone who has not seen it will provide an important clue to the theme, because we tend to describe first the things that make the strongest impression on us.

Identifying the theme can be considered both the beginning and the end of film analysis. After seeing a film, we should make a tentative identification of its theme to provide a starting point for close analysis. The analysis itself should clarify our vision of the film and show all its elements functioning together as a unique whole. However, if our analysis of the individual thematic elements does not support our original view of the film's theme, we should be prepared to reconsider our opinion in light of the new direction that our analysis indicates.

Plot, emotional effect or mood, character, style or texture or structure, and ideas are the central concerns of most films. There are exceptions, however—

FIGURE 2.13 A Moral or Philosophical Riddle In *Persona* (top left), *Fight Club* (top right), and *Being John Malkovich* (bottom), directors Ingmar Bergman, David Fincher, and Spike Jonze suggest multiple meanings that mystify us.

films that do not focus exclusively on any one element and films that focus on more than one. In our efforts to identify theme, we must also be aware that certain films may possess, in addition to the single unifying central concern that we define as *theme*, other, less important, areas of emphasis called **motifs.** These are images, patterns, or ideas that are repeated throughout the film and are variations or aspects of the major theme. Above all, we should remember that the statement of the theme cannot convey the full impact of the film itself. It merely clarifies our vision of the film as a unified work and enhances our appreciation of its thematic elements as they function together in a unique artistic whole.

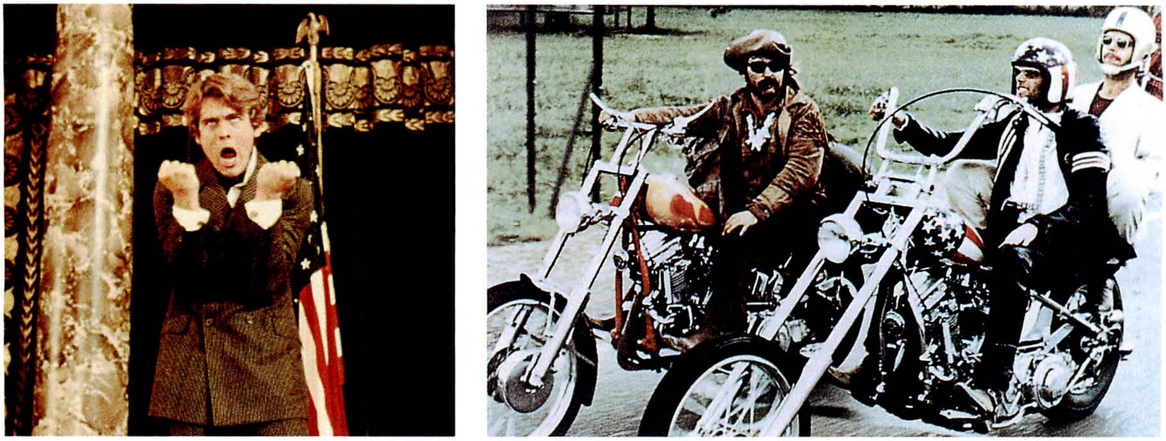


FIGURE 2.14 **Themes Limited in Time and Place** *Wild in the Streets* (left) and *Easy Rider* (right) dealt with problems and issues that seemed very relevant in the late 1960s and early 1970s, but many of their concerns may seem old-fashioned today.

EVALUATING THE THEME

Once we have identified the theme, it is important to make some kind of evaluation of it, especially in a serious film that attempts to do more than simply entertain. For the most part, theme evaluation is a subjective process, and any attempt to provide systematic guidelines for making this kind of value judgment would be prejudicial. A few generalizations, however, are permissible.

One standard commonly applied in theme evaluation is **universality.** A universal theme is one of lasting interest, one that is meaningful not just to people here and now but to all human beings in all ages. Therefore, a theme with universal appeal may be considered superior to one with an appeal strictly limited in time and place. Four social problem films illustrate this point. Those strictly limited in time and place like *Wild in the Streets* (the generation gap of the 1960s) and *Easy Rider* (a grab bag of 1960s problems) had a powerful impact on young film audiences when they were released but seem dated today (Figure 2.14). However, *On the Waterfront* (union corruption in the 1950s) and *The Grapes of Wrath* (the plight of migrant farm workers in the 1930s) speak to us in loud, clear voices today, despite their age. Migrant farm workers still have problems, and corrupt unions still exist; but those films have universal appeal because of the real and powerful characters portrayed, the heroic struggles waged for human dignity, and the artistry with which both films were made.

There is, of course, no real formula for the classic film, the kind we never grow tired of seeing. The classic film has a sense of rightness to it time and time again. Its power does not fade or diminish with the passing years but actually grows because of its universal themes and motifs. *The Grapes of Wrath* is not

FIGURE 2.15 Universal Themes Although the specific problems forced upon Rick (Humphrey Bogart) and Ilsa (Ingrid Bergman) by World War II have long since disappeared, *Casablanca* lives on because of strong universal themes that reach beyond the romantic love story at its core.

simply about migrant workers forced to leave the Oklahoma Dust Bowl in the 1930s. It is about the common man, the downtrodden, the underdog, about courageous men and women, about people who endure and constantly struggle to preserve their dignity. In the same way, *Casablanca* is more than just a story about two people losing and then finding each other in a world too chaotic for romantic dreams. It is a story about a beautiful woman and a mysterious man, about war, responsibility, courage, duty, and most of all, about doing the right thing. Such classics endure because of their strong, universal themes (Figure 2.15).

This does not mean that we place no value on themes that lack universality. Even if a theme's appeal is limited to a specific time and place, it may have some relevance to our own experience. We will naturally consider a theme that says something significant to us superior to one that does not.

We also have the right to expect that a thematic idea be intellectually or philosophically interesting. In other words, if a film attempts to make a significant statement, that statement should be neither boring nor self-evident but should interest or challenge us.

ANALYZING THEME

On Theme and Focus

What is the film's primary focus: plot, emotional effect or mood, character, style or texture or structure, or ideas? On the basis of your decision, answer one of these questions:

1. If the film's primary concern is plot, summarize the action abstractly in a single sentence or a short paragraph.
2. If the film is structured around a mood or emotional effect, describe the mood or feeling that it attempts to convey.
3. If the film's focus is on a single unique character, describe the unusual aspects of his or her personality.
4. If the film seems to be built upon a unique style or texture or structure, describe the qualities that contribute to the special look or feel of the film.
5. If the film's primary focus is an idea, answer these questions:
    a. What is the true subject of the film? What is it really about in abstract terms? Identify the abstract subject in a single word or phrase.
    b. What comment or statement does the film make about the subject? If possible, formulate a sentence that accurately summarizes the idea dramatized by the film.

On Identifying the Theme

1. Although a director may attempt to do several things with a film, one goal usually stands out as most important. Decide which of the following was the director's *primary* aim, and give reasons for your choice.
    a. providing pure entertainment—that is, temporary escape from the real world
    b. developing a pervasive mood or creating a single, specialized emotional effect
    c. providing a character sketch of a unique, fascinating personality
    d. creating a consistent, unique feel or texture by weaving all of the complex elements of film together into a one-of-a-kind film experience
    e. criticizing society and social institutions and increasing the viewer's awareness of a social problem and the need for reform

   f. providing insights into human nature (demonstrating what human beings in general are like)
   g. creating a moral or philosophical riddle for the viewer to ponder
   h. making a moral implication to influence the viewer's values or behavior
   i. dramatizing one or more characters' struggle for human dignity against tremendous odds
   j. exploring the complex problems and pleasures of human relationships
   k. providing insight into a growth experience, the special kinds of situations or conflicts that cause important changes in the character or characters involved
2. Which of the items listed in the previous question seem important enough to qualify as secondary aims?

On Evaluating the Theme

1. Is the film's basic appeal to the intellect, to the funny bone, to the moral sense, or to the aesthetic sense? Is it aimed primarily at the groin (the erotic sense), the viscera (blood and guts), the heart, the yellow streak down the back, or simply the eyes? Support your choice with specific examples from the film.
2. How well does your statement of the film's theme and focus stand up after you have thoroughly analyzed all elements of the film?
3. To what degree is the film's theme universal? Is the theme relevant to your own experience? How?
4. If you think the film makes a significant statement, why is it significant?
5. Decide whether the film's theme is intellectually or philosophically interesting, or self-evident and boring, and defend your decision.
6. Does the film have the potential to become a classic? Will people still be watching it twenty years from today? Why?

VIDEO EXERCISES

Watch the first 5 minutes of any two of the following films: *Billy Elliot*, *The Grapes of Wrath*, *Midnight Cowboy*, *Raiders of the Lost Ark*, *The Rookie*, *Shane*, *To Kill a Mockingbird*, and *The World According to Garp*. Then answer these questions.

1. From the 5-minute segments you have just seen, can you make intelligent guesses about each film's primary concern?
2. What does the music suggest about the emotional quality of each film? Will the film be happy, sad, or bittersweet? Funny, serious, or a mixture of the two?
3. What do you learn about the characters introduced in the beginning? Which of the characters are point of view characters (characters with whom we identify and through whose eyes we experience the film)? Which of the characters will we end up viewing more objectively, from a distance?

FILMS FOR STUDY

Focus on Plot

Black Hawk Down (2001)
Die Another Day (2002)
The Fast and the Furious (2001)
Freaky Friday (2003)
Gladiator (2000)
The Hunt for Red October (1990)
Independence Day (1996)
Raiders of the Lost Ark (1981)
The Road Warrior (1981)
Spider-Man (2002)
Titanic (1997)

Focus on Emotional Effect or Mood

Bang the Drum Slowly (1973)
De-Lovely (2004)
The Piano (1993)
Psycho (1960)
The Silence of the Lambs (1991)
Somewhere in Time (1980)

Focus on Character

Ali (2001)
A Beautiful Mind (2001)
Capote (2005)
Cinderella Man (2005)
Coal Miner's Daughter (1980)
Crumb (1994)
Elizabeth (1998)
The Great Santini (1979)
Grizzly Man (2005)
Patton (1970)
Raging Bull (1980)
Zorba the Greek (1964)

Focus on Style, Texture, or Structure

The Age of Innocence (1993)
Brazil (1985)
Days of Heaven (1978)
The English Patient (1996)
Fargo (1996)
McCabe & Mrs. Miller (1971)
Memento (2001)
The New World (2005)
Pulp Fiction (1994)
Raising Arizona (1987)
The Saddest Music in the World (2004)
3 Women (1977)

Focus on Human Nature

Deliverance (1972)
Groundhog Day (1993)
A History of Violence (2005)
House of Sand and Fog (2003)
Lord of the Flies (1963)
Nine Lives (2005)
Requiem for a Dream (2000)
Shane (1953)

Struggle for Human Dignity

The Grapes of Wrath (1940)
Il Postino (The Postman) (1994)
The Insider (1999)
Mad Hot Ballroom (2005)
On the Waterfront (1954)
One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest (1975)
Rent (2005)
Schindler's List (1993)

Complexity of Human Relationships

In Her Shoes (2005)
The Hours (2002)
Junebug (2005)
Magnolia (1999)
Midnight Cowboy (1969)
Terms of Endearment (1983)
Three Colors: Blue (1993), *White* (1993), *Red* (1994)
The War of the Roses (1989)
When Harry Met Sally . . . (1989)
The World According to Garp (1982)

Coming of Age/Growing Awareness

About a Boy (2002)
Almost Famous (2000)
Bee Season (2005)
Billy Elliot (2000)
Empire of the Sun (1987)
Finding Nemo (2003)
Hearts in Atlantis (2001)
A Little Princess (1995)
Sixteen Candles (1984)
Summer of '42 (1971)
To Kill a Mockingbird (1962)
Winter Solstice (2005)
Y Tu Mamá También (2001)

Moral or Philosophical Riddle

Being John Malkovich (1999)
Blue Velvet (1986)
Fight Club (1999)
Northfork (2003)
Run, Lola, Run (1998)
2001: A Space Odyssey (1968)
Waking Life (2001)

Focus on Social Problems

Bully (2001)
Dead Man Walking (1995)
Falling Down (1993)
Far From Heaven (2002)
Mississippi Burning (1988)
Natural Born Killers (1994)
Norma Rae (1979)
The Rainmaker (1997)
Welcome to the Dollhouse (1996)

3

FICTIONAL *and* DRAMATIC ELEMENTS

I don't want to film a "slice of life" because people can get that at home, in the street, or even in front of the movie theater. They don't have to pay money to see a slice of life. And I avoid out-and-out fantasy because people should be able to identify with the characters. Making a film means, first of all, to tell a story. That story can be an improbable one, but it should never be banal. It must be dramatic and human. What is drama, after all, but life with the dull bits cut out?

—ALFRED HITCHCOCK, DIRECTOR

FILM ANALYSIS AND LITERARY ANALYSIS

Film has properties that set it apart from painting, sculpture, novels, and plays. It is also, in its most popular and powerful form, a storytelling medium that shares many elements with the short story and the novel. And because film presents its stories in dramatic form, it has even more in common with the stage play: Both plays and movies act out or dramatize, show rather than tell, what happens.

Unlike the novel, short story, or play, however, film is not handy to study; it cannot be effectively frozen on the printed page. The novel and short story are relatively easy to study because they are written to be read. The stage play is slightly more difficult to study because it is written to be performed. But plays are printed, and because they rely heavily on the spoken word, imaginative readers can conjure up at least a pale imitation of the experience they might have watching a performance on stage. This cannot be said of the screenplay, for a film depends greatly on visual and other nonverbal elements that are not easily expressed in writing. The screenplay requires so much filling in by our imagination that we cannot really approximate the experience of a film by reading a screenplay, and reading a screenplay is worthwhile only if we have already seen the film. Thus, most screenplays are published not to be read but rather to be remembered.

Still, film should not be ignored because studying it requires extra effort. And the fact that we do not generally read films does not mean we should ignore the principles of literary or dramatic analysis when we see a film. Literature and films do share and communicate many elements in similar ways. Perceptive film analysis rests on the principles used in literary analysis. Therefore, before we turn to the unique elements of film, we need to look into the elements that film shares with any good story.

Dividing film into its various elements for analysis is a somewhat artificial process, for the elements of any art form never exist in isolation. It is impossible, for example, to isolate plot from character: Events influence people, and people influence events; the two are always closely interwoven in any fictional, dramatic, or cinematic work. Nevertheless, the analytical method uses such a fragmenting technique for ease and convenience. But it does so with the assumption that we can study these elements in isolation without losing sight of their interdependence or their relationship to the whole.

THE ELEMENTS OF A GOOD STORY

What makes a good story? Any answer to this question is bound to be subjective; however, some general observations might be made that will apply to a large variety of film narratives.

A Good Story Is Unified in Plot

The structured film is one that has some broad underlying purpose or is unified around a central theme. Regardless of the nature of its theme—whether its focus is on plot, emotional effect, character, style or texture or structure, or idea—the fictional film generally has a plot or storyline that contributes to the development of that theme. Therefore, the plot and the events, conflicts, and characters that constitute it must be carefully selected and arranged so that their relationship to the theme is clear.

A unified plot focuses on a single thread of continuous action, where one event leads to another naturally and logically. Usually a strong cause-and-effect relationship exists between these events, and the outcome is made to seem, if not inevitable, at least probable. In a tightly unified plot, nothing can be transposed or removed without significantly affecting or altering the whole. Thus, every event grows naturally out of the plot, and the conflict must be resolved by elements or agents present in the plot itself. A unified plot does not introduce out of thin air some kind of chance, coincidental, or miraculous happening, or some powerful superhuman force that swoops down out of nowhere to save the day.

Although plot unity is a general requirement, exceptions do exist. In a film whose focus is the clear delineation of a unique character, unity of action and cause-and-effect relationships between events are not so important. In fact, such plots may be episodic (that is, composed of events that bear no direct relationship to each other), for the unity in such films emerges from the contribution each event makes to our understanding of the character being developed, rather than from the interrelationships of the events.

A Good Story Is Credible

To become fully involved in a story, we must usually be convinced that it could be true. A filmmaker can create the illusion of truth in a variety of ways.

1. **Externally Observable Truths: The way things really are.** The most obvious and common kind of truth in a film story is the approximation of life as it is. To borrow Aristotle's phrase, these are stories that "might occur and have the capability of occurring in accordance with the laws of probability or necessity." This kind of truth is based on overwhelming evidence in the world around us, so it may not always be a pleasant truth. Human beings are flawed creatures. Married couples don't always live happily ever after, and tragic accidents, serious illnesses, and great misfortunes often befall people who don't seem to deserve them. But we accept such truths because they conform to our own experience of the way life is (Figure 3.1).
2. **Internal Truths of Human Nature: The way things are supposed to be.** Another set of truths seems true because we want or need to believe

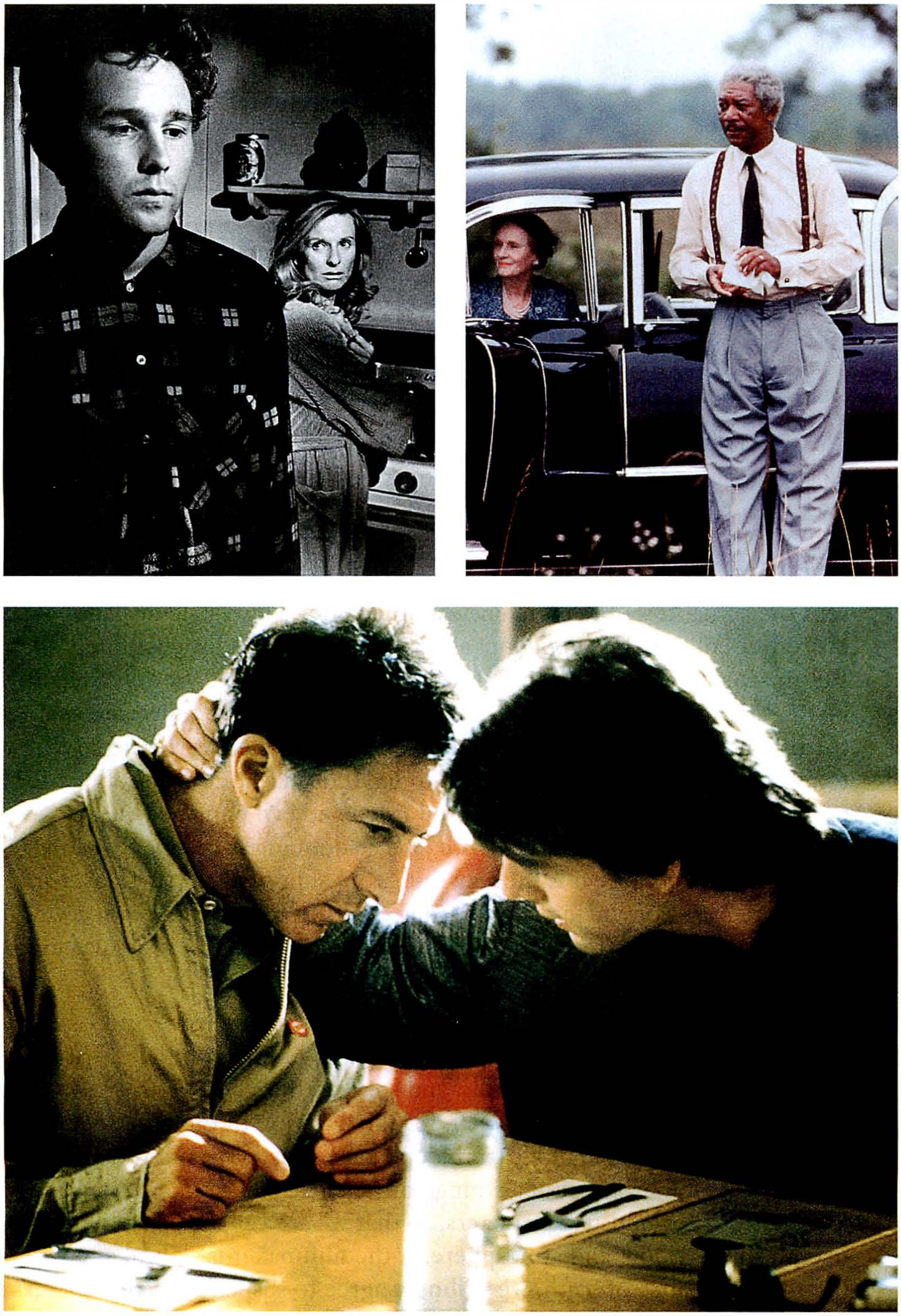


FIGURE 3.1 **The Way Things Really Are** *The Last Picture Show* (top left), *Driving Miss Daisy* (top right), and *Rain Man* (bottom) are credible because they conform to what we perceive as real-life experiences.

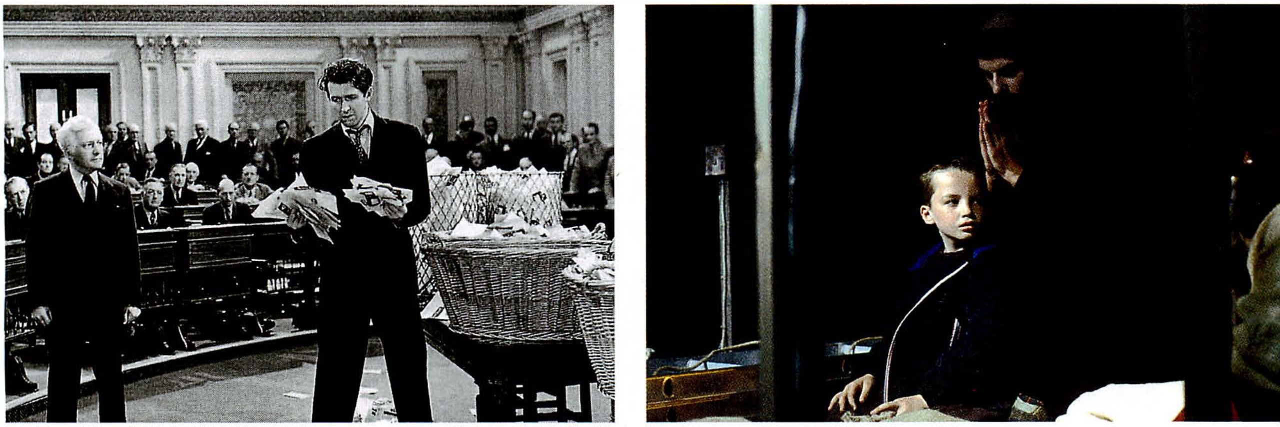


FIGURE 3.2 The Way Things Are Supposed to Be Movies such as *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington* (left) and *Millions* (right) present credible images of the world as we might like it to be.

in them. Some of the greatest film classics do not even pretend to represent the actualities of real life; instead, they offer a fairy-tale or happily-ever-after ending. The good guy always wins, and true love conquers all. But in a very special way, these stories are also believable, or at least can be made to seem so, because they contain what might be called internal truths—beliefs in things that are not really observable but that seem true to us because we want or need them to be. Indeed, the concept of poetic justice (the idea that virtue will be rewarded and evil punished) serves as an example of such an internal truth. We seldom question poetic justice in a story simply because it is the way things are supposed to be. Thus many film stories are convincing because they conform to an inner truth and satisfy a human need to believe. Of course, such truths can ring false to those who do not want or need to believe them (Figure 3.2).

3. **Artistic Semblance of Truth: The way things never were and never will be.** Filmmakers are also capable of creating a special kind of truth. With their artistry, technical skills, and special effects, they can create an imaginary world on the screen that, for the duration of the film, seems totally believable. In such films, truth depends on the early and thoroughly convincing establishment of a strange or fantastic environment, sense of another time, or unusual characters, so that we are caught up in the film's overall spirit, mood, and atmosphere. If the filmmaker is skillful at creating this semblance of truth, we willingly agree to suspend our disbelief (as Samuel Taylor Coleridge observed), and we leave our skepticism and our rational faculties behind as we enter the film's imaginary world. If the fictional reality is successfully established, we may think to ourselves, "Yes, in such a situation almost anything can happen." By communicating this per-

FIGURE 3.3 The Way Things Never Were and Never Will Be By using their special brand of artistry, filmmakers can create on the screen an imaginary world that makes us willingly accept incredible settings, characters, and events in such films as *Edward Scissorhands* (top left), *The Matrix* (top right), *War of the Worlds* (bottom right), and *Men in Black* (bottom left).

vasive and real sense of an unusual situation or environment, filmmakers in effect create a new set of ground rules by which we judge reality (Figure 3.3). And for the brief period of two hours or so, we can believe thoroughly in the truth of *Rosemary's Baby*, *The Day the Earth Stood Still*, *King Kong*, *The Lord of the Rings*, *The Wizard of Oz*, or *E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial*.

Thus the plausibility of a story depends on at least three separate factors: (1) the objective, external, and observable laws of probability and necessity; (2) the subjective, irrational, and emotional inner truths of human nature; and (3) the semblance of truth created by the filmmaker's convincing art. Although all these kinds of truths may be present in the same film, usually one kind of truth is central to the film's overall structure. The other truths may contribute but play supporting roles.

A Good Story Is Interesting

An important requirement of a good story is that it capture and hold our interest. A story can be interesting in many ways, and few if any stories have equal appeal to all filmgoers, for whether a story is interesting or boring is, to a great extent, a subjective matter. Some of us may be interested only in fast-paced action/adventure films. Others may be bored by anything without a romantic love interest at its center. Still others may be indifferent to any story that lacks deep philosophical significance.

But regardless of what we expect from a motion picture—whether it be the relaxation gained from being entertained or a clue to understanding the universe—we never go to the movies to be bored. Our tolerance for boredom seems very limited: A film may shock us, frustrate us, puzzle us, or even offend us, but it must *never* bore us. Thus, we fully expect the filmmaker to heighten the film's reality by doing away with irrelevant and distracting details. Why should we pay to watch the dull, the monotonous, or the routine when life provides them absolutely free of charge?

Even the Italian neorealist directors, who stress everyday reality in their films and deny the validity of invented stories, argue that their particular brand of everyday reality is not boring because of its complex echoes and implications. As Cesare Zavattini puts it, "Give us whatever 'fact' you like, and we will disembowel it, make it something worth watching."[1] To most of us, the expressions "worth watching" and "interesting" are synonymous.

Suspense To capture and maintain our interest, the filmmaker employs a multitude of devices and techniques, most of which are in some way related to suspense. These elements heighten our interest by exciting our curiosity, usually by foreshadowing or hinting at the outcome. By withholding bits of information that would answer the dramatic questions raised by the story, and by floating some unanswered question just beyond our reach, the filmmaker provides a motive to keep us constantly moving with the story's flow (Figure 3.4).

Action If a story is to be interesting, it must contain some elements of action. Stories are never static; some sort of action or change is essential if a story is to

FIGURE 3.4 Suspense In *Witness* the solution to a brutal murder is locked in the mind of an Amish boy (Lukas Haas), who witnessed the crime. Suspense builds steadily throughout the film as a policeman (Harrison Ford) tries to protect him from corrupt law enforcement agents.

be worth telling. Action, of course, is not limited to physical activities such as fights, chases, duels, and great battles. It may be internal, psychological, or emotional. In films such as *Star Wars* and *The Last of the Mohicans*, the action is external and physical (Figure 3.5); in *The Remains of the Day* and *In the Mood for Love*, the action occurs within the minds and the emotions of the characters (Figure 3.6). Both sorts of films have movement and change. The interest created by the exciting action in *The Road Warrior* is obvious and needs no explanation. But the action within a human being is not so obvious. Nothing very extraordinary happens in *The Remains of the Day*, but what takes place in the hearts and minds of its characters is extremely interesting and exciting.

Internal action stories require more concentration from the viewer, and they are more difficult to treat cinematically. But they are worthwhile subjects for film and can be as interesting and exciting as films that stress external and physical action.

FIGURE 3.5 External Action The exciting action in *The Last of the Mohicans* gives us little time for reflection. We are kept on the edge of our chairs throughout and, by film's end, are totally exhausted by the constant, fast-paced tension.

A Good Story Is Both Simple and Complex

A good film story must be simple enough so that it can be expressed and unified cinematically. Edgar Allan Poe's idea that a short story should be capable of being read in a single sitting applies to film. Experiencing a film is less tiring than reading a book, and the single sitting for a film may be a maximum of, say, two hours. Beyond that time limit, only the greatest films keep us from becoming restless or inattentive. Thus the story's action or theme must usually be compressed into a unified dramatic structure that requires about two hours to

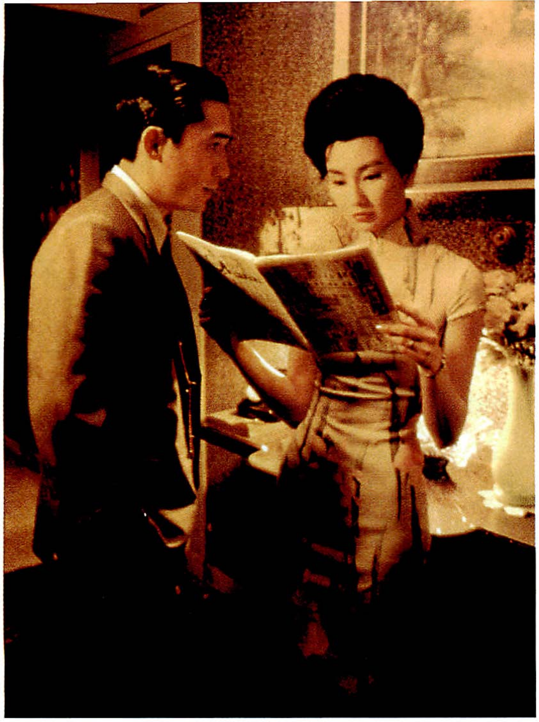


FIGURE 3.6 Internal Action Although director Wong Kar-Wai's elegant *In the Mood for Love* contains little physical action, what is happening in the minds and hearts of the characters played by Tony Leung and Maggie Cheung is extremely vibrant and exciting.

unfold. In most cases, a limited, simple theme, such as that in *8 Mile*, which focuses on a small part of one person's life, is better suited for the cinema than is a story that spans the ages in search of a timeless theme, as D. W. Griffith attempted in *Intolerance*. Generally, a story should be simple enough to be told in the time period allotted for its telling.

However, within these limits, a good story must also have some complexity, at least enough to sustain our interest. And although a good story may hint at the eventual outcome, it must also provide some surprises or at least be subtle enough to prevent the viewer from predicting the outcome after the first hour. Thus, a good story usually withholds something about its conclusion or significance until the very end.

But new elements introduced into the plot at the very end may make us question the legitimacy of the surprise ending, especially if such elements bring about an almost miraculous conclusion or make too much use of coincidence or chance. A surprise ending can be powerful and legitimate when the plot prepares us for it, even when the plot elements and the chain of cause and effect leading up to the ending escape our conscious attention (as in *The Sixth Sense*). The important thing is that the viewer never feel hoodwinked, fooled, or cheated by a surprise ending. The viewer should gain insight by means of the ending. Such insight occurs only when the surprise ending carries out

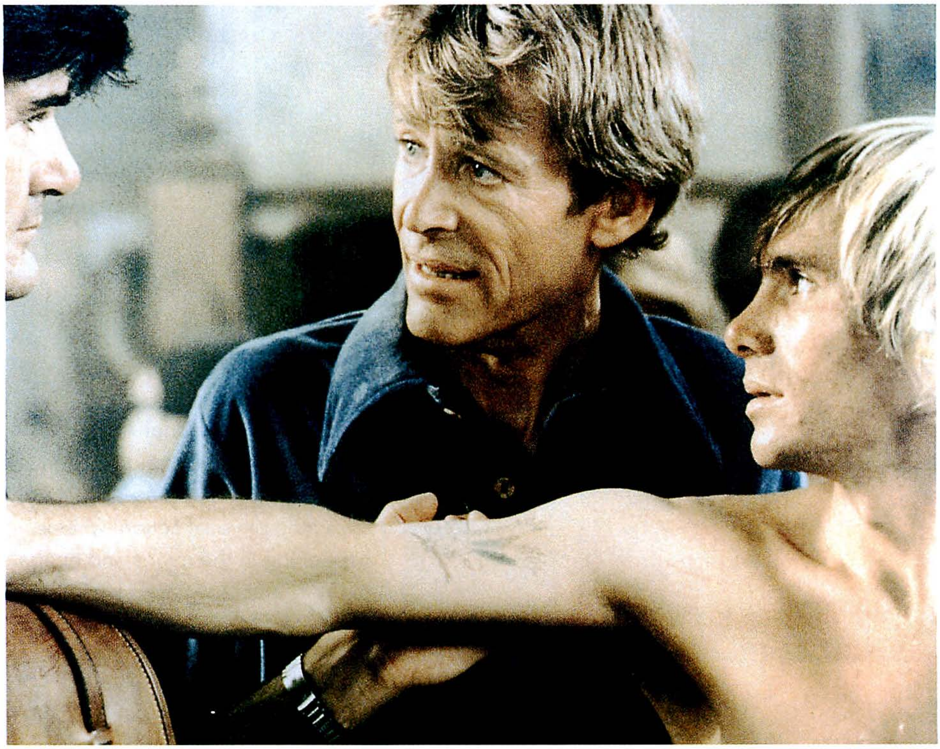


FIGURE 3.7 Complexity The levels of confusion created by the constant jumping back and forth between illusion and reality in *The Stunt Man* may stimulate some viewers but may be too complex to provide the relaxing entertainment expected by others.

tendencies established earlier in the story. A good plot is complex enough to keep us in doubt but simple enough so that the seeds of the outcome can all be found.

A filmmaker's communication techniques must also be a satisfying blend of simplicity and complexity. Filmmakers must communicate some things simply, clearly, and directly, so that they are clear to all viewers. But to challenge the minds and eyes of the most perceptive viewers, they must also communicate through implication and suggestion, leaving some things open to interpretation. Some viewers are bored by films that are too complex, that make too much use of implication or suggestion. Other viewers—those who prefer an intellectual challenge—are not interested in films that are too direct and simple. Thus, a filmmaker must please both those who do not appreciate films they cannot easily understand and those who reject films they understand all too easily.

Filmgoers' views of life also influence their attitudes toward a film's complexity or simplicity. Those who see life itself as complex and ambiguous are likely to demand that kind of complexity and ambiguity in the films they see

FIGURE 3.8 Simplicity The non-stop action sequences in *Daredevil* may entertain viewers looking for escapist entertainment but bore others who demand more depth and complexity.

(Figure 3.7). Such viewers may reject an escapist film because it falsifies the nature of existence by making it seem too easy, too neat, too pat. Other viewers may reject the complex view of life presented in realistic or naturalistic films for the opposite reason—because the film is too full of ambiguities, too complex, or because it does not conform to the inner subjective truth of life—life as they would like it to be (Figure 3.8).

A Good Story Handles Emotional Material With Restraint

A strong emotional element or effect is present in almost any story, and film is capable of manipulating our emotions. But this manipulation must be honest and appropriate to the story. Usually we reject as sentimental films that overuse emotional material. Such films might even make us laugh when we're supposed to cry. So a filmmaker must exercise restraint.

Reactions to emotional material depend on the individual viewer. One viewer may consider the film *The Bridges of Madison County* a beautifully touching and poignant experience, whereas another scoffs and calls it "sentimental trash." The difference often lies in the viewers themselves. The first viewer probably responded fully to the film, allowing himself to be manipulated by its emotional effects without considering the filmmaker dishonest. The second

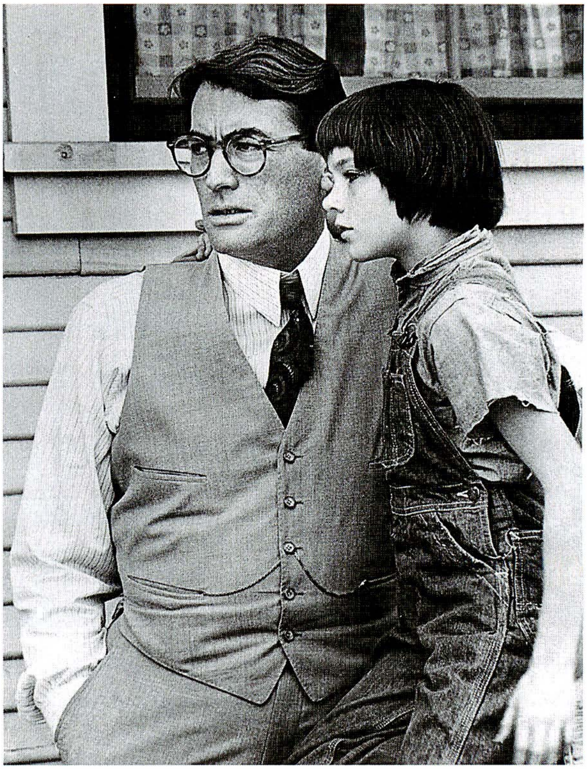


FIGURE 3.9 Emotional Restraint Simple dialogue creates eloquent understatement during crucial dramatic scenes in *To Kill a Mockingbird.*

viewer probably felt that the film unfairly attempted to manipulate her emotions, and she responded by rejecting it.

When the emotional material in a film is understated, there is little danger of offending. In understatement the filmmaker downplays the emotional material, giving it less emphasis than the situation would seem to call for. In *To Kill a Mockingbird* (Figure 3.9), Atticus Finch (Gregory Peck) uses a simple phrase to thank the boogeyman, Arthur "Boo" Radley (Robert Duvall), for saving the lives of Scout and Jem: "Thank you, Arthur . . . for my children." The effect of understatement is demonstrated by the tremendous emotional weight carried by the simple phrase "thank you," which we often use for the most trivial favors. The normally insignificant phrase takes on great significance, and we are moved by what is *not* said. The voice-over narration from the same film offers another example of understatement:

> Neighbors bring food with death and flowers with sickness and little things in between. Boo was our neighbor. He gave us two soap dolls, a broken watch and chain, a pair of good luck pennies, and our lives.

A wide variety of elements and techniques influence our emotional response to a film. Both understatement and the overuse of emotional material are reflected in the way the plot is structured, in the dialogue and the acting, and in the visual effects. Elements of a film's visual environment or setting (discussed at length in Chapter 4), and its creation of atmosphere, can also appeal to the viewer's senses and affect his or her emotional reaction. But a filmmaker's approach to presenting emotional material is perhaps most evident in the musical score, which can communicate on a purely emotional level and thus reflects the peaks and valleys of emotional emphasis and understatement (see Chapter 9).

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE TITLE

The importance of a suitable title is not overlooked by writers like Neil Simon:

> When looking for a fun title, you're looking for something that's going to grab them. In the titles to my plays that really mean something to me, I try to tell the audience what the play is about, what the character is about. I try to tell the story in the title.
>
> . . . When I don't have it, I'll work very hard because it's as important to me as writing the first scene, getting the title. I feel comfortable if it sounds right.[2]

In most films, we can understand the full significance of the title only after seeing the film. In many cases, the title has one meaning to a viewer before seeing the film and a completely different, richer, and deeper meaning afterward. Titles are often ironic, expressing an idea exactly the opposite of the meaning intended, and many titles allude to mythology, biblical passages, or other literary works. For example, the title *All the King's Men* (Figure 3.10) is taken from "Humpty Dumpty" and reminds us of the nursery rhyme, which provides a nutshell summary of the plot. *All the King's Men* concerns a southern dictator (king) who rises to a position of high power (sat on a wall) but is assassinated (had a great fall). As in the case of Humpty Dumpty, "all the king's men" are unable to put the king together again. On another level, the title literally tells us what the story is about. Willie Stark, the politician, is the primary energy force. However, Jack Burden, Stark's press secretary and right-hand man, is actually the focal character, and the story is very much concerned with the lives of others who work for Stark in one capacity or another. Thus, the story is in a sense about "all the king's men." On yet another plane the title links the fictional character Willie Stark to the real-life politician Huey Long, on whose career the story is loosely based. Long's favorite nickname for himself was "The Kingfisher," from a character on the old "Amos 'n' Andy" radio show, and Long once wrote a song around his campaign slogan, "Every man a king, but no one wears a crown."

Some titles may call attention to a key scene that becomes worthy of careful study when we realize that the title of the film has been taken from it. Although the title seldom names the theme (as it does in *Sense and Sensibility* and

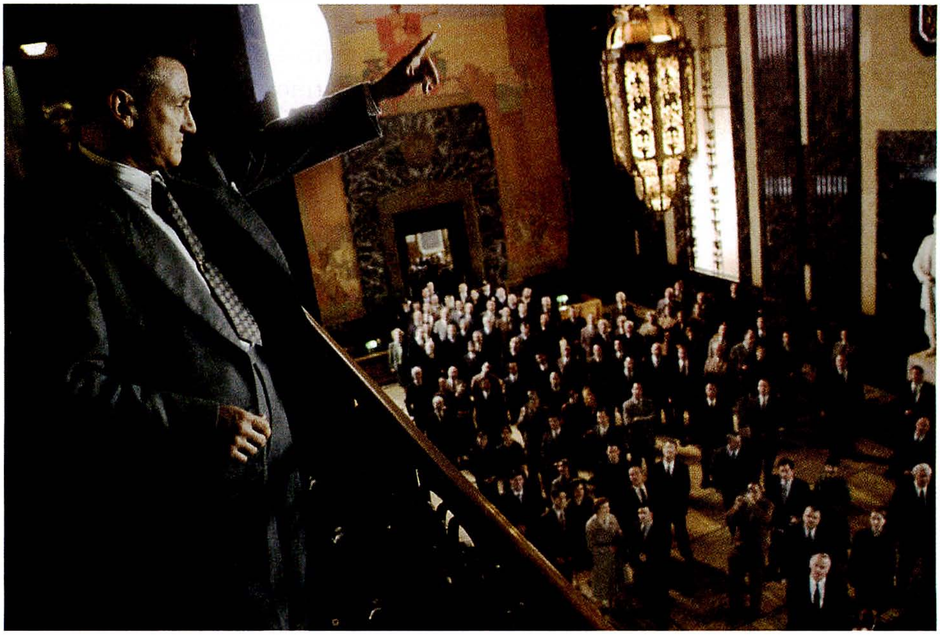


FIGURE 3.10 Significant Titles Students of film should try to make themselves aware of both the sources and significance of movie titles. In the case of *All the King's Men,* Robert Penn Warren, on whose novel two films have been based, appropriated the phrasing and theme of a famous nursery rhyme.

Good Will Hunting), it is usually an extremely important clue in identifying it. Thus, it is essential to think carefully about the possible meanings of the title after seeing any film.

DRAMATIC STRUCTURE

The art of storytelling as practiced in the short story, novel, play, or film has always depended on a strong dramatic structure—that is, the aesthetic and logical arrangement of parts to achieve the maximum emotional, intellectual, or dramatic impact. Dramatic structure can be linear or nonlinear, depending upon the author's needs and wishes. Both patterns contain the same elements: exposition, complication, climax, and dénouement. They differ only in the arrangement of these elements.

Linear, or Chronological, Structure

Screenwriter Ernest Lehman describes films having the linear, or chronological, structure in terms of acts:

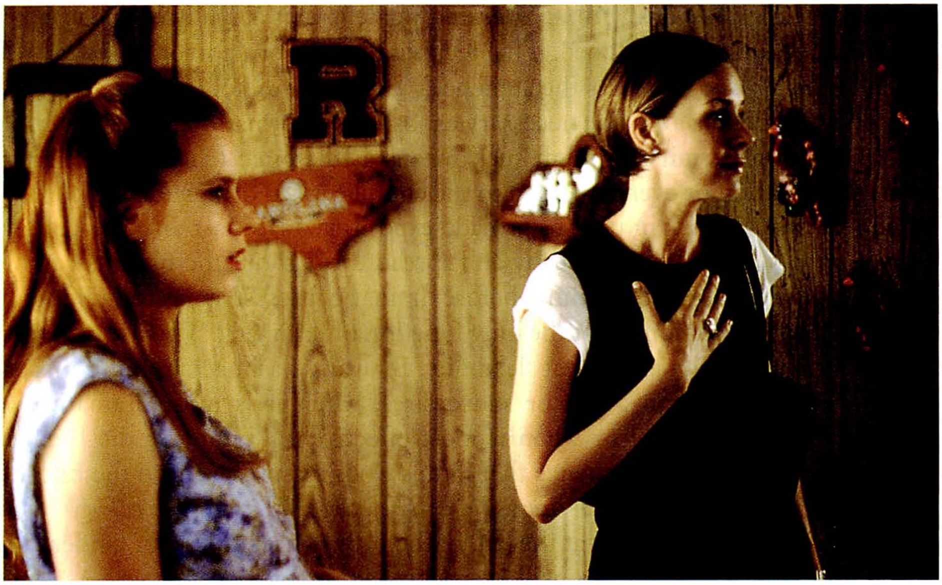


FIGURE 3.11 Linear Structure In *Junebug,* a riveting account of family conflict in the American South, director Phil Morrison and screenwriter Angus MacLachlan chose to tell their story in strict chronological order.

> In the first act, who are the people, what is the situation of this whole story? Second act is the progression of that situation to a point of high conflict and great problems. And the third act is how the problems and the conflicts are resolved. That's putting it a little patly, but that's the way it ought to be.[3]

The first part of the story, called the **exposition,** introduces the characters, shows some of their interrelationships, and places them within a believable time and place. In the next section, the **complication,** a conflict begins and grows in clarity, intensity, and importance. Because dramatic tension and suspense are created and maintained during the complication, this is usually the longest section. When the complication has reached its point of maximum tension, the two forces in opposition confront each other at a high point of physical or emotional action called the **climax.** At the climax, the conflict is resolved and there follows a brief period of calm, the **dénouement,** in which a state of relative equilibrium returns (Figure 3.11).

Nonlinear Structures

There are many variations of nonlinear structure, including *in medias res* beginnings and episodic structures, in which the elements are not arranged chronologically. A story that begins ***in medias res*** (a Latin phrase meaning "in the middle of things") opens with an exciting incident that actually happens *after* the complication has developed. This technique, used by Homer to begin the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, captures the audience's interest at the outset and creates a state of dramatic tension. The necessary expository information is filled in later as the situation permits, through such means as dialogue (characters talking about the situation or events that led to the complication) or **flashbacks** (filmed sequences that go back in time to provide expository material). In this manner exposition can be built up gradually and spread throughout the film instead of being established at the beginning, before dramatic interest starts to build.

Providing exposition is not the only function of flashback. The use of visual flashback gives a filmmaker great flexibility. By using flashback, the filmmaker can present information as he or she desires, when it is most dramatically appropriate and powerful or when it most effectively illuminates the theme. (**Flashforward,** a filmed sequence that jumps from the present into the future, has been tried in such films as *Easy Rider*, *They Shoot Horses, Don't They?* and *Love! Valour! Compassion!*, and at the end of the HBO series "Six Feet Under." It is doubtful whether this device will ever gain widespread acceptance.) As long as coherence is maintained so that the relationship between one scene and another is clear, the director can violate strict chronological order at will.

Sometimes, however, a director may purposely try to confuse the time sequence. In the haunting and mystifying *Last Year at Marienbad*, Alain Resnais seems determined to keep us wondering whether the scene we are watching is taking place in the present (this year) or in the past (last year) or, in fact, whether it really takes place at all. Writer-director Quentin Tarantino has tried some unusual scrambled chronology in his films, including *Reservoir Dogs* and *Pulp Fiction* (Figure 3.12), presumably to establish a stylistic trademark.

Endings: Fine-Tuning the Dénouement

Movies and plays, unlike short stories and novels, are often field-tested before an audience. Just as plays have tryouts on the road before they open on Broadway, yet-to-be-released films are given sneak previews in carefully selected locations to see how audiences like them. Highly sophisticated test-marketing techniques are employed to determine the final version of many films. Such diverse filmmakers as Woody Allen, Frank Capra, and Danny DeVito have all been strong believers in using sneak previews to test audience response. As DeVito puts it: "It's like asking the audience to be your barometer. It's a very, very informative process. As far as I'm concerned, the audience has the final cut."[4]

Filmmakers are especially interested in the audience's response to the ending, or dénouement, of their films. An unsatisfactory ending often results in poor word-of-mouth (WOM), and poor WOM means poor results at the box office. According to Griffin Dunne, star and coproducer of *After Hours*, "If the last five minutes are disturbing, it has an overriding effect on the first ninety."[5]

FIGURE 3.12

Nonlinear Structure

Director Quentin Tarantino's *Pulp Fiction* (starring John Travolta) has become a modern film favorite in part because it manipulates so skillfully its nonlinear structure containing multiple, suspenseful flashbacks.

After Hours originally ended with Dunne's character (encased in a plaster cast) being mistaken for a sculpture and "carted away toward an unknown, but surely ugly future." Audience response was negative, and a new ending that was "less stifling" and "more positive" was shot. Both endings were then previewed, and audiences expressed a clear preference for the happier ending.

In the original ending of *Fatal Attraction*, Michael Douglas's fingerprints were found on the knife that Glenn Close used to commit suicide, evidence that sent Douglas to jail for murder. The preview audience, however, had so strongly identified with Douglas and his family that that ending proved totally unsatisfactory and a different ending was shot. Another change that pleased viewers was altering the original conclusion of *My Best Friend's Wedding*. The preview audiences insisted that the Julia Roberts character end up dancing with her gay friend (played by Rupert Everett) rather than marry the less interesting romantic lead (played by Dermot Mulroney).

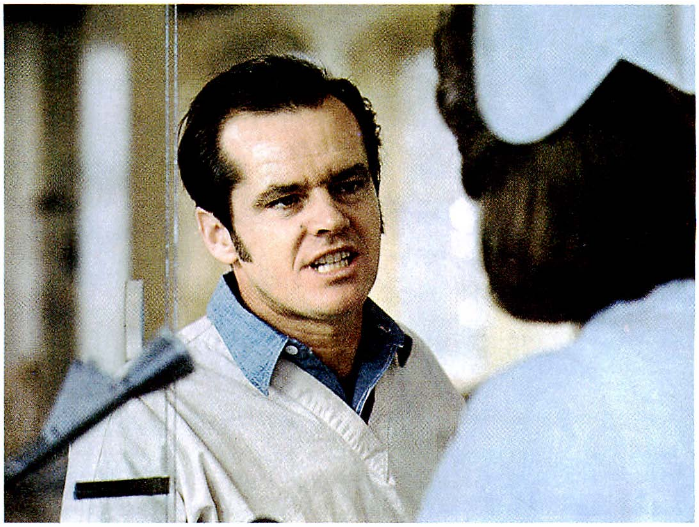
CONFLICT

In his essay "Why Do We Read Fiction?" Robert Penn Warren observes,

> A story is not merely an image of life, but of life in motion . . . individual characters moving through their particular experiences to some end that we may accept as meaningful. And the experience that is characteristically presented in a story is that of facing a problem, a conflict. To put it bluntly: No conflict, no story.[6]

Conflict is the mainspring of every story, whether it be told on the printed page, on the stage, or on the screen. It is the element that really captures our interest, heightens the intensity of our experience, quickens our pulses, and challenges our minds (Figure 3.13).

FIGURE 3.13 Conflict The mainspring of practically any film is the dramatic tension created by human conflict. In *One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest,* mental patient Randall McMurphy (Jack Nicholson) and Nurse Ratched (Louise Fletcher) battle constantly throughout the narrative.



Although there may be several conflicts within a story, some kind of major conflict at its core ultimately has the greatest importance to the story as a whole. The major conflict is of great importance to the characters involved, and there is some worthwhile and perhaps lasting goal to be gained by the resolution of that conflict. Because it is highly significant to the characters, and because significant conflicts have important effects on people and events, the major conflict and its resolution almost always bring about an important change, either in the people involved or in their situation.

The major conflict has a high degree of complexity; it is not the sort of problem that can be quickly and easily resolved by an obvious or simple solution. Thus, its outcome remains in doubt throughout the greater part of the film. The complexity of the struggle is also influenced by the fact that the forces in conflict are nearly equal in strength, a fact that adds greatly to the dramatic tension and power of the work. In some films, the major conflict and its resolution may contribute greatly to the viewer's experience, for it is the conflict and its resolution (or sometimes its lack of resolution) that clarify or illuminate the nature of human experience.

Some major conflicts are primarily physical, such as a fistfight or a shootout in a western. Others are almost completely psychological, as is often the case in the films of Federico Fellini or Ingmar Bergman. In most films, however, the conflict has both physical and psychological dimensions, and determining where one stops and the other begins is often difficult. It is perhaps simpler and more meaningful to classify major conflicts under the broad headings of external and internal.

In its simplest form, an **external conflict** may consist of a personal and individual struggle between the central character and another character. On this level the conflict is nothing more than a contest of human wills in opposition, as might be illustrated by a prizefight, a duel, or two suitors seeking to win the affections of the same woman. Yet these basic and simple human conflicts have a tendency to be more complex than they first appear. Conflicts can seldom be isolated completely from other individuals, society as a whole, or the value systems of the individuals involved. Thus, they often grow into representative struggles between groups of people, different segments of society or social institutions, or different value systems.

Another type of external conflict pits the central character or characters against some nonhuman force or agency, such as fate, the gods, the forces of nature, or the social system. Here the forces the characters face are essentially nonhuman and impersonal. Jefferson Smith's (James Stewart) struggle against the political corruption and graft of the "Taylor machine" in *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington* is an example of an external conflict that pits a single individual against "the system." A more physical type of external conflict occurs in *Cast Away*, in which Tom Hanks struggles to prove his worth against the dehumanizing forces of nature.

An **internal conflict** centers on an interior, psychological conflict within the central character (Figure 3.14). The forces in opposition are simply different aspects of the same personality. For example, in James Thurber's celebrated short story "The Secret Life of Walter Mitty," we have a conflict between what a man actually is (a small, timid, incompetent creature, henpecked by an overbearing wife) and what he wants to be (a brave and competent hero). By escaping constantly into the world of his daydreams, Mitty reveals himself to be living in a permanent state of conflict between his heroic dreams and the drab reality of his existence. In all such internal conflicts, we see a character squeezed between the two sides of his or her personality, torn between equally strong but conflicting desires, goals, or value systems. In some cases, this inner conflict is resolved and the character grows or develops as a result, but in many cases, like that of Walter Mitty, there is no resolution.

The standard Woody Allen character in films such as *Annie Hall*, *Manhattan*, and *Play It Again, Sam*, is torn by internal conflicts and insecurities. In *Play It Again, Sam*, the central character tries to overcome his self-doubts and insecurities by emulating his screen hero, Humphrey Bogart.

CHARACTERIZATION

> *You can only involve an audience with people. You can't involve them with gimmicks, with sunsets, with hand-held cameras, zoom shots, or anything else. They couldn't care less about those things. But you give them something to worry about, some person they can worry about, and care about, and you've got them, you've got them involved.*[7]
>
> —FRANK CAPRA, DIRECTOR

FIGURE 3.14 Internal Conflict James Ivory's *The Remains of the Day* presents life at an English manor house (including servants portrayed by Emma Thompson and Anthony Hopkins) over a period of decades. Although numerous external class and political conflicts help to propel the narrative, the tension within individual lives lies at the heart of the film.

If we are not interested in a film's most human elements—its characters—there is little chance that we will be interested in the film as a whole. To be interesting, characters must seem real, understandable, and worth caring about. For the most part, the characters in a story are believable in the same way that the story is believable. In other words, they conform to the laws of probability and necessity (by reflecting externally observable truths about human nature), they conform to some inner truth (man as we want him to be), or they are made to seem real by the convincing art of the actor.

If characters are truly credible, it is almost impossible to remain completely neutral toward them. We must respond to them in some way: We may admire them for their heroic deeds and their nobility or pity them for their failures. We may love them or identify with them for their ordinary human qualities. We may laugh at them for their ignorance or laugh with them because theirs is a human ignorance that we all share. If our reaction to them is negative, we may detest them for their greed, their cruelty, their selfishness, and their underhanded methods. Or we may scorn them for their cowardice.

Characterization Through Appearance

Because most film actors project certain qualities of character the minute they appear on the screen, characterization in film has a great deal to do with casting. A major aspect of film characterization is revealed visually and instantaneously. Although some actors may be versatile enough to project completely different qualities in different roles, most actors are not. The minute we see most actors on the screen, we make certain assumptions about them because of their facial features, dress, physical build, and mannerisms and the way they move. Our first visual impression may be proven erroneous as the story progresses, but it is certainly an important means of establishing character. Consider the immedi-

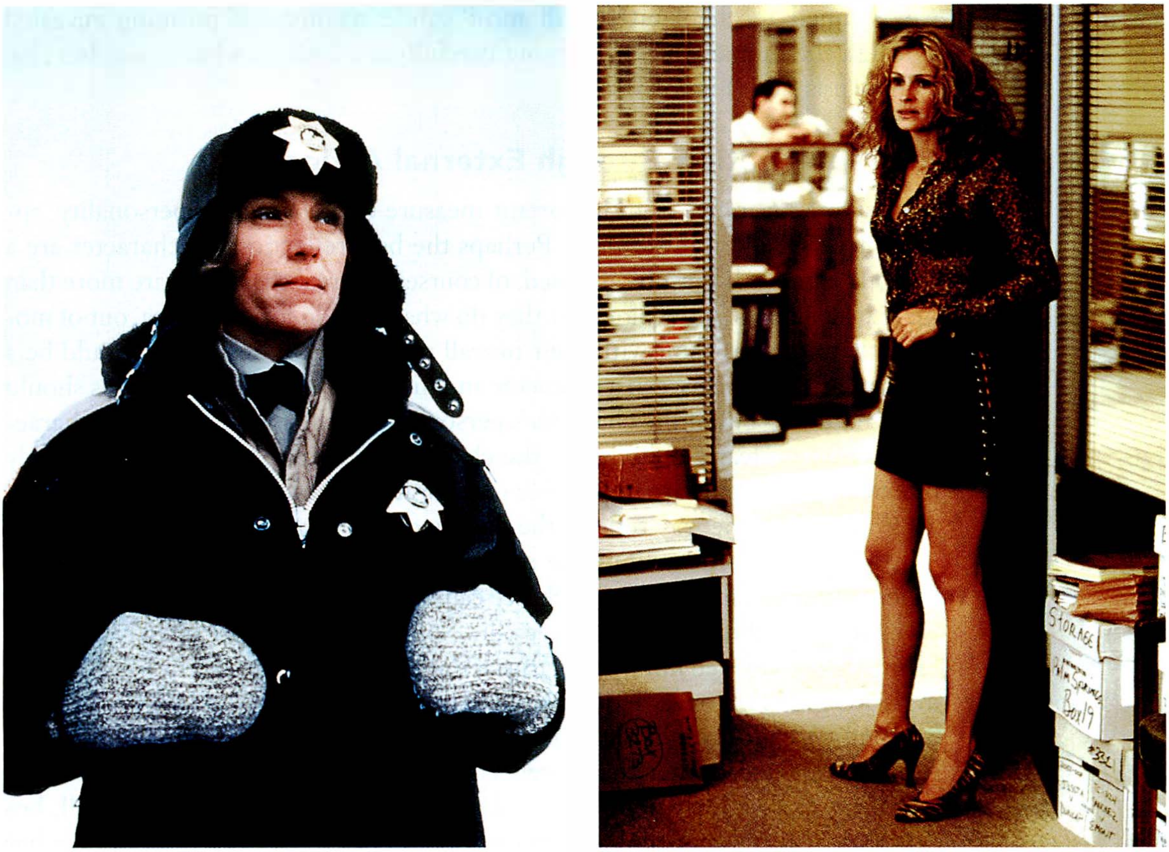


FIGURE 3.15 Characterization Through Appearance In *Fargo,* police chief Marge (Frances McDormand), pregnant and wearing a floppy-earmuffed cap, makes an early impression on the viewer that belies the officer's shrewd and swift intelligence (left). Likewise, in *Erin Brockovich*, the tight, suggestive clothes worn by the title character (Julia Roberts) initially mislead movie watchers about her intellect and smart persistence (right).

ate reactions we have to Julia Roberts when she appears for the first time in *Erin Brockovich* or to Francis McDormand in *Fargo* (Figure 3.15).

Characterization Through Dialogue

Characters in a fictional film naturally reveal a great deal about themselves by what they say. But a great deal is also revealed by how they say it. Their true thoughts, attitudes, and emotions can be revealed in subtle ways through word choice and through the stress, pitch, and pause patterns of their speech. Actors' use of grammar, sentence structure, vocabulary, and particular dialects (if any) reveals a great deal about their characters' social and economic level, educational background, and mental processes. Therefore, we must develop a keen ear, attuned to the faintest and most subtle nuances of meaning revealed through the human voice—listening carefully not only to what is said but also to how it is said (Figure 3.16).

Characterization Through External Action

Although appearance is an important measure of a character's personality, appearances are often misleading. Perhaps the best reflections of character are a person's actions. It must be assumed, of course, that real characters are more than mere instruments of the plot, that they do what they do for a purpose, out of motives that are consistent with their overall personality. Thus, there should be a clear relationship between a character and his or her actions; the actions should grow naturally out of the character's personality. If the motivation for a character's action is clearly established, the character and the plot become so closely interwoven that they are impossible to separate, and every action that the character takes in some way reflects the quality of his or her particular personality.

Of course, some actions are more important in revealing character than others. Even the most ordinary choice can be revealing, for some kind of choice is involved in almost everything we do. Sometimes the most effective characterization is achieved not by the large actions in the film but by the small, seemingly insignificant ones. For example, a fireman may demonstrate his courage by saving a child from a burning building, yet such an act may be only a performance of duty rather than a reflection of a choice. His essential character might be more clearly defined by risking his life to save a little girl's doll, because such an action would be imposed on him not by his duty as a fireman but by his personal judgment about the value of a doll to a little girl.

Characterization Through Internal Action

There is an inner world of action that normally remains unseen and unheard by even the most careful observer/listener. Yet the dimension of human nature that this world embraces is often essential to a real understanding of a character. Inner action occurs within characters' minds and emotions and consists of secret, unspoken thoughts, daydreams, aspirations, memories, fears, and fantasies. People's hopes, dreams, and aspirations can be as important to an understanding of their character as any real achievement, and their fears and insecurities can be more terrible to them than any real catastrophic failure. Thus, although the Benicio Del Toro character in *Traffic* is a drab, insignificant creature, scarcely worth caring about when judged purely by his initial external behavior, he becomes an exciting and interesting personality as we gain insight into his character.

The most obvious way in which the filmmaker reveals inner reality is by taking us visually or aurally into the character's mind so that we see or hear the things that the character imagines, remembers, or thinks about. This may be

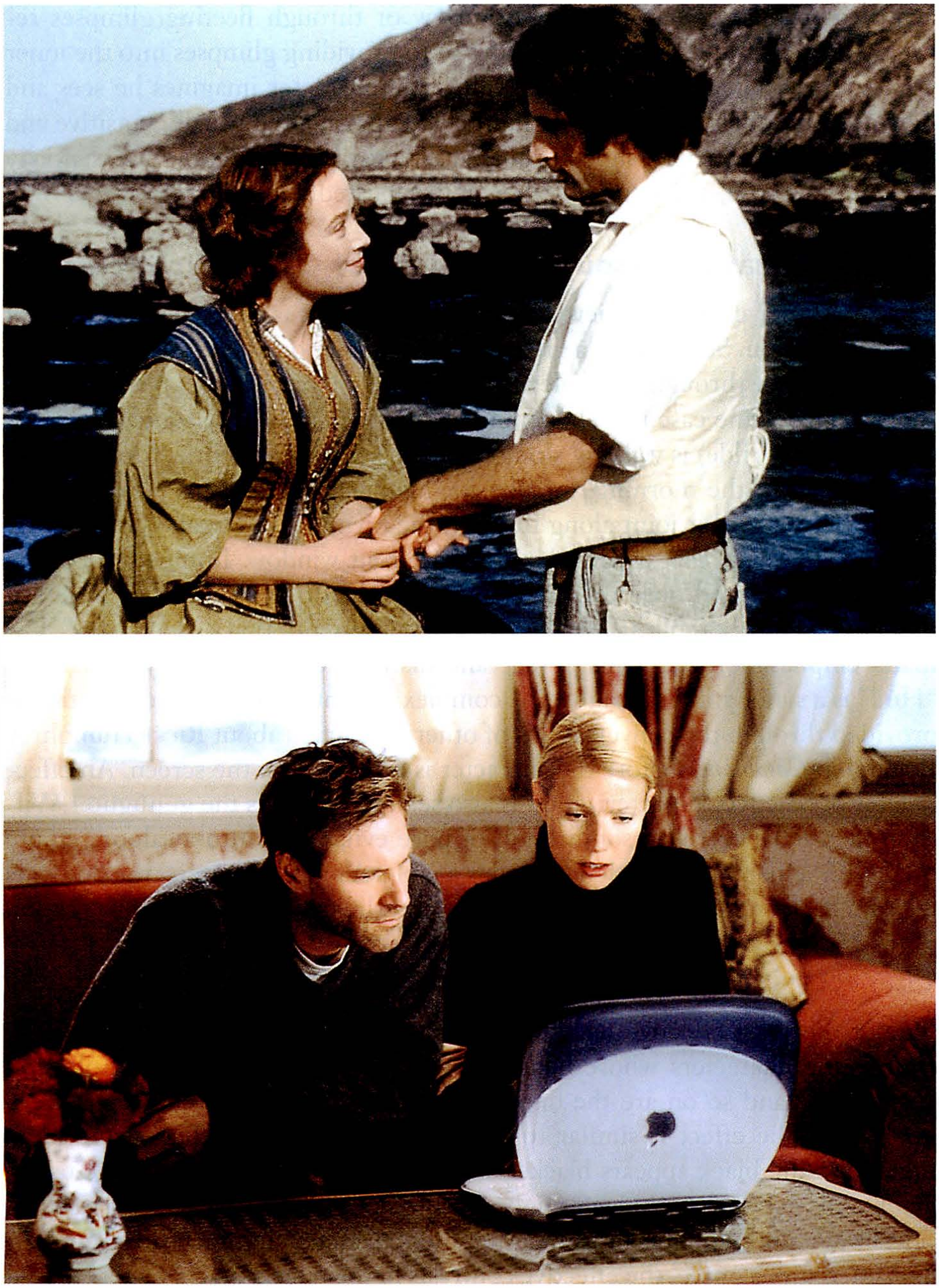


FIGURE 3.16 Characterization Through Dialogue Neil LaBute's *Possession* tells dual, interrelated stories about two couples who live in different centuries. Various methods, including obvious contrasts in costuming, help viewers to differentiate between the two separate narratives and their time levels. Most significantly, the formal diction of the Victorian lovers (Jennifer Ehle and Jeremy Northam) clashes with the casual vernacular spoken by the modern lovers (Gwyneth Paltrow and Aaron Eckhart).

achieved through a sustained interior view or through fleeting glimpses revealed by means of metaphors. In addition to providing glimpses into the inner action by revealing the sounds and sights the character imagines he sees and hears, the filmmaker may employ tight close-ups on an unusually sensitive and expressive face (reaction shots) or may utilize the musical score for essentially the same purpose, as Brian De Palma does repeatedly in *Dressed to Kill* (1980).

Characterization Through Reactions of Other Characters

The way other characters view a person often serves as an excellent means of characterization. Sometimes, a great deal of information about a character is already provided through such means before the character first appears on the screen. This is the case in the opening scene of *Hud.* In this sequence Lonnie (Brandon DeWilde) is walking along the main street of the little Texas town at around 6:30 in the morning, looking for his uncle, Hud (Paul Newman). As Lonnie passes a beer joint along the way, the owner is out front, sweeping up the pieces of glass that used to be his large front window. Lonnie notices the broken window and observes, "You must have had quite a brawl in here last night." The owner replies, "I had *Hud* in here last night, that's what I had." The man's emphasis on the name "Hud" and his tone of voice clearly reveal that "Hud" is a synonym for "trouble." A complex and intriguing characterization is provided through the conversations of other characters about Rick (Humphrey Bogart) in *Casablanca* before the character is ever seen on the screen. An effective bit of reactive characterization is also seen in *Shane*, as the gunfighter Wilson (Jack Palance), a personification of pure evil, walks into a saloon, empty except for a mangy dog curled up under a table. As Wilson enters, the dog puts his ears back and his tail between his legs and slinks fearfully out of the room.

Characterization Through Contrast: Dramatic Foils

One of the most effective techniques of characterization is the use of **foils**—contrasting characters whose behavior, attitudes, opinions, lifestyle, physical appearance, and so on are the opposite of those of the main characters (Figure 3.17). The effect is similar to that achieved by putting black and white together—the black appears blacker and the white appears whiter. The tallest giant and the tiniest midget might be placed side by side at the carnival sideshow, and the filmmaker sometimes uses characters in much the same way. Consider, for example, the effective contrasts in the television characters played by Andy Griffith and Don Knotts on the old "Andy Griffith Show." Griffith, as Sheriff Taylor, was tall and a little heavy, and he projected a calm, self-confident, easygoing personality. Knotts, as Deputy Fife, was the exact opposite—short, skinny, insecure, and a bundle of nerves. The strange love story of the main characters in *Harold and Maude* also turns on characterization through contrast.

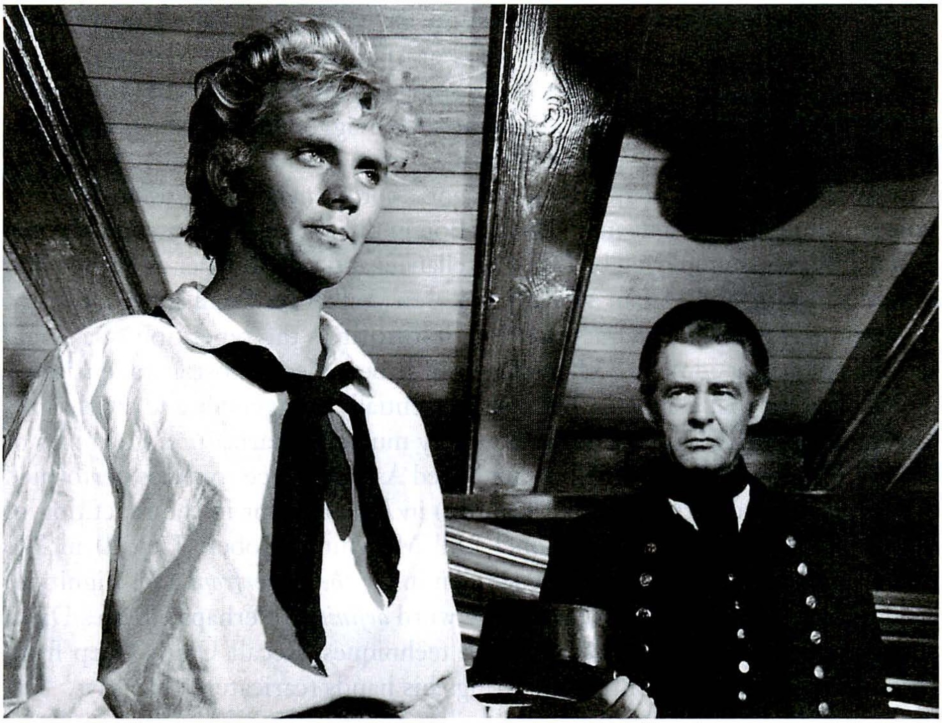


FIGURE 3.17 Dramatic Foils In Peter Ustinov's 1962 film version of *Billy Budd,* Herman Melville's allegory of good and evil, the sweet, naive, and innocent Billy (Terence Stamp) contrasts sharply with the grim, satanic Master of Arms Claggart (Robert Ryan). The striking opposites in their characters are emphasized by their features, facial expressions, clothing, and voice qualities. Stamp is baby-faced; his features are soft and smooth, his expressions sweet, almost effeminate; his eyes are light blue, wide open, innocent. Ryan's face is mature and lined, the jaw and mouth strong and hard set; his expressions are sour and cynical; his eyes are dark, narrow, piercing, malevolent. Billy's fair complexion, blond (almost white) hair, and white shirt contrast with Claggart's dark hair and clothing. Billy's voice is soft, sometimes melodious; Claggart's is deep, unctuous, cold.

As the movie poster reads: "Harold's 20 and in love with death . . . Maude's 80 and in love with life."

Characterization Through Caricature and Leitmotif

In order to etch a character quickly and deeply in our minds and memories, actors often exaggerate or distort one or more dominant features or personality traits. This device is called **caricature** (from the technique used in cartooning). In television's "M*A*S*H," the perpetual womanizing of Hawkeye Pierce (Alan Alda) and the eternal naiveté, innocence, and keen hearing of Radar O'Reilly

(Gary Burghoff) are examples of caricature, as, in film, are Felix Unger's (Jack Lemmon) obsession with neatness and Oscar Madison's (Walter Matthau) messiness in *The Odd Couple.* A physical feature, such as the way a person moves, may also be caricatured, as seen in John Mahoney's exaggerated, stiff-legged limp in his portayal of the Crane father on "Frasier," or in Michael Richards' manic entrances through Jerry Seinfeld's apartment door as neighbor Cosmo Kramer. Voice qualities and accents may also function in this way, as illustrated by the unmistakable voices employed by Dan Castellaneta and Julie Kavner as Homer and Marge Simpson, and Megan Mullally as Karen Walker on "Will and Grace."

A similar means of characterization, **leitmotif,** is the repetition of a single action, phrase, or idea by a character until it becomes almost a trademark or theme song for that character. Because it essentially exaggerates and emphasizes (through repetition), such a device acts very much like caricature. Examples of leitmotif might be seen in the repeated Fred Astaire dance routines performed by the prosecuting attorney (Ted Danson) in *Body Heat* or in the repetition of the phrase "sports fans" by Colonel Bull Meechum (Robert Duvall) in *The Great Santini.* One of the union henchmen in *On the Waterfront* adds dignity to his yes-man role by constantly using the word *definitely.* Perhaps Charles Dickens rates as the all-time master of both techniques. Recall Uriah Heep from *David Copperfield*, who continually wrings his hands (caricature) and says, "I'm so 'umble" (leitmotif). Modern films still employ such techniques effectively, although not quite as extensively (Figure 3.18). In Quentin Tarantino's *Kill Bill, Vol. 2*, the title character's playing of his flute creates a leitmotif.

Characterization Through Choice of Name

One important method of characterization is the use of names possessing appropriate qualities of sound, meaning, or connotation. This technique is known as **name typing.** A screenwriter usually thinks out his characters' names very carefully, as Paul Schrader's choice of name for the Robert De Niro character in *Taxi Driver* illustrates:

> It has to be euphonious, because you want people to repeat the name: to use it in reviews, to use it in copy, a name people want to repeat. And Travis Bickle was successful in that way; people remembered the name and it appeared in a lot of reviews. . . . A memorable name. Beyond that, you want to have at least one component which is evocative and/or symbolic. Travis is evocative rather than symbolic, Travis/travel. The sense of traveling, never stopping. Then Bickle. Travis is romantic, evocative, and soft—and Bickle is hard, an unpleasant name. And it fits the character.[8]

Because a great deal of thought goes into the choice of names, they should not be taken for granted but should be carefully examined for the connotations they communicate. The connotations of some names, such as Dick Tracy, are

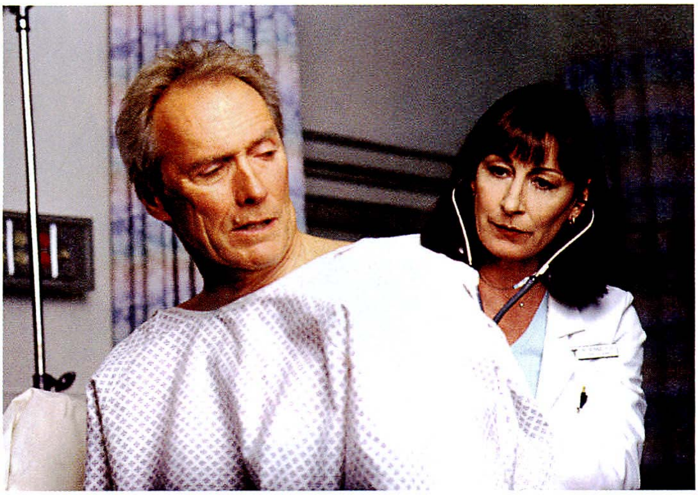


FIGURE 3.18 Leitmotif In this scene from *Blood Work*, retired FBI profiler Terry McCaleb is examined by the cardiologist (Angelica Huston) who performed his recent heart transplant. Throughout the film, director-actor Clint Eastwood, who plays McCaleb, frequently touches his chest—a gesture that works as a suspenseful leitmotif that reminds the viewer of this tough-but-aging hero's vulnerability.

rather obvious and clear: Dick is slang for *detective;* Tracy derives from the fact that detectives trace criminals. Other names may have only generalized connotations. Gomer Pyle has a small-town or country-hick ring to it; Cornelius Witherspoon III has an opposite kind of sound. Certain sounds in names have unpleasant connotations. The "sn" sound, for example, evokes unpleasant associations, because a large majority of the words beginning with that sound are unpleasant—*snide*, *sneer*, *sneak*, *snake*, *snail*, *sneeze*, *snatch*, *snout*, and *snort* are a few examples. Thus, a name like Snerd or Snavely has an unpleasant ring automatically (Figure 3.19). Sometimes a name draws its effect from both its meaning and its sound, such as William Faulkner's Flem (read "phlegm") Snopes. In this vein, because of the connotative power of names, film actors' names are often changed to fit the image they project. John Wayne's real name was Marion Morrison; Cary Grant's was Archibald Leach.

Varieties of Characters

Another method for analyzing film characterization utilizes three different types of pairings: stock characters and stereotypes, static versus dynamic characters, and flat versus round characters.

Stock Characters and Stereotypes

It is not essential or even desirable for every character in a film to have a unique or memorable personality. **Stock characters** are minor characters whose actions are completely predictable or typical of their job or profession (such as a bartender in a western). They are in the film simply because the situation demands their presence. They serve as a natural part of the setting, much as stage properties like a lamp or a chair might function in a play.

FIGURE 3.19 **Name Typing** In *Shadow of the Vampire,* director E. Elias Merhige "recreated" the life of a real silent film actor with the singular name Max Schreck. In this fanciful horror film, Schreck's ironically apt name evokes the mystery and danger within a fictional character played by actor Willem Dafoe.

Stereotypes, however, are characters of somewhat greater importance to the film. They fit into preconceived patterns of behavior common to or representative of a large number of people, at least a large number of fictional people. Examples of stereotypes are the rich playboy, the western hero's sidekick, the pompous banker, and the unmarried aunt. Our preconceived notions of such characters allow the director to economize greatly in treating them.

Static Versus Dynamic or Developing Characters It is often useful to determine whether the most important characters in a film are static or dynamic characters. **Developing characters** are deeply affected by the action of the plot (internal, external, or both) and undergo some important change in personality, attitude, or outlook on life as a result of the action of the story (Figure 3.20). The change they undergo is an important, permanent one, not just a whimsical shift in attitude that will change back again tomorrow. The character will never be the same person he or she was when the action of the film began.

The change can be of any type but is significant to the total makeup of the individual undergoing the change. Dynamic characters become sadder or wiser, or happier and more self-confident. They might gain some new awareness of life, become more mature or more responsible, or become more moral or less

FIGURE 3.20 Developing or Dynamic Characters Some film characters undergo important personality change or growth in the course of a film—change that permanently alters their attitudes about life. Such is the case with the title characters in *Thelma & Louise* (top left, with Geena Davis and Susan Sarandon), the Jim Carrey character in *The Truman Show* (top right), and Tom Hanks's character in *Cast Away* (bottom).

so. They may become simply more aware and knowing and less innocent or naive. Examples of developing characters include T. S. Garp (Robin Williams) in *The World According to Garp*, Tom Joad (Henry Fonda) in *The Grapes of Wrath*, and Michael Corleone (Al Pacino) in *The Godfather*.

Static characters remain essentially the same throughout the film (Figure 3.21). The action does not have an important effect on their lives (as might generally be the case with the hero of an action/adventure film). Or they are insensitive to the meaning of the action and thus are not capable of growth or change, as is the case with the title character in *Hud* (Paul Newman) and, perhaps, with Charles Foster Kane (Orson Welles) in *Citizen Kane*.

Screenwriter Robert Towne feels that static characters are almost essential to comedy and dynamic characters are essential to serious drama:

> One of the things that is almost implicit in comedy is something that is repetitious, static—that is, you pretty much leave a character the way you find him. That's OK in *all* comedy. Repetitive or even compulsive behavior is what *makes* comedy. Archie Bunker is funny because he keeps repeating his prejudices in one form or another, and you expect these things. . . . In dramatic writing the

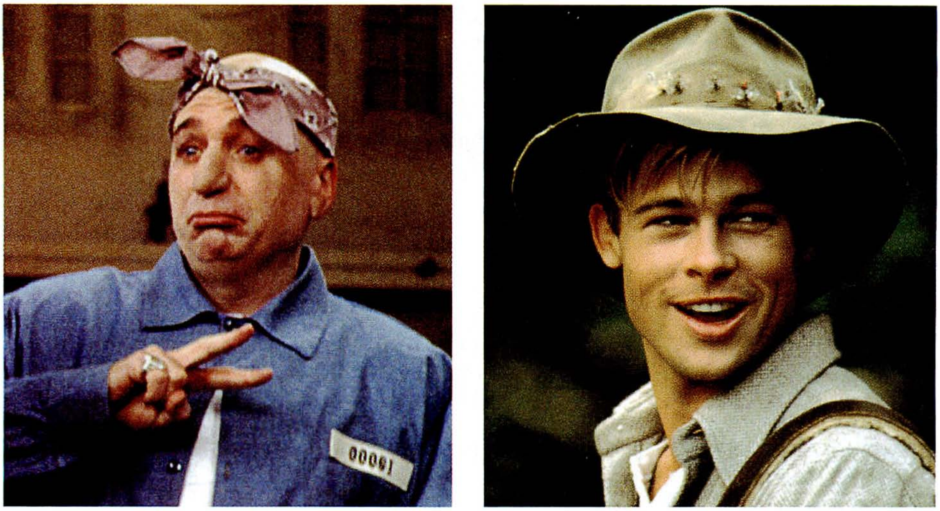


FIGURE 3.21 Static Characters Some film characters are not capable of growth or have such strong personalities that they remain unaffected by the important action of the film. This is comically true with Mike Myers's Dr. Evil character in *Austin Powers in Goldmember* (left) and tragically so with the Brad Pitt character in *A River Runs Through It* (right).

> very *essence* is character change. The character at the end is not the same as he was at the beginning. He's changed—psychologically, maybe even physically.[9]

Flat Versus Round Characters Another important distinction is made between flat characters and round characters. **Flat characters** are two-dimensional, predictable characters who lack the complexity and unique qualities associated with psychological depth. They often tend to be representative character types rather than real flesh-and-blood human beings. Unique, individualistic characters who have some degree of complexity and ambiguity and who cannot easily be categorized are called **round characters** or **three-dimensional characters.**

Round characters are not inherently superior to flat characters. The terms merely imply how different characters function within the framework of a story. In fact, flat characters may function *better* than round characters when attention needs to be directed away from personalities and toward the meaning of the action—for example, in an allegory.

ALLEGORY

A story in which every object, event, and person has an abstract (as opposed to merely concrete) meaning is known as an **allegory.** In allegory, each element is part of an interdependent system that tells a clear, separate, complete didactic story on a purely figurative level (Figure 3.22).

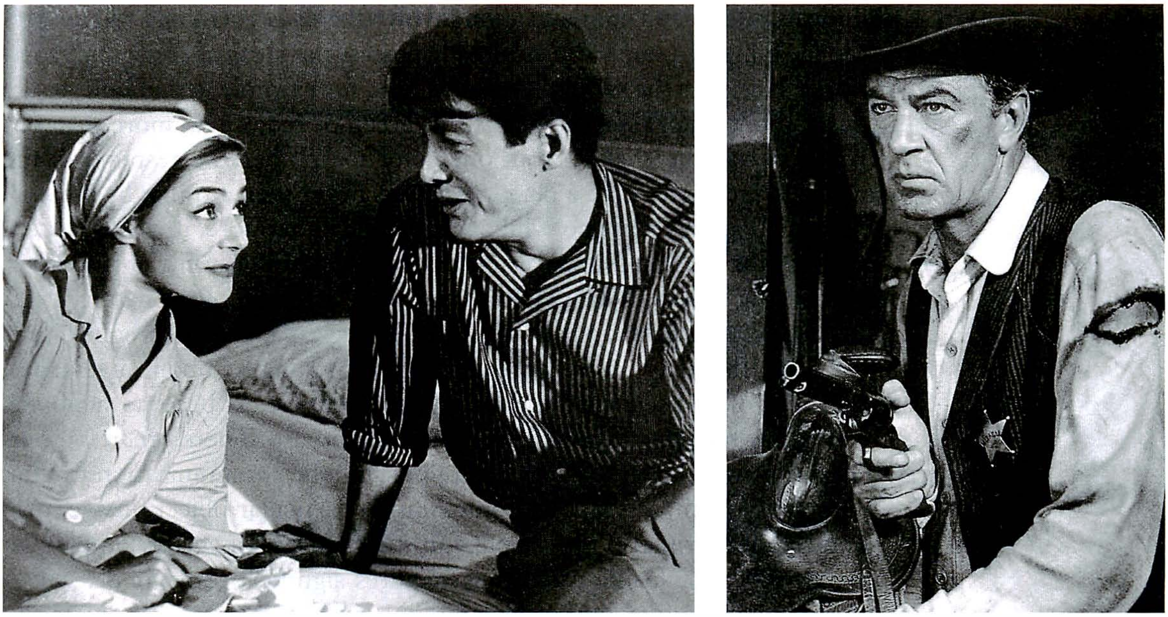


FIGURE 3.22 Allegory In *Hiroshima, Mon Amour* (left), director Alain Resnais creates a haunting allegory about love and war, focusing on the need for remembering profound and traumatic experiences. In *High Noon* (right), Gary Cooper plays a duty-bound lawman who must single-handedly face down revenge-bent desperadoes because the cowardly townspeople have deserted him. The film is generally considered to be an allegory of the McCarthy purge in Hollywood.

A major problem with allegory is the difficulty of making both levels of meaning (the concrete and the figurative) equally interesting. Often, so much importance is placed on the figurative story that we lose interest in the concrete story. Unfortunately, allegorical characters, to be effective as emblems, cannot have many unique characteristics, for the more specific the characters are, the less representative they may be. But these difficulties do not necessarily prevent allegory from being effective in cinematic form, as is evidenced by such excellent films as *Woman in the Dunes*, *Swept Away . . . by an unusual destiny in the blue sea of August* (1975), *Lord of the Flies* (1963), and *The Seventh Seal*. In both film and literature, however, the most frequently used (and more subtle) method of conveying meaning beyond the literal involves symbolism.

SYMBOLISM

In the most general terms, whether in a work of art or in everyday communications, a **symbol** is something that stands for something else. It communicates that something else by triggering, stimulating, or arousing previously associated ideas in the mind of the person perceiving the symbol.

All forms of human communication involve the use of symbols. We understand the meaning of a symbol if we already possess the ideas or concepts associated with or built into the symbol. A traffic light, for example, communicates its message symbolically. When the light turns green or red, we do more than observe with interest the change from one color to another; we respond to the symbolic message it gives. To a person who has never seen a traffic light, however, the change in color has no symbolic meaning. Therefore, it would be very dangerous for that person to walk around in the heart of a busy city at rush hour.

Approaching a work of art requires some understanding of the nature, function, and importance of its symbols. Almost anything can take on symbolic meaning in a film. In many stories, the setting has strong symbolic overtones. Characters are often used symbolically, and once characters become symbolic, the conflicts in which they take part become symbolic also. Therefore, it is essential to become aware of the special nature of symbolic communication in film.

In any story form, a symbol is something (a particular object, image, person, sound, event, or place) that stands for, suggests, or triggers a complex set of ideas, attitudes, or feelings and thus acquires significance beyond itself. A symbol is a special kind of energized communication unit that functions somewhat like a storage battery. Once a symbol is charged with a set of associations (ideas, attitudes, or feelings), it is capable of storing those associations and communicating them any time it is used.

Universal and Natural Symbols

Filmmakers can use universal symbols, or they can create symbols for a particular film. Universal symbols are precharged—ready-made symbols infused with values and associations that most of the people in a given culture understand. By using objects, images, or persons that automatically evoke complex associations, filmmakers save themselves the job of creating each of the associated attitudes and feelings within the context of each film. They need only use symbols appropriately to make full use of their communication potential. Thus, the American flag (triggering the complex set of feelings and values that we associate with America) and the cross (evoking a variety of values and feelings associated with Christianity) can be used effectively as symbols for a broad audience. Viewers' reactions will vary according to their attitudes toward the ideas represented, but all people from the same culture will understand the general symbolic message.

Many universal symbols are charged with their meanings externally—through past associations with people, events, places, or ideas—rather than through their own inherent characteristics. For example, there is nothing inherent in the shape of a cross to suggest Christianity; rather, the religious values and ideas attached over the ages to the crucifixion of Christ have given the cross its symbolic meaning.

Some objects, however, have natural or inherent qualities that make them particularly well suited to be symbols. A buzzard is an easily recognized symbol of death. Buzzards are black, a color associated with death, and the habits of the buzzard also make it an effective symbol. A buzzard is a scavenger, a creature that feeds only on dead flesh and will not even come near a living creature. Also important is the buzzard's visibility: By soaring in long, lazy circles over an area where something is dead or dying, the buzzard signals the presence of death. Thus, buzzards communicate the idea of death indirectly but clearly, so an observer need not see the dead object itself to know that death is present. The habits or lifestyles of hawks and doves are equally significant in determining their symbolic meaning.

Creating Symbolic Meanings

In many cases, filmmakers cannot depend on precharged symbols but must create symbols by charging them with meaning derived from the context of the film itself. They do this by loading a concrete object or image with a charge of associations, feelings, and attitudes and then employing it to evoke those associations. In charging an object with symbolic value, storytellers have a dual purpose. First, they want to expand the meaning of the symbolic object in order to communicate meanings, feelings, and ideas. Second, they want to make clear that the object is being treated symbolically. Thus, many of the methods used to charge an object symbolically also serve as clues that the object is taking on symbolic value.

There are four principal methods of charging symbols:

1. **Repetition.** Perhaps the most obvious way of charging an object is by drawing attention to it more often than a simple surface object might seem to deserve. Repetition increases the significance and symbolic power of the object at each appearance (Figure 3.23).
2. **Value Placed on an Object by a Character.** An object is charged symbolically when a particular character places value and importance on it. By showing extraordinary concern for an object (as in the father's obsession with his Windex bottle in *My Big Fat Greek Wedding*), or by repeatedly mentioning an object or idea in the dialogue, the character indicates that an object or idea has more than ordinary significance. Symbols charged in this way may be of relatively minor importance, functioning only to offer insight into the character. Or they may have major significance to the overall dramatic structure, as illustrated by the famous "Rosebud" symbol in *Citizen Kane*—or, more significantly, the glass snow globe used in the Welles film (Figure 3.24).
3. **Context.** Sometimes an object or image takes on symbolic power simply through its placement in the film, and its symbolic charge is built up

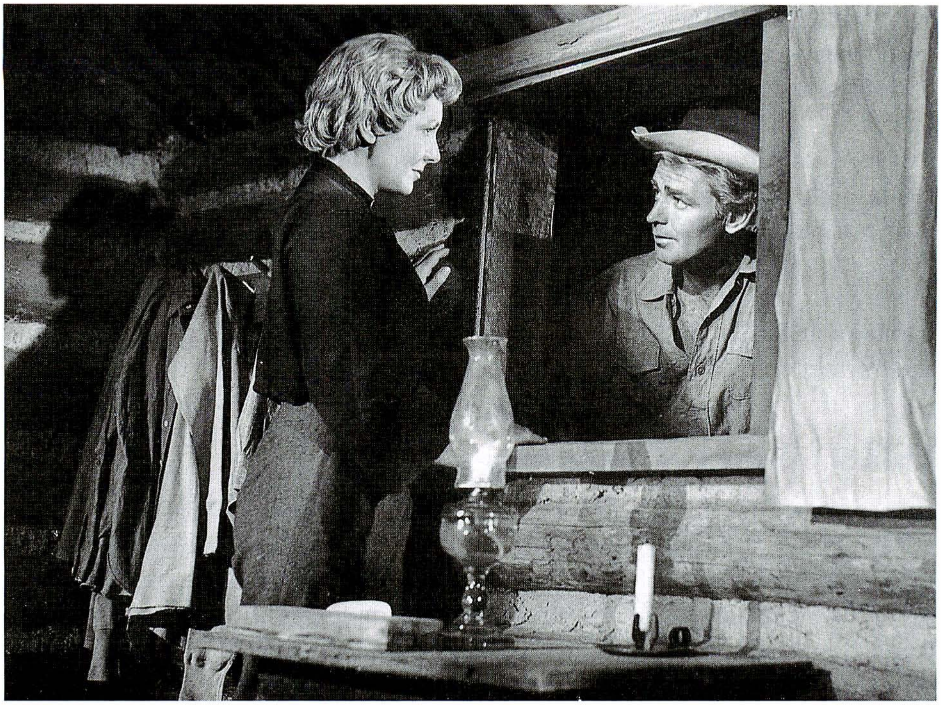


FIGURE 3.23 Repeated Images of Symbolic Separation In this scene from *Shane*, the farmer's wife, Marian (Jean Arthur), stands inside the house while Shane (Alan Ladd), the ex-gunfighter who is now the farmer's hired hand, stands outside looking in the window. This symbolic separation is repeated visually throughout the film. Shane is always an outsider, present with but not part of the warm family circle or the close-knit group of farmers. On several occasions, Shane is framed through an open doorway, looking in on a warm family scene or sitting off to the side by himself in a meeting of the farmers. The scene shown here has additional levels of meaning: Shane and Marian have a strong but unspoken mutual attraction but keep a wall between themselves out of basic human decency and their mutual love and respect for the farmer (Van Heflin).

through associations created (1) by its relationship to other visual objects in the same frame, (2) by the editorial juxtaposition of one shot with another, or (3) by the object's importance in the film's structure.

A symbolic image in the film version of Tennessee Williams's play *Suddenly, Last Summer*—the Venus flytrap—illustrates all three methods of charging an image through context. The Venus flytrap is a large, white-flowered plant whose leaves have two hinged blades. When an insect enters the space between them, the blades close like a mouth, trapping the insect inside. The plant then feeds on the insect. In *Suddenly, Last Summer*, once the nature of the plant and its feeding habits are made clear, the

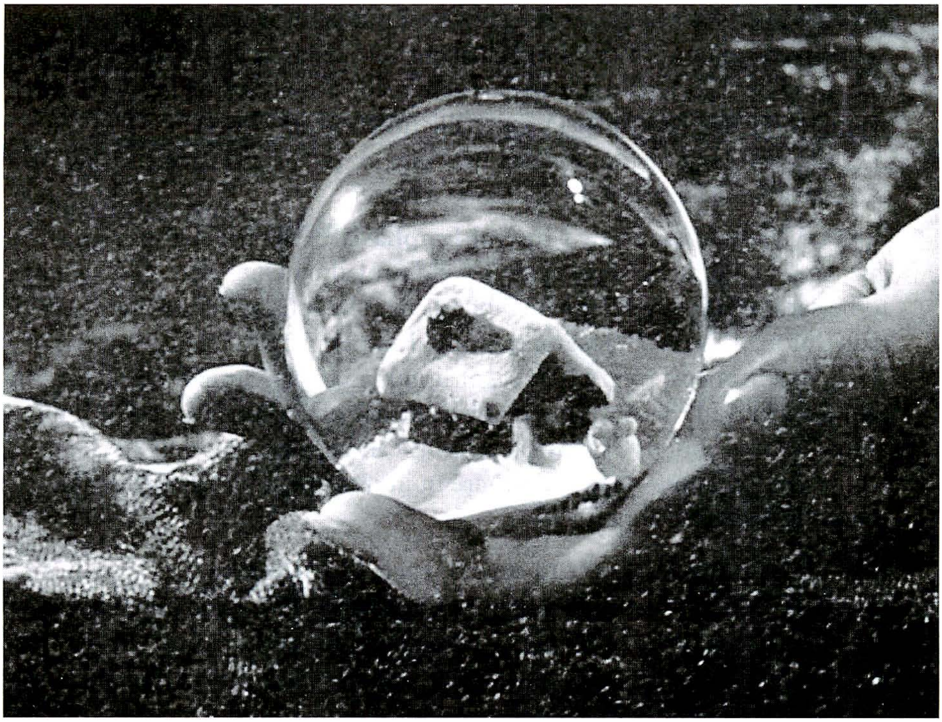


FIGURE 3.24 Symbolic Details One critic, Robert Carringer, has convincingly argued that the most potently charged symbol in *Citizen Kane* is a simple glass paperweight—a snow globe that is broken in the film's famous opening scene.

Venus flytrap is used to suggest or represent a major idea—the carnivorousness or cannibalism of the characters.

The plant's nature is explained by Mrs. Venable (Katharine Hepburn), and the plant occupies a position near her chair so they share the same visual frame. As Mrs. Venable talks about her dead son, Sebastian, we begin to see the relationship between the woman and the plant, for her conversation reveals her to be a cannibal, savagely feeding on and deriving her nourishment from the memory of her son. The same effect could be achieved through editorial juxtaposition—by cutting immediately from a close-up of Mrs. Venable's mouth as she drones on about her son to a close-up of the jaws of her Venus flytrap snapping shut on an unsuspecting insect.

Even if it were not repeatedly charged within the context of the film, the Venus flytrap could still function as a symbol. Consider, for example, how the image might be used only at the beginning and the end of the film: As the film begins, a close-up of the Venus flytrap serves as a background to the titles. Then, as the titles draw to a close, an insect lands on the flower and is trapped as the jaws close suddenly around it. The plant is not seen again until the film's closing shot, where it appears, seducing another insect into its folds. In this case its position in the film's structure would force us to consider its symbolic function and its meaning to the film as a whole. The film *Cabaret* uses distorted, "progressive" images of Nazi armbands in precisely this same manner.

4. **Special Visual, Aural, or Musical Emphasis.** Film has unique ways of charging and underscoring symbols and providing clues that an object is to be seen as a symbol. Visual emphasis may be achieved through dominant colors, lingering close-ups, unusual camera angles, changes from sharp to soft focus, freeze frames, or lighting effects. Similar emphasis can also be achieved through sound effects or use of the musical score. Individual natural sounds or musical refrains can become symbolic in their own right if complex associations are built into them by any of the three methods discussed above.

Although filmmakers want to express their ideas clearly, they may not always want to express them too simply or too clearly. Thus, some symbols may be very simple and clear, and others may be complex and ambiguous. Symbols of the latter type can seldom be interpreted with one clear and certain meaning; there may be no single right answer to what a given symbol means, but several equally valid but different interpretations. This is not to say that a filmmaker using ambiguous symbols is deliberately trying to confuse us. The intention is usually to use complexity to enrich or enhance the work.

Symbolic Patterns and Progressions

Although symbols may function singly without a clear relationship to other symbols, they often interact with other symbols in what might be called *symbolic patterns*. In such a case, the filmmaker expresses the same idea through several symbols instead of relying on only one. The resulting symbolic pattern may have a certain progression, so that the symbols grow in value or power as the film progresses.

An excellent example is the complex pattern of symbols that gradually builds up to the climax of *Suddenly, Last Summer*. The idea of a savage universe inhabited by creatures who devour each other is established by the Venus flytrap and Mrs. Venable. Other symbolic images with the same meaning are used to achieve a pattern of ever increasing dramatic power. The third symbolic image in this pattern appears in Mrs. Venable's description of a sight she and Sebastian witnessed on the Encantadas:[10]

> Over a narrow black beach of the Encantadas . . . the just-hatched seaturtles scrambled out of the sandpits and started their race to the sea. . . . To escape the flesh-eating birds that made the sky almost as black as the beach! . . . And the sand was

> all alive, all alive, as the hatched seaturtles made their dash for the sea, while the birds hovered and swooped to attack and hovered and—swooped to attack! They were diving down on the hatched seaturtles, turning them over to expose their soft undersides, tearing the undersides open and rending and eating their flesh. . . .

Having set up three symbols for the same idea (the Venus flytrap, Mrs. Venable, and the birds), the playwright gives us a suggestion of their significance as Mrs. Venable continues her story:

> He spent the whole blazing equatorial day in the crow's nest of the schooner watching this thing on the beach until it was too dark to see it, and when he came down from the rigging he said, "Well, now I've seen Him," and he meant God. . . . He meant that God shows a savage face to people and shouts some fierce things at them, it's all we see or hear of Him. . . .

The next shocking image in the pattern occurs in Catherine's (Elizabeth Taylor) description of Sebastian himself:

> We were going to blonds, blonds were next on the menu. . . . Cousin Sebastian said he was famished for blonds, he was fed up with the dark ones and was famished for blonds . . . that's how he talked about people, as if they were—items on a menu—"That one's delicious-looking, that one is appetizing," or "That one is not appetizing"—I think because he was nearly half-starved from living on pills and salads. . . .

As the next image in the pattern begins to develop, there is an effort to link the children that constitute this image with the earlier image of the carnivorous birds:

> There were naked children along the beach, a band of frightfully thin and dark naked children that looked like a flock of plucked birds, and they would come darting up to the barbed wire fence as if blown there by the wind, the hot white wind from the sea, all crying out "Pan, pan, pan!" . . . The word for bread, and they made gobbling voices with their little black mouths, stuffing their little black fists to their mouths and making those gobbling noises with frightful grins!

At the film's climax, the image of the carnivorous birds is repeated, but this time on a completely human level, which makes it even more shocking:

> Sebastian started to run and they all screamed at once and seemed to fly in the air, they outran him so quickly. I screamed. I heard Sebastian scream, he screamed just once before this flock of black plucked little birds that pursued him and overtook him halfway up the hill.
>
> I ran down . . . screaming out "Help" all the way, till—. . . Waiters, police, and others—ran out of the buildings and rushed back up the hill with me. When we got back to where my Cousin Sebastian had disappeared in the flock of featherless little black sparrows, he—he was lying naked as they had been naked against a

> white wall, and this you won't believe, nobody has believed it, nobody would believe it, nobody, nobody on earth could possibly believe it, and I don't blame them!—they had devoured parts of him.
>
> Torn or cut parts of him away with their hands or knives or maybe those jagged tin cans they made music with, they had torn bits of him away and stuffed them into those gobbling fierce little empty mouths of theirs. . . .

This incident takes place in a village whose name is also symbolic: Cabeza de Lobo, which means "Head of the Wolf," another savage and carnivorous image.

Thus, by means of a complex pattern of symbols, the film makes a statement about the human condition. The idea of Earth as a savage jungle where creatures devour each other is made clear by a series of symbols: the Venus flytrap, the turtle-devouring birds, Sebastian's own hungers, and the little human cannibals of Cabeza de Lobo. Williams has arranged these symbols so that they become increasingly vivid, powerful, and shocking as the story unfolds.

Symbolic Values in Conflict

Some conflicts in films are self-contained and have no meaning beyond themselves. Most conflicts, however, tend to take on symbolic qualities so that the individuals or the forces involved represent something beyond themselves. It seems natural for the forces in opposition to align themselves with different generalized concepts or value systems, and even the most ordinary whodunit and typical western at least vaguely imply a conflict between law and order and lawlessness and chaos, or simply between good and evil. Other symbolic ideas that might be represented by a film's conflict are civilization versus barbarism, sensual versus spiritual values, change versus tradition, idealism versus pragmatism, and the individual versus society. Almost any conflict can be stated in symbolic or generalized terms. Because comprehension of such symbolic interpretations is often essential to identifying and understanding a film's theme, the major conflict should be analyzed on both the literal and the symbolic levels.

Metaphors

Closely related to symbolism is the filmmaker's use of **visual metaphors.** Whereas a symbol stands for or represents something else, a visual metaphor is a comparison that helps us better understand an image because of its similarity to another image. This comparison is usually achieved through the editorial juxtaposition of two images in two successive shots. An example is a metaphor in Sergei Eisenstein's *Strike:* Shots of workers being pursued and killed are alternated with shots of a butcher slaughtering a bull.

In this example, the secondary image (the butchering) is extrinsic—that is, it has no place within the context of the scene itself but is imposed artificially

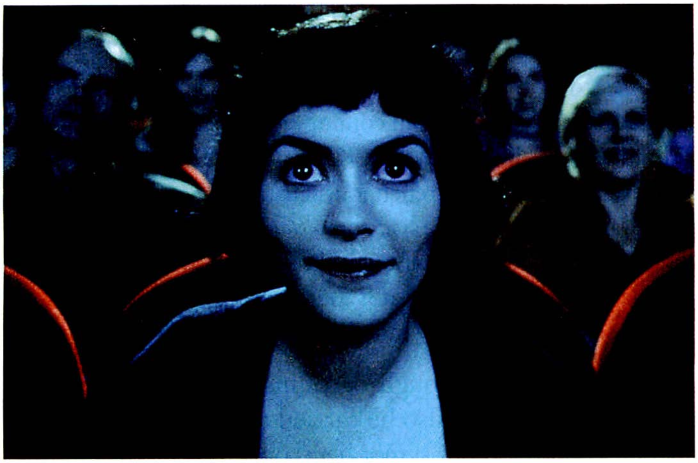


FIGURE 3.25 Visual Metaphors In Jean-Pierre Jeunet's *Amélie*, a young waitress (Audrey Tatou) experiences great conflicts about the direction her life will take. Whether she is merely enjoying a movie or trying to assist her father and her neighbors in amusing ways, the director manages to translate the tensions of Amélie's inner reality into delightful images. A world-travelling garden gnome plays a significant role, for example, and at one point, the protagonist is literally reduced to a puddle of love.

into the scene by the filmmaker. In a realistic or naturalistic film, **extrinsic metaphors** may seem forced, heavy-handed, or even ludicrous, destroying a sense of reality that may be very important to the film. In contrast, comedy or fantasy films can use such images freely, as can serious films that stress an interior or subjective viewpoint. The French film *Amélie* relishes its judicious use of such metaphors, which sometimes also serve as visual puns (Figure 3.25).

Intrinsic metaphors emerge directly from the context of the scene itself and are more natural and usually more subtle than extrinsic metaphors. *Apocalypse Now* contains an intrinsic metaphor very similar to the extrinsic butchering metaphor in Eisenstein's *Strike*. While Captain Willard (Martin Sheen) is in the temple carrying out his assignment—"terminating Kurtz (Marlon Brando) with extreme prejudice"—the camera cuts to the courtyard, where a giant bull is axed in a gruesome ritual sacrifice.

The dramatic power and communicative effectiveness of any symbol or metaphor depend also on originality and freshness. A tired and worn-out symbol can no longer convey profound meanings, and a metaphor that has become a cliché becomes a hindrance rather than a help. This is problematic in watching older films, for metaphors and symbols that are clichés today might actually have been fresh and original when the film was made.

Overreading Symbolism

However, symbolic interpretation can be carried to ridiculous extremes, as this account by *North by Northwest* screenwriter Ernest Lehman reveals:

> I once saw a French film magazine filled with diagrams of the movements of the characters in *North by Northwest* and how they all had meaning: going from left to right here . . . and scenes with circular movements there. Hitch and I used to laugh sometimes when we read about the symbolism in his pictures, particularly

> in *Family Plot.* By mistake a propman had two pieces of wood set up so they looked vaguely like a cross, and the car goes downhill and crashes through a field, goes through a fence and knocks over the cross. So some learned New York critic commented: There's Hitchcock's anti-Catholicism coming out once again. When I was at the Cannes Film Festival with *Family Plot*, Karen Black, Bruce Dern and I attended a press conference, and some French journalist had the license plate in the picture all worked out: 885 DJU. He had some *elaborate* explanation for those numbers. When he got through explaining it, I said, "I hate to tell you this, but the reason I used that license plate was that it used to be my own, and I felt it would be legally safe to use." So much for symbolism.[11]

We should always keep in mind that although decoding a film's symbols may lead to rich and profound insights, it can also be carried to the point of absurdity. As Sigmund Freud, the granddaddy of symbolism, once put it: "Sometimes a cigar is just a cigar."

IRONY

Irony, in the most general sense, is a literary, dramatic, and cinematic technique involving the juxtaposition or linking of opposites. By emphasizing sharp and startling contrasts, reversals, and paradoxes, irony adds an intellectual dimension and achieves both comic and tragic effects at the same time. To be clearly understood, irony must be broken down into its various types and explained in terms of the contexts in which it appears.

Dramatic Irony

Dramatic irony derives its effect primarily from a contrast between ignorance and knowledge. The filmmaker provides the audience with information that a character lacks. When the character speaks or acts in ignorance of the true state of affairs, the dramatic irony functions to create two separate meanings for each line of dialogue: (1) the meaning of the line as it is understood by the unenlightened character (a literal or face-value meaning), and (2) the meaning of the line to the enlightened audience (an ironic meaning, opposite to the literal meaning).

By knowing something that the character does not know, we gain pleasure from being in on the joke or secret (Figure 3.26). In Sophocles' drama *Oedipus Rex*, for example, Oedipus does not realize that he has already killed his father and married his mother when he refers to himself as "the child of Good Luck" and "the most fortunate of men." Because *we* are aware of the truth, we hear the line as a painful joke. On a less serious plane is an example from *Superman.* Although *we* know that Clark Kent is really Superman, Lois Lane does not. Therefore, every time Lois accuses Clark of cowardice because he disappears whenever trouble starts, we have to chuckle because of our inside knowledge.

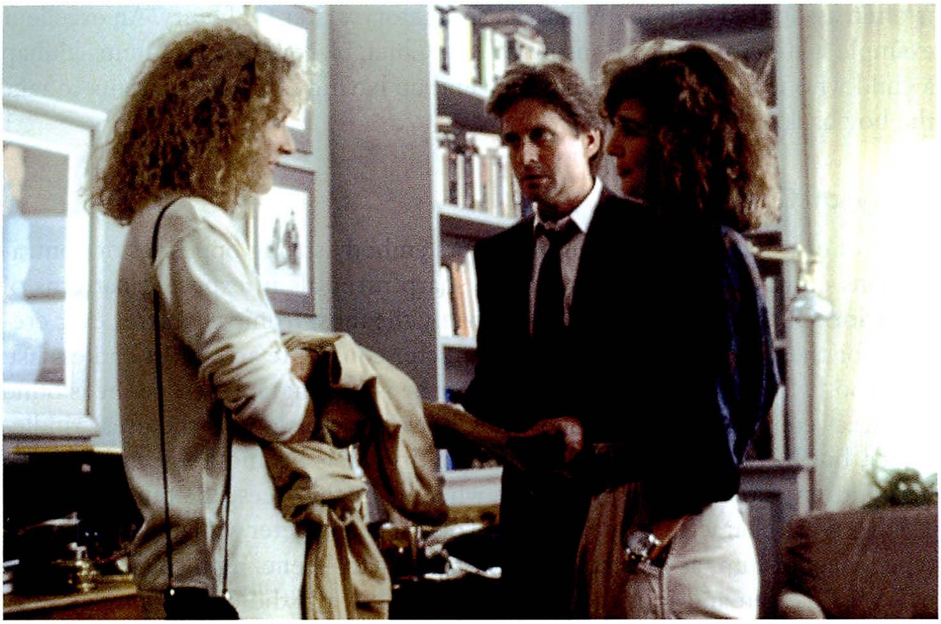


FIGURE 3.26 Dramatic Irony In this scene from *Fatal Attraction*, Anne Archer, as Michael Douglas's wife, does not have an inkling that her husband has had a torrid affair with Glenn Close, who has appeared at their apartment pretending to be interested in leasing it. Because we not only know about the affair but also know that Close is capable of extremely bizarre behavior, this relatively ordinary scene is loaded with suspense and intensifies our sympathy for the unsuspecting Archer.

Dramatic irony may function in a purely visual way, either for comic effect or to build suspense, when the camera shows us something that the character on the screen cannot see. For example, a character trying to elude a pursuer in a comic chase may be crawling toward the same corner as his pursuer, but only *we* see and anticipate the coming shock of sudden confrontation. Horror films employ similar scenes to both intensify and prolong suspense. Because of its effectiveness in enriching the emotional and intellectual impact of a story, dramatic irony has been a popular technique in literary and dramatic art since Homer employed it in the *Odyssey;* and it remains popular and effective to this day.

Irony of Situation

Irony of situation is essentially an irony of plot. It involves a sudden reversal or backfiring of events, so that the end result of a character's actions is exactly the opposite of his or her intentions. Almost the entire plot structure of *Oedipus Rex* involves irony of situation: Every move that Oedipus and Jocasta make to avoid the prophecies actually helps to bring them about. This particular type of irony is often associated with the American short story writer O. Henry. An excellent example is his story "The Ransom of Red Chief," where two hoodlums kidnap a child who is such a demon that they end up having to pay his parents to take the boy back.

Irony of Character

Irony of character occurs when characters embody strong opposites or contradictions or when their actions involve sharp reversals in expected patterns of behavior. Oedipus, for example, is probably the most ironic character ever created, for the opposites built into his character constitute an almost endless list: He is both the detective and the murderer he is seeking; he sees, yet he is blind (in direct contrast to his foil, the blind "seer" Tiresias); he is the great riddle-solver, but he does not know his own identity; he is his mother's husband and his children's brother; and in the end, when he finally "sees," he blinds himself.

Irony of character may be present when a character violates our stereotyped view of him, as illustrated by this imaginary scene. Two soldiers, played by Woody Allen and John Wayne, are trapped in a foxhole by enemy gunfire. When mortar shells start falling around the foxhole, the John Wayne character panics, buries his head under his arm, and begins sobbing uncontrollably. The Woody Allen character puts his bayonet between his teeth, grabs a grenade in each hand, and charges the enemy position alone.

Irony of Setting

Irony of setting occurs when an event takes place in a setting that is exactly the opposite of the setting we usually expect for such an event—for example, a birth in a graveyard, or a murder in an idyllic setting (Figure 3.27).

Irony of Tone

Because film communicates simultaneously on several different levels, it is well suited for many types of irony, but irony of tone can be especially effective. In essence, irony of tone involves the juxtaposition of opposites in attitudes or feelings. In literature it is exemplified by Erasmus's *The Praise of Folly*. The reader must read between the lines to discover that the work is actually a condemnation of folly. Swift's classic essay "A Modest Proposal" is another example. The author's proposal—put forth in rational, calm, and modest style—is outrageous: The Irish people ought to sell their year-old children to be eaten like suckling pigs by the wealthy English landlords. In film, such irony may be effectively provided through contrasting emotional attitudes communicated simultaneously by the soundtrack and the visual image. Consider, for example, the juxtaposition of an optimistic "What a Wonderful World" that accompanies the bombing sequence in *Good Morning, Vietnam*.

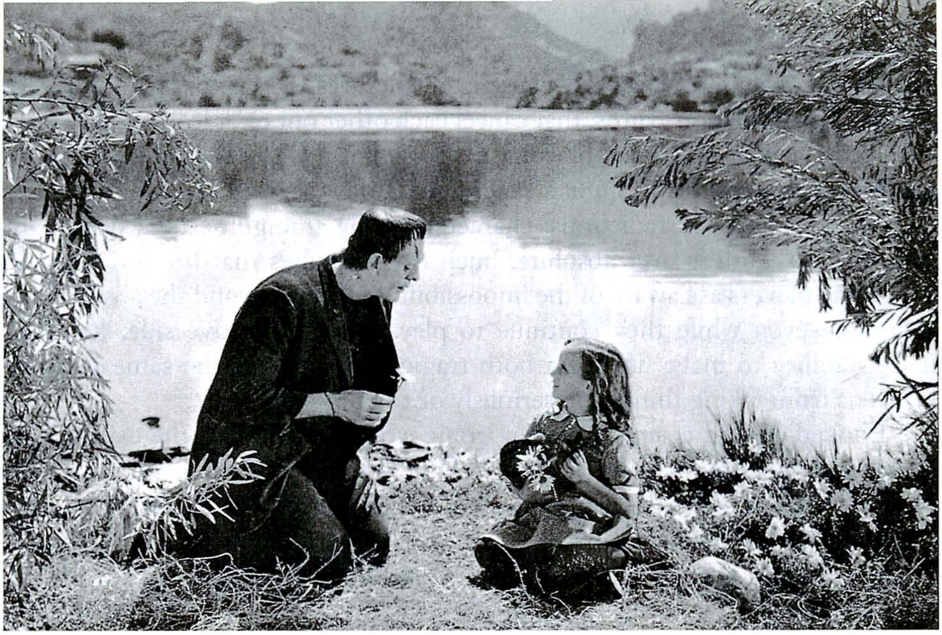


FIGURE 3.27 Irony of Setting This idyllic lakeside scene (complete with blooming flowers) seems the perfect setting for a tender moment in *Frankenstein*, when the child-like monster finds a young friend who does not fear him. For a few brief moments, they share flowers and happily toss them into the water. Then the monster realizes he has no more flowers to toss and reaches out toward the girl. . . .

Many different kinds of irony are possible in film because of film's ability to communicate on more than one level at a time. In fact, the multilayered nature can become so complex that its effect is difficult to describe. This is the case in the final scene of *Dr. Strangelove*, which combines three separate contrasting elements: (1) the visuals, composed of multiple shots of atomic mushroom clouds filmed in slow motion; (2) the soundtrack, where Vera Lynn's voice, sticky and sweet, sings "We'll Meet Again Some Sunny Day"; and (3) the action which, significantly, is the end of all life as we know it. The irony is provided by the ingenious touch of the Vera Lynn song's adding a haunting quality to the pictorial element, so that we become aware of the almost breathtaking beauty of the mushroom clouds. This ironic combination of beauty and horror creates a powerful effect. Such moments are rare in film, but the filmgoer must be constantly aware of the potential for ironic expression in the musical score, in the juxtaposition of sight and sound, and in transitions of almost any kind.

Cosmic Irony

Although irony is basically a means of expression, the continuous use of ironic techniques might indicate that the filmmaker holds a certain philosophical attitude, or ironic worldview. Because irony pictures every situation as possessing two equal sides, or truths, that cancel each other out or at least work against each other, the overall effect of ironic expression is to show the ridiculous complexity and uncertainty of human experience. Life is seen as a continuous series of paradoxes and contradictions, characterized by ambiguities and discrepancies, and no truth is ever absolute. Such irony implies that life is a game in which the players are aware of the impossibility of winning and the absurdity of the game even while they continue to play. On the positive side, however, irony's ability to make life seem both tragic and comic at the same moment keeps us from taking things too seriously or too literally.

Looked at on a cosmic scale, an ironic worldview implies the existence of some kind of supreme being or creator. Whether this supreme entity be called God, Fate, Destiny, or the Force makes little difference. The implication is that the supreme being manipulates events to deliberately frustrate and mock humankind and is entertained by what is essentially a perpetual cruel joke on the human race.

Although irony usually has a humorous effect, the humor of cosmic irony bites deep. It can bring a laugh but not of the usual kind. It will be not a belly laugh but a sudden outward gasp of air, almost a cough, that catches in the throat between the heart and mind. We laugh perhaps because it hurts too much to cry.

ANALYZING FICTIONAL AND DRAMATIC ELEMENTS

On Story

How does the film stack up against the five characteristics of a good story?

1. How well is it unified in plot or storyline?
2. What makes the story credible? Pick out specific scenes to illustrate the kinds of truth that are stressed by the film:
    a. objective truth, which follows the observable laws of probability and necessity
    b. subjective, irrational, and emotional inner truths of human nature
    c. the semblance of truth created by the filmmaker
3. What makes the film interesting? Where are its high points and its dead spots? What makes you bored by the film as a whole or by certain parts?
4. Is the film a satisfying blend of simplicity and complexity?
    a. How well is the length of the story suited to the limits of the medium?
    b. Is the film a simple formula that allows you to predict the outcome at the halfway point, or does it effectively maintain suspense until the very end? If the ending is shocking or surprising, how does it carry out the tendencies of the earlier parts of the story?
    c. Where in the film are implication and suggestion effectively employed? Where is the film simple and direct?

    d. Is the view of life reflected by the story simple or complex? What factors influenced your answer?
5. How honest and sincere is the film in its handling of emotional material? Where are the emotional effects overdone? Where is understatement used?

On the Significance of the Title

1. Why is the title appropriate? What does it mean in terms of the whole film?
2. How many different levels of meaning are expressed in the title? How does each level apply to the film as a whole?
3. If the title is ironic, what opposite meanings or contrasts does it suggest?
4. If you recognize the title as being an allusion, why is the work or passage alluded to an appropriate one?
5. If the title calls your attention to a key scene, why is that scene important?
6. How is the title related to the theme?

On Dramatic Structure

1. Does the film use linear (chronological) or nonlinear structure? If it begins with expository material, does it capture your interest quickly enough, or would a beginning "in the middle of things" be better? At what point in the story could an *in medias res* beginning start?
2. If flashbacks are used, what is their purpose and how effective are they?

On Conflict

1. Identify the major conflict.
2. Is the conflict internal (individual against self), external, or a combination of the two? Is it primarily a physical or a psychological conflict?
3. Express the major conflict in general or abstract terms (for example, brains versus brawn, human being[s] against nature).
4. How is the major conflict related to the theme?

On Characterization

1. Identify the central (most important) character or characters. Which characters are static and which are developing? Which characters are flat and which are round?
2. What methods of characterization are employed and how effective are they?
3. Which of the characters are realistic and which are exaggerated for effect?
4. What about each character's motivation? Which actions grow naturally out of the characters themselves? Where does the filmmaker seem to be manipulating the characters to fit the film's purpose?
5. What facets of the central character's personality are revealed by what he or she chooses or rejects?
6. Which minor characters function to bring out personality traits of the major characters, and what do these minor characters reveal?
7. Pick out bits of dialogue, images, or scenes that you consider especially effective in revealing character, and tell why they are effective.
8. Which characters function as stock characters and stereotypes? How can their presence in the film be justified?

On Symbolism

1. What symbols appear in the film, and what do they represent?
2. What universal or natural symbols are employed? How effective are they?
3. Which symbols derive their meaning solely from their context in the film? How are they charged with symbolic value? (In other words, how do you know they are symbols and how do you arrive at their meaning?)
4. How are the special capabilities of film (the image, the soundtrack, and the musical score) employed to charge symbols with their meaning?
5. Which symbols fit into a larger pattern or progression with other symbols in the film?
6. How are the major symbols related to the theme?
7. Is the story structured around its symbolic meanings to the extent that it can be called an allegory?
8. Which symbols' meanings are clear and simple? Which symbols are complex and ambiguous? What gives them this quality?
9. Are visual metaphors employed effectively? Are they primarily extrinsic (imposed artificially on the scene by editing) or intrinsic (a natural part of the setting)?
10. How fresh and original are the film's symbols and metaphors? If they seem clichéd or timeworn, where have you encountered them before?

On Irony

1. What examples of irony can you find in the film?
2. Is irony employed to such a significant degree that the whole film takes on an ironic tone? Is an ironic worldview implied?
3. Do any particular examples of irony achieve comic and tragic effects at the same time?
4. Where in the film is suspense or humor achieved through dramatic irony?
5. How do the ironies contribute to the theme?

VIDEO EXERCISES

To locate the sequences for these videocassette exercises, set the VCR counter at "0000" or, for real-time counters, at "0:00:00" at the very end of the studio logo, just as the "movie proper" begins (the movie proper includes such things as "Paramount Pictures Presents," opening credits, and the main title). Then, to view the section of film dealt with in each exercise, fast-forward until the numbers listed here in brackets appear on the VCR counter. In using DVDs, simply identify and choose the appropriate chapters in the lists provided on most discs.

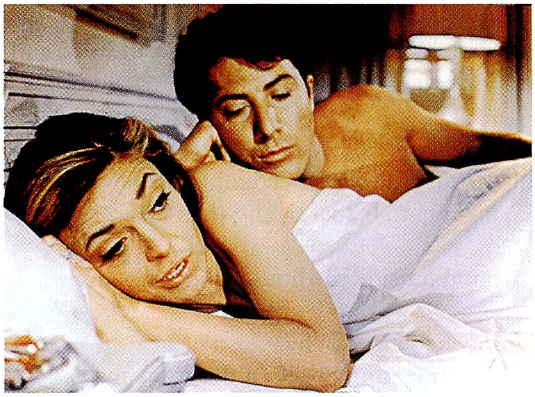
1. **Treatment of Emotional Material.** Watch the final segments of *Love Story* [4160 to end; 1:28:03 to end] and *Terms of Endearment* [5100 to end; 1:52:42 to end]. Describe the treatment of the emotional materials in each of the stories. Where is understatement used? Which of the two films better mixes its emotions of sorrow with humor? How are special film techniques like

music and visual elements employed? Which ending is the most powerful and why?

2. **Title Information.** In addition to the words of the title, the visual design of the title (the way it appears on the screen) also has significance. Look at the main titles and opening credits of *Bonnie and Clyde*, *Superman*, *The Grapes of Wrath*, *Citizen Kane*, *The Producers* (2005), and *To Kill a Mockingbird.* What is revealed in or suggested by the design of the titles and the way that information is put on the screen? How does the soundtrack or title music reinforce that information?
3. **Dramatic Structure 1.** Watch the first 15 minutes of *The Grapes of Wrath* and *Citizen Kane*, and then answer questions 1 and 2 in "On Dramatic Structure" on page 85.
4. **Dramatic Structure 2.** Directors often structure scenes in unusual ways to achieve dramatic effects. Watch the "Tom Joad's Homecoming" scene from *The Grapes of Wrath* [1620 to 1945; 0:23:04 to 0:28:42], and then answer these questions:
   a. Why do Tom and Casey hang around outside the house when they arrive, instead of going right in?
   b. What happens to Casey during this sequence? Why?
   c. Why do Connie and Rose of Sharon ride in the back of the truck instead of in the cab with Al?
   d. How are all these things important to the effectiveness of this sequence?
5. **Characterization.** Watch the first 20 minutes of *Casablanca*, paying special attention to every bit of information, both visual and verbal, that relates to the character Rick (Humphrey Bogart). What do we know about Rick at the end of this short segment?
6. **Symbolism**
   a. Watch the first 30 minutes of *The Seventh Seal* and *All That Jazz.* Characters representing Death appear in both films. Focus your attention on these characters, and then answer questions 3, 4, 5, and 6 in "On Symbolism" on page 86.
   b. Watch the first 5 minutes of *Summer of '42.* During the opening voice-over, the camera very clearly charges an object with symbolic value. What is the symbolic object, how is its importance identified, and how does it relate to the film as a whole?
   c. Watch the last sequence in *Patton* [Part II: 4220 to end; 1:06:00 to end]. While a voice-over tells us of the practice of honoring conquering Roman generals, a visual image suggests a symbolic facet of Patton's personality that has been repeated throughout the film. What is the image and what does it suggest?
7. **Irony.** Watch the final sequences of *Dr. Strangelove* [4460 to end; 1:30:00 to end] and the baptismal sequence in *The Godfather* [Cassette 2:2515 to 2875; 0:39:38 to 0:46:08], and explain how the contrasting elements function together to create an extremely powerful effect. In your discussion, consider the role played by all the various film elements (visual details, dialogue, music, sound effects, editing, and so on).

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

[Some movies have virtually self-contained scenes or sections that can be lifted from their feature-film contexts and examined as if they were mini-movies themselves. The following suggestion is the first of many similar ones in this book. In each case, follow the instructions for "isolating" these passages on readily available DVDs and study such "cinema samplers" as complete, unified works, rather than as mere fragments.]



Examine the fictional and dramatic elements in one of the most celebrated scenes in modern cinema: Chapter 10 ("The Conversation") of the "Special Edition" DVD version of the 1967 film *The Graduate.* The location is a Taft Hotel guest room; the scene begins with Benjamin Braddock (Dustin Hoffman) begging Mrs. Robinson (Anne Bancroft) to talk, "this time," and ends with a directly contradictory request ("Let's not talk at all").

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

The Art of Screenwriting

Taxi Driver (Collector's Edition):
An interactive feature makes it easy for the viewer to move back and forth between completed scenes and corresponding pages in Paul Schrader's shooting script. (*Note:* Many other DVDs advertise this kind of feature, but most of them work only through the DVD-ROM function.)

A Beautiful Mind (Two-Disc Awards Edition):
On disc two, a featurette called "Inside a Writer's Mind" presents a conversation with screenwriter Akiva Goldsman.

Chinatown:
This disc includes an interview with screenwriter Robert Towne.

The Sound of Music (Five Star Edition):
Disc two features, among other supplemental materials, a thirty-six-minute audio interview with screenwriter Ernest Lehman.

Gosford Park (Collector's Edition):
Screenwriter Julian Fellowes offers here a full commentary track.

FILMS FOR STUDY

Affliction (1998)
All the King's Men (1949)
Amélie (2001)
Bad Education (2004)
Batman Begins (2005)
Billy Budd (1962)
Catch-22 (1970)
Citizen Kane (1941)
Collateral (2004)
The Contender (2000)
Downfall (2004)
Frida (2002)
The Good Girl (2002)
Hustle & Flow (2005)
Identity (2003)
Lord of the Flies (1963)
Million Dollar Baby (2004)
Napoleon Dynamite (2004)
The Passion of the Christ (2004)
Punch Drunk Love (2002)
Reservoir Dogs (1992)
Spirited Away (2001)
The Squid and the Whale (2005)
The Sweet Hereafter (1997)
Syriana (2005)
Three Kings (1999)
Traffic (2000)
2046 (2004)
The Upside of Anger (2005)
A Very Long Engagement (2004)
The Village (2004)
Walk the Line (2005)
Woman in the Dunes (1964)

4

VISUAL DESIGN

Production designers function as architects, interior designers, . . . historians, . . . diplomats, and, ultimately, observers of human behaviors—and all of the fragilities of the human heart. . . .

—WYNN THOMAS PRODUCTION DESIGNER

The story, incorporating many of the fictional and dramatic elements discussed in Chapter 3 and shaped into a screenplay format, is the basis and the starting point for any film production. But even a beautifully structured and written screenplay is little more than a bare skeleton for a motion picture. The key members of the production team who together will plan the visual design or look of the film—the director, the cinematographer, the production designer, and the costumer—must analyze that skeleton. Each member of this team focuses on a single goal: creating a master plan for a consistent visual texture or style that is artistically suited to the film story to be told.

To accomplish this goal, the production team needs to answer a number of extremely important questions: Does the story to be filmed demand color, or would black and white be more effective? Do the story and its setting require a wide-screen format, or would the standard screen frame work better? What kind of lighting will best convey the mood or tone of the story? What aspects of the story's setting should be emphasized, and can this emphasis best be accomplished in a studio or on location? What kind of costumes and makeup will best fit the personalities and lifestyles of the characters? Answering these questions requires weighing a variety of complex factors.

COLOR VERSUS BLACK AND WHITE

Planning the look of a film begins with considering a question about the most basic element of a movie's style: Should the story be photographed in color or in black and white? Forty years ago, this decision was a critical part of design planning for most movies. Color photography had become more than a novelty, and new film stocks and processing techniques were offering filmmakers opportunities for greater creativity and flexibility. But although color photography was quickly becoming the preference of movie audiences, many directors, cinematographers, and production designers maintained their loyalty to black and white. They felt that black-and-white images kept audiences focused on the characters and the story being told, helping them avoid distraction from gaudy, cluttered backgrounds. Some filmmakers believed that shooting in color was less artistic, because color photography did not require the subtle lighting they used when shooting in black and white. Director John Ford explains his preference for black and white:

> [Color is] much easier than black-and-white for the cameraman. It's a cinch to work in, if you've got any eye at all for color and composition. But black-and-white is pretty tough—you've got to know your job and be very careful to lay your shadows properly and get the perspective right. In color—there it is; but it can go awfully wrong and throw a picture off. There are certain pictures, like *The Quiet Man*, that call for color—not a blatant kind—but a soft, misty color. For a good dramatic story, though, I much prefer to work in black-and-white; you'll probably say I'm old-fashioned, but black-and-white is real photography.[1]

Even as late as 1971, director Peter Bogdanovich consciously chose to film *The Last Picture Show* in black and white. He remembers,

> I didn't want the film to look pretty. I didn't want it to be a nostalgia piece. . . . Color always had tendency to prettify, and I didn't want that.[2]

Eventually, the audience demand to see color images—both in the movie theater and on television screens—forced filmmakers to adapt and to develop new techniques that incorporated the subtleties of black-and-white filmmaking with the added richness and depth made possible by the use of color. Most modern filmmakers feel that color cinematography allows them to create more powerful, realistic images and to communicate better with audiences. As members of the design team plan the look of a film, they are likely to consider establishing a **color palette**—a limited number of specific colors used or emphasized throughout the film to subtly communicate various aspects of character and story to the viewer. Color used in this way becomes more than mere decoration for the film; it enhances the movie's dramatic elements. Cinematographer Nestor Almendros says:

> I prefer color. The image carries more information, it reveals more. I am nearsighted, and color helps me see, interpret, "read" an image. As it reached its apogee, black-and-white cinematography ended its cycle and exhausted its practical possibilities. In color photography there is still room for experimentation.[3]

Although the role of black-and-white cinematography in modern film is greatly diminished, black and white is making a small comeback. It is sometimes contrasted with color images for various special effects. Since the late 1970s, however, more than 95 percent of all American feature films have been made in color. Thus, filmmakers need to stay current with developments in color photography and keep its impact on viewers in mind as they plan a movie's visual design. (For a detailed examination of the use of color, see Chapter 7.)

SCREEN FORMAT (ASPECT RATIO)

Another important element for the design team to consider is screen format—the size and shape of the projected image. The visual boundaries established for the image dictate the photographic composition of the frame and, according to cinematographer Nestor Almendros, help the audience know how to read beyond the obvious information provided on the screen:

> I need the frame with its four sides. I need its limits. In art, there is no artistic transposition without limits. . . . And what counts in two-dimensional art is not only what is seen but what is not seen, and what does not let itself be seen. . . .

> By means of the camera's viewfinder, the outside world goes through a process of selection and organization. Things become pertinent; thanks to the parameters of the frame, they take shape in relation to vertical and horizontal limits. We at once know what is good and what is bad.[4]

Essentially, there are two basic shapes (**aspect ratios**) for the projected image: standard screen and wide screen. The width of the **standard screen** is 1.33 times its height. The width of the **wide screen** (known by trade names such as **Cinemascope, Panavision,** and Vistavision) varies from 1.85 to 2.55 times its height. The different dimensions and shapes of these screens create different types of compositional problems (Figures 4.1, 4.2).

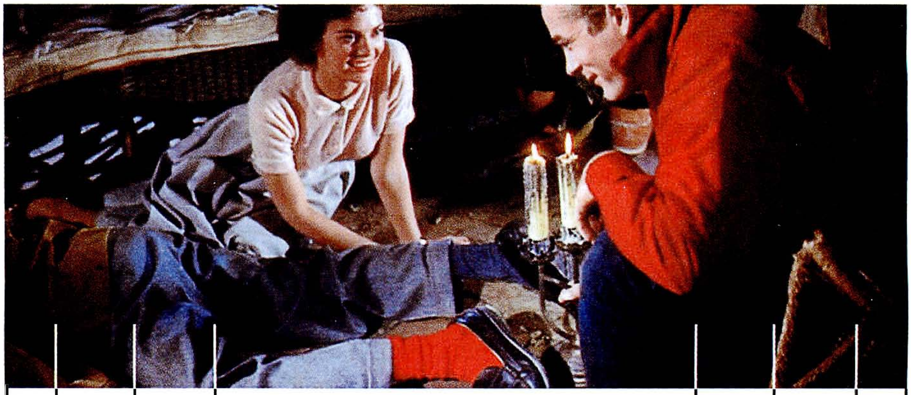
The wide screen lends itself to a panoramic view of a vast landscape or large numbers of people, as well as to the rapid motion characteristic of westerns, war dramas, historical pageants, and fast-paced action/adventure dramas. The standard screen is more suitable for an intimate love story set in a small apartment, requiring the frequent use of tight close-ups and very little movement of subjects in space. A wide screen can actually distort an image and detract from the film's visual effectiveness if the physical set is too narrow for its field of view. The wide-screen formats such as Cinemascope and Panavision, however, can contribute significantly to the effectiveness of horror or suspense films. A kind of visual tension is created by a slow **panning** or dollying camera that heightens suspense by bringing new visual information into view at the outer edges of the screen, increasing our feeling of vulnerability.

FILM STOCK

Film stock may have an important effect on the visual image. **Smooth-grain film stock** produces an image that is extremely smooth, or slick. Such film also registers a wide range of subtle differences between light and dark, enabling the director to create fine tones, artistic shadows, and contrasts. Because of the clarity and artistic perfection of these images, they often have a more powerful visual impact than does reality.

Rough-grain film stock produces a rough, grainy-textured image with harsh contrasts between blacks and whites and almost no subtle contrasts. Because newspaper pictures and newsreels have this coarse, rough-grain look, this type of film has become associated with a documentary here-and-now quality, as though reality had to be captured quickly, with little concern for clarity and artistic perfection.

A cinematographer may employ both types of stock for different effects. A romantic love scene would probably be shot with smooth-grain film (Figure 4.3), a riot or a furious battle scene with rough-grain film (Figure 4.4).



STANDARD SCREEN–1.33:1

The *standard* screen was the dominant screen shape until 1953. The television frame has these dimensions, as do most 16mm prints available for rental today. Thus Cinemascope and other wide-screen films have visual information cut off on both sides in 16mm or TV formats.

WIDE SCREEN–1.85:1

The wide screen is also called the *standard American wide screen* to distinguish it from its European counterpart, a slightly narrower format with a 1.66:1 aspect ratio. A popular compromise shape (between the standard screen and the ultrawide formats), the wide-screen image is achieved by masking off the top and bottom of the standard frame.

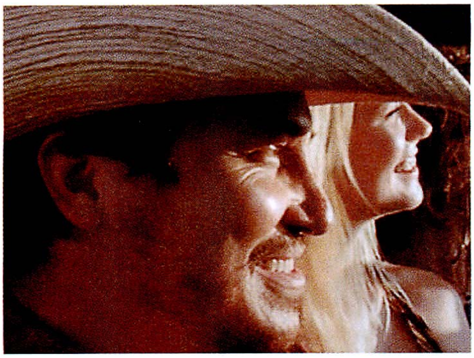
PANAVISION–2.2:1

Panavision is probably the most popular ultrawide system in use today, perhaps because its slightly narrower format is more flexible from a compositional standpoint than its predecessor, Cinemascope. Both Panavision and Cinemascope employ anamorphic lenses, which "squeeze" a wide image onto standard-frame 35mm film in the camera and then "stretch" the image into a wide-screen format when projected.

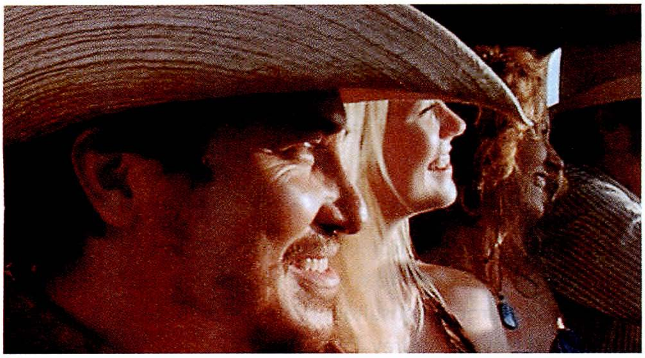
CINEMASCOPE–2.55:1

FIGURE 4.1 **Popular Aspect Ratios** Cinemascope can be said to have two aspect ratios. In the 1950s its dimensions were 2.55:1; it has since been narrowed slightly, to 2.35:1, to accommodate an optical soundtrack. When theaters began installing special screens for Cinemascope in the 1950s, many of the screens were curved slightly to enhance the three-dimensional effect. Although popular with the public, the system had many critics, among them director George Stevens, who claimed, "the wide screen is better suited to a boa constrictor than a man." The lines drawn on this shot from *Rebel Without a Cause* show the amount of side information lost when wide-screen films are reduced to the 16mm or TV format.

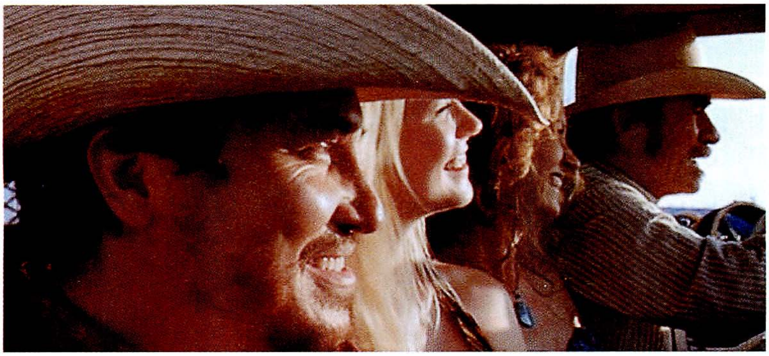
FIGURE 4.2 The Projected Image The four different screen sizes and shapes are illustrated here by four different croppings of the same scene from *The Three Burials of Melquiades Estrada*.



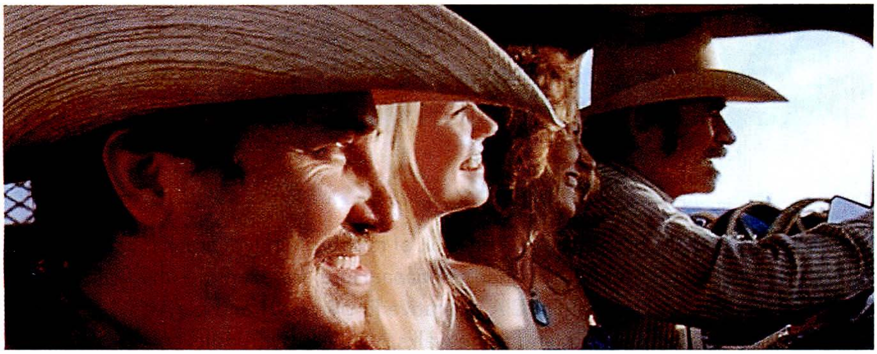
a. Standard screen 1.33:1



b. Wide screen 1.85:1



c. Panavision 2.2:1



d. Cinemascope 2.55:1

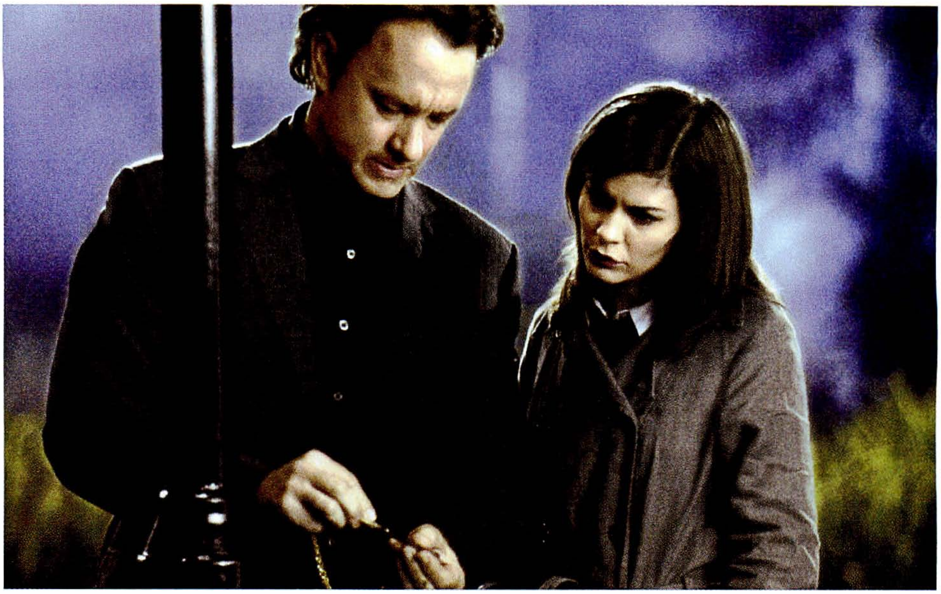


FIGURE 4.3 **Smooth-Grain Film Stock** Director Ron Howard appears to have used smooth-grained color film stock in *The DaVinci Code* to give his film the luscious, silky sheen we see in this scene that features an urgent consultation between Professor Robert Langdon (Tom Hanks) and Agent Sophie Neveu (Audrey Tautou).

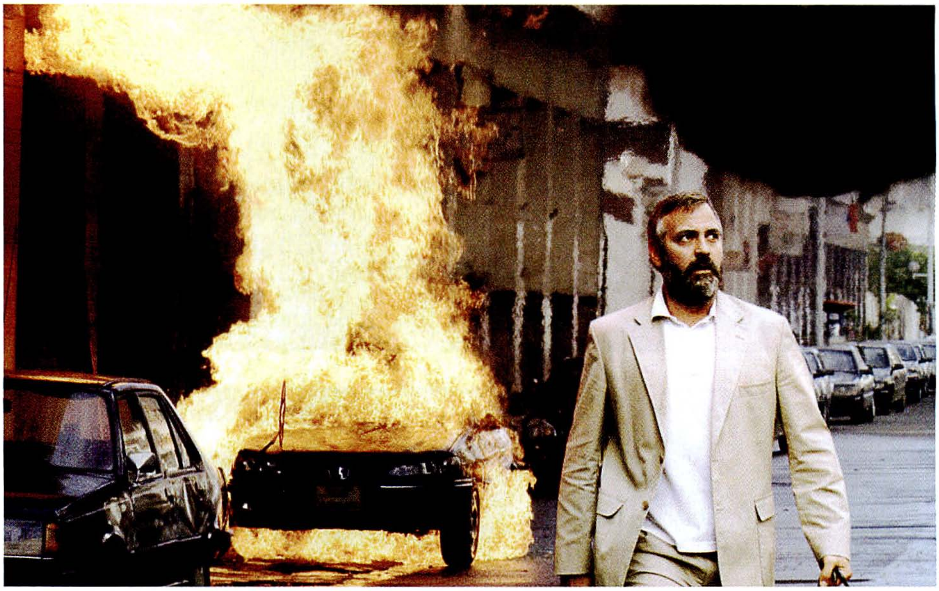


FIGURE 4.4 **Rough-Grain Film Stock** The look of rough-grain film stock is simulated in many parts of writer-director Stephen Gaghan's *Syriana*. Here, for example, the fictional character Bob Barnes (based on real-life CIA operative Robert Baer and played by George Clooney) has just detonated a bomb, and as he walks swiftly away from its conspicuous noise, the explosion's bright flames begin to bleach out parts of the frame's image.

PRODUCTION DESIGN/ART DIRECTION*

Once decisions about color versus black and white, screen format, and film stock are made, the awesome task of production design gets under way, and

> a true aptitude for movie magic is needed to . . . make moviegoers feel at home far far away in another galaxy, turn New York City into a maximum security prison, or show how Los Angeles might look with a population of two hundred million in the year 2020.[5]

Modern production designers meet those sorts of challenges and finally are being recognized for their critical contributions to the look of modern films (Figure 4.5). The production designer first makes elaborate and detailed sketches and plans for the set and then supervises, down to the last detail, the construction, painting, furnishings, and decoration until he or she achieves the exact look intended. In every stage of filmmaking the production designer consults with three other people directly responsible for the visual texture of the film: the director, the cinematographer, and the costumer. All three work together closely, seeking each other's opinion, conferring, and coordinating their efforts to achieve a unified visual effect.

In the modern film, this collaboration is often so integrated that art directors are asked to suggest camera angles and lighting in their design—decisions that in the past were left completely to the director and cinematographer. Such requests make very good sense because production design has such a tremendous influence on the look of a film. It affects the cinematographer's choice of lighting, angles, and focus. Many overhead and low-angle shots in *Batman*, for example, are literally dictated by Anton Furst's sets of Gotham City, where they not only enhance the sense of vertical space but also make painted backdrops and miniature models more convincing. Likewise, the director's decisions about many other factors may be subtly altered by the mood created by a finely wrought set, as in *Metropolis*, *Blade Runner*, *Dark City*, and *Moulin Rouge!*

The Script: The Starting Point

As is true at every step in the filmmaking process, the basic blueprint is the script. It is the script that provides the unity of vision for a film. As production designer Paul Sylbert puts it:

> You cannot impose a style on a film. It must grow out of a vision arising from the script and a knowledge of how to form the various scenes into a whole, and it

---

*There is some confusion about the difference between an art director and a production designer. The titles are synonymous when only one or the other is listed in the credits for a film. When both titles are listed, the production designer has conceived the look or visual texture of the film, and the art director has been responsible for supervising the work required to execute that plan.

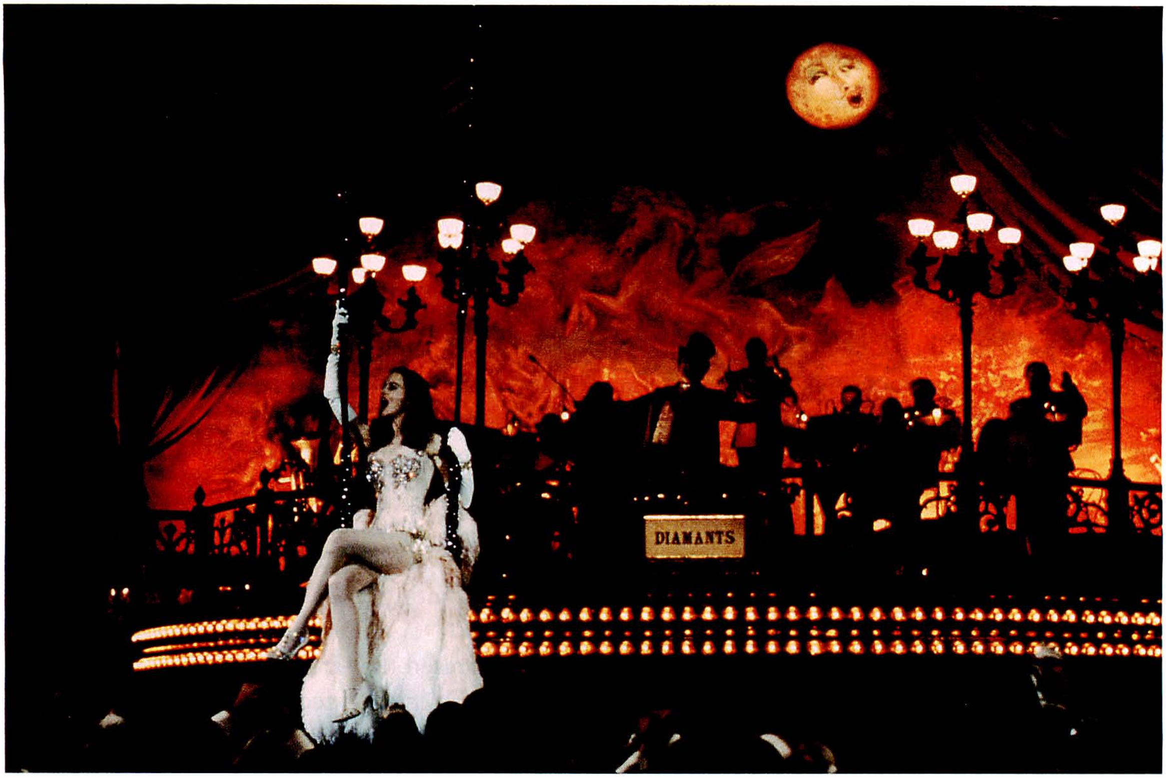


FIGURE 4.5 Award-Winning Design The elaborate sets created for Baz Luhrmann's *Moulin Rouge!* (2001), including this one featuring Nicole Kidman singing as she literally swings above her audience, won Catherine Martin an Academy Award for production design.

> should, like the film itself, have its own movement. Style in film results from every part of it, and those parts must cohere, and they must be directed at some effective result. Design is not self-expression. It is an expressive use of objects, forms, and colors in the service of the script.[6]

Sometimes the script suggests visual metaphors and reinforces the need for a specific color palette, so that a few carefully chosen colors are emphasized to suggest a mood or atmosphere. For example, production designer Patrizia Von Brandenstein saw Mozart and Salieri, the two major characters in *Amadeus*, as being polar opposites, and she incorporated that interpretation into her visual design:

> Salieri wore a lot of red clothing. . . . I thought everything about Salieri was dark, Italianate, full of passion, but from an older time, dark and turgid, heavy like the music—like the fabrics he wore, velvet and wool. . . . Mozart's world was reflec-

> tive, bright, silvery, pastel, brilliant, tinkling like crystal, faceted like his music. It was the music that drove the design.[7]

Paul Sylbert made similar use of visual metaphor in the design of Paul Schrader's *Hardcore*. He created two totally different environments through the use of two different color palettes:

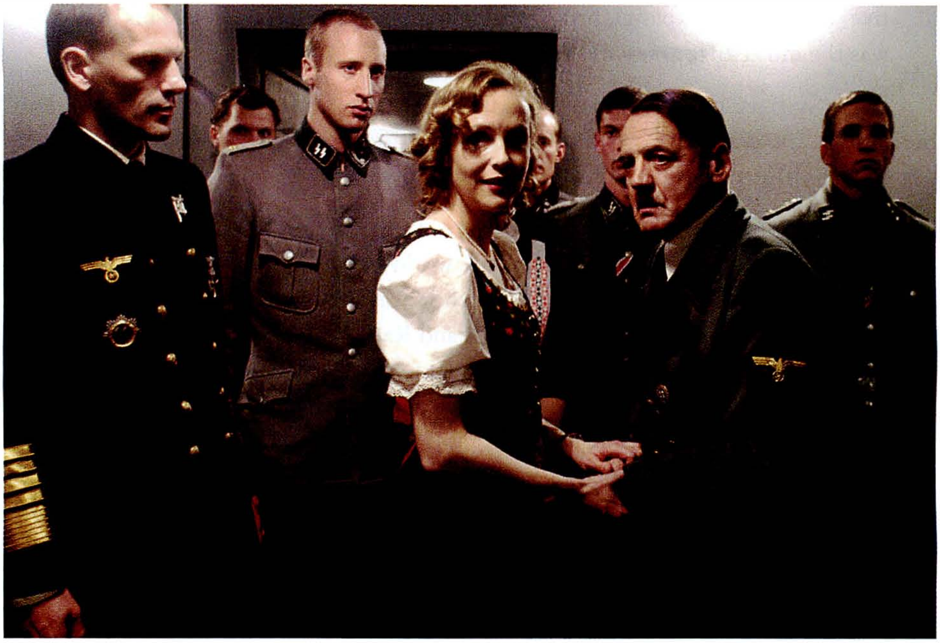
> *Hardcore* presented two very different worlds. The first is the Calvinism of Grand Rapids, Michigan, and the second is the world of pornography. . . . The contrast between Grand Rapids and the porno world was between Calvinism and hell. . . . The narrowness of the palette of the Grand Rapids scenes—the brown tones and the blue delft and the wood—was a reflection of the spirit of Calvinism. I kept the palette narrow in Grand Rapids so that once I got into this new [porn] world, I was suddenly free to do anything. The idea was to free the palette. I was allowed to go red, white, pink, orange, black, powder blue in the motel rooms and whorehouses. The wildness was a color version of the anarchy that went on in that other world.[8]

The production designer can also help to enhance concepts from the script by controlling the sense of space in a given scene (Figure 4.6). To emphasize the fearful power of Cardinal Wolsey in *A Man for All Seasons*, designer John Box created a strong sense of claustrophobia to portray Sir Thomas More's meeting with Wolsey:

> [Director] Fred Zinneman's intention was to present Wolsey as power and authority. That, to me, meant a feeling of claustrophobia which would accentuate the character and power of Wolsey, and would involve the audience with Thomas More as he was confronted by the great man of the time. So we put Wolsey in a small room to emphasize his largeness. He wears red robes, so we don't want any other colors to lead your eye away from the central figure, so the walls become a darker shade of the same red. There are no corners in the room. The table at which he sits is smaller than it would have been in reality, to accentuate Wolsey's size.[9]

Sometimes a production designer wants to do just the opposite—to create within a limited space the illusion of a large space. Using the technique known as **forced perspective**, the designer physically distorts certain aspects of the set and diminishes the size of objects and people in the background to create the illusion of greater foreground-to-background distance. Charles Rosher, cinematographer of F. W. Murnau's classic silent film *Sunrise*, describes the technique:

> I worked with a wide-focus lens of 35 to 55mm, for the scenes in the big cafe. All the sets had floors that sloped slightly upwards as they receded, and the ceilings had artificial perspectives: the bulbs hanging from them were bigger in the foreground than in the background. We even had dwarfs, men and women, on the terrace. Of course all this produced an amazing sense of depth.[10]



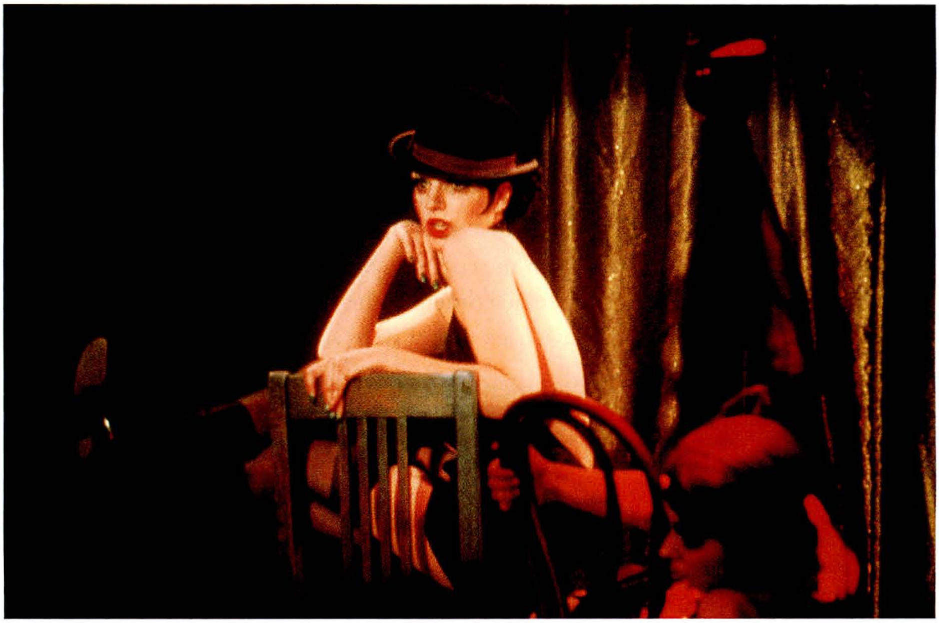


FIGURE 4.6 The Claustrophobic Set In *Downfall (Der Untergang)*, a documentary-like account of the last days in the Third Reich, virtually all of the action occurs in the narrow confines of a fortified underground bunker, where, among other solemn (and sometimes macabre) activities, Adolph Hitler (Bruno Ganz) says goodbye to his mistress, Eva Braun (Juliane Köhler), before his suicide (top). Bob Fosse, in directing *Cabaret* (bottom), demanded that most of the film be shot in a smoky, restricted space to create a feeling of constraint in both his actors (including Liza Minnelli) and his audience.

Setting and Its Effects

The **setting** is the time and place in which the film's story occurs. Although the setting may often seem unobtrusive or be taken for granted, it is an essential ingredient in any story and makes an important contribution to the theme or total effect of a film. Because of the complex interrelationships of setting with other story elements—plot, character, theme, conflict, symbolism—the effects of setting on the story being told should be analyzed carefully. And because of its important visual function, it must also be considered a powerful cinematic element in its own right.

In examining the setting as it relates to the story, it is necessary to consider the effect of four factors on the story as a whole:

1. **Temporal factors:** The time period in which the story takes place
2. **Geographic factors:** The physical location and its characteristics, including the type of terrain, climate, population density (its visual and psychological impact), and any other physical factors of the locale that may have an effect on the story's characters and their actions
3. **Social structures and economic factors**
4. **Customs, moral attitudes, and codes of behavior**

Each factor has an important effect on the problems, conflicts, and character of human beings and must be considered as an integral part of any story's plot or theme.

Setting as Determiner of Character The four aspects of setting listed above are important to understanding the naturalistic interpretation of the role of setting. This interpretation is based on the belief that our character, destiny, and fate are all determined by forces outside ourselves, that we may be nothing more than products of our heredity and environment, and that freedom of choice is only an illusion. Thus, by considering the environment a significant shaping force or even a dominant controlling one, this interpretation forces us to consider how environment has made characters what they are—in other words, how characters' nature has been dictated by factors such as their time in history, the particular place on Earth they inhabit, their place in the social and economic structure, and the customs, moral attitudes, and codes of behavior imposed on them by society. These environmental factors may be so pervasive that they serve as something much more important than a backdrop for the film's plot.

In some cases the environment may function as an antagonist in the plot. Protagonists may struggle against environmental forces pressing upon them, seeking to express some freedom of choice or escape from a trap. Thus, the serious consideration of the cruel, indifferent, or at least powerful forces of the environment is often a key to understanding a character and his or her dilemma.

Setting as Reflection of Character The environment in which a person lives may provide the viewer with clues to understanding his or her character. This is especially true for the aspects of their environment over which individuals exercise some control. Houses, for example, may be excellent indicators of character. Their usefulness is illustrated by the following examples of exterior views that might appear in a film's opening shot.

Picture a small, neat, white, green-shuttered cottage with red roses around the doorstep and bright and cheerful curtains at the windows. It is surrounded by a newly whitewashed picket fence. Such a setting has been traditionally used in films to suggest the happy honeymoon couple, full of youth, vigor, and optimism for a bright future.

At the other extreme, consider the image evoked by Edgar Allan Poe's description of the Usher house in his classic short story "The Fall of the House of Usher": bleak gray walls, vacant eyelike windows, crumbling stones, rotten woodwork, and a barely perceptible zigzag crack in the masonry from roof to foundation. This opening picture, a reflection of the Usher family's decadence, becomes even more significant as the story progresses, for Roderick Usher and the house in which he lives are so closely interwoven symbolically and metaphorically that they become one: The house's vacant eyelike windows portray the eyes of Roderick Usher, and the zigzag crack in the masonry is equated with the crack in Usher's mind.

The filmgoer must be aware of interactions between environment and character, whether the setting is serving as a molder of character or merely as its reflection (Figure 4.7).

Setting for Verisimilitude One of the most obvious and natural functions of the setting is to create a semblance of reality that gives the viewer a sense of a real time and a real place and a feeling of being there. Filmmakers recognize the great importance that an authentic setting plays in making a film believable. Thus, they may search for months to find a proper setting and then move crew, actors, and equipment thousands of miles to capture an appropriate backdrop for the story they are attempting to film.

To be convincing, the setting chosen should be authentic in even the most minute detail. In a film set in the past, even the slightest anachronism may be jarring. A filmmaker shooting a story about the Civil War must be careful that the skies do not show jet vapor trails or the landscapes do not include high-tension power lines.

Some films capture the unique qualities of the time and place in which they are set so effectively that these factors become the most important elements of the film—more powerful and memorable than the characters or the story line. *McCabe & Mrs. Miller*, *The Fifth Element*, *Blade Runner*, *The Last Picture Show*, *Northfork*, *Under the Tuscan Sun*, and *Sunshine State* are good examples of such films.

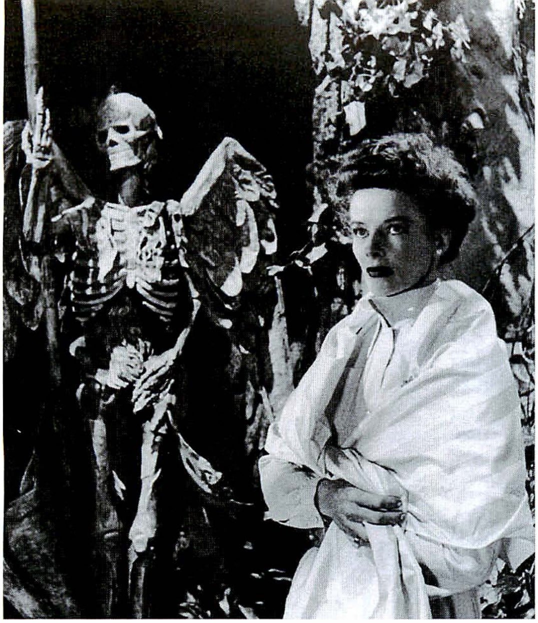


FIGURE 4.7 Setting as a Reflection of Character The vicious dark side of Mrs. Venable (Katharine Hepburn) in *Suddenly, Last Summer* is reflected by her taste in art—this grotesque sculpture in her courtyard.

Setting for Sheer Visual Impact When doing so is permissible within the limits of a film's theme and purpose, filmmakers choose a setting with a high degree of visual impact. For example, the plot and structure of westerns such as *Shane* and *True Grit* do not demand great scenery, but the filmmakers realized that the beauty of the wide western landscape, with its snowcapped mountains and rainbow-colored rock formations, would be effective as long as it did not violate the overall tone or atmosphere of the films. David Lean is especially successful in choosing settings with a powerful visual impact, as demonstrated in *Dr. Zhivago*, *Ryan's Daughter*, and *Lawrence of Arabia*. The barren Australian desert provides an otherworldly backdrop for the action of *The Road Warrior*. *Legends of the Fall*, filmed in western Canada, and *Out of Africa* owe much to the images of the landscapes behind their stories, as do both versions of *Insomnia*.

Setting to Create Emotional Atmosphere In certain specialized films, setting is important in creating a pervasive mood or emotional atmosphere. This is especially true in horror films and to some extent in the science fiction or fantasy film (such as the *Alien* films and Stanley Kubrick's *The Shining*), in which the unusually charged emotional atmosphere created and maintained by the setting becomes an important factor in achieving a suspension of disbelief by the viewer. Setting may also create a mood of tension and suspense in keeping with the overall tone of the film, in addition to adding credibility to plot and character elements (Figure 4.8).

Setting as Symbol The setting of a film story may take on strong symbolic overtones when it is used to stand for or represent not just a location but some

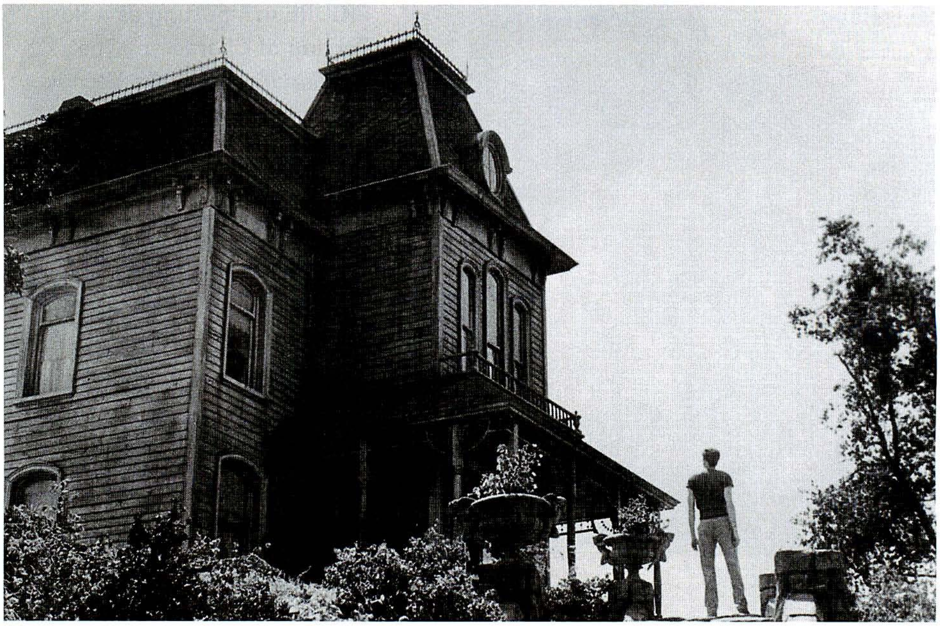


FIGURE 4.8 Setting for Emotional Atmosphere, Characterization, and Visual Impact In sharp contrast to the drab, ordinary, run-down Bates Motel in *Psycho* (1960) is the Bates home, located on a hill behind the motel. Its strange, foreboding, haunted quality contributes immensely to the emotional atmosphere of the film. The house also contributes to the characterization of Norman Bates (Tony Perkins), as both reflection and determiner of his character. The starkness of the house, silhouetted against the sky, makes a strong visual impact. Here, Perkins is shown standing next to the house as it appears in *Psycho II*.

idea associated with the location, as in Agnieszka Holland's version of *The Secret Garden* (1993) and Steven Soderbergh's *Bubble*, which was shot entirely in a small Ohio–West Virginia border town. Another example of a symbolic environment is the garden setting for *Suddenly, Last Summer.* The garden becomes a symbol for the worldview reflected by the other symbols: Men are carnivorous creatures living in what is essentially a savage jungle in which they devour one another in a constant struggle of fang and claw, obeying only the law of the survival of the fittest. That this worldview is reflected in the setting is illustrated by Tennessee Williams's own description of his play's set:

> The interior is blended with a fantastic garden which is more like a tropical jungle, or forest, in the prehistoric age of giant fern-forests when living creatures had flippers turning into limbs and scales to skin. The colors of this jungle-garden are violent, especially since it is steaming with heat after rain. There are massive tree-flowers that suggest organs of the body, torn out, still glistening with undried blood; there are harsh cries and sibilant hissings and thrashing sounds in the garden as if it were inhabited by beasts, serpents and birds, all of a savage nature. . . .[11]

Setting as Microcosm A special type of symbolic setting is the type known as a **microcosm,** meaning "the world in little," in which the human activity in a small and limited area is representative of human behavior or the human condition in the world as a whole. In such a setting special care is taken to isolate the characters from all external influences so that the "little world" seems self-contained. The limited group of people, which contains representative human types from various walks of life or levels of society, might be isolated on a desert island, in an airplane, on a stagecoach, or in a western town. The implication of the microcosm often comes very close to being allegorical: The viewer should see strong similarities between what happens in the microcosm and in the world at large, and the film's theme should have universal implications. Screenwriter Paddy Chayefsky has described his *Hospital* as a microcosm-of-society picture. The hospital represents an advanced, highly technical, and affluent society that is incapable of running itself. Films such as *Lord of the Flies*, *Ship of Fools*, and *High Noon* can all be seen as microcosms; television's "Gilligan's Island," however, lacks the universal implications of a microcosm, though it possesses many microcosmic qualities.

Studio Versus Location Shooting

In recent years, production designers have been doing much of their work in studios because many directors are returning to the sound stages, preferring to stylize a realistic background rather than to go on location. There are three reasons for this preference. One is that many directors were raised on the studio-made products of the 1930s and 1940s and admired their look and feel so much that they are now trying to create similar styles in their own films. Another reason is the need to compete with made-for-television movies, which are usually filmed on location, have relatively small budgets, and pay less attention to visual texture and production design than do movies made for the big screen. A more impressive look is created for the big screen, where the attention, care, and expenditures necessary for obtaining the desired look can be better appreciated.

Perhaps the single most important reason why directors prefer to shoot a film in a studio is the completely controlled environment. Lighting can be easily manipulated in a studio; on location the primary light source, the sun, is constantly moving from east to west. In cities, traffic must usually be controlled in some way, and natural environmental sounds can be bothersome. Prolonged shooting in cities or residential areas can be very disruptive to everyday life, and residents often come to view movie crews with the hostility usually reserved for an army of occupation. (A major exception to this axiom, of course, involves director Cameron Crowe, who was able to shoot a dream sequence for *Vanilla Sky* with Tom Cruise for several hours in a completely deserted Times Square.)

The decision to go on location, however, is usually dictated by the script, and the work of the production designer is just as important on location as in the studio. He or she works closely with the director to choose the places where the film will be shot and then designs and oversees the construction of any sets needed on location. For *Days of Heaven* production designer Jack Fisk worked closely with director Terrence Malick to scout locations. When they finally found the perfect place in Canada (for a story set in Texas), the beauty of the rolling fields of wheat blowing in the wind reminded Fisk of the ocean, so he designed an unusual farmhouse with features that vaguely resembled a ship. To build this set required a battle with the producers, who wanted an ordinary-looking ranch house. Like most other designers, Fisk believes that audiences are disappointed with a truly realistic setting and expect to see a kind of heightened reality, which he attempts to provide.

A more realistic, contemporary story like *The River* (1984) calls for a subdued form of heightened reality, so production designer Chuck Rosen was thrilled when a local man told him: "My Lord, Lord almighty, this farm here looks exactly like my granddaddy's farm." To achieve this look on location near Kingsport, Tennessee, was no easy matter. Universal purchased 440 acres of mountain forest specifically for the movie. Sixty of those acres were leveled to create a river-bottom farm, and Rosen designed and constructed a two-story farmhouse, a main barn, an equipment building, and a double corncrib. A dam was built below the farm on the Holsten River, raising the water level by four feet, and a levee was built to keep the farm from flooding. Because filming continued into late November, bright autumn foliage had to be sprayed with green paint for summer scenes. In contrast, a huge cornfield by the river was planted late and was so well watered that four rows of corn had to be sprayed brown or replaced with dead stalks for the autumn flood scene. Although this was the first "60-acre set" Rosen had ever done, he achieved the main thing he had hoped for: "It looks like it belongs."[12]

Sometimes a script will force production designers to jump back and forth between a controlled studio set and a distant exterior location, creating the illusion that both sets are part of the same neighborhood. In *Raiders of the Lost Ark*, for example, Harrison Ford escapes from a huge rolling boulder in an interior cave set filmed in England and emerges from the cave in Hawaii (Figure 4.9).

Period Pieces

A **period piece** is a film that takes place not in the present but in some earlier period of history. To recreate the look of a period, the production designer must do extensive architectural research. To get a feel for life in the period, the production designer reads books, letters, newspapers, and diaries. *GoodFellas*, which begins in the 1950s and ends in the 1980s, provides an excellent example of all the factors that the production designer has to consider. Kristi Zea, *GoodFellas* production designer, recalls the project:

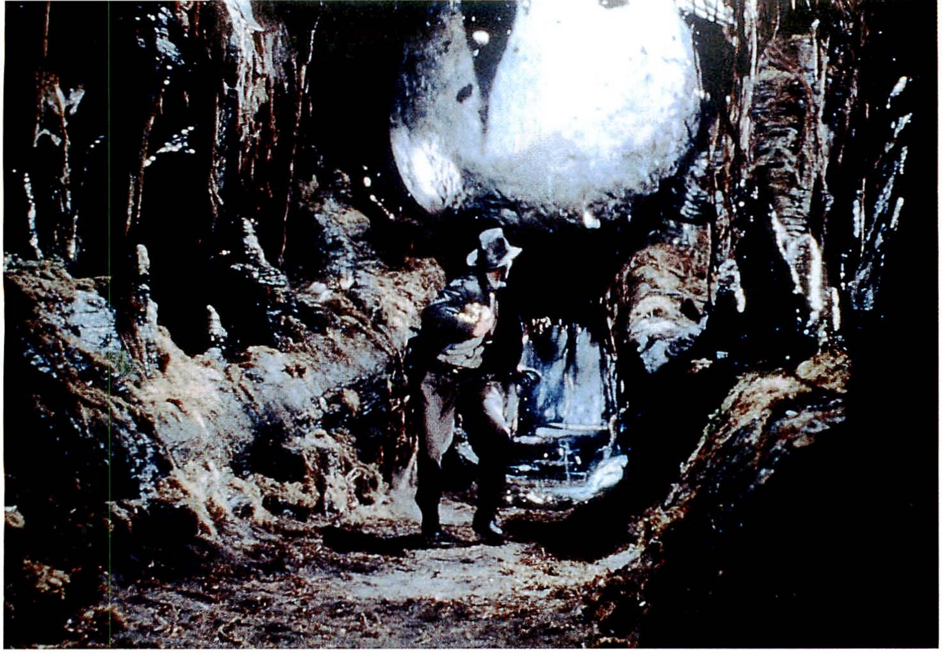


FIGURE 4.9 Composite Settings Production designers are often required to create the illusion that two completely different sets in different locations are different parts of a single location. In this scene from *Raiders of the Lost Ark,* Harrison Ford is running away from the huge rolling boulder in a cave interior set in England. A few seconds later in the film, he emerges from the cave into a sunlit exterior in Hawaii.

> The film presented a challenge for both the costumes and the sets, because there was a need for us to quickly reflect certain trends within each of the time periods. Overall, the make-up, hair, and clothing were more sensitive to time passage than the actual locations were. Of course, cars immediately give you a period. The fifties had a sepia-like, subtle color scheme. The cinematographer, Michael Ballhaus, actually changed the film stock to maximize the chromatic look of the sixties. The early seventies was pretty garish, too. Then the eighties were more somber, more kinetic, more drugged out. . . . The interior of the cab stand, the house, and everything from the fifties actually had a late forties look to it. They were poor; they wouldn't have brand-new furniture. . . . For the sixties scenes we wanted to say sixties. All of these guys had new cars. No one would drive around in a ten-year-old car, so that kept us in a very specific period.[13]

Living Spaces and Offices

To construct sets showing living quarters or offices, designers refer to the script to make decisions that support the story and the characters. Settings are consciously designed as personalized environments that reflect a character and

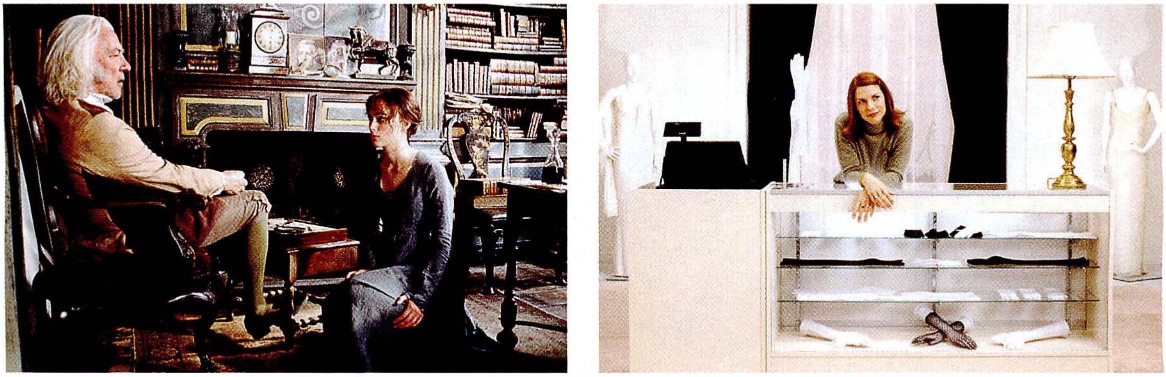


FIGURE 4.10 Settings as Personalized Environments The book-stuffed space inhabited by Donald Sutherland and Keira Knightley (playing father and daughter) in Jane Austen's *Pride and Prejudice* (2005) and this starkly furnished retail area (staffed by Claire Danes) in Steve Martin's *Shopgirl* are meant to speak volumes about the films' personalities.

underscore or enhance the mood of each scene (Figure 4.10). Production designer Robert Boyle describes the challenge:

> If the script says this is about a homeless person, you better do it within the parameters of the logic of the homeless. The first thing I ask is how much do these people make, what can they afford, because economics are the basis of our lives. Then I want to know who their friends are. I want to know what their educational background is: Did they go to college, did they drop out of high school, are they from the streets, or are they more earthy, country people? Then there's that whole range of sexual choice: Are they heterosexual or homosexual? You have to know all this before you can sit down with a pencil and start to draw.[14]

If the film is based on a novel, the designer may choose to go to the novel for descriptive details about the setting and the character. A design with this kind of research behind it can help the actor settle into the role and deliver a fuller, more accurate performance.

When designing interior sets that have windows, the production designer will also create a world outside, often using scenic backings that have been photographed. They provide an extra dimension to the film's world in the same way that off-screen environmental sounds do.

Fantasy Worlds

Perhaps the most serious challenge that a production designer faces is building a complete fantasy world. For *Blade Runner*, production designer Lawrence G. Paull created a complete futurescape for the year 2020 by using additive architecture—that is, by building protrusions onto existing structures. The struc-

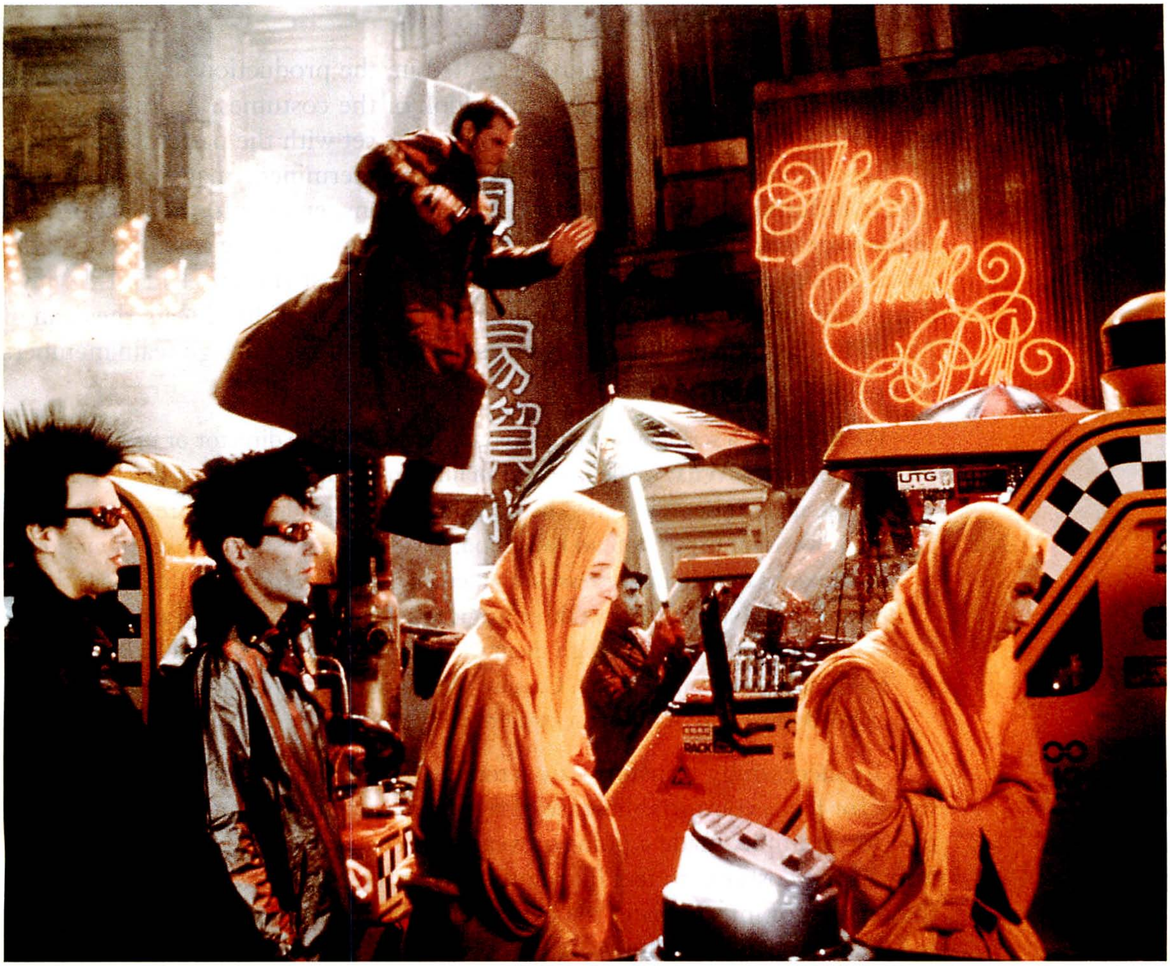


FIGURE 4.11 **Inventive Production Design** Lawrence G. Paull built multiple layers of texture into his set for *Blade Runner* so that director Ridley Scott could pack every square inch of the screen with visual information. The result was a set so powerful that it nearly overwhelms the characters and the story, even in action scenes like this one showing Harrison Ford running across a busy street.

tures used were located on the New York street set in the back lot of Burbank Studios. *Blade Runner* also required twenty-five interior sets, including one created inside an industrial refrigerator locker. Through inventive production design and the use of practically every technical trick in the book, Paull created a set that enabled director Ridley Scott to "build layers of texture, so that visual information is imparted in every square inch of screen" and to convince viewers that they have been transported to another time and another place—in this case a time and place that no one has yet experienced in reality (Figure 4.11).[15]

COSTUME AND MAKEUP DESIGN

By the time the costume designer is called in, the production designer has already made many decisions about the look of the costumes. An integrated or coherent design synchronizes the colors of the set with the patterns and colors of the costumes. After the color palette is determined, many people, with widely differing degrees of control over decisions, enter into the total process of costume design: the director, the production designer, the costumer, and the actor, as well as the hairstylist and the makeup artist (Figure 4.12). Like production design, costume design begins with the script. Edith Head, the dean of American costume designers, describes the interaction of design team members and performers:

> We are given a script, and we have conferences with the director or producer and with the stars. What we do is create an illusion of changing an actor or actress into someone else. It is a cross between magic and camouflage. In real life, clothing is worn for protection, to look good, or whatever reason you like. In motion pictures, it's to help the actress on the screen give the impression that she is the person in the story. We have three magicians—hairstylist, makeup artist, and clothes designer—and through them we're supposed to kid the public that it really isn't Paul Newman, it's Butch Cassidy. We go through any kind of device we can to break the mold of the actor or actress.[16]

To successfully transform an actor into his or her character requires that the actor feel a comfortable sense of rightness with the clothing. Charlton Heston, for example, made a point of wearing a costume as much as he could. He wanted the costume to feel like clothing, not like a costume. For many actors, the process of internalizing the character to be played really begins when they see themselves in costume.

A skilled costume designer can improve an actor's figure. The use of a little extra fabric can slim the appearance of a woman with a boxy, high-waisted build and create the illusion of a wonderful figure. In each *Die Hard* movie and in *Hudson Hawk*, the on-screen appearance of Bruce Willis, who is short in the leg and long in the body, was improved by costume designer Marilyn Vance. She gave him a longer-legged look by increasing the rise of his trousers (the distance between the crotch and the waist) to reduce the apparent length of his torso.

The degree of a director's involvement with costume design varies. Edith Head recalls working with Alfred Hitchcock, George Roy Hill, and Joseph L. Mankiewicz:

> If you ask Hitchcock what he wants, he'll say, "My dear Edith, just read the script." Hitch is the only person who writes a script to such detail that you could go ahead and make the clothes without discussing them. I do sketches for him, though. A Hitchcock script is so completely lucid: "She's in a black coat, she has a black hat, and she's wearing black glasses." That was Karen Black's character in

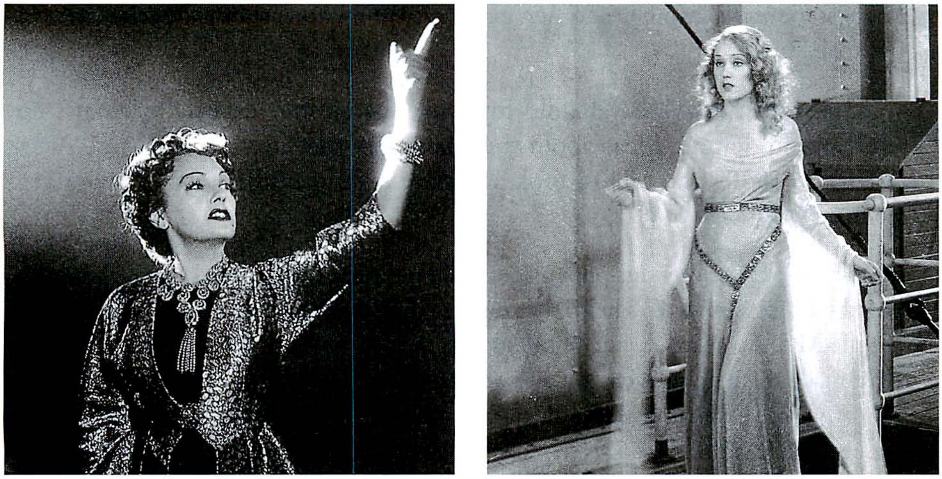


FIGURE 4.12 Costuming, Hairdressing, and Makeup The important contributions of the costume designer, hairdresser, and makeup artist are evident in these pictures from *Sunset Boulevard* and *King Kong.* Gloria Swanson's glittering, metallic top, heavy necklace and bracelet, dark lipstick, and perfectly sculpted coiffure literally shout out glamour and confidence, even boldness. Fay Wray's look, in contrast—her flowing, diaphanous gown, her long, loosely curled hair, and her understated makeup—is a soft whisper of old-fashioned feminine vulnerability (every big ape's dream).

> *Family Plot*, the last one we did. A lot of scripts give no clues at all. When you work a great deal with a director you know his likes and dislikes. Hitchcock has a phobia about what he calls "eye-catchers," such as a woman in bright purple or a man in an orange shirt. Unless there is a story reason for a color, we keep muted colors, because he feels they can detract from an important action scene. He uses color like an artist, using soft greens and cool colors for certain moods.
>
> When we did *The Sting* and *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid*, George Roy Hill had done as much research as I had. In fact, he did more on some of it. He is a perfectionist. When you work with him day by day, it's as though he were another designer.
>
> Mankiewicz I never met, because they borrowed me just to do clothes for Bette Davis. He called me and said, "I love your work. Just do what you think is right."[17]

Period films create a tremendous challenge for a costume designer. Extensive research is required to determine the total costume—not just the right clothes but the hats, the hairstyles, the jewelry, and the gloves. Edith Head explains why films in contemporary settings don't make the same kind of demands:

> Today's pictures are mostly men. There are very few women's pictures, and the women's pictures are mostly character pictures. In the past we made all men

> handsome and all women sexy and glamorous. Now we just buy them both a pair of blue jeans![18]

Actors often provide valuable input to costuming, especially when they have clear and definite ideas about the characters they are to play. Mary Astor, a star of the 1930s and 1940s, took an active role in designing her character's attire in *Act of Violence:*

> I worked out the way this poor alley cat should look, and insisted firmly (with [director Fred] Zinneman's help) that the one dress in the picture would not be made at the MGM wardrobe, but be found on a rack at the cheapest department store. We made the hem uneven, put a few cigarette burns and some stains on the front. I wore bracelets that rattled and jangled and stiletto-heeled slippers. I had the heels sanded off at the edges to make walking uncomfortable. I wore a fall, a long unbecoming hairpiece that came to my shoulder. And I put on very dark nail polish and chipped it. I used no foundation makeup, just too much lipstick and too much mascara—both "bled," that is, smeared, just a little. Zinney said, "You look just right!" And camera helped with "bad" lighting.[19]

Makeup decisions also help to create the desired look. Makeup can enhance the natural look of an actor or transform an actor into a different version of himself or herself or into a totally different person. The transition may be accomplished through gradual and subtle changes throughout the film, or it may be abrupt. Orson Welles, as Charles Foster Kane, undergoes an effective aging transition in *Citizen Kane*, as does young Kirsten Dunst in *Interview With the Vampire* and *Little Women.* Jack Nicholson takes on a very different face for the role of Jimmy Hoffa in *Hoffa.* Extreme examples of the makeup artist's skill are roles that call for the actor's look to be totally transformed—for example, the role that Roddy McDowell plays in *Planet of the Apes* and John Hurt in the title role in *The Elephant Man.*

Although some actors begin to internalize their roles with costuming, makeup can also be an important step. Sir Laurence Olivier, whose stage experience taught him the skills of makeup, claimed that he couldn't "get" a character until he found the right nose. He typically experimented with several putty noses until satisfied. Indeed, sometimes the true test of a makeup person's artistry arises when an actor or actress well known for movie-star beauty takes on the challenge of becoming a serious and believable character who is somewhat less than stellar in appearance. When Tony Curtis convinced a director to award him the role of the Boston Strangler, and when, more recently, Nicole Kidman was called upon to portray British novelist Virginia Woolf in *The Hours*, convincing nose prosthetics saved the day—and also enhanced the dramatic casting possibilities for two glamorous careers (Figures 4.13 and 4.14).

Orson Welles, as director of *Citizen Kane*, used makeup for a unique purpose. He knew that his Mercury Theatre actors were totally unknown to movie

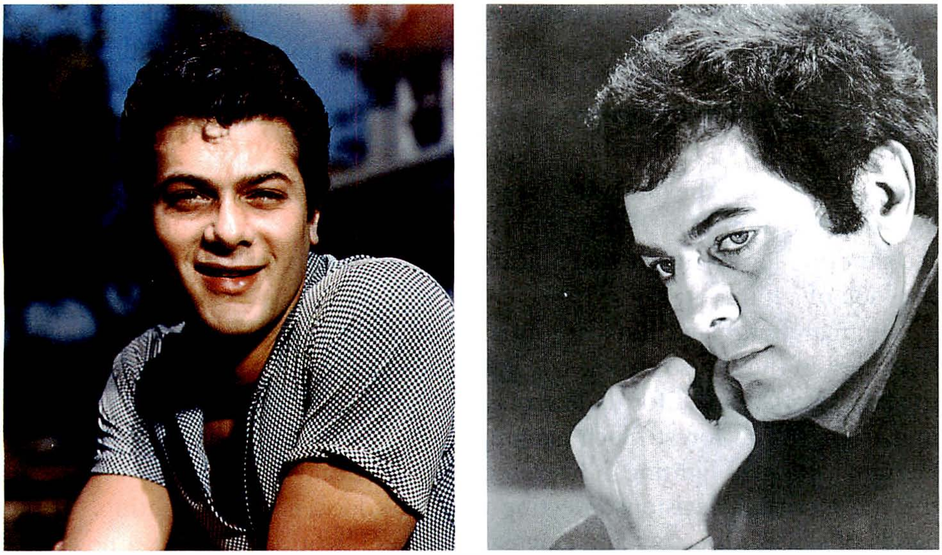


FIGURE 4.13 Winning By a Nose, Part I: After almost two decades as a famous, handsome, romantic "matinee idol" (left), Tony Curtis attained "serious actor" status in 1968 by donning a false nose for his role as the title character in *The Boston Strangler* (right).

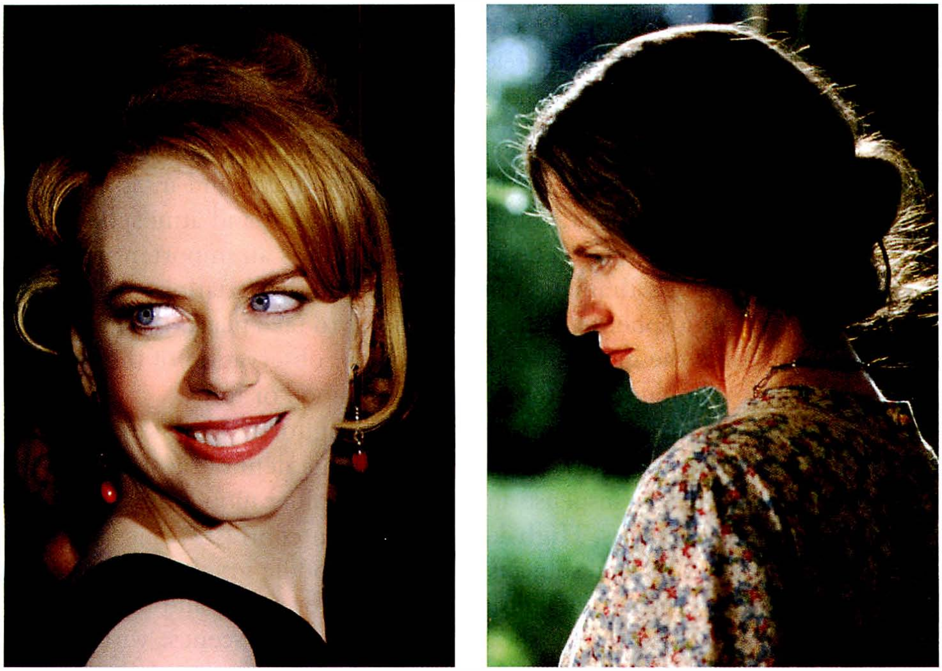


FIGURE 4.14 Winning By a Nose, Part II: Likewise, Nicole Kidman successfully abandoned (at least temporarily) her glamorous movie-star career and won a Best Actress Oscar for *The Hours*, by putting on the alleged olfactory apparatus of famous English novelist Virginia Woolf.

audiences, so, to make them seem more familiar, he asked his makeup man to create the look of character stereotypes common in popular genre films.

LIGHTING

Does the action of the film take place in the daytime or at night, indoors or outdoors? Is the film set in Transylvania or Las Vegas? The nature of the story and the shooting location have a significant effect on the contribution of lighting to the look of a film.

Ingmar Bergman's films are usually set in Sweden. There, the sun never rises high in the sky, so strong side lighting is dominant. The quality of light in the dry air of the California desert is very different from the quality of light in a tropical rain forest. Such geographic factors must be accepted as givens. Certain aspects of lighting, however, can be artistically controlled, and some of the most critical decisions affecting the film's look concern lighting. In the hands of skilled directors and cinematographers lighting becomes a powerful, almost magical tool. As Todd Rainsberger puts it in his excellent work on James Wong Howe:

> Just as no two artists use the same brush strokes, no two cameramen control light in exactly the same manner. The angle, quality, and intensity of the light can vary in an infinite number of ways. Recording a scene on film is thus not a copy of a single unchanging reality, but the selective recording of a filmic reality which is the unique result of a particular choice of light sources.[20]

By controlling the intensity, direction, and diffusion of the light, a director is able to create the impression of spatial depth, delineate and mold the contours and planes of the subject, convey emotional mood and atmosphere, and create special dramatic effects. The way a scene is lit is an important factor in determining the scene's dramatic effectiveness. Subtle variations in lighting create mood and atmosphere for the action that is to take place. Because lighting should reinforce the mood of each scene, close observation of the lighting throughout a film should reveal the film's overall mood or tone.

Two terms designate different intensities of lighting. **Low-key lighting** puts most of the set in shadow; just a few highlights define the subject. This type of lighting heightens suspense and creates a somber mood; thus, it is used in mystery and horror films. **High-key lighting,** in contrast, results in more light areas than shadows, and subjects are seen in middle grays and highlights, with far less contrast. High-key lighting is suitable for comic and light moods, such as in a musical. Generally speaking, high-contrast scenes, with a wide range of difference between light and dark areas, create more powerful and dramatic images than do scenes that are evenly lit (Figure 4.15).

The direction of the light also plays an important role in creating an effective visual image. The effect created by flat overhead lighting, for example, is

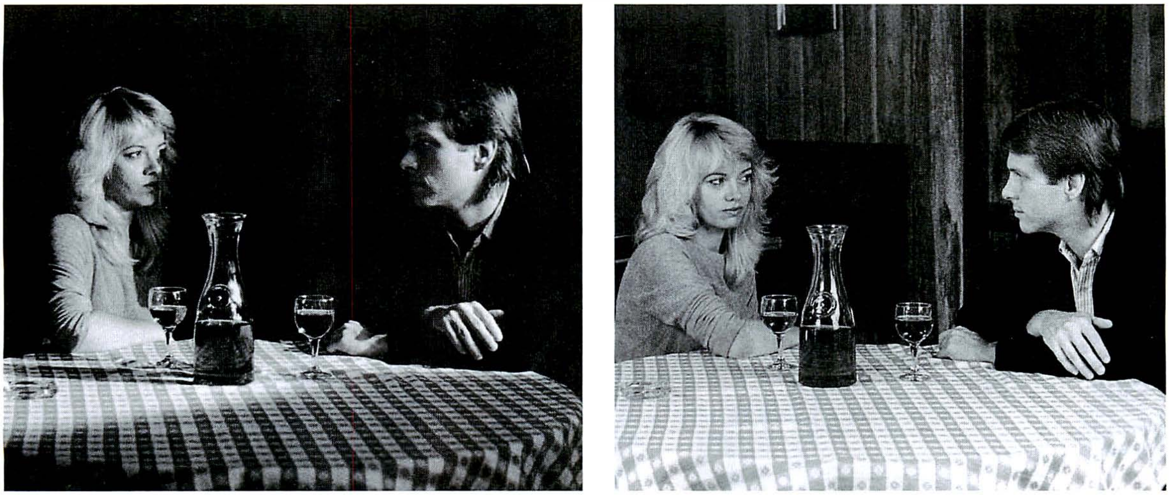


FIGURE 4.15 Low-Key and High-Key Lighting Low-key lighting puts most of the set in shadow and shows the couple with just a few highlights, increasing the intimacy and dramatic intensity of the scene. High-key lighting opens up the frame with light in background areas and balances the lighting throughout the set. Although high-key lighting diminishes the intimacy and dramatic intensity that the scene has with low-key lighting, it provides more complete visual information about the couple and the setting.

entirely different from the effect created by strong side lighting from floor level. Back lighting and front lighting also create strikingly different effects (Figure 4.16).

Whether light is artificial or natural, the director has the means to control what is commonly referred to as the character of the light. The character of light can generally be classified as direct, harsh, or hard; medium and balanced; or soft and diffused (Figure 4.17).

Because the character of light on actors' faces can suggest certain inner qualities, cinematographer James Wong Howe individualized the major characters in *Hud* with lighting designed to fit the personalities the actors were portraying. The lighting for Patricia Neal was strong and undiffused. Paul Newman was generally seen in dark contrasts; Melvyn Douglas was shadow lit; and Brandon DeWilde was brightly lit.

The intensity, direction, and character of light affect the dramatic effectiveness of an image. The director and cinematographer together plan the look they want for the lighting. Then the cinematographer assumes the primary responsibility for the lighting.

Today's filmmakers generally strive for a very natural effect in their lighting (Figure 4.18). Scenes often look as though the cinematographer used no supplemental light at all. Vilmos Zsigmond (*Life as a House*, *McCabe & Mrs. Miller*;

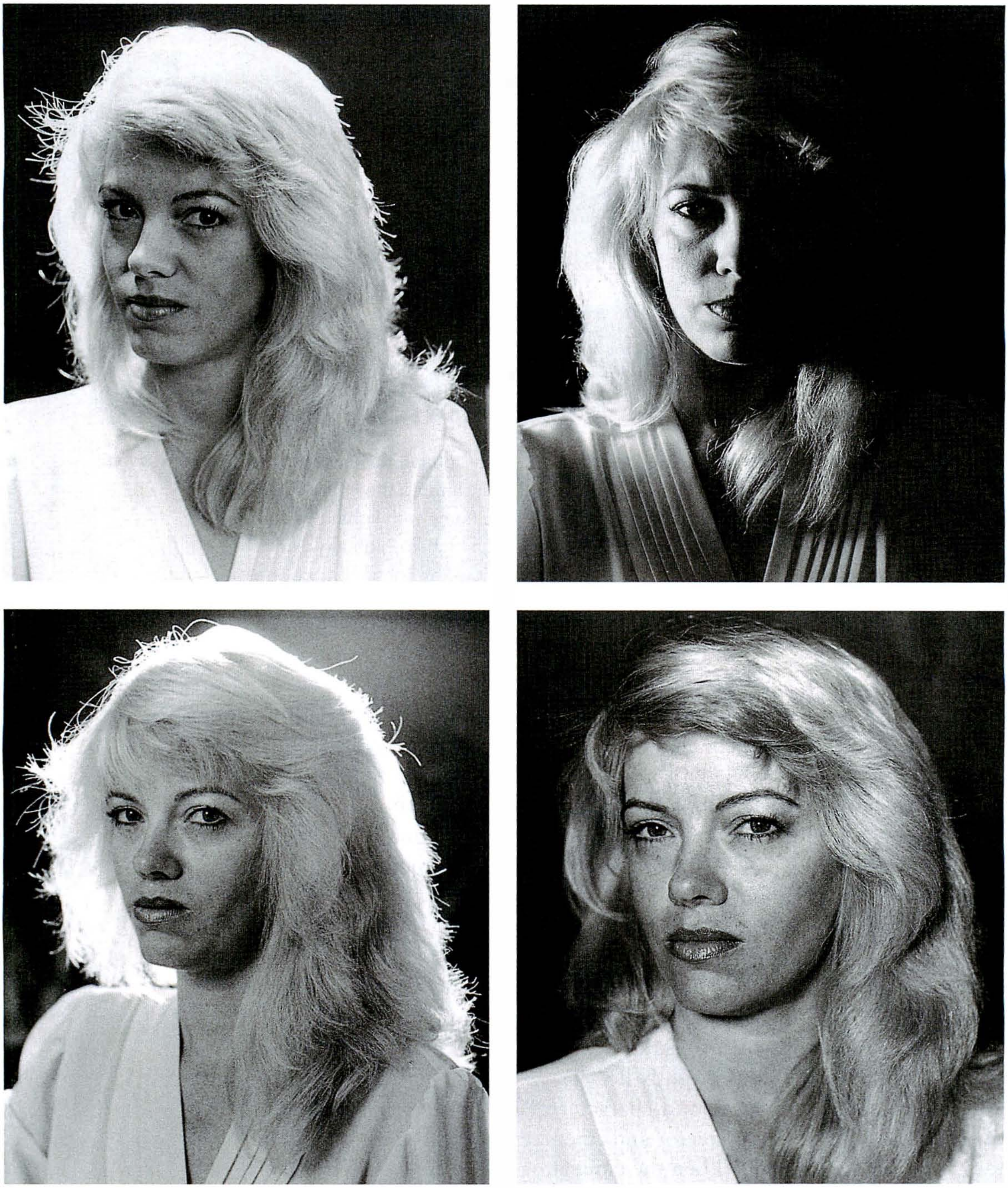


FIGURE 4.16 Directions of Lighting These pictures illustrate the different effects achieved by overhead lighting (top left), side lighting (top right), back lighting (bottom left), and front lighting (bottom right).

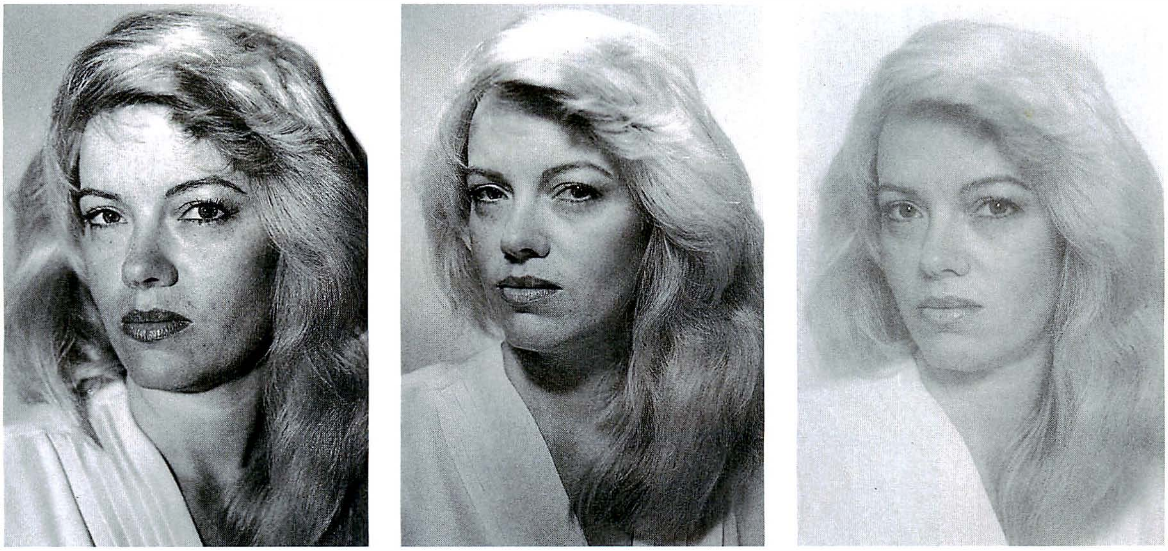


FIGURE 4.17 Character of Light These pictures illustrate the different effects of changing the character of the light: direct, harsh, or hard lighting (left); medium and balanced lighting (center); and soft and diffused lighting (right).

Close Encounters of the Third Kind, *The Deer Hunter*), one of the great modern cinematographers, describes his philosophy in this way:

> I try to light so that it feels as if it comes from natural sources. That's why I like to have windows in my shots—windows, or candles or lamps. Those are my true light sources. Studying the Old Masters, Rembrandt, Vermeer, de la Tour, I found that they painted their best works relying on light effects coming from realistic sources. They even selected their subjects because they loved the light and the people. They were very selective and improved upon nature. They simplified and eliminated multiple shadows to concentrate on the dramatic. That is what a cinematographer does: improves on nature.[21]

Master cinematographer Nestor Almendros also stresses the importance of naturalness: "I use a minimum of artificial light. . . . *Days of Heaven* was shot with very little light. Rather than create an artificial moment, I'd wait for the real one to happen. One great moment is worth waiting for all day."[22] Even when he is working on interiors in a studio for a film like *Kramer vs. Kramer*, Almendros stresses a natural light technique by imagining the sun outside Kramer's apartment, justifying a subject lit from behind by a window or lamp, and making sure that all lighting seems to come from windows and table or floor lamps.

Vilmos Zsigmond was not the first person to seek inspiration from paintings. As early as the 1920s, Cecil B. DeMille and other directors were attempting to use lighting to imitate the effects achieved by painters like Rembrandt.

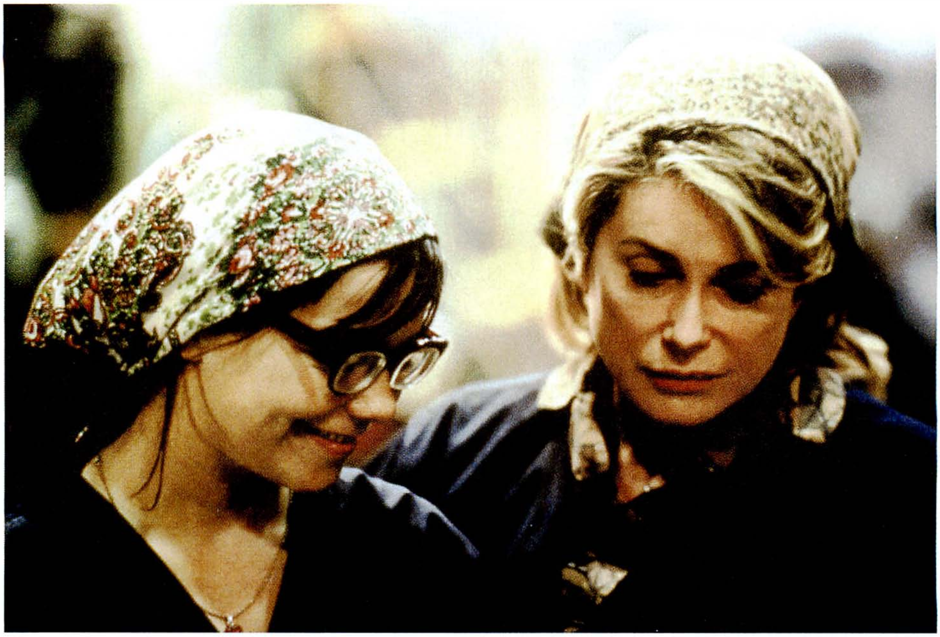


FIGURE 4.18 **Natural Lighting** Some cinematographers, like Nestor Almendros (*Days of Heaven*), insist upon using natural lighting sources as much as possible in their films. For directors who subscribe to a cinema movement called "Dogma 95," this requirement is in fact "law"—just one of many rules they agree to follow (including using only hand-held cameras) that are meant to simplify and "purify" modern filmmaking. This scene, which includes actresses Björk and Catherine Deneuve photographed in available light that does not flatter or idealize their appearance, is from *Dancer in the Dark,* a controversial Dogma 95-esque musical created by the Danish director Lars von Trier.

Some forty years later, Franco Zeffirelli achieved painterly effects successfully in his *Taming of the Shrew.* He created the soft, muted color of faded paintings by placing a nylon stocking over the camera lens and lighting his interior scenes in the Rembrandt manner.

John Ford and Gregg Toland, his cinematographer, designed *The Grapes of Wrath* to suggest the look of Dorothea Lange's stark black-and-white photographs of the Dust Bowl. Howard Hawks used lighting in *Rio Bravo* to suggest the hard lighting in the western paintings of Frederick Remington. In preparing to shoot *The Verdict*, Sidney Lumet and his cinematographer, Andrzej Bartkowiak, spent an entire day studying a collection of prints of Caravaggio's paintings. They analyzed his treatment of backgrounds, foregrounds, and textured surfaces, paying particular attention to the sources of light. Then they applied what they had learned to *The Verdict*, with what Lumet called "extraordinary" results. (See Chapter 7—"Color"—for further discusssion and illustration of this concept.)

THE BUDGET'S EFFECT ON THE FILM'S LOOK

The visual design elements discussed in this chapter can play important roles in the overall effectiveness of a movie. Many filmmakers, however, do not have a budget that allows them to develop a unified look for their projects. Inventive camera angles, subtle lighting effects, authentic costuming, and detailed settings take time and money to create, and many low-budget films must be made without a distinctive visual style.

Sometimes, a lack of artistic flourish can work to a film's advantage. And sometimes, high-quality screenwriting and powerful acting performances can be presented more effectively to an audience that is undistracted by flashy visual effects or complicated editing styles. Low-budget films like *Breaking Away*, *Return of the Secaucus Seven*, *sex, lies, and videotape*, *Clerks*, and *My Big Fat Greek Wedding* have been executed with great success despite the absence of a distinct visual style.

ANALYZING VISUAL DESIGN

On Color Versus Black and White

1. Was the filmmaker's choice of color or black and white correct for this story? What factors do you think influenced this decision? Try to imagine the film as it would appear in the other film type. What would the differences in total effect be? (If the film is in color, try watching the first 10 minutes on a VCR or DVD player with the television color turned off.)
2. Are any special color effects used to achieve a unique overall look? If so, what was the director trying to achieve with the unusual effect? How successfully is the overall effect carried out?

On Screen Format (Aspect Ratio)

1. Was the film originally shot for a standard screen or a wide screen? Does the choice of screen format suit the story being filmed?
2. Try imagining the film in the opposite format: What would be gained or lost?

On Production Design/Art Direction

1. How important is the set or location to the overall look of the film? Is it essentially a realistic or authentic set, or is it stylized to suggest a heightened reality?
2. Was the movie filmed primarily on location or in the studio? What effect does the place of filming have on the style or look of the film?
3. How do the settings serve as personalized environments to enhance or reinforce the actors' performances? To what degree do the settings underscore or enhance the mood or quality of each scene?
4. Is the setting so powerful and dominant that it upstages the actors?
5. If the film is a period piece, a fantasy, or a science fiction story taking place in a future time or on a strange planet, is the set convincing enough to make us

believe (during the film) that we are really in another time and place? If so, what factors or details present in the set contribute to its convincing effect? If the set is not completely convincing, why does it fail?

6. Which of the four environmental factors (temporal factors; geographic factors; social structures and economic factors; and customs, moral attitudes, and codes of behavior) play significant roles in the film? Could the same story take place in any environment?
7. Which environmental factors are most important? What effect do these factors have on the plot or the characters?
8. Why did the filmmaker choose this particular location for filming this story?
9. How does the film's setting contribute to the overall emotional atmosphere?
10. What important interrelationships exist between the setting and the characters or between setting and plot?
11. Is the setting symbolic in any way? Does it function as a microcosm?

On Costume and Makeup Design

1. What details of costuming and makeup help the actors be "in character"? Do these factors also play a role in creating a sense of time and place?
2. Does the makeup for the film's major characters simply enhance the natural look of the actors or significantly transform their appearances? If significant or sometimes subtle changes (such as aging) are required by the script, how effectively are these changes achieved?

On Lighting

1. Is the lighting of the film as a whole (a) direct, harsh, and hard; (b) medium and balanced; or (c) soft and diffused? Does high-key or low-key lighting predominate? How do the lighting decisions fit the film's story?
2. Does the lighting throughout seem artificial, coming from places where there are no visible light sources, or does it seem to emanate naturally from sources visible or suggested on-screen?
3. How does the lighting contribute to the overall emotional attitude or tone of the film?

VIDEO EXERCISES

1. Watch *Psycho* (1960), *The Taming of the Shrew*, or *Saraband* and describe the unique visual details built into the interior sets for each film. How do the interior sets contribute to a sense of the characters who live there or function as an appropriate backdrop for the action that takes place?
2. Watch the first 10 minutes of any of the following films; then list and describe the important visual details that help establish a sense of time and place in this short time frame: *Casablanca*, *Shane*, *The Grapes of Wrath*, *Summer of '42*, *To Kill a Mockingbird*, *Manhattan*, *Blade Runner*, *Brazil*, and *Rent*. How do basic film elements other than the visual image (music, sound, dialect, and so forth) help contribute to a sense of time and place in these short segments?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

Dressed to Kill (1980), one of director Brian De Palma's most celebrated works, stars Angie Dickinson as a sexually frustrated wife and mother and Michael Caine as her psychiatrist. Early in this movie, the filmmaker utilizes an almost-wordless eleven-minute "film-within-a-film" to build his characters, to promote his plot, and to shock his viewers in the tradition of his cinematic master, Alfred Hitchcock. A multitude of elements in this sequence are worthy of close attention, but a good place to begin is with the film's production design. Watch Chapter 3 ("Scenes From a Museum") on the "Special Edition" DVD and consider the thematic significance of settings, costumes, and "stage properties."

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

Production Design

Chocolat (Miramax Collector's Series):
The simple, quaint beauty of Travigny, France, provides the movie-set backdrop for this interview with production designer David Gropman. (This disc also contains a featurette on costuming by Renee Ehrlich Kalfus.)

Forrest Gump (Special Collector's Edition):
Production designer Rick Carter details the intricacies of "Building the World of *Forrest Gump*."

Men in Black II (Widescreen Special Edition):
Bo Welch, production designer for both *Men in Black* films, talks about invention in these bizarre movies, and also defines his job generally.

Pulp Fiction (Collector's Edition):
Production designer David Wasco describes the creation of Jack Rabbit Slim's and other specially built sets for this influential Quentin Tarantino film.

The Royal Tenenbaums (The Criterion Collection):
David Wasco is also credited with the design of this production, but various elements of the two-disc DVD make it abundantly clear that the obsessions of director Wes Anderson are largely responsible for the film's visual details in 300 different sets. Note especially the segment "With the Filmmaker: A Portrait by Albert Maysles" and the collection of murals by Eric Anderson.

The Salton Sea:
"Meth and Method" features an interview with production designer Tom Southwell, who examines, among other topics, the subject of how paintings by John Register and Edward Hopper inspired much in this *film noir*.

Makeup and Costumes

Sunset Boulevard:
Check out a legend in Hollywood costuming by viewing the segment called "Edith Head: The Paramount Years."

Rick Baker has become a modern legend for both the high quality and fecundity of his movie makeup designs. Here are three DVDs that well display his work:

Planet of the Apes (Two-Disc Special Edition):
In director Tim Burton's 2001 remake, Baker and his crew transform such actors as Michael Clarke Duncan, Helena Bonham Carter, Tim Roth, and Paul Giamatti into believable simians. On these discs, the segment is called "Face Like a Monkey." In addition, costume designer Colleen Atwood is interviewed in "Ape Couture."

Nutty Professor II: The Klumps (Collector's Edition):
Here, time-lapse photography demonstrates Baker's metamorphosis of Eddie Murphy into two of the five "makeup enhanced" family members he inhabits ("Papa" and "Ernie").

Dr. Seuss' How the Grinch Stole Christmas (Collector's Edition):
Director Ron Howard engaged Baker to create the strange creatures in this film because he knew that the "Make-up and Application Designer" would be able to cover Jim Carrey's countenance (via sophisticated prosthetics) without obstructing the actor's elastic facial expressions.

A Beautiful Mind (Two-Disc Awards Edition):
Ron Howard needed to portray nine stages of the mathematician John Nash's life in this film biography. On the DVD's "The Process of Age Progressions" segment, makeup designer Greg Cannom explains how actor Russell Crowe contributed significantly to his work.

Shallow Hal:
In "Seeing Through the Layers," makeup effects designer Tony Gardner realizes the Farrelly Brothers' vision that Gwyneth Paltrow weigh 300 pounds and "still be pretty."

FILMS FOR STUDY

Barry Lyndon (1975)
Batman Begins (2005)
Beloved (1998)
Blade Runner (1982)
Brokeback Mountain (2005)
Cabaret (1972)
Capote (2005)
Casablanca (1942)

A Clockwork Orange (1971)
Down with Love (2003)
8 Mile (2002)
Fanny and Alexander (1983)
Femme Fatale (2002)
Gangs of New York (2002)
Good Night, and Good Luck (2005)
The Grapes of Wrath (1940)
Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire (2005)
L.A. Confidential (1997)
Manhattan (1979)
Melinda and Melinda (2005)
Moulin Rouge! (2001)
Mrs. Dalloway (1998)
The Others (2001)
The Portrait of a Lady (1996)
Psycho (1960)
Secretary (2002)
The Terminal (2004)
3-Iron (2005)
Traffic (2000)
Tsotsi (2005)
The White Countess (2005)
The Widow of St. Pierre (2000)
Young Frankenstein (1974)

5

CINEMATOGRAPHY *and* SPECIAL VISUAL EFFECTS

The camera is the "eye" of the motion picture. It is not merely a mechanical thing of cogs and wheels and optical glass that records an image on a strip of film. Rather, it is an artistic tool—like a painter's brush, or a sculptor's chisel. In the hands of a craftsman it becomes the instrument through which a dramatic story can be placed on film—so that later on, in darkened theaters all over the world, vast audiences can see the film, react to it, and be entertained.

—HERBERT A. LIGHTMAN, EDITOR OF *AMERICAN CINEMATOGRAPHER*

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE VISUAL IMAGE

Film speaks in a language of the senses. Its flowing and sparkling stream of images, its compelling pace and natural rhythms, and its pictorial style are all part of this nonverbal language. So it follows naturally that the aesthetic quality and dramatic power of the image are extremely important to the overall quality of a film. Although the nature and quality of the story, editing, musical score, sound effects, dialogue, and acting can do much to enhance a film's power, even these important elements cannot save a film whose images are mediocre or poorly edited.

As important as the quality of the image may be, however, it must not be considered so important that the purpose of the film as an artistic, unified whole is ignored. A film's photographic effects should not be created for their own sake as independent, beautiful, or powerful images. In the final analysis, they must be justified psychologically and dramatically, as well as aesthetically, as important means to an end, not as ends in themselves. Creating beautiful images for the sake of creating beautiful images violates a film's aesthetic unity and may actually work against the film.

The same principle applies to overly clever or self-conscious camerawork. Technique must not become an end in itself; any special technique must have some underlying purpose related to the purpose of the film as a whole. Every time a director or cinematographer employs an unusual camera angle or a new photographic technique, he or she should do so for the purpose of communicating (either sensually or intellectually) in the most effective way possible, not simply to show off or try a new trick. A sense of naturalness, a feeling that something had to be done in a certain way, is more praiseworthy than clever camerawork.

Because the visual element is the motion picture's primary and most powerful means of communication, cinematography can completely dominate a film, taking it over by sheer force. But when this occurs, the artistic structure of the film is weakened, the dramatic power of the film fades, and watching the film becomes simply an orgy of the eyeballs. As cinematographer Vilmos Zsigmond puts it:

> I believe photography should never be dominating. The photography in *The Deer Hunter* doesn't look flashy to me; it doesn't overpower the film. It's with the story, never above it. It never tries to tell you how good I am or how good the lighting is. It's on the same level. The performances, the directing, the music, the camerawork are all on the same level. That's what I like about it, and that's what I think photography should be.[1]

THE CINEMATIC FILM

A cinematic film takes advantage of all the special properties and qualities that make the film medium unique. The first and most essential of these is the quality of continuous motion. A cinematic film is truly a *motion* picture—a flowing, ever-changing stream of images and sounds sparkling with a freshness and vitality all its own, a fluid blend of image, sound, and motion possessed by a restless compulsion to be vibrantly alive, to avoid the quiet, the still, and the static.

The second quality of a cinematic film evolves naturally out of the first. The continuous and simultaneous interplay of image, sound, and motion on the screen sets up varied, complex, and subtle rhythms. Clear, crisp visual and aural rhythms are created by the physical movements or sound of objects on the screen, by the pace of the dialogue, by the natural rhythms of human speech, by the frequency of editorial cuts, by the varying length of shots between cuts, and by the musical score. The pace of the plot also has distinct rhythms. All these serve to intensify the film's unique sense of pulsing life.

A cinematic film also makes maximum use of the great flexibility and freedom of the medium: its freedom from the spoken word and its ability to communicate directly, physically, and concretely through images and sounds; its freedom to show us action from any vantage point, and to vary our point of view at will; its capability to manipulate time and space, expanding or compressing them at will; and its freedom to make quick and clear transitions in time and space.

Although film is essentially a two-dimensional medium, a cinematic film overcomes this limitation by creating an illusion of depth. It creates the impression that the screen is not a flat surface but a window through which we observe a three-dimensional world.

All these qualities are present in a truly cinematic film. If they are not present in the subject matter, it is up to the director, the cinematographer, and the editor to build them in. Otherwise, the film's dramatic scenes are not communicated in all the fullness of the medium's potential.

CINEMATIC POINTS OF VIEW

To appreciate fully the workings of the cinematic film, we must be willing to watch in a little different way, focusing not just on *what* we are seeing but also on *how* it is being shown and *why* it is being shown that way. To increase our perception effectively, we must become familiar with the different ways the movie camera sees the action taking place before it—that is, with different **cinematic points of view.*** This first stage in sharpening our watching skills requires constantly considering the following questions for every segment of the film we intend to analyze:

---

*Because cinematic point of view is largely a matter of camera placement, it is introduced here as part of the discussion of cinematography. To understand the effects of shifting from one point of view to another, see Chapter 6 on editing.

- From what position and through what kind of eyes does the camera see the action?
- What effect do the position of the camera and its particular ways of seeing the action have on our response to the action?
- How is our response affected by changes in the point of view?

This last question is extremely important, for it shows us that cinematic point of view need not be consistent (unlike literary point of view, for example). In fact, consistency of viewpoint would be boring in a film and would impede effective communication. Thus, we expect a filmmaker to spirit us about from one vantage point to another, but we assume that visual continuity and coherence will be maintained so that we can follow intuitively.

Four points of view are employed in motion pictures:

- objective (camera as sideline observer)
- subjective (camera as participant in the action)
- indirect-subjective
- director's interpretive

Generally, all four can be used in every film to varying degrees, depending on the demands of the dramatic situation and the creative vision and style of the director.

Objective Point of View

The **objective point of view** is illustrated by John Ford's "philosophy of camera." Ford considered the camera to be a window and the audience to be outside the window viewing the people and events within. We are asked to watch the actions as if they were taking place at a distance, and we are not asked to participate. The objective point of view employs a static camera as much as possible in order to produce this window effect, and it concentrates on the actors and the action without drawing attention to the camera. The objective camera suggests an emotional distance between camera and subject; the camera seems simply to be recording, as straightforwardly as possible, the characters and actions of the story. For the most part, the director uses natural, normal, straightforward types of camera positioning and camera angles. The objective camera does not comment on or interpret the action but merely records it, letting it unfold. We see the action from the viewpoint of an impersonal observer. If the camera moves, it does so unobtrusively, calling as little attention to itself as possible.

In most films, continuity and clear communication of the dramatic scene demand that some use be made of the objective point of view. The objective viewpoint forces us to pinpoint subtle but perhaps significant visual details by ourselves (Figure 5.1). Overuse, however, may cause us to lose interest.

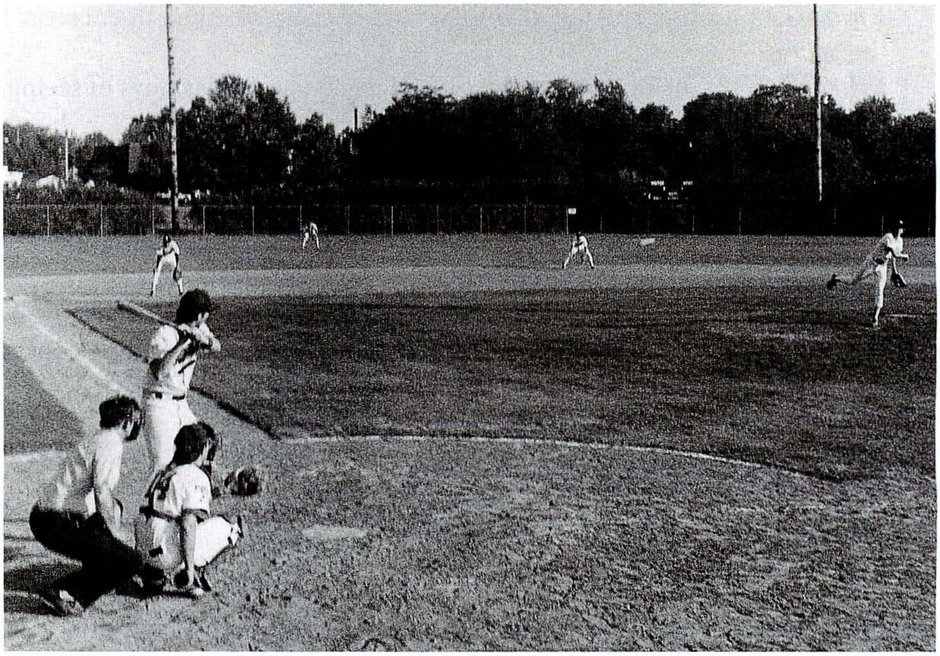


FIGURE 5.1 Objective Viewpoint In this objective shot of a baseball game in progress, we are clearly sideline observers, not really involved in the action.

Subjective Point of View

The **subjective point of view** provides us with the visual viewpoint and emotional intensity felt by a character participating in the action. Alfred Hitchcock, whose philosophy of camera was opposite to that of John Ford, specialized in creating a strong sense of direct involvement by the audience. He employed elaborate camera movement to create visual sequences that bring us into the suspense, literally forcing us to become the characters and experience their emotions. According to Hitchcock, an important tool in creating this kind of subjective involvement is skillful editing and a viewpoint close to the action, as this passage from his essay "Direction" indicates:

> So you gradually build up the psychological situation, piece by piece, using the camera to emphasize first one detail, then another. The point is to draw the audience right into the situation—instead of leaving them to watch it from outside, from a distance. And you can do this only by breaking the action up into details and cutting from one piece to the other, so that each detail is forced in turn on the attention of the audience and reveals its psychological meaning. If you played the whole scene straight through, and simply made a photographic record of it with the camera always in one position, you would lose your power over the audience. They would watch the scene without becoming really involved in it, and you

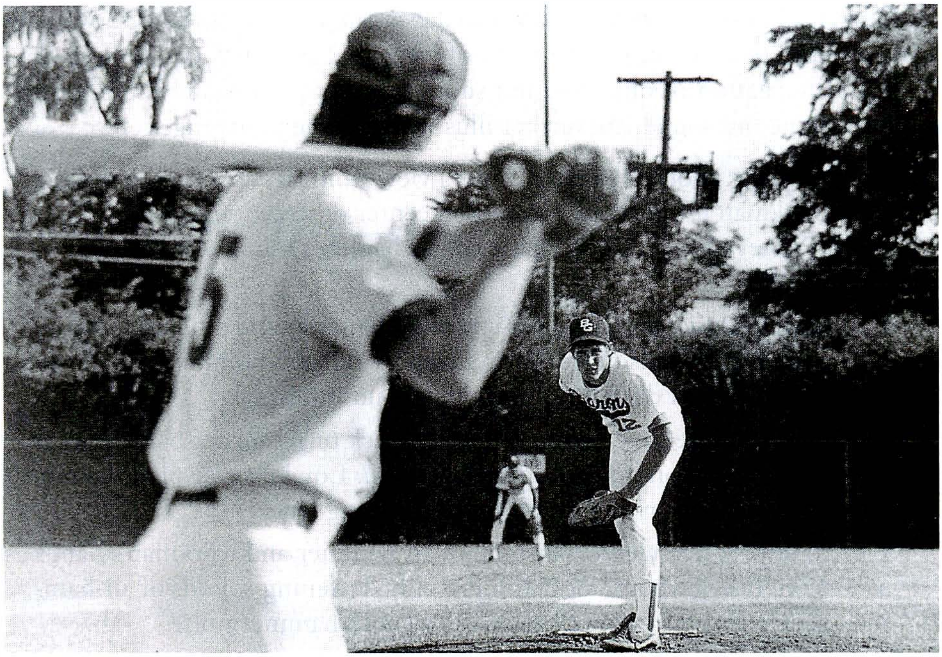


FIGURE 5.2 Subjective Viewpoint In this subjective shot, the camera puts us in the game, giving us the catcher's view of the action.

> would have no means of concentrating their attention on those particular visual details which make them feel what the characters are feeling.[2]

When the cinematic point of view is subjective, our experience becomes more intense and more immediate as we become intimately involved in the action. Generally, this viewpoint is maintained by a moving camera, which forces us to see exactly what the character is seeing and in a sense to become the character (Figure 5.2).

It is almost impossible to sustain a purely subjective point of view throughout a film, as was attempted in *Lady in the Lake.* The story of this 1946 film by Robert Montgomery was told entirely through the eyes of its detective hero, and the only time the hero's face was seen was in a mirror. His hands and arms occasionally appeared below eye level, as they would normally be seen from his viewpoint. The difficulty of sustaining such a viewpoint over an entire film is obvious, for clarity of communication and continuity usually demand that a film switch back and forth between the objective and subjective points of view.

The change from objective to subjective point of view is often accomplished in the following manner. An objective shot that shows a character looking at something off-screen (called a **look of outward regard**) cues us to wonder what the character is looking at. The following shot, called an **eye-line shot,** shows us subjectively what the character is seeing. Because the simple logical relationship between the two shots provides a smooth and natural movement from an objective to a subjective point of view, this pattern is common in film.

The alternation of objective and subjective viewpoints, and the tight link between sight and sound, are further illustrated by the following scene:

> **Establishing shot:** Objective camera view from street corner, focusing on a workman using an air hammer in center of street (apparent distance: 50 to 75 feet). *Sound:* Loud chatter of air hammer mingled with other street noises.
>
> **Cut to subjective view:** Close-ups of air hammer and violently shaking lower arms and hands of workman, from workman's point of view. *Sound:* Hammer is almost deafening—no other sounds heard.
>
> **Cut back to objective camera:** Heavy truck turns corner beyond workman, bears down on him at top speed. *Sound:* Loud chatter of air hammer, other street noises, rising sound of approaching truck.
>
> **Cut to subjective view:** Close-up of air hammer and workman's hands as seen from his viewpoint. *Sound:* First, only deafening sounds of air hammer, then a rising squeal of brakes mixed with hammer noise.
>
> **Quick cut to a new subjective view:** Front of truck closing quickly on camera from 10 feet away. *Sound:* Squeal of brakes louder, hammer stops, woman's voice screaming, cut short by sickening thud, followed by darkness and momentary silence.
>
> **Cut back to objective viewpoint** (from street corner): Unconscious figure of workman in front of stopped truck. Curious crowd gathering into circle. *Sound:* Mixed jumble of panicked voices, street noises, ambulance siren in distance.

The alternation between the objective and the subjective view provides both a clear understanding of the dramatic flow of events and a strong sense of audience involvement.

Indirect-Subjective Point of View

The **indirect-subjective point of view** does not provide a participant's point of view, but it does bring us close to the action so that we feel intimately involved and our visual experience is intense. Consider a close-up that conveys the emotional reaction of a character. We recognize that we are not the character, yet we are drawn into the feeling that is being conveyed in a subjective way. A close-up of a face contorted in pain makes us feel that pain more vividly than would an objective shot from a greater distance. Another example is the kind of shot that was common in the old westerns. With the stagecoach under attack by outlaws, the director inserts close-ups of pounding hoofs to capture the furious rhythm and pulsing excitement of the chase, bringing us close to the

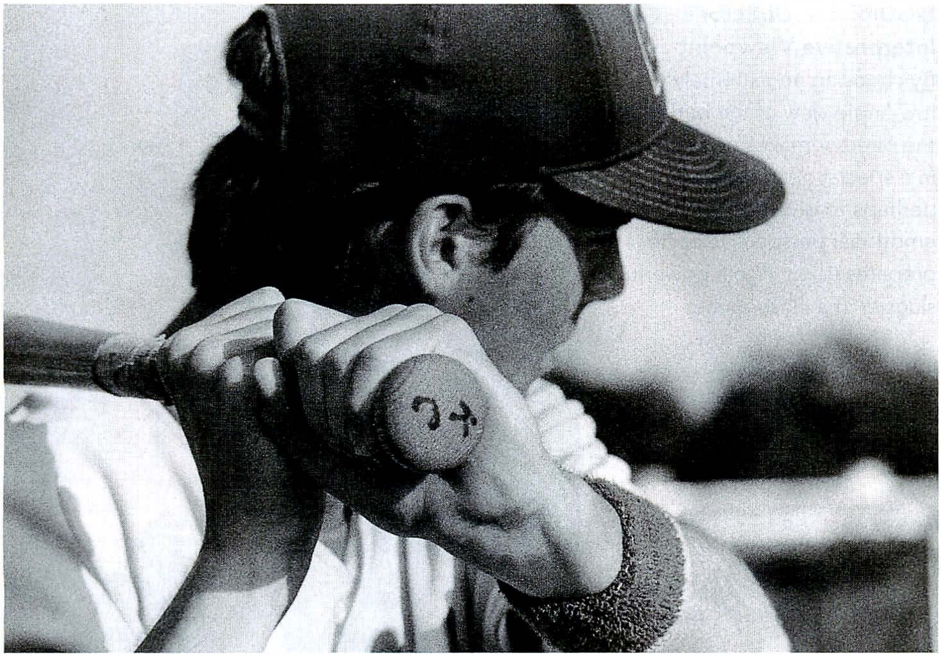


FIGURE 5.3 Indirect-Subjective Viewpoint Although we do not have any character's point of view, this indirect-subjective shot brings us close to the action and involves us in it as we focus on the tension in the batter's hands as he awaits the pitch. Because we are so close to the batter, we identify with him and feel his tension.

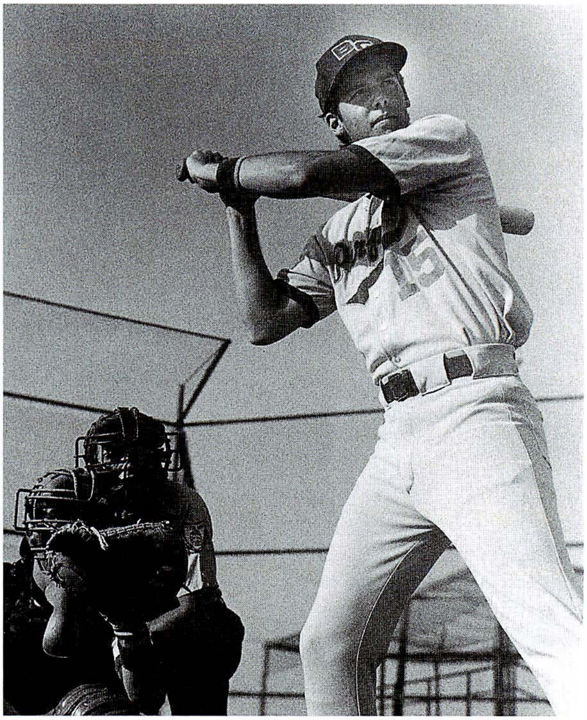
action and increasing the intensity of our experience. The indirect-subjective point of view gives us the feeling of participating in the action without showing the action through a participant's eyes (Figure 5.3).

The key to the effectiveness of the indirect-subjective viewpoint is this closeness to the action, as Alfred Hitchcock explains:

> So what you are doing is you are taking the audience right close up into the scene, and the montage of the various effects gets the audience involved. That's its purpose. It becomes much more powerful than if you sit back and look. Say you are at a boxing match and you are eight to ten rows back; well, you get a very different effect if you are in the first row, looking up under those ropes. When these two fellows are slugging each other, you get splashed almost.
>
> In *Psycho* once that figure comes in and starts to stab, you're in it. Oh, you're absolutely in it. The distance of the figures, you see.[3]

This "distance of the figures" makes the viewer's response to the shower scene in *Psycho* so very different from the response to the equally violent ending of *Bonnie and Clyde.* Indirect-subjective close-up shots of Bonnie and Clyde are used sparingly in the slow-motion dance of death, but the primary viewpoint is

FIGURE 5.4 Director's Interpretive Viewpoint
By choosing an extremely low-angle view of the batter, the director makes us see him in a special or unusual way, perhaps to give us the pitcher's emotional perspective as he prepares to pitch to a powerful slugger in a close game.



objective, and the viewer, like the camera, stands off to the side, out of harm's way. In *Psycho*, the rapid editing between occasional subjective viewpoints and close-up indirect-subjective shots puts the viewer in the shower with Janet Leigh and creates a real sense of *personal* danger.

Director's Interpretive Point of View

The director is always manipulating our viewpoint in subtle ways. The filmmaker chooses not only what to show us but also how we will see it. By photographing a scene from special angles or with special lenses, or in slow or fast motion, and so on, he or she imposes on the image a certain tone, emotional attitude, or style. We are thus forced to react in a certain way to what we see, thereby experiencing the **director's interpretive point of view.** We are *consciously* aware that the director wants us to see the action in some *unusual* way (Figure 5.4).

There are examples of all four points of view in the following typical western sequence showing a stagecoach being attacked by bandits:

> **Objective point of view:** Stagecoach and horses as seen from the side (from a distance of 50 to 75 feet) being pursued by bandits. Shot here could be either from a panning camera (i.e., one moving from left to right,

or vice versa) in fixed position or from a mobile camera tracking alongside or parallel to the path of the stagecoach.

Subjective point of view: Camera shot from stage driver's point of view, looking out over horses' backs, with arms and hands holding and slapping reins seen below eye level.

Indirect-subjective point of view: Close-up of stage driver's face from side as he turns his head to look back over his shoulder (a look of outward regard). His face registers fear, determination.

Subjective point of view: Camera shot of bandits in hot pursuit of stagecoach, from the point of view of driver looking back over top of stage.

Indirect-subjective point of view: Close-up of face of driver, now turned frontward again, registering strain, jaw set in determination, sweat streaming down face, screaming at horses.

Director's interpretive point of view: Slow-motion close-up of horses' heads in profile, their eyes wild with strain, mouths in agony straining at their bits, flecks of foamy sweat shaking from their necks. (By filming this shot in slow motion, the director in effect comments on the action, telling us how to see it. The slow-motion photography conveys the horses' exhaustion, intensifies the tremendous effort they are putting out, and gives us a sense of the futility of the stage's attempt to escape.)

Although some practice may be required to spot the cinematic viewpoints in a segment of film, it is basically a very simple process. The next stage in the art of watching films, analyzing the different aspects of cinematic composition and fully appreciating the skills of the cinematographer, is a bit more complex.

ELEMENTS OF CINEMATIC COMPOSITION

Principles of visual composition have been well established since antiquity. Evidenced in painting and still photography, these so-called natural laws focus on three fairly simple visual concepts:

1. Vertical lines suggest strength, authority, and dignity.
2. Diagonal lines crossing the frame suggest action and dynamic movement—the power to overcome obstacles (Figure 5.5).
3. Curved lines denote fluidity and sensuality; compositions that suggest a circular movement evoke feelings of exaltation, euphoria, and joy.

According to Nestor Almendros, a cinematographer must know these principles but must "then forget them, or at least not consciously think about them all the time."[4]

Because a cinematic film is a unique medium, the problems in composition that it poses for the director and cinematographer are also unique. Both must

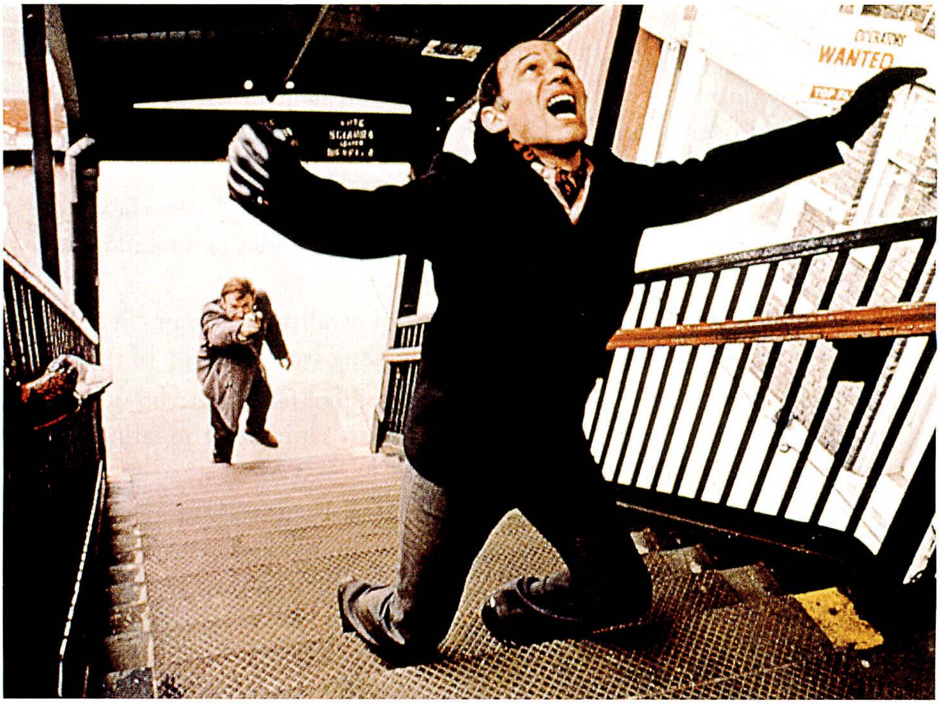


FIGURE 5.5 Powerful Composition The strong diagonal lines of the stairway and railings parallel the line of fire to create a dynamic composition in this powerful scene from *The French Connection*.

keep in mind that every **shot** (a strip of film produced by a single uninterrupted running of the camera) is but a segment, a brief element in a continuous flow of images. And they must create each shot with a view to its contribution to the whole. The difficulty of creating a shot is compounded by the movement of the image itself. The image is in a constant state of flux, and the camera records those movements at a rate of twenty-four frames per second. Every frame in a shot cannot be set up according to the aesthetic principles of composition used in still photography. The cinematographer's choices in each shot are dictated by the nature of the film medium. Every shot must be designed with the goals of *cinematic* composition in mind. These goals are (1) directing attention to the object of greatest significance, (2) keeping the image in constant motion, and (3) creating an illusion of depth.

Focusing Attention on the Most Significant Object

Above all, a shot must be so composed that it draws attention into the scene and toward the object of greatest dramatic significance. Only when this is achieved

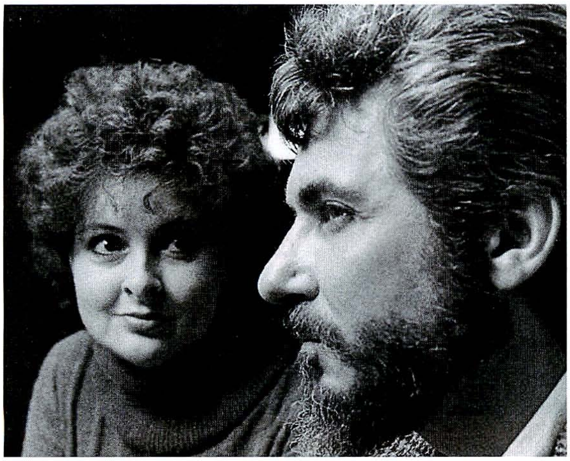


FIGURE 5.6 Size and Closeness of the Object In most cases, our attention is naturally drawn to larger, closer objects or faces, such as the man's face in this picture, rather than to smaller, more distant objects or faces.

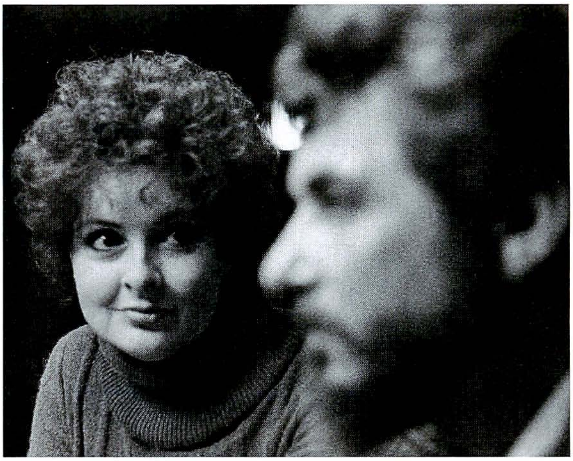


FIGURE 5.7 Sharpness of Focus When a larger, closer face in the foreground is in soft focus or blurred, our attention is drawn to a smaller and more distant face in sharp focus. The eye is drawn almost automatically to what it can see best.

are the film's dramatic ideas conveyed effectively. Several methods of directing attention are open to the filmmaker.

- **Size and Closeness of the Object.** Normally, the eye is directed toward larger, closer objects rather than toward smaller, more distant objects. For example, the image of an actor's face appearing in the foreground (closer to the camera and therefore larger) is more likely to serve as a focal point for our attention than is a face in the background. In a normal situation, then, the size and relative distance of the object from the camera are important factors in determining the greatest area of interest (Figure 5.6).
- **Sharpness of Focus.** The eye is also drawn almost automatically to what it can see best. If a face in the foreground is slightly blurred and a face in the background, though smaller and more distant, is sharp and clear, our eyes are drawn to the background face because it can be seen best. An object in sharp focus can divert our attention from a closer, larger object in soft focus, even if the larger object fills half the screen (Figure 5.7).
- **Movement.** The eye is also drawn to an object in motion, and a moving object can divert our attention from a static one. Thus, a single moving object in an otherwise static scene draws our attention. Conversely, if movement and flow are a general part of the background, moving objects do not divert our attention from static but more dramatically important objects (Figure 5.8).

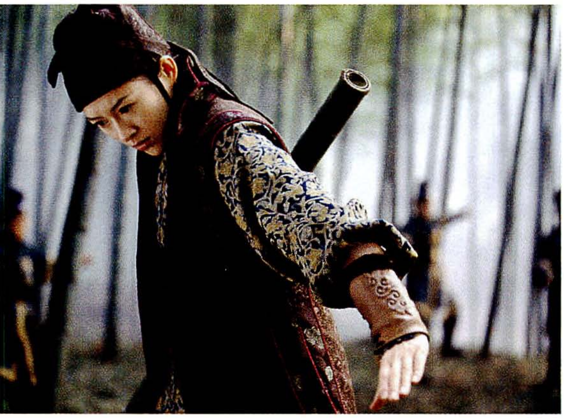


FIGURE 5.8 Background in Motion Although the warriors in the background of this scene from *House of Flying Daggers* are moving, they are part of a generalized traffic movement across the woods, so our attention remains on the relatively static but dramatically more important maneuvers in the foreground by Zhang Ziyi.

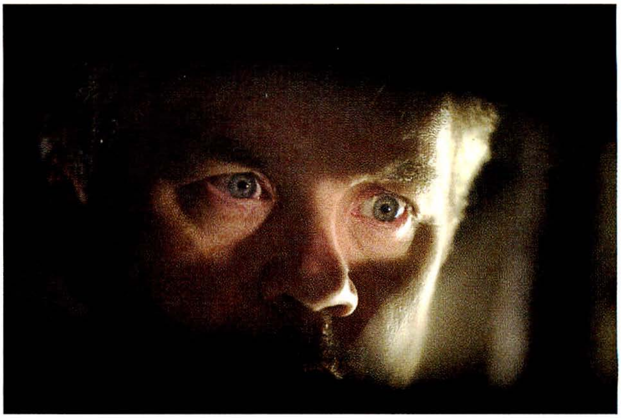


FIGURE 5.9 Extreme Close-Up There's no doubt about where our attention is directed in this dramatic close-up of Tim Robbins's face in *War of the Worlds* (2005).

- **Extreme Close-Ups.** A **close-up** is a shot of a person or object taken at close range. A tight or extreme close-up brings us so close to the object of interest (an actor's face, for example) that we cannot look elsewhere. The face so fills the screen that there is nothing else to see (Figure 5.9).
- **Arrangement of People and Objects.** The director focuses our attention by his or her arrangement of people and objects in relation to each other. Because each arrangement is determined by the nature of the dramatic moment being enacted and the complex interrelationships involved, the director must depend more on an intuitive sense of rightness than on any positioning formulas (Figure 5.10).
- **Foreground Framing.** The director might decide to frame the object of greatest significance with objects or people in the near foreground. To make sure that our attention is not distracted by the framing objects or people, the director generally emphasizes the most important subject with the brightest lighting and sharpest focus (Figures 5.11, 5.12).
- **Lighting and Color.** Special uses of light and color also help draw the eye to the object of greatest significance. High-contrast areas of light and dark create natural centers of focal interest, as do bright colors in a subdued or drab background (Figure 5.13).

In composing each shot, the filmmaker continually employs these techniques, either separately or in conjunction with each other, to focus our attention on the object of greatest dramatic significance. The filmmaker guides our

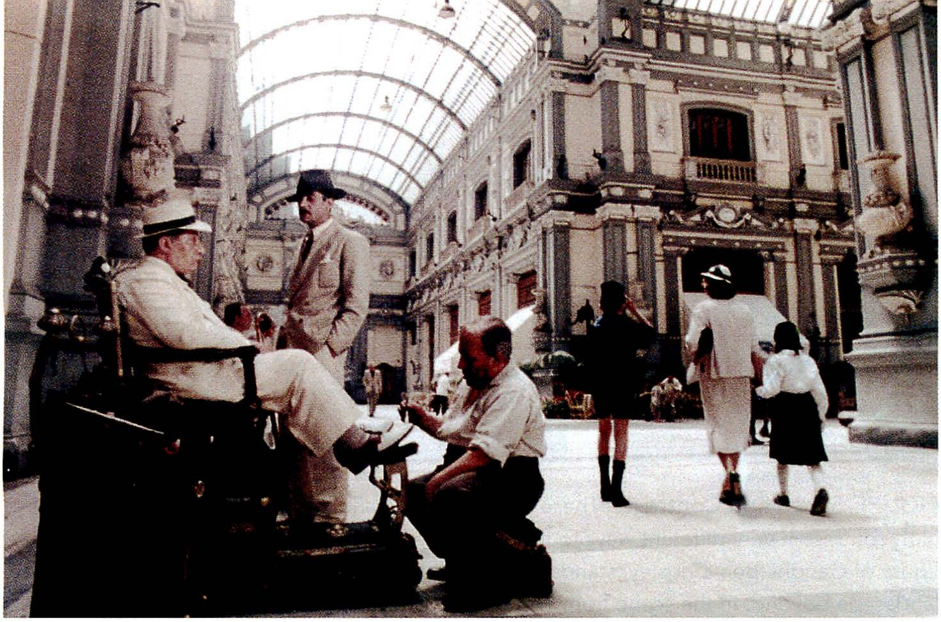


FIGURE 5.10 Dramatic Arrangement of People and Objects There are no set formulas for positioning characters and objects within the frame. The director must rely on an intuitive sense of rightness in composing each shot to communicate the nature of the dramatic moment and in positioning actors to reveal subtle and complex interrelationships. In this scene from Lina Wertmuller's *Seven Beauties*, we focus our attention on Giancarlo Giannini because of the physical locations of the other characters and because Giannini's position in the center of the architectural frame created by the grand foyer in the background and his standing posture make him dominant.

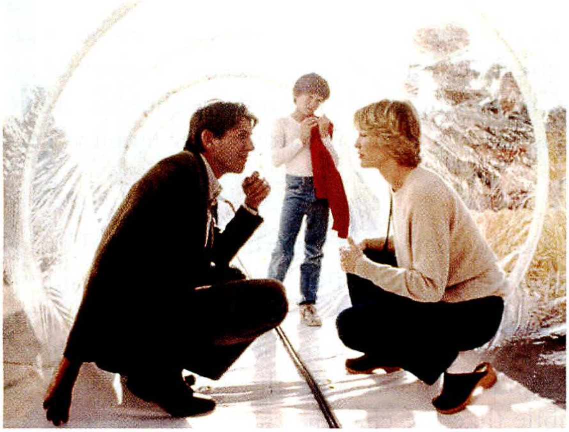


FIGURE 5.11 Foreground Framing In *E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial* Peter Coyote and Dee Wallace talking in the foreground set up a frame that calls our attention to the listener, Henry Thomas. Subtle differences in lighting and Thomas's position in the center of the plastic tunnel also direct our attention to him.

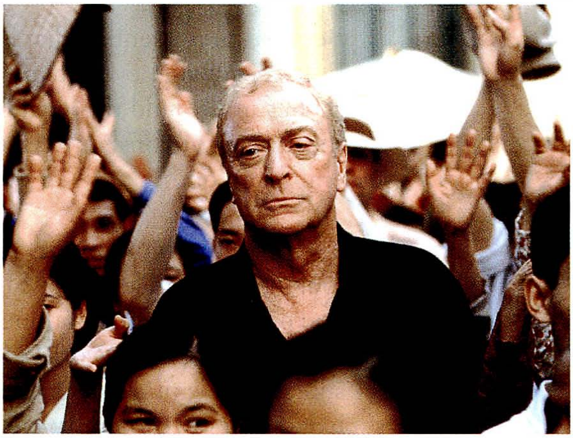


FIGURE 5.12 The Menacing Frame While Vietnamese citizens crowd around him with their arms raised, the Michael Caine character in *The Quiet American* uneasily remains the center of the viewer's attention.

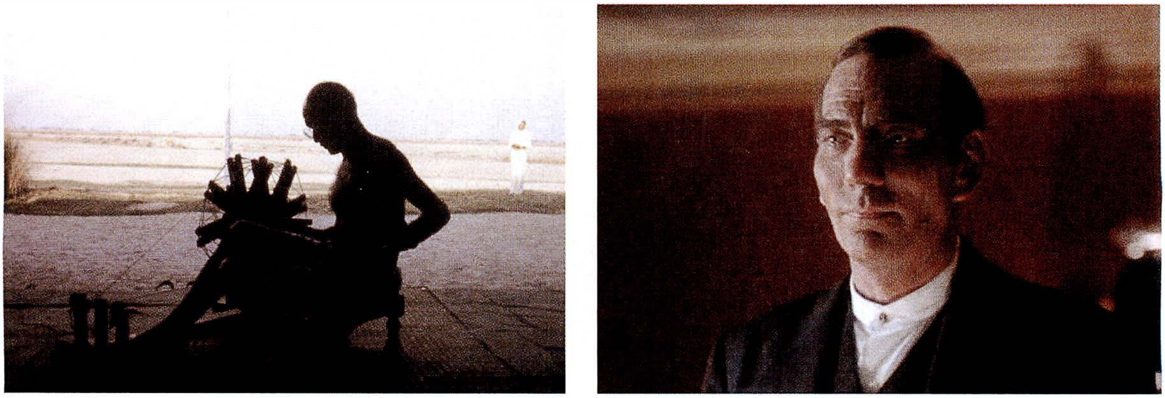


FIGURE 5.13 High Contrast These pictures from *Gandhi* and *The Usual Suspects* use high contrast in very different ways to focus our attention. In the scene from *Gandhi*, the figure of Gandhi (Ben Kingsley) stands out against the bright sunlight on the parched Indian landscape beyond. In the scene from *The Usual Suspects,* the darkness of the lounge draws our attention to the face of Keyser Soze's henchman (played by Pete Postlethwaite), who is highlighted only by the chandeliers.

thoughts and emotions where he or she wants them to go. Focusing our attention is certainly the most fundamental concern of cinematic composition, but, as we shall see, it is not the only one.

Keeping the Image in Motion

Because the essential characteristic of the cinematic film is continuous motion—a flowing, ever-changing stream of images—the director or cinematographer must build this quality of movement and flux into every shot. To create the stream of constantly changing images, the cinematographer employs several techniques.

Fixed-Frame Movement The fixed camera frame approximates the effect of looking through a window. In **fixed-frame movement,** the camera remains in one position, pointing at one spot, as we might look at something with a frozen stare. The director works movement and variety into the shot by moving the subject. This movement can be rapid and frantic (like the physical action of a barroom brawl) or calm and subtle (like the changing facial expression of an actor speaking and gesturing normally).

Several types of movement are possible within the fixed frame. Movement can be *lateral* (from the left to right of the frame), *in depth* (toward or away from the camera), or *diagonal* (a combination of lateral and in-depth movements). Purely lateral movement creates the impression of movement on a flat surface (which the screen is) and therefore calls attention to one of the medium's limitations: its two-dimensionality. So, to create the illusion of three dimensions, the cinematographer favors in-depth movement (toward or away from the camera) and diagonal movement over purely lateral movement.

Panning and Tilting Usually when the camera remains in a fixed physical location, it captures movement by approximating the head and eye movements of a human spectator. The camera's movements incorporate what is essentially a human field of view. With the body stationary, if we turn the head and neck from left to right and add a corresponding sideward glance of the eyes, our field of view takes in an arc slightly wider than 180 degrees. And if we simply move the head and eyes up and down, our eyes span an arc of at least 90 degrees. Most movements of the camera fall within these natural human limitations. A closer look at these camera movements will clarify these limitations.

Panning Moving the camera's line of sight in a horizontal plane, to the left and right, is called **panning.** The most common use of the camera pan is to follow the lateral movement of the subject. In a western, for example, the panning camera may function in this way. The wagon train has been attacked by bandits and has moved into a defensive circle. The camera for this shot is set up in a fixed location looking over the shoulder of one of the settlers as she attempts to pick off circling bandits with a rifle. The circling bandits move from right to left. The camera (and the rifle) move to the right and pick up a subject (target bandit). Then, both camera and rifle swing laterally to left as the subject bandit rides by; when he reaches a center position, the rifle fires and we watch him fall off the horse and roll to the left of the center. Then either the camera pans back to the right to pick up a new target or an editorial cut starts the next shot with the camera picking up a new target bandit (far right), and the pattern is repeated.

Another type of pan is used to change from one subject to another. This might be illustrated by a shootout scene in the middle of the street of a western town. The camera occupies a fixed position on the side of the street, halfway between the dueling gunfighters. After establishing the tense, poised image of the gunman on the right, the camera leaves him and slowly pans left until it focuses on the other man, also tense and poised.

Because the eye normally jumps instantaneously from one object of interest to another, a pan must have a dramatic purpose; otherwise, it will seem unnatural and conspicuous. There are several possible reasons for using a pan. In the gunfight scene, the slow fluid movement of the camera from one man to the other may help expand time, intensifying the suspense and the viewer's anticipation of the first draw. Also, it may reflect the tension in the environment as a whole by registering the fear and suspense on the faces of the onlookers across the street, who become secondary subjects as we see their facial expressions in passing or catch glimpses of them frantically diving for cover. Finally, the pan may simply help to establish the relative distance between the two men. Although this type of pan can be effective, it must be used with restraint, particularly if there is a great deal of **dead screen** (screen area with no dramatically or aesthetically interesting visual information) between the two subjects.

On rare occasions, a complete 360-degree pan may be dramatically effective, especially when the situation calls for a sweeping panoramic view of the entire landscape. A full 360-degree pan, as in Sidney Lumet's *A Long Day's Journey Into Night*, clearly indicates the impossibility of escape and the hopelessness of the situation. Also, a 360-degree pan might be useful in dramatizing the situation of a character waking up in an unfamiliar and unexpected environment. A person waking up in a jail cell, for instance, would turn his or her body enough to survey the surroundings completely.

Tilting Moving the camera's line of sight in a vertical plane, up and down, is called **tilting.** Tilting approximates the vertical movement of our head and eyes. The following hypothetical sequence illustrates how the tilt is used. The camera occupies a fixed position at the end of an airport runway, focused on a jet airliner taxiing toward the camera. As the plane lifts off, the camera tilts upward to follow the plane's trajectory to a point directly overhead. At this point, although it would be technically possible to create an axis to follow the plane in one continuous shot, the shot stops and a new shot begins with the camera facing in the opposite direction. The second shot picks up the plane still overhead and tilts downward to follow its flight away from the camera. This movement approximates the way we would normally observe the incident if we were standing in the camera's position. As the plane turns right and begins to climb, the camera follows it in a diagonal movement that combines the elements of both panning and tilting. Thus, though the camera is in a fixed location, it is flexible enough to follow the movement of the plane as represented by the following arrows: takeoff to directly overhead ↑, crossover to turn ↘, turn and climb ↗.

In most panning and tilting shots, the movement of the camera approximates the normal *human* way of looking at things. Many shots in every film are photographed in this manner, showing the story unfolding as a person watching the scene might view it.

The Zoom Lens In the techniques described so far, the camera remains in a fixed position. The fixed camera, however—even though it can pan and tilt—lacks the fluidity necessary to create a truly cinematic film. The zoom lens offers a solution to this problem. The **zoom lens**—a series of lenses that keep an image in constant focus—allows the camera to appear to glide toward or away from the subject, but without any movement of the camera. Zoom lenses can magnify the subject ten times or more, so that we seem to move closer to the subject although our actual distance from the camera does not change.

To a camera stationed behind home plate in a baseball stadium, the center fielder, some four hundred feet away, appears extremely small, the same size

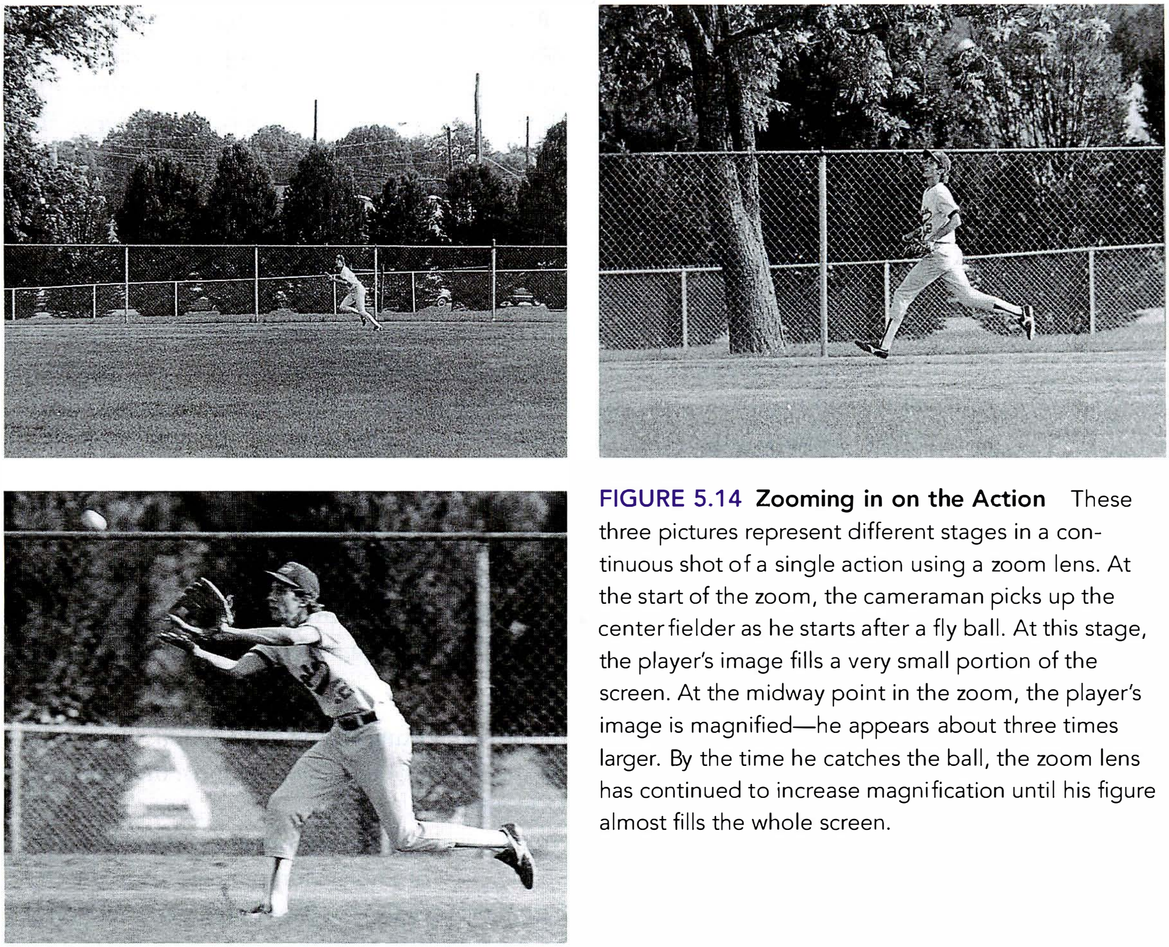


FIGURE 5.14 Zooming in on the Action These three pictures represent different stages in a continuous shot of a single action using a zoom lens. At the start of the zoom, the cameraman picks up the center fielder as he starts after a fly ball. At this stage, the player's image fills a very small portion of the screen. At the midway point in the zoom, the player's image is magnified—he appears about three times larger. By the time he catches the ball, the zoom lens has continued to increase magnification until his figure almost fills the whole screen.

that he would appear to the naked eye. By zooming in on him, the cinematographer is able to keep him in constant focus, and in effect we glide smoothly toward the center fielder until his figure almost fills the screen, as if we were seeing him from a distance of forty feet or less (Figure 5.14). The camera simply magnifies the image, but the effect is one of moving toward the subject. By reversing the process, the cinematographer can achieve the effect of moving away from the subject.

The use of the zoom lens not only allows us to see things more clearly but also gives us a sense of fluid motion in and out of the frame, thereby increasing our interest and involvement. And all of these variations are possible without ever moving the camera.

The Mobile Camera When the camera itself becomes mobile, the possibilities of movement increase tremendously. By freeing the camera from a fixed position, the cinematographer can create a constantly shifting viewpoint, giving us a moving image of a static subject. By mounting the camera on a boom or a crane (itself mounted on a truck or dolly), the cinematographer can move it fluidly alongside, above, in front of, behind, or even under a running horse. The mobile camera can thus fulfill almost any demand for movement created by a story situation.

Film stories are often framed effectively by slow camera movement for beginnings and endings. By moving the camera slowly and fluidly forward to enter a scene, the cinematographer creates a sense of mystery, discovery, and anticipation while bringing us into the heart of the narrative and involving us in the action. The opposite—fluid camera movement away from the scene—is often used to give a powerful sense of ending to a film. It can be especially effective when it pulls away from continuing action, as in the final helicopter camera shot in *Zorba the Greek*, picturing Zorba (Anthony Quinn) and his friend (Alan Bates) dancing on the beach. Our slow exit while the action is in progress gives us the feeling that the dance continues indefinitely.

The mobile camera can also provide the tremendous sense of immediacy and dynamism that French director Abel Gance strove for in his 1927 *Napoleon*. Film historian Kevin Brownlow describes Gance and his film in the *Napoleon* program brochure for its 1981 reissue:

> To him, a tripod was a set of crutches supporting a lame imagination. His aim was to free the camera, to hurl it into the middle of the action, to force the audience from mere spectators into active participants.
>
> Technicians in the German studios were putting the camera on wheels. Gance put it on wings. He strapped it to the back of a horse, for rapid inserts in the chase across Corsica; he suspended it from overhead wires, like a miniature cable-car; he mounted it on a huge pendulum, to achieve the vertigo-inducing storm in the convention.[5]

In some films, the dynamism of the camera evokes the drama of a scene. During a crucial moment in a scene of *North Country*, director Niki Caro somewhat abruptly moves her camera around the corner post of a front porch on which a mother (Charlize Theron) talks to her teenage son about the secret of his paternity: This cinemagraphic motion seems to emulate the affective evolution that the scene records.

Two modern developments have greatly increased the potential of the mobile camera. The first of these, the **Steadicam,** is a portable, one-person camera with a built-in gyroscopic device that prevents any sudden jerkiness and provides a smooth, rock-steady image even when the person carrying it is running up a flight of steps or down a rocky mountain path. The second development, the **Skycam,** is a small, computerized, remote-controlled camera that can be mounted on the top of a lightweight magnesium pole or can "fly" on wires at speeds of up to twenty miles an hour and can go practically anywhere that cables can be strung. Helicopter mounts with gyroscopic stabilizers also create spectacular gyrosphere shots.

Editing and Movement The editing process also contributes greatly to the cinematic film's stream of images. The editing, in fact, often creates the most vibrant visual rhythms in a film, as the editorial cuts and transitions propel us instantaneously from a **long shot** (a shot, taken from some distance, that shows the subject as well as its surroundings) to a close-up, from one camera angle to another, and from one setting to another.

The cinematographer thus uses a wide variety of techniques, either separately or in various combinations, to keep the visual image in constant motion:

- the movement of the subject within the fixed frame
- vertical or horizontal movement of the camera (tilting and panning)
- apparent movement of the viewer toward or away from the objects in the frame (zoom lens)
- completely free movement of the camera and constantly changing viewpoint (mobile camera and editorial cuts)

Dead Screen and Live Screen The director must be concerned with keeping the image alive in another sense. In almost every shot, the director attempts to communicate a significant amount of information in each frame (Figure 5.15). To achieve this **live screen,** each shot must be composed so that the visual frame is loaded with cinematic information, and large blank areas (dead screen) are avoided—unless, as in some cases, there is a dramatic purpose for dead screen.

Creating an Illusion of Depth

Cinematic composition must be concerned with creating an illusion of depth on what is essentially a two-dimensional screen (Figures 5.16 and 5.17). To achieve this, the cinematographer employs several different techniques.

1. **Movement of Subject (Fixed Frame).** When using a fixed frame, the director creates the illusion of depth by filming the subject moving toward or away from the camera, either head-on or diagonally. Purely lateral movement, perpendicular to the direction in which the camera is aimed, creates a two-dimensional effect and, to avoid a flat image, should be minimized.
2. **Movement of Camera.** A camera mounted on a truck or dolly may create the illusion of depth by moving toward or away from a relatively static object. As it passes by or goes around objects, we become more aware of the depth of the image. Because the camera eye actually moves, the objects on both sides of its path constantly change their position relative

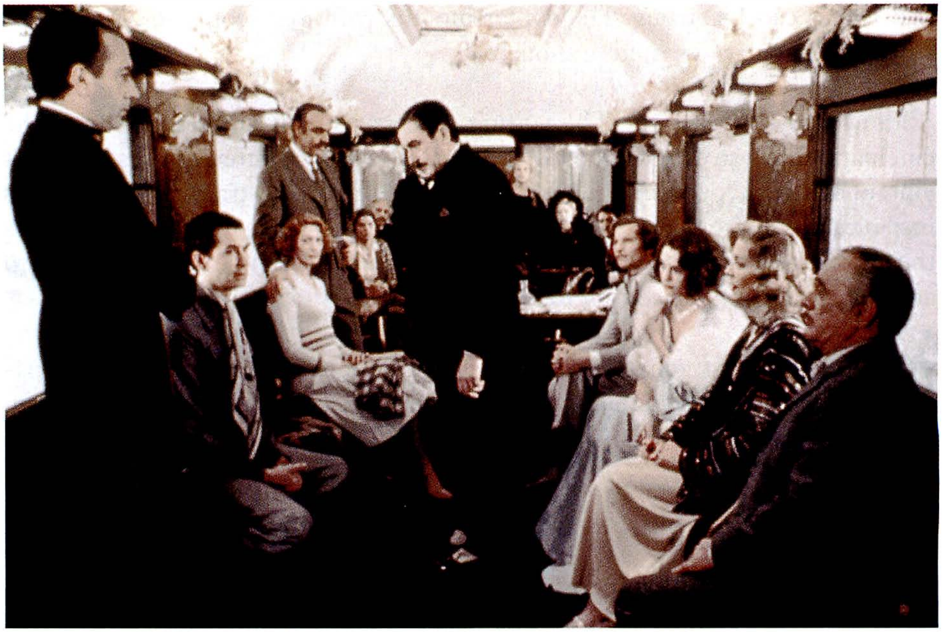


FIGURE 5.15 The Packed Screen The most obvious way to keep the screen alive is to pack almost every square inch of its surface with visual information, as in this scene from *Murder on the Orient Express*.

to one another. The change varies according to the changing angles from which the moving camera views them. Director Allan Dwan describes this illusion:

> To get the real effect of a dolly at any time, you have to pass something. If you're not going past anything, you don't get the effect. You pass buildings or you pass a tree or you pass something, and it's very interesting. We used to notice, years and years ago before any of these effects were tried, or anything like stereoscopic photography was thought about, that if we passed a tree, then the tree became solid and round. If you dolly past a tree, it seems to revolve. It turns around. It isn't flat anymore. But stand still and photograph a tree and it's just a flat tree. But move past it and it rounds right away. Just becomes solid. And we used to get that effect. We'd take certain buildings—buildings with pillars—and get a wonderful effect going past those pillars if we dollied. The pillars seemed to revolve but they got solid because as you went around them you had the feeling that they were of substance and not just flat.[6]

3. **Apparent Camera Movement (Zoom Lens).** By magnifying the image, the zoom lens gives us the sensation of moving closer to or farther from the camera. Not surprisingly, the zoom lens may also be used to create the

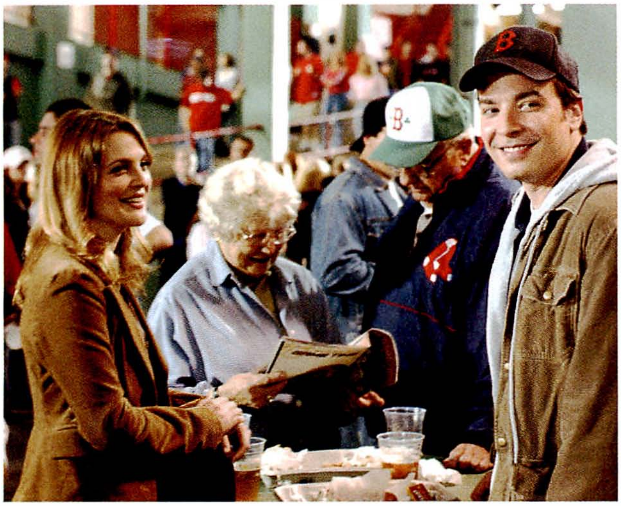


FIGURE 5.16 Moving Background, Vibrant Foreground A director attempts to incorporate some kind of motion into almost every shot and often uses natural background movement to keep the screen alive. This kind of background motion, a very subordinate type, does not divert our attention from the primary subjects. In this scene from *Fever Pitch*, a static shot of Drew Barrymore and Jimmy Fallon is kept alive by filming them in front of fans milling around at a baseball game.

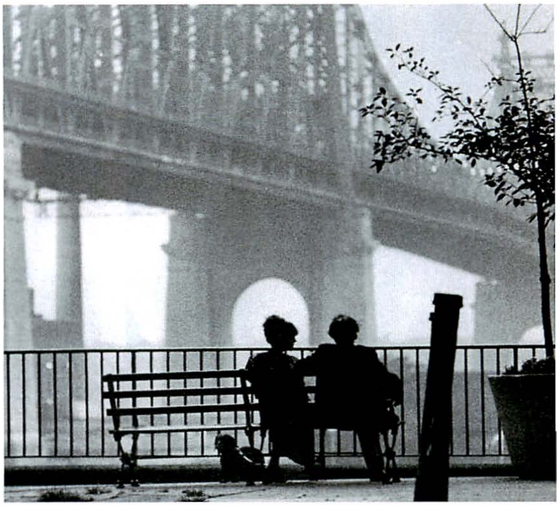


FIGURE 5.17 Strong Visual Impact in a Static Background The figures of Diane Keaton and Woody Allen occupy a very small portion of the frame in this scene from *Manhattan*. The imposing architecture of the Queensborough Bridge in the background provides an aesthetically pleasing composition and a strong sense of three-dimensionality and underscores the sense of place that is an integral part of the film.

illusion of depth. But because camera position does not change during zooming, there is no real change in perspective. The objects to the sides do not change their position in relation to one another as they do when the camera moves. For this reason, a zoom lens does not create the illusion of depth quite as effectively as a mobile camera.

4. **Change of Focal Planes (Rack Focus).** Most cameras, including still cameras, are designed to focus on objects at different distances from the lens. Because the eye is ordinarily drawn to what it can see best—that is, to the object in sharpest focus—the cinematographer can create a kind of three-dimensionality by using **rack focus**—in one continuous shot focusing the camera lens, in turn, on objects in different planes of depth (different distances from the camera). If the frame includes three faces, all at different distances from the camera, the cinematographer may first focus on the nearest face and then, while the shot continues, focus on the second face and then on the third, thus, in effect, creating the illusion of depth within the frame (Figure 5.18).
5. **Deep Focus.** In direct contrast to the change in focal planes is **deep focus**—the use of special lenses that allow the camera to focus simultaneously

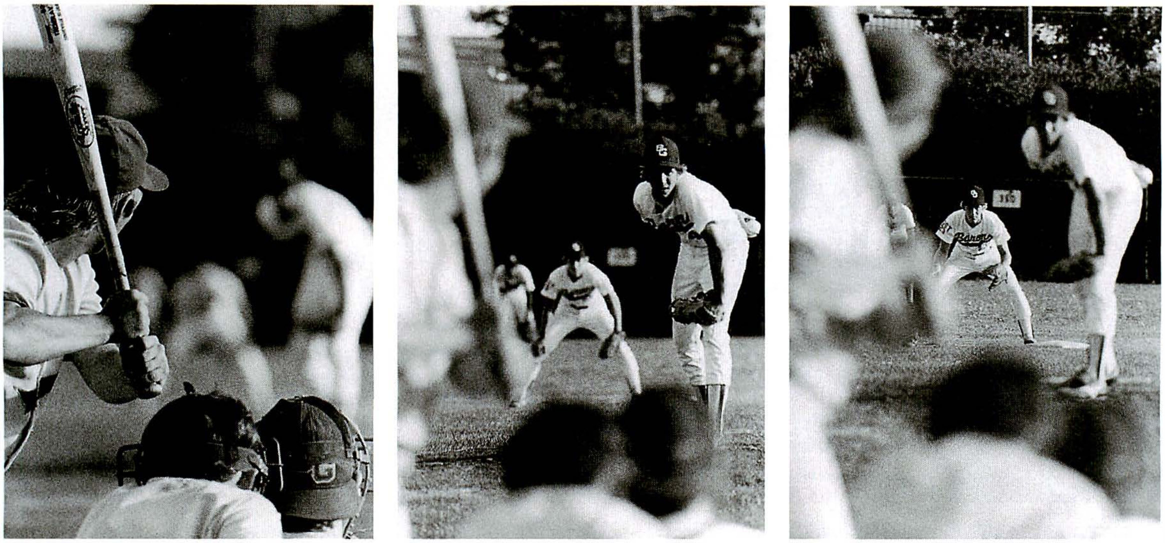


FIGURE 5.18 Rack Focus—Moving Deeper Into the Frame Because our attention is naturally drawn to what we can see best, the illusion of depth can be created by changing the focus during a continuous shot. These three pictures represent different stages in a single running shot. In the first picture, our attention is drawn to the sharply focused image of the batter. As the shot continues, the camera focuses on the pitcher and then on the shortstop, giving us the feeling that we are being drawn deeper into a three-dimensional frame. (The order could also be reversed, beginning the shot with the shortstop in focus and ending with the batter in focus.)

and with equal clarity on objects anywhere from two feet to several hundred feet away. This depth of focus approximates most clearly the ability of the human eye to see a deep range of objects in clear focus (Figure 5.19). The sustained use of this technique has a profound effect on the way the audience views the dramatic action. Writing about cinematographer Gregg Toland's use of deep focus in *Citizen Kane*, Frank Brady explains:

> [Deep focus] permitted the camera to record objects at varying distances in the same shot, in sharp, clear focus, rather than deemphasizing background. By allowing several points of view or interest to occur simultaneously, this deep-focus photography encompassed the same range of vision as the human eye. It permitted the spectator, not the camera, to decide which character or piece of action to concentrate upon. Essentially, this form of cinematography provided the same kind of freedom that a playgoer has while watching a stage play, where the audience is not forced to look at a close-up or a single character, for example, as he must in a film, but can allow his eyes to take in anything—or everything—that is happening on stage. . . . It was an

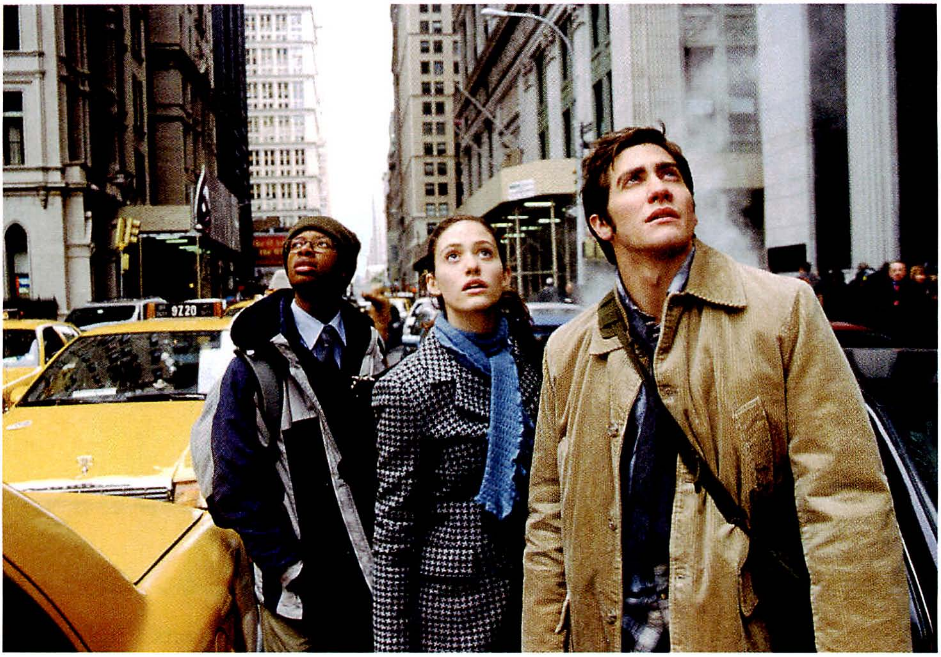


FIGURE 5.19 **Deep Focus** In this photograph from *The Day After Tomorrow,* Jake Gyllenhaal, Emmy Rossum, and Arjay Smith are all in equally sharp focus despite their clearly different distances from the camera.

> innovative and daring technique, and [director Orson] Welles had Toland shoot as many scenes as possible using the vitality of deep focus.[7]

Because each shot is loaded with rich visual and dramatic information in several planes of depth, the pace of editing is slow when deep focus is used.

6. **Three-Dimensional Arrangement of People and Objects.** Perhaps the most important consideration in creating a three-dimensional image is how to arrange the people and objects to be filmed. If they are placed in separate focal planes, the cinematographer has a truly three-dimensional scene to photograph. Without such an arrangement, there is no real purpose for the various effects and techniques described above (Figure 5.20).
7. **Foreground Framing.** A three-dimensional effect is also achieved when a shot is set up so that the subject is framed by an object or objects in the near foreground. When the object that forms the frame is in focus, a strong sense of three-dimensionality is achieved. When the foreground frame is thrown out of focus, or seen in very soft focus, the three-dimensional effect is weakened somewhat but not lost, and the entire mood or atmosphere of the scene changes (Figure 5.21).

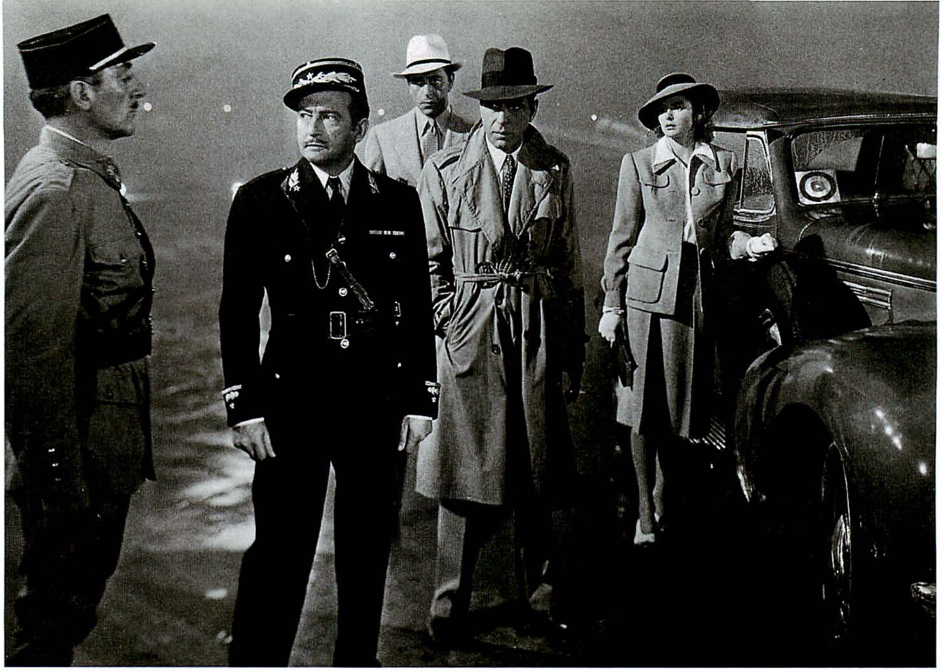


FIGURE 5.20 Three-Dimensional Arrangement of People and Objects The characters around Humphrey Bogart are carefully positioned for a three-dimensional effect in this scene from *Casablanca*.

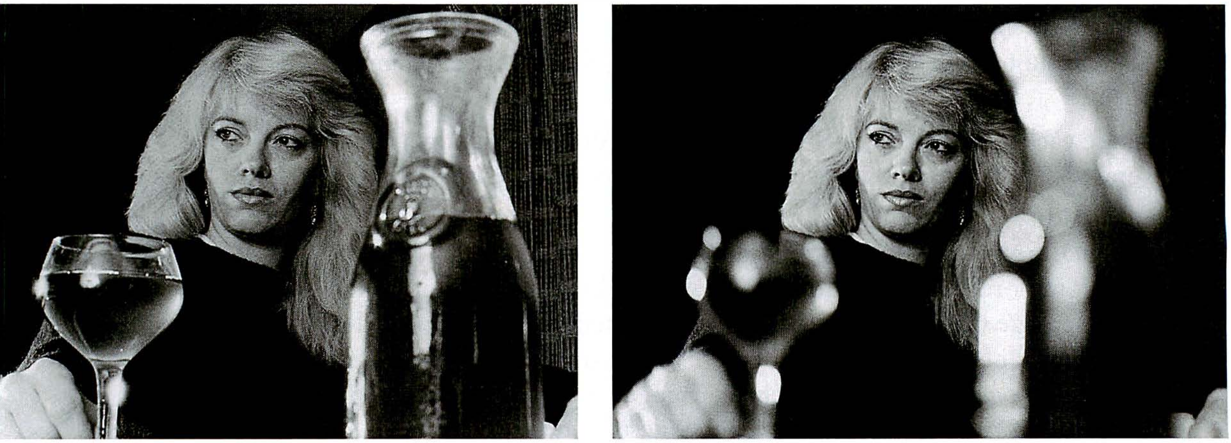


FIGURE 5.21 Foreground Framing In one shot, the wine glass and carafe in the foreground framing the woman's face are in focus. In the other, they are completely out of focus.

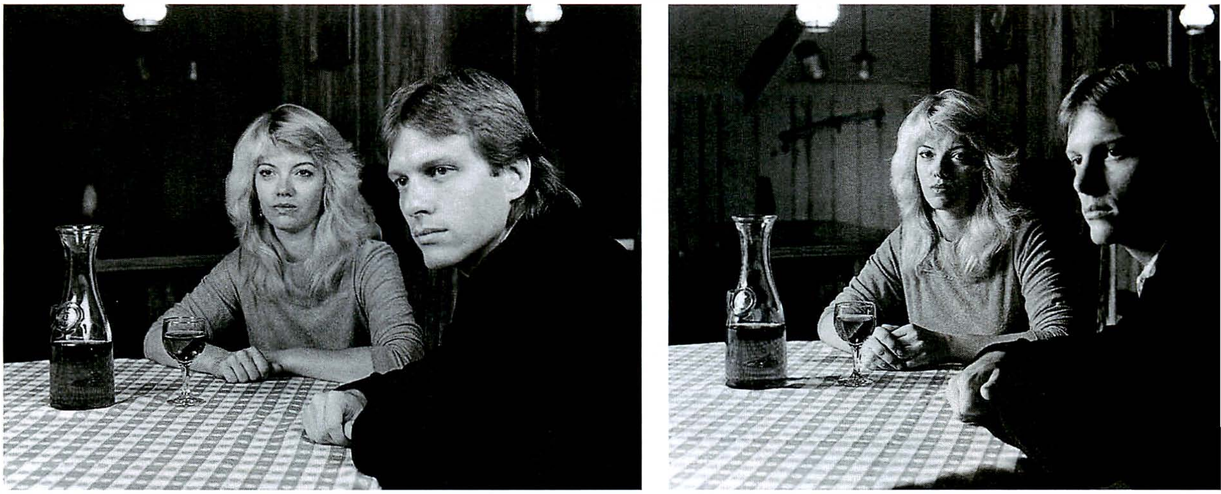


FIGURE 5.22 Lighting for Depth In the left photo, the flat lighting serves to minimize the sense of depth. When the direction, intensity, and quality of the light are changed, the same scene has greater depth and more dramatic punch.

8. **Special Lighting Effects.** By carefully controlling the angle, direction, intensity, and quality of the lighting, the director can further add to the illusion of depth (Figure 5.22). Occasionally, the director may even control the source and direction of the lighting for the purpose of expanding the limits of the frame. By positioning the light source out of camera range—to either side of, or behind, the camera—the filmmaker can cause the shadows of objects outside the frame to fall inside the frame, thus suggesting the presence of those objects. When these shadows come from objects behind the camera, they can add greatly to the three-dimensionality of the shot (Figure 5.23).
9. **Use of Reflections.** Directors also make imaginative use of reflections to create a sense of depth and pack additional information into a frame. In *The Grapes of Wrath*, for example, as the Joad truck travels across the Mohave Desert at night, the camera looks out through the windshield at the strange world it is driving through. At the same time, the pale, ghostly reflections of Tom, Al, and Pa are seen on the glass as they talk about what they are seeing. In this way, information that would usually require two shots is compressed into one. The same technique is used in *Hardcore*, where the worried face of the father (George C. Scott) is reflected in the windshield as he tries to track his runaway daughter in a big-city porn district (Figure 5.24). In *Citizen Kane*, just after the protagonist's second wife has left him, a whole bank of mirrors lining both sides of a grand hallway in Xanadu reflect not one but multiple Charles Foster Kanes. As it is used,

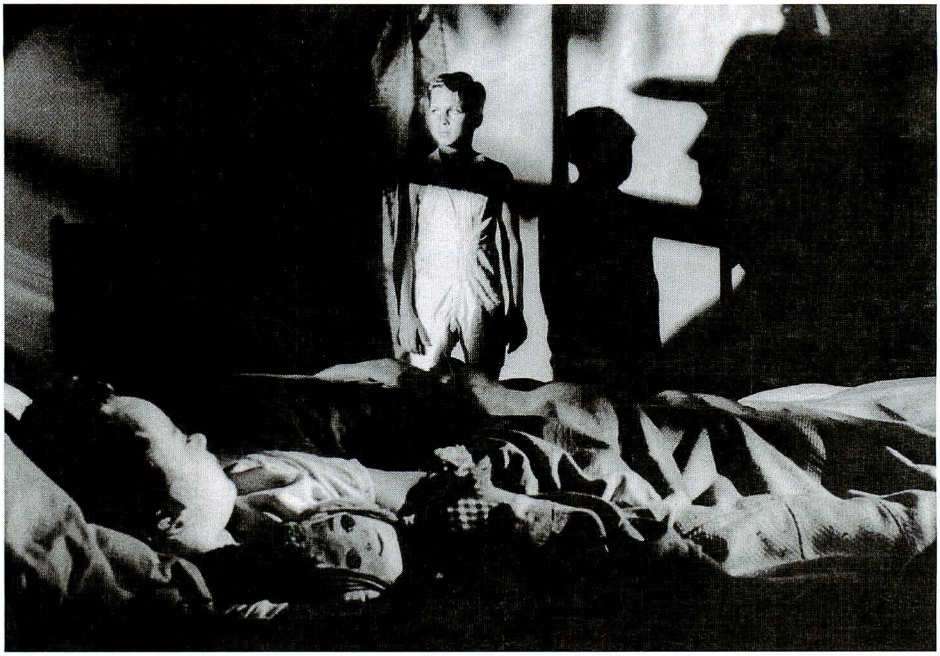


FIGURE 5.23 Three-Dimensional Shadows In this scene from Charles Laughton's *The Night of the Hunter,* the orphaned boy, John, stands guard over his sleeping sister, Pearl, and looks out the window at the villainous "preacher," Harry Powers (Robert Mitchum). Mitchum sits on a bench in the yard, a gas lamp behind him casting his shadow through the window and onto the room's back wall. If the scene were evenly lit, with no shadows, it would have only two important planes of depth: Pearl, sleeping in the foreground, and John, standing in the background. Although the shadows add only one *real* plane of depth (the wall), our mind's eye is aware of objects or shapes in five different planes: Mitchum seated in the yard, the window frame, Pearl sleeping on the bed, John, and the back wall. Even more important to the scene's dramatic power is the very real sense of Mitchum's presence in the room as his shadow looms over and threatens the shadow of John on the wall.

late in the film, the effect intensifies the essential mystery of personality developed throughout. The film reveals to its journalistic investigators that, externally, the extraordinary Kane is many men in one. The viewer understands that, internally, too, like most humans, Kane is vastly fragmented. The celebrated hall of mirrors sequence at the end of *The Lady From Shanghai* finds Orson Welles using this technique again—this time for sustaining psychological suspense.

The nine effects described in this section have nothing to do with specialized three-dimensional projection systems such as 3-D and Cinerama. But most of them do provide a fairly effective illusion of depth. Despite a revival of 3-D in films like *Chicken Little* and *Spy Kids 3D: Game Over*, and some new pro-

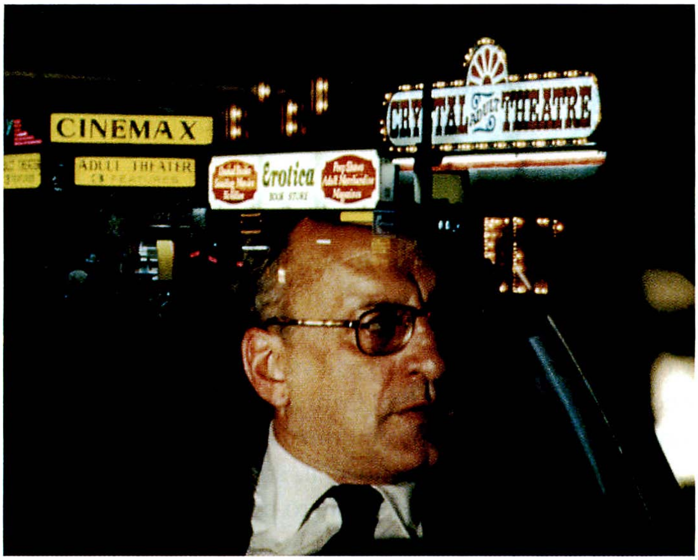


FIGURE 5.24 Special Use of Reflection A worried father (George C. Scott) searches for his runaway daughter through a big-city porn district in this scene from *Hardcore*. By showing his reflected image on the car's windshield, director Paul Schrader has not only provided an additional plane of depth but has in effect doubled the information in the frame. We see not only what the father sees but also his reaction to it.

jection techniques, the effect has not been much improved, and the troublesome 3-D glasses are usually still required. The quality of the films released in 3-D hasn't done much to help sell the product. Lily Tomlin perhaps sums up the problem best:

> *Bwana Devil* in 3-D was modestly billed as "The Miracle of the Age." On the poster it promised, "A Lion in Your Lap! A Lover in Your Arms!". . . What more could one ask for? Well, a better script, perhaps. Is there a rule somewhere that says that for every giant techno-step we take forward we must take one step back and touch base with banality? So often, what we expect to be techno-leaps turn out to be techno-trash.[8]

SPECIALIZED CINEMATIC TECHNIQUES

Directors and cinematographers also employ a variety of specialized visual techniques that enhance certain qualities of the action or dramatic situation being filmed.

Handheld Camera

Related to the concept of cinematic point of view is the specialized dramatic effect achieved through use of a handheld camera. The jerky, uneven movement of the camera heightens the sense of reality provided by the subjective viewpoint. In *Alambrista!* Robert Young employed a handheld camera, making the perspective jump madly to reflect the disassociation his Hispanic hero feels in a foreign country. If the viewpoint is not intended to be subjective, the same technique can give a sequence the feel of a documentary or newsreel. The handheld camera, jerkiness and all, is especially effective in filming violent action scenes because the random, chaotic camera movement fits in with the spirit of the action. During the past two decades, however, the handheld camera has been overused in so-called slasher horror films in an attempt to create suspense.

Camera Angles

Cinematographers do more with the camera than simply position it for one of the four basic viewpoints. The angle from which an event or object is photographed is an important factor in cinematic composition. Sometimes cinematographers employ different camera angles to add variety or to create a sense of visual balance between one shot and another. Camera angles also communicate special kinds of dramatic information or emotional attitudes. Because the objective point of view stresses or employs a normal, straightforward view of the action, unusual camera angles are used primarily to present other points of view, such as the subjective viewpoint of a participant in the action or the interpretive viewpoint of the director.

When the camera is placed below eye level, creating a **low-angle shot,** the size and importance of the subject are exaggerated. If a child is the principal figure in a film, low-angle shots of adults may be very much in evidence, as the director attempts to show us the scene from a child's perspective. For example, in *Night of the Hunter* two children are attempting to escape from the clutches of a Satanic itinerant preacher (Robert Mitchum) who has already murdered their mother. As the children attempt to launch a boat from the bank, Mitchum's figure is seen from a low angle as he crashes through the brush lining the bank and plunges into the water. The terror of the narrow escape is intensified by the low camera angle, which clearly communicates the helplessness of the children and their view of the monstrous Mitchum.

A different effect is achieved in *Lord of the Flies* (1963), where Ralph, pursued to the point of exhaustion by the savage boys on the beach, falls headlong in the sand at the feet of a British naval officer. The low-angle shot of the officer, exaggerating his size and solidity, conveys a sense of dominance, strength, and protectiveness to Ralph. This kind of shot is used repeatedly throughout Richard Rush's *The Stunt Man* to establish and maintain the image of the film director, Eli Cross (Peter O'Toole), as a kind of all-powerful, godlike figure.

An effect opposite to that of the low-angle shot is generally achieved by placing the camera *above* eye level, creating a **high-angle shot,** which seems to dwarf the subject and diminish its importance. When an extremely high camera angle is combined with slow, fluid camera movement, as though the camera were slowly floating over the scene, the impression is that of a remote, external, detached spectator carefully examining a situation in an objective, almost scientific, manner (Figure 5.25). Consider, for example, a high-angle shot that would show Gulliver's view of the Lilliputians. Writer-director Francis Ford

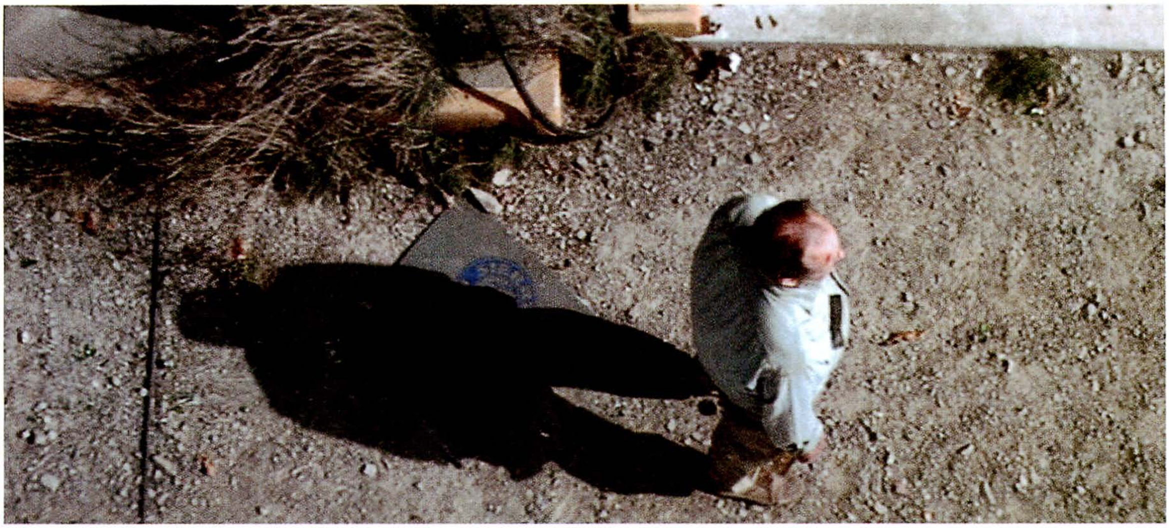


FIGURE 5.25 Extremely High Camera Angle When the mobile camera seems to float slowly high above the action, as in both the opening and closing scenes of director Sean Penn's *The Pledge* (starring Jack Nicholson as a man who may have gone mad from the weight of his promises), we become very remote and detached, and our objectivity (like our viewpoint) becomes almost godlike.

Coppola and cinematographer Bill Butler open *The Conversation* with a high-angle shot of Union Square in San Francisco. The tantalizing, persistent memory of this camera angle continues to color viewers' perception throughout the film—on levels of plot, character, and theme.

The director may employ certain camera angles to suggest the feeling he or she wants to convey about a character at a given moment (Figure 5.26). In *Touch of Evil*, Orson Welles employs a high camera angle to look down on Janet Leigh as she enters a prison cell. The shot emphasizes her despair and her helplessness. By making us see the character as he sees her, Welles interprets the emotional tenor and atmosphere of the scene for us. In one of the most famous shots in *Citizen Kane*, Gregg Toland utilizes an extremely high camera angle as Kane makes a political speech; the protagonist is shown as a tiny, insignificant figure in the film frame. Most shrewdly, though, Welles places this image in front of a gigantic poster of Kane that creates the opposite effect simultaneously: The politician looms powerfully above the world. Thus, the interior conflicts within Kane's life are presented cinematically.

Color, Diffusion, and Soft Focus

Directors use filters to create a wide range of specialized effects. They may use special filters to darken the blue of the sky, thereby sharpening by contrast

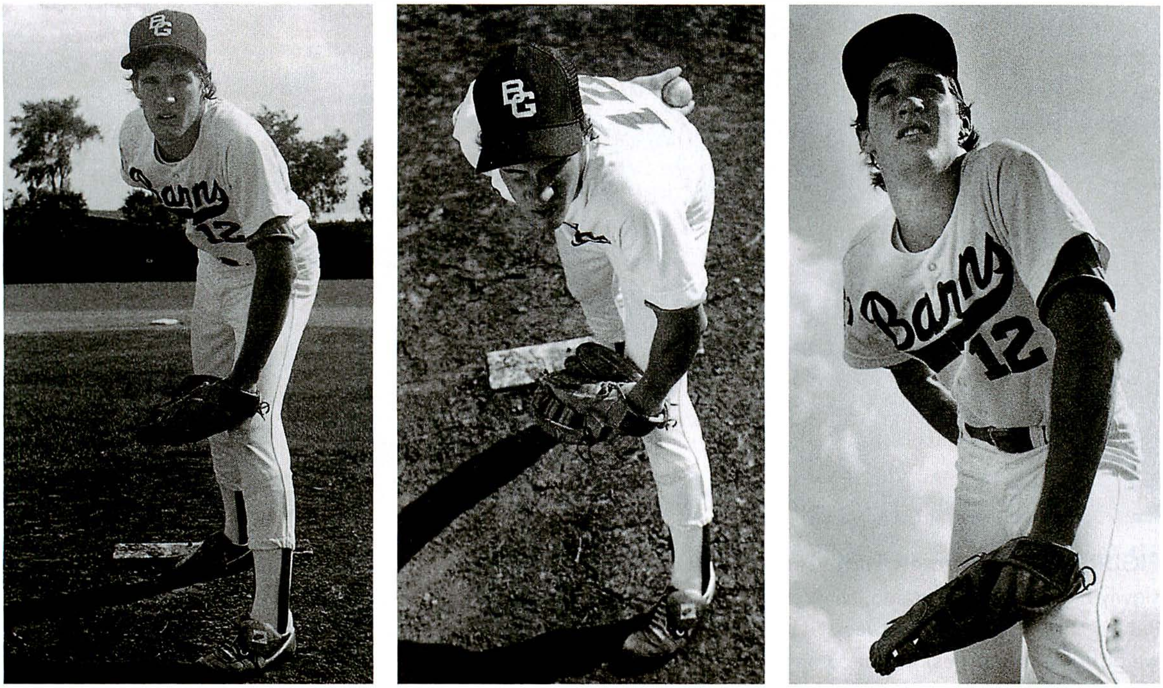


FIGURE 5.26 **The Effect of Changing Camera Angles** In these three pictures, we see the effects created by three different camera angles on the same subject in the same position. The first picture is taken from what might be called a normal angle: The camera is looking directly at the pitcher at about eye level. The second picture is taken with the camera slightly in front of the mound but located five or six feet above the pitcher's head, looking down on him in a high-angle shot. For the third picture, the camera is located on the ground in front of the pitcher, looking up at him in a low-angle shot.

the whiteness of the clouds, or they may add a light-colored tone to the whole scene by filming it through a colored filter. For example, in *A Man and a Woman* a love scene was filmed with a red filter, which imparted a romantic warmth.

On rare occasions, a special filter may be used to add a certain quality to a whole film. An example is Franco Zeffirelli's film version of *The Taming of the Shrew*, where a subtle light-diffusing filter (a nylon stocking over the camera lens) was used to soften the focus slightly and subdue the colors in a way that gave the whole film the quality of an old master's painting. This technique was designed to give the film a mellow, aged quality, intensifying the sense that the action was taking place in another time period. A similar effect was employed in *McCabe & Mrs. Miller* and *Summer of '42*, but in the latter the quality suggested was not of a historical era but of the hazy images of the narrator's memory. In a crucial family reunion scene in *Bonnie and Clyde*, director Arthur Penn and cinematographer Burnet Guffey deliberately overexposed their film footage to create similar effects. For *Excalibur*, director John Boorman used green gel filters over his arc lamps to give the forest exteriors a lyric vernal glow, emphasizing the green of the moss and the leaves and creating a sense of otherworldliness.

Soft (slightly blurred) **focus** can also help to convey certain subjective states. In *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington*, soft focus is used to reflect a warm, romantic glow (falling in love) that comes over Saunders (Jean Arthur) as Jeff Smith (Jimmy Stewart) describes the natural beauties of the Willet Creek country where he plans to build his boys' camp.

In *The Graduate*, Elaine Robinson (Katharine Ross) is seen out of focus as she learns that the older woman with whom Benjamin had an affair wasn't "just another older woman." The blurred face expresses her state of shock and confusion, and her face comes back into focus only when she fully takes in what Benjamin (Dustin Hoffman) is trying to tell her. A similar technique is used earlier in the film to convey Benjamin's panic. After hearing Mr. Robinson's car pull up, Benjamin races hurriedly from Elaine's bedroom to return to the bar downstairs. As he reaches the foot of the stairs, Benjamin is shown in blurred focus as he dashes down the hall to the bar. He comes back into focus only as he reaches the relative safety of the barstool, just as Mr. Robinson enters the front door.

Special Lenses

Special lenses are often employed to provide subjective distortions of normal reality. Both wide-angle and telephoto lenses distort the depth perspective of an image, but in opposite ways. A **wide-angle lens** exaggerates the perspective, so that the distance between an object in the foreground and one in the background seems much greater than it actually is. A **telephoto lens** compresses depth so that the distance between foreground and background objects seems less than it actually is (Figure 5.27).

The effect of this distortion becomes most apparent when background-to-foreground movement is introduced. In *The Graduate*, for example, the hero is filmed running toward the camera in a frantic race to interrupt the wedding ceremony, and a telephoto distortion makes him appear to gain very little headway despite his efforts, thus emphasizing his frustration and his desperation. Had a wide-angle lens been used in the same way, his speed would have been greatly exaggerated.

A special type of extreme wide-angle lens, called a **fish-eye lens,** bends both horizontal and vertical planes and distorts depth relationships. It is often used to create unusual subjective states such as dreams, fantasies, or intoxication (Figure 5.28).

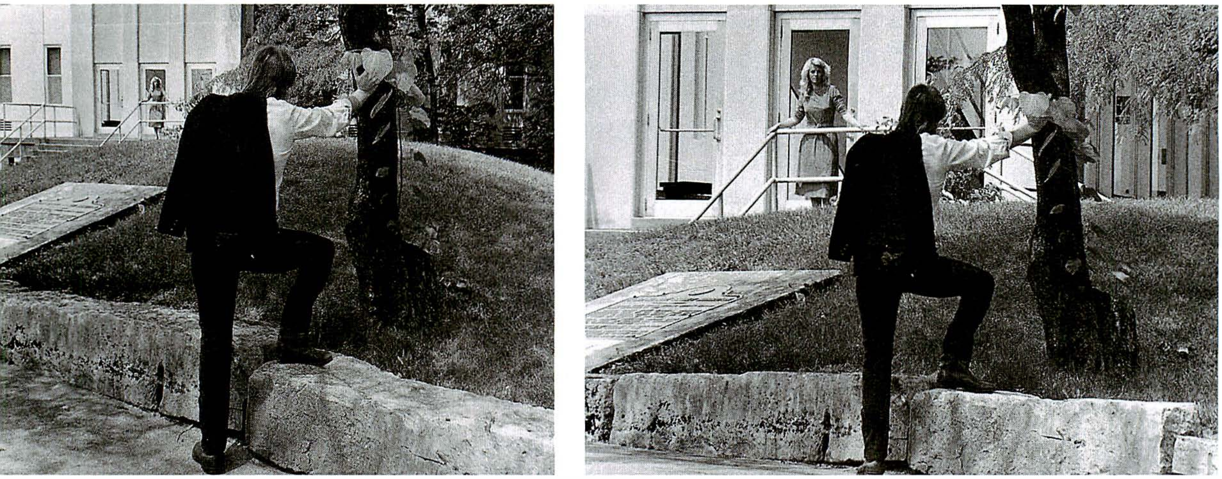


FIGURE 5.27 The Effects of Wide-Angle and Telephoto Lenses These two pictures illustrate the different effects achieved by photographing the same scene with a wide-angle lens and a telephoto lens. The wide-angle shot (left) makes the distance between the man and woman seem much greater, and the frame covers a much wider area in the background. The telephoto shot (right) seems to bring the man and woman closer together and narrows the area of background in the frame.

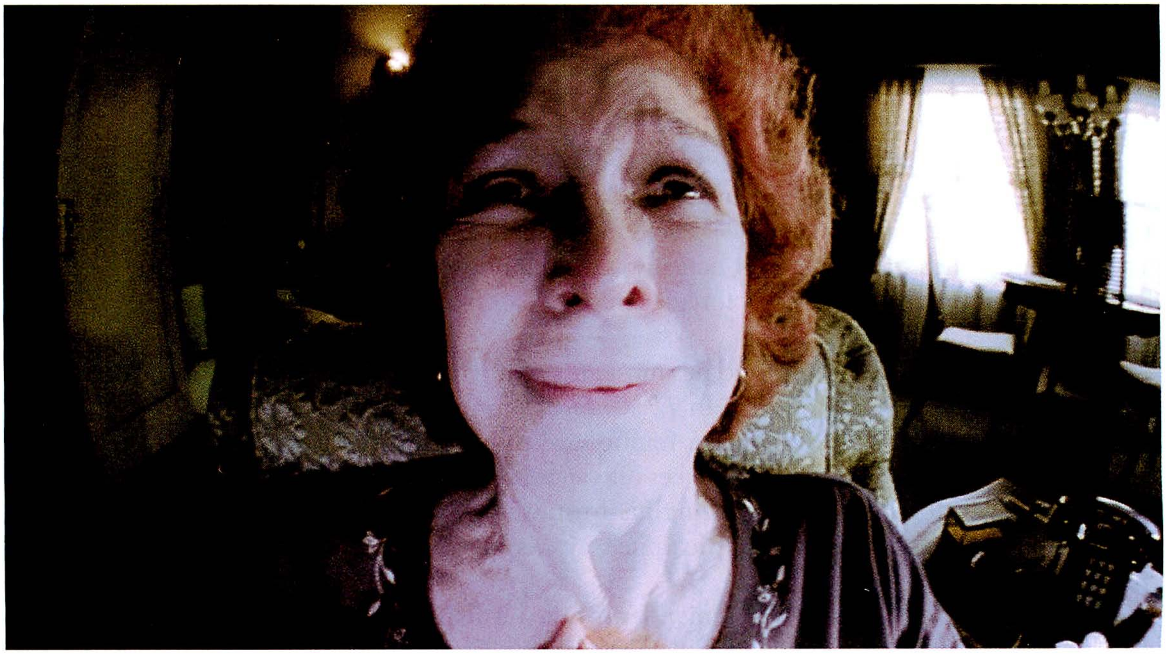


FIGURE 5.28 Fish-Eye Lens The distortion of a fish-eye lens conveys the fear and frustration felt by Ellen Burstyn's character in *Requiem for a Dream* as she endures the effects of diet drugs she is taking.

Fast Motion

If a scene is filmed at less-than-normal speed and then projected at normal speed, the result is **fast motion.** Fast motion resembles the frantic, jerky movements of improperly projected old silent comedies and is usually employed for comic effect or to compress the time of an event. Stanley Kubrick used fast motion for comic effect in a scene from *A Clockwork Orange*. Alex (Malcolm McDowell) picks up two young girls and takes both to his room for a frantic sex romp, which is filmed in fast motion and accompanied musically by the *William Tell* Overture. (For a discussion of **slow motion,** see Chapter 6.)

An extreme form of fast motion is **time-lapse photography,** which has the effect of greatly compressing time. In time-lapse filming, one frame is exposed at regular intervals that may be thirty minutes or more apart. This technique compresses into a few seconds something that normally takes hours or weeks, such as the blossoming of a flower or the construction of a house. Supported by a kinetic, mesmerizing score by Philip Glass, this camera technique is used to great emotional and thematic effect in the nonnarrative 1983 film *Koyaanisqatsi* and its two sequels, *Powaqqatsi* (1988) and *Naqoyqatsi* (2002).

Special Lighting Effects

In *The Grapes of Wrath*, Gregg Toland employs a light reflected in the pupils of Tom Joad's (Henry Fonda) eyes at his first emotional meeting with Ma Joad (Jane Darwell) after four years in prison. Although the special lighting is done with such subtlety that it is not obvious to the casual viewer, it gives the moment a very special quality. Tom's eyes literally light up as he greets her.

Another special moment of reunion is created by lighting on the eyes of Lara (Julie Christie) in *Doctor Zhivago* when she sees Zhivago (Omar Sharif) in a remote village library after a year of separation. By highlighting her eyes, the cinematographer intensifies the emotional impact of the scene. Either Christie's eyes did not express the emotion fully enough or the change was so subtle that it needed to be pulled out from background details to create the desired effect.

Subtle changes in lighting are also employed in another touching scene from *The Grapes of Wrath*. As Ma Joad burns her souvenirs while preparing to leave for California, she discovers a pair of earrings she wore as a young woman. As she puts them up to her ears, subtle changes in the direction of light, accompanied by some gradual diffusion, make her seem to grow younger before our eyes. Then, as she takes them down again and the memory fades, we see the wrinkling and hard lines reappear as the original lighting returns.

At the conclusion of the superb documentary film *Visions of Light: The Art of Cinematography*, several master cinematographers offer observations about the power and future of cinematic storytelling. Ernest Dickerson, who was the director of photography (DP) on Spike Lee's *Do the Right Thing* and *Malcolm X*, says that "if the director is . . . the author of the performances [and] . . . story of the film, the cinematographer is the author of the use of light in the film and how it contributes to the story." John Bailey, who shot Robert Redford's *Ordinary People* and Paul Schrader's *Mishima*, believes that "today in motion picture technology, we are really at a precipice, a jumping off point into an . . . unknown but possibly very exciting future, in the same way that, in the '50s, when Cinemascope and . . . Cinerama, all these new formats, really shook up the whole way we were looking at films. We have that opportunity now." Finally, Allen Daviau, the cinematographer for Steven Spielberg's *E.T.* and Barry Levinson's *Avalon*, begins to capture the subtlety and mystery of the form: "Someone once said that the lighting, the look of a film, makes the pauses speak as eloquently as the words—that you have moments in films that happen because of what is there visually, how someone is lit or not lit. You put something in the audience's mind visually and they will carry away images as well as the words."[9]

MOVIE MAGIC: SPECIAL VISUAL EFFECTS IN THE MODERN FILM

As admission prices escalated and the lure of television kept more and more people at home for their entertainment, motion pictures began to incorporate elements that television could not provide. One was the special effect, which created visual spectacle on a grand scale and showed audiences things they had never seen before.

Recent advances in technology have made elaborate special effects (F/X) an important part of the modern film. Given proper time and money, there are few things modern special-effects technicians cannot realize on-screen—though truly top-quality visuals can be prohibitively expensive. This capability has opened a new frontier to the filmmakers; it allows them to use the medium to its fullest extent and enables them to really show viewers what they wish to show, instead of just telling them about it. This increased flexibility is also a great asset to the industry. Too often, however, elaborate visual effects do not just serve to enhance the story but become the focus of the film. Certainly, F/X masters Rick Baker and Richard Edlund provide the most striking aspects of *The Nutty Professor* (1996; and its sequel, *The Klumps*) and *Multiplicity*, respectively. In the former, special makeup effects enable Eddie Murphy to play not only a very fat Sherman Klump but also most of the members of his hilarious family; in the latter, miraculous visual effects permit Michael Keaton to portray three cloned versions of his overworked protagonist. Robert Zemeckis explains in his commentary on the DVD version of his film *Contact* that nearly every shot utilized some form of visual effect, either obvious or unobtrusive.

Special effects have been an integral part of film throughout its history. Such cinema pioneers as Georges Mèliés (*A Trip to the Moon*, 1902), D. W.

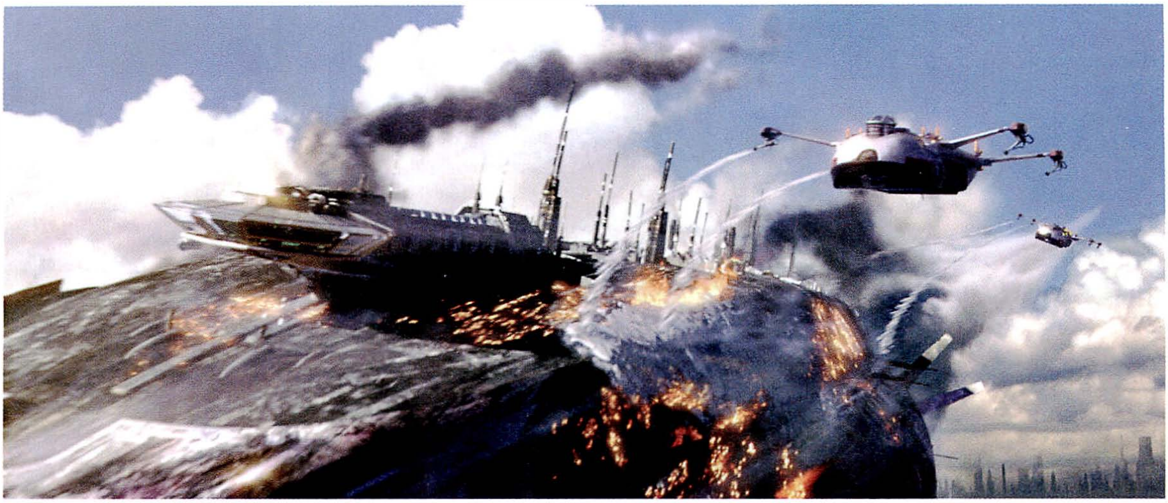


FIGURE 5.29 Special-Effects Miniatures Creating the illusion (with the complex assistance of advance CGI technology) that miniature models are full-sized vehicles is essential to making us believe the incredible speed and radical capabilities of these aircraft from *Star Wars, Episode III: Revenge of the Sith.*

Griffith (*Intolerance*, 1916), Fritz Lang (*Metropolis*, 1926), and Willis O'Brien (special effects coordinator for Merian C. Cooper's *King Kong*, 1933) originated the most basic techniques such as the now-standard **matte** and **glass shots.** But only recently has technology produced effects so sophisticated that the audience often cannot distinguish between footage of a real object and a special-effect miniature. Not all effects are of the flashy laser-blast variety. They range from effects that simply recreate in dramatic form a familiar, historic, or real event to effects that create totally fantastic people, creatures, places, or occurrences that stretch the viewer's imagination. Modern masters such as Douglas Trumbull of the Future General Company and John Dykstra of George Lucas's Industrial Light and Magic wield the tools of technological "motion control"—the **blue-screen process,** optical printers, and **computer-generated imaging (CGI)**—to create their magic spells (Figure 5.29).

Miniaturization was used to recreate the sinking of the American naval fleet at Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941, in *Tora! Tora! Tora!* Special effects, often the backbone of disaster films, simulate the destruction of Los Angeles in *Earthquake!*, the loss by aging of the Genesis planet in *Star Trek III: The Search for Spock*, the exploding of the White House in *Independence Day*, and even the burning of Atlanta in *Gone With the Wind.*

Other effects extend human powers: *Time Bandits*' Evil Wizard casts lightning bolts from his fingertips, *Excalibur*'s Merlin weaves his magic, Clark Kent defies gravity as Superman, Spider-Man springs aloft, and Harry Potter commands his broom (Figure 5.30).

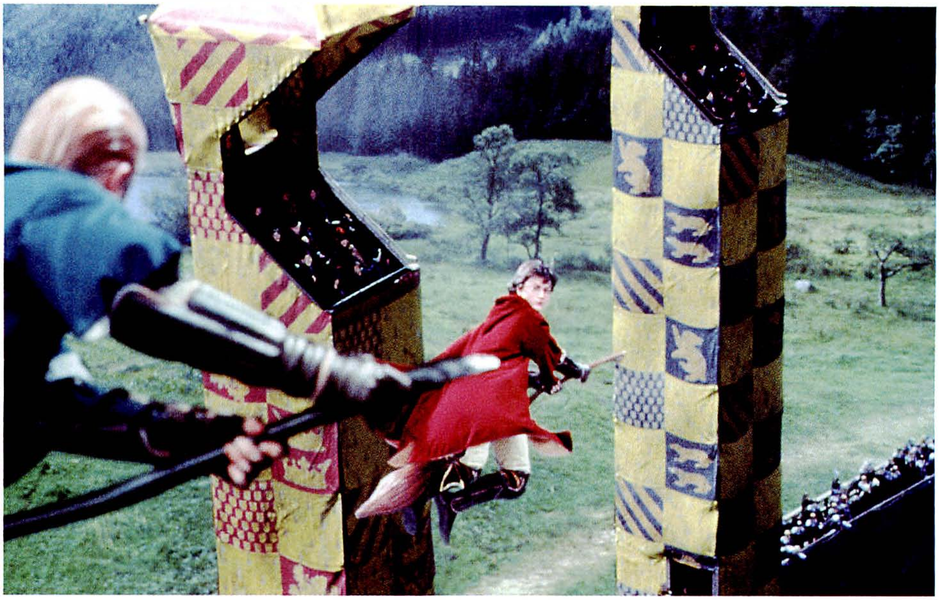


FIGURE 5.30 Flying Special Effectively The blue-screen and computer-driven special effects that allow the exciting games of Quidditch in *Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets* constitute quantum leaps beyond the techniques used in levitating such earlier flying creatures as Superman (in his various incarnations).

Flying-vehicle effects, a staple of many science fiction films, range from the frenetic outer-space dogfights in *Star Wars*, to the majestic liftoff of the Mothership from *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*, to the spectacular shift to warp speed by *Star Trek*'s Starship *Enterprise*. This optical effect is created in the printing process. The primary image (such as a spaceship) is superimposed on another image (such as a starfield background), and the two are composited onto one strip of film by an optical printer. Modern optical printers are guided by computer, affording precise matching of a tremendous number of different images.

Movie audiences are so fascinated with strange creatures that the unnatural monsters can be as crude as the early Godzilla (a man in a rubber suit) or as convincing as Alien (likewise, a man in a rubber suit). They may be remote controlled (like the title creature in *E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial*), a sophisticated puppet (like the Jedi master Yoda from *The Empire Strikes Back* and *Return of the Jedi*, and computer-generated (Yoda in *Attack of the Clones* and *Revenge of the Sith*), or **stop-motion animated** (like the ape in the original *King Kong*); or they may combine several techniques (like the dragon Vermithrax Pejorative in *Dragonslayer*). They may be subtly inhuman, like certain forms of Count Dracula in *Bram Stoker's Dracula*, or unmistakably monstrous, like the giant snake in *Conan the Barbarian* or *Anaconda* (Figure 5.31). The master of this technique is Ray Harryhausen. Perhaps the most endearing use of such technology so far

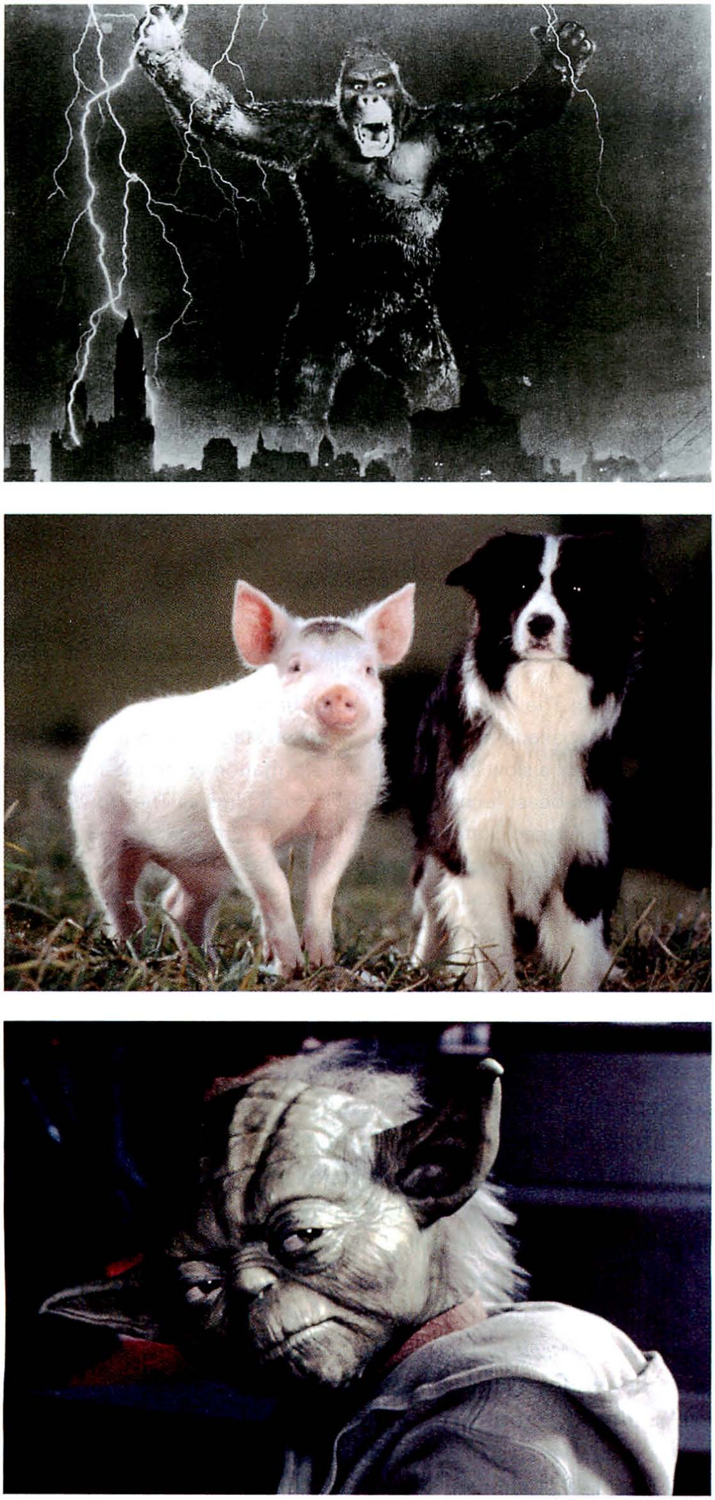


FIGURE 5.31 Evolving Life Forms Creature effects are becoming more and more sophisticated in modern films, progressing from the rather primitive but effective single-frame animation of the original *King Kong* (top) to the combination of animation and remote-controlled movement in the multiple F/X magic of *Babe* (middle). And now the puppet face of the Jedi master Yoda from *The Empire Strikes Back* (bottom) has evolved to the remarkably expressive CGI (computer-generated imaging) face and mobile form of that character in *Star Wars, Episode II: Attack of the Clones* and *Episode III: Revenge of the Sith.*

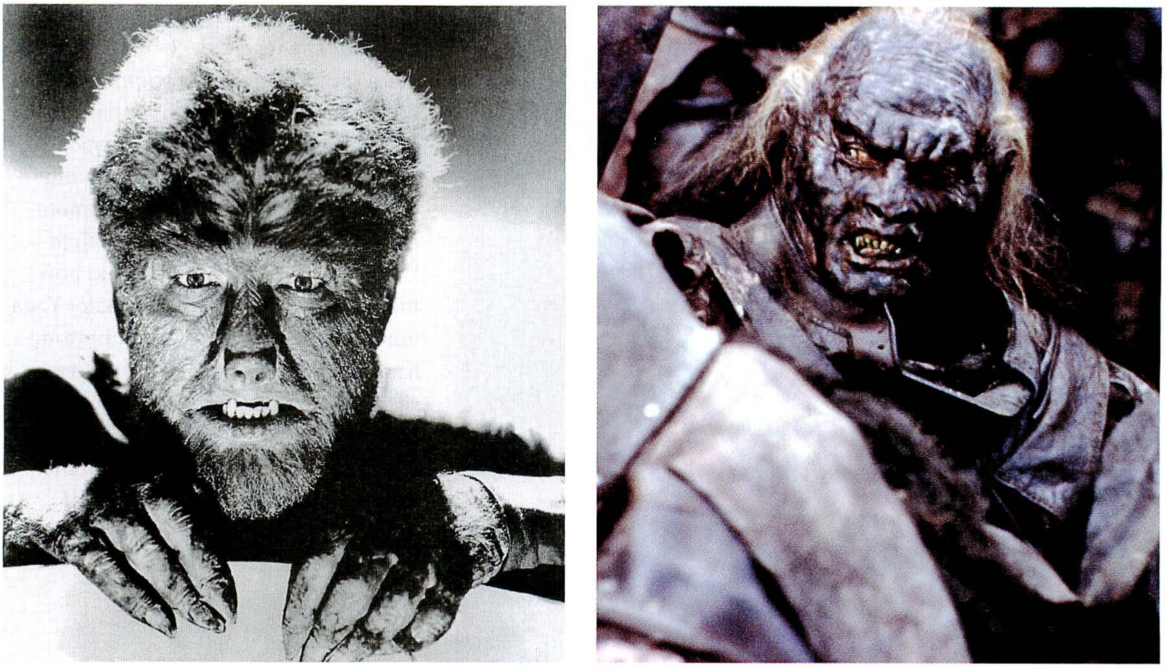


FIGURE 5.32 Transformation In *The Wolf Man* (left), Lon Chaney, Jr., became the Wolfman at the full moon by having his makeup applied in six or seven stages while the camera was turned off, creating the illusion of a slow, miraculous transformation when the film was run continuously. The man-becomes-beast techniques used in such films as *The Howling, An American Werewolf in London, Altered States,* and *Wolf* are much more complex and employ sculpted, remote-controlled latex models of the actor's heads. The visual effects team that created the horrific "creature" faces for *Lord of the Rings* (right) won Academy Awards for their efforts in 2002 (*The Two Towers*) and 2003 (*Return of the King*).

has been in *Babe*, the 1995 film for children of all ages that combined puppets and computer-generated effects with real animals to create a seamless and believable entertainment.

The mythical concept that some human beings can magically transform themselves into other life forms has enjoyed tremendous popularity over the years. This effect has come far since 1941, when Lon Chaney, Jr., became the Wolfman (Figure 5.32). Subsequent transformations have turned men and women into snakes (*Conan the Barbarian*), black panthers (*Cat People*), reptilian monsters (*The Sword and the Sorcerer*), primates and amorphous superconscious beings (*Altered States*), enormous insects (*The Fly*), and, of course, werewolves (*The Howling*, *An American Werewolf in London*, and *Wolf*)—all on-screen. Curiously, many of these makeup effects were not makeup in the traditional sense at all but rather were sculpted remote-controlled models (such as the transforming head from *American Werewolf*). So unorthodox were the transformation effects for *The Thing* (1982) that an effort was made to have artist Rob

Bottin's work classified as visual effects instead of makeup. The title character in *Bram Stoker's Dracula* becomes a study in the transformation process, taking not just one but several physical forms: bats, wolves, rats, and even an evil, fast-creeping mist.

Gore effects—the simulation of many different kinds of deaths, decapitations, and eviscerations—are at least partly responsible for the upsurge of murder movies in the "hack 'n' slash" horror vein.

Creative production designers work with special-effects teams to create diverse locales such as the glittering crystalline world of Krypton in *Superman*, the drug-induced, hallucinogenic reality of *Altered States*, the interior of the human body in *Fantastic Voyage*, the sparkling high-tech starship bridge of *Star Trek: The Wrath of Khan*, the oppressive, smog-shrouded futurescape of *Blade Runner*; and, of course, the "real" world of the *Matrix* films.

The effects that are currently available provide filmmakers with a seemingly endless variety of tricks to use, yet many of the effects that seem so amazing and fascinating today will probably seem tame and outdated when they are compared with those in next season's releases. The primary factor in this rapid increase in technology is **CGI**—computer-generated imaging. In June 1990, when active discussions began about making Michael Crichton's novel *Jurassic Park* into a film, the computer programs that would be needed to animate the dinosaurs didn't exist. They not only exist today, but *Jurassic Park* and its sequels, including *The Lost World*, have established a new benchmark for measuring the effectiveness of computer animation in film. The prehistoric creatures move seamlessly through the frame, their motions just as believable and lifelike as those of their human costars. Actually, computer animation is only part of the story, for the special effects often combine several different technologies, as Peter Biskind describes the first Tyrannosaurus rex attack in the first film.

> The scene itself plays like a blur of motion, but in reality, only the top half of the dinosaur was built [as a full-scale puppet], and it was set on top of a flight simulator, which was bolted to the soundstage floor. "It was like a giant shark up on legs," says [Rick] Carter [production designer], "and perfectly designed to be as threatening as you could ever imagine." The motion was achieved by moving the sets around the dinosaur, and the live action footage was enhanced by a computer. Anytime the entire dinosaur is visible in the frame, computer animation is responsible.[10]

Computer animation was also used to fill the skies over Germany with B-17 bombers in *Memphis Belle.* The unusual and powerful images in *The Abyss* and *Terminator 2: Judgment Day* utilized reflection mapping, a technique that simulates reflections of real-world images on three-dimensional objects that are modeled and rendered on a computer. The results are especially convincing in *Terminator 2* and *Terminator 3: Rise of the Machines*, featuring superhuman villains with powers of regeneration that previously could be realized only by Looney

Tunes animators. A similar technique was used in *The Matrix Reloaded* to realize hundreds of identical Agent Smiths (Hugo Weaving) whom Neo (Keanu Reeves) fights.

The real measure of an effect's success has become how well the effect is integrated into the storyline of the film. No longer is it a challenge to make the effect itself believable. In the modern film, the integration of special effects, not the domination of special effects, is the proper measure of success.

The best films use their special effects as little—or as much—as necessary, and no more. *Star Wars* incorporated some 365 individual visual effects, all of which serve to propel the story forward. In contrast, *Time After Time* (1979) uses only a few simple optical effects to send H. G. Wells into the future, but they effectively establish that film's whimsical nature. Tremendous time and money were devoted to the flying sequences of *Superman* (1978) because it was crucial to the film's credibility that the audience believe a man could fly.

In the best films, the visuals create the atmosphere for the story and impel the story forward; they become simply one of many properly integrated elements of the film. *E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial* is filled with dazzling effects from beginning to end; E.T. itself is on-screen for a great portion of the picture. Yet all these dazzling effects do not impair the warm, friendly ambience of the film because they are well integrated.

The potential power of such visuals, however, often tempts filmmakers to overuse them, to let them overwhelm the story. *The Thing* (1982) featured so many transformation sequences that the internal suspense the director was striving for was destroyed, and so much focus was placed on *Blade Runner*'s grimly detailed futurescape that its characters sometimes seem lost in it. Francis Ford Coppola's *Bram Stoker's Dracula* provides us with many special effects from the entire sweep of cinema history, causing one critic to complain that "the film throws so much fancy technique at its story that the usually foolproof drama at its core gets drowned in a tide of images."[11]

At the other extreme is Mike Nichols's *Wolf*. Jack Nicholson transforms gradually, first by subtle changes in his personality after being bitten by a wolf, then finally into the animal, with little emphasis on the special effects required.

There is a final role that special effects can play, achieving the novel or nontraditional effect, or gimmick, called for by certain films. Noteworthy novelty effects include the use of clips from classic films to allow Steve Martin to interact with stars like Humphrey Bogart in *Dead Men Don't Wear Plaid* and Woody Allen to interact with Calvin Coolidge and Herbert Hoover in *Zelig* (Figure 5.33). Advances in computer-generated imagery took this interaction effect one step farther in *Forrest Gump*. The film's chocoholic hero interacts directly with historical figures such as Presidents Kennedy, Johnson, and Nixon, shaking hands with them and engaging in what seem to be two-way conversations.

Special visual effects are also used in a serious, thematically integrated fashion in *Forrest Gump*. During the Vietnam conflict, Gump's buddy Lieutenant

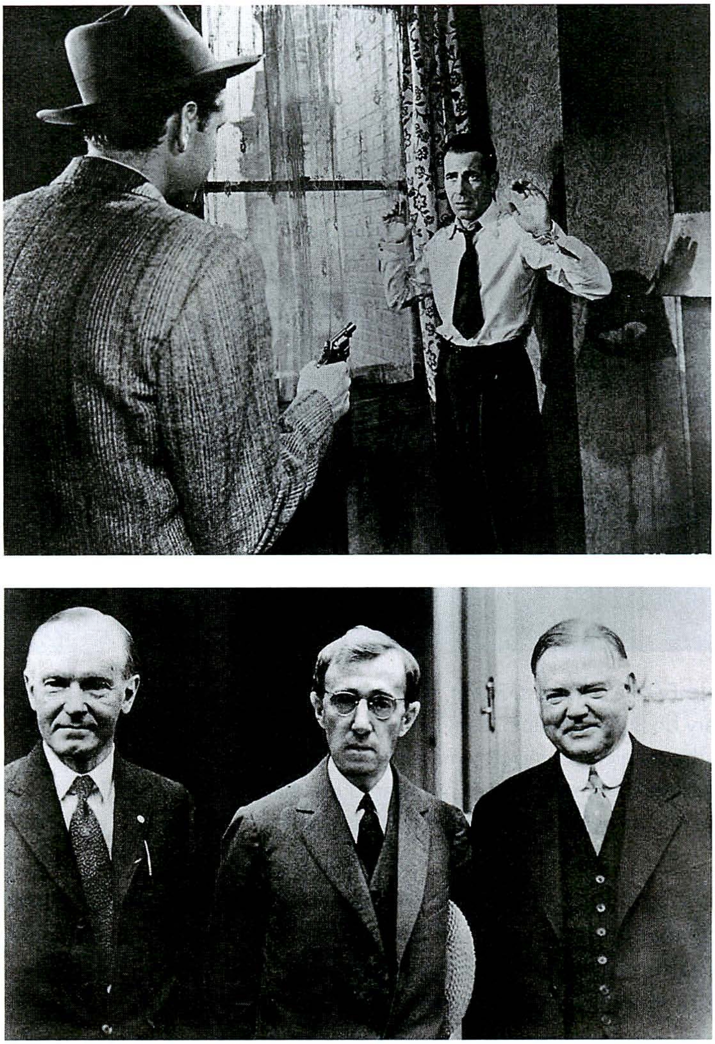


FIGURE 5.33 Novelty Effects
A blend of past and present has been achieved in films like *Dead Men Don't Wear Plaid* and *Zelig*. In *Dead Men*, Steve Martin's image was superimposed over the foreground figure in shots like this one from *Dark Passage*, creating the illusion that Martin and Humphrey Bogart are playing a scene together (top). In *Zelig*, Woody Allen seems to stand between Calvin Coolidge and Herbert Hoover in newsreel footage (bottom).

Dan loses his legs in combat. Through the magic of digital manipulation, special-effects wizards used computers to "erase" the lower limbs of the fully ambulatory actor Gary Sinise; the effect was so realistic that many viewers were amazed. Upon seeing the film, for example, the actress Anne Bancroft said she "was so shocked. I thought [Sinise] had lost his legs. I turned to Mel [Brooks, her husband] and I said, 'Mel, did he lose his legs?' And Mel said, 'I don't know.' I felt so sorry for that poor man."[12] Such magical movie moments, of course, gladden the hearts of special-effects creators (Figure 5.34).

James Cameron, the director of *The Abyss*, *Terminator 2*, *True Lies*, and *Titanic*, once observed that in the future actors would be able to perform without boundary, through images stored in computers. Such a performance has already been effected in *Sky Captain and the World of Tomorrow*. In this film,

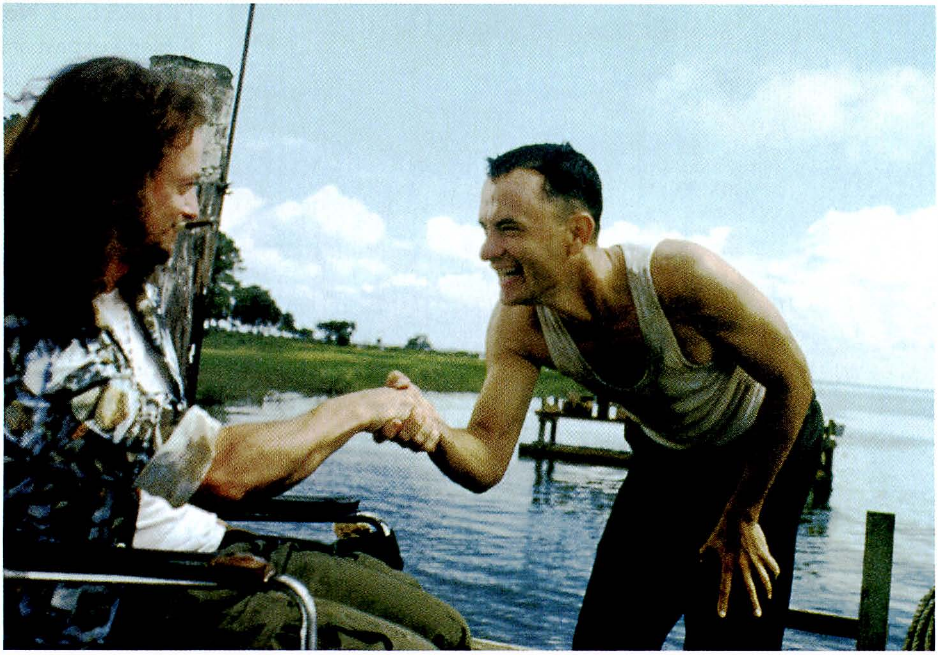


FIGURE 5.34 Credible F/X In *Forrest Gump*, the protagonist (Tom Hanks) admires and assists his former military boss, Lieutenant Dan (Gary Sinise), who has lost his legs in the Vietnam War. Through the magic of computer imaging, the effect is so convincing that many viewers cannot believe that the actor has not shared his character's medical fate. Successful special visual effects help to ensure that narratives will be credible.

Laurence Olivier, though long deceased, made a major appearance via the magic of computer manipulation of images and sound. Likewise, Marlon Brando performs posthumously in *Superman Returns*.

As Joe Dante, director of the *Gremlins* movies, points out, however, a special effect now is "only as good as an actor's reaction to it. So if you have a really great effect and you cut to an actor who doesn't look like he's believing what he's seeing, then your effect is no good." The magic still has plenty of reasons to endure, though. Richard Edlund thinks that "visual effects will continue to expand, and, as long as they continue to satisfy the audience's desire to be put in a place they couldn't otherwise possibly be put, they will continue to be successful."[13]

THE F/X OF ANIMATED FEATURE FILMS . . . ESPECIALLY FOR ADULTS

In the United States, the stereotypic audience for animated cartoons was once a theater full of screaming kids. This perception has changed radically in the last decade, and in recent years animated films (including two *Shrek* films, *Find-*

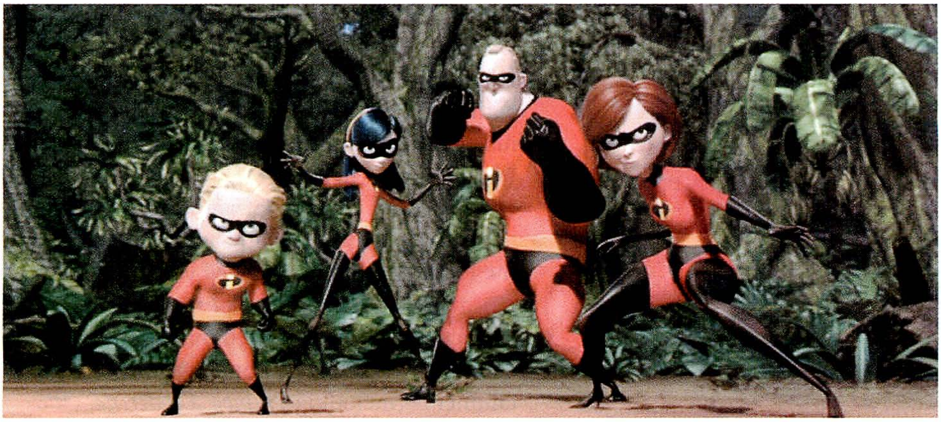


FIGURE 5.35 Grown-Up Money for Animated Films Among Pixar's most commercially successful productions has been *The Incredibles,* an expensively-made animated film which grandly entertains children with its clever superhero action characters and also makes their parents (and other adults) laugh at its satire of contemporary life.

ing Nemo, and *The Incredibles* [Figure 5.35]) have been among the nation's top-grossing movies, indicating their broad appeal. In recognition of the popularity and artistic merit of animated films, a new Oscar category has been added to the Academy Awards—Best Animated Feature Film. Now, in all three of the primary types of animation (drawing, stop motion, and computer generated), the central aim of artists is to engage a decidedly adult audience. It should be noted, however, that the very best feature-length animated films have seldom been created exclusively for children, even in the golden age of Walt Disney's prime productions.

Almost from its earliest use, drawn animation encouraged the mixing of live action and artwork. Thus, the intricacies of this technique have, over the years, enabled Gene Kelly to dance on-screen with the jaunty cartoon creature Jerry the mouse (*Anchors Aweigh*, 1945) and, in one of the most complex utilizations to date, Bob Hoskins to interact with a whole universe of toon stars (*Who Framed Roger Rabbit*, 1988). Computers have now facilitated such activity far beyond the imaginations of animation pioneers. However, the Japanese animation master Hayao Miyazaki has continued to push the art of hand drawing to its exquisite limits in *Princess Mononoke*, *Spirited Away*, and *Howl's Moving Castle* (Figure 5.36). And in France, Sylvain Chomet has demonstrated enormous skill and wit in *The Triplets of Belleville* (Figure 5.37).

Along with drawn animation, a second type of animated film developed on a parallel track: stop-motion animation. During this process, small objects or puppetlike figures are moved repeatedly in increments of 24-per-second while being photographed. Past masters of the technique have included such legendary

ANIMATION BECOMES THE MAIN EVENT

Like the puppet shows from which they evolved, animated films have long been seriously embraced by the world of international art. In fact, as Baseline's Encyclopedia of Film indicates,

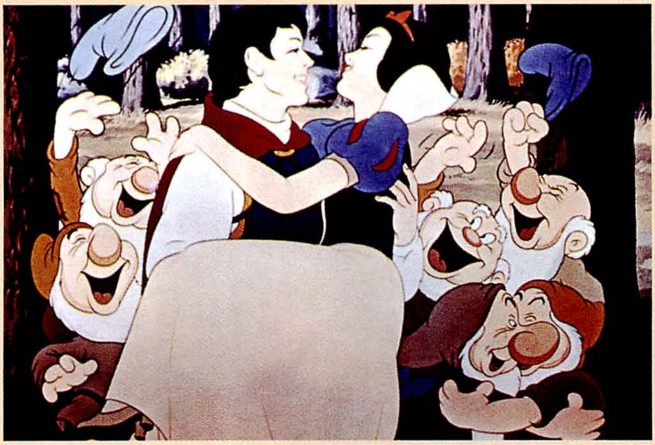
> the first animations were also the first moving pictures. Victorian optical toys such as the zoetrope . . . debuted in the 1830's as conversation pieces for parlors . . . [and] . . . normally contained drawings depicting succeeding states of an action that, when viewed in rapid motion, produced an illusion of movement.[14]

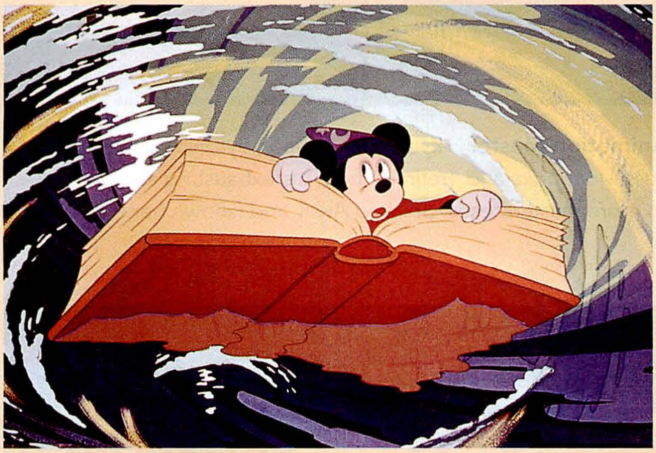
Later in the nineteenth century, the illusions produced through these simple drawings of early animation developed into those of still photographs being manipulated swiftly, either mechanically or via projection. As the cinema progressed along more or less realistic lines, though, such animation pioneers as Winsor McCay, a New York newspaper cartoonist best known for his *Gertie the Dinosaur* (1914), began to explore possibilities within the fantasy worlds of animated film. By 1928, when Walt Disney created *Steamboat Willie* (and first introduced the world to a talking Mickey Mouse), animated shorts, shown before feature films, were already being produced in abundance by such artists as Max Fleischer (creator of Betty Boop) and Walter Lantz (Woody Woodpecker). Later the Warner Brothers luminaries Chuck Jones, Tex Avery, and Fritz Freleng (among many others) gave audiences the energetic antics of a whole stable of animated personalities, including Bugs Bunny and Porky Pig. But it was not until the mid-1930s that Walt Disney became obsessed with the idea of entertaining viewers with animated films that were themselves the main show.

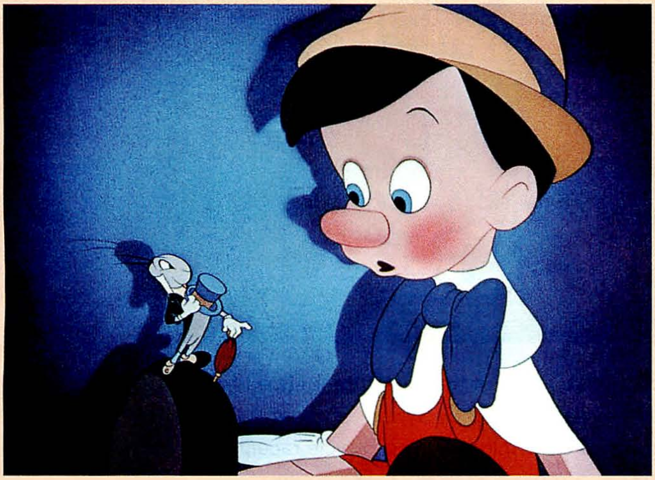
Premiering in late 1937, Disney's *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs* set rigorously high standards that today still guide animation artists. In the Disney studio's watershed year of 1940, both *Pinocchio* and *Fantasia* appeared. These now-classic works were followed during the next two decades by a series of popular animated entertainments (including *Dumbo*, *Cinderella*, *Alice in Wonderland*, *Peter Pan*, and *Lady and the Tramp*), whose stories frequently originated in well-known literary narratives. The least-accomplished of these movies appeared to be targeted more progressively at younger audiences.

After Disney's death in 1966, his studio continued to make drawn animated films, but the creative energy lessened, and the company's focus shifted to producing live-action films. Then, for the child in all of us again, Disney animation was given new life (as the word *animation* itself is defined) in 1989 by *The Little Mermaid*, which led an astonishing string of new musical animated features. Two years later, *Beauty and the Beast* emerged from an artistic process that utilized computers to assist in the conventional drawing techniques, and the film won an Academy Award nomination for Best Picture, the first such accolade for an animated feature. Like these two films, the best ones that followed—including *The Lion King*, *Aladdin*, and *Mulan*—continued the classic Disney conventions: bold visuals, shrewd scripts, and both thematic universality and surprise that we find in all great films, animated or otherwise. Disney's newer version of *Fantasia*, called *Fantasia 2000*, incorporated segments from the 1940 version with newly created ones (and, according to Disney executives, was the first feature film to premiere in the giant-screen IMAX theaters).

Source: *Baseline's Encyclopedia of Film*, Microsoft's *Cinemania 97*.







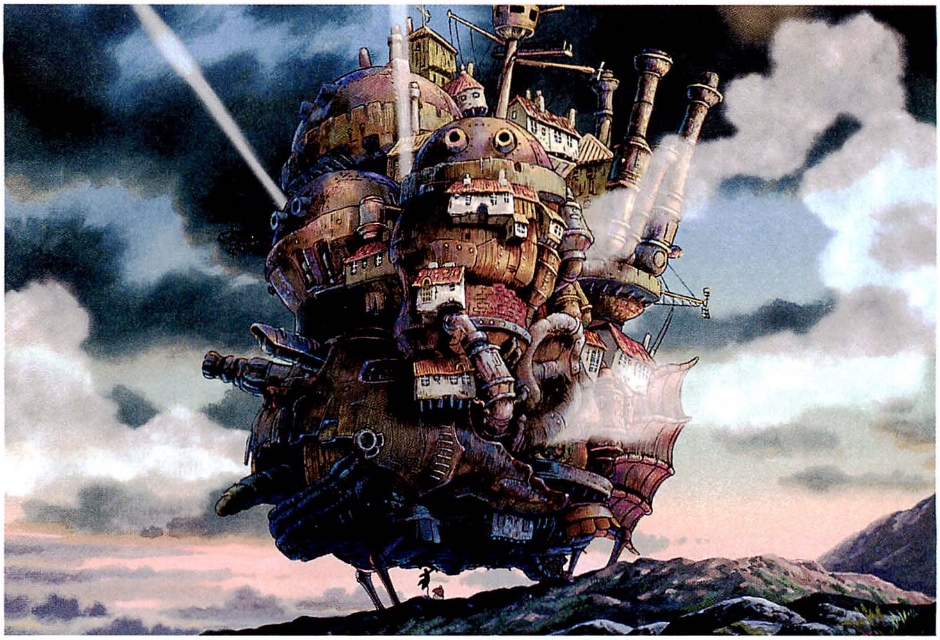


FIGURE 5.36 Japanese Animation Master Even after Hayao Miyazaki created the beautiful, hand-drawn *Princess Mononoke* and "retired" from his exhausting art, he returned to give the world two more masterpieces: *Spirited Away* and (shown here) *Howl's Moving Castle*.

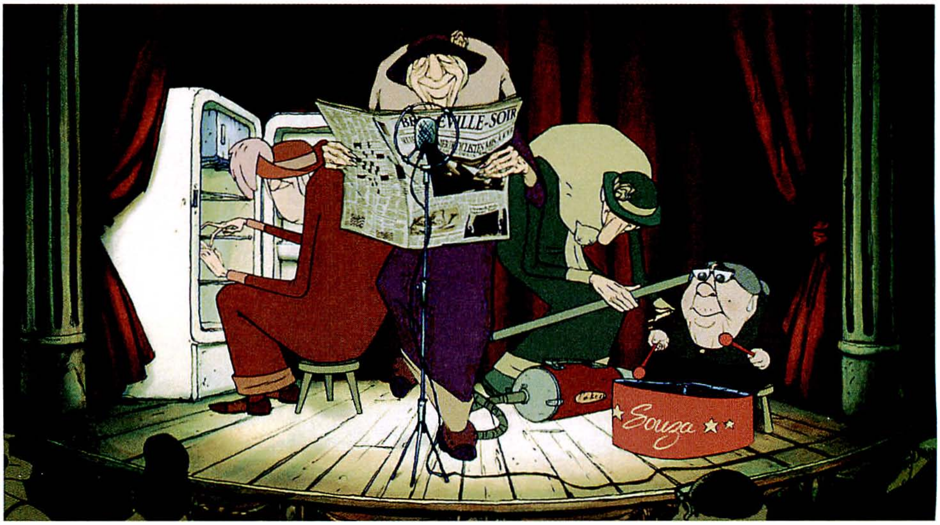


FIGURE 5.37 Witty French Artist One of the most strangely endearing of recent animated films, *The Triplets of Belleville*, directed by Sylvain Chomet, features not only the eponymous three sisters, but also a determined young bicycle racer, his amazing grandmother, and a dog that possesses a very un-Hollywood-like charm.

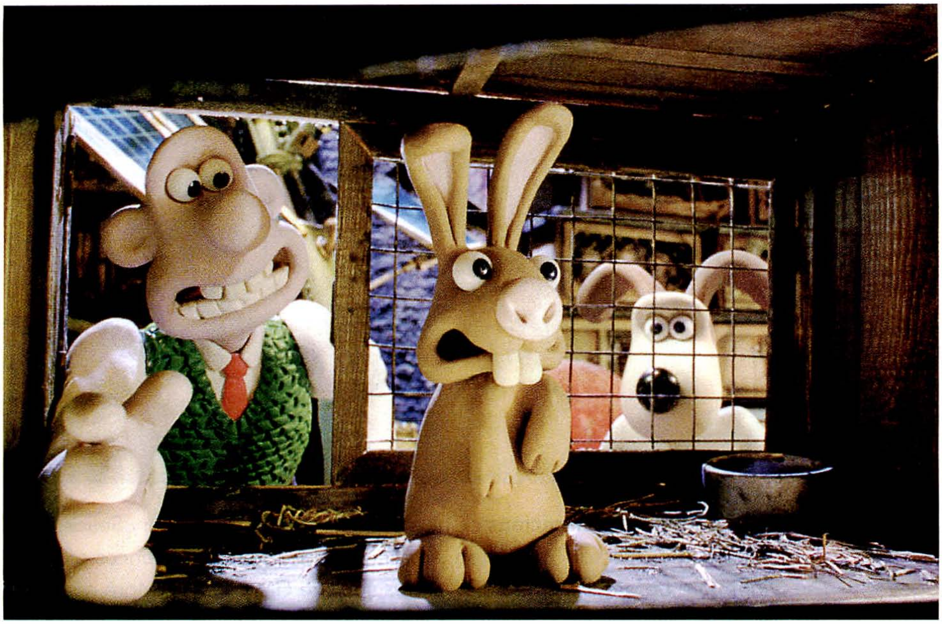


FIGURE 5.38 British Magician A modern master of stop-motion animation is Nick Park, whose films such as *The Wrong Trousers* and *The Curse of the Were-Rabbit,* starring Wallace and his dog Gromit, provide dry, unsentimental, but affecting humor.

special-effects animators (working in live-action fantasy films) as George Pal (*When Worlds Collide*), Willis O'Brien (*King Kong* and the original *Mighty Joe Young*), and Ray Harryhausen (*Mighty Joe Young* and *Clash of the Titans*). Contemporary artists of stop-motion animation who best command our imaginations are the British animator Nick Park and the American Henry Selick.

Park, most celebrated for his Oscar-winning films featuring the character Wallace and his dog Gromit—including *A Grand Day Out*, *The Wrong Trousers*, *A Close Shave*, and *The Curse of the Were-Rabbit* (Figure 5.38)—has said that he personally gets "turned off" by certain characteristic elements in the newer Disney animated musical films: "the sanitized stories and the sickly-sweet characters."[15] And Park himself projects a droll, unsentimental sense of humor through his figures, as we can see in *Chicken Run*, his first longer feature.

Henry Selick directed both Tim Burton's *The Nightmare Before Christmas* and *James and the Giant Peach*—the former a stop-action film that is wholly original and sometimes immensely frightening in its images, the latter an adaptation of Roald Dahl's popular children's book that begins in live action and segues impressively into stop-action animation before returning to live action at its end. *James and the Giant Peach* pulls no punches with its presentation of violence and its treatment of monumental fears (abandonment, for example) that are no less vividly real for adults than for children, and just the title of

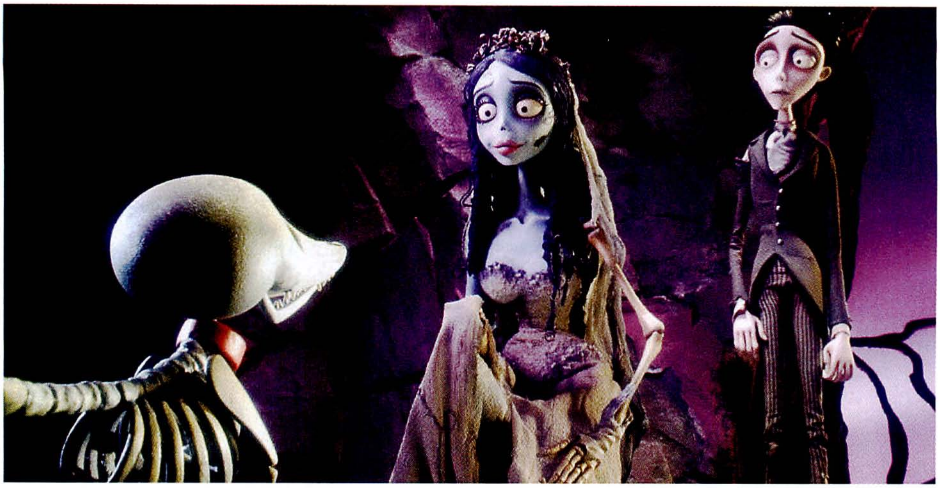


FIGURE 5.39 Scary American Magicians The stop-motion animator Henry Selick, working with multi-talented director Tim Burton, amazed and frightened audiences of all ages with *The Nightmare Before Christmas* and *James and the Giant Peach.* More recently, Burton has collaborated with animator and co-director Mike Johnson to intensify those films' delights in the Oscar-nominated *Corpse Bride.*

Tim Burton's *Corpse Bride* (directed by Mike Johnson and Burton) suggests the principally "adult" nature of its subject matter and humor (Figure 5.39).

George Miller's charming *Babe* (1995), nominated for a Best Picture Oscar, and its critically acclaimed, poorly released, and little-seen sequel, *Babe: Pig in the City* (1998), both combine live action, puppets (in the form of intricate animatronic devices), and computer animation. Public reaction to the comic violence involving animals in *Pig in the City* ensured that its small and primary audience would most likely be adults, not children.

Throughout many modern animation features, a certain dark, sometimes even macabre, humor abides. A similar "adult" amusement has also become a staple in the third and latest type of animated feature film, which is generated solely by art filtered through computer technology. This process often appears almost to synthesize the smooth movement of drawn images and the plastic surfaces of stop-motion puppets. The first such film, 1995's *Toy Story*, directed by John Lasseter for his Pixar studio, contains the sort of gentle satire that we have come to expect in children's films. But it also presents a sequence in which a child plays with dolls that have been mutilated and reassembled in monstrous new shapes. And the excellent sequel, *Toy Story 2* (1999), provided further evidence of its creators' interest in the darker side of all life (Figure 5.40). Pixar (now owned by Disney) has also produced *Monsters, Inc.*, whose loveable monsters appealed to children while its satiric humor was clearly aimed at adults, and other large commercial and critical successes, including *Finding Nemo*, *The Incredibles*, and 2006's *Cars* (Figure 5.41).

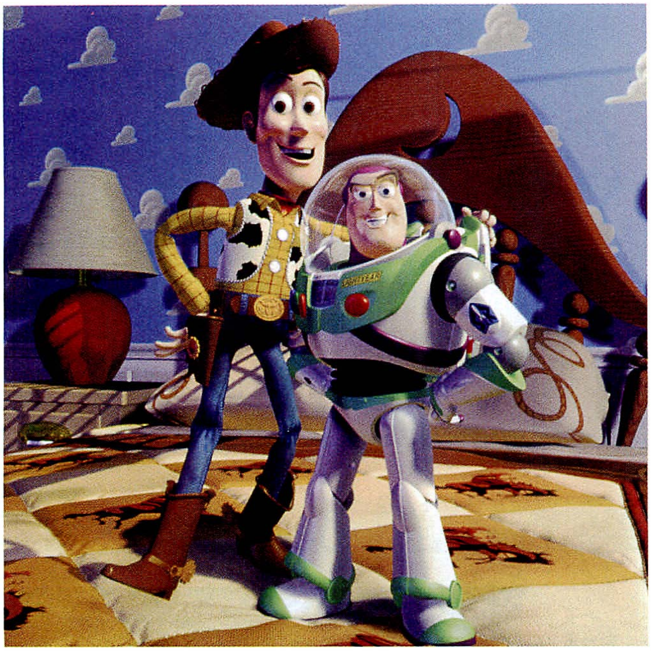


FIGURE 5.40 Contemporary Animation Pioneers The first wholly computer-generated animated feature, Pixar's *Toy Story* (1995), was directed by John Lasseter and starred the cowboy Woody (voiced by Tom Hanks) and his comic adversary, Buzz Lightyear (Tim Allen), an astronaut. Its almost universal acceptance by audiences and critics alike led to *Toy Story 2* four years later—and fans of animation continue to hope for another sequel.

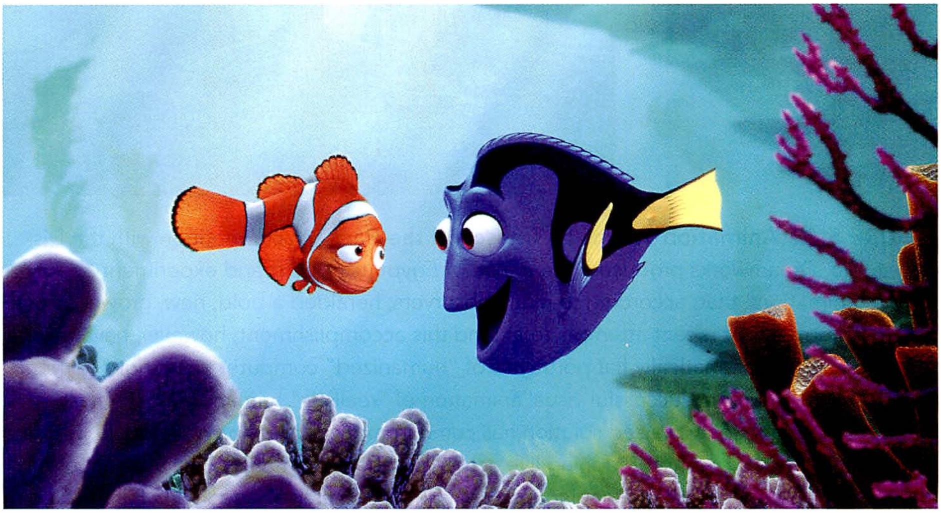


FIGURE 5.41 Lost Children Despite their being "movies for children," classic Disney animated films often included wrenching themes of violence and loss. Pixar's immensely popular *Finding Nemo* carried on this tradition with an opening scene in which literally hundreds of fish babies lose their mother in a shark attack. Ultimately, Nemo, the sole survivor, is also separated from his father during a frightening yet splendidly adventurous journey. Here the little clownfish (Alexander Gould) attempts to talk with a helpful—if comically memory-deficient—fellow traveler named Dory (Ellen DeGeneres).

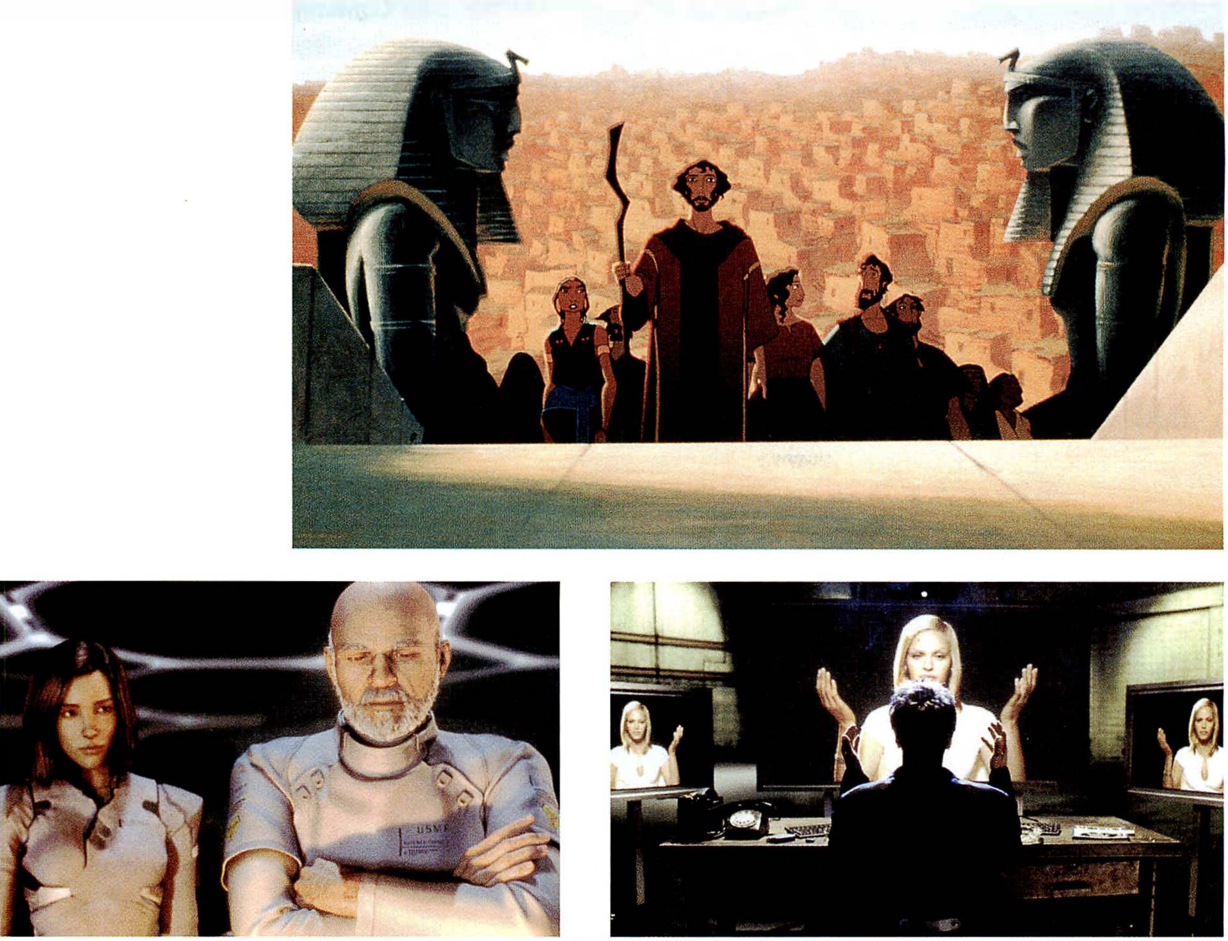


FIGURE 5.42 Animation Yearns to Transcend the Past In competition with the Disney studio, Dreamworks produced *The Prince of Egypt* (top), "a grand experiment . . . of feature animation" that, according to many observers, heralded a bold, new, grown-up era in the art form. More recent attempts to extend this accomplishment, however, have mainly resulted in either dramatically flat portrayals of "humanized" computer animations (*Simone*, bottom right) or almost-successful visual animation of "realistic" humans (*Final Fantasy*, bottom left). One highly praised solution has come from the makers of *Waking Life*, who created their movie by photographing live actors and then "animating" the images through a digitizing process called rotoscoping (see "Mini-Movie Exercise" and "DVD Filmmaking Extras" at the end of this chapter).

Finally, if we seek proof that contemporary animated feature films now invite adults to be a major part of their audience, we need only turn to *The Prince of Egypt*, (Figure 5.42). Here is a movie that takes as its subject one of the most archetypal narratives of world myth (not to mention Judeo-Christian scripture) and, in addition, envisions its Moses-led characters through immensely stylized and sophisticated visual modes (including elongated El Greco faces). Further, we immediately recognized that the animated feature has grown up when its makers, the Dreamworks team of Steven Spielberg, Jeffrey Katzenberg, and David Geffen, flatly refused to authorize any miniature toy or product advertising tie-ins with fast food chains. Katzenberg summarized their attitude: "We tried to be uncompromising here—there's nothing cute and adorable in the film. In other words, we didn't make a camel funny."[16]

Film reviewer Richard Corliss described *The Prince of Egypt* as "a grand experiment, a crusade to expand the frustratingly narrow boundaries of feature animation."[17] And Roger Ebert welcomed the film as revolutionary in its aim, scope, and artistic achievements:

> "The Prince of Egypt" is one of the best looking animated films ever made. It employs computer-generated animation as an aid to traditional techniques, rather than as a substitute for them, and we sense the touch of human artists in the vision behind the Egyptian monuments, the lonely desert vistas, the thrill of the chariot race, and personalities of the characters. This is a film that shows animation growing up and embracing more complex themes, instead of chaining itself in the category of children's entertainment.[18]

ANALYZING CINEMATOGRAPHY AND SPECIAL VISUAL EFFECTS

On the Cinematic Film

1. To what degree is the film cinematic? Cite specific examples from the film to prove that the director succeeds or fails in (a) keeping the image constantly alive and in motion; (b) setting up clear, crisp visual and aural rhythms; (c) creating the illusion of depth; and (d) using the other special properties of the medium.
2. Does the cinematography create clear, powerful, and effective images in a natural way, or does it self-consciously show off the skills and techniques of the cinematographer?

On Cinematic Points of View

Although the director probably employs all four cinematic viewpoints in making the film, one point of view may predominate to such a degree that the film leaves the impression of a single point of view. With this in mind, answer these questions:

1. Do you feel that you were primarily an objective, impersonal observer of the action, or did you have the sense of being a participant in the action? What specific scenes used the objective point of view? In what scenes did you feel like a participant in the action? How were you made to feel like a participant?
2. In what scenes were you aware that the director was employing visual techniques to comment on or interpret the action, forcing you to see the action in a special way? What techniques were used to achieve this? How effective were they?

On Elements of Cinematic Composition

1. Which methods does the director use to draw attention to the object of greatest significance?
2. Does the director succeed in keeping the screen alive by avoiding large areas of dead screen?
3. What are the primary or most memorable techniques used to create the illusion of three-dimensionality?

On Specialized Cinematic Techniques

1. Although a thorough analysis of each visual element is impossible, make a mental note of the pictorial effects that struck you as especially effective, ineffective, or unique, and consider them in light of these questions:
   a. What was the director's aim in creating these images, and what camera tools or techniques were employed in the filming of them?
   b. What made these memorable visual images effective, ineffective, or unique?
   c. Justify each of these impressive visual effects aesthetically in terms of its relationship to the whole film.
2. Are special lighting effects used for brief moments in the film? If so, what are the effects intended, and how successful are they?

On Movie Magic: Special Visual Effects in Modern Film

1. How effective are the special effects employed in the film? Do they dominate the film to the point that it is just a showcase for the effects, or are they an integrated part of the film?
2. To what degree does the credibility of the entire film depend on the audience believing in its special effects? Do special effects overshadow the major characters so much that they seem secondary to the effects?

VIDEO EXERCISES

Instructions for locating specific sequences are given on page 86.

1. **Cinematic Qualities.** Watch the first 10 minutes of the following films: *The Grapes of Wrath*, *Citizen Kane*, *The Taming of the Shrew*, *Terms of Endearment*, and *2001: A Space Odyssey.* Evaluate each brief segment in terms of the two questions under "On the Cinematic Film" on page 175. Which film is the most cinematic? Which is the least cinematic? Explain your choices in as much detail as possible.
2. **Deep Focus.** Watch the brief sequence from *Citizen Kane* in which Mr. Thatcher comes to pick up young Charles [1380 to 1650; 0:18:25 to 0:22:40]. How is deep focus employed in this sequence, and what is its effect? How does the use of deep focus affect the editing of this sequence? What role does sound play in reinforcing the illusion of a three-dimensional image here?
3. **Lighting.** Watch the sequences in *The Grapes of Wrath* in which Muley Graves appears [0750 to 1635; 0:12:15 to 0:23:07], and describe the different kinds of

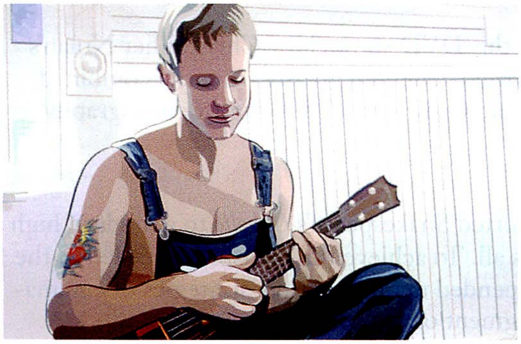
lighting employed in those sequences. What effect is created by each type of lighting used? In which scenes is the lighting most effective?

4. **Cinematic Viewpoints.** Watch the first 5 minutes of *The Grapes of Wrath*, *Casablanca*, and *Citizen Kane*. Try to identify the cinematic viewpoint of each shot in all three segments, and then answer question 1 under "On Cinematic Points of View" on page 175. How does the editing differ in each of these three films?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE: CINEMATOGRAPHY

Strange Days (1995), produced and co-written by James Cameron (director of *Titanic*) and starring Ralph Fiennes, Angela Bassett, and Juliette Lewis, is stylish, violent, and suspenseful. Its director, Kathryn Bigelow, immediately signals all three of these qualities in the first five minutes of her film by commencing with a completely discrete (and yet integrated) sequence that, in its cinematography alone, is virtuosic. Look closely at this opening "mini-movie" and then, to learn how it was made, listen to the only commentary provided on the DVD: Bigelow's fascinating, detailed account of its creation. (See also Chapter 6, page 198.)

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE: ANIMATED F/X



Many parts of the recent animated film *Waking Life* might be viewed as "mini-movies." The work, though, is clearly a treat meant for adults, not children—in both content and form; in fact, it is R-rated (mostly for a bit of rough language). As described in summary, it may sound boring: Throughout long passages, what might be termed talking heads have philosophical discussions. But discerning viewers surmise quickly that these talks will range from superbly serious to absolutely loony, and they also discover that the look of the whole film is mesmerizing. Its images, composed of constantly moving lines, textures, and hues, may even invoke a kind of seasickness in some watchers, but most others will gladly be pulled overboard into its loosely drawn narrative.

Chapter 10 on the DVD of this movie is a six-and-one-half minute, virtually self-contained dissertation called "Dreams." Seek it out, study its poetic observations, and pay close attention to how the filmmakers' choice of animated form ultimately elevates its story elements.

If the technical aspects of this film interest you, consult the next-to-last item in "DVD Filmmaking Extras" below.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

The Art of Cinematography

Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?:

The single special feature on this DVD is an audio commentary by director of photography Haskell Wexler, but it is well worth the listener's time to understand the power of the black-and-white film adaptation of Edward Albee's classic of modern American theater.

The Man Who Wasn't There:

Joel and Ethan Coen's elegant, entertaining *noir* concoction celebrates style and suspense. Its beautiful black-and-white cinematography was supervised by Roger Deakins, the Coens' accomplished visual collaborator, who is interviewed extensively as a special part of this DVD.

Three Kings:

Director of photography Newton Thomas Sigel explains in a conversation here that he desaturated images of the Iraqi desert to provide the "not colorless, but drained of color" look desired by director David O. Russell in the early sections of their film. Later, he says, he "warmed up" his palette to reflect a thematic awakening in the narrative.

Insomnia (2002):

The documentary "In the Fog" on this DVD shows how Christopher Nolan's third film (after *Following* and *Memento*) benefited greatly from the combined talents of production designer Nathan Crowley and director of photography Wally Pfister.

O:

Director Tim Blake Nelson transported Shakespeare's *Othello* to a modern high school, where sport-as-metaphor is all. To achieve the realism he needed in the "key basketball scenes," Nelson depended upon the visual strategies of cinematographer Russell Lee Fine, as a segment on this disc demonstrates.

Benny & Joon:

A special feature of this DVD allows one to view the early "combined filter tests" involving hair, costumes, and makeup that cinematographer John Schwartzman ordered from director Jeremiah Chechik's cast, including Johnny Depp and Mary Stuart Masterson.

Dancer in the Dark (New Line Platinum Series):

According to a documentary on this disc, "100 Cameras: Capturing Lars von Trier's Vision," a film director should attempt to suggest the "transmission of a live event." Although von Trier seems to consider his work here a failure in that respect, director of photography Robbie Muller apparently made a valiant effort to accommodate the concept in this controversial musical starring Björk and Catherine Deneuve.

American Beauty (The Awards Edition):

The highlight of three-and-a-half hours' worth of extras on this disc is an extended conversation between the celebrated director of photography Conrad L. Hall and director Sam Mendes. In it, they present and discuss many of the storyboards that Mendes drew, and that Hall used as models for applying his vision of light.

The creators of DVDs sometimes offer their viewers the opportunity to examine closely the storyboarding techniques used by directors and cinematographers, and then to make comparisons between those preplanning activities and the completed film scenes. Four discs that use split-screen demonstrations to show such movement are *Fiddler on the Roof (Special Edition)*, *Men in Black (Collector's Series)*, *Toy Story*, and *Toy Story 2 (Three-Disc Set Collector's Edition).*

The Art of Special Visual Effects

The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring (Special Extended DVD Edition):

This four-disc set contains thirty minutes of "new and extended scenes" (an alternative edit, a director's cut . . .)—and literally hours of information about every aspect of this first part of the J. R. R. Tolkien trilogy, including multitudinous data and demonstrations concerning its various visual and sound effects.

Minority Report:

According to this DVD's cover-copy claim, the feature "The Digital World of Minority Report" presents "the most technologically advanced visual effects ever created," which are "explained by the Academy Award–winning team at [George Lucas's] Industrial Light and Magic."

Forrest Gump (Special Collector's Edition):

Ken Ralston, director Robert Zemeckis's special visual effects supervisor, explains it all to you: how Lt. Dan's legs were digitally "erased."

The Matrix:

Most interesting on this DVD is the feature in which the film's creators introduce and explicate what they call "bullet time."

Star Wars, Episode I: The Phantom Menace:

This two-disc set offers five featurettes that explain not only special effects but also costumes, production design, fights, and story. And its interactive sections on "animatics" (not to mention its twelve Web documentaries) may, for some, be more worthy of a visit than the film itself.

Blade II:

The feature "Pact in Blood" furnishes enough special effects information in its "interactive collection of documentaries" to satisfy even the most gung ho techno-movie geek.

Hollow Man:

Just try to see through "Fleshing Out the Hollow Man: 15 Behind-the-Scenes Featurettes."

Jurassic Park III:

In addition to a separate feature commentary by this sequel's special effects team, the disc provides a technical, artistic, and scientific introduction to the series' "new dinosaurs."

The Mummy:

"Building a Better Mummy" explains what the DVD copy calls "the heart-stopping visual effects of the film."

The Cell:

Reviewers expressed wildly divergent critical opinions of this film, but surely few would deny the quality of its special effects. The disc contains this feature: "Visual Effects Vignettes: An Alternate Angle Feature in Which 6 Special Effects Sequences Are Explored From Storyboards to Final Scene."

Back to the Future: The Complete Trilogy:

Producer Spielberg provides more than ten hours of extras on this three-disc set, among them the feature "Evolution of the Special Effects," a substantive demonstration by the wizards of the ILM company.

A.I. Artificial Intelligence:

Included here is "a visit to Stan Winston Studios with early 'Teddy' footage" and more interviews with ILM's special effects group.

M:I-2 (Mission: Impossible 2):

Check out "'Impossible Shots': 11 Amazing Stunt Sequences Including Exclusive Interviews with Tom Cruise, [Director] John Woo and Stunt Coordinator Brian Smrz."

Spider-Man:

This DVD not only includes considerable information about its special effects; it also has an interactive feature that gives access to its F/X materials *while* you watch the feature.

King Kong (Two-Disc Special Edition):

Disc Two contains not only a new seven-part documentary ("RKO Production 601: The Making of Kong, Eighth Wonder of the World"), but also an excellent hour-long 2005 profile of its producer/director, Merian C. Cooper: "I'm King Kong!"

Kingdom of Heaven:

This two-DVD set begins its special effects coverage with a feature called the "Interactive Production Grid." The grid "Lets You Control the Moviemaking

Experience From The Perspective Of The Director, Cast Or Crew!" and it functions in "Pre-Production," "Production," or "Post-Production" modes.

Once Upon a Time in Mexico:
Here, in both "The Good, The Bad and The Bloody" and "Ten-Minute Flick School," the energetic director gives the viewer entertaining explanations of individual scenes in the movie. In addition, in "Film Is Dead: An Evening With Robert Rodriquez," director Rodriguez lectures passionately (following his mentor, George Lucas) about his love for shooting in the digital video (HD) format, instead of using film.

Pirates of the Caribbean: The Curse of the Black Pearl (Two-Disc Collector's Edition):
Director Gore Verbinski and special effects supervisor John Knoll demonstrate in the feature "Epic at Sea" how extensively digital animation effects were used in this film. "'Moonlight Serenade' Scene Progression" shows "how a shot . . . goes from concept to completion."

Stars Wars III: Revenge of the Sith
George Lucas presents a movie on DVD "captured and created directly from the digital source," as the box cover says. On the second disc, "'Within a Minute' gives you the most in-depth look ever into the filmmaking process for a *Star Wars* movie by examining everything and everyone that went into making less than sixty seconds of Episode III."

John Carpenter's The Thing (Collector's Edition):
"Terror Takes Shape" offers 80 minutes of interviews with (and demonstrations by) the director, special effects makeup designer Rob Bottin, matte artist Albert Whitlock, and others who helped to create this landmark F/X movie.

War of the Worlds (2005) (Two-Disc Limited Edition):
Steven Spielberg, through a "Pre-Visualization" feature on this DVD, allows moviegoers to "Discover the Artistry and Imagination Behind the Film's Spectacular Action Sequences."

King Kong: Peter Jackson's Production Diaries:
Clever "expedition" packaging showcases this souvenir set, which documents in exuberant detail all aspects of making Peter Jackson's 2005 version of the Kong story. Disc one covers September–December 2004; two follows January–April 2005.

The Art of Special Effects Animation

Animation Legend Winsor McCay:
The history of both early film generally and the art of animation specifically is encompassed by this DVD, which examines the life and work of the creator of Little Nemo and Gertie the Dinosaur. The great cartoon genius Chuck Jones (who often gave life to such creatures as Bugs Bunny and the Road Runner) has favorably compared McCay with Walt Disney in his influence on the art of animation.

Antz:
This DVD for Dreamworks' first computer animated feature contains a basic tutorial about the art form.

Shrek (Two-Disc Special Edition):
The art of Dreamworks' computer animation is further explained in a feature labeled "The Tech of *Shrek*."

Beauty and the Beast (Special Two-Disc Platinum Edition):
Among the dozens of features on this Disney release is a section about "Animating With Computers."

Tarzan (Collector's Edition):
On disc two of this set, one of many detailed tutorials focuses upon a "Production Progression Demonstration" where the "Angle Feature Allows You to Move Through the Various Stages of Production."

Toy Story and Toy Story 2 (Collector's Edition):
This Pixar three-disc boxed set also contains fascinating "Animation Production Progression Demos."

Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs (Platinum Edition):
Rare, behind-the-scenes footage gives viewers a glimpse of animation history in the making.

A Bug's Life:
If dogs, volleyballs, and marionettes can be considered bona fide actors (see the "DVD Filmmaking Extras" in Chapter 10), then surely we must also include cartoon characters. If "To act is to blow your lines" is a true thespian axiom, simply check out, for validation, the two sets of hilarious bug/actor "outtakes" on this disc.

The Incredible Adventures of Wallace and Gromit ('A Grand Day Out, *The Wrong Trousers*, and *A Close Shave):*
What more could an animation junkie need? Herein is a full half-hour tour of Aardman studios, overseen by creator Nick Parks. (This tour is more satisfying than the rushed one included on *The Curse of the Were-Rabbit* DVD.)

Chicken Run (Special Edition):
This DVD version of Aardman's first full-length feature film includes two more sections containing behind-the-scenes footage.

Metropolis (2002—Japan):
Disc two in this package offers various anime (distinctive Japanese-style animation) filmmaking features; the most appealing is "Animax Special: The Making of Osamu Tezuka's *Metropolis*."

Princess Mononoke:
The great anime master Hayao Miyazaki (*Spirited Away*) released this film in the United States in 1997, after it had become the highest-grossing movie in Japanese history. The featurette on the disc circles through brief interviews with several of the actors—including Claire Danes, Billy Crudup, Minnie Driver, Jada Pinkett Smith, and Billy Bob Thornton—who provided voices for the newly engineered English-dubbed version.

Waking Life:

At first glimpse, part of this DVD seems to exemplify the worst kind of practice in compiling extras for a disc: Among the elements of its video program is an extended section called "The Waking Life Studio" that appears to act as a trash-bin collection of very loosely related odds and ends. Included here, we notice, is the film's theatrical trailer, early animation tests, and a preview for another, completely unrelated 20th Century Fox feature. But well worth the visit to this attic is a treasure called "Bob Sabiston's Animation Tutorial," a twenty-minute feature in which the movie's art director explains in great detail how the unique motion picture was created via a "rotoscoping" process. As Sabiston tells viewers, the entire film was first shot on video with live actors and completely edited; then more than twenty-five different artists, using their very separate styles and the same special multi-layered computer animation software, "hand drew" each frame from the video template. Beyond this information, though, are even more fascinating interviews with the work's creative team, including the director, Richard Linklater; ironically, this worthy material appears in a subsection titled "Animation Scrap Heap." (See also Linklater's later work A Scanner Darkley, which uses this same animation process.)

The Polar Express (Two-Disc Widescreen Edition):

Most fascinating among the various featurettes on disc two is "You Look Familiar: the Many 'Polar Faces' of Tom Hanks," an examination of the technical magic that enabled the actor to portray multiple characters in this animated film (including the young protagonist, the conductor, a hobo, and Santa Claus).

FILMS FOR STUDY

Cinematography

Batman Begins (2005)
Blade Runner (1982)
Blood Simple (1984)
Boogie Nights (1997)
Brokeback Mountain (2005)
Casablanca (1942)
Chariots of Fire (1981)
Cinderella Man (2005)
Citizen Kane (1941)
A Clockwork Orange (1971)
Dogville (2003)
The English Patient (1996)
Goodnight, and Good Luck (2005)
The Graduate (1967)
The Grapes of Wrath (1940)
A History of Violence (2005)
Jaws (1975)
Kill Bill, Volume 1 (2003) and *Volume 2* (2004)
Kiss Kiss, Bang Bang (2005)
March of the Penguins (2005)
Memoirs of a Geisha (2005)
Metropolis (1927)
Munich (2005)
Napoleon (1927)
The New World (2005)
Raging Bull (1980)
Sin City (2005)
Sunrise (1927)
The Third Man (1949)
Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf? (1966)

Special Visual Effects

The Abyss (1989)
Adaptation (2002)
Apollo 13 (1995)
Babe: Pig in the City (1998)
Beetlejuice (1988)
Charlie and the Chocolate Factory (2005)
Dark City (1998)
The Day After Tomorrow (2004)
The Fifth Element (1997)
Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire (2005)
Hellboy (2004)
Hero (2002)
House of Flying Daggers (2004)
Independence Day (1996)
Lemony Snicket's A Series of Unfortunate Events (2004)
Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King (2003)
Master and Commander: The Far Side of the World (2003)
The Matrix (1999)
Sky Captain and the World of Tomorrow (2004)
Spider-Man 2 (2004)
Star Wars, Episode III: Revenge of the Sith (2005)
Terminator 3: Rise of the Machines (2003)
The Truman Show (1998)
2001: A Space Odyssey (1968)

Animated Feature Films F/X

Alice in Wonderland (1951)
Antz (1998)
Beauty and the Beast (1991)
A Bug's Life (1998)
Cars (2006)
Chicken Run (2000—Britain)
Dumbo (1941)
The Emperor's Nightingale (1948—Czechoslovakia)
Fantasia (1940)
Finding Nemo (2003)
James and the Giant Peach (1996)
The Lion King (1994)
The Little Mermaid (1989)
Monsters, Inc. (2001)
Mulan (1998)
The Nightmare Before Christmas (1993)
Pinocchio (1940)
The Prince of Egypt (1998)
Princess Mononoke (1997—Japan)
Shrek (2001)
Shrek 2 (2004)
Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs (1937)
Spirited Away (2001—Japan)
Toy Story (1995), *Toy Story 2* (1999)
The Triplets of Belleville (2003)
Waking Life (2001)
Wallace & Gromit: The Curse of the Were-Rabbit (2005—Britain)
Who Framed Roger Rabbit (1988)

6

EDITING

For my vision of the cinema, editing is not simply one aspect. It is the aspect.

—ORSON WELLES, DIRECTOR, ACTOR, AND WRITER

A feature-length film generates anywhere from twenty to forty hours of raw footage. When the shooting stops, that unrefined film becomes the movie's raw material, just as the script had been the raw material before. It now must be selected, tightened, paced, embellished, and in some scenes given artificial respiration, until the author's and the director's vision becomes completely translated from the language of the script to the idiom of the movies.

—RALPH ROSENBLUM, FILM EDITOR

Of utmost importance to any film is the contribution made by the editor, whose function is to assemble the complete film, as if it were a gigantic and complex jigsaw puzzle, from its various component parts and soundtracks. The great Russian director V. I. Pudovkin believed that editing is "the foundation of the film art" and observed that "the expression that the film is 'shot' is entirely false, and should disappear from the language. The film is not *shot*, but built, built up from separate strips of celluloid that are its raw material."[1] Alfred Hitchcock reinforces this viewpoint: "The screen ought to speak its own language, freshly coined, and it can't do that unless it treats an acted scene as a piece of raw material which must be broken up, taken to bits, before it can be woven into an expressive visual pattern."[2]

Because of the importance of the editing process, the editor's role may nearly equal that of the director. Regardless of its quality, the raw material that the director provides may be worthless unless careful judgment is exercised in deciding when each segment will appear and how long it will remain on the screen. This assembly of parts must be done with artistic sensitivity, perception, and aesthetic judgment as well as a true involvement in the subject and a clear understanding of the director's intentions. Therefore, for the most part, the director and the editor must be considered almost equal partners in the construction of a film. In some cases, the editor may be the true structuring genius, the master builder or architect. In fact, the editor may have the clearest vision of the film's unity, and he or she may even make up for a lack of clear vision on the director's part.

Such would seem to be the case with many of Woody Allen's films. According to Ralph Rosenblum, who edited six of them, Allen is obsessed with keeping a strain of seriousness running through practically any film he makes. Much of this seriousness Rosenblum eliminates in the cutting room. *Annie Hall*, for example, was shot as a philosophical film (working title—*Anhedonia*). The focal character was Alvy Singer, Annie was a secondary character, and the mood fell somewhere between *Interiors* and *Manhattan*. In the editing process, Rosenblum refocused the film on the Alvy/Annie relationship by eliminating whole sequences and plot lines, and he helped Allen develop and shoot a new ending to match the new focus. The end result was a film that won Academy Awards for best picture, director, actress, and original screenplay. However, the editor, who changed the whole emphasis and tone of the film from what was originally conceived and shot by the director, was not even nominated. Evan Lottman, editor of *Sophie's Choice*, explains the problem:

> [Editing is] invisible. Seeing the finished product cannot tell you the value of the editing. You don't know whether the material was great and the editor screwed it up, or if it was poor material and he made a wonderful movie out of it. You don't know whether moments in the movie were created in the editing room or whether they were part of the director's original conception. But if the picture works, the editing works, and nobody's going to call special attention to it.[3]

In this chapter's "Flashback," we explore the history of this invisible work. (See "Flashback: Saving the Movies: What Film Editors Have Always Done.")

To appreciate the role that editing plays, we must look at the basic responsibility of the editor: to assemble a complete film that is a unified whole in which each separate shot or sound contributes to the development of the theme and the total effect. To understand the editor's function, it is also important to comprehend the nature of the jigsaw puzzle. The basic unit with which the editor works is the **shot** (a strip of film produced by a single continuous run of the camera). By joining or splicing a series of shots so that they communicate a unified action taking place at one time and place, the editor assembles a **scene.** The editor then links a series of scenes to form a **sequence,** which constitutes a significant part of the film's dramatic structure much in the same way that an act functions in a play. To assemble these parts effectively, the editor must successfully carry out his or her responsibilities in each of the following areas.

SELECTIVITY

The most basic editing function is selecting the best shots from several **takes** (variations of the same shot). The editor chooses the segments that provide the most powerful, effective, or significant visual and sound effects and eliminates inferior, irrelevant, or insignificant material. Of course, we cannot fully appreciate the editor's selectivity because we do not see the footage that ends up on the cutting-room floor (or, as with most film projects now, in storage). As *Black Rain* editor Tom Rolf describes the process:

> It's imposing my choice over yours, having the arrogance to say this is better than that. It's being a critic. It's an art form you're interpreting. It's a matter of choices and keeping it straight in your head. It's like having an enormous picture puzzle—1,000 pieces will make it look perfect but they give you 100,000. It's going through all the pieces, to try to get the best parts. That's what editing is.[4]

When deciding what to eliminate, the editor considers several different takes of the same piece of action. While the film is being shot, the director begins the selection process by telling the continuity supervisor which takes are good enough to be printed. Soon after each day's shooting, **dailies** (also called *rushes*) are printed and viewed by the director, the cinematographer, and others. After screening the dailies, which are unedited, the director may decide to throw out more shots—shots that contain flaws not spotted during the shooting. By the time the editor finally gets the film, obviously bad footage has been discarded. But there are still many difficult and subtle decisions to be made.

For a given five seconds' worth of action, the editor may be working with ten takes of that segment of action and dialogue, filmed with three different cameras from three different angles. If the sound quality is adequate in each shot, the editor chooses a shot to fill that five-second slot in the finished film

SAVING THE MOVIES: WHAT FILM EDITORS HAVE ALWAYS DONE

In the 2004 film *The Final Cut*, Robin Williams plays another one of those very "serious" characters whom he conjures up so well when he isn't being his trademark antic self. In the futuristic world of the movie, one out of every twenty humans has been given, at birth, something called a "Zoe implant," which records every moment of existence through his or her eyes. Williams plays Alan Hakman, a special kind of filmmaker who edits real people's lives. At a crucial point in the drama, Hakman explains to another character that "cutters" like him are sometimes called "sin eaters," because they erase weaknesses and errors in lives before family and friends can hold a viewing of the deceased's memories. Thus, they "edit" lives that have often been fragmented, feeble, and wrong so that the lives appear to have been whole, strong, and worthy.

Although this clever concept is hardly given its due in the film's melodramatic plot, it might nevertheless serve as an apt metaphor for the magic that real film editors have created throughout the roughly one-hundred-year history of the cinema. "What makes a movie a movie is the editing," says Zach Staenberg, the Oscar-winning editor of the *Matrix* trilogy. Without editors' skillful "consumption" of the professional "sins" of writers and directors, modern movies would hardly exist, and wise actors have long known that editors can make or break their performances on film.

Late in the nineteenth century, cinematic pioneers like Thomas Edison and brothers Louis and Auguste Lumière did not truly envision the narrative possibilities that editing could bring to their new medium. Only with Edwin S. Porter's creation of *The Life of an American Fireman* (1902) and, especially, *The Great Train Robbery* (1903) did editors first manipulate technology for skillful, extended storytelling. Later, celebrated director D. W. Griffith, in his films *The Birth of a Nation* (1915) and *Intolerance* (1916), began to establish the strict "rules" of so-called classical editing, a "masked" manipulation of film clips that endeavored to make the film seem fluid in its movement. Wide (or "master") shots usually came first, followed most often by "two shots," and finally, "single shots," establishing a smooth and predictable progression of images for the viewer. Even the first uses of close-up and flashback shots were incorporated seamlessly into the film. As film editor Sally Menke (*Pulp Fiction*) has observed, cutting was "the Invisible Art."

Unfortunately, the editors who did the work also remained invisible to the movie-going public, who were unaware of these artisans' essential power over the films they watched. Editors' invisibility, a natural result of classical editing techniques, became even more profound during the "movie factory" atmosphere of 1930s, 1940s, and 1950s America, when large and powerful Hollywood studios marginalized the roles of such technicians. In contrast, in France, with the advent of the French New Wave in 1959, films like Jean-Luc Godard's *Breathless* had begun a direct frontal assault upon the traditional editing style, using such techniques as frequent jump cuts (defined on page 203) to create deliberately erratic rhythms.

Such rule-breaking in the art of movie editing began more gradually in America, but became particularly evident in *Bonnie and Clyde* (1967), with wonderfully kinetic cutting by the estimable Dede Allen (whose later films have also included *Dog Day Afternoon*, *Reds*, *The Breakfast Club*, *The Wonder Boys*, and *The Final Cut*). The ultimate result of this movement was "free-form" editing, which probably reached a commercial peak in Joe Hutshing's work on the Oliver Stone film *JFK* (1991)—a film that involved much "fragmenting of time and space." However, even within popular movies of the 1980s, cutting had become faster and faster. By the very late twentieth and early twenty-first century, many action directors had come to feature films from the frenetic world of MTV music videos and television commercials. Consider, for example, Michael Bay (*The Rock*) or Rob Cohen (*XXX*), who appear to believe that the speed with which viewers receive information may enhance their learning to process information faster. Interestingly, director Martin Scorsese (*Raging Bull*, *The Aviator*), who began his film career as an editor (*Woodstock*), has expressed concern about what effect this assumption may have on our culture's sense of real time, not merely movie time.

As *New Yorker* critic Anthony Lane has also observed, not all contemporary directors demand such speed from their editors. For example, Lane notes that Gus Van Sant (*Drugstore Cowboy*, *My Own Private Idaho*, *Good Will Hunting*), in such recent films as *Elephant* and *Last Days*, "refuses to go in fear of the long take. This sets him apart from many of his contemporaries, for whom every movie is a kind of slasher flick, sliced and diced within an inch of its life. By contrast, Van Sant is prepared to hang around and see how a scene unfolds." Likewise, writer/director Rodrigo Garcia seems willing to take his, and his audience's, slow time in the drama *Nine Lives*, which consists exclusively of nine singular, unbroken long takes. Surely the champion of this "slower" technique remains Alexander Sokurov's *Russian Ark*, whose ninety-five-minute running time is a single take, with all the film's "editing" done inside the camera's frame (that is, by manipulating the elements of mis-en-scène rather than by montage [see page 215]).

Of course, editing is not always an artistic process—sometimes it is necessary simply to keep the film to a reasonable length. Recent well-known films that needed major editorial resuscitation before release include Cameron Crowe's *Elizabethtown* and Terrence Malick's *The New World* (not to mention Vincent Gallo's notorious *The Brown Bunny*). Each was surgically shortened to at least some positive effect after their initial screenings at high-profile film festivals.

Currently, more and more "independent" (i.e., poorly financed) directors are choosing to shoot in a high-definition digital video format. In addition, however, some commercially successful directors, like George Lucas, Robert Rodriguez, and Steven Soderbergh, are famously embracing and promoting the technology. And, as Richard Corliss, a reviewer for *Time*, notes, "If moviemakers won't shoot digitally, they'll edit digitally, citing ease and efficiency." However, there are still major hold-outs: Corliss spotlights the accomplished editor Michael Kahn and Kahn's creative collaborator, director Steven Spielberg, who says, "I still love cutting on film. I just love going into an editing room and smelling the photochemistry and seeing my editor with mini-strands of film around his neck. The greatest films ever made were cut on film, and I'm tenaciously hanging on to the process."

Although directors' and actors' careers may often hang in the balance of the film editor's art, no one is more dependent on good editing than the screenwriter. For, as writer/director Quentin Tarantino has proclaimed in the film *The Cutting Edge: The Magic of Movie Editing*, "The last draft of the screenplay is the first cut of the movie, and the final cut of the movie is the last draft of the script." Ultimately, then, all filmmakers are "saved" by the art of these invisible editors.

Sources: The Cutting Edge: The Magic of Movie Editing (Warner Bros., 2004), directed by Wendy Apple, written by Mark Jonathan Harris; Anthony Lane, "Opting Out," *The New Yorker*, 1 August 2005, 90–91; Richard Corliss, "Can This Man Save the Movies? (Again?)," *Time*, 12 March 2006, 66–72.

after considering these factors: the camera technique (clear focus, smooth camera movement, and so on), composition, lighting, acting performance, and best angle to match the previous shot.

If each shot were equal in quality, the decision would be simple: The editor would go with the best angle to match the previous shot. But usually it's not that easy, and some of the editor's decisions amount to difficult compromises. According to *Ben-Hur* editor Ralph Winters:

> A good editor will choose the path which gives him the most amount of material. It depends on the way it was shot. I've had sequences that had three, four, or five angles and we played it all in one angle, because when we looked at the film everyone felt that the scene sustained itself. . . . I can have my eye shift back and forth where it wants instead of being directed by close-ups. If you are playing a two-shot and you can make it better by intercutting close-ups because those performances are better, then you should do it. If you're given a mediocre scene and you have no coverage, that's the way it's going to play.[5]

The best shot in terms of lighting and composition may be the weakest in acting performance and dramatic impact. Or the best acting performance may be poorly composed or have lighting problems or be slightly out of focus.

COHERENCE, CONTINUITY, AND RHYTHM

The film editor is responsible for putting the pieces together into a coherent whole. He or she must guide our thoughts, associations, and emotional responses effectively from one image to another, or from one sound to another, so that the interrelationships of separate images and sounds are clear and the transitions between scenes and sequences are smooth. To achieve this goal, the editor must consider the aesthetic, dramatic, and psychological effect of the juxtaposition of image to image, sound to sound, or image to sound, and place each piece of film and soundtrack together accordingly (Figure 6.1).

TRANSITIONS

In the past, filmmakers made routine use of several **opticals**—effects created in the lab during the printing of the film—to create smooth and clear transitions between a film's most important divisions, such as between two sequences that take place at a different time or place. These traditional transitional devices include the following:

- **Wipe.** A new image is separated from the previous image by means of a horizontal, vertical, or diagonal line that moves across the screen to wipe the previous image away.
- **Flip Frame.** The entire frame appears to flip over to reveal a new scene, creating a visual effect very similar to turning a page.

FIGURE 6.1 Editing Sequence—Action and Reaction Part of the editor's job is to weave a coherent tapestry of action and reaction, rendering the sequence of events crystal clear while building dramatic effect, tension, and suspense by cutting back and forth between the characters involved in the action and the action itself. Sometimes the editor achieves this effect by cutting the action into minute bits and showing significant character reaction to each bit of action. The complex relationship between action and reaction is clearly illustrated by the final ambush sequence from *Bonnie and Clyde*.

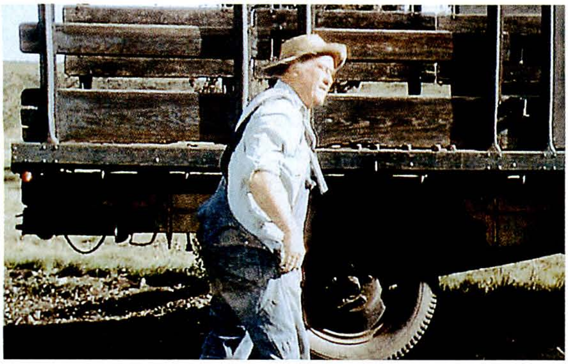
Spooked by the appearance of a number of lawmen in a small Louisiana town, Bonnie and Clyde (Faye Dunaway and Warren Beatty) drive off, much to the relief of their accomplice C. W. Moss (Michael J. Pollard), who watches from a window. Meanwhile, down the road, a trap is being set by C. W.'s father, Malcolm (Dub Taylor). The editor, Dede Allen, establishes a relationship between Malcolm's "flat tire" and Bonnie and Clyde's trip with a few quick cuts between them. Sighting Malcolm, Clyde pulls over and gets out to help with the tire. Several quick events (an approaching car, a covey of quail suddenly flushed from a nearby bush, and Malcolm's quick dive under his truck) evoke dramatic reactions from Bonnie and Clyde before the shooting from the nearby bushes begins.

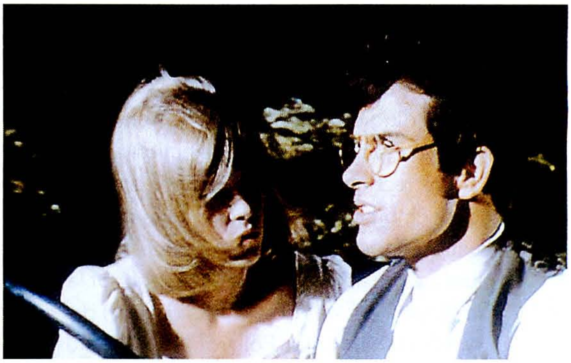
▲ 1.

▲ 2.

▼ 3.

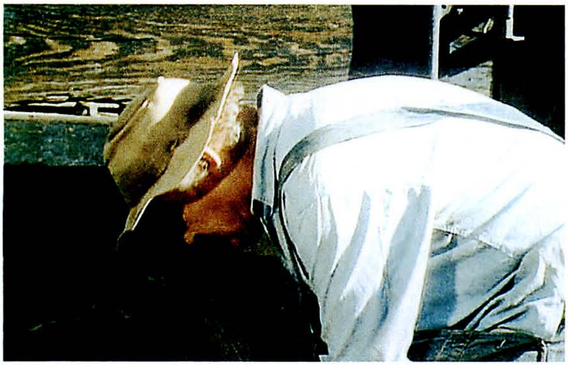
▼ 4.

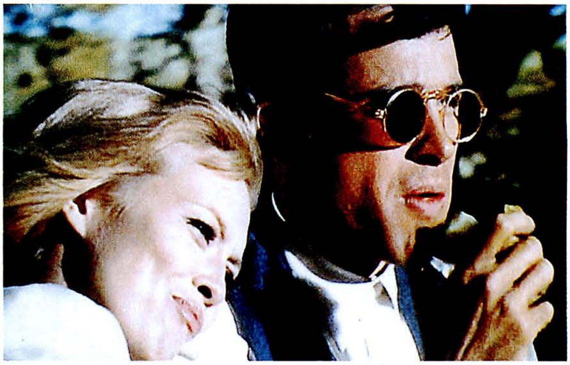




▲ 5. ▼ 7.

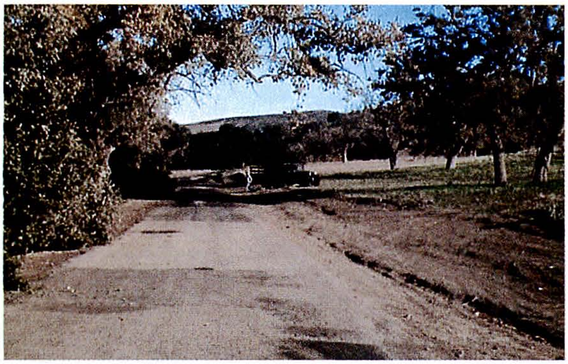
▲ 6. ▼ 8.

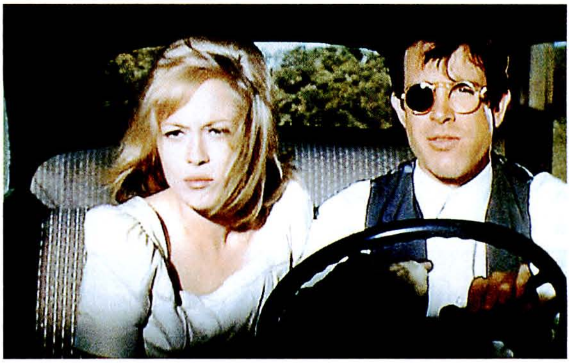




▼ 9.

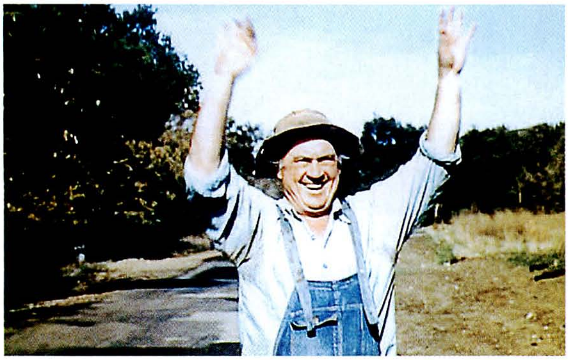
▼ 10.

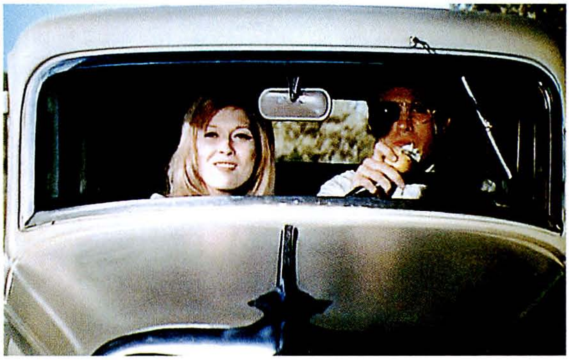


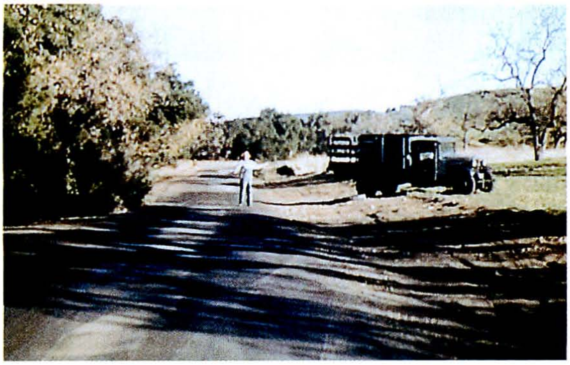


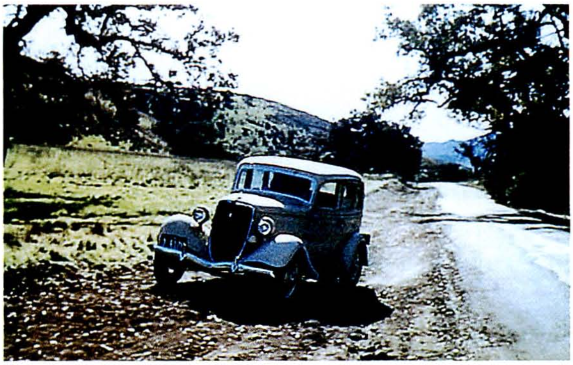
▼ 11.

▼ 12.



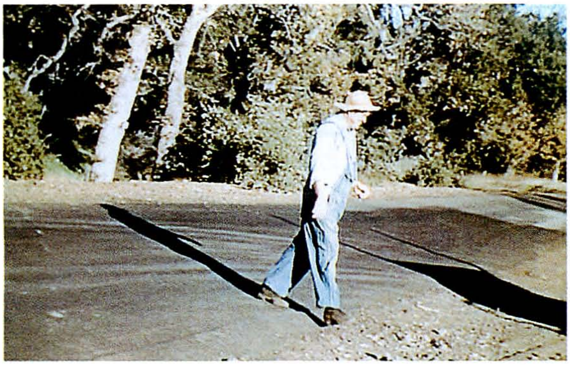


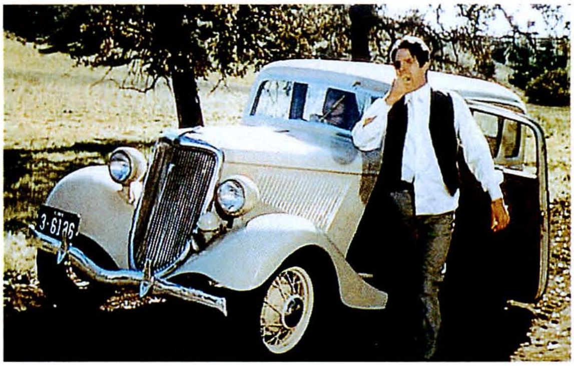




▲ 13. ▼ 15.

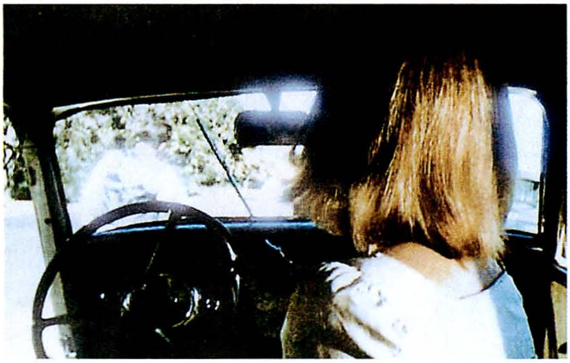
▲ 14. ▼ 16.

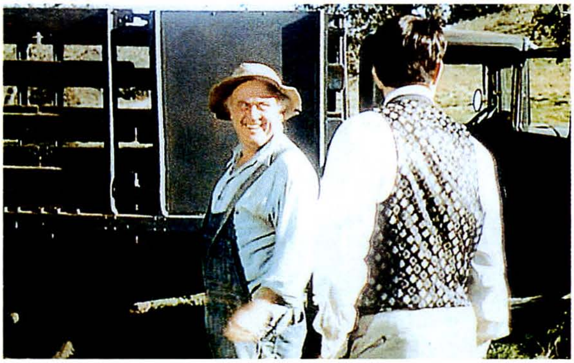




▼ 17.

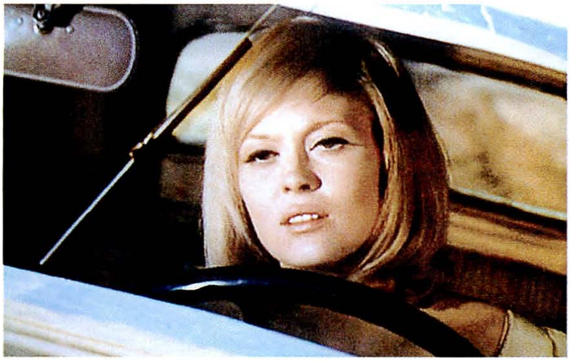
▼ 18.

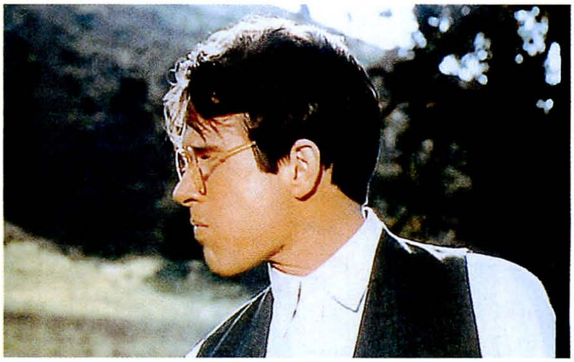


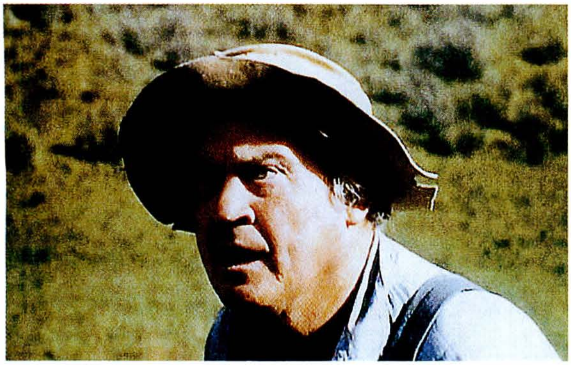


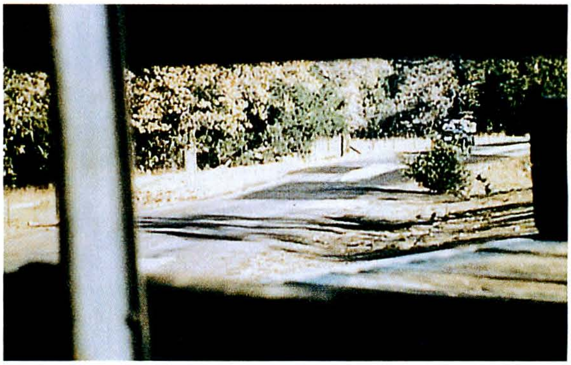
▼ 19.

▼ 20.



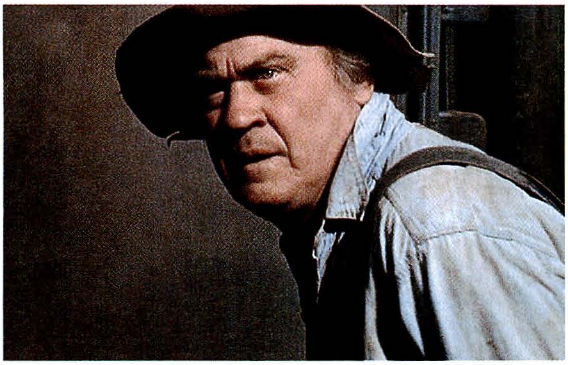


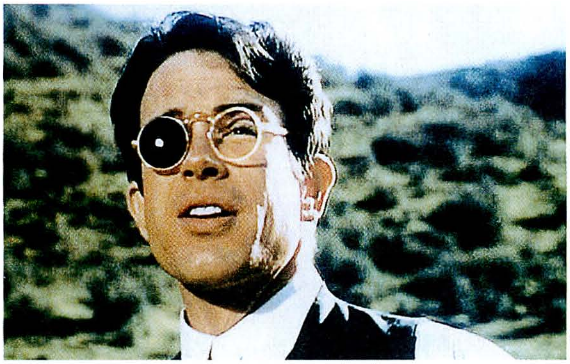




▲ 21. ▼ 23.

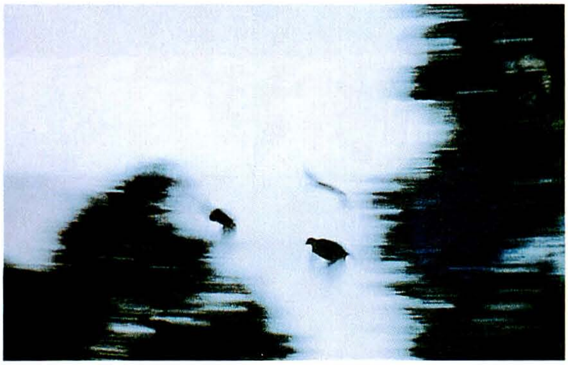
▲ 22. ▼ 24.

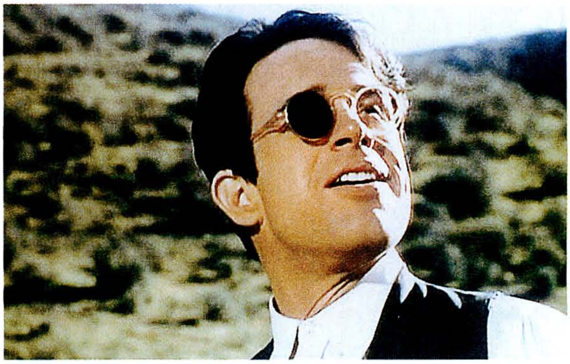




▼ 25.

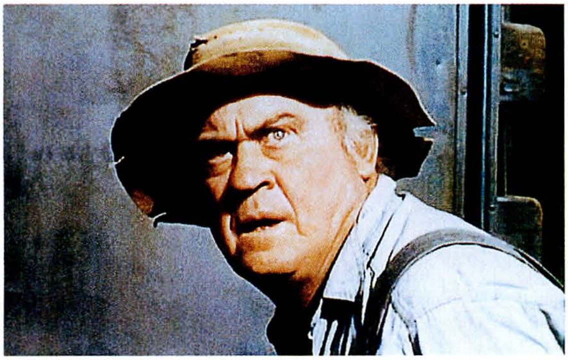
▼ 26.

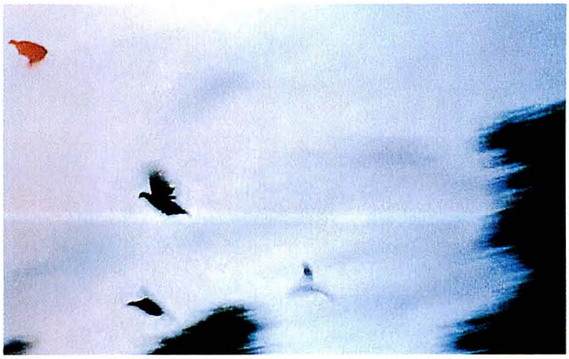


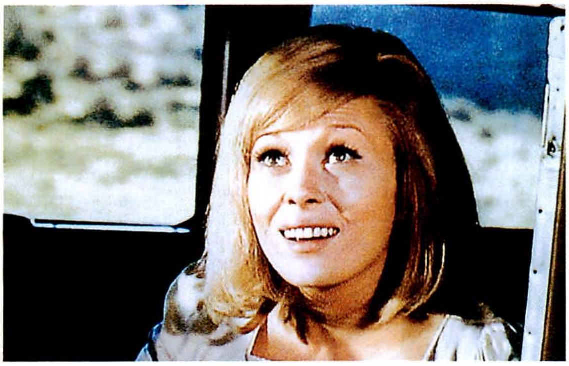


▼ 27.

▼ 28.

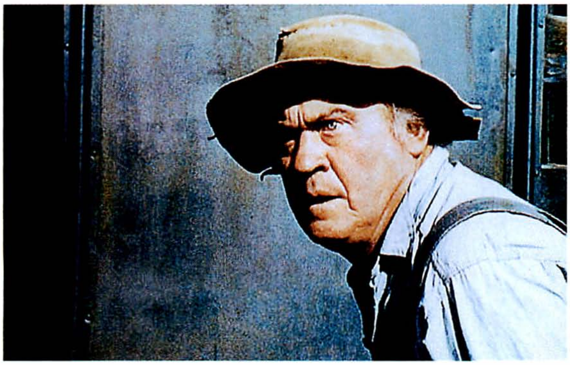


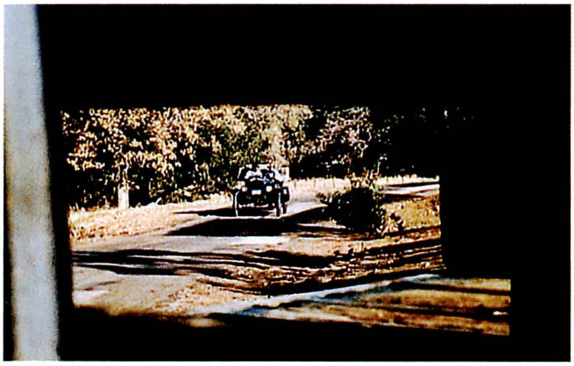




▲ 29. ▼ 31.

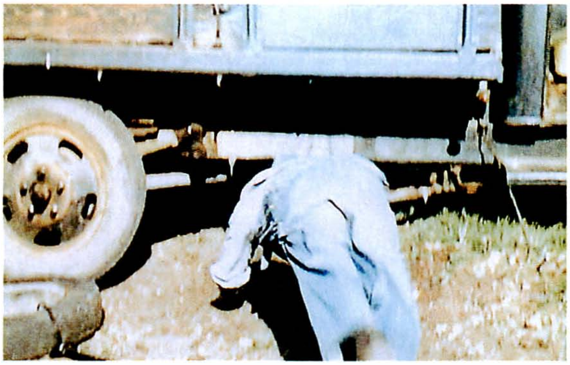
▲ 30. ▼ 32.

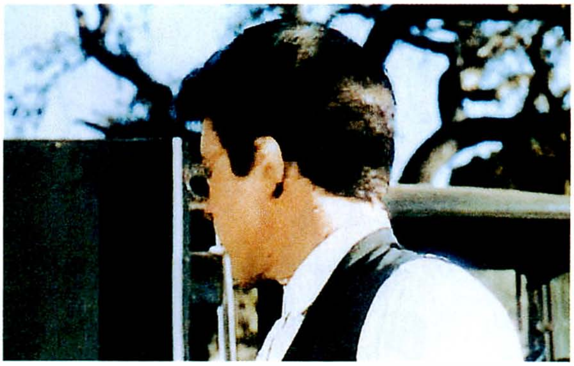




▼ 33.

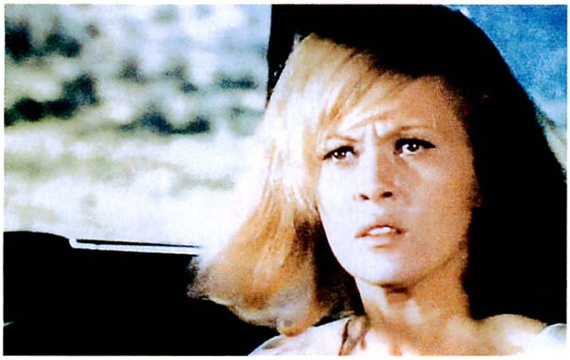
▼ 34.

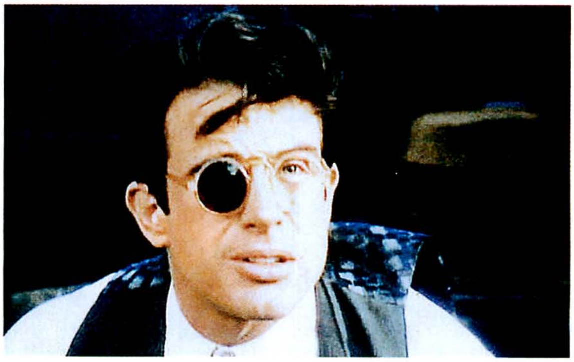


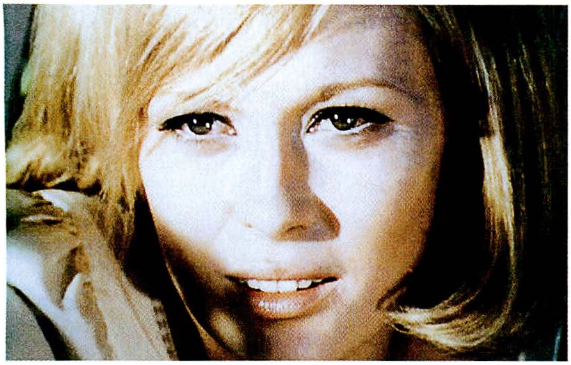


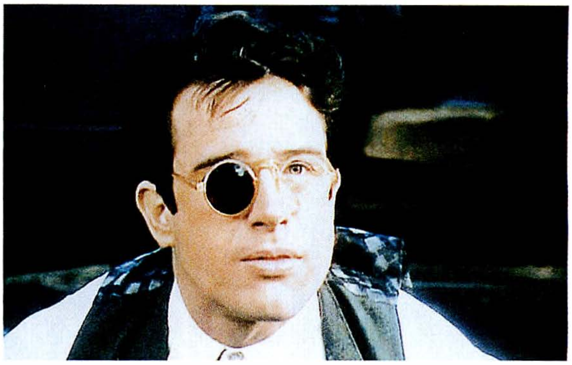
▼ 35.

▼ 36.



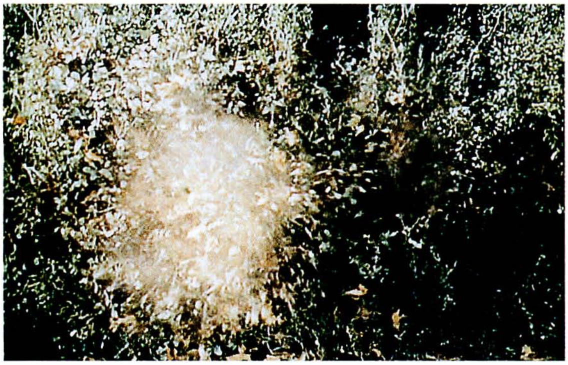


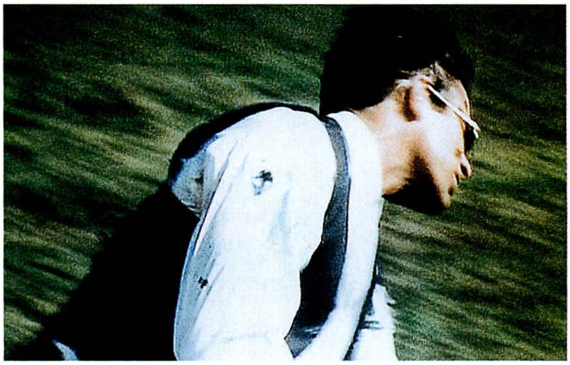




▲ 37. ▼ 39.

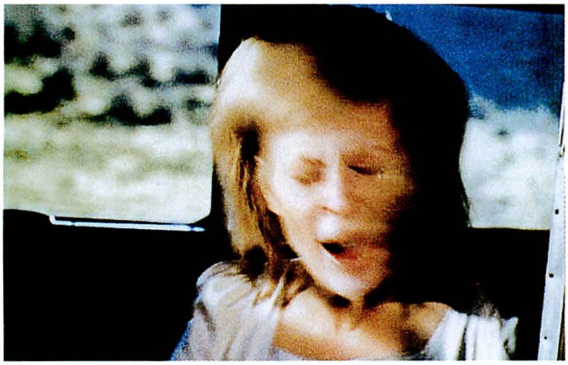
▲ 38. ▼ 40.

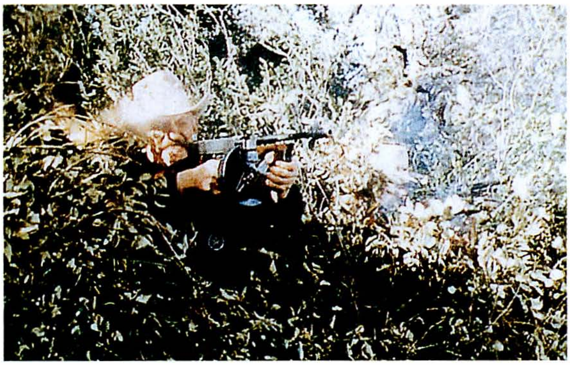




▼ 41.

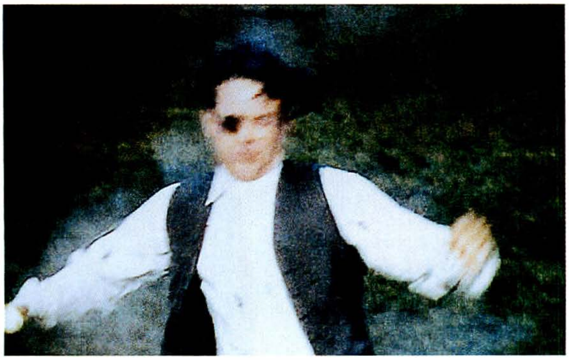
▼ 42.

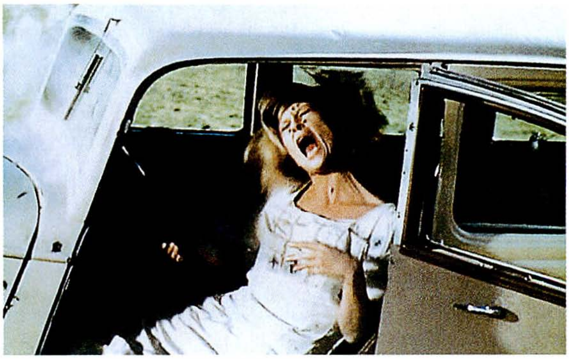




▼ 43.

▼ 44.





- **Fade-Out/Fade-In.** The last image of one sequence fades momentarily to black, and the first image of the next sequence is gradually illuminated.
- **Dissolve.** The end of one shot gradually merges into the beginning of the next. The effect is produced by superimposing a fade-out onto a fade-in of equal length or imposing one scene over another.

Each of them is most effective in a specific situation or context. Generally speaking, dissolves signal relatively great transitions and are used to make the viewer aware of major scene changes or the passage of time. Flips and wipes are faster and are employed when the time lapse or place change is more logical or natural.

Modern filmmakers have used these devices in films such as *The Sting* and *Pennies From Heaven* to suggest the film style that was typical of the period when the story takes place. But most modern filmmakers do not make extensive use of them and instead rely on a simple cut from one sequence to another without giving any clear transitional signal. This change can be attributed to audiences' visual conditioning by TV commercials to follow quick cuts without confusion. The soundtrack has also taken on some of the transitional functions formerly handled optically.

Regardless of the nature of transitions, whether they are long and obvious (as in a slow dissolve) or short and quick (as in a simple instantaneous cut), the editor is the person who must put them together so that they maintain continuity—so that the flow from one sequence to another or merely from one image to another is logical.

When possible, the editor uses a **form cut** to smooth the visual flow from one shot, scene, or sequence to another. In this type of cut, the shape of an object in one shot is matched to a similarly shaped object in the next shot. Because both objects appear in the same area of the frame, the first image flows smoothly into the second. In Stanley Kubrick's *2001*, a piece of bone flung into the air dissolves into a similarly shaped orbiting object in the following sequence. In Sergei Eisenstein's *Potemkin*, the handle of a sword or dagger in one shot becomes the similarly shaped cross around a priest's neck in the following shot. Although form cuts provide smooth visual transitions, they may also create ironic collisions of sharply contrasting ideas.

Similar to the form cut are cuts that use color or texture to link shots. For example, a glowing sun at the end of one shot may dissolve into a campfire at the beginning of the next. Of course, there are limitations to this type of transition; and when they are overdone, they lose the sense of naturalness that makes them effective.

The editor must also assemble shots to achieve coherence *within* a sequence. For example, many sequences require an **establishing shot** at the beginning to provide a broad picture of the setting so that we get a feel for the environment in which the scene occurs. The editor must decide if an establishing shot is necessary for a clear understanding of the closer and more detailed shots that follow.

Two different editing patterns have become more or less standard in making transitions in time and space. The more traditional pattern, **outside/in editing,** follows a logical sequence and concentrates on orienting us to the new setting. It allows us to move into a new setting from the outside and gradually work our way inside to the details. The logical context of each step is clearly shown so that we always know exactly where we are. We get our bearings with an establishing shot of the whole setting, move into the setting itself, and then focus our attention on the details of that setting.

Inside/out editing does the exact opposite. We are jolted suddenly from a line of action that we completely understand to a close-up detail in a new and unfamiliar place. We don't know where we are or what is happening. Then, in a sequence of related shots, we back off from the detail of the first close-up and gradually find out where we are and what is happening. Thus, we move from a disorienting shot to distant, more general shots that help us fully understand the action in the context of the new scene (Figure 6.2).

Airport '77 begins with a couple of burglars breaking into an airport office at night and stealing information from a file cabinet. While that burglary is in progress, we jump immediately to a close-up of a hand pushing throttle levers forward. In the next shot, we back up to establish that the hand belongs to Jack Lemmon, who is in the pilot's seat of a jetliner, and a view through the cockpit glass shows the runway in front of the plane. The next shot takes us one step farther back, and we see that Lemmon is not in a real cockpit at all but in a simulator training cockpit. Thus, the viewer is jolted with a transition first, and the overall location of the scene is established later. The inside/out pattern creates a dynamic, explosive, exciting edit, which adds oomph and suspense to the transition. Kathryn Bigelow, in the virtuoso opening of *Strange Days*, uses a similar editing pattern. The scene introduces the audience to a kinetic and thrilling robbery (photographed using constant subjective point-of-view shots) that seems to end with the camera's—and the viewers'—falling off the top of a tall building. Suddenly, though, it is revealed that this heart-thumping excitement is in fact recorded on a futuristic experiential device worn by the film's protagonist, played by Ralph Fiennes. (See the first Mini-Movie Exercise on page 177.)

RHYTHMS, TEMPO, AND TIME CONTROL

Many factors work together and separately to create rhythms in a motion picture: the physical objects moving on the screen, the real or apparent movement of the camera, the musical score, and the pace of the dialogue and the natural rhythms of human speech, as well as the pace of the plot itself. These factors set up unique rhythms that blend into the whole. But these rhythms are natural, imposed on the film by the nature of its raw material. Perhaps the most dominant

FIGURE 6.2 Editing Sequence—Outside/In and Inside/Out This sequence combines two common patterns of editing. In the first, the outside/in pattern, we get our bearings with an establishing shot of the new setting and then move closer in to focus on the main characters and details of the new environment. This can be accomplished in a variety of ways: The editor may begin with a static distant shot and take us closer and closer by cutting to shots taken from a static camera positioned in progressive stages closer to an object of interest. The same basic effect can also be accomplished with a slow zoom that gradually magnifies the object of interest or by a continuous shot from a mobile camera that physically moves closer to the subject.

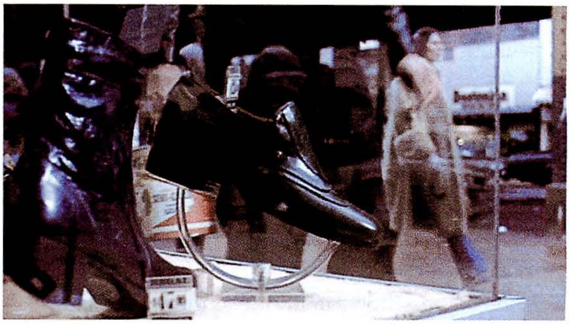
In the outside/in portion of this editing sequence, two methods are used. The first three photos represent excerpts from a continuous shot taken from a helicopter. The shot begins with an establishing shot of the Manhattan skyline with the Brooklyn Bridge in the foreground. The camera then swings around the bridge and heads toward the heart of Brooklyn. The sound through this part of the sequence has been subdued: soft, muffled traffic noises. The editor then cuts to a close-up of an elevated train moving diagonally toward the camera. The sound suddenly overwhelms us as the fast-moving train approaches, and we suddenly feel ourselves in the city. The next shot is taken from a camera rotated 180 degrees to pick up the train as it speeds away. The following shot focuses on a detail that has no logical connection to the train: a close-up of a shoe display in a store window. At this point, the outside/in portion of the sequence ends and the inside/out portion begins.

As the strong beat of the *Saturday Night Fever* theme ("Stayin' Alive") starts up, a foot outside the window is placed alongside the displayed shoe. The next shot picks up that foot and its mate walking to the beat down a city sidewalk. Succeeding shots move upward from the feet to show a swinging paint can and the torso and face of the character Tony (John Travolta). Shots in the sequence continue to show Tony's interaction with his environment (turning to look after a pretty girl and finally stopping at a cellar-level pizza joint). To connect our location with the opening outside/in sequence, the editor also includes a quick shot of an elevated train passing during Tony's strut.

▲ 1. ▼ 3.

▲ 2. ▼ 4.

JOHN TRAVOLTA

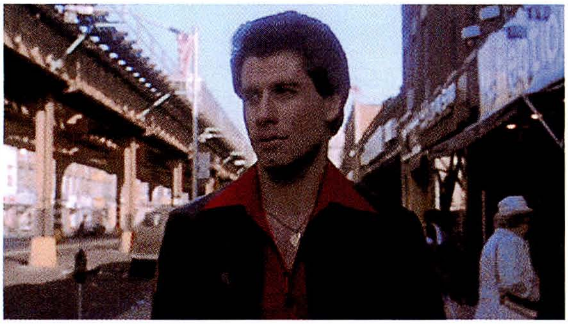


▲ 5. ▼ 7.

▲ 6. ▼ 8.

▼ 9.

▼ 10.



▼ 11.

▼ 12.

ORIGINAL MUSIC BY
BARRY, ROBIN
and MAURICE GIBB

LENNY'S
PIZZA

tempo of the film, its most compelling rhythm, results from the frequency of editorial cuts and the varying duration of shots between cuts. The rhythm established by cuts is unique because cuts divide a film into a number of separate parts without interrupting its continuity and flow. Editorial cuts impart to a film an externally controllable and unique rhythmic quality.

The rhythm established by editorial cutting is such a natural part of the film medium that we are often unaware of cuts within a scene, yet we respond unconsciously to the tempo they create. One reason we remain unaware is that the cuts often duplicate the manner in which we look at things in real life, glancing quickly from one point of attention to another. Our emotional state is often revealed by how quickly our attention shifts. Thus, slow cutting simulates the impressions of a tranquil observer, and quick cutting simulates the impressions of an excited observer. Our responsiveness to this convention of **glancing rhythms** allows the editor to manipulate us, exciting or calming us almost at will.

Although the editor generally alternates one tempo with another throughout the film, the cutting speed of each scene is determined by the content of that scene, so that its rhythm corresponds to the pace of the action, the speed of the dialogue, and the overall emotional tone. Editor Richard Marks describes the difference between action cutting and dramatic cutting:

> [W]ith an action sequence you're cutting on movement. It always gives you justification to cut and create its own rhythms. There's an internal rhythm to a movement. The axiom of action cutting is, never complete an action. Always leave it incomplete so it keeps the forward momentum of the sequence. In dramatic cutting you have to create your own rhythms—how long you stay on a character, how much of a beat you give a character before you cut to someone else, who you play on camera, and who you play off camera. Yet you must try and remain faithful to the internal rhythms of an actor's performance.[6]

The fact that the story, the action, the dialogue, and the visuals all set up different natural rhythms makes editors often think of their jobs in terms of being sensitive to the "music" already playing in the scene. But sometimes that music is unnatural and totally preplanned in story-boarding before the scene is ever shot, as evidenced by Alfred Hitchcock's use of musical imagery to describe yet another editing rhythm: the carefully thought-out juxtaposition of long shot with close-up, creating a dramatic change in image size:

> It is very, very essential that you know ahead of time something of the orchestration: in other words, image size. What I mean by orchestration is, take the close-up, well, that's like in music: the brass sounding brassy, loud sound before you need it. Sometimes you see film cut such that the close-up comes in early, and by the time you really need it, it has lost its effect because you've used it already.
>
> Now I'll give you an example of where a juxtaposition of the image size is also very important. For example, one of the biggest effects in *Psycho* was where the

> detective went up the stairs. The picture was designed to create fear in an audience, and in the anticipation of it, it is all there. Here is the shot of the detective, simple shot going up the stairs, he reaches the top stair, the next cut is the camera as high as it can go, it was on the ceiling, you see the figure run out, raised knife, it comes down, bang, the biggest head you can put on the screen. But that big head has no impact unless the previous shot had been so far away.
>
> So that is just where your orchestration comes in, where you design the set-up. That's why you can't just guess these things on the set.[7]

EXPANSION AND COMPRESSION OF TIME

Director Elia Kazan, making the transition from stage to film, was enthusiastic about cinematic techniques for manipulating time:

> [F]ilm time is different from stage time. One of the most important techniques a film director has is the ability to stretch a moment for emphasis. On a theatre stage, true time goes its normal course; it's the same on stage as it is in the audience. But in a film we have movie time, a false time. Climaxes in life go clickety-click and they're over. When a film director comes to a crucially important moment, he can stretch it, go from one close-up to another, then to people who are dramatically involved or concerned watching the action, so back and forth to everyone connected with what is happening. In this way time is stretched for dramatic emphasis. Other parts of the film can be slipped over swiftly so that they are given no more time on the screen than their dramatic value justifies. Film time then becomes faster than real time. A film director can choose to leap into the "meat" of a scene or from high moment to high moment, leaving out what, in his opinion, is not worth the attention of the audience. Entrances and exits—unless they're freighted with dramatic substance—mean nothing. It doesn't matter how the character got there. He's there! So cut to the heart of the scene.[8]

Skillful editing can greatly expand our normal sense of time, through intercutting a normal action sequence with a series of related details. Take, for example, the brief action of a man walking up a flight of stairs. By simply alternating a full shot of the man walking up the stairs with detailed shots of the man's feet, the editor expands the scene and sense of time of the action. If close-ups of the man's face and his hand gripping the rail are added, our feeling of the time the action takes is expanded even more.

By using **flash cuts,** short machine-gun bursts of images sandwiched together, the editor can compress an hour's action into a few seconds. For example, by choosing representative actions out of the daily routine of a factory worker, the editor can, in a minute or two, suggest an entire eight-hour shift. By overlapping so that the first part of each shot is superimposed over the last part of the preceding shot, the editor can achieve a fluid compression of time.

Another editorial technique used to compress time is the **jump cut,** which eliminates a strip of insignificant or unnecessary action from a continuous shot. For example, a continuous shot in a western follows the movement of the sheriff as he walks slowly across the street, from left to right, from his office to the saloon. To pick up the pace, the editor may cut out the section of film that shows the sheriff crossing the street and jump-cut from the point at which he steps into the street to his arrival at the sidewalk on the other side. A jump cut speeds up the action by not showing a portion of the action.

The term *jump cut* also refers to a disconcerting joining of two shots that do not match in action and continuity. As Ephraim Katz observes in *The Film Encyclopedia*, "Traditionally, such breaks in continuity and smooth transition have been considered intolerable, but some modern filmmakers employ jump cuts freely and deliberately."[9] Indeed, a film's wit can be sharpened considerably by its concerted use of the device. In *Cabaret*, for instance, director Bob Fosse and editor David Bretherton frequently utilize the jump cut for startling effects that are both humorous and affecting. Near the end of the film, Fritz (Fritz Wepper), the young gigolo, confesses to Brian (Michael York) that he is, in fact, a Jew, although he has lied about this element of his identity to the Jewish woman he loves, Natalia Landauer (Marisa Berenson). At the moment of this revelation, he despairs of her ever consenting to marry him. But soon we see Fritz standing at Natalia's front door, exclaiming loudly, "I am a Jew!" And a jump cut takes us immediately to the wedding ceremony.

One of the most effective techniques of editorial cutting is the use of **parallel cuts** (or *intercutting*), quickly alternating back and forth between two actions taking place at separate locations. Parallel cutting creates the impression that the two actions are occurring simultaneously. It can be a powerful suspense-building device. Such modern films as *Cabaret*, *The Godfather* (Figure 6.3), and *Mrs. Dalloway* use parallel cutting in a brilliant fashion, ironically uniting darkness and jollity, violence and piety, colorful chaos and authoritarian order.

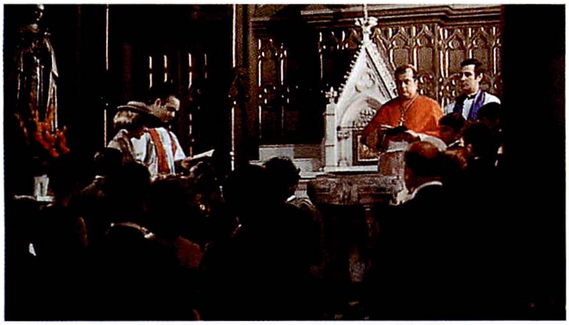
An entirely different kind of time compression is achieved by cutting to brief flashbacks or memory images. This technique merges past and present into the same stream and often helps us understand a character. The motivation of Peter Fonda's beekeeper/grandfather character in *Ulee's Gold*, for example, is slowly revealed through such flashbacks.

Filmakers also use four other key editing techniques to expand or compress time: slow motion, the freeze frame, the thawed frame, and stills.

SLOW MOTION

If the action on the screen is to seem normal and realistic, film must move through the camera at the same rate at which it will be projected, generally twenty-four frames per second. However, if a scene is filmed at greater-than-normal speed

FIGURE 6.3 Editing Sequence—The Ironic Montage (see page 215) In this powerful segment from *The Godfather,* Francis Ford Coppola intercuts a sequence showing Michael Corleone (Al Pacino) serving as godfather to the infant son of his sister Connie (Talia Shire) with a montage showing the brutal murders of rival mob leaders ordered by Michael. The soft, golden, spiritual light of the church casts a warm glow over the baptism. The priest intones the ceremony in Latin accompanied by organ music, his voice and the organ droning on as scenes of murder are interspersed with shots from the baptism. The irony of the sequence is intensified by Michael's affirmation (in English) of his belief in God and his pledge, during the most violent moments of the montage, "to renounce Satan and all his works." When the ceremony is completed, Michael immediately orders the murder of Carlo, the father of the just-baptized infant. By juxtaposing these very opposite actions, Coppola ironically underscores Michael's heartlessness as he steps into his new role as the true godfather of the Corleone family.

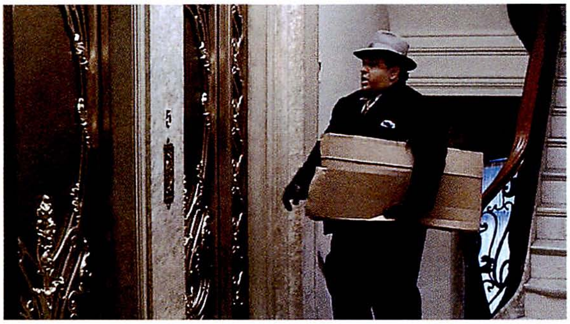


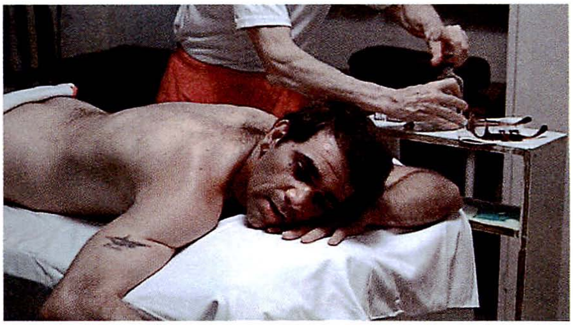
▲ 1.

▲ 2.

▼ 3.

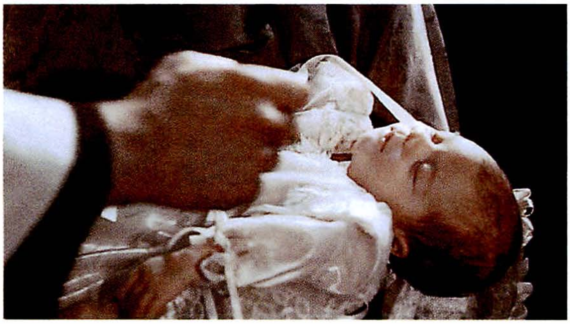
▼ 4.

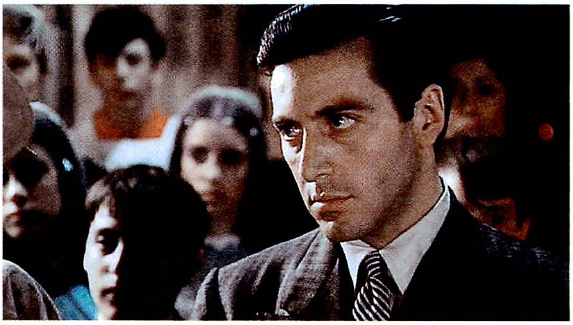




▲ 5. ▼ 7.

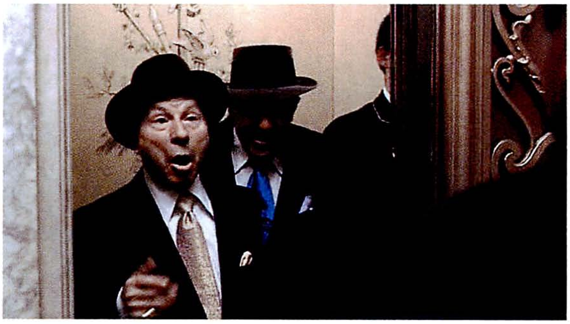
▲ 6. ▼ 8.

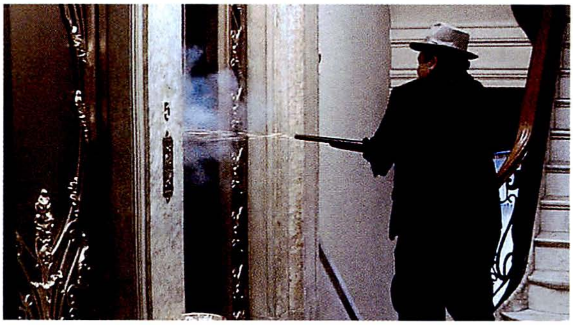




▼ 9.

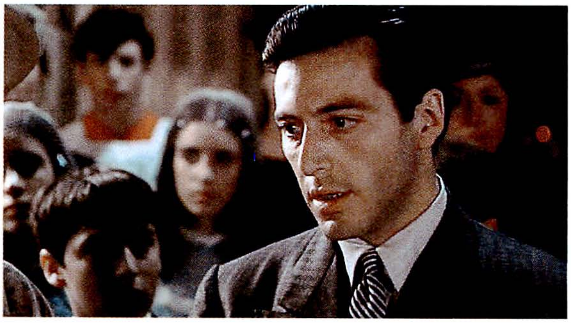
▼ 10.

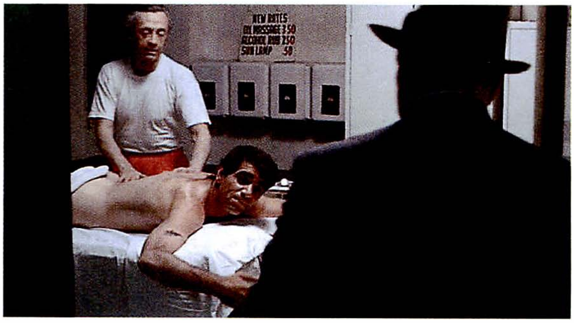


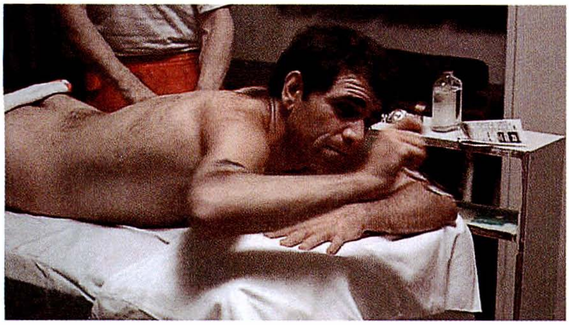


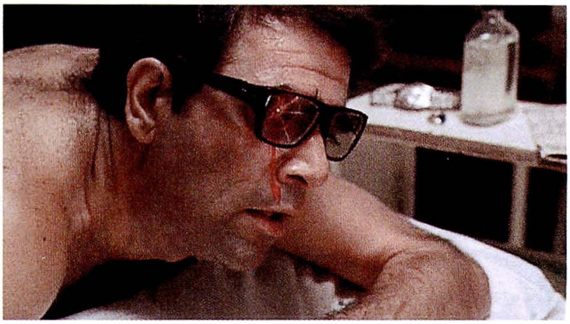
▼ 11.

▼ 12.



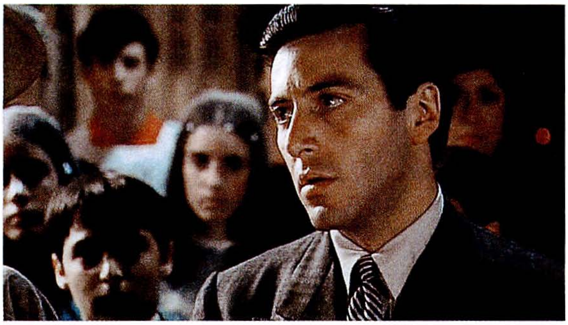


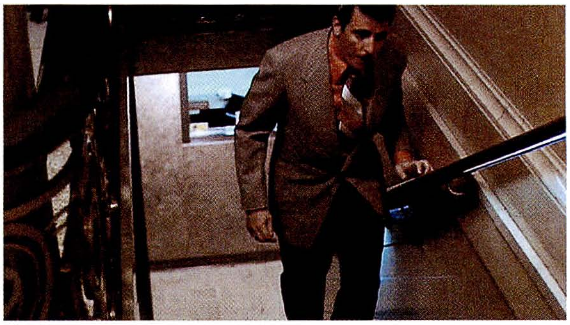




▲ 13. ▼ 15.

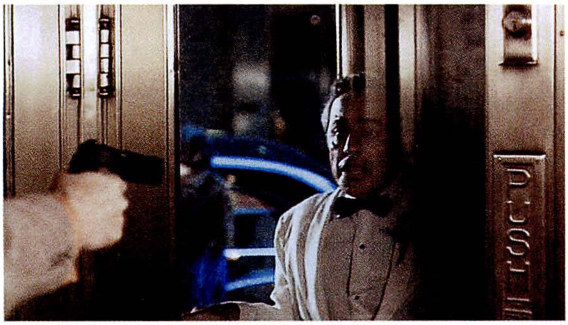
▲ 14. ▼ 16.

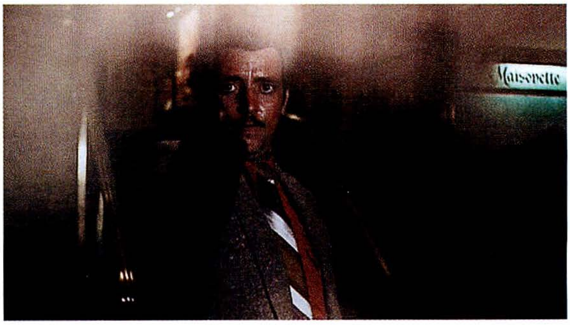




▼ 17.

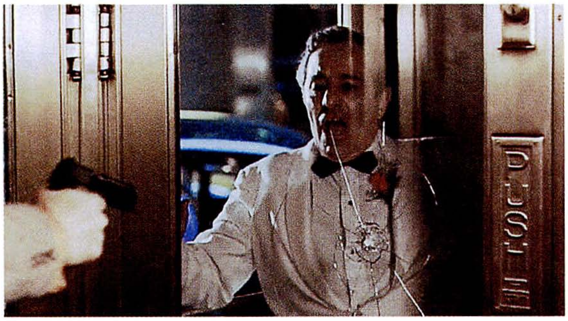
▼ 18.

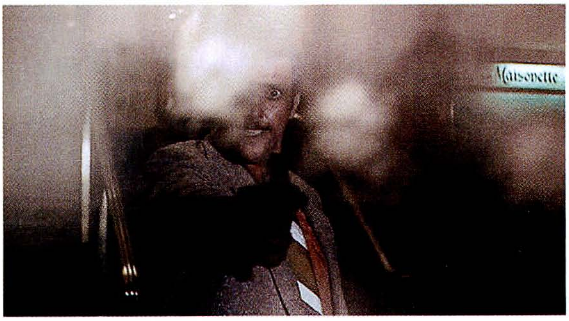


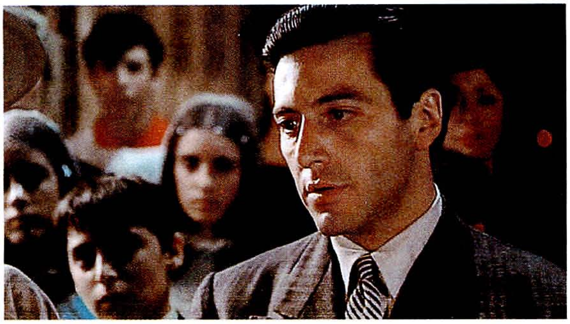

Maisonette

▼ 19.

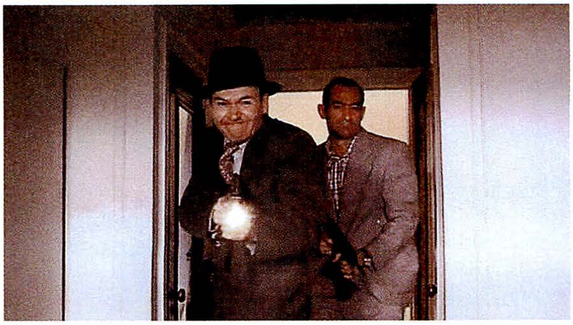
▼ 20.



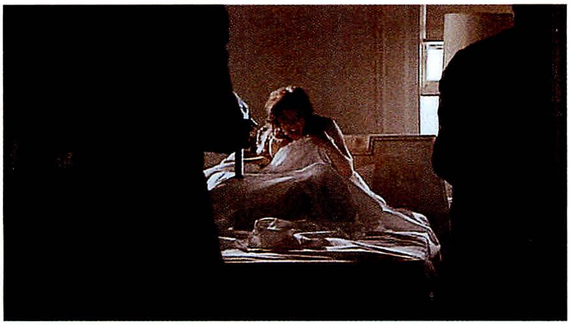

Maisonette



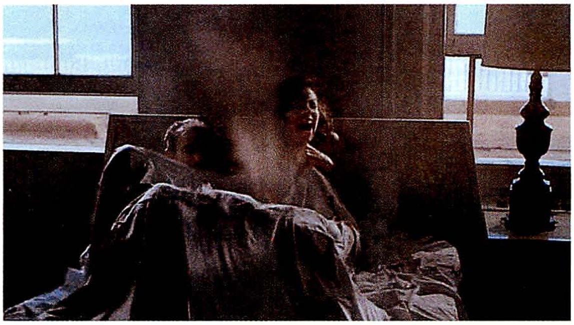
▲ 21. ▼ 23.



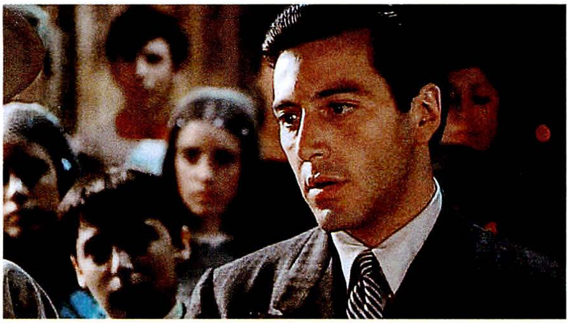
▲ 22. ▼ 24.



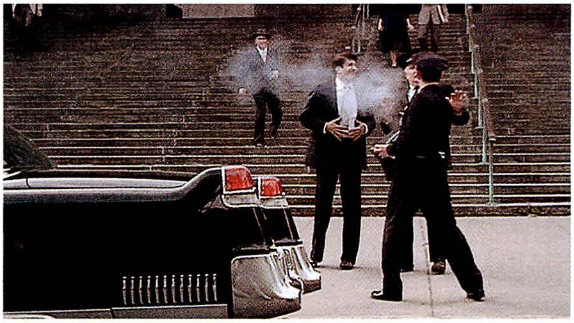
▼ 25.



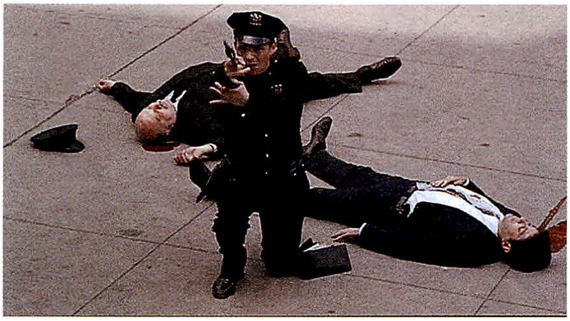
▼ 26.

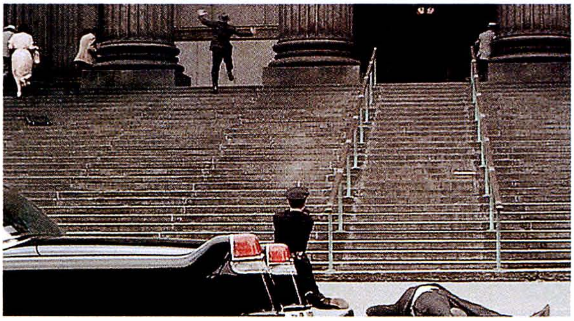


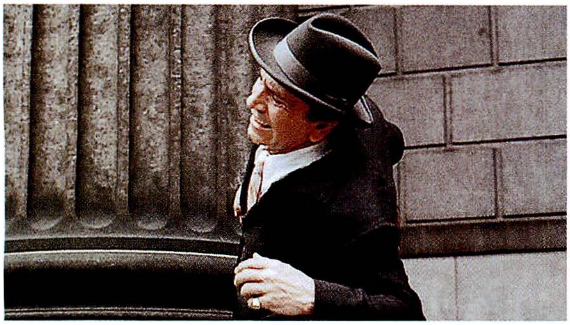
▼ 27.

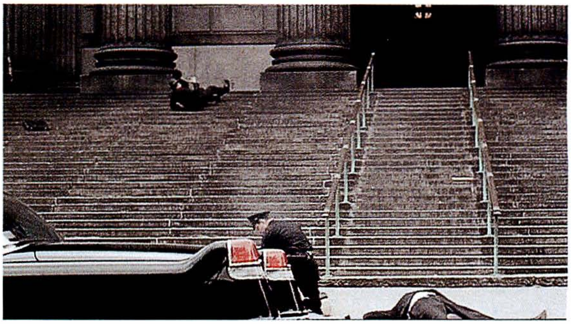


▼ 28.



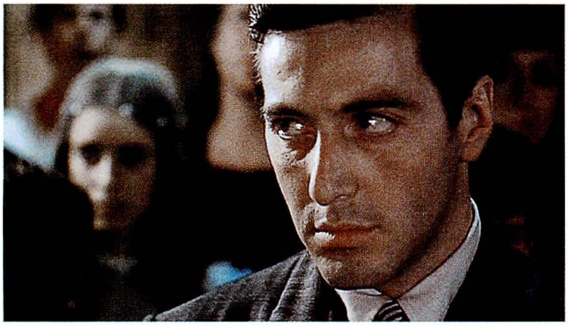


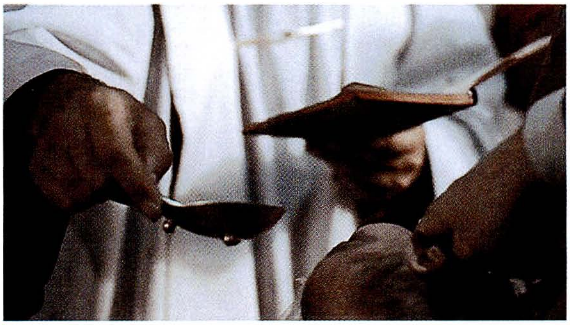




▲ 29. ▼ 31.

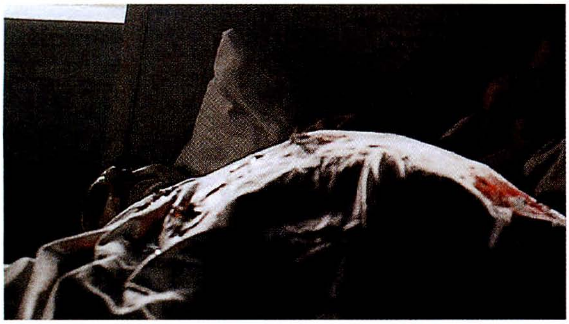
▲ 30. ▼ 32.

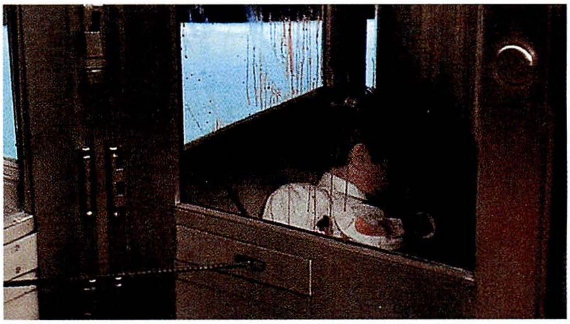




▼ 33.

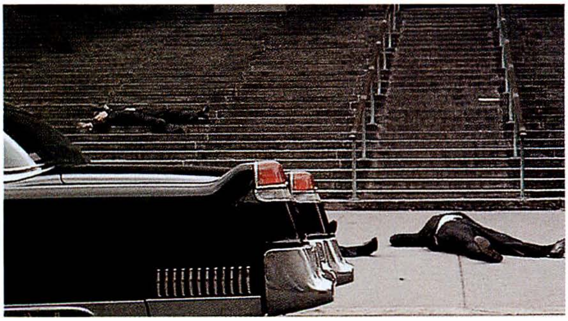
▼ 34.

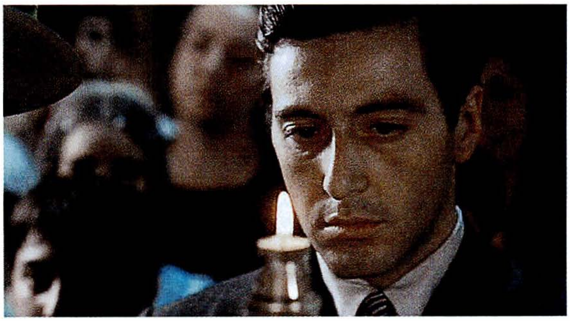


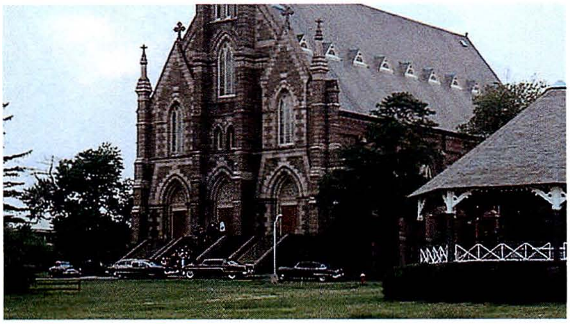


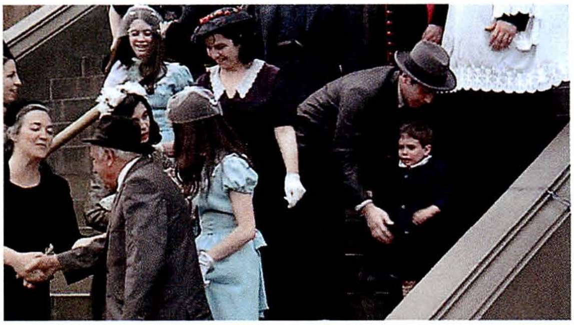
▼ 35.

▼ 36.



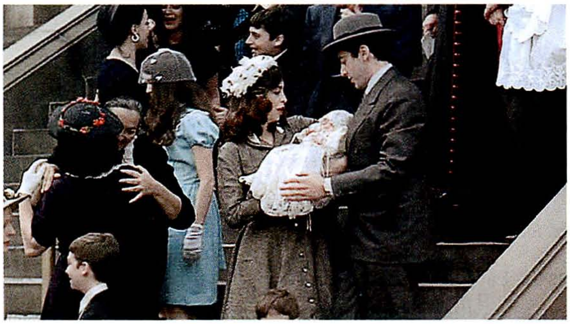


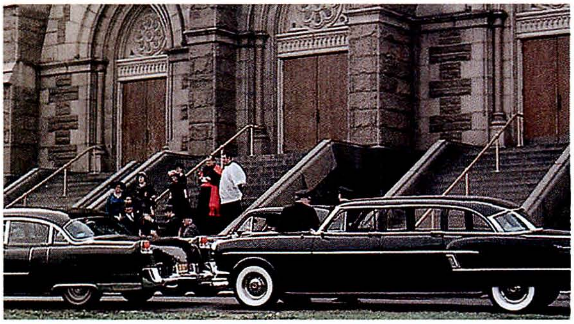




▲ 37. ▼ 39.

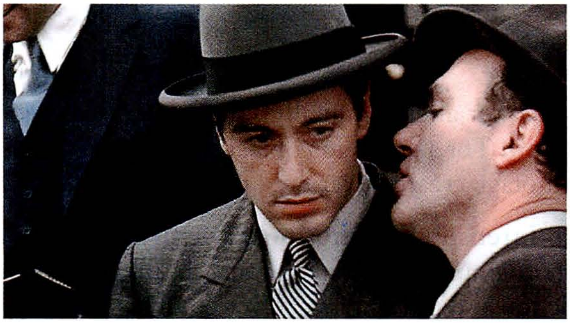
▲ 38. ▼ 40.

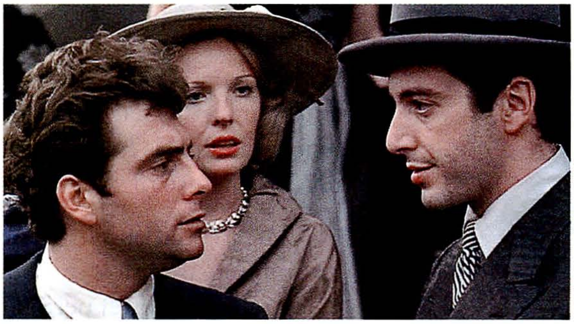




▼ 41.

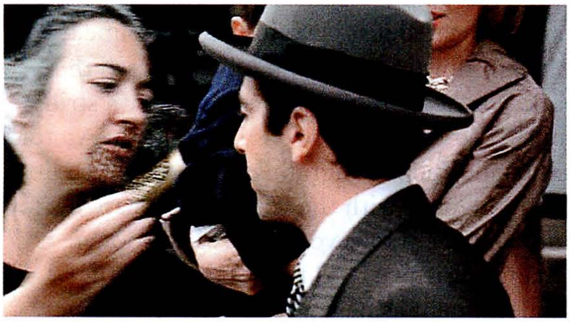
▼ 42.

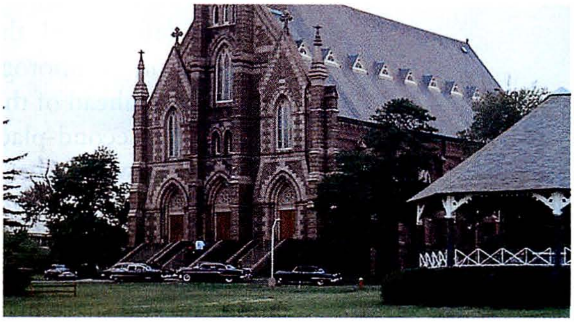




▼ 43.

▼ 44.





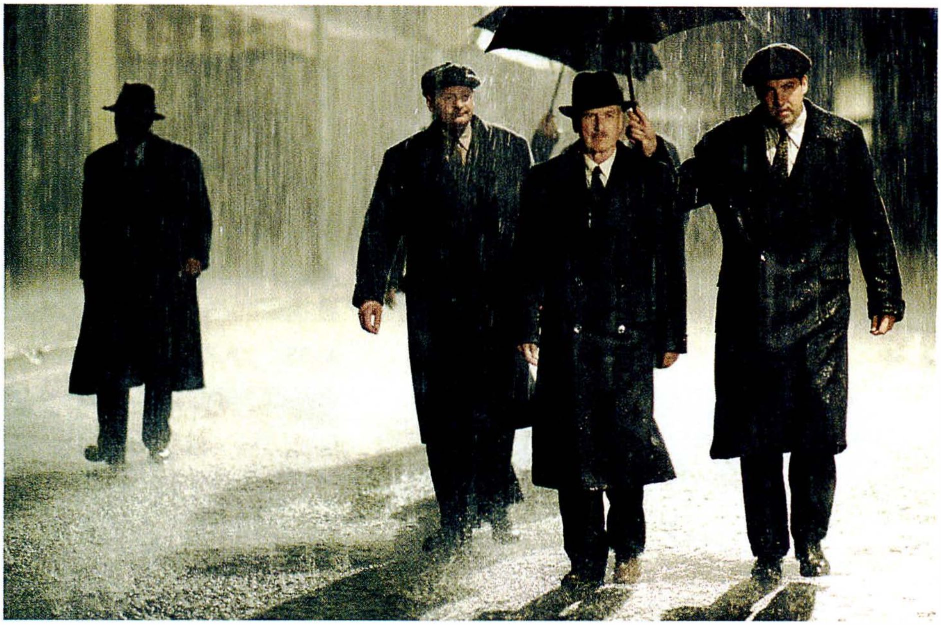


FIGURE 6.4 Slow-Motion Showcase Late in *Road to Perdition,* the urbane gangster played by Paul Newman walks in heavy rain with his henchmen to a crucial shoot-out scene that is memorably photographed in extensive slow motion. The effect here paradoxically emphasizes both the violence itself and the wrenching emotions felt by some of the participants.

and then projected at normal speed (or altered digitally), the action is slowed. This technique is called **slow motion.** (For a discussion of **fast motion,** see Chapter 5.) The use of slow-motion footage creates a variety of effects (Figure 6.4).

1. **To Stretch the Moment to Intensify Its Emotional Quality.** A common goal of slow-motion photography is to concentrate our attention on a relatively brief period of action and intensify whatever emotion we associate with it by stretching out that fragment of time. Ironically, the same footage could be used to make us savor the thrill of victory or suffer the agony of defeat. With the camera located just beyond the finish line, two runners could be photographed in slow motion as they run toward the camera, well ahead of the pack. The winner breaks the tape only a stride ahead of the second-place finisher. If the music swells into a joyous victory theme as the winner breaks the tape and is congratulated at the finish line (still in slow motion), we tend to identify with the winner; we share his joy and savor each handshake and embrace. However, if the same footage is accompanied by slow, discordant music, we tend to identify with the runner-up and share his disappointment as he congratulates the winner and turns to walk away. In *Chariots of Fire* both kinds of moments are

stretched by slow motion, and both victories and defeats are further intensified by slow-motion replays of parts of each race.

In the suicide scene in *Dead Poets Society*, director Peter Weir uses ethereal images, a ghostly slow motion, and an absence of sound as Neil ritualistically prepares himself for death. We do not see him shoot himself or hear the shot. But slow motion has intensified the moment so that we know something horrible is going to happen. Then, as we see the father running in slow motion to find the body, we hope against hope that it hasn't happened, but we know that it has.

Another almost unbearable stretching of the moment occurs in *The Dollmaker*, as Gertie Nevels (Jane Fonda) desperately tries to save her daughter from being run over by a slowly moving train. The slow motion intensifies Gertie's anguish and her helplessness as she runs toward the child but fails to reach her in time.

2. **To Exaggerate Effort, Fatigue, and Frustration.** Slow motion effectively conveys a subjective state by exaggerating a character's physical effort, fatigue, or frustration. Many of us have experienced slow-motion dreams in which our feet become leaden when we're trying to escape danger or catch some fleeting object of desire. So we identify with characters who are putting forth tremendous physical effort or experiencing fatigue or even general physical frustration. The action, music, and sound all help to trigger the proper feeling; slow-motion sound is particularly effective (see "Slow-Motion Sound" in Chapter 8).

   In *Chariots of Fire*, Eric Liddell (the Scotsman) is bumped off the track and falls into the grass infield. His fall and the time-consuming effort of getting to his feet to begin running again are exaggerated by slow motion. A similar effect is created in *Bang the Drum Slowly* as the terminally ill catcher Bruce (Robert De Niro) circles under a high pop-up. Slow-motion photography combined with blurred sound makes a relatively simple act seem tremendously difficult, awkward, and tiring.

3. **To Suggest Superhuman Speed and Power.** The most ironic use of slow motion is to suggest superhuman speed and power. Fast motion (see Chapter 5) would seem the more likely technique to suggest speed; however, the herky-jerky movements created by fast motion are comical and even grotesque. Humans moving in fast motion look like insects. Human beings photographed in slow motion look serious, poetic, larger than life. Slow motion suggesting superhuman capabilities is used effectively in films like *Chariots of Fire*, *Superman*, and *Spider-Man*.

4. **To Emphasize the Grace of Physical Action.** Even when the illusion of superhuman speed and power is not called for, slow motion can be used to impart grace and beauty to almost any human or animal movement, especially rapid movement. In *Bang the Drum Slowly* this poetry-in-motion

technique is used to enhance Arthur's (Michael Moriarty) pitching, creating the smooth, graceful, seemingly effortless motion of a Major League pitcher.

5. **To Suggest the Passage of Time.** When a series of slow-motion shots are combined in such a way that each shot slowly dissolves into the next, we get the impression that a relatively long period of time is passing. In *Bang the Drum Slowly*, slow-motion shots of unrelated baseball action are joined, compressing into a few choice seconds on the screen the feeling of a long, slow baseball season.
6. **To Create a Sharp Contrast With Normal Motion.** Slow motion can be used to stretch time and build tension before the start of filming at a normal speed. In *Chariots of Fire*, the Olympic runners are pictured in slow motion as they walk into the stadium to prepare for their event. The anticipation of the race is increased as the runners remove outer garments, go through warm-up exercises, dig their starting holes in the dirt track, and settle into their starting positions. Then the tension and nervousness of preparing for the event are released suddenly as the starting gun sounds and the runners explode off their marks in regular film speed. A sharp contrast is created between the tension of waiting and preparing for a big event and the event itself.

THE FREEZE FRAME, THE THAWED FRAME, AND STILLS

The freeze frame, the thawed frame, and stills provide a sharp contrast to a film's dynamic motion and give the filmmaker powerful ways to convey a sense of ending, a sense of beginning, and transitions. Each technique creates a special emphasis that forces us to think about the significance of what we are seeing. Of course, these techniques, if not used sparingly—for special moments only—quickly lose their impact.

The Freeze Frame

For **freeze frame** effect, a single frame is reprinted so many times on the film strip that when the film is shown, the motion seems to stop and the image on the screen remains still, as though the projector had stopped or the image had been frozen. The sudden appearance of a freeze frame can be stunning. The frozen image draws our attention because it is so shockingly still.

The most common use of the freeze frame is to mark the end of a powerful dramatic sequence (and serve as a transition to the next) or to serve as the ending of the entire film. At the end of a powerful sequence, a freeze frame jolts us, as though life itself has stopped. Frozen, the image on the screen burns itself into our brain and is locked into our memory in a way that moving images seldom are. At the end of a sequence, a freeze frame is similar to the old tableau effect used on the stage, where the actors freeze in their positions for a brief moment before the curtain falls, creating a powerful image to be remembered during the time that elapses between scenes or acts.

When used as the movie's final image, the freeze frame can be especially strong. With the ending of the movement on the screen comes a sense of finality. As the motion stops, the freeze frame becomes like a snapshot. We can hold it in our minds and savor its beauty or impact for several seconds before it fades from the screen. It also gives us time to resonate and reflect, to catch up with our emotions, our senses, and our thoughts.

The freeze frame can also be used to convey difficult information with taste, delicacy, and subtlety, either at the film's end or at the end of a scene. In the final scene of *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid*, the images of Butch and the Kid are frozen in their last full moment of vitality as a deafening roar on the soundtrack suggests the fusillade of bullets that takes their lives. As the camera slowly pulls back from their frozen images, we remember them in their last moment of life (Figure 6.5). A similar use occurs in *The World According to Garp*. As Garp's car careens up the dark asphalt toward the driveway accident, the camera zooms quickly in on his son Walt, then freezes him in a close-up that is accompanied by a moment of silence. As the next scene opens, Walt is missing and the other members of the family are seen recuperating.

Freeze frames can also signal a transition. In *Chariots of Fire*, a hurdler is caught and frozen in mid-hurdle. The colored freeze frame fades to black and white, and the camera pulls away to reveal the image to be a picture in a newspaper being read the next day, thus providing a quick time/place transition.

In *Match Point*, director-screenwriter Woody Allen twice uses a very brief sequence that begins with slow motion. First, early in the film, he shows us a tennis ball smoothly sailing into the top of a net, and then he freezes the image as the voice-over narrator poses a philosophical question about the role of luck in life. Much later in the movie, Allen echoes this scene by giving us a very similar one involving another, smaller object crucial to his plot, one that he "freezes" briefly in close-up. Our persistent memory of the first instance helps him to create enormous suspense in the second.

The Thawed Frame

A **thawed frame** begins with a frozen image that thaws and comes to life. This technique can be used at the beginning of a scene or of the whole film, or it can serve a transitional function.

At the film's beginning, the frozen image is often a painting or drawing that slowly changes to a photograph and then thaws into life. In *Citizen Kane*, the thawed frame is a transitional device. Kane and one of his friends are seen looking through the front window of a rival newspaper, at a group picture of the

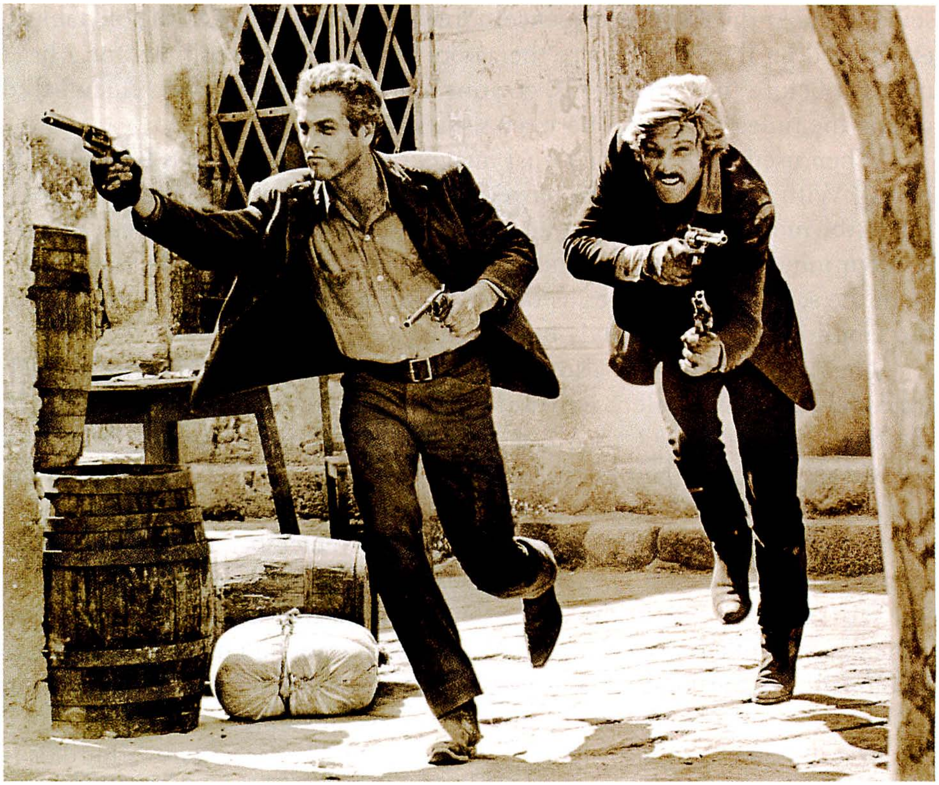


FIGURE 6.5 The Freeze-Frame Ending Hopelessly outnumbered and totally surrounded by Bolivian soldiers, Butch (Paul Newman) and the Kid (Robert Redford) leave the safety of their barricade and come out shooting. *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid* ends at this point on a freeze frame of the image shown above, as a deafening roar on the soundtrack suggests a fusillade of bullets.

paper's staff. The camera moves in for a close-up, so we see only the picture. Then there is a flash of light and the group members start to move, revealing that the flash of light was made by a photographer taking a new group picture of the same people, who now work for Kane.

Stills

Stills are photographs in which the image itself does not move. A sense of motion occurs as the camera pulls in or backs off from them or moves over them. When several stills are used in sequence, each still usually dissolves slowly into the next, creating the impression of information slowly unfolding or being remembered. In *Summer of '42*, a montage of stills under the credits opens the film, creating the impression of snapshots from the narrator's memory. In *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid*, sepia-tone stills are combined in a "Happy Times in New York City" montage. Another striking example of the use of still photography is in Chris Marker's celebrated short film, *La Jetée*, which served as an inspiration for *Twelve Monkeys*.

CREATIVE JUXTAPOSITION: MONTAGE

Often the editor is called on to communicate creatively within the film. Through unique juxtapositions of images and sounds, editors can convey a specific tone or attitude. Or they may be required to create, through visual and aural images, a **montage**—a series of images and sounds that, without any clear, logical, or sequential pattern, form a visual poem in miniature. The unity of a montage derives from complex internal relationships that we understand instantly and intuitively (see Figure 6.3 on page 204).

In creating a montage, the editor uses visual and aural images as impressionistic shorthand to create a mood, atmosphere, transition in time or place, or a physical or emotional impact. As defined by the great Russian director and film theorist Sergei Eisenstein, a montage is assembled from separate images that provide a "partial representation which in their combination and juxtaposition, shall evoke in the consciousness and feelings of the spectator . . . that same initial general image which originally hovered before the creative artist."[10]

A cinematic montage might be created around images that have universal associations with death and old age. The visual and aural images could be edited as follows:

Shot 1: Close-up of wrinkled faces of aged couple, both in rocking chairs. Their eyes are dim and stare into the distance as the chairs rock slowly back and forth. *Sound:* Creaking of rocking chairs, loud ticking of old grandfather clock.

Shot 2: Slow dissolve to close-up of withered leaves, barely clinging to bare branches, light snow falling, thin layer of snow on the black bare branches. *Sound:* Low moaning wind; grandfather clock continues to tick.

Shot 3: Slow dissolve to seacoast scene. The sun's edge is barely visible on the horizon of the water; then it slips away, leaving a red glow and gradually darkening sky, light visibly fading. *Sound:* Soft rhythm of waves washing up on shore; grandfather clock continues ticking in the background.

Shot 4: Slow dissolve from red glow in sky to a glowing bed of coals in a fireplace. A few feeble fingers of flame flicker and then sputter and die. The glowing coals, as if fanned by a slight breeze, glow brighter and then grow dimmer and dimmer. *Sound:* Continued sound link of ticking grandfather clock.

Shot 5: Return to same scene as shot 1, close-up of wrinkled faces of aged couple rocking in their rocking chairs. *Sound:* Creaking chairs and the continuous tick of grandfather clock; gradual fade to black.

Montage is an especially effective technique when the director desires to compress a great deal of meaning into a very brief segment (for a contrasting approach, see ***mise-en-scène*** in the Glossary). In *The Grapes of Wrath*, John Ford uses a montage that might be titled "The Joads' Journey Through Oklahoma" and another that might be called "Invasion of the Big Cats" (tractors) (Figure 6.6). Effective montages appear in *Patton* (the "Winter Night Battle" montage), in *Rocky* (the "Training for the Big Fight" montage), in *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington* (the "Patriotic Washington Tour" montage), in *Waking Ned Devine* (the "Informing the Villagers" montage), and in *EDtv* (the various "Watching Ed on TV Throughout America" montages).

ANALYZING EDITING

1. How does the editing effectively guide our thoughts, associations, and emotional responses from one image to another so that smooth continuity and coherence are achieved?
2. Is the editing smooth, natural, and unobtrusive, or is it tricky and self-conscious? How much does the editor communicate through creative juxtapositions—ironic transitions, montages, and the like—and how effective is this communication?
3. What is the effect of editorial cutting and transitions on the pace of the film as a whole?
4. How does the cutting speed (which determines the average duration of each shot) correspond to the emotional tone of the scene involved?
5. What segments of the film seem overly long or boring? Which parts of these segments could be cut without altering the total effect? Where are additional shots necessary to make the film completely coherent?

VIDEO EXERCISES

Instructions for locating specific sequences are given on page 86.

1. **Editing.** Watch the famous shower sequence from *Psycho* (1960) [2825 to 2995; 0:46:00 to 0:49:23] and the "final ambush" sequence from *Bonnie and Clyde* [5215 to end; 1:46:00 to end]. In which sequence is your involvement or concern greatest? Why? In which sequence do you feel real physical danger? What causes the difference?

   After Clyde gets out of the car, he and Bonnie do not exchange words, but they do communicate their thoughts and feelings, both to each other and to the audience. What do they say with their faces and body language? (Try to "caption" as many shots as possible.) How does the editing make the meaning of their expressions clear?

FIGURE 6.6 Editing Sequence—Invasion of the Big Cats From *The Grapes of Wrath* To dramatize the helplessness of the Okies in this sequence from *The Grapes of Wrath,* John Ford employs a dynamic flashback montage suggesting overwhelming power. To introduce the montage, Tom Joad (Henry Fonda) asks Muley Graves to explain why he is hiding out in the Joad house:

"What happened?"

"They come. . . . They come and pushed me off. They come with the cats."

"The what?"

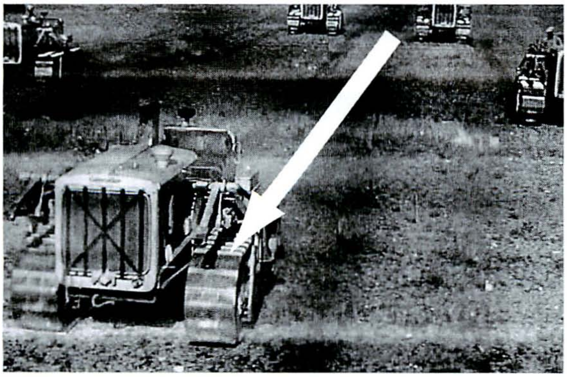
"The cats. . . . The Caterpillar tractors."

The montage that follows consists of a series of nine quick shots of earth-moving equipment, mostly heavy Caterpillar tractors. Each shot in the montage quickly dissolves into the next, and, as indicated by the arrows on the photos, the lines of force or movement are constantly varied, creating the impression that we are under attack from every direction. Throughout the montage, a constant close-up moving image of a heavy metal tractor tread is superimposed over the tractor images, giving us the feeling that we are being run over by something. The montage ends with a Caterpillar tractor actually rolling over the camera.

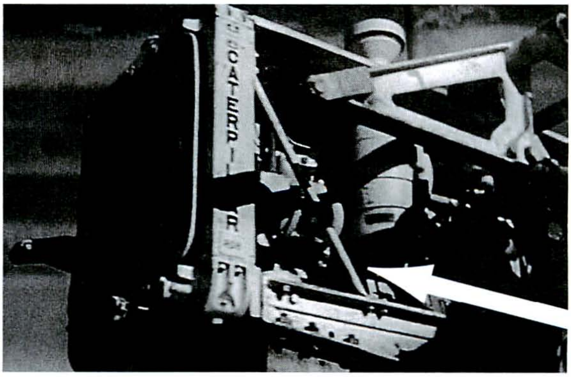
As the montage ends, Muley sums up the result of this invasion:

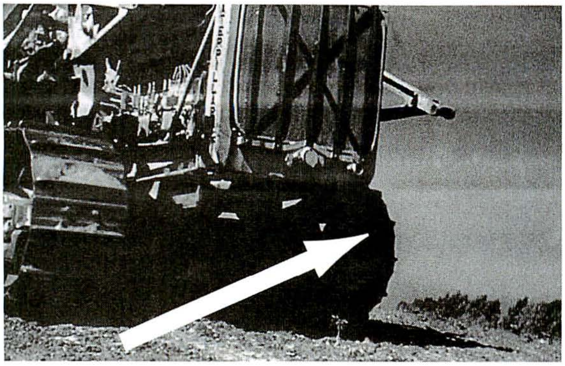
"And for every one of 'em, there was ten . . . fifteen families throwed right out of their homes. A hundred folks. . . . And no place to live but on the road."

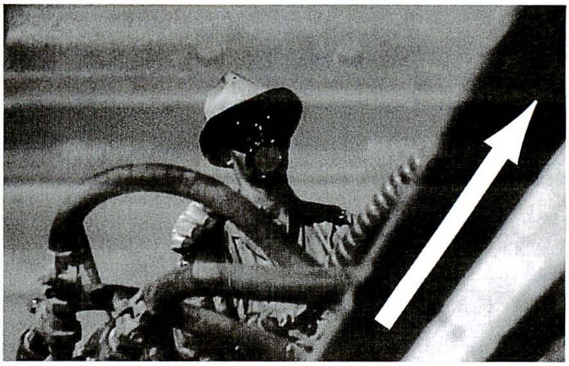
▲ 1. ▼ 3.



▲ 2. ▼ 4.

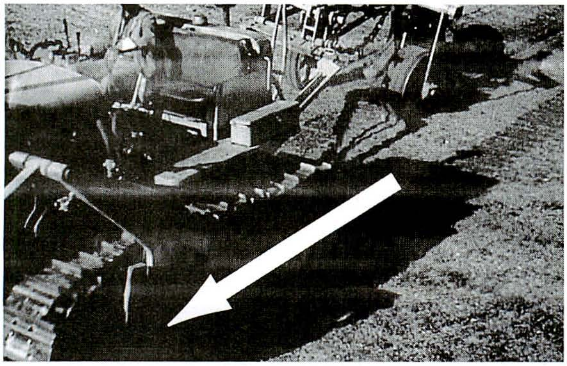


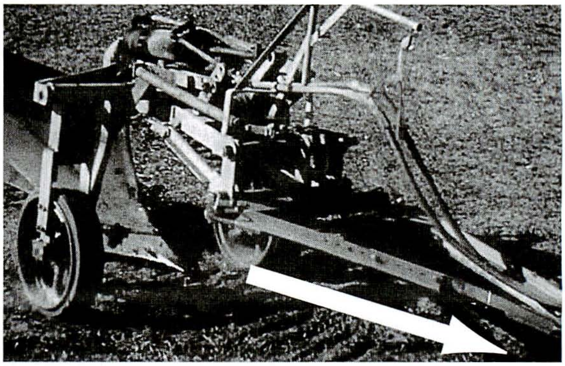




▲ 5. ▼ 7.

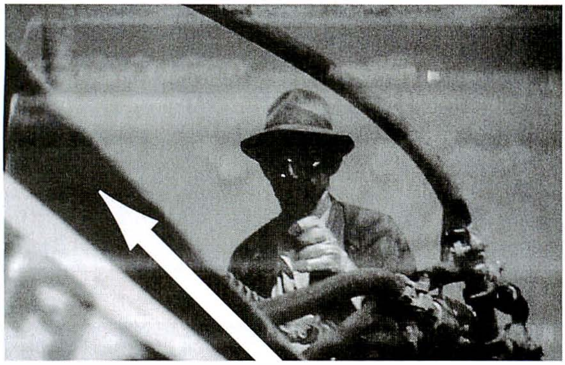
▲ 6. ▼ 8.

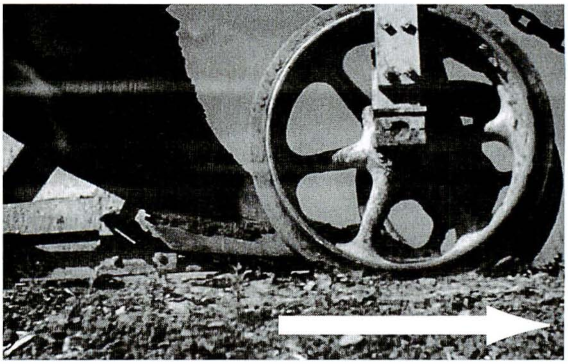




▼ 9.

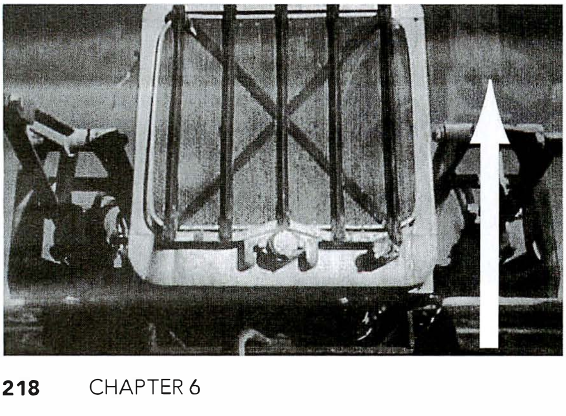
▼ 10.

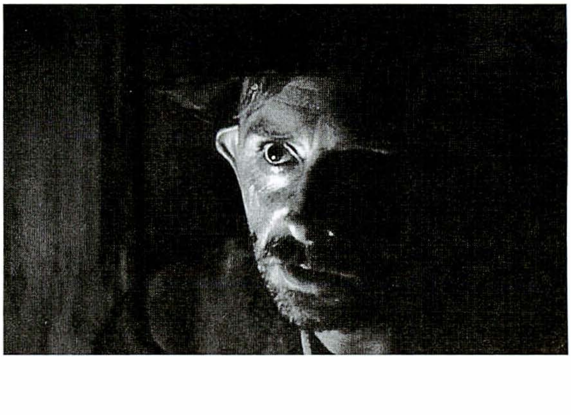




▼ 11.

▼ 12.





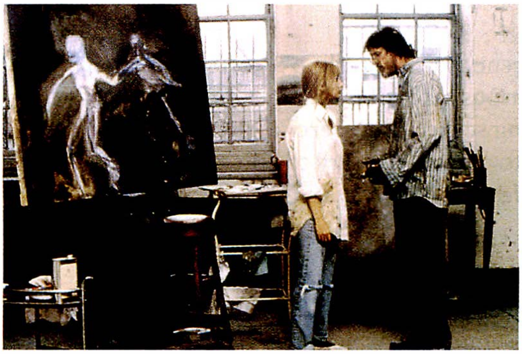
Turn the sound off and watch both sequences again. Which sequence do you think the sound contributes the most to? Why?

What is the purpose of the camera's moving behind the car for the final seconds? Why doesn't the camera remain between the bodies of Bonnie and Clyde so we can view them with Malcolm (Dub Taylor) and the ambush party?

2. **Montage.** Examine each of these examples of montage:
   a. From *The Grapes of Wrath:* "Invasion of the Big Cats" [1170 to 1250; 0:15:28 to 0:16:45] and "The Joads' Journey Through Oklahoma" [2350 to 2435; 0:36:16 to 0:37:53]
   b. From *Patton:* "Winter Night Battle" [Part II: 3480 to 3650; 0:48:38 to 0:50:54]
   c. From *Rocky:* "Training for the Big Fight" [4600 to 4700; 1:30:00 to 1:33:05]
   d. From *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington:* "Patriotic Washington Tour" [1475 to 1680; 0:19:50 to 0:23:07]

   What is the purpose of each montage? How are sound, dialogue, voice-over narration, superimposed images, and music used to help tie the images together?

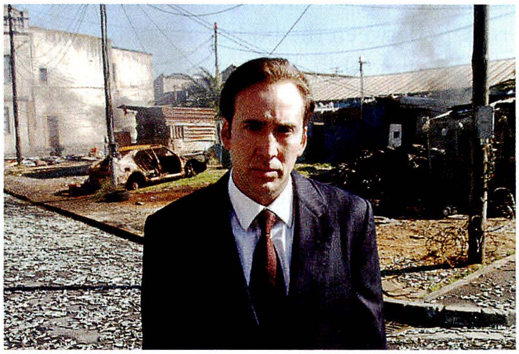
MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE I



The movie *New York Stories* (1989) consists of three separate (and, overall, critically underrated) short films by three of America's premier directors: Martin Scorsese, Francis Ford Coppola, and Woody Allen. The first and longest (:45) of the sections is Scorsese's "Life Lessons," which focuses on a passionate artist played by Nick Nolte, with Rosanna Arquette as his former assistant and erstwhile lover. The film was edited by Scorsese's creative collaborator Thelma Schoonmaker, with whom he had worked as an editor himself on *Woodstock* (1970). In fact, she has gained celebrity and enormous respect in the movie industry while acting as primary editor for most of his features, including *Raging Bull* (1980), *GoodFellas* (1990), *Gangs of New York* (2002), and *The Aviator* (2004).

Acquire a videocassette or DVD of this film and watch how these two longtime colleagues and friends have orchestrated the movement in "Life Lessons." Notice how Schoonmaker, as always, has taken full, subtle advantage of Scorsese's famous constantly moving camera techniques—and how editor and director have also skillfully incorporated into this film some of the oldest and simplest editing devices discussed in this chapter.

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE II



The title sequence of Andrew Niccol's *Lord of War* is in fact a brilliantly constructed 5-minute discrete film. Its ending includes an act of singular violence that horrifies the viewer—but the mini-movie itself is nevertheless fascinating for its craft, and it works skillfully to foreshadow sharp, dark themes in the movie. As a student of film, examine this sequence carefully, repeatedly. Try to identify the methods that film editor Zach Staenberg has used to sustain the cinematic illusion of continuity or "smoothness" in what is clearly a progression of visual clips.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

The Art of Editing

Made:

One feature on this DVD—the "Scene Edit Workshop"—offers a student the opportunity to select among various takes of four shots, integrate these choices, and then watch the resulting scene. The exercise gives a good sense of the infinite patience and attention to detail necessary to edit film competently. (A similar feature appears on the *Men in Black [Deluxe Edition]* DVD.)

Requiem for a Dream:

The disc includes a Sundance Channel "Anatomy of a Scene" in which director Darren Aronofsky describes how he and his filmmaking team created what he calls "hip-hop montages." These assemblages, which manipulate both visual images and meticulously captured sounds (see Chapter 8), describe the obsessive nature of various types of addiction.

The Deep End:

An "Anatomy of a Scene," from the Sundance Channel, also appears on this disc, giving its audience a feel for how the film's directors achieved a degree of Hitchcockian suspense through editing skill.

Moulin Rouge! (2001):

Baz Luhrmann, the director (whose partner, Catherine Martin, won Oscars for both production design and costumes), regretted having to cut in and out of the extravagant dance sequences in this film's theatrical edit. So, when he put together the DVD, he took advantage of the storage capacity of its technology and included, separately, not only the full, uncut dance scenes, but also a multiangle feature that allows the viewer to switch perspectives on the tango, cancan, and coup d'etat.

Hannibal (Special Edition):
Likewise, this set contains "'Anatomy of a Shoot-Out': A Five-Angle Breakdown of the 'Fish Market' Action Scene."

The Big Sleep (1946):
The legendary Humphrey Bogart–Lauren Bacall romance continued on the set of this movie. By the time a "final" edit of the work had already been finished, director Howard Hawks and his studio decided to reshoot some scenes to accentuate Bacall's character—and recut the film to underscore the pair's by-then celebrated chemistry. This DVD says that it "doubles your pleasure" by offering both edits. Notice how, on Side B, in "the less-familiar 1945 prerelease version," the "plot and resolution are more linear in fashion."

FILMS FOR STUDY

Annie Hall (1977)
The Black Dahlia (2006)
Bonnie and Clyde (1967)
Cabaret (1972)
Citizen Kane (1941)
Cold Mountain (2003)
The Constant Gardener (2005)
Dressed to Kill (1980)
Gangs of New York (2002)
The Godfather Part II (1974)
Grizzly Man (2005)
Hollywoodland (2006)
The Illusionist (2006)
Jaws (1975)
JFK (1991)
Last Days (2005)
Little Miss Sunshine (2006)
Maria Full of Grace (2004)
Mr. & Mrs. Smith (2005)
My Architect (2003)
Mysterious Skin (2004)
Nine Lives (2005)
Notting Hill (1999)
Prospero's Books (1991)
Raging Bull (1980)
Russian Ark (2002)
Talk to Her (2002)
Tarnation (2004)
3-iron (2005)
Where the Truth Lies (2005)

7

COLOR

> *Color is an integral element of a picture. Its use means much more than the mechanical recording of colors which the camera has heretofore blotted out. Just as music flows from movement to movement, color on the screen . . . flowing from sequence to sequence, is really a kind of music.*
>
> —ROBERT EDMOND JONES, STAGE DESIGNER/COLOR CONSULTANT

> *Color holds a powerful position among the elements of film structure. A kind of universal language, it appeals equally to the illiterate and the sophisticated, to the child and the adult. Its function on the screen is both utilitarian and aesthetic. When made relevant to the picture's subject, color offers an immediate resonance that vivifies mood, delineates character, enhances meaning. When structured to further movement from sequence to sequence, color adds a new richness of film expression that immeasurably deepens the total work.*[1]
>
> —LEWIS JACOBS, CRITIC

The added richness and depth that color provides make awareness of color and its effects on the audience essential to perceptive film watching. Although color probably gives us more immediate pleasure than any of the other visual elements, it is also probably more difficult to understand. Human responses to color are not purely visual responses; they are also psychological or even physiological. Some of color's effects on the human mind and body border on the miraculous: Premature babies born with a potentially fatal jaundice do not require a blood transfusion if they are bathed in blue light. Decorating restaurants in red apparently stimulates the appetite and results in increased food consumption. Blue surroundings can significantly lower human blood pressure, pulse, and respiration rates. And violent children relax, become calm, and often fall asleep within minutes when placed in a small room painted bubble-gum pink.

Color attracts and holds our attention; our eyes are more quickly attracted by color than by shape or form. Any reader skimming through a book with color pictures looks at those pictures first and looks at them more often than at pictures in black and white. Advertisers who have run identical ads in full color and in black and white have gotten fifteen times better results from the color ads. Practically every package on the supermarket shelves has at least a touch of red, for red seems to attract attention better than any other color.

Individual responses to color vary, for color is a purely human perception of a visual quality that is distinct from light and shade. Color is simply radiant energy. **Color**—the special quality of light reflected from a given surface—is greatly influenced by subjective factors in the brain. Color not only is seen but is felt emotionally by each viewer and is therefore subject to his or her personal interpretation. The word **hue** is a synonym for *color*.

Value refers to the proportion of light or dark in a color. White is the lightest value perceptible to the human eye, and black is the darkest perceptible value. *Value* is a comparative concept, for we generally compare a colored surface with the normal value of a color—that is, the value at which we expect to find the color represented on a **color wheel** (Figure 7.1). Anything lighter than the normal value is a **tint;** anything darker is a **shade.** Therefore, pink is a tint of red, and maroon is a shade of red.

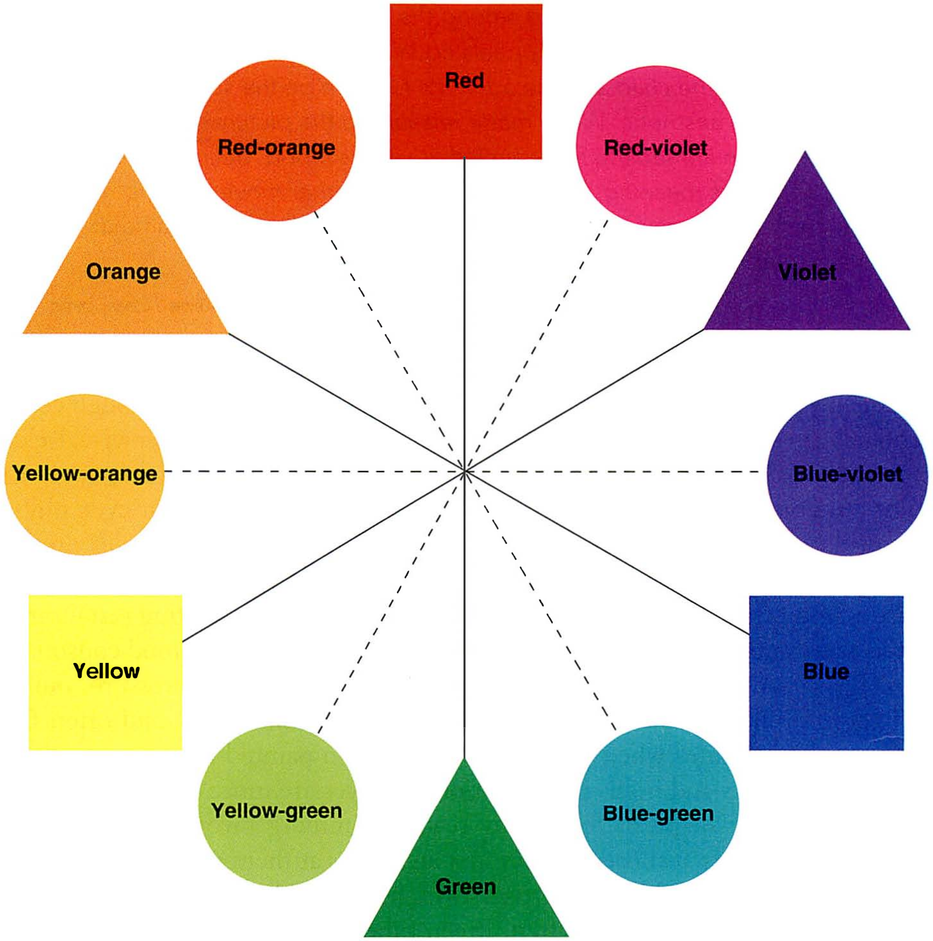


FIGURE 7.1 **An Integrated Color Wheel** Artists use this device to help clarify the relationships between the primary and secondary hues. The squares show the three primary colors (red, blue, and yellow), and the triangles show the three secondary colors (violet, green, and orange). These colors are separated by six intermediate colors, appearing in the circles.

Saturation and *intensity* are other important concepts. In a discussion of color, these terms are interchangeable. A **saturated color** is a hue so unadulterated and strong that it is as pure as it can be. White and black are both saturated colors of maximum intensity. Pure white cannot be made any whiter; pure black cannot be made any blacker. A saturated or high-intensity red is a pure red—what we might call fire-engine red. It can't be made any redder. If a saturated red were made darker (or grayer), it would become a *shade* of red and would be lower in intensity. If a saturated red were made lighter (or whiter), it would become a *tint* of red and would be lower in intensity. When a color is lowered in intensity, it is said to be a **desaturated** or **muted color.** The term *muted* is perhaps easier to understand because of its clear association with music: A mute on a trumpet, for example, makes the sound of the instrument less pure and clear, less bright, and less loud.

The difficulty in analyzing color is compounded by the fact that objects are seldom viewed in an atmosphere totally removed from all external optical influences. There is a clear distinction between **local color** and **atmospheric color** (Figure 7.2). A green leaf pulled off a tree, placed on a white tabletop in a room with white walls and a white floor, and illuminated by a perfectly white light radiates *local* color. A leaf radiates *atmospheric* color when it is viewed on the tree on which it is growing: The leaf appears translucent and yellowish when the sun shines through it; it turns dark green and opaque when a cloud passes over the sun. As the sun sets, the leaf may first appear ruddy and then look almost blue as the sun drops below the horizon. Thus, under normal conditions, we usually see a complex and constantly changing atmospheric color:

> Local color is always submerged in a sea of light and air—in an atmosphere which combines a wide range of color influences. Not only does the sunlight change constantly through the day, but colored objects influence one another. Neighboring colors enhance or subdue one another; colored lights literally pick up reflections from one another; and even the dust particles in the air lend their own color to the objects.[2]

In planning and shooting a modern color film, the director, the cinematographer, the production designer, and the costumer must be constantly aware of such factors if they are to control and manipulate the color to conform to their aesthetic vision.

COLOR IN THE MODERN FILM

With the technology under control and readily available, and with a theater and television audience not only accustomed to but demanding movies in color, it is important to understand how color functions in the modern film: how it affects our experience of a film, how it affects us generally, and what, if any, advantages color has over black and white. Since the 1950s, the color film has increased greatly in subtlety and sophistication, and its potential seems almost unlimited.

Effects of Color on the Viewer

To begin, let's consider certain basic assumptions about the effects of color and the way it communicates—things that profoundly affect the creative choices of the director, the cinematographer, the production designer, and the costumer.

1. **Color Attracts Attention.** The director has several methods of keeping attention focused on the center of interest. Our eye is drawn to large objects, to the object closest to the camera, to the object in the sharpest

DISCOVERING COLOR AT THE MOVIES

Since the beginning of motion picture history, filmmakers and exhibitors have experimented with the use of color. Color was even used in magic-lantern slide shows by hand-painting the slides to be projected. When making that projected picture move finally became possible, it was only natural that attempts were made to color the image as well.

It soon became obvious that hand-coloring the large number of frames required for even a ten-minute film was tedious, painstaking, and expensive. In *Potemkin* (1925), the revolutionary battleship flag was photographed as white because it was intended to be painted red by hand, In fact, in the official print of the film, the flag was colored in red ink, individually in every frame in which it appears, by the hand of the director, Sergei Eisenstein. This limited use of color in an otherwise black-and-white film focused the audience's attention on the symbol of the entire revolution, the color red.

A much more important use of applied color during the era of silent films was **tinting**, coloring the film stock before the image was printed on it. Tinting created a two-color effect: black and whatever color the film had been tinted. Codes or formulas for the use of tinting quickly developed. One of the most common was the use of blue-tinted stock for night scenes. The film stock of the time was too slow to allow the filmmaker to shoot scenes at night or to get a clear image by underexposing daylight footage (later called **day-for-night** shooting). Thus, the blue tinting allowed the filmmaker to indicate that a scene was taking place at night but to film the scene in natural daylight. Because modern copies of the old silent films most often have not reproduced the tinting, we sometimes fail to catch the difference between a day and a night. (On American cable television's *Turner Classic Movies*, these films can now occasionally be viewed in their original form.)

Pioneer director D. W. Griffith, often called the father of American film, used many tinting conventions in *Intolerance* (1916), but because nearly two thousand feet of the three-and-a-half hour release print have been permanently lost, it is difficult to fully understand his use of color in the epic. However, we can get a clear idea of the effectiveness of tinted stock from Kevin Brownlow's restoration of Abel Gance's *Napoleon* (1927). In *Napoleon*, Gance did not stick with a rigid formula. Although he consistently used amber yellow for interiors and blue for night exteriors, he used both sepia and black and white for day exteriors. For separate battle scenes, he employed both amber yellow and red.

Perhaps the most sophisticated use of color in the silent era was in the film that is often called the high point of Griffith's career, *Broken Blossoms* (1919). It is also possibly the first case of a film director attempting to capture a painterly effect on film. Inspired by a series of watercolors of London's Chinatown by English artist George Baker, Griffith wanted to capture a dreamlike ambiance to match those paintings. Hendrik Sartov, Griffith's assistant cameraman, used his special skills in mood lighting and soft focus to create a highly impressionistic film. A watercolor effect was achieved by tinting the entire film in soft pastels. Although Griffith's experimentation with tinting was the most artistic of silent era filmmakers', the practice of tinting was by no means uncommon. By the 1920s, more than 80 percent of all American features were tinted in some fashion by means of chemical baths.

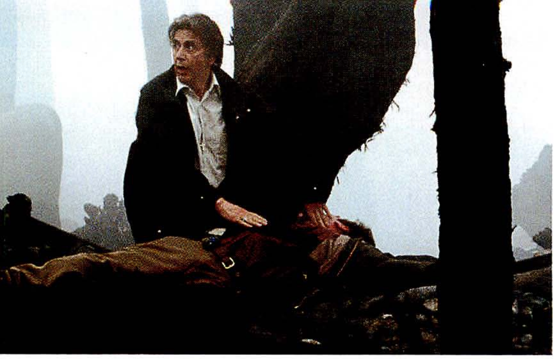
Another technique of applying color to film was **toning**, adding dyes to the film emulsion itself so that the lines and tones of the image were colored. Combining the toning process with tinted film stock yielded a two-color image. For example, by using purple toning on a pink stock, the filmmaker could create a purple sea against a pink sunset. Green toning on yellow stock could suggest a green meadow or a forest against a sunny yellow sky.

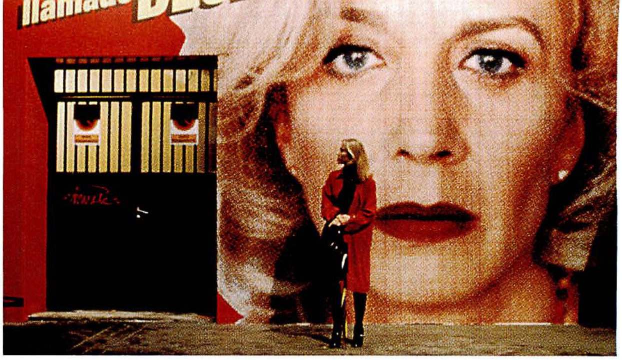
Tinting and toning produced a silent cinema much more expressive than we are able to experience today; but only a few films remain to represent a whole era of experimentation. There are copies of Edwin S. Porter's *The Great Train Robbery* (1903) that have hand-colored costumes, explosions, and gunfire, and some copies of *Intolerance* and Henry King's *Tol'able David* (1921) remain with sequences tinted in orange, green, or blue. Brownlow's restoration of Gance's *Napoleon* and also the King film are available on DVD.

Of films that were both tinted and toned, only random stills survive, and no copies exist of Eisenstein's red flag in *Potemkin* or of the apt "golden touch" applied by Erich von Stroheim in his *Greed* (1925).

The technology needed to capture photographic images in color within the camera was not available until the 1920s. Dr. Herbert Kalmus's two-color Technicolor film was employed for color sequences in blockbusters like *Ben-Hur* (1926) and *Phantom of the Opera* (1925). The process was expensive, costing 30 percent more than a similar black-and-white production, and audiences grew quickly bored or irritated with the poor registry of the colors. Caucasian flesh tones, for example, varied from pink to orange. Several years later, in 1932, the Technicolor Corporation perfected three-color Technicolor film, and color film, still expensive and difficult to work with, gradually came into its own. Although *Becky Sharp* (1935), Rouben Mamoulian's adaptation of William Makepeace Thackeray's novel *Vanity Fair*, was the first feature film to use the process, it was a commercial failure. The most celebrated early successes of Technicolor appeared in *Gone With the Wind* and in parts of *The Wizard of Oz* (both 1939). After its use in a series of striking Hollywood musicals, the color technique (and also that genre) perhaps reached its apex with *Singin' in the Rain* (1952) (above, left).

For decades, the Technicolor Corporation maintained tight controls over the use of its film, requiring that each Technicolor production employ its cameramen, consultants, and equipment. Although the Technicolor dyes tended to create pure or saturated colors more strikingly brilliant than colors in the real world the film was recording, Technicolor's domination of color cinematography continued only until 1952, when the introduction of Eastman Color film made color production simpler and more economical. Since the mid-1970s, Eastman Color has been the preeminent film type. Meanwhile, the Technicolor technology has survived and flourished exclusively in mainland China, where, for example, the filmmaker Zhang Yimou (*Hero*, *The House of Flying Daggers*) produced such richly hued films as *Ju Dou* and *Raise the Red Lantern*. Only in the late 1990s, with the growing concern for film preservation, has there been a revival of interest in Technicolor in the United States. Such movies as *Far From Heaven* (2002) (above, right) and the most recent *Vanity Fair*, Mira Nair's 2004 adaptation, contain Technicolor-like rainbow homages to this indelible color process.





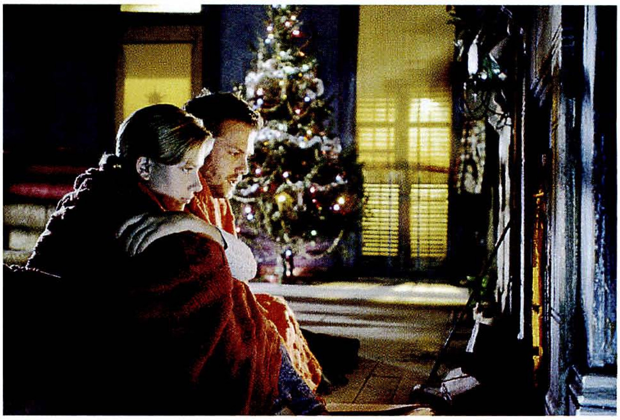
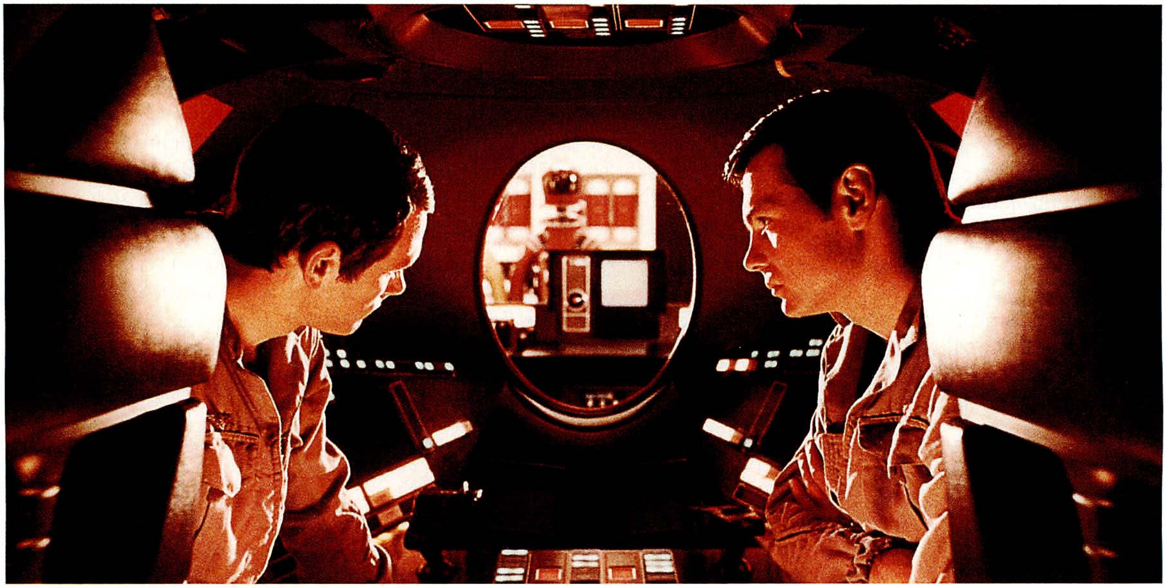


FIGURE 7.2 Atmospheric Colors A wide range of color influences come into play in the four pictures shown here. The eerie green shapes behind the detective (Al Pacino) in Christopher Nolan's *Insomnia* (2002) subtly accentuate the horror his face expresses as he kneels above his newly dead partner (top left). The rosy flesh colors on the huge, theater-front poster in Pedro Almodovar's *All About My Mother* both embolden and engulf the red-coated woman (Cecilia Roth) standing bewildered before it, and the double black doors with bars on top are forbidding (top right). In Shainee Gabel's *A Love Song for Bobby Long*, Scarlett Johansson and Gabriel Macht snuggle for warmth in a cool New Orleans house whose walls are awash in the colors of Christmas (right). This shot from Stanley Kubrick's *2001: A Space Odyssey* (below) places the computer HAL at its center, but the spacecraft's instrumentation-panel lights in the foreground cast an ominous, aptly unsettling pinkish glow over the faces of Keir Dullea and Gary Lockwood.



focus, to movement, and to close-ups. Dramatic arrangement of people and objects and highlighting the object of greatest interest also attract our attention. Color is another option. By using bright or saturated colors on the object of greatest interest and placing that object against a contrasting background, the director can easily capture the viewer's eye (Figures 7.3, 7.4).

2. **Colors Contribute to Three-Dimensionality.** The director can capitalize on another characteristic of color to ensure that attention is attracted to the proper object: Some colors seem to advance toward the foreground, and others seem to recede into the background. Colors such as red, orange, yellow, and lavender are **advancing colors.** When given high intensity and dark value, they seem to advance, making objects appear larger and closer to the camera than they are. Interior decorators and others know that a chair covered in red will seem larger and closer to an observer than the same chair covered in **receding colors** such as beige, green, or pale blue. Taking advantage of the advancing and receding characteristics of color fosters the illusion that the image on the screen is three-dimensional.

   Several other techniques may be used in a color film to create the illusion of different planes of depth. By controlling the lighting and color choices, the director can dramatize or accent the illusion of solidity and form by contrasting darkness against lightness, contrasting pure color against grayed color, contrasting warm color against cool color, and contrasting detail, texture, and microstructure against plain or translucent objects.

   The problems of creating the illusion of three-dimensionality in black and white are simplified in color, according to production designer Robert Boyle:

   > Black and white is a little harder to do than color. The difference is you can separate the planes with color, but with black and white you have to separate the planes with values. The cameraman's job in a black and white film is the difficult one, because you separate the planes with light, particularly when you are trying to indicate depth. Anybody can go out and snap a color shot and the planes will just naturally separate by the intensity of the color, but in black and white you have to do it all with value. You have to assess whether a yellow and a light red are going to be different enough in values to separate the planes. There may be a red room in the foreground and behind that you'll have a light gray, and that will separate the planes and help the cameraman.[3]

3. **Colors Create an Impression or Feeling of Temperature.** Colors convey or at least seem to convey a sense of temperature. The **warm colors** are the colors that advance: red, orange, yellow, and lavender.

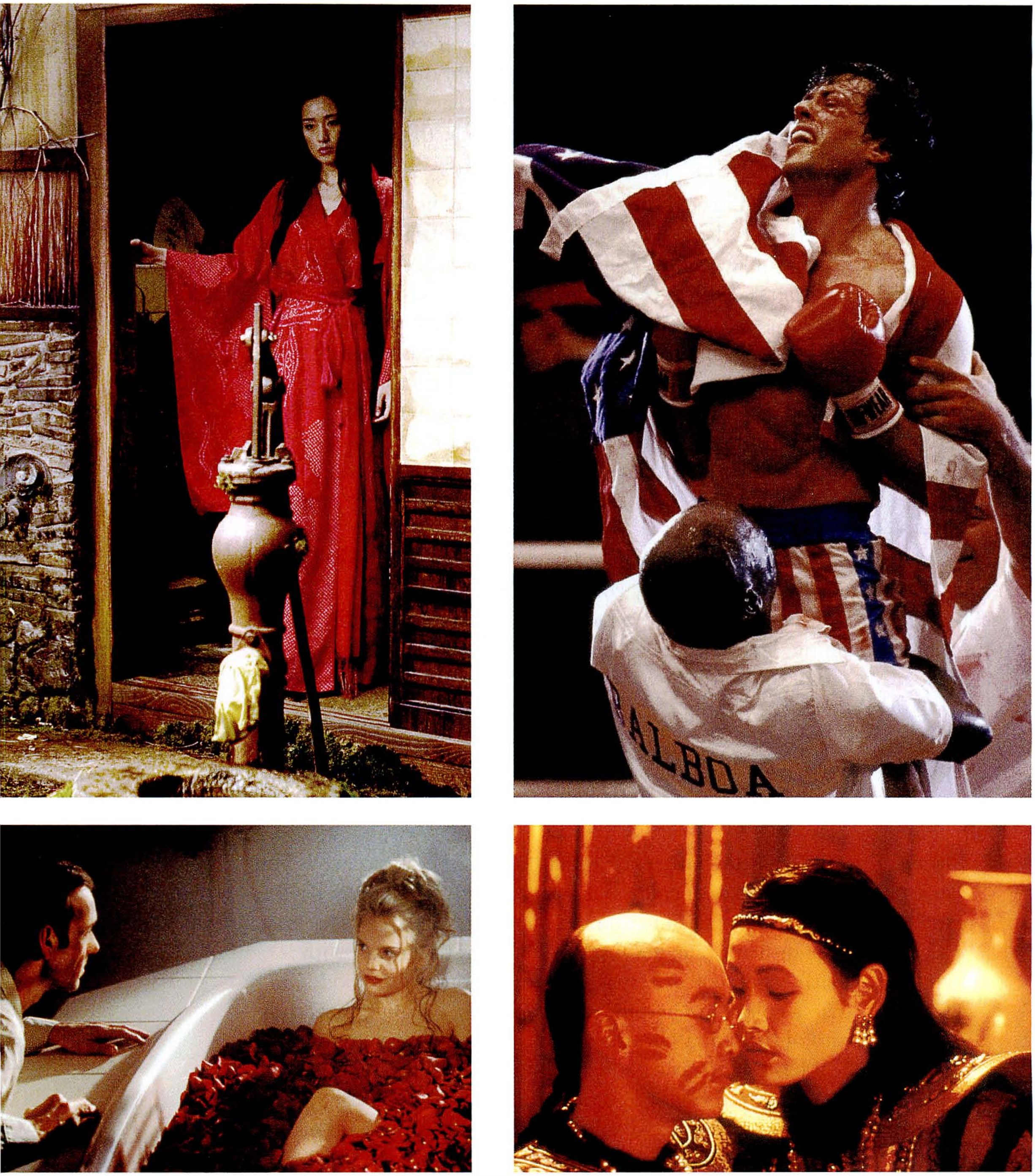


FIGURE 7.3 Seeing Red A saturated red is a great attention-getter, as shown in these striking photographs from *Memoirs of a Geisha* (top left), *Rocky IV* (top right), *The Last Emperor* (bottom right), and *American Beauty* (bottom left).

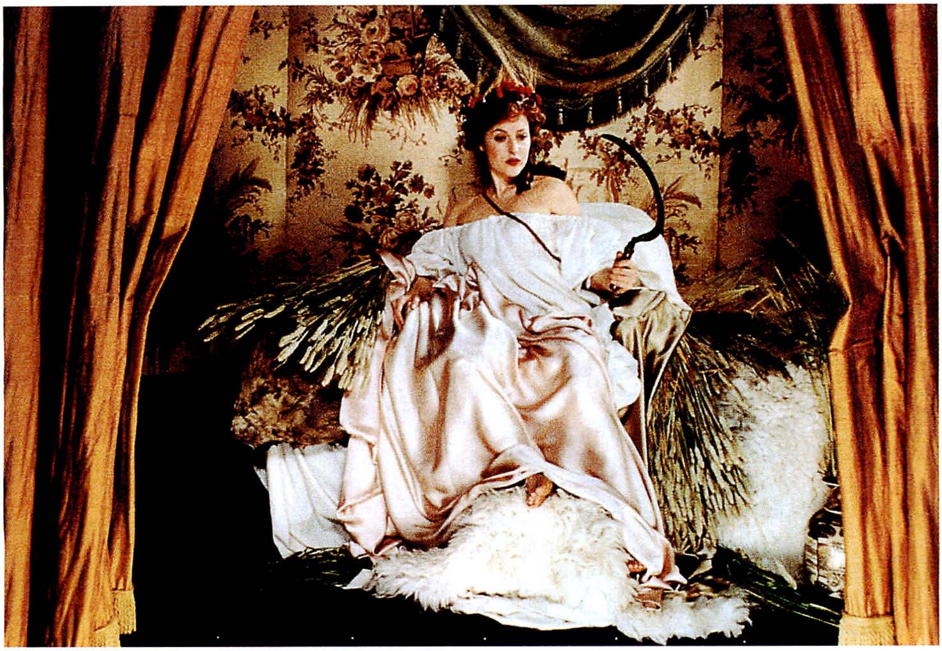


FIGURE 7.4 A Richly Colored Tableau Director Terence Davies commanded a remarkable color palette in his film adaptation of Edith Wharton's *The House of Mirth* (including the deep purple of plush Edwardian velvet in the photograph used on the movie's poster). Here, the work's protagonist, played by Gillian Anderson, participates in an evening's entertainment for wealthy guests: a series of frozen moments of Beauty, briefly revealed, one by one. She seems to represent Ceres, goddess of the harvest, with her sickle and grain; the rich browns, greens, and golds are set in sharp contrast to the deep red of her headdress and lip color—and the delicate pink of her gown.

The **cool colors** are the colors that recede: blues, greens, and beiges. It is likely that warm colors are so designated because of their associations with fire, the sun, and sunsets, and blues and greens are deemed cool because of their associations with water and the shade of trees (Figure 7.5).

These generalizations, however, are not without certain complications. There are various degrees of color temperature. Red with a touch of blue is cooler than a saturated red. Yellow with a hint of green becomes a cool yellow. A reddish violet seems warm, but a bluish violet is comparatively cool. A blue with a faint purplish tinge suggests warmth, and some greens have enough yellow to seem warm. Filmmakers are aware of these connotations and use them to good effect, as Mark Rydell did in creating the effects of the warm, loving relationship between two women in the house and the bitter cold outside in his film of D. H. Lawrence's *The Fox:*

> [E]very object in the house, every color, was chosen in warm tones to support the erotic tension in the house and everything in the exterior

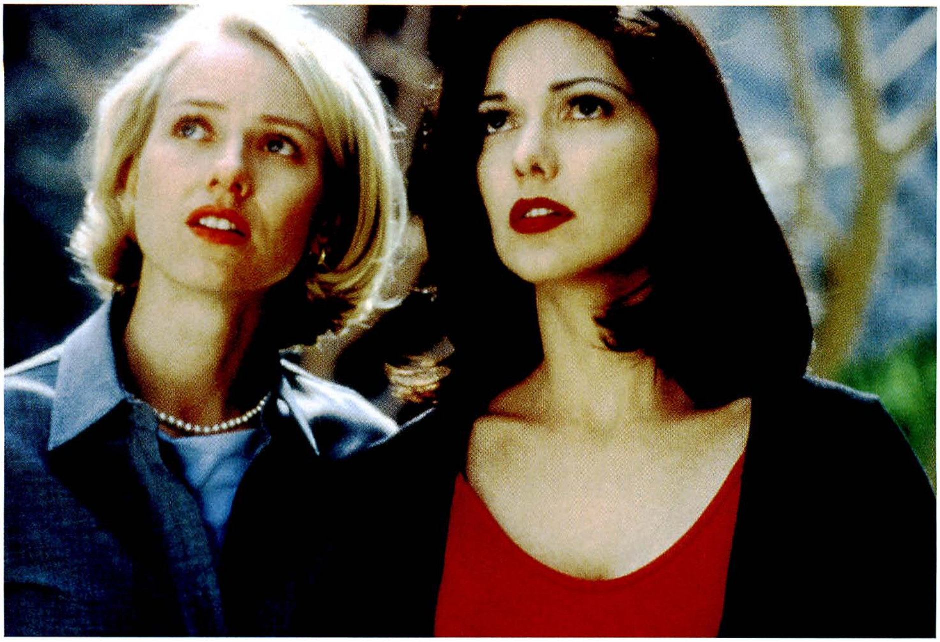


FIGURE 7.5 Mixing Warm and Cool Colors In David Lynch's *Mulholland Dr.*, light and dark, hot and cold are in constant visual opposition, as in this shot of the film's two central characters. Naomi Watts (left) has blond hair and is wearing "cool" colored clothing, white pearls, and a muted shade of lipstick; Laura Elena Harring (right) has black hair, wears a deep red blouse, and possesses even deeper-red lips.

> was in the blue tones to emphasize the cold. Those are the kinds of things that are done that have an unconscious impact on people. . . . I'm very careful to select things like that. I think color has real impact. The choice of colors is seemingly inadvertent—but it's not. Every garment is selected for a particular kind of emotional tone.[4]

4. **Colors Function Together in Different Ways.** Certain combinations of color, or color schemes, produce predictable and consistent visual effects. **Monochromatic harmony** results from a scheme based on variations in the value and intensity of one color. **Complementary harmony** results from the use of colors directly opposite each other on the color wheel, such as red and green. Complementary colors react with each other more vividly than do other colors. **Analogous harmony** results from the use of colors adjacent to one another on the color wheel, such as red, red-orange, and orange. Such colors create a soft image with little harsh contrast. **Triad harmony** results from the use of three colors equidistant from one another on the color wheel, such as the primary colors: red, yellow, and blue.

Color-conscious directors generally have a clear vision of the color tone or types of color harmony they want to incorporate into their film, and they convey that vision to the cinematographer, production designer, and costumer during an extensive period of preproduction planning. If special color effects need to be provided by the film laboratory during the printing process, laboratory technicians may also be consulted. Because different types of film stock respond to color in different ways, experts from Eastman Kodak or Technicolor may even be brought into the process.

Color as a Transitional Device

Color has probably been used most often to signal important changes. This can be accomplished by using color in conjunction with black and white or by switching to an obviously different color emphasis or style at the point of transition. Director David Lynch used the latter strategy in *Blue Velvet* (Figure 7.6). The most obvious kind of color transition is the technique used in *The Wizard of Oz*, where the dull, drab Kansas of Dorothy's real world suddenly becomes the glowing Technicolor Oz of her dream (Figure 7.7).

Color also provides a transition between two separate worlds in a unique time-travel film, *The Navigator: A Medieval Odyssey*. Produced in New Zealand and directed by Vincent Ward, the film concerns a journey from the Middle Ages to the present through the center of the Earth. The title character, a young visionary from a primitive medieval Christian clan, lives in a gloomy, stark, black-and-white world but dreams or has visions of the modern world in muted color. Through his dreams, he "knows the way" and leads members of his clan through the center of the Earth to deliver a cross to "the other side" (the modern world). As they enter the great vertical cavern that leads to the other world, limited color enters the image transitionally as torches dropping through the pit or carried by the clansmen glow orange without coloring the cavern walls or the faces of the men. Then, as they emerge into the modern world on the outskirts of a large city, we see a night scene with full but very muted color. *Pleasantville*, a seriocomic examination of evolving American life during the past fifty years, also utilizes color as a transitional device. Magically transported to the black-and-white fantasy world of a 1950s television sitcom, two '90s teenaged siblings gradually become the catalysts for blossoming color in characters who manage to attain a strong personal and social awareness (Figure 7.8).

A transition from present to past is keyed through color in *D.O.A.* (1988), which opens in a *film noir* black and white as Dennis Quaid, dying from a slow-acting but fatal poison, staggers into a police station to tell his story. As the detectives begin taping his testimony, we watch him briefly on a black-and-white TV monitor until the film goes into a dramatic flashback, changing to color as

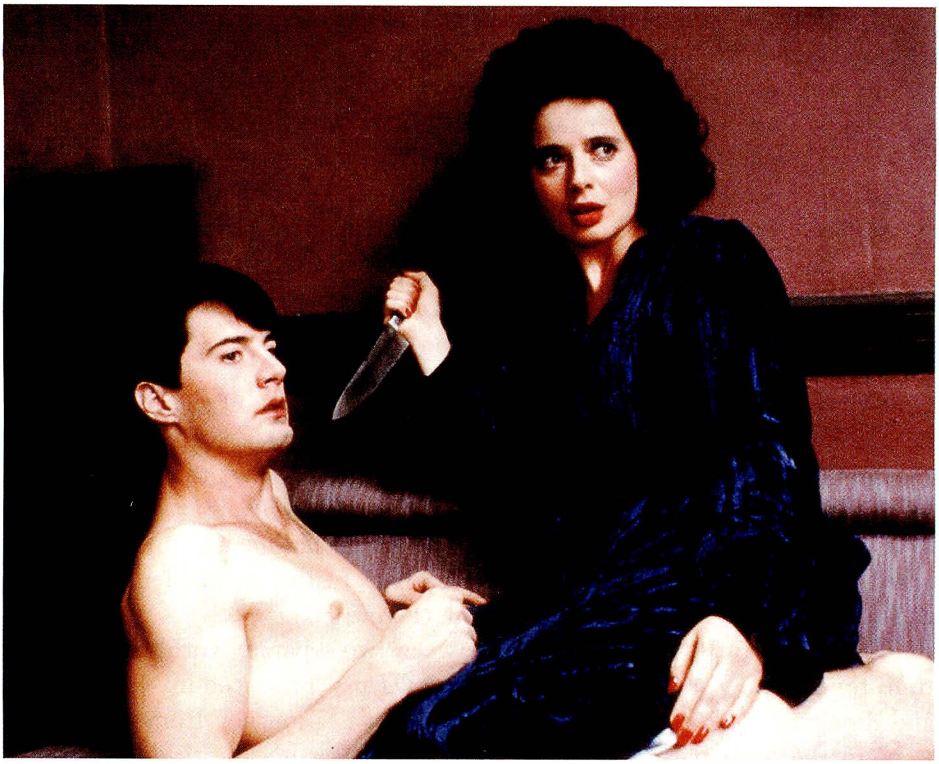


FIGURE 7.6 Oz in Reverse In *Blue Velvet*, David Lynch begins his story with an idealized small-town atmosphere portrayed in glowing colors, with brilliant flowers, white picket fences, playing children, and cute dogs. Then the director mutes the color, darkens the image, and takes us on an unforgettable journey into the dark underbelly of vice, evil, and corruption beneath the surface. Shown here is the overly curious Kyle MacLachlan being threatened by Isabella Rossellini.

it shows the word *color* printed on a blackboard, with Quaid as a college English professor discussing the use of color as metaphor in literature. The film returns to the *film noir* black and white in the midst of the final, violent climax of the flashback.

A more sophisticated use of color for transition occurs in *Sophie's Choice.* During the concentration camp scenes, the color is muted so much that it almost disappears, thus conveying the grimness of those scenes and setting them apart from the bright and cheerful colors of the present-time sequences.

Martin Scorsese's *Raging Bull* uses color for another unusual transitional effect. The opening credits in color are superimposed over a black-and-white slow-motion image of Robert De Niro (as Jake La Motta) shadowboxing alone in the corner of the ring. With the color titles, Scorsese seems to be saying, "This is a modern film." With the black-and-white image behind the titles, he seems to be saying, "This is a realistic film. I'm not going to idealize or glorify

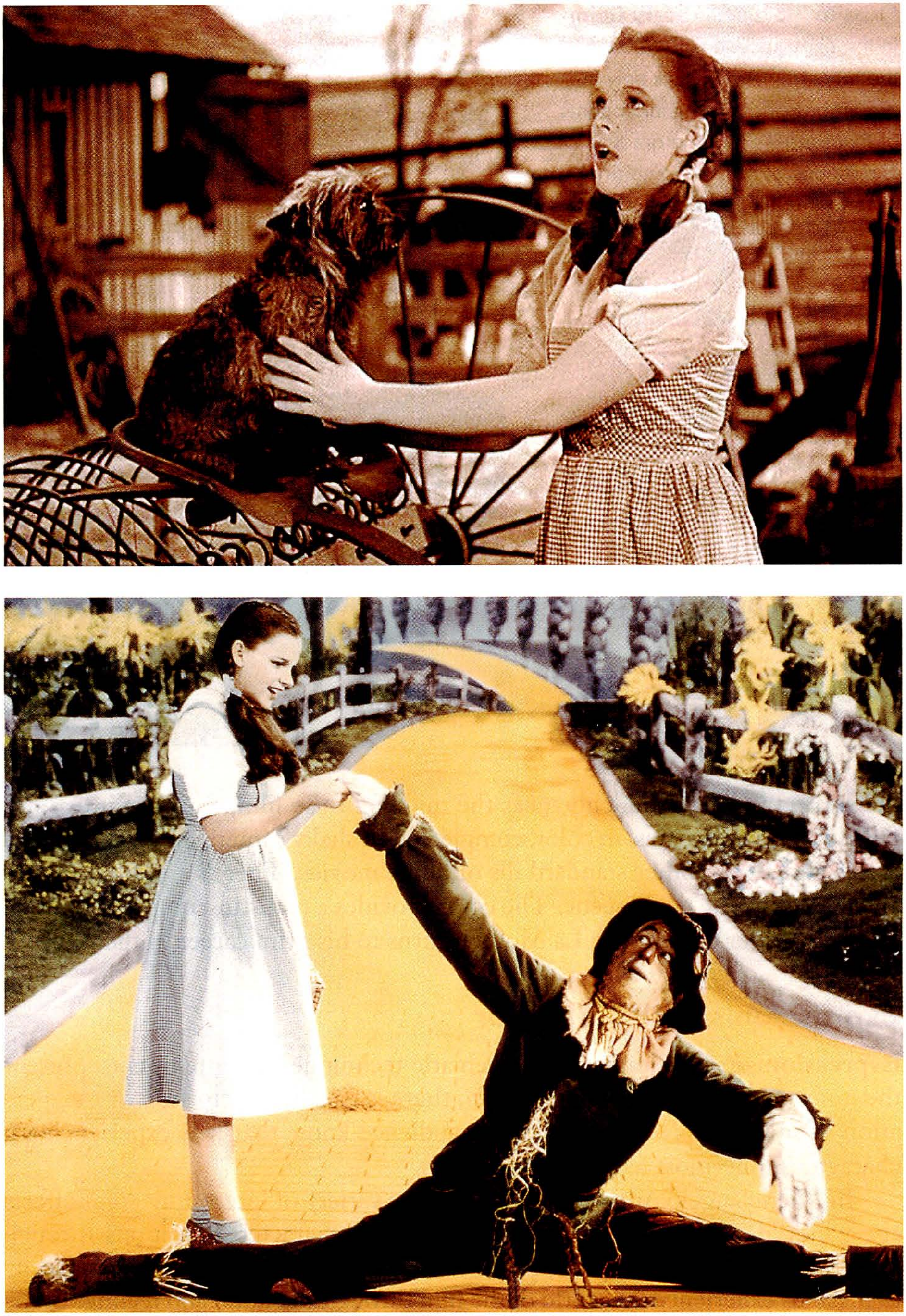


FIGURE 7.7 Still in Kansas (top) Dorothy (Judy Garland) and Toto sit beneath gathering storm clouds in a dull, drab, black-and-white Kansas during the opening segment of *The Wizard of Oz.* **Not in Kansas Anymore** (bottom) Dorothy and the Scarecrow (Ray Bolger) get acquainted on the yellow-brick road in *The Wizard of Oz.*

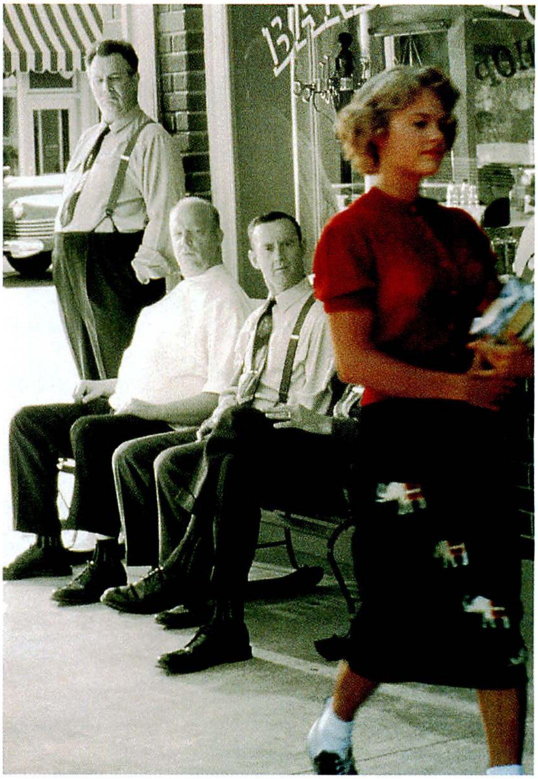


FIGURE 7.8 Lively/Scary Color In the early sections of *Pleasantville,* the television town exists only in gradations of gray. The inhabitants of *Pleasantville* find the gradual experience of becoming colorful both frightening and exhilarating.

the subject." Then, suddenly, near the middle of the film, Scorsese integrates La Motta home movies, in color, complete with shaky camera movement, fuzzy focus, and all the other standard ills of home movies. There's a wedding scene and a "kids by the pool" scene. The color provides a realistic, compressed interlude of happier days before La Motta returns to his grim career in the ring.

Expressionistic Use of Color

Expressionism is a dramatic or cinematic technique that attempts to present the inner reality of a character. In film, there is usually a distortion or exaggeration of normal perception to let the audience know that it is experiencing a character's innermost feelings (Figure 7.9).

In Michelangelo Antonioni's *Red Desert*, a variety of interesting color effects are achieved. Whereas traditional films express characters' emotions through acting, editing, composition, and sound, Antonioni uses color expressionistically to make us experience the world of the film through the mind and feelings of the central character, Giuliana, the neurotic wife of an engineer. The garish colors of factory vats, pipelines, slag heaps, poisonous yellow smoke, and a huge black ship passing through the gray mist of the harbor (along with an almost deafening roar and clatter of industrial machinery) make us aware that Giuliana is

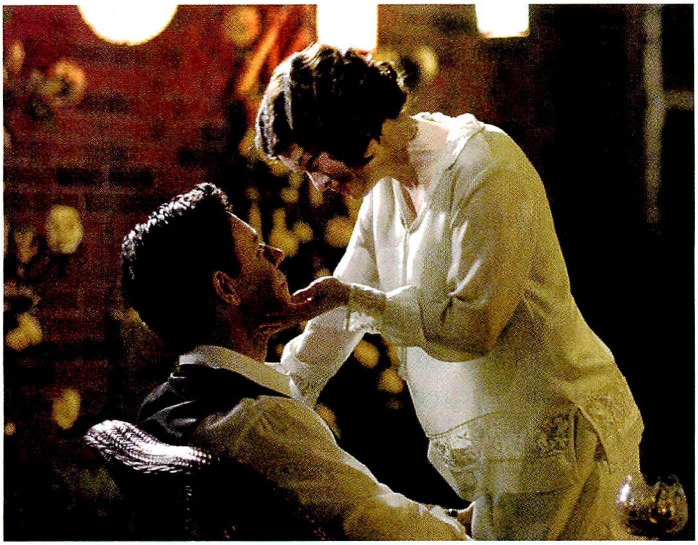


FIGURE 7.9 Expressionistic Color Color can be used expressionistically to make us experience the world of the film through the mind and feelings of the central characters. In this scene from *Cinderella Man,* director Ron Howard uses desaturated or muted hues to suggest the delicate, loving relationship between boxer Jim Braddock (Russell Crowe) and his wife (Renee Zellweger).

overwhelmed and threatened by industrialization. In her dull, everyday life, the color is desaturated or muted, taking on a gray, nightmarish cast. But when Giuliana tells her young son a story reflecting her own fantasies, the colors suddenly change from dull browns and grays to the brilliant sea greens, the blue skies, and the golden sand and rocks of a fairy-tale island, calling attention to the vast difference between the real world she lives in and her fantasies.

One of the dangers of trying to create internalized or expressionistic effects in color is made clear by two vastly different interpretations of one scene from *Red Desert*, the scene in which Giuliana and Corrado make love in Corrado's hotel room. One critic describes the scene like this:

> Corrado's room is dark brown paneled wood, the color of earth, when Giuliana comes in. After they make love . . . the room appears pink (flesh-colored), almost like a baby's room. Where she had seen Corrado as a strong, masculine figure, he seems to her like a child after her disillusion with him—the color, when Antonioni wants it that way, a correlative of his heroine's sense of things.[5]

Another critic interprets the scene in this manner:

> In a later sequence in the engineer's hotel room, the walls change color from their original hard gray to warm pink because Giuliana feels them pink, with her body next to a warm strong man. He, ironically, neither cares how she feels or how she feels the walls.[6]

Both critics are right about the walls. One wall is dark, paneled wood; the other three are hard gray. The gray walls are the ones that appear pink. But the difference in interpretation here indicates a major difficulty with the expressionistic use of color. We must remember that color is not just seen but is also felt by the individual viewer and is subject to his or her personal interpretation. At least two critics did not experience the pink room of *Red Desert* in the same way.

Color as Symbol

In Ingmar Bergman's *Cries and Whispers*, we see evidence of another problem with communicating clearly with color. In that film, the bedroom of the dying Agnes is literally drowning in saturated reds: red bedspread, red carpet, red walls, red drapes, and even a red dressing screen. Bergman has said that the deep-red sets symbolize his vision of the soul as a red membrane, but individual viewers may be unaware of this symbolism. The red actually is so appealing to the eye that it distracts attention away from the subtle drama that the faces and the dialogue are struggling to convey. Similarly, Peter Greenaway plays with color in his controversial *The Cook, The Thief, His Wife, & Her Lover*. In graphically presenting the erotic passions, jealousies, and angers of its characters, this film first creates brilliantly individuated color schemes for its interior settings (including the various rooms of a large restaurant). Then it changes the colors of the characters' clothing as they walk from room to room. What may be extremely subtle color symbolism for some viewers may be merely confusing for others.

Surrealistic Use of Color

Surrealism is a dramatic or cinematic technique that uses fantastic imagery in an attempt to portray the workings of the subconscious. Surrealistic images have an oddly dreamlike or unreal quality.

The prolonged slaughter at the end of *Taxi Driver* is separated from the rest of the film with slow-motion visuals and surrealistic color (Figure 7.10). As screenwriter Paul Schrader describes it:

> The movie goes out of whack at that point. The color goes crazy. You no longer hear the sounds of the street. You get into that weird slow motion. *Intentionally* out of whack.[7]

As Travis Bickle (Robert De Niro) shoots the pimp on the doorstep and enters the building, the dominant color becomes a gritty, sleazy yellow in hallways and rooms dimly lit by naked tungsten bulbs. In this surreal dim yellow glow, the film takes on a nightmarish quality: Even the blood, which is literally everywhere, seems gritty and dirty, more real than real. The creative genius behind this extremely powerful effect was neither director Martin Scorsese nor his cinematographer, Michael Chapman, but the Motion Picture Rating Board:

> [A]bsurdly, it made Scorsese overlay the final bloodbath with a chemical tint so that it would look less realistic. The black-red gore turns out to be almost more powerful than the splattering ketchup of the original. Scorsese thinks it is worse.[8]

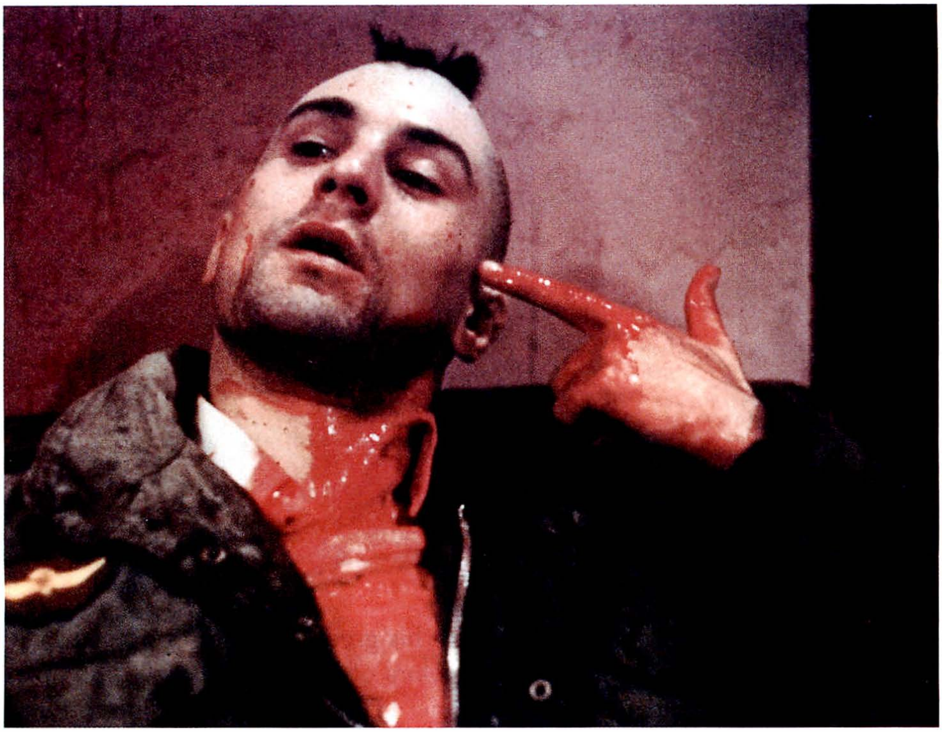


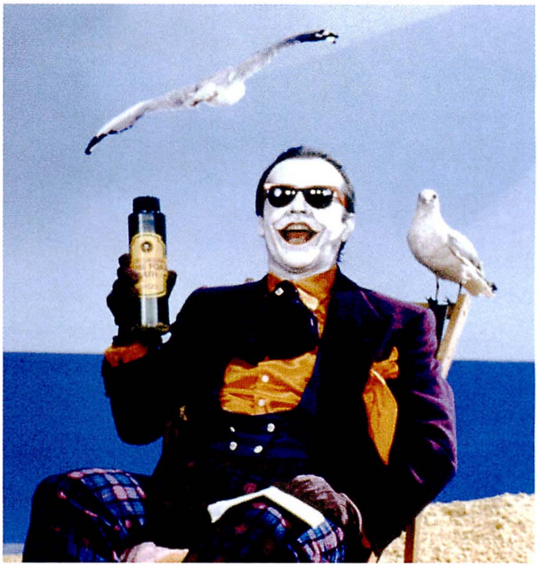
FIGURE 7.10 **Surrealistic Color** Robert De Niro appears here as the deranged and suicidal Travis Bickle in the violent climax of *Taxi Driver*.

Leitmotifs in Color

Directors may employ colors associated with given characters for a kind of trademark effect. Robert Altman used this technique in his hauntingly beautiful *3 Women*. In practically every scene, Millie Lammoreaux (Shelley Duvall) is dressed in yellow or yellow in combination with another color. Pinky Rose (Sissy Spacek) dresses, as her name implies, in pink. Willy Hart (Janice Rule) wears muted colors, mostly purples, blues, and grays, throughout. As the film progresses and Millie and Pinky undergo a Bergmanesque role reversal, Pinky's pinks go to reds as her personality becomes dominant, and Millie's bright yellows are subdued. All retain something close to their basic colors until the film's puzzling end, when all three characters merge together into a monochromatic harmony. Millie has taken over the role of Willy as mother figure and adopted her style of dress and manner; Pinky has reverted to childhood and acts like a ten-year-old girl. But all the colors are now muted tints of gray and blue, as if to suggest that all three characters have lost what little individuality or sense of self they ever had.

The clashing, garish colors of the Joker's costume in *Batman* help to reinforce his personality (Figure 7.11). As if his evil deeds and twisted mind aren't

FIGURE 7.11 Offensive Colors
Jack Nicholson appears in sartorial splendor as the Joker in *Batman*.



villainous enough, he also offends us with his green hair, bright orange shirt, purple jacket, and bright red lips. The colors of his outfit also set him apart from the very conservative Batman costume: a rich, dark, formal blue accented by a touch of yellow. In his Euro-gore classics such as *Suspiria*, Dario Argento also uses color intensely.

Color to Enhance Mood

In his romantic tone poem *A Man and a Woman*, French director Claude Lelouche experimented with a variety of film stocks, switching from full realistic color to monochromatic scenes in sepia and blue gray, created by printing black and white on colored stock. Although the scenes depicting the woman's idealized memories of her dead husband (a movie stuntman) are consistently filmed in Hollywood color, the transitions from color to black and white throughout the rest of the film follow no logical formula. Nevertheless, these color transitions blend in perfect harmony with the musical score to enhance the overall delicate mood of the film. Likewise, John Woo utilizes subtle colors to build empathy for his protagonists in such films as *Windtalkers*. And some cinematographers choose to shoot just before sunset to give their actors a "golden" glow (Figure 7.12).

Comic Book Color

For comic book–based *Batman*, production designer Anton Furst constructed a Gotham that became the single most powerful character in the movie, a per-

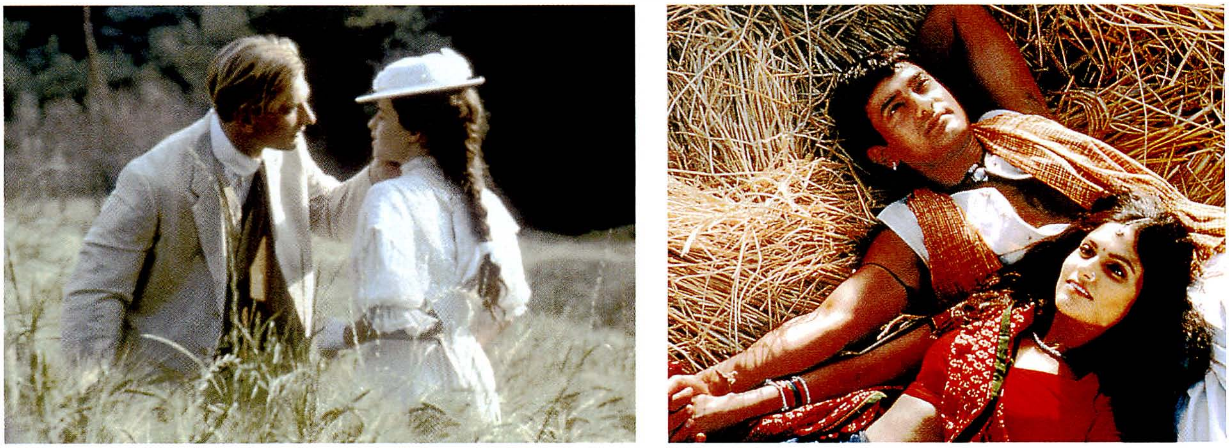


FIGURE 7.12 The Golden Hour Cinematographers love to shoot during "the golden hour," the period just before sunset, when the light has a golden glow and strong side lighting can create a romantic mood, as in these scenes from *A Room With a View* (left) and *Lagaan* (right).

sonification of contemporary corruption and decay. Vertical towers, domes, and spires reach high into a polluted sky above a base of sewers and claustrophobic alleys, creating a unique architectural style that might best be labeled Deco-Gothic. Sets are angled and lighted for a *film noir* effect and are further distorted by high and low camera angles and harsh side lighting from unseen sources. Deep blue black shadows prevail, and the browns and grays of brick and concrete are muted, totally without warmth. Gray smoke and white steam complete the image of pollution and total corruption. Even the occasional bright spot signals corruption, like the brilliant splash of red in a sleazy street girl's outfit or the sickly pulsing pinkish glow of a dirty neon sign. So pervasive is the atmosphere created by the set that one cannot help but agree with sniggering mobster Jack Napier (Jack Nicholson) when he says: "Decent people shouldn't live here. They would be happier someplace else." Often, in scary sci-fi movies such as *War of the Worlds* (2005) (Figure 7.13), an equivalent sentiment is echoed during under-lighted scenes that suggest the presence of aliens.

Comic Strip Color

Whereas *Batman* was based on a comic book with relatively sophisticated and subtle color treatment, Warren Beatty's *Dick Tracy* was based on a Sunday-paper comic strip in which bold, primary colors prevail. To achieve this look, Beatty and cinematographer Vittorio Storaro decided to shoot the picture in seven primary and secondary colors, controlling the color by using painted

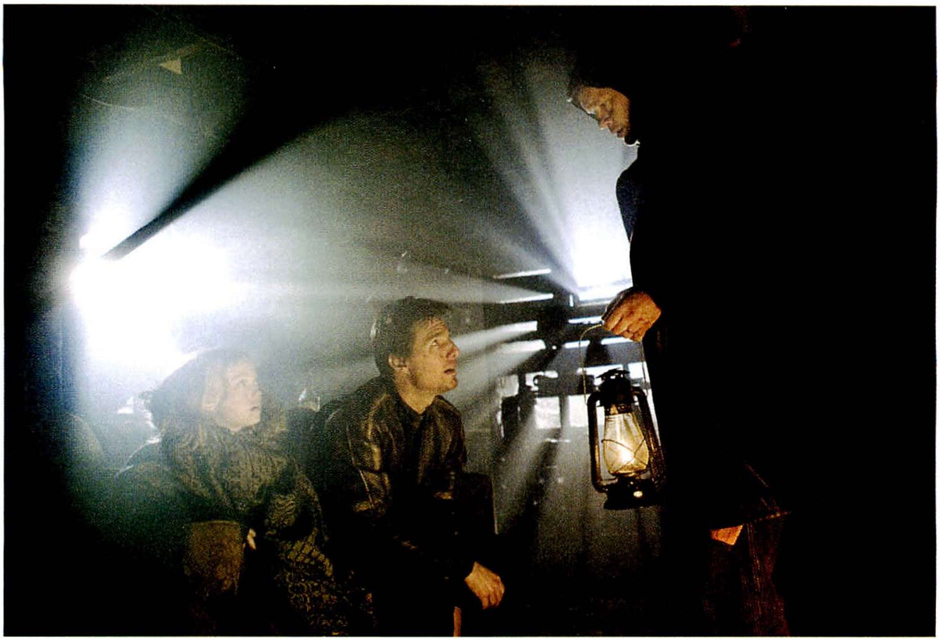


FIGURE 7.13 Prevailing Shadows In Steven Spielberg's *War of the Worlds* (2005), dark blue, green, and black shadows, like those surrounding Dakota Fanning, Tom Cruise, and Tim Robbins here, help to create the frightening overall feeling of the movie.

backdrops (called *mattes*) behind the live action. The overall effect is unique (Figure 7.14). The primary colors—red, blue, and yellow—almost explode from the screen; wet city streets glow crimson, blue, and purple. As Storaro tells it, each color choice was carefully thought out, especially in developing what he calls a "dramaturgy of color" for the characters:

> Tracy, with his yellow raincoat and yellow hat, represents one side of the color spectrum: light, day, sun. Tess is mainly represented by orange, a warm color. Red is the Kid. They face the opposite side—Big Boy, Breathless, Pruneface—who belong on the inside of our subconscious, which is blue, indigo, violet. So the story of Dick Tracy and Breathless is really an impossible communion between the sun and moon, day and night, good and evil.[9]

Painterly Effects in Color

More and more directors and cinematographers are beginning to think of filming as being similar to painting. In addition to their attempts to achieve **painterly effects** with lighting, a great deal of experimentation is being done to create a kind of palette in color film, so that the actual nature of the color can be mixed to achieve the same kinds of effects that artists achieve with subtle blendings of the colors on the palette. In *What Dreams May Come*, Vincent

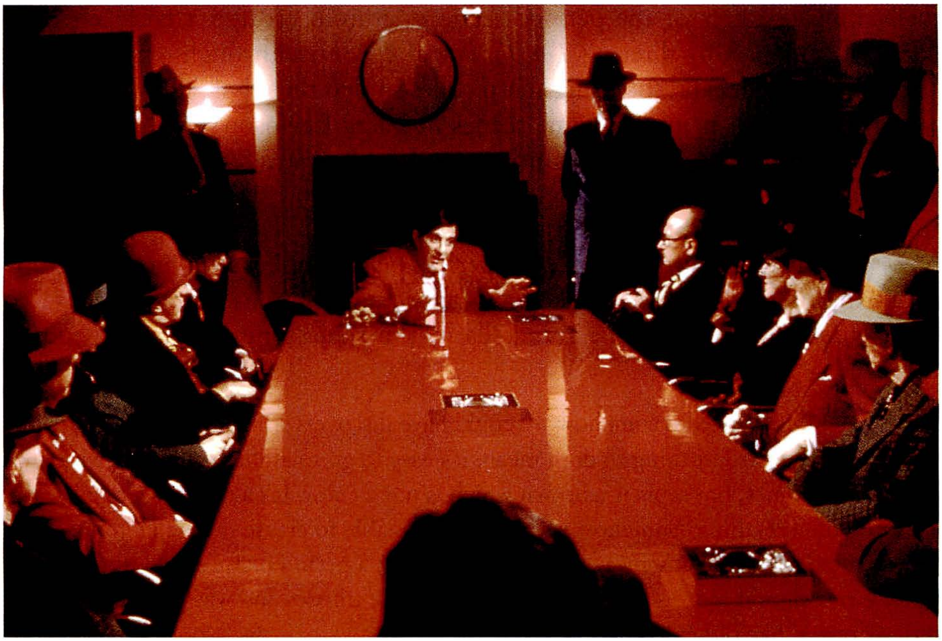


FIGURE 7.14 **Comic Strip Colors** To achieve a Sunday funnies look for *Dick Tracy,* cinematographer Vittorio Storaro limited himself to seven primary and secondary colors and gave a special color emphasis to each character. Blue, indigo, and violet—colors that Storaro says "belong on the inside of our subconscious"—suggest the dark side of the assembled gangsters in this shot.

Ward takes this kind of effect one step further: When the protagonist, Robin Williams, walks through a beautiful Monet-like landscape, he discovers that its colors literally become oil paints.

In *Moulin Rouge* (1952) John Huston attempted what he called "a wedding of black and white and color" in an attempt to give the entire film the look of a Toulouse-Lautrec painting. To achieve this look, it was necessary to flatten the color (rendering it in planes of solid hues) and eliminate highlights and the illusion of three-dimensionality created by the lighting of rounded, three-dimensional forms. He achieved this by using a filter that was designed to simulate fog in exterior scenes and by adding smoke to the set so that a flat, monochromatic quality prevailed. As Huston puts it: "It was the first picture that succeeded in dominating the color instead of being dominated by it."[10] Huston further experimented with color in *Reflections in a Golden Eye*, where an amber golden look was given to the whole picture through a laboratory process. Studio heads, however, did not like the golden look and released the film without the effect.

Because painters are often associated with certain periods, filmmakers have sometimes attempted to achieve a sense of time past by using the look of a well-known painter of the period. Franco Zeffirelli created a fairly effective sense of time past by filtering *The Taming of the Shrew* through a nylon stocking, muting colors and softening sharp edges so that the whole film resembles a faded Rembrandt painting. Some scenes in Barry Levinson's *The Natural* had the look of Edward Hopper paintings, and both *Biloxi Blues* and *Radio Days* were bathed with a warm, yellow-brown, nostalgic glow, approximating a Norman Rockwell look (Figure 7.15).

For some cinematographers, the perfect period look would be achieved by capturing on film the sepia-tone look of faded photographs. But as Laszlo Kovacs, cinematographer of *F.I.S.T.*, tells it, the sepia-tone look is difficult to achieve:

> I would have loved if somehow we could have discovered how to do sepia in color. That's the hardest thing to do; I mean, it's easy to go to amber or to yellowish and reddish tones, but sepia is a brown which is not a color. It's a dirt. It's a combination of everything. Somehow it's almost impossible to create that sepia tone, all that faded quality. It's always a problem. You see a period picture, and it looks too new. It should look as if it was really made in the thirties and was pulled out from a drawer, like old faded prints.[11]

Ironic Use of Color

Directors usually plan to use colors to match the mood of their film, but sometimes they choose color effects that go against the emotional tone of the film. John Schlesinger has achieved effective results with both approaches:

> In *Midnight Cowboy*, we wanted a garish street look, with the neon signs resonating—it was grittier, grainier. But with *[Day of the] Locust*, Conrad [cinematographer Conrad Hall] and I wanted a much more golden glow over a fairly dark story.[12]

Color patterns are also used ironically in Woody Allen's *Annie Hall* in the flashbacks to Alvy's neurotic childhood, which are imbued with glowing, warm nostalgic tones (Figure 7.16).

Special Color Effects

A great many of the uses of color are so subtle that they create the desired effect but escape our conscious notice unless we are looking for them (Figure 7.17). In *Deliverance*, for example, director John Boorman and cinematographer Vilmos Zsigmond found that the colors of the bright green leaves as naturally recorded on the film were too cheerful looking. To remedy this, they combined a black-and-white print with a color print to create a sufficiently dark and foreboding woods.

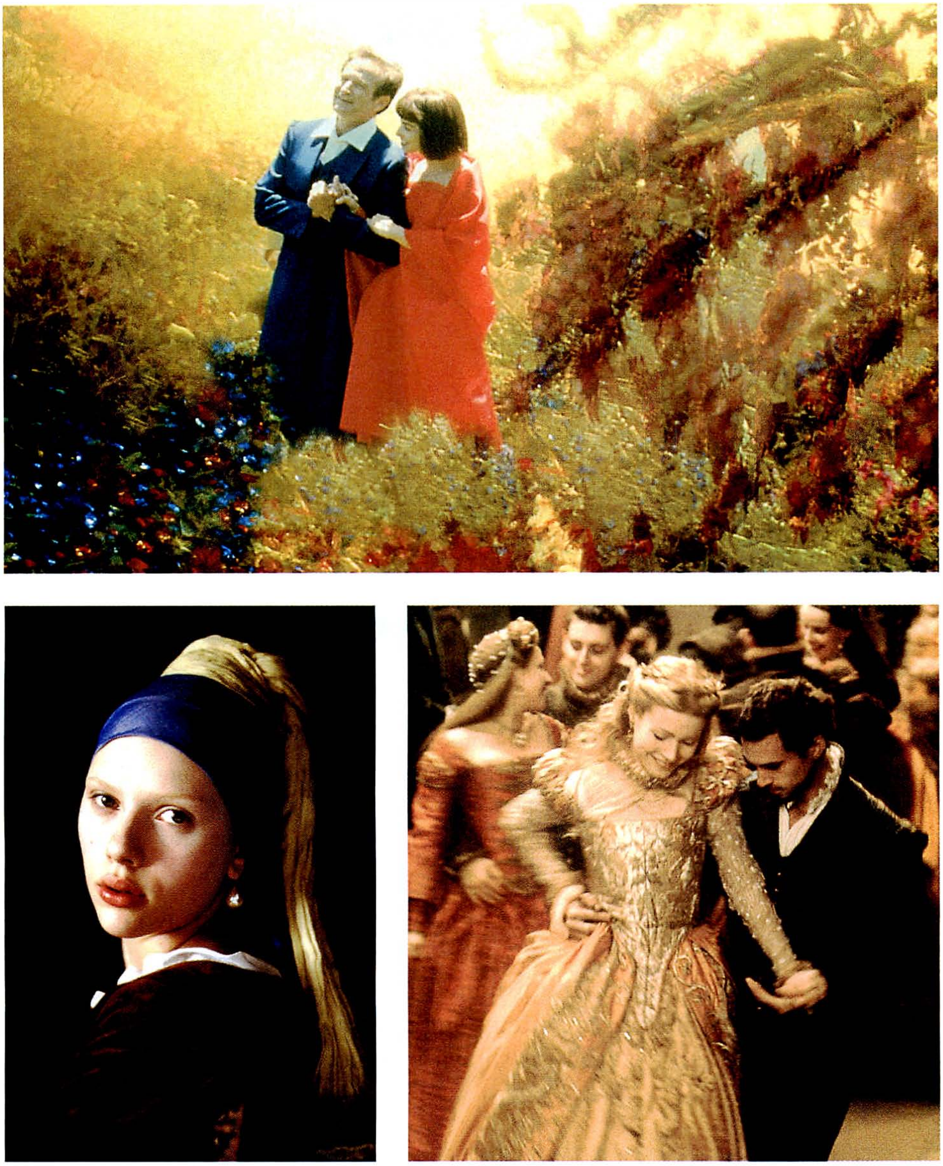


FIGURE 7.15 Painterly Effects Some filmmakers actively seek to adapt to the motion picture form color techniques most famously used by painters. Director Vincent Ward offers a remarkable French Impressionist-inspired landscape for Robin Williams and Annabella Sciorra in *What Dreams May Come* (top). John Madden mixes rich colors and movement in his *Shakespeare in Love*, with Gwyneth Paltrow and Joseph Fiennes (bottom right). In Peter Webber's *The Girl With a Pearl Earring*, one of Johannes Vermeer's most famous paintings is brought to vibrant life via images of Scarlett Johansson as a young peasant maid working in the artist's household (bottom left).

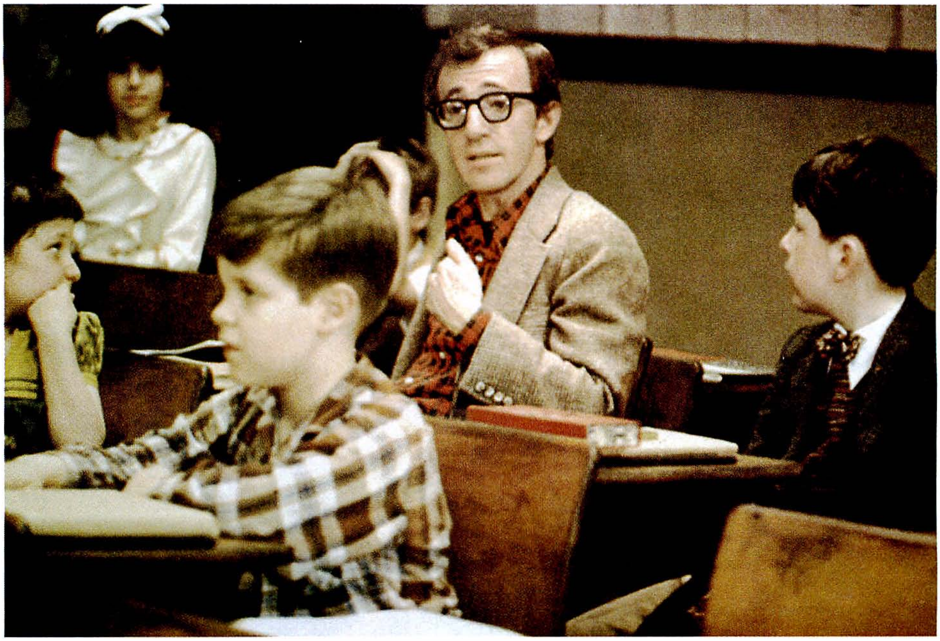


FIGURE 7.16 Ironic Use of Color When, in *Annie Hall*, Woody Allen occasionally switches cinematic gears from an exasperating (but funny) love story to a nostalgic reexamination of Alvy Singer's childhood (funny too), he also changes visual styles. His travels into the past are given the warm glow of fond and colorful tales filtered through the consciousness of the present. And, indeed, in this scene, the adult Alvy actually appears in that light with his younger self and his elementary school classmates.

In Kathryn Bigelow's *Near Dark*, the vampire clan must avoid the sun, which literally roasts them alive, so much of the action of the film takes place at night. Cold colors, especially a muted blue, predominate. In one scene, however, when the vampires are attempting to escape from the sunrise, the unhealthiness of the sun (to them) is shown by coloring it a poisonous yellow-green.

COLOR VERSUS BLACK AND WHITE

> *I still think that black and white has a role in motion pictures, and not everything should be in color. In fact, unless the color is perfect to the idea, it can come between the beholder and the idea of the picture. One's eye can be deflected by the color. And one's thoughts as well. For instance, I cannot possibly see doing* Freud *in color or other pictures of a deeply psychological nature. Unless the palette and the values coincide or are part of the idea, why, it's better for it not to be in color.*[13]
>
> —JOHN HUSTON, DIRECTOR

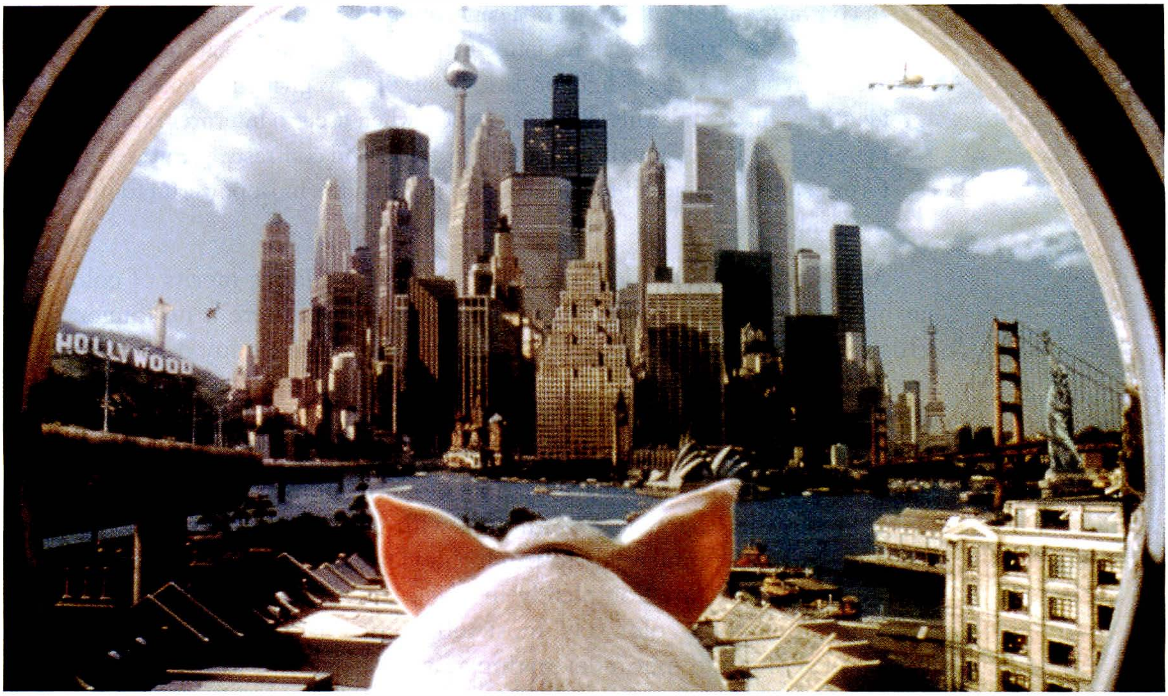


FIGURE 7.17 Another Time, Another Place To be believable, fantasy films often require a special look to convince us that such events really happened in another time, another place. To achieve this look in *Babe: Pig in the City*, George Miller commandeered a rainbow of colors and set his tale in an urban landscape that magically synthesized elements of many great cities of the world.

> *In most movies . . . I have restricted myself to a color or two only. Black and white is like a tuxedo, always elegant. Color, if you're not careful with it, can be vulgar.*[14]
>
> —NESTOR ALMENDROS, CINEMATOGRAPHER

Black and white certainly has a "tuxedo elegance," its own aesthetic. It is not simply a poor cousin of color but an entirely separate medium with its own strengths, idiosyncrasies, and the unique power to communicate. Whereas a color film can rely on the relationship of colors for effect (with very little need for shadows), black and white must rely on tonal relationships and contrasts produced by controlling light and shade. Black and white produces its strongest impact by emphasizing highlights and shadows.

Perhaps the most important element in the aesthetic of the black-and-white film is that the cinematographer is freed from the reality of color. In black and white, each scene must be reduced to shades of gray, to basic elements of shape, tone, line, and texture, producing an image that is less representational than the same scene in color:

> In contrast to the familiar look of a conventional color photograph, a black-and-white picture carries the viewer immediately into the realm of abstraction. Because it renders colors as light or dark shades of grey, giving its subject new visual identities, black-and-white film is at its best when used to interpret rather than merely record. It is superb at capturing patterns and contrasts, textures and forms, and all manner of tonal relationships, from the most powerful to the most subtle.[15]

Although the theoretical argument about the relative merits of color versus black and white is continuous, on a practical level there is no longer a real struggle. Because a vast television audience awaits almost any decent film, the great majority of films today are made in color to improve their chances for eventual sale to television. Stunningly beautiful black-and-white films such as *The Man Who Wasn't There* (2001), by the Coen Brothers, and George Clooney's *Good Night, and Good Luck*, have become modern anomalies.

Television has become so saturated with color that advertisers are using black-and-white commercials to catch the viewer's attention, however. These commercials either are completely in black and white or begin in black and white and then go to color. The most subtle effect is highlighting a single object in one color and muting everything else to black and white, such as in the ads for Lemon-Fresh Clorox (bright yellow, with lots of bouncing lemons), Nuprin (a tiny yellow tablet), Cherry 7Up (a red liquid), and Gatorade (a green liquid). Steven Spielberg employs a single muted color technique with chilling effect in *Schindler's List* in two brief scenes that emphasize Schindler's humanity. Schindler sits on horseback on a hillside watching Jews being driven from their homes in the Kraków ghetto. A beautiful little girl of five or six (a character not otherwise developed in the film) appears walking alone in the crowd, accented by a pale orange red coat, the only spot of color in the black-and-white action. The camera follows her as she slips into a vacant building, climbs the stairs, and hides under a bed as the sound of marching storm troopers grows louder. We see no more color until about an hour later in the film. With Schindler looking on again, the spot of color reappears briefly as the little girl's body, piled on top of other exhumed bodies, is wheeled by on a pushcart to be incinerated (Figure 7.18).

The apparently insatiable desire of the TV audience to see absolutely everything in color has drastically reduced the number of black-and-white films being produced. In fact, so few black-and-white films are now produced that when one does come out (like *Manhattan*, *Stardust Memories*, *Celebrity*, or *The Elephant Man*), it is praised for its daring. More than just daring is involved, however. Martin Scorsese presented some convincing arguments in his battle to film *Raging Bull* in black and white:

> Well, they came into my apartment, and I mentioned that I wanted to do the film in black and white. They said, "Black and white?" And I said yes. The reason was

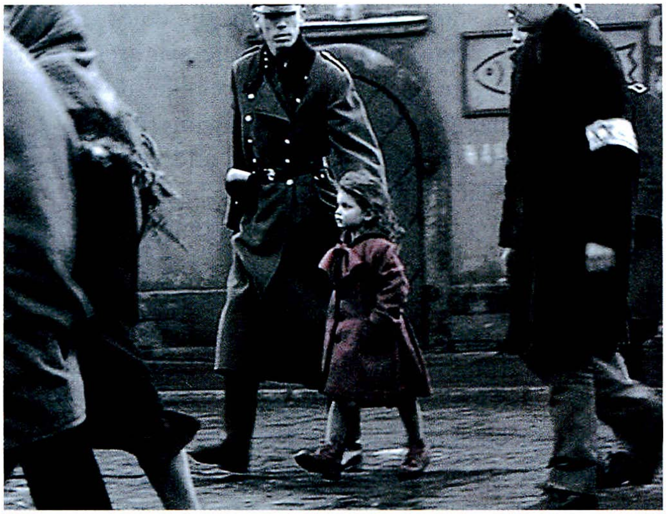


FIGURE 7.18 A Poignant Touch of Color Steven Spielberg's *Schindler's List* creates one of cinema's most touching moments through a tiny splotch of red in what is otherwise an entirely black-and-white film. Like Oscar Schindler (Liam Neeson), an opportunistic German businessman who nevertheless manages to save many Jews from certain death, the viewer suddenly spots the color momentarily in the coat of a small girl. One's visual registration of the image seems almost subliminal. Later, along with Schindler, we see the same nameless child again; this time her dead body is atop a heap of corpses. This delicate use of color is filled with terror, poignancy, and, finally, enormous grief for all humanity.

> that five boxing films were opening: *Rocky II* or *Rocky III*, *The Main Event*, *Matilda, the Boxing Kangaroo*, and two others. They were all in color. I said, "This has got to be different." And besides that, I told them that the color stock fades. I went into the whole business, that I was very upset about the Eastman color stocks fading, the prints fading in five years, the negatives fading in twelve years—things like that. I said, "I just don't want it. I want it to be something very special. On top of that, though, it would also help us with the period look of the film." We had an idea of making the film look like a tabloid, like the *Daily News*, like Weegee photographs. That was the concept, so they talked about that, and said, "Okay, all right." They were listening.[16]

Obviously for some films black and white is simply a more powerful and effective medium than color. Of course, the director's decision to use black and white or color should be determined by the overall spirit or mood of the film. A clear demonstration of the correct use of color and black and white can be seen by comparing Sir Laurence Olivier's productions of *Henry V* (1945) and *Hamlet*. *Henry V* is a heroic, or epic, drama, much of which is set outdoors. It has battlefield action, colorful costuming, and pageantry and is ideally suited for color. The mood of the film is positive; it emphasizes the glorious, heroic character of King Henry V, who emerges victorious. *Hamlet*, in contrast, which Olivier chose to make in black and white, is a tragedy, a somber, serious play of the mind. Most of the settings are interior ones, and some scenes take place at night. The brooding, serious, intellectual quality of the hero himself has a starkness to it, a pensive gloom that, in 1947, could not have been captured nearly as well in color as it was in black and white.

By 1990, however, new technology enabled director Franco Zeffirelli to capture the mood of *Hamlet* and the coldness and starkness of medieval Denmark in color. Throughout Zeffirelli's film, starring Mel Gibson, the colors are desaturated (muted). Browns and grays predominate; often the brightest colors are natural flesh tones. Rich and elaborate regal garments are in pastel blues or heavily muted reds. Even an occasional glint of sunlight showing through narrow castle windows provides no cheer or warmth of color and approximates the effect of low-key lighting in a black-and-white film. Glimpses of green vegetation, blue sky, and the sea are so brief that they do nothing to relieve the gloom.

The overall effect of black and white can be paradoxical, for somehow it often seems more true to life, more realistic, than color—despite the fact that we obviously do not see the world around us in black and white. For example, it is difficult to imagine that Stanley Kubrick's *Dr. Strangelove* in color would have been quite as real as it is in black and white. Perhaps Mike Nichols's *Catch-22* would have been much more powerful in black and white for the same reason. The warmth of the color images in *Catch-22*—a warmth that is difficult to avoid when working with color—fights the cold, bitterly ironic tone that underlies the story. Perhaps its sense of starkness is what makes the black-and-white treatment suitable for such film subjects.

The essentially opposite effects of color and black and white might also be explained in terms of another pair of films, *Shane* and *Hud*, both of which are set in the west. Color is perfectly suited to *Shane*, a romantic western in the epic tradition set in a magnificently huge and beautiful landscape with snowcapped mountains ever present in the background. *Hud*, on the other hand, is a contemporary character study of a heel, set in a drab, barren, and sterile landscape. The film emphasizes the harsh realities and glorifies nothing; this story could find adequate expression only in black and white.

The difference in seriousness and overall tone in Woody Allen's *Annie Hall* (color) and *Manhattan* (black and white) also justifies the choices of different film types for those films. Generally, films that seem to demand color treatment are those with a romantic, idealized, or light, playful, and humorous quality, such as musicals, fantasies, historical pageants, and comedies. Also, films with exceptionally beautiful settings might be better shot in color. Naturalistic, serious, somber stories stressing the harsh realities of life and set in drab, dull, or sordid settings cry out for black and white. There are some that fall into a middle ground and can be treated equally well either way. *Sin City*, based on a dark graphic novel, utilizes a remarkable synthesis of monochrome and color that perfectly fits its subject matter (Figure 7.19).

Experimentation continues, and film technology has advanced rapidly in recent years. By using all the technological know-how available, modern filmmakers are able to create practically any color effect they want to achieve, whether it's done by special lighting, diffusion filters, or special film in the camera or by processing the film in a certain way in the laboratory. This special color effect must of course be consistent in the film from beginning to end, un-

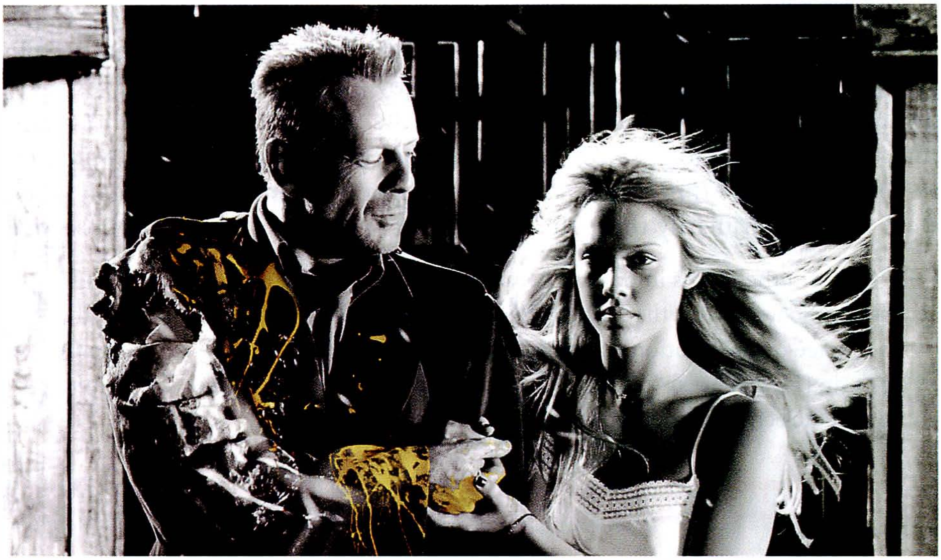


FIGURE 7.19 Intense Color Synthesis *Sin City,* based on a violent graphic novel by Frank Miller and directed by the author and Robert Rodriguez, was shot in black-and-white, but at crucial moments in the narrative, splashes of judiciously-chosen color add dramatic intensity. In this scene, for example, a character played by Bruce Willis (shown here with Jessica Alba) has been wounded and the blood he's shed appears as a decadent gold.

less it is used only for a special segment set off from the rest of the film—like a flashback, a dream, or a fantasy.

Regardless of what has been accomplished to this point in developing the potential of the color film, there always seems to be more territory to be explored and new worlds to be discovered. A statement by Robert Edmond Jones in his essay "The Problem of Color" could well apply to the situation today:

> Color on the screen is unlike any other kind of color we have ever seen before. It does not belong to the categories of color in Nature or in painting and it does not obey the rules of black-and-white picture making.
>
> We are dealing not with color that is motionless, static, but with color that moves and changes before our eyes. Color on the screen interests us, not by its harmony but by its progression from harmony to harmony. This movement, this progression of color on the screen is an utterly new visual experience, full of wonder. The color flows from sequence to sequence like a kind of visual music and it affects our emotions precisely as music affects them.
>
> The truth is that a new form of art is about to be born into the world, an art for which there is yet no name but which holds an extraordinary and thrilling promise. Shall we call it visual opera? Color music-drama? No matter. It is enough to say that this new mobile color may quite conceivably turn out to be the art form of tomorrow.[17]

Today, filmmakers and audiences alike are becoming more sensitive to the power of color in film. Various organizations, such as the American Film Institute and the television cable channel American Movie Classics, are making extraordinary efforts to preserve the great films of the past—and especially to recapture their fading colors. Recently, for example, in preparation for yet another re-release of *Gone With the Wind*, this most popular film's Technicolor values were restored primarily through "dye transfer." Martin Scorsese has observed,

> "Color in the film is important because it reflects the drama . . . and a certain style." Scorsese says that *Gone With the Wind*'s improved look even affects the audience on an emotional and psychological level, evoking the spirit of the Old South. [He believes] "it's as important as the production design or the costuming or the direction of the film, to see it in the proper color."[18]

ANALYZING COLOR

1. If possible, watch the most powerful or memorable moments in the film on a VCR or DVD player with the color on the TV turned off. What is altered in each of the segments viewed in black and white?
2. If the film uses bright, saturated colors, turn the color down on the TV so that the colors are muted. What effect does this have on the film?
3. Is color used expressionistically anywhere in the film so that we experience the world of the film through the mind and feelings of a central character?
4. Are trademark colors used in costuming or set decoration to help us understand the personalities of any of the characters? If so, what do these colors convey about the characters?
5. Are obvious changes in color used as transitional devices in the film? If so, how effective are these transitions?
6. How important is atmospheric color in the film? Do the uses of atmospheric color reflect some purpose on the director's part? If so, what is that purpose?

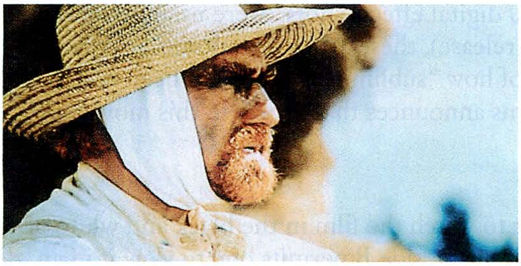
VIDEO EXERCISES

Instructions for locating specific sequences are given on page 86.

1. **Color 1.** Watch the final segment of *Taxi Driver* [4900 to the end; 1:38:25 to end], paying close attention to the color. Describe the quality of the color from 4900 to 5165 (1:38:25 to 1:45:40), and compare it with the color quality from 5165 (1:45:40) to the end.
2. **Color 2.** For each of these movies, *Days of Heaven*, *2001: A Space Odyssey*, *Summer of '42*, *The Conversation*, *Taxi Driver*, and *Moulin Rouge!* (2001), first adjust the color and tint controls on your TV so that the image shows only black and white, and then watch the first 10 minutes. Then readjust the TV image to full, balanced color, watch the same 10-minute segment again, and answer the following questions:

a. How is the overall effect of each segment altered by the addition of color?
b. What colors seem to be predominant in the film? Are they generally warm or cool colors?
c. Are the colors bright and pure (saturated) or toned down and muted (desaturated)? How is this choice related to the nature of the film and the story being told?
d. Describe specific moments in each segment where color is used to focus attention on the object of greatest interest, enhance three-dimensionality, or suggest something about a character or his or her environment.
e. Describe specific moments in each segment where atmospheric color is emphasized. What purpose can you attribute to this emphasis?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE



The title of *Akira Kurosawa's Dreams* (1990) must first be taken literally. For the film is supposedly a cinematic sleep journal of the famous Japanese director's, who has greatly influenced modern American filmmakers, including, especially, George Lucas in his *Star Wars* series. This film, somewhat like James Joyce's early literary masterpiece *Dubliners*, consists of sections that cohere thematically, even as each part is a discrete whole. Kurosawa's late anthology is made up of short (:10–:15) narratives whose techniques constitute a veritable encyclopedia of formal possibilities.

Here are the titles of the seven brief works: "Sunshine Through the Rain," "The Peach Orchard," "The Blizzard . . . ," "The Tunnel," "Crows" (in which the film director Martin Scorsese portrays Vincent van Gogh), "Mount Fuji in Red," and "Village of the Watermills." From a DVD print of this movie select one of these tracks and then closely examine its utilization of color. Within the variety of hues in each film, you can expect to find both boldness and subtlety. Attempt to connect the director's choices in colors not only with his visual image-making skill, but also with the themes you discern in his work here.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

The Art of Color in Films

O Brother, Where Art Thou?:

In a fascinating segment titled "Painting With Pixels," director of photography Roger Deakins explains how "for the first time, the look of an entire live action film was manipulated digitally," with help from Kodak's Cinesite facilities. Although the final edited prints of all films require a process called color balancing, in the case of this Coen Brothers movie, as this DVD extra demonstrates, the photographically captured colors of the entire work were radically changed in postproduction. For example, bright greens were transformed to muted golds and browns throughout, and, thus, according to Deakins, "the color in the movie became a character."

What Dreams May Come:
A substantive feature on this DVD called "The Painted Word" presents an interview with visual effects supervisor Joel Hynek and art director Josh Rosen. The two describe the innovative process by which the film is able to create the illusion that Old Master–like oil paintings are set in motion.

Pleasantville:
An extended set of featurettes deconstruct "The Art of Pleasantville." Color effects designer Michael Southard, producer Bob Degus, and director of photography John Lindley examine key scenes that were "technically the most challenging." Declaring that "1,700 digital effects shots" were used in the film (a record number at the time of its release), these artist/technicians are especially revealing in their discussion of how "subliminal" color has been used in black-and-white sequences. Degus announces that "color in this movie is a character."

The General (1998):
Side A of the disc allows the viewer to watch the film in the black and white of director John Boorman's theatrical release; side B permits one to view it in an alternative desaturated color version reportedly demanded (for financial reasons) by the studio that produced the work. (Note: Even though the DVD announces that both versions are "presented in the original 2.35:1 aspect ratio," they appear to be masked differently, causing the black-and-white image to cover more of the conventional television screen than the color version.)

FILMS FOR STUDY

Babe: Pig in the City (1998)
Barry Lyndon (1975)
Batman Begins (2005)
Bram Stoker's Dracula (1992)
Brokeback Mountain (2005)
A Clockwork Orange (1971)
The Conversation (1974)
The Cook, the Thief, His Wife & Her Lover (1989)
Cries and Whispers (1972)
The Day of the Locust (1975)
Days of Heaven (1978)
Deliverance (1972)
Do the Right Thing (1989)
Dr. Strangelove (1964)
Elizabeth (1998)
Elvira Madigan (1967)
The English Patient (1996)
Eternal Sunshine of the Spotless Mind (2004)
Frida (2002)
Garden State (2004)
The Godfather (1972)
The Godfather Part II (1974)
Gone With the Wind (1939)
Good Night, and Good Luck (2005)
The Grey Zone (2002)

Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire (2005)
Howards End (1992)
Insomnia (2002)
Ju Dou (1989)
Juliet of the Spirits (1965)
The Lost Boys (1987)
Lost in Translation (2003)
The Mask of Zorro (1998)
Midnight Cowboy (1969)
Moulin Rouge (1952) (2001)
Mrs. Henderson Presents (2005)
Napoleon (1927)
The Natural (1984)
The Navigator: A Medieval Odyssey (1988)
Near Dark (1987)
The New World (2005)
New York Stories: Life Lessons (1989)
O Brother, Where Art Thou? (2000)
One Hour Photo (2002)
Pulp Fiction (1994)
Radio Days (1987)
Raise the Red Lantern (1991)
Red Desert (1964)
The Red Shoes (1948)
Rent (2005)
Saraband (2003)
Sky Captain and the World of Tomorrow (2004)
The Taming of the Shrew (1967)
3 Women (1977)
The Umbrellas of Cherbourg (1964)
Vera Drake (2004)
Y Tu Mamá También (2001)

8

SOUND EFFECTS *and* DIALOGUE

WLT
WLT
A Prairie Home
WLT
A Prairie Home Companion
WLT
A Prairie Home Co
YAMAHA

In motion pictures both image and sound must be treated with special care. In my view, a motion picture stands or falls on the effective combination of these two factors. Truly cinematic sound is neither merely accompanying sound (easy and explanatory) nor the natural sounds captured at the time of the simultaneous recording. In other words, cinematic sound is that which does not simply add to, but multiplies, two or three times, the effect of the image.

—AKIRA KUROSAWA, DIRECTOR

SOUND AND THE MODERN FILM

Sound plays an increasingly important role in the modern film because its here-and-now reality relies heavily on the three elements that make up the soundtrack: sound effects, dialogue, and the musical score (see Chapter 9 for a discussion of this third part). These elements add levels of meaning and provide sensual and emotional stimuli that increase the range, depth, and intensity of our experience far beyond what can be achieved through visual means alone.

Because we are more *consciously* aware of what we see than of what we hear, we generally accept the soundtrack without much thought, responding intuitively to the information it provides while ignoring the complex techniques employed to create those responses. The intricacy of a finished soundtrack is illustrated by composer-conductor Leonard Bernstein's description of the sound mixer's difficult task in a single scene from *On the Waterfront:*

> For instance, he may be told to keep the audience unconsciously aware of the traffic noises of a great city, yet they must also be aware of the sounds of wind and waves coming into a large, almost empty church over those traffic noises. And meantime, the pedaling of a child's bicycle going around the church must punctuate the dialogue of two stray characters who have wandered in. Not a word of that dialogue, of course, can be lost, and the voices, at the same time, must arouse the dim echoes they would have in so cavernous a setting. And at this particular point no one (except the composer) has even begun to think how the musical background can fit in.[1]

Five different layers of sound are at work simultaneously in the brief scene that Bernstein describes, and each one contributes significantly to the total mix. But compared to many scenes in the modern film, the sounds in *On the Waterfront* are simple and traditional. They are not nearly as complex as the soundtrack for *Raging Bull*, considered a landmark in film sound.

The fight scenes in *Raging Bull* were extremely powerful, requiring the layering of as many as fifty sounds to create the final effect. As sound man Frank Warner (working in part as a **Foley artist**—i.e., one who adds sound effects during post-production) tells it:

> It was done in combining sounds. A very basic part of the punch is hitting a side of beef—that's always been used from Day One. That could be your basic beat, but then you can go from there. When a guy is hit and you see it just ripping, tearing the flesh, you can take a knife and stab and you get a real sharp, cutting sound. As the flesh gave away, water would have been added to the punch. The splatter was all done separately.[2]

Unrecognizable animal sounds and abstract bits and pieces of music were also part of the mix. For the high-velocity delivery of punches, Warner blended jet airplane sounds and the "wwwwhhhoooosssh" of arrows slowed down (Figure 8.1).

FIGURE 8.1 Mixing His Punches Sound man Frank Warner combined as many as fifty different sounds to create the effects of Jake La Motta (Robert De Niro) delivering, landing, and receiving punches in *Raging Bull.*

Filmmakers can also take advantage of digital recording technology to combine and process sounds, creating aural environments that heighten the viewer's emotional response to a scene. For example, sound editor Cecilia Hall combined as many as fifteen different layers of sound—including animal screams and trumpets—to create the fighter jet sounds in *Top Gun.* The Oscar-winning mixers and editors who helped to create Peter Jackson's *King Kong* (2005) continued to expand the complex outer limits of "layering" sound in reproduction technology.

The modern soundtrack demands so much of our conscious attention that if we want fully to appreciate a modern film, we should perhaps be prepared as much to hear the film as to see it.

DIALOGUE

A major part of our attention to sound in the modern film is naturally directed toward understanding the dialogue, for in most films dialogue gives us a great deal of important information. Film dialogue is different from stage dialogue, and we need to be aware of the unique characteristics of film dialogue.

Dialogue in a typical stage play is an extremely important element, and it is essential that the audience hear almost every word. Thus stage actors use a certain measured rhythm, carefully speaking their lines in turn and incorporating brief pauses in the question–response pattern so that the person occupying the worst seat in the house can hear each line clearly. Because film dialogue can be heard distinctly in every theater seat, this limitation does not apply to film, and dialogue can be treated much more realistically in the movies than onstage.

In *Citizen Kane*, for example, Orson Welles employed the overlapping dialogue, fragmented sentences, and interruptions common to everyday conversation without loss of essential information or dramatic power. This was achieved, as it is now in most films, through careful microphone positioning and recording, skillful editing and mixing of the recorded sound, and subtle variations in sound quality (volume, clarity, reverberation, and tonal qualities). Through such means, the modern filmmaker creates the impression of a highly selective ear tuned to what it wants or needs to hear. The most important sounds are singled out, emphasized, and made clear; those of less importance are blurred or muted. In such works as *Gosford Park* and *A Prairie Home Companion*, Robert Altman orchestrates this process brilliantly—while still insisting that audiences watch his movies repeatedly so they can see and hear more of the multiple elements he carefully places in each film frame.

Film dialogue can also be delivered at a much more rapid pace than can stage dialogue. Director Frank Capra put this capability to good use in *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington* and *Mr. Deeds Goes to Town.* He utilized compressed, machine-gun-paced dialogue in phone conversations that get necessary but nondramatic exposition out of the way so he could get down to the serious business of telling his stories.

The old adage that a picture is worth a thousand words is especially true in film. Filmmakers must, first of all, use dialogue with great restraint to avoid repeating what has already been made clear visually. Furthermore, film's dramatic power and cinematic qualities are both diminished if dialogue is used to communicate what could be expressed more powerfully through visual means. In some cases, the most dramatically effective results are achieved through sparse or monosyllabic dialogue, and in a few modern films, dialogue is dispensed with entirely. This is not to say that dialogue should never dominate the screen. But it should do so only when the dramatic situation demands it. As a general rule, dialogue in film should be subordinate to the visual image and should seldom assume the dominant role of dialogue on the stage.

THREE-DIMENSIONALITY IN SOUND

In *Citizen Kane* (1941), which is generally conceded to be the first modern sound film, Orson Welles created a strong impression of three-dimensional sound without the benefit of the multiple soundtracks and speakers required for true stereo. Perhaps more conscious of the importance of sound and its potential for subtleties because of his radio experience, Welles achieved this effect by varying the sound quality (volume, clarity, reverberation, and tonal qualities) of voices and sound effects to reflect their relative distance from the camera. A sense of aural three-dimensionality was achieved to match the three-dimensional image of Gregg Toland's deep-focus cinematography. This three-dimensionality was achieved on one track (monaural sound) by making voices and sounds sound close up or far away—without the left and right separation of stereo (which is achieved by recording on two separate tracks and then using two or more speakers to play back what was recorded).

In 1952, true three-dimensionality of sound was achieved by combining the techniques pioneered by Welles with a six-track stereophonic system in the triple wide-screen *This Is Cinerama.* A four-track system was introduced to match the Cinemascope image of *The Robe* in 1953. But as the number of wide-screen films being produced declined and the studios and independent producers returned to the standard screen format, the interest in stereophonic sound declined also.

In the mid-1970s, a different attempt was made to achieve spectacular sound effects in theaters with Sensurround. The Sensurround system derived its sound from two closet-size speaker cabinets located at the rear corners of the theater. These powerful speakers were designed to literally shake the entire theater, but the system was used for relatively few films, such as *Earthquake* (1974) and *Midway* (1976). In *Midway*, the rear speakers effectively provided a realistic 360-degree sound environment by using techniques such as the following: The camera, positioned on one side of an aircraft carrier, looks up toward a kamikaze plane diving toward the carrier. The soundtrack in front grows louder until the plane roars right overhead. Then the huge speaker boxes in the rear take over to complete the roar and give us the sounds and shock waves of the explosion on the deck behind us.

At about the same period (1974), the Dolby system was introduced. An audio recording system that reduces background noise and increases frequency range, it was combined with a system called "surround sound" from Tate Audio Ltd. to produce a multitrack stereophonic system for theaters. **Dolby-Surround Sound** employs an encoding process that achieves a 360-degree sound field and creates the effect of a greater number of separate speakers than are actually required. It has been used with great power and effectiveness, achieving the effect of hissing snakes all around us in *Raiders of the Lost Ark* and the cheering fight crowd, managers, and trainers in *Raging Bull* and in more recent films, such as *Gladiator* (2000) and *Cinderella Man* (2005).

In Wolfgang Petersen's *Das Boot*, an incredible sense of a 360-degree sound environment is created both inside the confined quarters of the German U-boat and in the sea around and above it. The quality of each sound is unique: a strumming guitar, a radio, a phonograph, men talking and laughing, clanging horns, engine noises—all seem to come from different sources and give us a sense of being there. *Das Boot* is a film full of listening. The crew first strains to hear the creaking of collapsing bulkheads on a ship they sink; then later, with the sub nestled on the bottom in hiding from a destroyer on the surface, the crew grows

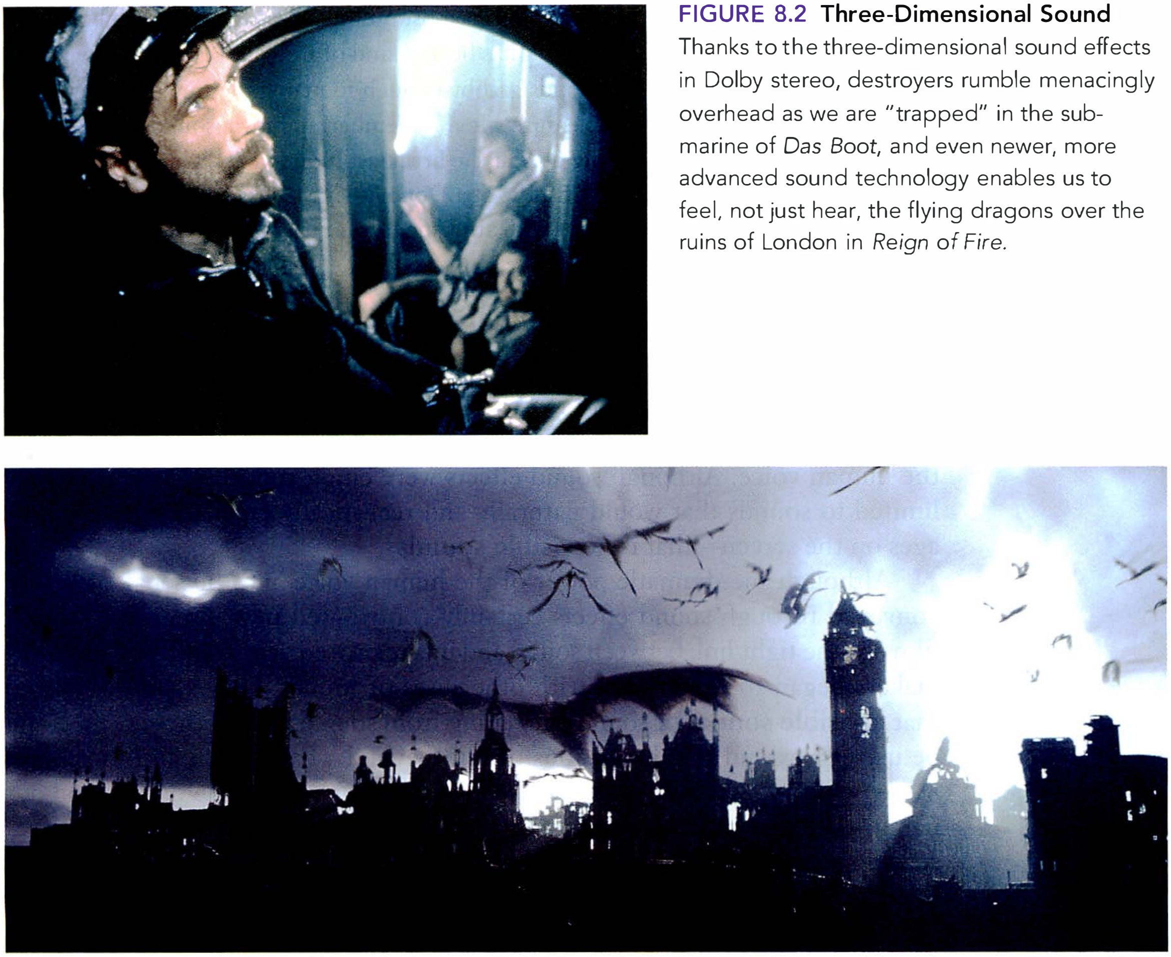


FIGURE 8.2 Three-Dimensional Sound Thanks to the three-dimensional sound effects in Dolby stereo, destroyers rumble menacingly overhead as we are "trapped" in the submarine of *Das Boot*, and even newer, more advanced sound technology enables us to feel, not just hear, the flying dragons over the ruins of London in *Reign of Fire*.

deathly quiet so as not to give away the sub's position. Their silence emphasizes every noise, which the Dolby stereo locates with pinpoint accuracy. We hear the destroyer's pinging sonar and every turn of its screw as it passes overhead, growing louder and then softer. As the sub sits on the bottom, at a great depth, we hear the rivets straining, then popping, and the sound of water spraying in as parts of the boat fail to withstand the tremendous pressure (Figure 8.2).

Ironically, despite the care lavished on crafting soundtracks these days, many filmgoers never fully experience them. Too many of the theaters in the United States (most of which are older and small suburban ones) simply do not have the capability to reproduce the quality or the dimensions of the sound recorded in the films they show. Still, according to *Newsweek*, this situation has been steadily "improving":

> Six years ago, only a few hundred theaters were equipped to play ear-blasting digital sound. Then "Jurassic Park" was offered to theaters on condition that they

> upgrade their sound equipment. Today [most multiplex theaters] . . . can handle state-of-the-art digital. The result has been a kind of free market of noise, with filmmakers competing for sounds grabby enough to match their eye-popping visuals. . . . If we shiver with pleasure when remembering movie sounds from long ago—the newspapers rustling during the breakfast montage in "Citizen Kane," or the recalled waltz music in "Shadow of a Doubt"—it isn't because they were loud, it's because they were pregnant with atmosphere and character.[3]

VISIBLE AND INVISIBLE SOUND

In the early days of the sound film, the emphasis was placed on recorded sound that was synchronized with the visual image. As the popular term *talking pictures* indicates, the audience of that time was fascinated by the reproduction of the human voice. Although sound effects were employed, they were generally limited to sounds that would naturally and realistically emanate from the images on the screen—that is, to **visible sounds.**

Although the dramatic power of the human voice and the sense of reality conveyed through sound effects certainly contributed new dimensions to the film art, the tight link between sound and image proved very confining, and filmmakers began to experiment with other uses of sound. They soon discovered that **invisible sound,** or sound emanating from sources *not* on the screen, could be used to extend the dimensions of film beyond what is seen and to achieve more powerful dramatic effects as well. Once they realized the unique and dynamic potential of invisible sound, they were able to free sound from its restricted role of simply accompanying the image. Invisible sounds now function in a highly expressive or even symbolic way as independent images, sometimes carrying as much significance as the visual image, and occasionally even more.

This creative use of invisible sound is important to the modern film for a variety of reasons. To begin with, many of the sounds around us in real life are invisible, simply because we find it unnecessary or impossible to look at their sources. Realizing this, filmmakers now employ sound as a separate storytelling element capable of providing information by itself. Sound used in this way complements the image instead of merely duplicating its effects. For example, if we hear the sound of a closing door, we can tell that someone has left the room even if we do not see an accompanying image. Thus, the camera is freed from what might be considered routine chores and can focus on the subject of the greatest significance. This is especially important when the emphasis is on reaction instead of action, when the camera leaves the face of the speaker to focus on the face of the listener.

In some cases invisible sound can have a more powerful effect alone than would be possible with an accompanying image. The human mind is equipped with an eye much more powerful than that of the camera. An effective sound

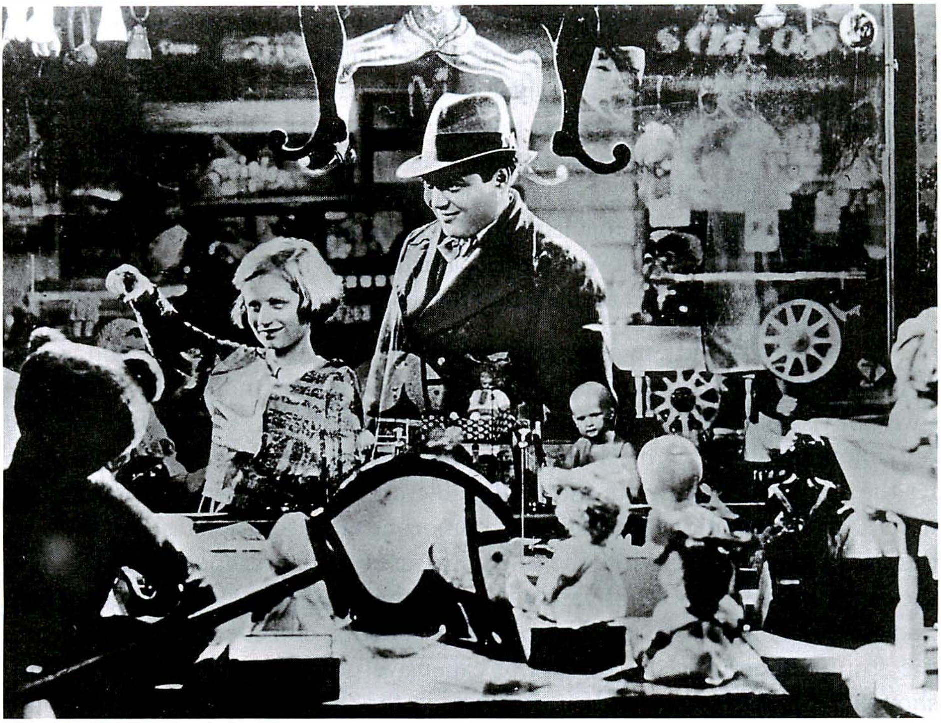


FIGURE 8.3 Off-Screen (Invisible) Sound In *M,* an early sound film, an inventive use of off-screen sound builds mystery and suspense as the child killer (Peter Lorre) announces his presence by whistling bits of a classical theme before he appears on the screen.

image can trigger a response in our imagination much stronger than any visual image. In the horror film, for example, invisible sounds can create a total, terror-charged atmosphere. Story elements that heighten and intensify our emotional response—the clank of chains, muffled footsteps on a creaking stair, a stifled scream, the opening of a creaking door, the howl of a wolf, or even unidentifiable sounds—are much more effective when the sources are *not* seen (Figure 8.3).

As demonstrated by the description of the scene from *On the Waterfront* given at the beginning of this chapter, invisible sounds (such as the sounds of city traffic, wind and waves, and the child's bicycle) are routinely used to intensify the filmgoer's sense of really being there. And by encircling the viewer with the natural sounds of the scene's immediate environment, the soundtrack suggests a reality beyond the limits of the visual frame. In some films, however, realistic sounds that naturally occur in the story's environment may be distracting for the audience and must be eliminated to maintain the film's focus. Sound editor Skip Lievsay has used this approach in his work on several films for director Spike Lee:

> Quite often with Spike's movies we don't really have nominal city sounds. We don't have a lot of traffic, we do not have any sirens—unless you see police cars—no crying babies, no screaming, no shouting matches, because as much as they are a part of ordinary life in the city, they're too dramatic, and it's too distracting to have to sort out whether or not dramatically we want to hear those reminders of where we are. The relationship in Spike's movies is more between the people than between the people and their environment. All of his films have very specific scenes that are about the relationship between the people and the environment. In those scenes we use those sounds, but for the rest of the time we try not to use them at all.[4]

In comedy, sound can effectively substitute for the visual image and is usually used to depict comic catastrophes set up and made completely predictable through visual means. For example, in a scene picturing a crazy inventor trying out a homemade flying machine, the picture may show the launching and then let the soundtrack illustrate the predictable crash. A dual purpose is achieved here: Our imaginations intensify the humorous effect of the crash by forming their own picture of it, while the camera focuses on the reactions registered on the faces of the onlookers, which become the focal point of comic interest. Such use of sound also has clear practical benefits, considering the danger to the stuntman and the destruction of expensive properties that go along with showing the crash visually. If sound is used for the crash, the would-be pilot needs only to stagger on-screen, battered and dirty, draped in a few recognizable fragments of the plane.

Thus, sound effects achieve their most original and effective results not through simultaneous use with the visual image but as independent images, enhancing and enriching the picture rather than merely duplicating it.

POINTS OF VIEW IN SOUND

In a film shot from the **objective point of view** the characters and the action of a scene are perceived as if by a somewhat remote observer who looks calmly on the events without becoming emotionally or physically involved. Camera and microphone perceive the characters externally, from the sidelines, without stepping in to assume the role of participants. The **subjective point of view,** in contrast, is that of one who is intensely involved, either emotionally or physically, in the happenings on the screen. In the completely subjective view, camera and microphone become the eyes and ears of a character in the film; they see and hear exactly what that character sees and hears.

Because maintaining the subjective point of view consistently is difficult if not impossible in film, most directors choose to alternate between the two viewpoints, first establishing each situation clearly from an objective viewpoint, then cutting to a relatively brief subjective shot, and then repeating the same pattern. In each shot, the camera and the microphone *together* create the unified impression of a single viewpoint, so the volume and quality of the sound vary in direct relationship to camera positioning. For example, sounds audible in a subjective close-up may not be audible in an objective long shot, and vice versa. This alternation between the objective and subjective viewpoints, and the tight link between camera and microphone, is further illustrated by the workman-with-air-hammer scene described in Chapter 5:

> **Establishing shot:** Objective camera view from street corner, focusing on a workman using an air hammer in center of street (apparent distance: 50 to 75 feet). *Sound:* Loud chatter of air hammer, mingled with other street noises.
>
> **Cut to subjective view:** Close-ups of air hammer and violently shaking lower arms and hands of workman, from workman's point of view. *Sound:* Hammer is almost deafening—no other sounds heard.
>
> **Cut back to objective camera:** Heavy truck turns corner beyond workman, bears down on him at top speed. *Sound:* Loud clatter of air hammer, other street noises, rising sound of approaching truck.
>
> **Cut to subjective view:** Close-up of air hammer and workman's hands as seen from his viewpoint. *Sound:* First only deafening sounds of air hammer, then a rising squeal of brakes mixed with hammer noise.
>
> **Quick cut to new subjective view:** Front of truck closing quickly on camera from 10 feet away. *Sound:* Squeal of brakes louder, hammer stops, woman's voice screaming, cut short by sickening thud, followed by darkness and momentary silence.
>
> **Cut back to objective viewpoint** (from street corner): Unconscious figure of workman in front of stopped truck. Curious crowd gathering into circle. *Sound:* Mixed jumble of panicked voices, street noises, ambulance siren in distance.

Sometimes the soundtrack is used to communicate what goes on in a character's mind. When that is the case, the link between camera and microphone is slightly different. The camera usually only suggests the subjective view by picturing the character's face in tight close-up and relies on the soundtrack to make the subjectivity of the viewpoint clear. Just as the image is in close-up, the sound is in close-up, too. In most cases the sound quality is distorted slightly to signal that the sounds being heard are not part of the natural scene but come from inside the character's mind. The camera also makes this distinction clear by focusing tightly on the character's eyes. The eyes loom large enough to fill the entire screen and thus become a window of the mind through which we read the character's inner state. The camera in such a sequence can remain in tight close-up while the soundtrack communicates the character's thoughts or sounds and voices from his or her memory. Or the sequence may merely act as a transition to a *visual* flashback. These sequences are frequently filmed in **soft focus** (a slight blurring of focus for effect), another clue to their subjective

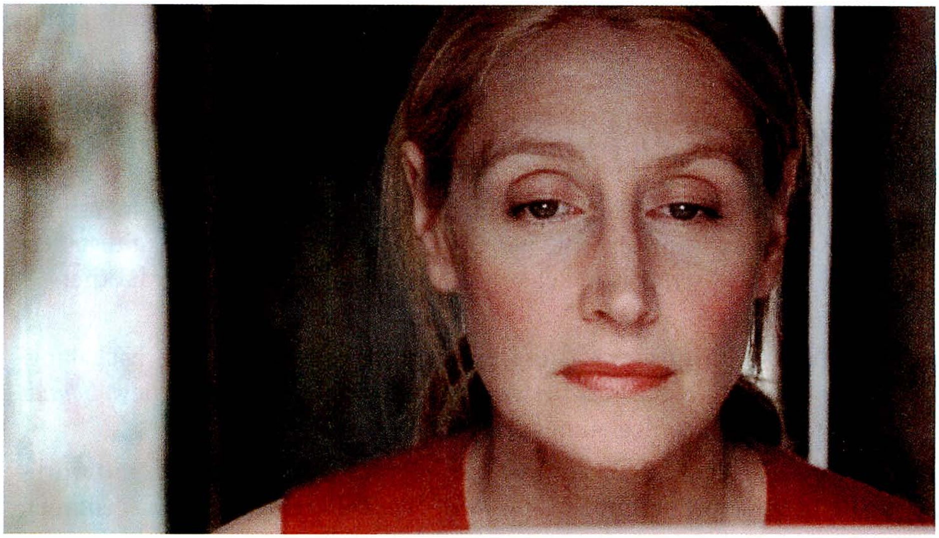


FIGURE 8.4 The Eyes As a Window of the Mind In *The Dying Gaul*, writer/director Craig Lucas scrutinizes a suspense-filled love/hate triangle involving a wealthy, influential Hollywood couple (Campbell Scott and Patricia Clarkson) and an aspiring screenwriter (Peter Sarsgaard). At a crucial point in the narrative, while the wife is sitting at her laptop communicating electronically with her new friend, the writer, she experiences a shocking epiphany about her husband. Repeatedly, Lucas's camera snakes up and over the top of the computer, zooming in close on her revealing eyes. Silence intensifies the moment. Simultaneously, as the writer himself experiences a moving series of flashbacks including his recently deceased lover, his eyes are also explored in extreme close-up.

nature (Figure 8.4). These techniques are especially useful to filmmakers in presenting dreams. In *The Conversation*, when Francis Ford Coppola needs to indicate that the uptight Harry Caul (Gene Hackman) is having a feverish nightmare, the director begins with a tight shot of the character's sleeping face and then returns repeatedly to it as the dream progresses.

Unusual inner emotional states are also represented by the soundtrack through use of variations in volume, reverberation, or other distortions in the voices or natural sounds that the character hears. Physical reactions such as extreme shock, excitement, or even illness are sometimes suggested by drumbeats, which supposedly represent a high pulse rate or a pounding heart. Extreme amplification and distortion of natural sounds are also used to suggest a hysterical state of mind.

SPECIAL USES OF SOUND EFFECTS AND DIALOGUE

The sound formulas described above have been used over and over again. Innovative filmmakers have used sound effects and dialogue creatively for a variety of specialized purposes.

FIGURE 8.5 Telling an Inner Story Via Heightened Natural Sounds Marlon Brando, playing a supremely conflicted character named Terry Malloy, speaks earnestly and loudly in this scene from Elia Kazan's *On the Waterfront*, but the moviegoer can hardly hear his voice. For, as Malloy attempts to explain to his girlfriend Edie that he bears guilt for her brother's death, the exaggerated ambient sounds of dockworker machinery at once obliterate dialogue and help to clarify the pain of both his confession and Edie's sudden understanding.

Sound Effects to Tell an Inner Story

Directors manipulate and distort sound for artistic ends—to put us inside a character so that we can understand what he or she is feeling. In a powerful scene from *On the Waterfront*, Elia Kazan employs the sounds of the waterfront to dramatize the emotions of Terry Malloy (Marlon Brando) and Edie Doyle (Eva Marie Saint). The priest (Karl Malden) has just convinced Terry to confess to Edie (whom he now loves) that he was involved in setting up the murder of her brother by corrupt union officials. The priest and Terry stand on a hill overlooking the waterfront, and when Edie appears walking toward them on the flats below, Terry hurries down the steep hill to meet her. Almost imperceptibly at first, the rhythmic hammering of a pile driver, which has been a part of the natural sound environment, grows increasingly louder as Terry approaches Edie, thus making us aware of the fear he feels about leveling with her. As he reaches the crucial part of his confession, the steam whistle on a nearby ship shrieks loudly, obscuring his words as we watch his anguished face trying to tell the story we already know. With the deafening shriek of the whistle, we are suddenly inside Edie—feeling the shock, the horror, and the disbelief of what she has just heard, as she covers her ears with her hands to protest a truth she cannot accept. The steam whistle stops just before Terry finishes his story, and as he finishes, Edie stares at him for a moment in disbelief, then turns and runs away from him in panic, her action accompanied by high, wailing violins. The scene's dramatic intensity is literally beyond words—the faces and the internalized sounds alone tell the entire story (Figure 8.5).

In *All That Jazz*, Bob Fosse takes a totally different approach in his directing of Joe Gideon's "heart-attack warning" scene. At the opening of the scene, everything is normal. Cast members for a new musical are sitting around reading dialogue from a very funny script. The entire cast periodically breaks into laughter. Suddenly, without warning, we no longer hear the laughter—we still see the faces laughing, but the sound is gone. The soundtrack carries only the close-up sounds of stage-musical director Joe Gideon (Roy Scheider). We hear him striking a match, his finger drumming on the table, a labored breathing, his wristwatch ticking, and his shoe grinding out a cigarette on the floor. With all sound external to Gideon cut off (despite constant visual reminders that we should be hearing it) and every close-up sound of Gideon magnified, Fosse has literally grabbed us by the ears, pulled us inside Joe Gideon's circulatory system, and sent a clear message that something's terribly wrong here. After Gideon holds a pencil in both hands behind the chair, snaps it in two, and drops the pieces, the sound returns to normal, the reading ends, and the room is vacated. The next scene shows three of the producers in the back of the cab discussing his symptoms and the fact that he is now in the hospital undergoing tests.

Distortion of Sound to Suggest Subjective States

In *When a Stranger Calls*, Carol Kane, as a teenage babysitter, receives threatening phone calls from a psychopathic killer, who repeatedly asks her, "Why haven't you checked the children?" The police finally trace the call to another phone *within* the house. Before the police can get there, the children are brutally murdered. The killer is captured and imprisoned. Seven years later, Kane is married and has two children of her own. On the evening that the killer escapes from prison, Kane's husband takes her out for a special dinner celebrating a job promotion, and they leave their children in the care of a babysitter. As they settle down to their meal in the restaurant, a waiter tells Kane that she has a telephone call at the cashier's desk. She unsuspectingly answers the phone, assuming the babysitter has called with a question. We do hear a question in the receiver—but it's the killer's voice, cold and metallic: "Have you checked the children . . . ildren . . . dren . . . ren?" The familiar but distorted voice echoes louder and louder, blending into her hysterical scream as we are suddenly yanked inside her fear and horror. Thus, through sound exaggeration the viewer becomes intensely involved in the emotional state of the character.

The "Personality" of Mechanical Sounds

Mechanical sounds can be integrated into the overall tone of a specific scene by giving them personalities. In *The Grapes of Wrath*, John Ford uses the different personalities of two auto horns to underscore the emotions in a scene. As the Joad family stands around the yard welcoming Tom back from prison, Tom's brother Al drives up in the old Joad truck and joins in the happy scene with a bright cheerful *uugga!* from the truck's horn. The celebration continues for a minute or so until it is suddenly interrupted by an ominous, low-pitched, and insultingly loud horn as the convertible driven by the land and cattle company representative pulls up. The horn freezes the Joads as it sounds, and they wait meekly for the reminder they know is coming: They must be off the land by the next day.

Slow-Motion Sound

Walter Hill matches slow-motion sound to slow-motion action in the final shootout scene of *The Long Riders*. After robbing a bank in Northfield, Minnesota, the James gang finds itself trapped. As gang members attempt their getaway, gunmen on top of buildings and behind barricades throw up a wall of bullets. At first, the action is a mixture of normal and slow motion. As outlaws and townsmen are wounded, the action goes into slow motion as they reel or fall, and the sound slows down. These brief, slow scenes are alternated with scenes shown at normal speed. But as the action intensifies and focuses on the outlaws as they are riddled with bullets, the *whole sequence* goes into slow-motion picture and sound. The surreal slowness of the image draws us closer to the gang members, and the slow-motion sound makes us feel their pain as the bullets tear into their flesh. The total effect is eerie, with low whistling sounds, muffled roars, grotesquely slowed horse whinnies, and low-pitch human grunts and groans (Figure 8.6).

Martin Scorsese similarly uses slow-motion sound in *Raging Bull* to portray Jake La Motta's (Robert De Niro) fatigue in a difficult fight and to isolate the effect of a single, crucial blow.

Ironic Juxtaposition of Sound and Image

Usually picture and sound work together to carry a single set of impressions. It is occasionally effective, however, to create ironic contrasts between them. In *The Grapes of Wrath*, the Joads have just stopped along the road to look down on a lush green valley of California orchards, their first glimpse at the land of milk and honey they expected. There are cries of glee, excitement, and amazement, accompanied by birds chirping. The camera cuts to Ma Joad as she appears around the back of the truck. We know that Grandma is dead and that Ma Joad has concealed this from the others until they could reach the promised land of California. The cheerful noises that continue provide an ironic counterpoint to Ma's tired, grief-stricken face, serving to strengthen its impact.

Placing Unusual Emphasis on Sound

A director who wishes to place some unusual emphasis on sound has several options. Two obvious methods involve de-emphasizing the visual image: (1) dropping

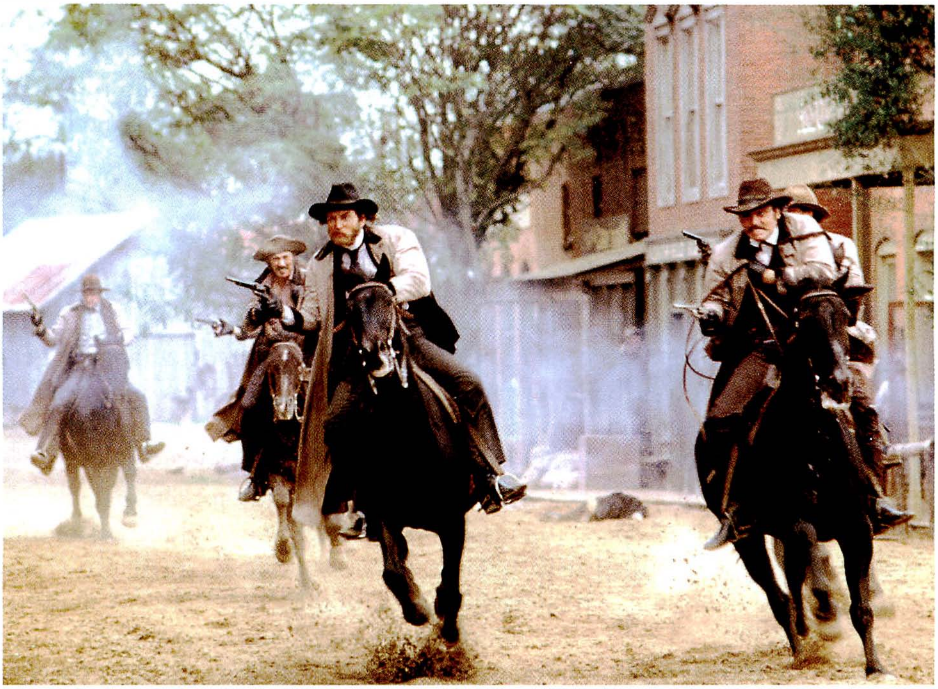


FIGURE 8.6 Slow-Motion Sound Unusual effects are achieved by the use of slow-motion sound as members of the James gang are shot up by townspeople as they try to make their escape after a bank robbery in *The Long Riders*.

the image altogether by fading to black or (2) purposely making the image uninteresting or dull by holding a meaningless shot for a long period or by prolonging the use of **dead screen** (screen area in which there is little or no interesting visual information).

In *Reds*, to catch our attention and introduce us to the unusual device of the witnesses (old people who actually knew John Reed and Louise Bryant), director Warren Beatty starts the witnesses' testimony before the images begin. The voices start about halfway through the opening, as we watch white credits unfold over a black screen. At the end of the film, the witnesses continue their interesting and significant comments as the visual image fades and is followed by the ending credits, shown again in white against black.

In *Citizen Kane*, Orson Welles employs the dead-screen technique during one of Susan Alexander Kane's (Dorothy Comingore) opera performances. The camera cuts from the performance and begins a long, slow tilt upward, following a pair of cables up the bare gray walls behind the scenery. Faced with looking at this incredibly boring dead screen, we are forced to listen to the painfully off-key voice. The slow tilt is stretched out by the use of an optical printer just the right amount of time so that we properly appreciate our reward at the end, when the camera finally stops at the two technicians on the catwalk. We gain

FIGURE 8.7 Exaggerated Sound Effects The amplified sounds of gunfire add greatly to the intensity of several action scenes in *Bonnie and Clyde*.

relief from our pain (and our suspense at where this long journey upward over the dead gray background is leading) as one of the technicians holds his nose to indicate his response to the music we have all been suffering through.

The simplest and most obvious way to emphasize a sound is to increase its volume. In *Bonnie and Clyde*, Arthur Penn underscores the violence by amplifying the roar of the gunfire (Figure 8.7) and the constant shrieking of Blanche Barrow (Estelle Parsons). A similar amplification of sound to underscore violence occurs in *Shane*, where gunshots and the sounds of a fistfight are exaggerated. An especially effective use of amplified sound occurs in the fight between Shane (Alan Ladd) and Joe Starret (Van Heflin) to see which of them will go to town for a showdown with the Ryker clan. The fight is filmed from an extremely low angle: The combatants are framed under the belly of a panicked horse. As the fighters struggle, the horse prances, and the pounding of each hoof is amplified to match its closeness to the camera. The violence panics other animals, who join in the chorus: A barking dog and a bawling cow trying to break out of her stall join in to accompany the snorts, the whinnies, and the pounding hoofs of the panicked horse. Although the sounds of the fistfight in the background are audible, they are somewhat de-emphasized by the loudness of the closer horse hoofs, but the violence of that fight is actually intensified by the exaggerated sound environment.

Moments of stark terror can also be enhanced through amplified sound. Steven Spielberg had composer John Williams use a sudden loud chord as part of one of the major scare scenes in *Jaws*, as a face suddenly appears through a hole in the bottom of the boat Richard Dreyfuss is examining. As Spielberg describes it:

> That's part of the scare. The chord, of course, comes after the face comes out. First you react to the face, then the chord comes a fraction of a second later. It's very easy to scare people with noise, to lift you from your chair with a loud sound. John Carpenter does it with his films all the time. Billy Friedkin did it in *The Exorcist*, with the bureau drawers opening—it wasn't so scary to hear the drawers opening, but he had the volume turned up all the way, and you jumped out of your seats when you heard it in Dolby Stereo.[5]

Using Sound for Texture, Time, and Temperature

In *McCabe & Mrs. Miller*, Robert Altman experimented with a new approach to dialogue and sound recording. In this and such later films as *Nashville*, *The Player*, and *Short Cuts*, he seems to be moving away from the dramatic enhancement of dialogue and sound and toward a thick, realistic sound texture in which dialogue can become a series of fragmented, blurred, and unseparated utterances, equal to but not dramatically more important than the **ambient sounds** (sounds natural to the scene's environment). By blurring the sharp edges of dialogue and thereby de-emphasizing the words, Altman increases our consciousness of the visual elements and weaves visual and aural elements into a more nearly equal blend, creating a unique texture in the film. The ambient sound is thick, rich, and detailed but not dramatically enhanced. In *McCabe & Mrs. Miller*, the stomping and shuffling of boots against a rough wooden floor are there right along with the mumbled, naturalistic dialogue. Typical of the difference in Altman's approach is a scene in which McCabe (Warren Beatty) and another man pass through a crowded saloon on their way upstairs. Someone is telling a joke at the bar, and we hear fragments of it as they pass through, but as they start up the stairs, their loud footsteps obscure the punch line.

Everything in *McCabe & Mrs. Miller* sounds real: the rain, a chair scraped across a floor, mumbled poker-game dialogue, moaning wind, a jug skidding across the ice, gunshots and their reverberation. Sound is often stacked on sound, voice on voice, but stacked in a new way so that we get a strong sense of being there—in a different place and a different time. The texture is so real that we feel the rain and the cold wind and even smell the smoke.

Sound can be an important element in **period pieces** (films that take place not in the present but in some earlier period of history). By recording the sounds made by authentic objects from the era, filmmakers can enhance the story's credibility for the audience. Mark Mangini used this technique to add realism to Steven Soderbergh's film *Kafka:*

> I spent two months in Prague recording sound and music for *Kafka*. I spent a lot of time on the set recording everything that moved so that I would have good, clean recordings of every prop. I got great recordings of old typewriters, telephones, horse-and-buggies, etc. There was even a scene that got cut out that introduced a bizarre three-wheeled motorcar that I could never have found here in the States. I recorded many things that I could never have found here, but more to the point I recorded the actual things used in the movie and recorded them in the acoustically appropriate environment as used in the film. I think this kind of recording adds a verisimilitude to the sound track that cannot be gotten in postproduction.[6]

Sound-effects editors can even influence the audience's perception of temperature. The film *Body Heat* is set in Florida, and the heat generated by both the weather and the passion of the main characters is central to the story. When the film was shot, however, Florida's temperatures were low, and a cold wind blew constantly. Sound-effects editors added the sounds of crickets, flapping palm fronds, and wind chimes to create the illusion that the film's action occurred in the intense, humid heat of summer.

Skip Lievsay also used sound to raise the temperature of *Do the Right Thing*, set in New York on the hottest day of summer:

> Certain backgrounds like a breeze in the park, nice birds, and happy things just seemed to us to be too cooling. We went with a dry trafficky sound. We did find if we used a little more top end, it would seem just a little bit hotter. For the sequence where people take showers, I recorded some sound effects, and the hottest one by far was the one that seemed the most like steam; it was a very sizzly sound. The tubby, gurgling sound was much more cooling, so we used the sizzling one instead. The dull traffic we used in the picture made that block seem more remote, almost like it was out in the desert.[7]

SOUND AS A PLOT DEVICE

With innovations in sound-recording technology have come two films that build suspense and important plot elements around recorded sound. Much in the same way that Michelangelo Antonioni used photographic techniques to intensify suspense in *Blow-Up*, Brian De Palma used sound-recording technology to answer a basic dramatic question in *Blow Out:* Was the sound just before a fatal car crash caused by a tire blowing out, or were there really two sounds—a rifle shot immediately followed by the blowout? A similar but more intriguing use of recorded sound occurs in Francis Ford Coppola's *The Conversation*. Gene Hackman plays a private investigator specializing in electronic listening devices. While testing some new equipment, he records a young couple's conversation, the full import of which he learns only after playing and replaying the tape and re-evaluating certain assumptions in light of discovering that the true meaning depends on the subtle emphasis on a single word (Figure 8.8).

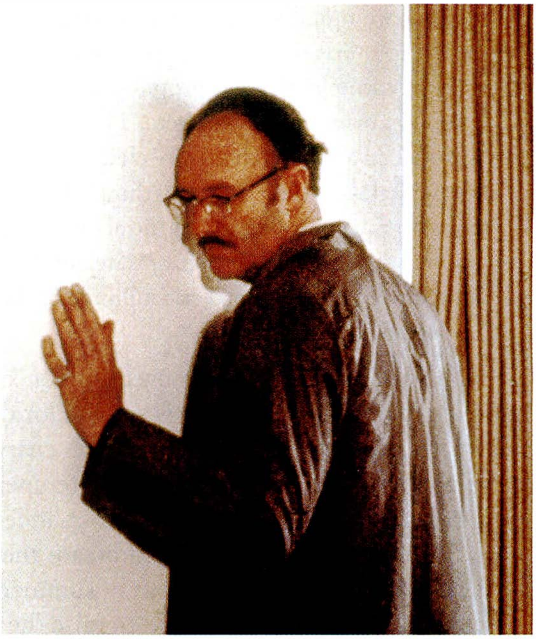


FIGURE 8.8 **Sound as a Plot Device** A professional electronic eavesdropper (Gene Hackman) is troubled by what he has heard in a recorded conversation between a young couple in *The Conversation*. The entire plot of the film hinges on interpreting subtle differences in emphasis during their brief exchange.

SOUND AS A TRANSITIONAL ELEMENT

Sound is also an extremely important transitional device in films. It can be used to show the relationship between shots, scenes, or sequences, or it can make a change in image from one shot or sequence to another seem more fluid or natural.

A fluid and graceful transition between sequences is achieved through the slight overlapping of sound from one shot into the next. The sound from a shot continues even after the image fades or dissolves into an entirely new image. This overlapping usually represents a passage of time, a change of setting, or both. A similar effect is created by the converse—the sound of an *upcoming* sequence slightly precedes its corresponding image. Both versions of this device are used frequently in Mike Nichols's *The Graduate*. In many cases, sound may overlap sound; the sound from one image fades under the rising sound of the succeeding image. This device provides a smooth flow of sound from one sequence to another when abrupt changes in sound are not desirable.

Sound links, aural bridges between scenes or sequences (changes in place or time), are created through the use of similar or identical sounds in both sequences. For example, a buzzing alarm clock at the end of one sequence becomes a buzzing telephone switchboard at the start of the next. Sound is thus used as a somewhat artificial link between the two sequences to create a sense of fluid continuity. Sometimes even dialogue links provide transition between two sequences. A question asked by a character at the close of one sequence may be answered by another character at the start of the following sequence, even though the two scenes may be set in different times and places.

Sometimes dialogue transitions are ironic, resulting in a sharp or startling contrast between the scenes being joined. Consider, for example, the effect if one scene's last line of dialogue had a character say: "I don't care what happens! Nothing on the face of the Earth could entice me to go to Paris!" and the next scene opened with the same character walking by the Eiffel Tower. Often, as in *The Graduate* and *Cabaret*, this device is used effectively along with the jump cut.

Dozens of examples of dynamic and unusual uses of sound can be found in *Citizen Kane*. Orson Welles employs a variety of sound links to blend scenes and explosive changes in volume to propel us from one scene to another.

VOICE-OVER NARRATION

The filmmaker can also employ sound that has no *direct* relationship to the natural sounds and dialogue involved in the story. A human voice off-screen, called **voice-over narration,** has a variety of functions. It is perhaps most commonly used as an expository device to convey necessary background information or fill in gaps for continuity that cannot be presented dramatically. Some films use voice-over narration only at the beginning to give necessary background, place the action in historical perspective, or provide a sense of authenticity. Others may employ voice-over at the beginning, occasionally in the body of the film for transition or continuity, and at the end.

The flavor of a novelistic first-person point of view is often provided through the use of voice-over (Figure 8.9). This can be accomplished by setting the story in a frame. A visually introduced narrator tells the story through a series of **flashbacks** (as in *Little Big Man*, *The Glass Menagerie*, *Chaplin*, and *De-Lovely*), or the narrator is never introduced visually but is only the voice of a participant recalling past events. In *To Kill a Mockingbird*, for example, the voice-over narration (by an uncredited Kim Stanley) is obviously by an adult relating childhood recollections, but the narrator is never pictured. The adult narrator of that film, in a soft, Southern voice, provides a sense of time and place, describing the pace and style of life in the town of Macomb. Then, by ending the introductory voice-over with "that summer I was six years old" just as Scout Finch appears on the screen, the narrator slips easily from the adult remembering the past into young Scout's viewpoint and the present tense of the film.

The narrator for *Summer of '42* performs a similar function (establishing place, time, and point of view) but comments more philosophically on the significance of the events to Hermie, the point-of-view character. Both *To Kill a Mockingbird* and *Summer of '42* employ great restraint in their use of voice-over narration, as does *The Age of Innocence* (1993) in its utilization of the voice of Joanne Woodward.

The film versions of some novels must depend on voice-over to tell a story that cannot be told effectively through cinematic means. Such is the case with *The Old Man and the Sea*, where the most important part of the story takes place

FIGURE 8.9 Voice-Over Narration as Remembering Effective and restrained use of voice-over narration provides a framework for a journey into the past in *Life Is Beautiful.*

in the old man's mind, in his reactions to what happens rather than in the events themselves. The voice-over becomes a noncinematic compromise. Spencer Tracy, who plays the old man Santiago, simply reads passages from the novel that communicate the character's thoughts and feelings about the action, but the narration is forced to carry far too much of the burden. The literary style of the narration and its excessive use combine to make us feel that we're reading a movie.

In *Apocalypse Now,* Martin Sheen's narration, necessary to glue together an otherwise incoherent film, flattens the dramatic impact of the visuals by overinterpreting and overexplaining, by telling us too many things we can see for ourselves. Here the voice-over gets in the way. By telling us too much about "the horror," the film prevents us from discovering it for ourselves (Figure 8.10). As a result, we never really feel that horror. In a similar way, the added voice-over narration in the theatrical version (vs. the director's cut) of *Blade Runner* weakens its drama.

The voice-over technique is sometimes employed as an ironic counterpoint, providing a level of meaning that is in direct contrast to the image on the screen. In *Raising Arizona,* Hi (Nicolas Cage) provides a formal and stilted but touchingly unperceptive interpretation of the zany events unfolding before our

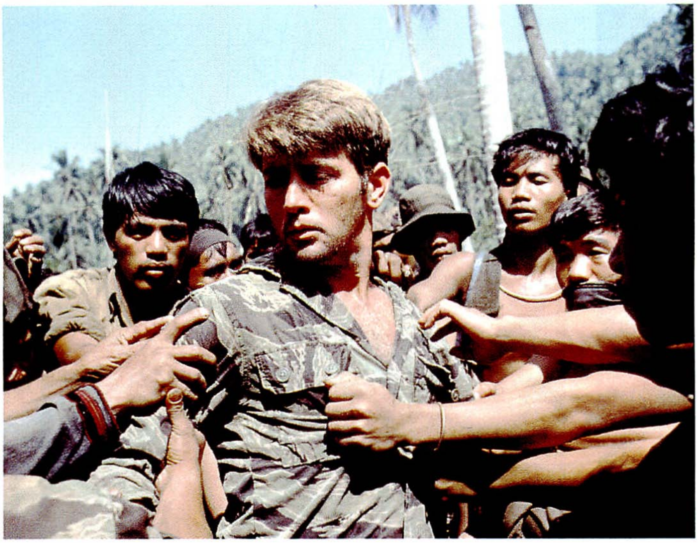


FIGURE 8.10 Voice-Over Narration as Structural Glue Director Francis Ford Coppola tried to use the voice-over provided by Martin Sheen to plug holes in the script of *Apocalypse Now* but succeeded only in diminishing the film's dramatic punch.

FIGURE 8.11 Voice-Over Narration as Ironic Counterpoint In the Coen brothers' *Raising Arizona,* the marvelous, idiosyncratic voice of Hi (played by Nicolas Cage) guides us through the action, providing both gently ironic instructions for following the intricate plot and constant entertainment.

eyes. As a result, we get a level of rich humor and some absurd glimpses into a totally lovable and good-intentioned criminal mind (Figure 8.11).

In *The Opposite of Sex*, the narrator, DeDee Truitt, wonderfully played by Christina Ricci, is a "trash-talking teenager from Arkansas . . . [who] chats on the soundtrack during and between many of the scenes, pointing out the clichés, warning us about approaching plot conventions and debunking our desire to see the story unfold in traditional ways." DeDee's unique voice is so strong, in fact, that Roger Ebert concludes his review of the film by observing, "I hate people who talk during movies, but if she were sitting behind me in the theater, saying all of this stuff, I'd want her to keep right on talking"[8] (Figure 8.12).

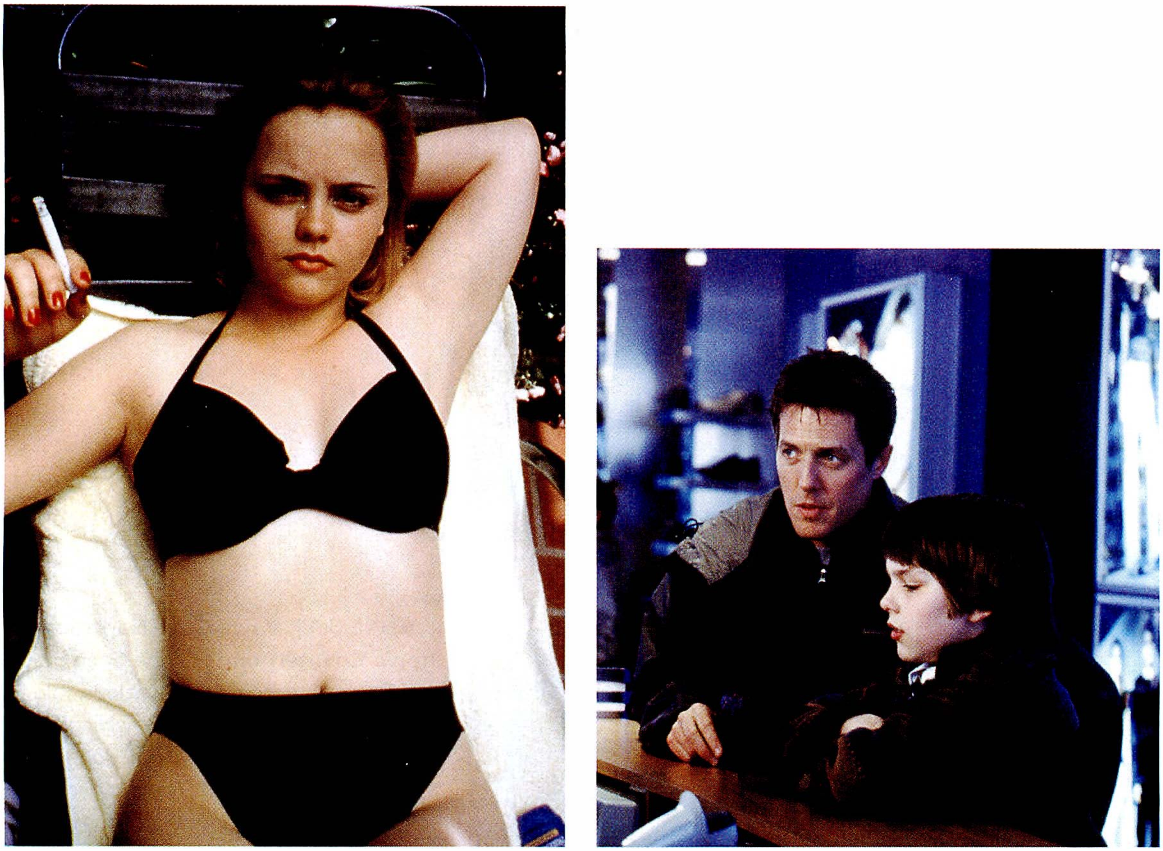


FIGURE 8.12 Postmodern Film Narration Christina Ricci, as DeDee in *The Opposite of Sex* (left), narrates the film in voice-over and at the same time comically deconstructs the work, furnishing a wickedly delightful running commentary on its dialogue, plot, symbolism, and characterization as the movie progresses. Similarly, but with somewhat greater restraint, the key characters in *About a Boy*, played by Hugh Grant and Nicholas Hoult (right), offer dual voice-over explications of that movie's narrative.

Perhaps the most powerful voice-over narration in film to date is that provided by Linda Manz for *Days of Heaven.* There is a distinctive style to her narration, a poetic rhythm, a texture that permeates the entire film. The unique vocal quality and verbal essence provide more than just the narrative glue to hold the story's structure together; combined with the strange woman-child philosophical reflections and childish utterings, they are integrated so beautifully that they become a major element of the film's uniqueness (Figure 8.13).

Forrest Gump also provides a clear verbal essence in its voice-over. To emphasize Gump's slowness, Gump-as-character often repeats what Gump-as-narrator has just said as new scenes are introduced, contributing to the unusual blend of humor and pathos that runs through the film (Figure 8.14).

FIGURE 8.13 Narration as an Integral Part of Texture Linda Manz's poetic, ironic narration for Terrence Malick's *Days of Heaven* (1978) functions almost as a part of the musical score (top right). The personality of her voice becomes a dominant factor in the film's unique style and texture. Earlier, in *Badlands* (1973) (top left), Malick had used the same technique. In *The Thin Red Line* (1998), the director continued to utilize the voice-over, but this time with multiple speakers (bottom left), as he did in 2005's *The New World* (bottom right).

Generally, voice-over narration may be very effective if used with restraint. It is not, however, a truly cinematic technique, and overusing it can be seriously detrimental to the quality of the film. In the American (vs. original French) version of the documentary *March of the Penguins* (Academy Award, 2006), Morgan Freeman's pervasive voice-over narration is either very irritating because it is unnecessary or quite endearing because of the warmth that the popular actor brings to the monologue—depending upon a viewer's bias.

FIGURE 8.14 Vocal Repetition for Humor The title character in *Forrest Gump* (Tom Hanks) often repeats what Gump-as-narrator has just said as scenes get under way, emphasizing the slowness that is both Forrest's problem and his charm (top left). Within dialogue, dark humor and also character are presented through repetition in the speech of Karl (Billy Bob Thornton) in *Sling Blade* (top right). In the film comedy *Heartbreakers*, a wealthy, constantly smoking, lovelorn tobacco company owner (Gene Hackman, basing his performance, surely, upon W. C. Fields) merely, outrageously, coughs repeatedly to grab the viewer's attention (bottom).

SILENCE AS A SOUND EFFECT

In certain situations, a short **dead track,** the complete absence of sound, may be as effective as the most powerful sound effect. The ghostly, unnatural quality of film without sound forces us to look intently at the image. The natural rhythms of sound effects, dialogue, and music become as natural to the film as the rhythms of breathing; and when these rhythms stop, we immediately develop a feeling of almost physical tension and suspense, as though we are holding our breath and can't wait to start breathing again. This effect is used to great advantage in conjunction with the freeze frame. The sudden change from vibrant, noisy movement to silent, frozen stillness can stun us for a moment.

The most common use of dead track is simply to increase, by contrast, the impact and shock effect of sudden or unexpected sounds that follow these moments of silence. In *Still of the Night*, psychiatrist Sam Rice (Roy Scheider) is following a woman he believes to be Brooke Reynolds (Meryl Streep) through Central Park. The soundtrack is alive with environmental noises: wind, muffled music, and traffic, all blended into a kind of "big-city-alive-in-the-distance" hum. As Rice walks into an underpass and stops, the soundtrack goes dead, providing a few moments of silence to set up the aural shock of a mugger's switchblade springing from its handle a few inches from his face. This dead-track effect is also used momentarily, but in an immensely skillful manner, during what is probably the most suspenseful scene in Steven Spielberg's *Munich*, when a young girl seems about to be blown to bits as she answers a telephone. The opposite effect, the shock of silence after violent sound, is experienced during the moments of almost dead track that immediately follow the final fusillade in *Bonnie and Clyde.*

RHYTHMIC QUALITIES OF DIALOGUE AND SOUND EFFECTS

Both dialogue and sound effects are important for the rhythmic patterns, or cadences, they create. These rhythmic elements often match the visual rhythms and reflect the mood, emotion, or pace of the action. Thus, the pace of the dialogue and the rhythmic qualities of the sound effects influence the pace of the film as a whole.

THE "SOUNDS" OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE OR INTERNATIONAL FILMS

The language barrier obviously poses a challenge to viewing foreign language or international films. Although the image carries the major burden of communication in film, the spoken word still plays an important role. There are traditionally two basic methods of translating dialogue in foreign language films: voice dubbing and the use of subtitles.

Voice Dubbing

In the case of a French film, for example, that also plays in America, the **voice dubbing** works as follows: The actors speak the lines of dialogue in their native language (French), and this dialogue is recorded and becomes a part of the soundtrack for the French version. For the American market, the dialogue soundtrack in French is replaced by an English soundtrack. Voices in English are recorded to correspond to the mouth and lip movements of the French actors. To match image with soundtrack, the translator carefully selects English words that phonetically approximate the French words being spoken, so that the image of the French actor and the words spoken in English seem synchronized. The precision of voice-dubbing technology enables us to watch the film in the usual way, and, because the actors seem to be speaking English, the film does not seem so foreign. Nevertheless, the disadvantages and limitations of voice dubbing are numerous, and few foreign language films are now dubbed into English exclusively (although some DVDs include optional dubbed versions into several languages).

Perhaps the primary flaw is the effect that results from separating actors from their voices: The acting often seems stiff and wooden. Another problem is that perfectly accurate lip synchronization is never possible. For example, although the French phrase *mon amour* might closely approximate the lip movements of a translation such as *my dearest*, the French word *oui* does not come close to the lip movements of the English word *yes*. Even if perfect lip synchronization were possible, another formidable obstacle would remain: Each language has its own emotional character, rhythmic patterns, and accompanying facial expressions and gestures, all of which seem unnatural when another language is dubbed in. French facial expressions simply do not correspond to English words. Thus, because of the impossibility of perfect synchronization and the differences in national emotional temperaments reflected in expressions and gestures, dubbing can never really capture the illusion of reality. A certain artificial quality often permeates the film and becomes a gnawing irritation to the viewer.

Furthermore, the process of voice dubbing eliminates the natural power, character, and unique emotional quality of the original language, the very sound of which, understandable or not, may be essential to the spirit of the film. When the dubbed voices are not carefully chosen to fit the actors and the general tone of the film, the illusion of reality suffers even more. For example, in the Russian film *War and Peace*, the dubbing, according to Renata Adler (a former reviewer for the *New York Times*), makes the inhabitants of Moscow sound as if they came from Texas. In such situations, a certain degree of authenticity might be saved by having the dubbed voices speak English with a Russian accent.

All too often the artificial quality of dubbed international films is due not to the change of language or the casting of voices but to the poor quality of the dubbing techniques. Sometimes there seems to be a general lack of concern with the dramatic performance of the dubbed voices. The dubbed lines usually have little dramatic emphasis, or are delivered in a melodramatic manner. They often possess either too few or too many natural variations in pitch and stress and the rhythms are all wrong. With all these problems, dubbed lines often provide little more than basic information without vocal subtleties. (See "Flashback: Dubious Dubbing.") However, from an American perspective, at least, such poor dubbing would probably be an improvement over the recent practice in the Polish film industry. There, in a method very popular with audiences, predominantly male readers—for all voices—merely narrate movies in a flat, dispassionate manner.

Subtitles

Because of these problems with voice dubbing, most contemporary foreign language films use subtitles for the U.S. market. A concise English translation of the dialogue appears in printed form at the bottom of the screen while the dialogue is being spoken. Reading this translation gives us a fairly clear idea of what is being said by the actors as they speak in their native language.

The use of subtitles has several advantages over the use of voice dubbing. Perhaps most importantly, it does not interfere with the illusion of reality to the same degree as dubbing, even though the appearance of writing at the bottom of the screen is not completely natural to the film medium. But because the actors are not separated from their voices, their performances seem more real and human, as well as more powerful. Furthermore, by retaining the voices of the actors speaking in their native language, the subtitled film keeps the power, character, and unique emotional quality of the culture that produced it. The importance of this last point cannot be overestimated. Renata Adler has observed:

> One of the essential powers and beauties of the cinema is that it is truly international, that it makes language accessible in a highly special way. Only in movies can one hear foreign languages spoken and—by the written word in subtitles—participate as closely as one ever will in a culture that is otherwise closed to one.[9]

Subtitles interfere less with the viewer's overall aesthetic experience of the film, less with the film's cultural integrity, and therefore less with its essential reality. Because much of the film's reality comes through to us intuitively even in a language we cannot understand, it is more important that the voice–image link remain intact than that we clearly understand every word of dialogue.

This is not to say that the use of subtitles does not have its disadvantages. One of the most obvious is that our attention is divided between watching the image and reading the subtitles. Furthermore, most subtitles are so concise that they are oversimplified and incomplete. They are designed to convey only the most basic level of meaning and do not even attempt to capture the full flavor

DUBIOUS DUBBING

Wifemistress (a 1977 Italian film directed by Marco Vicario, starring Marcello Mastroianni and Laura Antonelli) is a classic study in how a reasonably good film can be ruined by poor dubbing. On the positive side, the actors are clearly mouthing English words, for the lip synchronization is extremely well matched. But any sense of credibility ends there. The dubbed dialogue is obviously close-miked in a studio, and the English-speaking actors are so close to a microphone that they have to speak softly to keep from distorting their voices as they are recorded. As a result, each speech gives the impression of being whispered. There is no attempt to achieve any sense of depth. Each voice is recorded at the same volume level regardless of the actor's distance from the camera. And there is no ambient sound during conversations, even when the actors talking are in a room almost full of other people. In some scenes, the music is overdone in an attempt to kill off part of this ghostly silence. Although the dubbed voices are well cast (Mastroianni speaks for himself), the acting sounds like reading; the dialogue is flat, listless, and completely lacking in dramatic punch.

Similarly, while many viewers of the film *Cinema Paradiso* enjoyed listening to the Italian rhythms in the delightful relationship between young Toto (Salvatore Cascio, on the right in the photo) and Alfredo (Philippe Noiret, left), these same viewers will immediately recoil from the available dubbed version, which sounds recording-booth flat and melodramatic, completely lacking in nuance.

In contrast to the problems of *Wifemistress* and *Cinema Paradiso* is the excellent dubbing of *Das Boot* (and the much longer director's cut is now also widely available with subtitles). The natural rhythms, cadence, and pitch of human voices really talking to each other give the dialogue dynamic life even without completely accurate synchronization with lip movement, and three-dimensional ambient sound conveys enough exciting information to make us forget that the film is dubbed.

BOGART BERG

and quality of the dialogue in the original language. Another problem arises if the image behind the subtitles is white or light in color and the subtitles are also white. This was the case in parts of *Tora! Tora! Tora!*, where the white subtitles often appeared against the white uniforms of the Japanese naval officers, and in Jean Renoir's great French film *The Rules of the Game*, where white subtitles were obliterated against light-colored costumes and landscapes. However, more and more international films are released in America (especially in their DVD versions) with easy-to-read yellow-highlighted subtitles.

Despite the disadvantages, the use of subtitles is still perhaps the best solution to the language barrier, especially in a slow-paced film that is edited in such a way that the dialogue can be read before the image changes. In a fast-paced film, where editorial cuts occurring at a very high frequency demand full attention to the image, voice dubbing may be the only answer. Luckily, our new video technology has now made it possible for us to choose either or both of these alternatives: Many DVDs offer menus from which viewers may choose to experience an international film in its own language, or via dubbing (often, into more than one language), or through subtitles (also into multiple languages).

Watching Mel Gibson's greatly popular *The Passion of the Christ*, few viewers, either in theaters or at home, were able to understand all three of the languages used in the film: Aramaic, Latin, and Hebrew. As a result, Gibson offered subtitles to facilitate mass consumption of the word. This conciliatory effort stands in stark contrast to Gibson's use of ultraviolent visual elements in the film, which were clearly meant to stun everyone.

ANALYZING SOUND EFFECTS AND DIALOGUE

1. Where in the film are off-screen or invisible sounds effectively employed to enlarge the boundaries of the visual frame or to create mood and atmosphere?
2. What sound effects in particular contribute to a sense of reality and a feeling of being there?
3. Does the film attempt to provide a sense of three-dimensionality or depth in sound? If a stereophonic soundtrack is used, what does it contribute to the overall effect of the film?
4. Where is sound employed to represent subjective states of mind, and how effective is this use of sound?
5. Where is unusual emphasis placed on sound in the film, and what is the purpose of such emphasis?
6. Is sound used to provide important transitions in the film? Why is sound needed to provide these transitions?
7. If voice-over soundtracks are used for narration or internal monologues (thoughts of a character spoken aloud), can you justify their use, or could the same information have been conveyed through purely cinematic means?

VIDEO EXERCISES

Instructions for locating specific sequences are given on page 86.

1. **Sound Effects.** Watch the indicated sequences from *On the Waterfront* [3500 to 3640; 1:00:00 to 1:03:22] and *All That Jazz* [3600 to 3740; 1:03:30 to 1:06:33]. Each sequence takes us into the mind and feelings of the characters through clever uses of sound. Describe in detail how each sequence accomplishes its goal, and explain how the two methods differ.
2. **Slow-Motion Sound.** Watch the Northfield, Minnesota, raid sequence from *The Long Riders* [4030 to 4280; 1:15:58 to 1:20:36], and describe the interaction of slow-motion cinematography and slow-motion sound. Some of the slow-motion sounds might be difficult to identify. How is this challenge overcome?
3. **Sound Links.** *Citizen Kane* is known for its innovative use of sound for transitional purposes. Watch the following segments, and describe the methods by which sound links scenes that take place in different locations and at different points in time: [1650 to 1730; 0:22:48 to 0:24:35] and [3470 to 3525; 0:59:34 to 1:00:52].
4. **Voice-Over Narration.** Watch the first 5 minutes of each of the following films, and describe the essential differences in the narrators and the effects of their voice-over narrations in each film: *Days of Heaven*, *Taxi Driver*, *Raising Arizona*, *Stand by Me*, *The Opposite of Sex*, *The Good Girl*, and *My Architect*.

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

The American writer Ambrose Bierce (1842–1914?) is celebrated for the bitter cynicism of his worldview and for his ironic wit. Both of these qualities are displayed well in one of his best short stories, a Civil War yarn called "An Occurrence at Owl Creek Bridge." Almost fifty years after Bierce just disappeared (apparently) from the face of the earth, writer and director Robert Enrico interpreted "Occurrence" on film, and the work was a winner at the Cannes Film Festival and also at the Academy Awards (Best Short Film, 1963).

As a type, the short film is not generally popular, in part because it is not commercially profitable, so its longevity is constantly at risk. Luckily for film lovers, though, Enrico's piece caught the attention of Rod Serling, creator of television's "The Twilight Zone." For this immensely popular series, Serling later chose the film as the first to be aired that his own company had not made. "An Occurrence at Owl Creek Bridge" was first shown on American television on February 28, 1964, and we owe its currently easy availability to that fact. The film now appears on the DVD *Treasures of "The Twilight Zone."*

Although "Occurrence" was shot by artists whose first language was not English, there is no need for subtitles; throughout its twenty-four-minute running time almost no dialogue is spoken. Further, the film's music is chiefly minimalist: one guitar at crucial moments, a vocalist, a solitary drummer. Still, photographed in black and white, Enrico's film depends enormously upon sound editing for its effectiveness. Watch this work casually first, letting its pathos and dark humor spill over you. Then view it again, this time noting how ambient sounds, both natural and exaggerated, significantly help to dictate our acceptance and appreciation of Bierce's narrative.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

The Art of Sound Effects and Dialogue

The Count of Monte Cristo (2002):

Immensely instructive on this DVD is a feature, "Layer-by-Layer Interactive Sound Design," that allows a watcher to switch easily among four different sound versions of the same scene. One may opt to hear only the dialogue, only the music added to the scene, or only its sound effects—or experience all three of these on the composite track.

Monster

An interactive feature here allows the viewer-listener to experiment with various combinations of "audio stems" from dialogue, sound effects, and music.

The Sixth Sense:

In a "Music and Sound Design" feature here, director M. Night Shyamalan and composer James Newton Howard discuss the editing subtleties of such questions as "What does the sixth sense . . . sound like?" Their illustrative clips omit all dialogue from the scenes, making it possible to focus intently on the sound effects used, many of which are, in fact, "musically" generated. Shyamalan notes that "all background sounds in the movie are human or animal breaths." Producer Frank Marshall observes that "the music and sound effects in the movie are also characters."

Star Wars, Episode II: Attack of the Clones:

On one of the myriad features of this DVD, "Films Are Not Released; They Escape," the sound team, led by Ben Burtt, describes the job of creating the sound design of the film.

A.I. Artificial Intelligence (Two-Disc Special Edition):

Steven Spielberg has chosen to include on disc two a telling interview with sound designer Gary Rydstrom conducted at George Lucas's Skywalker Ranch.

Men in Black II (Widescreen Special Edition):

Featured here are substantial interviews with Foley supervisor and editor Steve Visscher, Foley artists Marko Costanza and Jay Peck, and members of the automatic dialogue replacement (ADR) or looping team.

Forrest Gump (Special Collector's Edition):

Hear "Through the Ears of Forrest Gump," an excellent five-part interview with Randy Thom, the film's sound designer.

Shrek (Two-Disc Special Edition):

Disc one contains a "Revoice Studio" that permits a viewer to "Record Your Voice Over Your Favorite Characters' Lines and Star in 1 of 12 Entire Scenes!"

Timecode:

In the theatrical version of this film, the screen was divided into four separate images. There, sound volume levels shifted watchers' attention from one quadrant to another as particular elements of the plot progressed. The default setting on this DVD version uses the same procedure. In addition, an interactive feature allows one to create new sound edit patterns, thereby also conjuring up fresh narrative maps.

FILMS FOR STUDY

Sound Effects and Dialogue

All That Jazz (1979)
Body Heat (1981)
Bonnie and Clyde (1967)
Citizen Kane (1941)
The Conversation (1974)
Das Boot (1981)
Do the Right Thing (1989)
The Graduate (1967)
Hustle & Flow (2005)
Jurassic Park (1993)
King Kong (2005)
The Long Riders (1980)
The Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King (2003)
M (1931)
McCabe & Mrs. Miller (1971)
Memoirs of a Geisha (2005)
Munich (2005)
Nashville (1975)
On the Waterfront (1954)
The Passion of the Christ (2004)
A Prairie Home Companion (2006)
Raging Bull (1980)
Raiders of the Lost Ark (1981)
Shane (1953)
Short Cuts (1993)
Sling Blade (1996)
Still of the Night (1982)
Walk the Line (2005)
War of the Worlds (2005)

Voice-Over Narration

About a Boy (2002)
The Age of Innocence (1993)
Apocalypse Now (1979)
Badlands (1973)
City of God (2002)
Days of Heaven (1978)
Forrest Gump (1994)
The Good Girl (2002)
Life Is Beautiful (1997)
Mrs. Dalloway (1998)
The New World (2005)
The Opposite of Sex (1998)

Radio Days (1987)
Raising Arizona (1987)
A River Runs Through It (1992)
Stand by Me (1986)
Summer of '42 (1971)
Sunset Boulevard (1950)
Taxi Driver (1976)
The Thin Red Line (1998)
To Kill a Mockingbird (1962)

Foreign Language or International Films

(The original language is noted after the film date.)

All About My Mother (1999); Spanish
Amélie (2001); French
Amores Perros (2000); Spanish
Belle de Jour (1967); French
The Bicycle Thief (1947); Italian
Breathless (1959); French
Burnt by the Sun (1994); Russian
Central Station (1998); Spanish
Cinema Paradiso (1988); Italian
City of God (2002); Portuguese
The Conformist (1971); Italian
Das Boot (1981); German
Downfall (2004); German
8½ (1963); Italian
Grand Illusion (1937); French
Hiroshima, Mon Amour (1959); French and Japanese
The Idiots (1998); Danish
In the Mood for Love (2000); Cantonese and Shanghainese
Kandahar (2001); mostly English
La Dolce Vita (1960); Italian
Lagaan (2001); Hindi
Look At Me (2004); French
Maria Full of Grace (2004); Spanish
The Marriage of Maria Braun (1978); German
Monsoon Wedding (2002); Hindi, Punjabi, and English
No Man's Land (2001); Serbo-Croatian, French, and English
Persona (1966); Swedish
Raise the Red Lantern (1991); Mandarin
Rashomon (1950); Japanese
Red (1994); French
The Rules of the Game (1939); French
Run Lola Run (1998); German
The Seventh Seal (1957); Swedish
Swept Away . . . (1974); Italian
Talk to Her (2002); Spanish
Tokyo Story (1953); Japanese
Tsotsi (2005); Zulu, Xhosa, Afrikaans
2046 (2004); Cantonese
A Very Long Engagement (2004); French
Y Tu Mamá También (2001); Spanish

9

The MUSICAL SCORE

The film composer should have the confidence to use exactly what he needs and no more. He shouldn't use his theatrical license to blow the believability of the picture, and I think that believability is closely connected with understatement. The composer wants to pull the moviegoer's mind into that room that's up on the screen, into that feeling that's up there, and it can take very little to achieve that involvement.

—QUINCY JONES, COMPOSER

THE REMARKABLE AFFINITY OF MUSIC AND FILM

Music has such a remarkable affinity to film that the addition of the musical score was almost an inevitability. Even in the earliest films, the audience would have felt a very real vacuum of silence because the pulsing vitality provided by the moving image seemed unnatural, almost ghostly, without some form of corresponding sound. In fact, so-called silent films were almost always projected with accompanying live piano, organ, ensemble, or orchestra music. So by the time it became possible to use recorded dialogue and sound effects, music had already proved itself as a highly effective accompaniment for the emotions and rhythms built into the images.

Music has made possible an artistic blending of sight and sound, a fusing of music and movement so effective that composer Dimitri Tiomkin was moved to remark that a good film is "really just ballet with dialogue." Muir Mathieson, in *The Technique of Film Music*, put it this way: "Music, having a form of its own, has ways of doing its appointed task in films with distinction, judged purely as music, and with subtlety, judged as a part of the whole film. It must be accepted not as a decoration or a filler of gaps in the plaster, but a part of the architecture."[1]

Both film and music divide time into rather clearly defined rhythmic patterns; perhaps that provides the most important common bond. There are certain natural rhythms inherent in the physical movements of many objects on the screen. Trees swaying in the breeze, a walking man, a galloping horse, a speeding motorcycle, and a machine capping bottles on an assembly line—all establish natural rhythms that create an almost instinctive need for corresponding rhythmic sounds. Another rhythmic pattern is provided by the pace of the plot, by how quickly or slowly it unfolds. Still another is created by the pace of the dialogue and the natural rhythms of human speech. Tempo is also established by the frequency of editorial cuts and the varying duration of shots between cuts, which gives each sequence a unique rhythmic character. Although editing divides the film into a number of separate parts, the continuity and the fluid form of the medium remain, because the cuts create clear rhythmic patterns but do not break the flow of images and sound.

Because music possesses these same qualities of rhythm and fluid continuity, it can be easily adapted to the film's basic rhythms, to its liquid contours, or shapes. This affinity between music and film has led us to accept them almost as unity, as part of the same package, as though music somehow exists magically alongside every film.

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE MUSICAL SCORE

Although we often accept film music without question and sometimes even without noticing it, this does not mean that its contribution to the film experience is insignificant. Music has a tremendous effect on our response, greatly enriching and enhancing our overall reaction to almost any film. It accomplishes this in several ways: by reinforcing or strengthening the emotional content of the image, by stimulating the imagination and the kinetic sense, and by suggesting and expressing emotions that cannot be conveyed by pictorial means alone.

Because it has a direct and very significant effect on our reaction to film, the term *background music*, which is so often applied to the musical score, is a misnomer. Music actually functions as an integral or complementary element. Despite its direct effect on us, however, there is general critical agreement on one point: The role of music in film should be a subordinate one.

Two schools of thought exist on the proper degree of this subordination. The older, traditional view is that the best film music performs its various functions without making us consciously aware of its presence. In other words, if we don't notice the music, it's a good score. Therefore, the music for a good score shouldn't be *too* good, for really good music draws attention to itself and away from the film.

The modern view, by contrast, allows the music, on appropriate occasions, not only to demand our conscious attention but even to dominate the picture, as long as it remains essentially integrated with the visual, dramatic, and rhythmic elements of the film as a whole. At such moments, we may become conscious of how intrinsically beautiful the music is, though we should not be so moved that we lose sight of its appropriateness to the image on the screen.

Both modern and traditional views are therefore in agreement on one essential point: Music that calls too much attention to itself at the expense of the film as a whole is not effective. Regardless of the degree of subordination, a good score will always be a significant structural element, performing its proper functions in a perfectly integrated way, serving as a means to an end rather than an end itself. As composer Quincy Jones puts it:

> For me, some of the best moments in pictures come when the music is tied in so organically with the image, is so much a part of it, that you can't imagine it any other way. The themes in *The Bridge on the River Kwai* and *The Third Man* seem to come out of the tapestry of the films.[2]

GENERAL FUNCTIONS OF THE MUSICAL SCORE

The two most general and basic functions of the musical score are to create structural rhythms and to stimulate emotional responses, both of which greatly enhance and reinforce the effect of the image.

The musical score creates a sense of structural rhythm both in the film as a whole and in its individual shots by developing a sense of pace corresponding to the pace of the movement within each shot and to the pace of the editing. In this way, the composer articulates and underscores the basic rhythms of the film.

The film score also serves to complement and enhance the narrative and dramatic structure by stimulating emotional responses that parallel each indi-

FIGURE 9.1 **"A Sigh Is Just a Sigh"** From its opening credits accompanied by Jimmy Durante's recording of "As Time Goes By," *Sleepless in Seattle* leans heavily on familiar ballads to intensify the romantic mood of individual sequences and the film as a whole.

vidual sequence and the film as a whole. Because even the most subtle moods are established, intensified, maintained, and changed through the effective use of film music, the musical score becomes an accurate reflection of the emotional patterns and shapes of the film as a whole (Figure 9.1). This does not mean that a film's structured visual rhythms can be separated from its emotional patterns, for both are closely interwoven into the same fabric. Effective film music therefore usually parallels one and complements the other.

The simplest and oldest method of adding music to film is simply selecting a piece of familiar music (classical, pop, folk, jazz, blues, rock, and so on) that fits the rhythmic, emotional, or dramatic demands of the sequence at hand. An excellent example of the use of familiar music was the choice of the *William Tell* Overture for the old "Lone Ranger" radio show. The classical overture not only provided a perfect rhythmic counterpart to the galloping hoofbeats and served as a stimulus to the visual imagination, but also gave the program a seriousness of tone that it would not have possessed otherwise. In similar manner, Stanley Kubrick employed such diverse types of music as *Thus Spake Zarathustra*, *The Blue Danube Waltz*, and "When Johnny Comes Marching Home" to very effective ends in *2001* and *Dr. Strangelove*.

A perfect match of song with dramatic situation—such as Steven Spielberg's choice of "Smoke Gets in Your Eyes" for the romantic dance in the firefighters' Quonset hut in *Always* (selected in part because composer Irving Berlin had denied the director's request to use his first choice, the popular song "Always")—can do much to create a magic moment on film. Many directors, however, prefer to use music specially created and designed for the film—music composed either after the film and its accompanying sound-effects track are completed or while the film is being made—so that composer and director can work together in the same creative atmosphere. Many films, of course, use a combination of familiar and original music.

Film music especially composed for a film can be divided into two types.

1. **Mickey Mousing.** So named because it grew out of animation techniques, **Mickey Mousing** is the exact, calculated dovetailing of music and action. The rhythm of the music precisely matches the natural rhythms of the objects moving on the screen. This synchronization requires a meticulous analysis of the filmed sequence by the composer. Although some sense of emotional tone, mood, or atmosphere can be included in Mickey Mouse scoring, the primary emphasis is on the kinetic (the sense of movement and action) and rhythmic elements of the sequences in which the music is used.
2. **Generalized Score.** A **generalized score** (also known as an *implicit score*) makes no attempt to precisely match music and movement; instead the emphasis is on capturing the overall emotional atmosphere or mood of a sequence or of the film as a whole. Often, this is achieved through recurring rhythmic and emotive variations of a few main motifs or themes. Although basic rhythms in such scores are varied to suggest the rhythmic structure of individual action sequences, their primary function is to convey an emotion that parallels the story.

SPECIAL FUNCTIONS OF THE MUSICAL SCORE

In the modern film, music is used to perform many varied and complex functions, some of which are rather specialized. Although it is impossible to list or describe all these functions, some of the most basic ones are worthy of our attention.

Heightening the Dramatic Effect of Dialogue

Music is often employed as a kind of emotional punctuation for the dialogue, expressing the feeling underlying what is said. Generally, the musical accompaniment of dialogue must be extremely subtle and unobtrusive, stealing in and out so quietly that we respond to its effects without conscious awareness of its presence. In Neil Jordan's fascinating *The Butcher Boy*, the opposite is too often true. The film, a darkly comic domestic horror story, utilizes Irish accents so thick that subtitles sometimes seem warranted. Elliott Rosenthal's score for it, though aptly indigenous, is frequently performed so loudly that the listener can barely hear the dialogue, much less understand it easily.

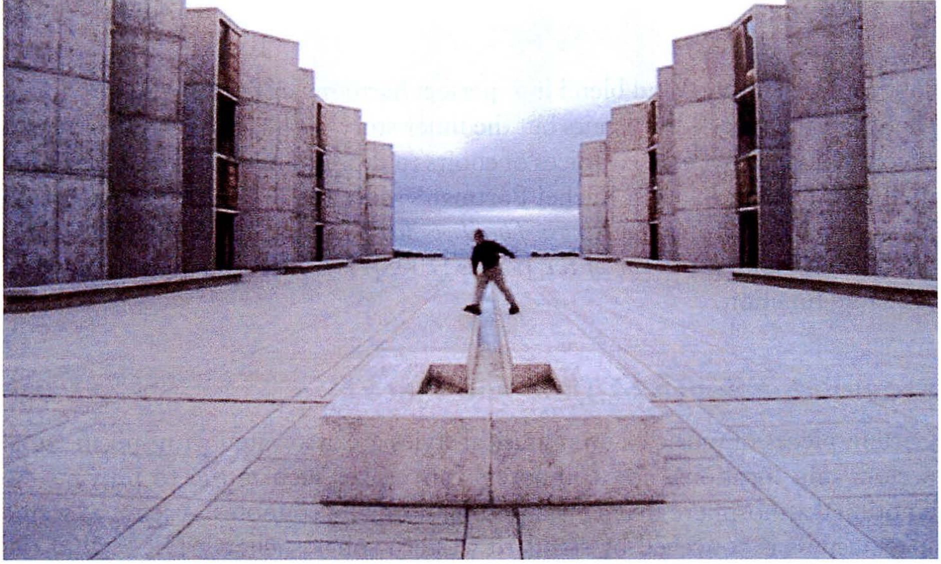


FIGURE 9.2 Music to Tell an Inner Story The superb documentary *My Architect* allows an illegitimate son, filmmaker Nathaniel Kahn, a professional space in which to discover and re-create his long-dead father, internationally celebrated architect Louis I. Kahn. While making all the necessary, obvious, and deliberate investigations expected of any good historian, Nathaniel Kahn at one point seems to have taken a little personal break from his labors with some recreational rollerblading. However, he filmed the scene, and then he shrewdly used it in his movie: here, around the concourse "canal" at the artist-father's majestic Salk Institute campus overlooking the Pacific, the artist-son literally skates upon the face of one of his dad's greatest works. As he moves, with spontaneous, restorative energy, the soundtrack plays Neil Young's "Long May You Run."

Telling an Inner Story

Music often moves beyond a merely subordinate or complementary role to assume a primary storytelling function, enabling the director to express things that cannot be expressed through verbal or pictorial means (Figure 9.2). This is especially true when a character's state of mind undergoes extreme and rapid changes that neither words nor action can adequately express.

A good example of the use of music to tell an inner story occurs in *On the Beach*. An American submarine captain (Gregory Peck) takes an Australian woman (Ava Gardner) to a mountain resort for a final fling at trout fishing before the lethal radioactive clouds reach Australia. The American, whose family was killed in the nuclear war, has failed to adapt to the reality of the situation and continues to think and talk of his family as though they were alive, making it impossible for him to accept the love of the Australian. The two are in their room in the lodge, listening to the dissonant, off-key voices of the drunken fishermen downstairs singing "Waltzing Matilda." In an underplayed dramatic scene, Peck finally realizes the futility of his ties with the past and accepts Gardner's love. As they embrace, the loud and drunken voices become soft, sober, and melodious and blend into perfect harmony, reflecting not any actual change in the voices downstairs but the inner story of the change in Peck's state of mind. The use of massed voices of choirs to express an inner mystical or spiritual transformation (as in Rachel Portman's score for *Beloved*, Howard Shore's music for *The Lord of the Rings: The Two Towers*, or John Williams's sound-effects heightening in *War of the Worlds* [2005]) is a more obvious example of the same function.

Providing a Sense of Time and Place

Certain pieces of music or even musical styles are associated with specific time periods and locations, and composers can utilize such music to provide the emotional atmosphere that a given setting normally connotes. A sense of scenic spaciousness is conveyed by standard western songs such as "The Call of the Faraway Hills" from *Shane*. Completely different qualities, such as the hustle and bustle of people having a good time and a merry, communal feeling, are conveyed by "town" or "saloon" music. Therefore, when the locale in a western changes from the range to the town or saloon, the visual transition is often preceded slightly by a switch to standard saloon music (player piano accompanied by shouting, laughter, general crowd noises, and an occasional gunshot or two). The music not only tells us that a change of scene is coming but also prepares us mentally for the visual scene before it appears, thereby serving a transitional function.

Music associated with different countries or even different ethnic groups can be used in a similar way. Certain instruments are associated with definite settings or groups of people: the zither, the mandolin, the banjo, the Spanish guitar, and the Hawaiian guitar all have fairly concrete geographical connotations, and these connotations can be varied or even changed completely by the style in which the instruments are played.

The time period of the film is also made realistic through appropriate music and instrumentation, as illustrated by the use of the quaint, old sound of a harpsichord for a period piece and otherworldly or futuristic electronic music for a science fiction film.

When the time frame of a story is within most viewers' memories, recent American films have loaded the soundtrack with popular recordings from the era, thus evoking a strong "remembered flavor" of the time. Such music underscores the past-tense quality of the story for the viewer and, by triggering built-in associations, intensifies and personalizes the viewer's involvement with the story itself.

Nostalgic music is used effectively in such films as *Good Night, and Good Luck*, *Pleasantville*, *The Last Days of Disco*, *Forrest Gump*, *The Big Chill*, *Coming Home*, *The Last Picture Show*, and *American Graffiti*, which is literally built around such music. In many cases this music is heard coming from some on-screen source such as a radio or record player, but it usually is used as part of

Shower of Stars

FIGURE 9.3 **A Serious *Good Night* of Nostalgia** Director George Clooney's politics-and-broadcasting drama *Good Night, and Good Luck* spins a tale of hubris and greed in black-and-white. But the movie's somber tone is balanced somewhat by a surprising and very pleasurable use of music. While the powerful adversaries Senator Joe McCarthy and TV newsman Edward R. Murrow are grimly vying, metaphorically, for center stage, the audience is invited periodically, quite literally, into a CBS sound studio where Dianne Reeves is singing pop and jazz classics of the 1950s period.

the off-screen musical score as well (Figure 9.3). Such film scores are called "compilation" works.

Foreshadowing Events or Building Dramatic Tension

When a surprising change of mood or an unexpected action is about to occur on the screen, we are almost always prepared for that change by the musical score. By preparing us emotionally for a shocking turn of events, the score does not soften the effect of the shock but actually intensifies it by signaling its approach. In its own way, the music says, "Watch carefully now. Something shocking or unexpected is going to happen," and we respond to the musical signal by becoming more attentive. Even the fact that we know what is going to happen does not relieve the tension thus created, for suspense is as much a matter of when as of what. Music used in this way does not coincide exactly with what is happening on the screen but precedes it, introducing a feeling of tension while the images on the screen retain their calm.

Foreshadowing or tension-building music deliberately plays on our nerves in a variety of ways: by gradually increasing in volume or pitch, switching from a major to a minor key, or introducing percussion instruments and dissonance. The introduction of dissonance into a musical score that has been harmonious to that point automatically creates a sense of nervousness and anxiety. Dissonance in such a situation expresses disorder, chaos, and a breakdown of the normal patterned order of harmony, causing us to become nervous and insecure, exactly the state of mind desired for effective foreshadowing or the building of dramatic tension. For example, the famous breakfast montage from *Citizen Kane*, showing the increasing alienation between Emily and Charles Foster Kane over a period of years, begins with a gentle lilting waltz and ends with a dissonant and harsh variation of the same waltz theme.

Adding Levels of Meaning to the Visual Image

Sometimes music makes us see the visual scene in a fresh, unusual way by combining with the image to create additional levels of meaning. Take, for example, the opening scene in *Dr. Strangelove*, which shows a B-52 bomber refueling in flight. Extremely delicate maneuvering is required to place the refueling boom correctly, trailing like a giant winged hose from the tail of the tanker plane into the fuel-tank opening in the nose of the giant B-52 bomber, which is flying slightly behind and below the tanker. The music accompanying this sequence is the familiar love song "Try a Little Tenderness," played on romantic violins. If we are alert enough to recognize the song and think of its title, the music not only seems very appropriate to the delicate maneuvering required for the refueling operation but could also lead us to see the whole thing as a gentle love scene, a tender sexual coupling of two giant birds. Because this is the opening sequence of the film, the music also helps to establish the satiric tone that runs throughout the film as a whole.

Highly ironic levels of meaning can be achieved by using music that suggests a mood exactly opposite to the mood normally suggested by what is occurring on the screen. This technique is illustrated at the conclusion of *Dr. Strangelove*, in which the sticky-sweet voice of Vera Lynn singing "We'll Meet Again Some Sunny Day" accompanies the image of a nuclear holocaust as it destroys the world.

Characterization Through Music

Music can play a role in characterization. Mickey Mouse scoring may be used to emphasize a peculiar or rhythmic pattern set up by a certain character's physical movement. The score for *Of Human Bondage* (1934), for example, utilizes a "disabled" theme, which rhythmically parallels the main character's limp, thus reinforcing that aspect of his character. Some actors and actresses, such as John Wayne, Marilyn Monroe, and Al Pacino, have distinctive walks that exhibit definite rhythmic patterns and can therefore be reinforced musically.

FIGURE 9.4 Exquisite Peter-and-the-Wolfing In Rob Marshall's film version of the popular novel *Memoirs of a Geisha*, composer John Williams created an elegant correspondence between key characters and the musical instruments and themes that symbolize them on screen. Thus, a cello melody played by Yo-Yo Ma represents the central female character (Zhang Ziyi), and a different one performed on violin by Itzhak Perlman identifies the main male figure (Ken Watanabe).

Instrumentation can also be used to aid in characterization in an effect that might be called **Peter-and-the-Wolfing,** scoring in which certain musical instruments and types of music represent and signal the presence of certain characters (Figure 9.4). Many films of the 1930s and 1940s used this technique, causing the audience to associate the villain with sinister-sounding music in a minor key, the heroine with soft, ethereal violins, and the hero with strong, "honest" music. Although such heavy-handed treatment is not common today, **leitmotifs** (the repetition of a single musical theme or phrase to announce the reappearance of a certain character) were staples of silent-film scores and are still employed to some extent.

Sometimes a character is complex enough to require multiple themes, as composer Jerry Goldsmith discovered while scoring *Patton:*

> [I]t was a challenge to keep the audience aware of the complexity of Patton's personality. We were dealing with three different facets of Patton's imagination. He was a warrior, a man who believed in reincarnation, and a man with stern religious beliefs. [Director] Frank [Schaffner] and I felt it was important for the music to help delineate which facet of his personality was predominant in the various

> scenes. . . . At the beginning of the picture I set up the reincarnation theme with the trumpet fanfare, the very first notes of music you hear. When he relived the battle of Carthagenia in his mind you heard these trumpets again, heralding this facet of his personality. The second and most obvious piece of music was the military march, and when he was commanding, this was the predominant theme—the warrior theme. The third was a chorale, which was used in counterpoint to underline his religious character, his discipline, and his determination. When he was the whole man, commanding his troops in victory, the idea was to combine all these musical elements, because he was all of these facets together.[3]

In *Citizen Kane*, composer Bernard Herrmann used two separate leitmotifs for Charles Foster Kane. One, "a vigorous piece of ragtime, sometimes transformed into a hornpipe polka," was used to symbolize the mature Kane's power. The other, "a featherlight and harmonic" theme, symbolized the simpler days of Kane's youth and the more positive aspects of his personality.[4]

A good composer may also use the musical score to add qualities to an actor or actress that that person does not normally have. In the filming of *Cyrano de Bergerac*, for example, Dimitri Tiomkin felt that Mala Powers did not really look French enough for the part of Roxanne. Therefore he Frenchified her by using French-style thematic music whenever she appeared on the screen, thus building up associations in the viewer's mind to achieve the desired effect.

Director Jonathan Demme (*The Silence of the Lambs*, *Philadelphia*) has said that, in choosing music for his films, he tries "to talk about what kind of music the characters might be hearing in their daily life. It's just more true, more subtle, and more fun, too." Like most directors, he prefers to make the choice of a film's composer as early as possible in the process and observes that "editors love to find a piece of music that works with a scene before the scene is cut."[5] For the scoring of *The Truman Show*, Peter Weir (*The Year of Living Dangerously*, *Witness*) ultimately selected German-Australian composer Burkhard Dallwitz, but Weir also decided even earlier, through experimenting with a "temp" track, that certain existing pieces by Philip Glass would be included. Weir writes,

> When making a film, I play music constantly during "dailies"—the nightly screenings of the previous day's shooting. I test all kinds of music against the image, searching for the elusive "sound" of the picture.
>
> In the case of *The Truman Show*, since it is the story of a live television program, I was also determining the music that the show's creator, Christof [Ed Harris], would have chosen.
>
> The tracks that seemed to be drawing the most out of the images for me (and presumably Christof) were those of Philip Glass. . . . Complementing these tracks is a score by Burkhard Dallwitz . . . and from the moment he played back his first cue, I knew Christof would have been as delighted with the result as I was.
>
> The use of music in this film is as unusual as the concept of the movie itself. Sometimes the music is Christof's choice, sometimes it's mine![6]

FIGURE 9.5 Composing Character Among the actors who not only performed but wrote songs *in character* for *Nashville* was Ronee Blakley.

Already-published music by Philip Glass was used so extensively by director Stephen Daldry as a temp score when he was editing his 2002 film *The Hours* that he finally just decided to convince Glass himself to compose the movie's music.

One of the great mavericks of modern cinema, Robert Altman (*M*A*S*H*, *Vincent & Theo*, *The Player*, *Short Cuts*), is celebrated for his willingness to work improvisationally with actors. In *Nashville*, his 1975 epic vision of America, this director carried over his playfulness into the creation of the film's musical score. Altman asked several of the actors playing the film's twenty-four central figures (including Karen Black, Ronee Blakley, and Keith Carradine, who won an Oscar for his song "I'm Easy") to compose, *in character*, songs for performance during the narrative's unfolding (Figure 9.5). Although this film-music experiment had an origin very different from that of the 1972 musical film *Cabaret* and the 2002 musical *Chicago*, the three works are similar in their strategy: In each case, all songs are somehow restricted to being performed on a "stage." By the early 1970s, the tradition of the great American movie musicals—in which fictional characters suddenly burst into song in reel life—had died. By most accounts, the tradition's apex had been reached, ironically, in *Singin' in the Rain*, the 1952 comic requiem for the silent-film era.

Triggering Conditioned Responses

The composer takes advantage of the fact that viewers have been conditioned to associate some musical stereotypes or musical codes with particular situations.

Such codes can be used with great economy and effectiveness. In old Western movies, the sudden introduction of a steady tom-tom beat accompanied by a high, wailing, wind instrument ranging through a simple four- or five-tone scale effectively signals the presence of Indians even before they appear. The "cavalry to the rescue" bugle call is equally familiar. Such musical codes cannot be treated in a highly creative way, for to do so would cause them to lose some of their effectiveness as code devices. Composers do, however, try to make them seem as fresh and original as possible.

Even stereotyped musical codes can create unusual reactions when they are used ironically. In *Little Big Man*, for example, a lively fife and drum "good guys victorious" score accompanies scenes of General Custer's troops as they brutally massacre an Indian tribe. The ironic effect catches us in a tug-of-war between the music and the image. So compelling is the rhythm of the heroic music that we can scarcely resist tapping our toes and swelling with heroic pride while our visual sensibilities are appalled by the unheroic action taking place on the screen.

Traveling Music

Film music is at its best when used to characterize rapid movement. Such music, sometimes called **traveling music**, is often employed almost as a formula or a shorthand code to give the impression of various means of transportation (Figure 9.6). The formulas are varied to fit the unique quality of the movement being portrayed. Thus, stagecoach music is different from horse-and-buggy music, and both differ essentially from lone-rider music. The old steam engine requires a different type of railroad music than the diesel locomotive. On rare occasions, traveling music performs a wide variety of functions, as is illustrated by the use of Flatt and Scruggs's "Foggy Mountain Breakdown" to accompany the famous chase scenes in *Bonnie and Clyde.* The strong, almost frantic sounds of the fast-fingered five-string banjo create a desperate yet happy rhythm that captures precisely the derring-do and spirit of the Barrow gang, the slapstick comedy, desperation, and blind excitement of the chases themselves, and the nostalgic, good-old-days flavor of the film as a whole.

Providing Important Transitions

Music functions in an important way by providing transitions or bridges between scenes—marking the passage of time, signaling a change of locale, foreshadowing a shift in mood or pace, or transporting us backward in time into a flashback. *Citizen Kane* director Orson Welles and composer Bernard Herrmann both had experience in radio, where musical bridges were virtually mandatory. In *Citizen Welles*, Welles's biographer Frank Brady describes the effect of this experience on the use of music in *Citizen Kane:*

FIGURE 9.6 Traveling Music In *Breaking Away*, an excerpt from *The Barber of Seville*, a stirring opera by the Italian composer Rossini, provides traveling music for Dave (Dennis Christopher) as he prepares for the big race, and it reinforces the character's obsession with things Italian as well as underscoring the heroic effort involved in his training.

The most frequent use of music in radio is to provide the transition from scene to scene or situation to situation. Even a single note becomes important in telling the ear that the scene is shifting. In film, the eye usually supplies the transition as the scene is cut or dissolves into the next. Welles and Herrmann both believed that an opportunity to include transitional music, whether it be symbolic or illustrative, to weave parts of the film together or to set it in context, should not be overlooked.

As Welles worked on the script, and as he began to direct specific scenes, he could hear in his mind the suggestion of the music that should be inserted, just as he could hear the additional dialogue or the sound effects that would eventually be added. He sensed where a scene would be more effectively transferred with a musical bridge and where music would conflict with the dialogue. Pencilled notations began to fill his script indicating where music was needed. For instance, as Thompson reads Thatcher's diary and his eye travels over the parchment with old-fashioned handwriting, "I first encountered Mr. Kane in 1871 . . . ," Welles asked Herrmann for a fully melodic transition that would evoke all at once the frivolity and innocence of childhood in the snowbound winter of the Victorian era, and Herrmann responded with a piece of lyrical music that used delicate flutes leading to a blizzard of strings and harps that perfectly captured the guiltlessness and simplicity of a former age. The "snow picture" sequence as it grew to be called, became one of the most charmingly innovative transitions to a flashback ever seen or heard on film.[7]

Setting an Initial Tone

The music that accompanies the main titles of a film usually serves at least two functions. First, it often articulates rhythmically the title information itself, making it somehow more interesting than it is. If the music consciously captures our attention anywhere in the film, it is during the showing of the titles and credits. Second, music is especially important here, for at this initial stage it usually establishes the general mood or tone of the film. At the opening of *Bonnie and Clyde*, we start to hear a soft, sweet, lyrical Rudy Vallee pop song of the early 1930s, "Deep Night." As the volume rises from a whisper, while still photographs of both real and cinematic characters are projected, the song's melancholy at once soothes us and subtly foreshadows the uncommon violence of the film that follows. This musical element seems to echo a visual one: The tranquil white titles slowly bleed to dark red in a foreshadowing of the movie's later, surprising carnage.

Title music may even introduce story elements through the use of lyrics, as was done in *High Noon* and *Cat Ballou*. Because the opening or establishing scene is generally under way before the credits are completed, it can also dramatically or rhythmically match the visual image behind the credits.

Musical Sounds as Part of the Score

Certain sound effects or noises from nature can be used in subtle ways for their own sake, to create atmosphere in the same way that music does. Crashing waves, rippling streams, bird calls, and moaning winds all possess clear musical qualities, as do many manmade sounds, such as foghorns, auto horns, industrial noises of various kinds, steam whistles, clanging doors, chains, squealing auto brakes, and engine noises. Such sounds can be built up and artistically mixed into an exciting rhythmical sequence that, because of its naturalness, may be even more effective than music in conveying a mood.

Music as Interior Monologue

In the modern film, songs with lyrics that have no clear or direct relationship to the scenes they accompany are increasingly used as part of the soundtrack. In many cases, such songs are used to reveal the private moods, emotions, or thoughts of a central character. This was the case with the lyrics of "The Sounds of Silence" in *The Graduate* and "Everybody's Talkin' at Me" in *Midnight Cowboy*. Such lyrics function on a more or less independent level as a highly subjective and poetic means of communication, capable of expanding the meaning and emotional content of the scenes they accompany.

Music as a Base for Choreographed Action

Usually the director composes, photographs, and edits the images first and adds music later, after the visual elements are already assembled. In some films, however, music is used to provide a clear rhythmic framework for the action, which essentially becomes a highly stylized dance performed to the music (Figure 9.7).

Director John Badham remembers his use of the technique in *Saturday Night Fever*:

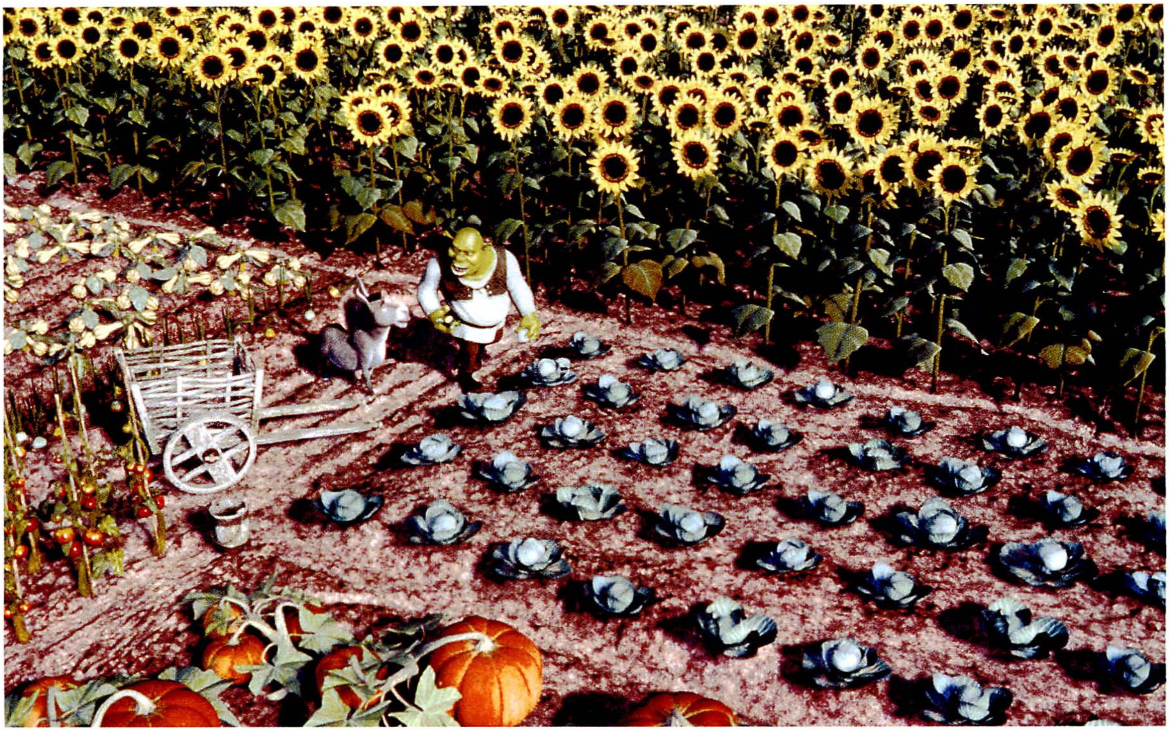


FIGURE 9.7 Choreographed Action Music In *Shrek*, the title character (shown with his comic-irritant buddy, the talking Donkey) conspires to keep his domain private. At one point in the animated film, Shrek rhythmically battles a menacing army to the tune of "Bad Reputation."

> [I]n the opening we took a tape recorder out with us in the street—we already had a demo made by the Bee Gees of "Staying Alive," which was their initial version. But they had promised us they'd always stick to the same tempo in any future versions they did. The tempo was really all I had to have. But I had the rest of the song, too. Every time we shot a shot, that music would be playing, so all the movie that is on screen is in exact tempo to that. . . . [John Travolta's] paint can is swinging in the right tempo with the music. Of course, Travolta's feet are going right on the beat. And that makes a big difference for unifying and getting a synergistic action between the sound and the music.[8]

A similar technique is used when the music originates from some on-screen source, such as a radio or a CD player, and the actor coordinates the rhythms of his movements to it. In *Hopscotch*, Walter Matthau, playing a former CIA agent writing his memoirs, comically structures his typing and related tasks to match the rhythms of a Mozart symphony on the record player.

In *Punchline*, Sally Field and her two daughters redefine the phrase "fast food" as they frantically clean house and throw together a formal dinner for

FIGURE 9.8 Music First—and Later One scene in *O Brother, Where Art Thou?* actually "creates" the music that accompanies some of the later action in the film. Here, three prison escapees (Tim Blake Nelson, George Clooney, and John Turturro) become the Soggy Bottom Boys when they record "A Man of Constant Sorrow" in a makeshift country studio.

husband John Goodman and two Catholic priests he is bringing home on short notice. The frantic action is choreographed to the accompaniment of "The Sabre Dance" on the stereo. With the meal finally ready, the house cleaned, the table set, and the guests seated, they sit down to begin a quiet dinner soothed by *Pachelbel's Canon* until one of the daughters breaks the mood by telling a shockingly filthy joke.

An extreme example of this technique of "music first" is heard in *O Brother, Where Art Thou?* (Figure 9.8). This Coen Brothers film uses "roots" music throughout to help provide a narrative framework, and these sounds combine with Roger Deakins's arresting images to create an indelible movie experience. Some parts of the film, such as the "O Death" segment, are intricately choreographed to the music. In other sections, the dynamic rhythms of the action and the editing are somewhat more subtly designed to complement or contrast with the words and music of melodic songs. Such "traditional" tunes as "You Are My Sunshine," "I'll Fly Away," and "Keep on the Sunny Side" appear from a soundtrack album that was already available and immensely popular well before the film itself was released.

Action that has no essential rhythmic qualities can be edited to music to create an effect very similar to that of choreographed action. The Little League baseball action in *The Bad News Bears* was apparently edited to match the heroic rhythms of orchestral music from the opera *Carmen*, creating the impression of a comic/heroic dance.

Covering Possible Weaknesses in the Film

A nonstorytelling function of the musical score is to disguise or cover up weaknesses in acting and dialogue. When such defects are evident, the director or composer can use heavy musical backing to make weak acting or banal dialogue appear more dramatically significant than it otherwise would. Television soap operas traditionally used organ music for this purpose with great frequency (and little sense of shame). Modern action films are frequently criticized for their disregard of narrative credibility, but, as producer Jerry Bruckheimer (*Con Air*; *Armageddon*) observes, a film can divert the audience's attention from such weaknesses. "Sound," he says, "carries you through moments when the action doesn't. Take away the sound and it's dead."[9] Director Martin Scorsese, in characterizing the score that Elmer Bernstein wrote for *The Age of Innocence*, sees greater complexity in the process generally:

> Film music's kind of a slippery thing. It can take hold of your ear when the rest of the movie eludes your imagination, or just doesn't have the strength to challenge it. It can overwhelm you in a great wash of sound, so dramatic inadequacies don't seem quite so treacherous. It can add punch where the story or the filmmaking craft have abandoned the drama. Or—and this is best—it can give the film another dimension, a separate signature.[10]

And Bernstein's delicate score assists director Todd Haynes in reaching that other dimension in *Far From Heaven*.

The examples just described represent only the most common and obvious uses of music in the modern film. The point to keep in mind is that we must be aware of the various emotions and levels of meaning that music communicates (Figure 9.9).

SYNTHESIZER SCORING

A fairly recent trend is the use of electronic synthesizers for instrumentation on film scores. A synthesizer is essentially a musical computer played on a piano-like keyboard and equipped with various knobs and buttons that permit all sorts of variation in pitch, tone, and decay. It can imitate the sounds of a large variety of other instruments while still retaining its own distinct quality. Because of its tremendous flexibility, it is the fastest, most efficient way to score a film. A two-person team—one playing the keyboard, the other controlling the sound qualities—can create a full sound comparable to that provided by a complete orchestra.

Synthesizers have played a part in film scores for some time, at least since *A Clockwork Orange* in 1971, but they have become much more prevalent since *Midnight Express* (1978), which has a complete "synth" score by Giorgio Moroder. Films with synthesizer scores include *Sorcerer*, *Thief*, *American Gigolo*, *Foxes*, *Blade Runner*, *Cat People*, and *Beverly Hills Cop*. The great versatility of

FIGURE 9.9 "Anachronistic" Film Music Strong emotions and multiple levels of meaning are supplemented in *A Knight's Tale*, very loosely based on a Chaucer fable from the Middle Ages, through the use of modern rock music. In scenes such as this one (featuring Heath Ledger and Paul Bettany), Queen's "We Will Rock You" and David Bowie's "Golden Years" add both tension and ballast to the narrative.

synth scoring was most evident in *Chariots of Fire* (1981), a period piece that seemed an unlikely choice for an electronic score. *Chariots* composer Vangelis's challenge was to compose a "score which was contemporary, but still compatible with the time of the film." He met the challenge successfully by mixing synthesizer and a grand piano.[11]

Sometimes it is difficult to know whether to classify electronic scores as music or sound effects. In *Cat People* (1982), for example, the synthesizer often functions as an almost subliminal animal presence behind the image, creating the effect of "listening in on the vital processes of other organisms—of other places, other worlds."[12] Horror movies have been less subtle in their overuse of the tension-building, nervous-pulse sounds, which are repeated over and over without musical development.

Electronic scores are still relatively rare in major films because most top composers still prefer to use an orchestra. Even in the case of *The X-Files*, a 1998 film version of the popular television program, the composer, Mark Snow, chose to "enlarge" with orchestral adaptations his celebrated synthesizer themes from the series. Some writers of film music (James Newton Howard in *King Kong* [2005], for example) utilize "synthesized mock-ups" to share ideas with directors and prepare for later full orchestrations.

FIGURE 9.10 Movies With No Music Score Many cinephiles have long complained about the superabundant and intrusive musical cues in films made by American studios (recent case in point: check out the myriad, forceful grumblings of reviewers about James Horner's score for the 2006 version of *All the King's Men*). In Europe, however, the expectations of both filmmakers and audiences seem, generally, to be very different. There, less music is considered more appropriate. And in some films, such as Michael Haneke's *Cache'* (starring Daniel Auteuil and Juliette Binoche, above), provide no music at all; dialogue, ambient sounds, and silence alone must even carry the weight of building and sustaining suspense.

BALANCING THE SCORE

Generally speaking, economy is a great virtue in film music, both in duration and in instrumentation. The musical score should do no more than is necessary to perform its proper function clearly and simply. However, because of some irresistible temptations to dress up scenes with music whether they need it or not, the normal dramatic film usually ends up with too much music rather than not enough. The Hollywood tendency seems to be toward large orchestras, even though smaller combinations can be more interesting and colorful or even more powerful in their effect on the film as a whole. Typically, European films tend to use less music than do American works—or, in some cases, none at all (Figure 9.10).

The proper amount of music depends on the nature of the picture itself. Some films require a lot of music. Others are so realistic that music would interfere with the desired effect. In many cases, the most dramatically effective musical score is that which is used most sparingly. For *All the President's Men*, in 1976, composer David Shire had to be convinced by the director, Alan J. Pakula, that his film needed *any* music written for it. As Shire puts it, "This was a case where a director had a better grasp of what music could do for a film than a composer. That doesn't happen very often." Two years earlier, near the beginning of his career, Shire had shown a similar disinclination for overwriting when he composed the haunting solo piano score for Francis Ford Coppola's *The Conversation.* About that experience, Shire says:

> One of the things that makes scoring films so much fun is the opportunity to constantly write for orchestras of all sizes and shapes, and to write only as much music as a film really needs. The most economical score is often the best one, just as the simplest solution is often the most effective. But it always depends on the picture. If next week I get one that calls for ninety minutes of orchestral scoring, then that's what I'll give it, but *The Conversation* required very little. In that film, about a surveillance expert whose obsessive nature gets him involved with a case that causes him to lose his mind, I used a synthesizer to modulate the texture of the piano cues to give a weird, unsettling effect to underscore the man's dilemma. It's opportunities like this that make film scoring a fascinating business.[13]

Oscar-winning composer Randy Newman, who wrote the scores for *Ragtime*, *The Natural*, and the *Toy Story* films, is critical of Woody Allen's *Manhattan* score, which he feels is too big for the film. Although he does not object to the full-orchestra treatment during panoramic scenes of the Manhattan skyline, Newman claims that the music often overwhelms the characters and the action with "great genius music by Gershwin and Wagner—and little Woody Allen and other little guys talking on the phone at the same time. It dwarfed them."[14]

The director Sidney Lumet (*Twelve Angry Men*, *The Pawnbroker*; *Murder on the Orient Express*, *Dog Day Afternoon*, *Network*, *Find Me Guilty*) has observed, "When I haven't been able to find a musical concept that adds to the movie, I haven't used a score. Studios hate the idea of a picture without music. It scares them." Besides, he notes, "talking about music is like talking about colors: the same color can mean different things to different people."[15] Usually, though, an attempt at creating film music is definitely worth the resulting colorful dialogue.

Finally, in *Knowing the Score: Film Composers Talk About the Art*, *Craft*, *Blood*, *Sweat*, *and Tears of Writing for Cinema*, David Morgan has observed:

> Cinema has offered some of the most vibrant and sophisticated music available to mass audiences, yet film music remains an underappreciated art form. . . . Good film music can rise above its material and live on outside of the film, long after the drama for which it was written has been forgotten. And it is a testament to . . . composers . . . that Hollywood has given them opportunities to write their music and have it performed in a wide variety of styles and genres that would be almost impossible to match on stage or in the concert halls.[16]

ANALYZING THE MUSICAL SCORE

On General Functions of the Musical Score

1. Where in the film is music used to exactly match the natural rhythms of the moving objects on the screen? At what points in the film does the music simply try to capture the overall emotional mood of a scene?
2. Where does the film employ rhythmic and emotive variations on a single musical theme or motif?
3. Does the musical score remain inconspicuous in the background, or does it occasionally break through to assert itself?
4. If the music does demand our conscious attention, does it still perform a subordinate function in the film as a whole? How?
5. Where in the film is the main purpose of the music to match structural or visual rhythms? Where is the music used to create more generalized emotional patterns?
6. How would the total effect of the film differ if the musical score were removed from the soundtrack?

On Special Functions of the Musical Score

1. Which of the following functions of film music are used in the film, and where are they used?
   a. to heighten the dramatic effect of dialogue
   b. to tell an inner story by expressing a state of mind
   c. to provide a sense of time or place
   d. to foreshadow events or build dramatic tension
   e. to add levels of meaning to the image
   f. to aid characterization
   g. to trigger conditioned responses
   h. to characterize rapid movement (traveling music)
   i. to provide important transitions
   j. to cover weaknesses and defects
2. Does the music accompanying the titles serve basically to underscore the rhythmic qualities of the title information or to establish the general mood of the film? If lyrics are sung at this point, how do these lyrics relate to the film as a whole?
3. Where are sound effects or natural noises employed for a kind of rhythmic or musical effect?
4. If lyrics sung within the film provide a kind of interior monologue, what feeling or attitude do they convey?
5. If music is used as a base for choreographed action, how appropriate is the piece selected? How appropriate are its rhythms to the mood and the visual content? How effectively is the choreographed sequence integrated into the film as a whole?
6. Does the score use a full orchestra throughout, a small number of well-chosen instruments, or a synthesizer? How well suited is the instrumentation to the

film as a whole? If it is not well chosen, what kind of instrumentation should have been used? How would a different choice of instrumentation change the quality of the film, and why would it be an improvement?
7. Does the amount of music used fit the requirements of the film, or is the musical score overdone or used too economically?
8. How effectively does the score perform its various functions?

VIDEO EXERCISES

Instructions for locating specific sequences are given on page 86.

1. **Music 1.** Watch the indicated sequence from *The World According to Garp* [4265 to 4440; 1:15:12 to 1:18:33], paying special attention to the music. What important story elements does the music in this segment convey? What roles do lyrics, vocal styles, and instrumentation play in this sequence?
2. **Music 2.** With the TV sound off, watch the beginning of *The Shining* (1980) through the opening credits with the following musical selections playing on your CD or MP3 player:
   a. "On the Road Again" by Willie Nelson or any instrumental version of "The Orange Blossom Special"
   b. "Greensleeves" by Mantovani, "Scarborough Fair" by Simon and Garfunkel, or any familiar Strauss waltz

   How does the change in music change the way you respond emotionally and visually to this brief sequence? Now turn the sound up on the TV and watch the sequence again. What is different about the way you see and experience the sequence this time? Describe your responses to each viewing in as much detail as possible.
3. **Music 3.** Watch the "Birth of Humanoid Intelligence" sequence from *2001: A Space Odyssey* [0730 to 1115; 0:08:48 to 0:13:58]. Then turn the TV sound off and replay the sequence with six or seven different and greatly varied musical selections from your own record, tape, CD, or MP3 collection. Which of your musical scores were most effective and why? How do your most effective scores change the meaning or significance of the original?
4. **Music 4.** Watch *Sleepless in Seattle* in its entirety, paying special attention to scenes accompanied by music. What thematic strains are repeated frequently during the film? What is their function? How do the popular recorded songs that are used reinforce mood and story elements?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

Although director Jean-Jacques Beineix's elegant, delightful 1982 film *Diva* was shot in French, no subtitles are really needed to understand its almost "self-contained" opening sequence. In fact, its action and, especially, its music make it function as a kind of "silent" movie, foreshadowing the film's romance, adventure, humor, and suspense. (This 6½-minute passage features only classical—or

"lyric," as one character insists—music, but the film later uses punk rock effectively, also.)

Watch *Diva* closely from its beginning (including the credits) through the standing ovation for the gorgeous-looking and -sounding opera singer played by Wilhelmenia Wiggins Fernandez. Be well aware of the vivid impact that the visual elements of this scene have on your expectations: the young man with his motorbike and hidden tape recorder; the "distressed" walls and stage of the Paris Opera House; the beautiful, still, dignified diva; the varied faces of the other characters briefly glimpsed. But, for this exercise, try harder to identify the precise uses of the soundtrack—its musical score and its foil, silence—in this mini-movie that works on multiple levels of both style and substance.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial (Two-Disc Limited Collector's Edition):
"The Music of John Williams" offers an introduction to this popular composer for films, using "interviews and footage of the long-standing relationship between John Williams and Steven Spielberg."

War of the Worlds (2005) (Two-Disc Limited Edition):
In a 12-minute section of disc two called "Scoring 'War of the Worlds,'" documentation of the ongoing symbiotic Williams-Spielberg collaboration continues. Here, the two artists speak about how this film marks the first time the composer was required to begin work when the director had only finished a few reels of his shooting. Spielberg says that, during the making of his movies, he constantly "hovers between" his editor, Michael Kahn, and his composer, John Williams, giving and taking creative suggestions freely. Williams himself provides many details of his work process. In this film, he clearly is pleased with his bold decision to include a few "grand musical gestures" in the tradition of old monster movies. He tells of using a women's chorus for punctuating moments of human "evaporation" by aliens, and of corralling a men's bass group for registering "the lowest kind of pitch our bodies can make" (a kind of "Tibetan monk" sound). Sound design technicians spent months collecting strange sounds that Williams later joined with synthesizer music to "cover" Morgan Freeman's opening and closing narration.

Memoirs of a Geisha (Two-Disc Widescreen Special Edition):
In "The Music of 'Memoirs,'" on this set's second DVD, John Williams announces he was so eager to compose the music for the film version of Arthur Golden's novel that, for the first time ever, he actively sought a movie job. Of course, because Spielberg produced the film, his request was hardly ignored.

Director Rob Marshall clearly jumped at the chance to work with Williams, too—along with the virtuoso soloists the composer brought to the project, Yo-Yo Ma on cello and Itzhak Perlman on violin.

Monster's Ball:

A featurette about the creation of the film's music, "Scoring the Film," includes interviews with director Mark Forster and composers Thad Spencer, Chris Beaty, and Richard Werbowenko (who work as "Asche and Spencer").

The Godfather DVD Collection (five discs):

Included among the wealth of materials here are "Behind the Scenes" featurettes about the films' two composers: Nino Rota, Fellini's frequent collaborator, whom we meet via an audio discussion recorded in Rome by Francis Ford Coppola, shares part of an early piano score for the original film. Carmine Coppola, who scored the third film alone, talks about his professional relationship with the director (his son).

A Knight's Tale (Special Edition):

On one of the DVD's featurettes, "The Rock Music Scene in 1370," director/producer/writer Brian Helgeland comments on his reasons for choosing to use music by the groups Queen, War, and Bachman-Turner Overdrive, in addition to the work of composer Carter Burwell.

In the Mood for Love (The Criterion Collection):

In an interactive essay, writer Joanna Lee discusses the varieties of elegant and haunting music used in this film, and the text is "augmented by links to take the viewer directly to the musical cues within the movie." The DVD also contains separate printed statements by director Wong Kar-wai and composer Michael Galasso.

Planet of the Apes (2001) *(Two-Disc Special Edition)* and *Men in Black II (Widescreen Special Edition):*

Both of these DVDs provide extensive and fascinating interviews with Danny Elfman. The first presents the prolific composer during the recording of his "Chimp Symphony, Opus 37," and the other gives the viewer a strong sense of how Elfman has matched his music to the general strangeness in the *Men in Black* films. (A profile of Elfman also appears on the *Spider-Man* DVD.)

Gladiator:

Popular film composer Hans Zimmer is interviewed on this disc.

Ghosts of Mars:

Director John Carpenter, we are told, has composed music for all twenty-three of his feature films. Here, he is seen while supervising the scoring sessions by Anthrax and Buckethead for the percussive music of this movie.

Psycho (Collector's Edition):

Alfred Hitchcock's 1960 horror classic is justly celebrated for the shrewdness of its editing. But any film student needs to be acutely aware of how aural, as well as visual, images make the movie work so well. An element of this DVD allows one to view the famous shower scene montage either with or without its accompanying music by legendary composer Bernard Herrmann.

Fahrenheit 451:

After Bernard Herrmann's illustrious association with Orson Welles (*Citizen Kane*, for example) and a long, fruitful collaboration with the master of suspense (including *Vertigo*), Hitchcock fired the composer during the scoring of *Torn Curtain* in 1966. Herrmann thus reached a nadir in both his personal and professional lives. But the French director François Truffaut admired Herrmann and came to his rescue by hiring him to score a film version of Ray Bradbury's novel *Fahrenheit 451*. In a substantial feature (16½ minutes long) on this disc, Herrmann's biographer, Stephen C. Smith, expertly examines the history, basic nature, and intricacies of this romantic's career, observing how his apt passion for books was especially helpful in creating the wonderfully effective music for *Fahrenheit 451*. Beginning with the very first cue of the opening sequence, Herrmann consistently meshed a kind of "sensuousness" with a curiously "elusive and emotionally distant greyness" in the score.

Singin' in the Rain (Two-Disc Special Edition):

The special features on disc two (including a new documentary hosted by star Debbie Reynolds) are delicious treats for any viewer. Most entertaining and instructive, though, for students of the movie musical is a twelve-work collection of excerpts from films that included Arthur Freed/Nacio Herb Brown songs later chosen for reuse in this 1952 film. A spectacular original rendition of "You Are My Lucky Star" (from *Broadway Melody of 1936*) stars Eleanor Powell. Ukelele Ike (Cliff Edwards), who sings the earliest "Singin' in the Rain" (from *The Hollywood Revue of 1929*), later became the voice of Jiminy Cricket.

A Hard Day's Night (Miramax Collector's Series):

In "Listen to the Music Playing in Your Head," Sir George Martin, the Beatles' producer, talks about each of the songs used on the soundtrack, often revealing the songs' origins and discussing their relative effectiveness in relation to the film's visual elements.

Monsters, Inc. (Collector's Edition Two-Disc DVD):

On disc two, in a section called "Human World," in the compartment "Monster Song," John Goodman and Billy Crystal record "If I Didn't Have You," composer Randy Newman's 2001 Academy Award winner for Best Original Song. The brief feature also includes on-screen comments from Pixar executive producer John Lasseter and director Pete Docter.

My Fair Lady (WB Premiere Collection):

Although it is well known that Marnie Nixon provided the singing voice for Audrey Hepburn in the theatrical release of this musical film, the DVD version offers, for comparison, the recordings that Hepburn herself made of "Show Me" and "Wouldn't It Be Loverly?"

Grease:

A section called "Retrospective Interviews" on this DVD checks in with many of the film musical's stars, including John Travolta, Olivia Newton-John, and Stockard Channing; the consultations with its producer (Allan Carr) and, especially, its director (Randal Kleiser) are much too brief. In 2006, though, a special "Rockin' Rydell" edition added more filmmaker features.

Koyaanisqatsi (Life Out of Balance), *Powaqqatsi (Life in Transformation)*, and *Naqoyqatsi (Life as War):*

Although this textbook has otherwise bypassed non-narrative films such as these three, the DVDs are well worth studying because of their focus on the marriage of visuals and music. In the first, for the 1983 work, director Godfrey Reggio and composer Philip Glass (who worked together in what they call "a hand-in-glove operation") discuss "The Essence of Life"; in the second, for the 1988 film, they talk of "The Impact of Progress." On the third disc (2002), Glass conducts a conversation with Yo-Yo Ma and participates in a panel discussion with Reggio and editor/visual designer Jon Kane.

The Usual Suspects (Special Edition):

Along with many other materials, an interview with composer John Ottman, who also edited this film, appears on the DVD. But one must look very carefully to find it, because the feature, a so-called "Easter egg," is hidden (i.e., not announced on the disc's packaging). [For more information on this instance and many similar ones, consult Marc Saltzman's *DVD Confidential: Hundreds of Hidden Easter Eggs Revealed!* (McGraw-Hill/Osborne, 2002) and its sequel.]

King Kong (2005) *(Two-Disc Special Edition):*

On disc two, "Post Production Diaries" include on-camera interviews with composer James Newton Howard and several members of the extensive music team on Peter Jackson's version of this potent American story. The discussion acutely illustrates how film scores are often composed and recorded in an "adrenaline rush" to the opening date, leaving little time for much creative contemplation or even sleep. Viewers here are told how Jackson and Howard, at the time of their months-long collaboration, had never met, and how their work was accomplished via video teleconferencing from their separate work areas six thousand miles apart. (This occurred, by the way, only after Jackson had reportedly fired Howard Shore, who earlier had created the Oscar-winning music for his immensely successful *Lord of the Rings* trilogy.) We also learn that the recording itself was finally done mostly during two-day, provisionally-scheduled shifts in three different L.A. sound studios (Todd-AO, Fox, and Warners) that were large enough to accommodate the necessary 108-piece orchestra.

FILMS FOR STUDY

The Age of Innocence (1993)
Amadeus (1984)
American Graffiti (1973)
Apollo 13 (1995)
Beloved (1998)
Benny and Joon (1993)

The Big Chill (1983)
Body Heat (1981)
Bonnie and Clyde (1967)
Breaking Away (1979)
Breaking the Waves (1996)
Brokeback Mountain (2005)
Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid (1969)
Cabaret (1972)
Chariots of Fire (1981)
Chicago (2002)
A Clockwork Orange (1971)
The Constant Gardener (2005)
The Conversation (1974)
Dancer in the Dark (2000)
Dances with Wolves (1990)
De-Lovely (2004)
Dr. Strangelove (1964)
8 Mile (2002)
E.T. The Extra Terrestrial (1982)
Frida (2002)
The Graduate (1967)
Hustle & Flow (2005)
Jaws (1975)
A Knight's Tale (2001)
The Last Picture Show (1971)
Last Tango in Paris (1973)
Living Out Loud (1998)
Mad Hot Ballroom (2005)
A Man and a Woman (1966)
A Mighty Wind (2003)
Memoirs of a Geisha (2005)
Munich (2005)
My Architect (2003)
Nashville (1975)
The Natural (1984)
O Brother, Where Art Thou? (2000)
Out of Africa (1985)
Pauline and Paulette (2001)
The Piano (1993)
Pink Floyd: The Wall (1982)
Ray (2004)
Rent (2005)
The Saddest Music in the World (2004)
Saturday Night Fever (1977)
The School of Rock (2003)
Schultze Gets the Blues (2003)
Shrek (2001)
Singin' in the Rain (1952)
Sleepless in Seattle (1993)
Solaris (2002)
Star Wars (1977)
Sweet and Lowdown (1999)
Syriana (2005)
Titanic (1997)
Top Hat (1935)
The Truman Show (1998)
2001: A Space Odyssey (1968)
Walk the Line (2005)

10

ACTING

An audience identifies with the actors of flesh and blood and heartbeat, as no reader or beholder can identify with even the most artful paragraphs in books or the most inspiring paintings. There, says the watcher, but for some small difference in time or costume or inflections or gait, go I. . . . And so, the actor becomes a catalyst; he brings to bright ignition that spark in every human being that longs for the miracle of transformation.

—EDWARD G. ROBINSON, ACTOR

THE IMPORTANCE OF ACTING

> *All we are is a very sophisticated recording device whose job is to record an event that has to be created by the actors. No matter how brilliantly you record something, if the event stinks, then you have a brilliant recording of a lousy event. So the crucial element is the actor.*[1]
>
> —MARK RYDELL, DIRECTOR

When we consider going to a movie, the first question we usually ask has to do not with the director or the cinematographer but with the actors: Who's in it? This is a natural question, because the art of the actor is so clearly visible. The actor's work commands most of our attention, overshadowing the considerable contributions of the writer, director, cinematographer, editor, and composer of the score. As George Kernodle puts it in *An Invitation to the Theatre:*

> Whether the picture is *Tom Jones*, *Thunderball*, *The Sound of Music*, *Ship of Fools*, or *The Collector*; it is the star that draws the crowds. The audience may be amused, thrilled, or deeply moved by the story, fascinated by new plot devices, property gadgets, and camera angles, charmed by backgrounds that are exotic, or captivated by those that are familiar and real, but it is the people on the screen, and especially the faces, that command the center of attention.[2]

Because we naturally respond to film's most human ingredient, the actor's contribution is extremely important.

Yet despite our tendency to focus attention on the actor, there is general agreement among critics and directors that the actor's role in film should be a subordinate one, one of many important elements contributing to a greater aesthetic whole, the film itself. As Alfred Hitchcock states it, "Film work hasn't much need for the virtuoso actor who gets his effects and climaxes himself, who plays directly to the audience with the force of his talent and personality. The screen actor has got to be much more plastic; he has to submit himself to be used by the director and the camera."[3]

THE GOAL OF THE ACTOR

The ultimate goal of any actor should be to make us believe completely in the reality of the character. If this goal is to be achieved, actors must either develop or be blessed with several talents. First of all, they must be able to project sincerity, truthfulness, and naturalness in such a way that we are never aware that they are acting a part. In a sense, good acting must seem not to be acting at all.

Sometimes actors achieve a certain naturalness through tricks and gimmicks. Knowing that Ratso Rizzo, the character that Dustin Hoffman plays in *Midnight Cowboy*, had a distinct limp, a fellow actor advised Hoffman on how to make the limp consistent: "Once you get the limp right, why don't you put rocks in your shoe? You'll never have to think about limping. It will be there; you won't have to worry about it." Actors use similar tricks to create a trademark for their characters and to keep the characters consistent. But good acting demands much more than tricks and gimmicks. To project the sincerity that a really deep, complex, and demanding role requires, actors must be willing to draw on the deepest and most personal qualities of their inner being. As director Mark Rydell (a former actor himself) says:

> I find that acting is one of the bravest professions of all. An actor has to remain vulnerable. The entire process of learning to act necessitates a kind of peeling away of layers of insulation that we develop from the time we're children, when we were innocent and exposed. The actor has to sandpaper his feelings and his vulnerabilities. He has to be open to assault from circumstances, events, relationships. I suspect that any time you see a great performance, it's because some actor has been courageous enough to allow you to peek at a very personal, private secret of his.[4]

Actors must also possess the intelligence, imagination, sensitivity, and insight into human nature necessary to fully understand the characters they play—their inner thoughts, motivations, and emotions. Furthermore, actors must have the ability to express these things convincingly through voice, body movements, gestures, or facial expressions, so the qualities seem true to the characters portrayed and to the situation in which the characters find themselves. And actors must maintain the illusion of reality in their characters with complete consistency from beginning to end. It is also important for actors to keep their egos under control, so that they can see their roles in proper perspective to the dramatic work as a whole. Veteran actor Michael Caine offers this definition of the actor's ultimate goal:

> I said before that in my acting I've tried to be a person. At movies, you should not sit there and say this is a poor performance by a poor actor, or that it's a wonderful performance by a wonderful actor. If I'm really doing my job correctly you should sit there and say, "I'm *involved* with this person, and have no idea there's an actor there." So, really, I'm trying to defeat myself the entire time. You should never see the *actor*; never see the wheels going.[5]

BECOMING THE CHARACTER

If an actor's goal is to obscure his or her own personality and to become another person on the screen, the actor must learn to behave reflexively and naturally as this new character. Although there are many subtle variations in the way actors prepare for roles, they generally choose one of two techniques to develop well-rounded, believable characterizations: the inside approach or the outside approach. Actor Edward James Olmos describes the most basic elements of the two approaches:

> The English form of study teaches you to go from the outside in. You do the behavior and it starts to seep inside. The Stanislavski method teaches you to go from the inside out. You begin with the feeling and memory, and those feelings begin to affect your behavior.
>
> In other words, some people will turn around and get a limp and then figure out where the limp came from. Other people have to figure out why they have to limp before they can do the limp.[6]

Cliff Robertson, an Academy Award winner for his performance in *Charly*, believes that he must understand all facets of his character's personality and thought processes. This inside method of preparation allows him to think and respond naturally in the role:

> I worked from the inside—but I'd had seven years of digesting the character. I can't explain it. I still think acting is one of the more mysterious art forms. I'll give you an example: the night before the first day's shooting my wife and I were preparing for bed and she said, "How're you going to play him?" That sort of stopped me. I said, "What do you mean by that?" She said, "*Physically*—how will you play him?" I said, "I don't know." She looked at me and said, "You've had this property for seven years—you've been to all these workshops, and you can't tell me how you see him?" I said, "No, at this minute I can't tell you." I went to work the next morning and [Director] Ralph [Nelson] asked me if I wanted a run-through, and I said, "No, crank 'em up." That's what is called "going with the instrument," I guess—I just went with it. But I had had seven years of osmosis—normally an actor doesn't have that privilege. So when you have that kind of background you *can* go with the instrument.
>
> Normally, when I have, say, two months to think about a role, I'll cut it up in eighteen pieces and examine each piece of the character, all sides, look at it, then put it back together and look at it again. Then cut it up again, give the pieces different positions, so that I literally know the character so well that should the director ask me—and as a director I ask this—"Given a certain set of circumstances, what would this character do?" I would expect the actor to say, "Oh, this character would do this and that, but not the other thing." I feel you should know a character that well.[7]

Joanne Woodward, honored for her work in *The Three Faces of Eve*, *Rachel, Rachel*, and *The Effect of Gamma Rays on Man-in-the-Moon Marigolds*, describes her outside approach to character development:

> I'm afraid I work backward—especially for someone trained as I have been. Mine is an odd way to work; I work from the outside in. I always have to know what a

> character looks like because to me, having studied with Martha Graham, so much that goes on inside is reflected outside; it has to do with the way you move. So I generally start with the way a character moves. I'm not very intellectual, so I can't go to find very specific things until I find them, as Paul [Newman, her husband] would say, viscerally. I took Rachel's movements from my child, Nell. She's very pigeon-toed, so I just took the way Nell looks and grew it up. And somehow, when you move like that—all sorts of things happen to you inside.[8]

In his book about acting for film, Oscar-winner Michael Caine observed:

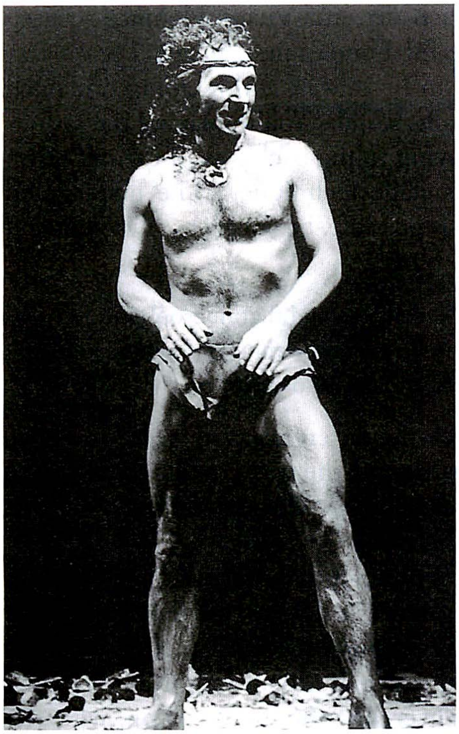
> When becoming a character, you have to steal. Steal whatever you see. You can even steal from other actors' characterizations; but if you do, only steal from the best. If you see Vivien Leigh do something, or Marlon Brando or Robert De Niro or Meryl Streep do something that fits your character, steal it. Because what you're seeing them do, they stole.
>
> The best movie actors become their characters to such an extent that the product isn't viewed by an audience as a performance. It's a strange situation, but in film a person is a person, not an actor; and yet you need an actor to play the person. . . .
>
> You've got to base your character, not on some actor-ish memory of what reality is because, finally, the actor is in charge of the effect he wants. Woody Allen can play a tragic scene about a brain tumor and make the audience laugh. Another actor can fall on a banana skin and make the audience cry. But the audience . . . must see a real person standing there, somebody just like them.[9]

No matter what their methods of preparation, actors who attempt to submerge their own personalities and become a character deserve respect for their efforts, according to director Elia Kazan:

> The beautiful and the terrible thing about actors is that when they work they are completely exposed; you have to appreciate that if you direct them. They are being critically observed not only for their emotions, their technique, and their intelligence, but for their legs, their breasts, their carriage, their double chins, and so on. Their whole being is opened to scrutiny. . . . How can you feel anything but gratitude for creatures so vulnerable and so naked?[10]

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN FILM ACTING AND STAGE ACTING

Acting for motion pictures and acting for the stage have in common the goals, traits, and skills described above, yet there are important differences in the acting techniques required for the two media (Figure 10.1). The primary difference results from the relative distance between the performer and the spectator. When acting in the theater, actors must always be sure that every member of the



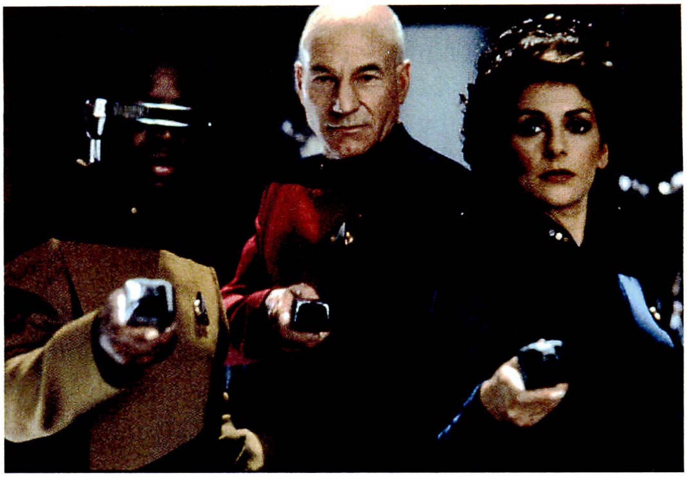


FIGURE 10.1 **Stage vs. Film Acting** Many performers seem equally adept at satisfying the separate demands of acting for the theater and working in movies. For example, Patrick Stewart can broadly command the stage as Puck in a production of *A Midsummer Night's Dream,* left, and also offer the cinematic nuances of Jean-Luc Picard in the *Star Trek* franchise, right.

audience can see and hear them distinctly. Thus, stage actors must constantly project the voice, make gestures that are obvious and clear, and generally move and speak so they can be clearly heard and seen by the most remote observer. This is no problem in a small, intimate theater, but the larger the theater and the more distant the spectator in the last row, the farther the actor's voice must be projected and the broader the gestures must be. As actors make these adjustments, the depth and reality of the performance suffer, because louder tones and wider gestures lead to generalized form and stylization. The finer, subtler shades of intonation are lost as the distance between actor and audience increases.

The problem of reaching a remote spectator does not exist in films, for the viewer is in the best possible location for hearing and seeing the actor. Because of the mobility of the recording microphone, a film actor may speak softly, or even whisper, with full confidence that the audience will hear every word and perceive every subtle tone of voice. The same holds true for facial expression, gesture, and body movement, for in close-ups even the subtlest facial expressions are clearly visible to the most remote spectator. The mobility of the camera further assures the actor that the audience will view the scene from the most effective angle. Thus film acting can be, and in fact must be, more subtle and restrained than stage acting.

Henry Fonda learned this lesson when director Victor Fleming accused him of "mugging" while filming a scene for Fonda's first movie, *The Farmer Takes a Wife.* Fonda had played the role on Broadway, and Fleming explained the problem to him in terms he clearly understood: "You're playing the farmer the way you did in the theater. You're playing to the back row of the orchestra and the rear row of the balcony. That's stage technique." The understated Fonda style, using as little facial mobility as possible, began at that moment and served the actor well in almost a hundred films:

> I just pulled it right back to reality because that lens and that microphone are doing all the projection you need. No sense in using too much voice, and you don't need any more expression on your face than you'd use in everyday life.[11]

Actor Robert Shaw put it this way: "Here's the difference: On stage, you have to dominate the audience. You don't have to *think* the way you do when you're in the movies. Stage acting is the art of *domination.* Movie acting is the art of *seduction.*"[12]

This is not to say that film acting is less difficult than stage acting. The film actor must be extremely careful in every gesture and word, for the camera and microphone are unforgiving and cruelly revealing, especially in close-ups. Because complete sincerity, naturalness, and restraint are all-important, a single false move or phony gesture or a line delivered without conviction, with too much conviction, or out of character will shatter the illusion of reality. Thus, the most successful film actors either possess or can project, with seeming ease and naturalness, a truly genuine personality, and they somehow appear to be completely themselves without self-consciousness or a sense of strain. This rare quality generally seems to depend as much on natural talent as on disciplined study and training.

Another difficulty faces film actors because they perform their roles in discontinuous bits and pieces, rather than in a continuous flow with one scene following the next, as in theater. Only later, in the cutting room, are the fragments assembled in proper sequence. For this reason, assuming the proper frame of mind, mood, and acting style for each segment of the film becomes a problem. For example, actors required to speak in a dialect far removed from their own natural speech patterns may have difficulty capturing the dialect exactly as they did in a scene filmed two weeks earlier, a problem they would not have in a continuous stage performance. But a clear advantage also arises from this difference. The performance of the film actor can be made more nearly perfect than can that of the stage actor, for the film editor and director can choose the best and most convincing performance from several takes of the same sequence. That way, the film becomes a continuous series of best performances.

Another disadvantage in film acting is that the actors have no direct link with the audience as stage actors do and therefore must act for an imagined audience. Film actors cannot draw on audience reaction for inspiration. What-

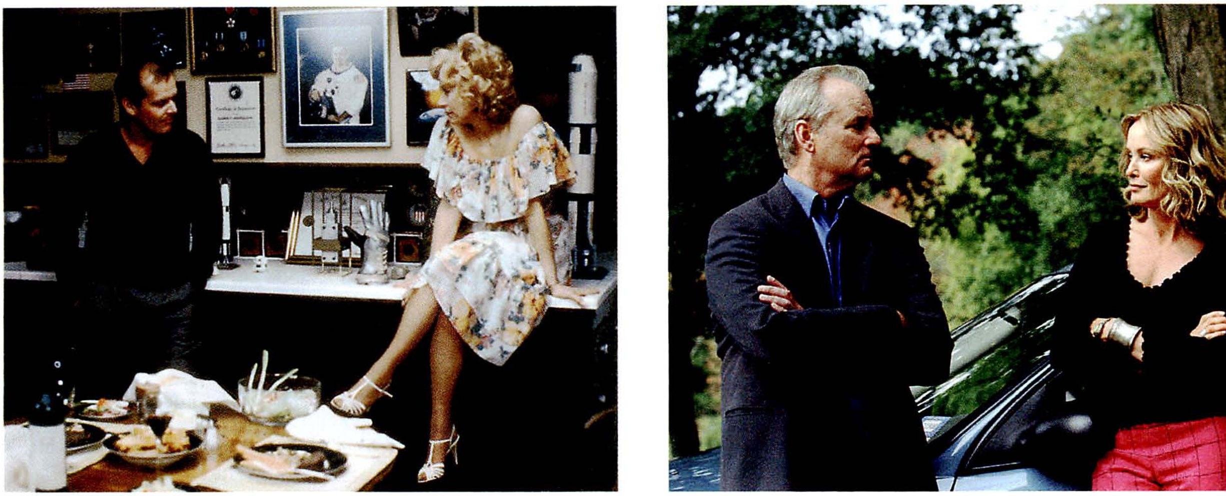


FIGURE 10.2 Corporeal Stances Body language speaks volumes about the characters and their relationships in these scenes picturing Jack Nicholson and Shirley MacLaine in *Terms of Endearment* (left) and Bill Murray and Jessica Lange in *Broken Flowers* (right).

ever inspiration they receive must come from the director, the crew, and the fact that their work will have more permanence than that of the stage actor.

Film is also for the most part a more physical medium than theater—that is, film actors must use more nonverbal communication than stage actors have to use. Julian Fast discusses this aspect of film acting in his book *Body Language:* "Good actors must all be experts in the use of body language. A process of elimination guarantees that only those with an excellent command of the grammar and vocabulary get to be successful."[13] According to critic Jack Kroll, "Actors who have a genius for this sleight of body are surrogates for the rest of us who are trapped in our own selves. To create a new human being is to recreate the very idea of humanity, to refresh that idea for us who grow stale in our mortality" (Figure 10.2).[14]

The grammar and vocabulary of body language include a vast array of nonverbal communication techniques, but the motion picture is perhaps unique in its emphasis on the eloquence of the human face. Although the face and facial expressions play a part in other storytelling media, such as novels and plays, in film the face becomes a medium of communication in its own right. Magnified on the screen, the human face with its infinite variety of expressions can convey depth and subtlety of emotion that cannot be approached through purely rational or verbal means (Figure 10.3). As Hungarian film critic and theorist Béla Balázs so aptly states, "What happens on the face and in facial expressions is a spiritual experience which is rendered immediately visible without the intermediary of words"[15] (Figure 10.4).

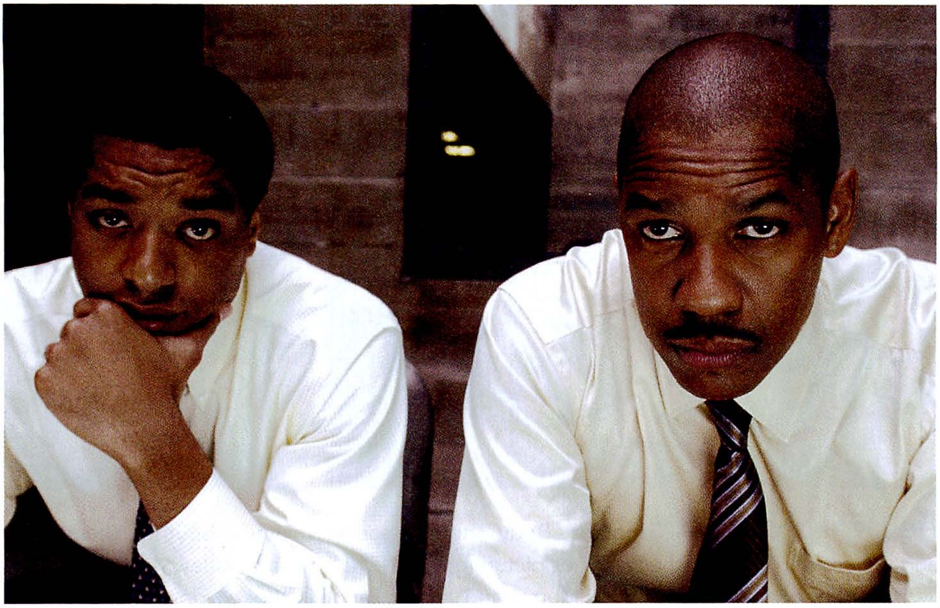


FIGURE 10.3 The Actor's Face The suspense movie *Inside Man,* directed by Spike Lee, allows its stars, including Chiwetel Ejiofor and Denzel Washington, clearly to reveal in their faces the inner thoughts and feelings of their characters.

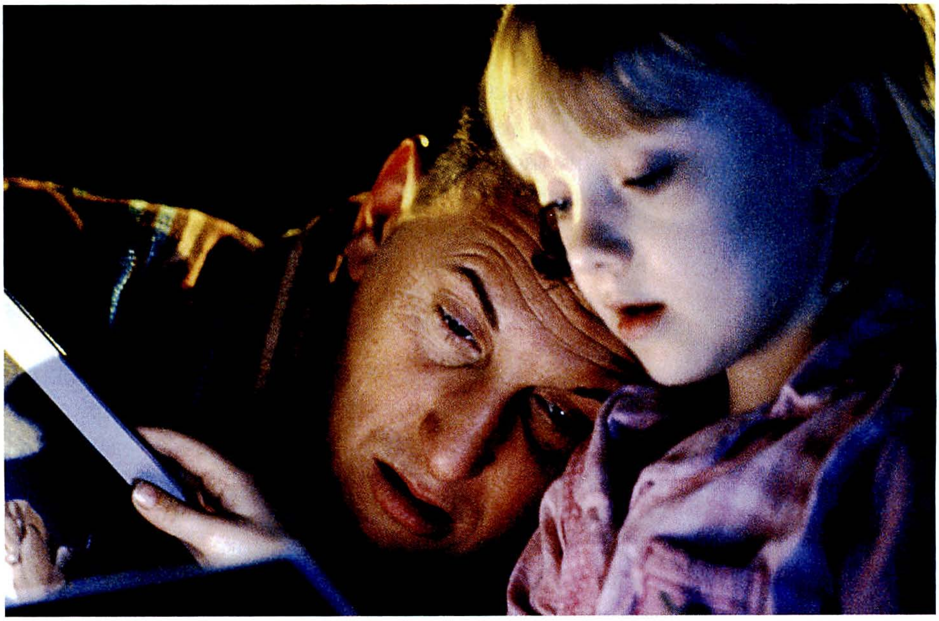


FIGURE 10.4 Sustained Expression In *I Am Sam,* Sean Penn convincingly portrays a mentally challenged character by maintaining a "simple" look throughout the film, as in this touching scene with his film daughter (Dakota Fanning).

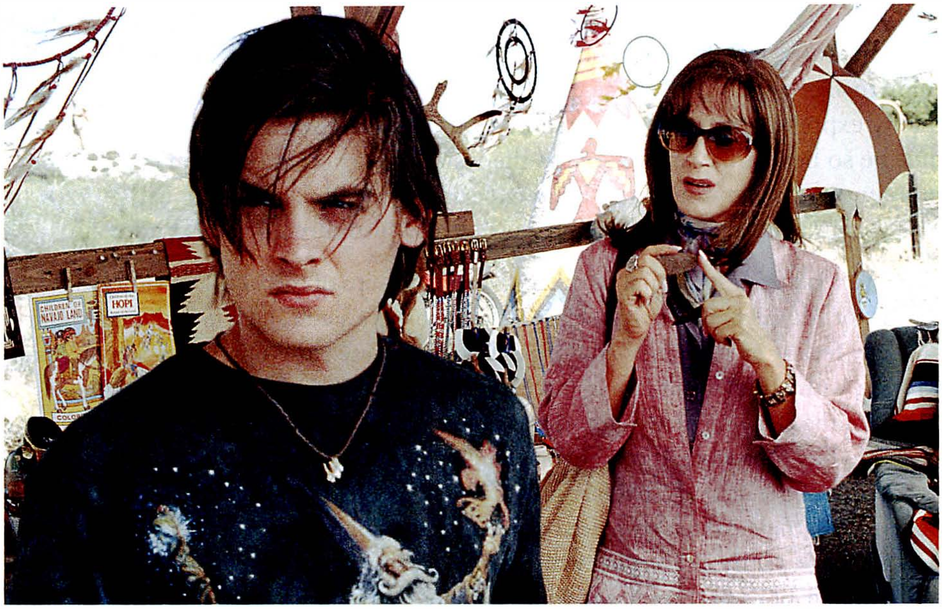


FIGURE 10.5 The Reaction Shot Actor Kevin Zegers, playing the son of Bree, Felicity Huffman's pre-operative transsexual character in *Transamerica,* spends much of his time during a road trip with his newly-discovered parent registering silent facial reactions to her many questions and instructions.

The human face is a marvelously complex structure, capable of transmitting a wide range of emotions through slight changes in mouth, eyes, eyelids, eyebrows, and forehead. This expressiveness helps to explain another important difference between film acting and stage acting: the film's emphasis on reacting rather than acting. The **reaction shot** achieves its considerable dramatic impact through a close-up of the character most affected by the dialogue or action. The actor's face, within the brief moment that it is on the screen, must register clearly yet subtly and without the aid of dialogue the appropriate emotional reaction (Figure 10.5). Some of the most powerful moments in film are built around such "facial acting." Michael Caine elaborates:

> [I]n a movie, you cannot get away with just doing a star performance—moving and talking all the time. People become bored with you. You have to show reactions. On stage a cardboard tree is a cardboard tree, and you suspend reaction. In a movie a tree is a real tree, it loses its leaves and gets covered with snow. And that applies to everybody in a movie. Nothing is in isolation as it is in a theater—and you have to play according to the reactions of someone else to what you're doing. One of the things I'm known for in movies is not acting but *reacting.*[16]

The stage actor's facial reactions, in contrast, are seldom if ever quite so important to a play's dramatic power.

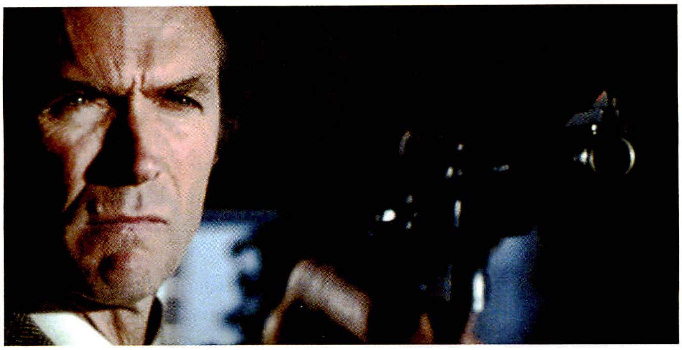
But even in reaction shots the film actor is often assisted by the nature of the medium, for in film much of the powerful and expressive quality of the human face is created by the context in which it appears, and the meanings of many expressions are determined by skillful editing. Thus, the actor's face may not be so beautifully expressive as the visual context makes it appear. This phenomenon was demonstrated in an experiment conducted in the early 1920s by the young Russian painter Lev Kuleshov and film director V. I. Pudovkin:

> We took from some film or other several close-ups of the well-known Russian actor Mosjukhin. We chose close-ups which were static and which did not express any feeling at all—quiet close-ups. We joined these close-ups, which were all similar, with other bits of film in three different combinations. In the first combination the close-up of Mosjukhin was immediately followed by a shot of soup standing on a table. It was obvious and certain that Mosjukhin was looking at this soup. In the second combination the face of Mosjukhin was joined to shots showing a coffin in which lay a dead woman. In the third the close-up was followed by a shot of a little girl playing with a funny toy bear. When we showed the three combinations to an audience which had not been let into the secret, the result was terrific. The public raved about the acting of the artist. They pointed out the heavy pensiveness of the mood over the forgotten soup, were touched and moved by the deep sorrow with which he looked on the dead woman, and admired the light, happy smile with which he surveyed the girl at play. But we knew in all three cases the face was exactly the same.[17]

This experiment is not cited to prove that film acting is only an illusion created by editing. But it does show that we are eager to respond to faces, whether or not those faces are really projecting what we think we see.

Film actors must also be able to communicate more with bodily movements and gestures than stage actors. Because the stage actor's chief instrument of expression is the voice, his or her movements are mainly an accompaniment to or an extension of what is said. In film, however, physical movement and gesture may communicate effectively without dialogue (see "Flashback: Silent Films: Acting on the Past"). The magnification of the human image on the screen enables the actor to communicate with extremely subtle movements. A slight shrug of the shoulders, the nervous trembling of a hand viewed in close-up, or the visible tensing of the muscles and tendons in the neck may be much more important than anything said.

A classic example of the power of body language in film acting is Jack Palance's portrayal of the gunfighter Wilson in *Shane*, a role he parodies in both *City Slickers* films. Palance plays Wilson as the personification of evil. Every movement, every gesture is slow, deliberate, yet tense, so we get the feeling that Wilson is a rattlesnake, moving slowly and sensuously but always ready to strike in a split second. When Wilson slowly performs the ritual of putting



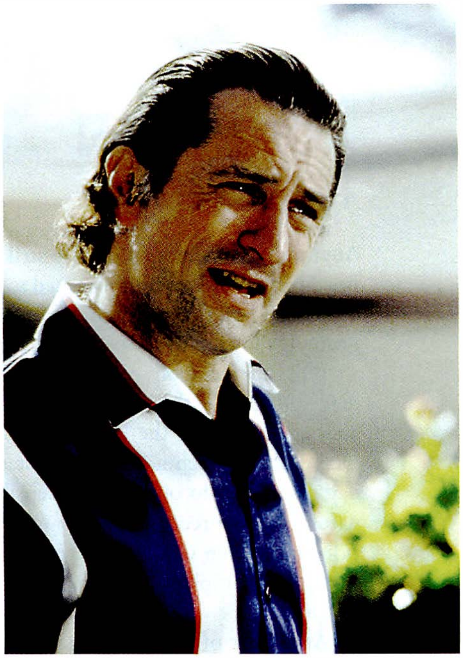


FIGURE 10.6 Action and Dramatic Acting Although Clint Eastwood has sometimes ventured into drama with success, he first became best known as an action actor (pictured above as Dirty Harry in *Sudden Impact*). Robert De Niro, shown as the villainous ex-con from *Cape Fear* (1991) (right), has consistently been one of our finest dramatic actors. With uneven results, both critically and commercially, each actor has also starred in comedies.

on his black leather gloves in order to practice his profession, Palance makes us sense with horror Wilson's cold, cruel indifference to human life.

Film acting also differs from stage acting in that it requires two kinds of acting. One is the kind required for the action/adventure film. We can refer to it as **action acting.** This type of acting requires a great deal in the way of reactions, body language, physical exertion, and special skills, but it does not draw on the deepest resources of the actor's intelligence and feelings. In contrast, **dramatic acting** calls for sustained, intense dialogue with another person and requires an emotional and psychological depth seldom called for in action acting. Action acting is the art of doing. Dramatic acting involves feeling, thinking, and communicating emotions and thoughts. Action acting is on the surface, with little nuance. Dramatic acting is beneath the surface and full of subtlety. Each type of acting requires its own particular gift or talent.

Some actors can do both, but most are better suited for one or the other and are usually cast accordingly. Clint Eastwood, for example, is essentially an action actor, and Robert De Niro is a dramatic actor (Figure 10.6). As director Sergio Leone, who has directed both, describes them:

> It's difficult to compare Eastwood and De Niro—if you think about it, they don't even belong to the same profession. Robert De Niro throws himself into this or that role, putting on a personality the way someone else might put on his coat, naturally and with elegance, while Clint Eastwood throws himself into a suit of

SILENT FILMS: ACTING ON THE PAST

Anything old-fashioned usually strikes us as comic at first, until we become accustomed to the older fashion or style. Then the strangeness recedes into the background, allowing us to see the universal elements.

Full appreciation of the earliest silent films is made difficult by the broad and exaggerated gesturing and grimacing of the actors, who were using the melodramatic techniques of the stage acting of that day. Especially to our modern sensibilities, these unnatural and forced gestures and expressions seem ridiculous when viewed close up, as evidenced in the accompanying photo of Lillian Gish from *The Wind* (1928).

As the art of film acting evolved, however, actors realized the necessity for restraint in gesture and subtlety of expression. By the last years of the silent-film era, the slightest body movement, gesture, or facial expression could express the deepest passion or proclaim the tragedy of a human soul.

The actors of the later silent films were able to speak clearly and distinctly to their audience, not through the voice but through a pantomime of eyes, mouth, hands, and body movement. This highly developed art of pantomime gave the silent film a means of expression that was self-sufficient and capable of conveying narrative visually, with a minimum of subtitles. Especially adept at this art were the three most celebrated film comedians of the silent period: Harold Lloyd (*Safety Last*, 1923), Buster Keaton (*Sherlock, Jr.*, 1924; *The General*, 1927; *Steamboat Bill, Jr.*, 1928), and Charlie Chaplin (*The Gold Rush*, 1925; *City Lights*, 1931). In the photo below, Lloyd strikes his most famous comic pose in *Safety Last.* (See also Chapter 11, page 366.)

The mass audience of the silent era mastered the art of reading faces, gestures, and body movements, but today we must work hard to learn it. We are exposed to it through modern reaction shots, but they are generally of short duration and often lack the subtlety of expression seen in the greatest silent films. At their best, actors of the silent-film era could express ideas that words cannot express.

If we are to appreciate the acting in silent films, we must become aware of the subtlety and power of their unique "language"—a language capable of both silent soliloquy (a single face "speaking" the subtlest shades of meaning) and mute dialogue (a conversation that takes place through facial expressions and gestures). The silent-film language can, through close-up, reveal not only what is visibly written on the face, but also something existing beyond the surface, and it is sometimes even capable of capturing contradictory expressions simultaneously on the same face.

The artistry of silent film actors is not restricted to the face, however. The hands, the arms, the legs, and the torso of the actor are also powerful instruments of expression, and speak in a language that is perhaps more individual and personal than the language of words. As each actor in the sound film has distinct vocal qualities that are unique to his or her means

TERN
TRUST Co
JESTIC

of verbal expression, each actor in the silent film had a personal style of facial and physical expression of emotion.

One of the most powerful means of expression involving the whole body is the actor's walk, which, in the silent film, is usually a natural and unconscious expression of emotion; it became an important aspect of each actor's unique screen personality or style. When used consciously for expression, it could convey such varying emotions as dignity, strong resolution, self-consciousness, modesty, and shame.

Anyone who thinks the silent film was a primitive and crude art form compared to the modern sound film needs only to study two of the masterpieces of the late silent era: *Sunrise*, the hauntingly beautiful melodrama directed by F. W. Murnau, and *Napoleon*, French director Abel Gance's great epic (recently restored and made available in four-hour and five-hour-and-thirteen minute DVD versions). Both films are extremely sophisticated, not just in terms of acting styles, but also in terms of editing, composition, lighting, use of montages, creating the illusion of three-dimensionality, camera movement, superimposed images, and special effects. Both were released in 1927—the next-to-last great year of silent pictures. And both have dynamic, polished styles capable of communicating nuances of meaning without titles. In fact, watching silent films of this caliber almost makes one wonder if the movies should ever have learned to talk.

In studying silent films, then, we not only observe a different kind of acting skill, but we can trace its evolution from overblown exaggeration to the restraint and subtlety of a polished art. In doing so, we may learn to appreciate an art form whose greatest power is that it speaks a universal language.

> armor and lowers the visor with a rusty clang. It's exactly that lowered visor which composes his character.
>
> . . . Look at him carefully. Eastwood moves like a sleepwalker between the explosions and hails of bullets and he is always the same—a block of granite. Bobby first of all, is an actor. Clint first of all, is a star. Bobby suffers, Clint yawns.[18]

Although Eastwood, as he has aged, has carved some deeper lines into his "block of granite" with work like *Unforgiven*, *In the Line of Fire*, *The Bridges of Madison County*, and *Million Dollar Baby*, Leone's description remains valid today.

Although film acting and stage acting have the same basic goals, film acting utilizes fundamentally different techniques to achieve them.

TYPES OF ACTORS

Besides classifying actors as action and dramatic actors, we can consider how the roles they play relate to their own personalities. In *A Primer for Playgoers*, Edward A. Wright and Lenthiel H. Downs identify three types of actors: impersonators, interpreters and commentators, and personality actors.[19]

Impersonators

Impersonators are actors who have the talent to leave their real personality behind and to assume the personality of a character with whom they may have few characteristics in common. Such actors can completely submerge themselves in a role, altering their personal, physical, and vocal characteristics to such a degree that they seem to become the character. We lose sight of the impersonator's real identity. The roles such actors can perform are almost unlimited.

Interpreters and Commentators

Interpreters and commentators play characters closely resembling themselves in personality and physical appearance, and they interpret these parts dramatically without wholly losing their own identity. Although they may slightly alter themselves to fit the role, they do not attempt to radically change their individual personality traits, physical characteristics, or voice qualities. They choose instead to color or interpret the role by filtering it through their own best qualities, modifying it to fit their own inherent abilities. The end result is an effective compromise between actor and role, between the real and the assumed identity. The compromise adds a unique creative dimension to the character being portrayed, for in their delivery of the lines these actors reveal something of their own thoughts and feelings about the character, but they do so without ever falling out of character. Thus, these actors may simultaneously comment on and interpret the role. Although the range of roles such actors can play is not as wide as that open to impersonators, it is still relatively broad. If they are cast wisely within this range, they can bring something new and fresh to each role they play, in addition to their own best and most attractive qualities.

Personality Actors

Actors whose primary talent is to be themselves and nothing more are **personality actors.** They project the essential qualities of sincerity, truthfulness, and naturalness, and they generally possess some dynamic and magnetic mass appeal because of a striking appearance, a physical or vocal idiosyncrasy, or some other special quality strongly communicated to us on film. These actors, however popular, are incapable of assuming any variety in the roles they play, for they cannot project sincerity and naturalness when they attempt to move outside their own basic personality. Thus, either they must fit exactly the roles in which they are cast, or the roles must be tailored to fit their personality.

THE STAR SYSTEM

In the past many personality actors and some interpreter and commentator actors were exploited in what became known as the **star system,** an approach to filmmaking based on the assumption that the average moviegoer is interested more in personalities than in great stories or, for that matter, in film art. The stars were, of course, actors with great mass appeal. The big studios did everything in their power to preserve the qualities of the stars that appealed to the public, and they created films around the image of the star personality. Often a star's presence in a film was the main guarantee of financial success, and such films became nothing more than a suitable package in which to display and market the attractive wares of the actors, who had only to project the charm of their personalities (Figure 10.7).

For some directors, the star system offered certain clear advantages. John Ford and Frank Capra, for example, used the star system as a myth-making apparatus, building their films around such stars as John Wayne, Barbara Stanwyck, Jean Arthur, Henry Fonda, James Stewart, and Gary Cooper. These actors projected fairly consistent personalities and embraced a constant set of values in each film they did. They came into each new Ford or Capra film trailing clouds of associations and reverberating strong echoes of earlier parts. By surrounding these stars with their stock company of topnotch secondary actors—also in predictable roles echoing earlier parts—Ford and Capra were, in a sense, using pre-established symbols for the values they wanted their characters to represent, and the mythic worlds of their films could rest on the shoulders of actors who already had mythic dimensions.

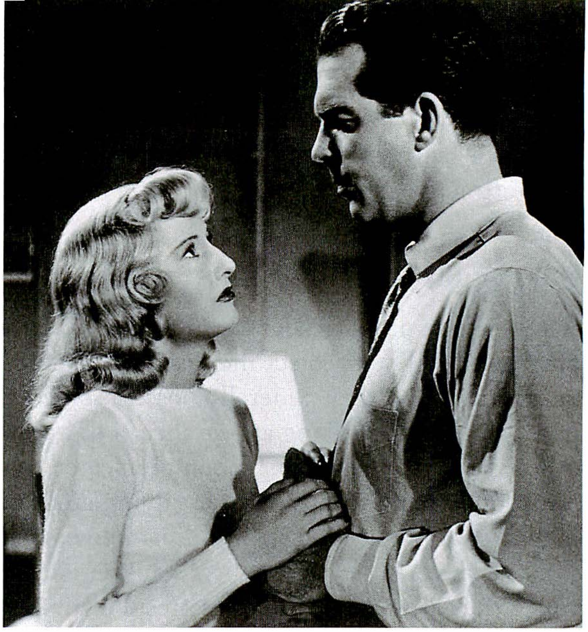


FIGURE 10.7 **The Studio Star System** Although the 1944 *film noir* classic *Double Indemnity* became another triumph for director Billy Wilder, the movie was also clearly a star-system vehicle for the immensely popular Barbara Stanwyck and Fred MacMurray.

The fact that so many stars trailed these clouds of associations influenced Steven Spielberg's casting of *Jaws:*

> I didn't pursue that idea of getting stars, because I think it's really important when you're watching a movie that you don't sit there and say, "Oh, look who's in this picture. What was his last picture, wasn't that a good one? Didn't you just love her in such and such . . . ?" I'm not saying I'll never work with a Robert Redford or a Paul Newman or a Burt Reynolds—I would certainly love to. I'm saying that for certain special types of movies, where half the struggle is verisimilitude, if Burt Reynolds had played Richard Dreyfuss's part, there would have been too much imagery of Burt in other movies, with fast cars, attractive women, and blazing action. In my opinion it takes ten to fifteen minutes for the memory to overcome the record of one's past. I had two producers who really gave me my head. Anything I wanted to do was fine with them. They agreed that we should not go after the half-million-dollar players, but should get good people who would be good actors in the right part and would be semianonymous.[20]

There was some general agreement with Spielberg's thinking throughout the industry. During the 1960s and 1970s producers began to turn to lesser-known actors who had the range and flexibility to play a variety of roles and who, of course, demanded less money than established stars. Blockbuster hits such as *2001, The Graduate, Taxi Driver*, and *Jaws* were successful without the presence of top box-office stars. A new era began with a small galaxy of gifted actors who promised not the repetition of tested and tried personalities but the guarantee of high-level performances in fresh and exciting roles (people like Dustin Hoffman, Robert De Niro, Jodie Foster, Meryl Streep, Robert Duvall, and Glenn Close).

Much of the success of this new galaxy depends on the actors' skill in choosing the films in which they appear. No longer under studio contract and forced to accept roles assigned by studio moguls, the modern star is often part of a deal package that may include a director and screenwriter who are all clients of the same agent. In many respects, the talent agency has usurped some of the power of the big studios in determining what films are made and who stars in them—and enormous salaries are once again in vogue.

Although the star system has changed greatly over the last thirty or forty years, it is certainly not dead. The personality cults that spring up periodically around charismatic actors provide ample evidence to the contrary. We will always be attracted to familiar faces and personalities, for we seem to have a psychological need for the familiar, the predictable, and the comfortable. In addition, as Sidney Lumet suggests,

> There's a mysterious alchemy between star and audience. Sometimes it's based on the physical beauty or sex appeal of the star. But I don't believe that it's ever just one thing. Surely there were other women as attractive as Marilyn Monroe or men as handsome as Cary Grant (though not many). Al Pacino tries to suit his look to the characters—a beard here, long hair there—but somehow it's the way his eyes express an enormous rage, even in tender moments, that enthralls me and everyone else. I think that every star evokes a sense of danger, something unmanageable. Perhaps each person in the audience feels that he or she is the one who can manage, tame, satisfy the bigger-than-life quality that a star has. Clint Eastwood isn't really the same as you or me, is he? Or Michelle Pfeiffer, or Sean Connery, or you name them. I don't really know what makes a star. But the persona that jumps out at you is certainly a most important element.[21]

CASTING

> *Sometimes the best thing I can do is cast the movie well. If you cast well then half the battle is already won, because even if the actor doesn't listen to anything you say, you're at least responsible for half of his performance. You reached into a crowded world and pulled a man, a woman, or a child from thin air and plugged them into your vision.*[22]
>
> —STEVEN SPIELBERG, DIRECTOR

Acting skills aside, the casting of actors in roles that are right for them is an extremely important consideration. If their physical characteristics, facial features, voice qualities, or the total personality they naturally project is not suited to the character, their performance will probably not be convincing. Alec Guinness or Peter Sellers, despite their great ability as impersonators, could not have effectively played the roles assigned to John Wayne, for example, nor could Burt Lancaster have been very effective in roles played by Woody Allen.

Less extreme problems in casting can be solved by sheer genius or camera tricks. For example, in the film *Boy on a Dolphin*, Alan Ladd, who measured 5 feet 6 inches, was cast opposite Sophia Loren, who towered over him at 5 feet 9 inches. But in a scene that showed them walking side by side, Ladd seemed at least as tall as or slightly taller than Loren. What the camera didn't show was that Loren was actually walking in a shallow trench especially dug for the purpose (Figure 10.8). When the male lead is to be something other than the traditional macho hero, relative size does not seem so important. No effort was made to conceal that Dudley Moore was shorter than both Mary Tyler Moore in *Six Weeks* and Elizabeth McGovern in *Lovesick*. And in the film version of *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* the character named Honey (Sandy Dennis) is repeatedly referred to as "slim-hipped" despite visual evidence to the contrary. The discrepancy is obscured by Dennis's acting; she projects a psychological type of slim-hippedness that is more convincing than the physical semblance of it.

It is also extremely important that the cast of any film be viewed as a team, not as a hodgepodge of separate individuals, for each actor appears on the screen not alone but in interaction with the other actors. Therefore some thought has to be given to the way they will look on the screen with each other. When casting two male leads such as Robert Redford and Paul Newman, for example, the casting director makes sure that they have certain contrasting features so that they stand out clearly from each other. Actors of the same sex are cast with the idea of contrasting their coloring, builds, heights, and voice qualities. If these differences are not apparent, they can be created through such artificial means as costuming, hairstyle, and facial hair (clean-shaven, mustaches, or beards).

The actors must also project, either naturally or through their skill as actors, significantly different personality traits so that they can effectively play off each other as separate and distinct personalities. This is especially important in **ensemble acting,** a performance by a group of actors whose roles are of equal importance; no member of the group has a starring role or dominates the others. Many modern films, such as *The Big Chill*, *The Right Stuff*, *Reality Bites*, *sex, lies, & videotape*, *Chasing Amy*, *Happy Endings*, and *Friends With Money*, feature ensemble acting (Figure 10.9).

One of the most difficult jobs in casting is finding combinations of actors with chemistry between them—preferably a chemistry so powerful that the audience wants to see them together again in another film. Most important in Hollywood productions is what is known as the he/she chemistry. Spencer Tracy was paired with a bevy of actresses (Lana Turner, Hedy Lamarr, Jean Harlow, and Deborah Kerr) before he was cast with Katharine Hepburn to form a winning team that could be repeated for success after success (Figure 10.10). The James Stewart/June Allyson combination also proved very successful. The Woody Allen/Diane Keaton team worked well (perhaps better

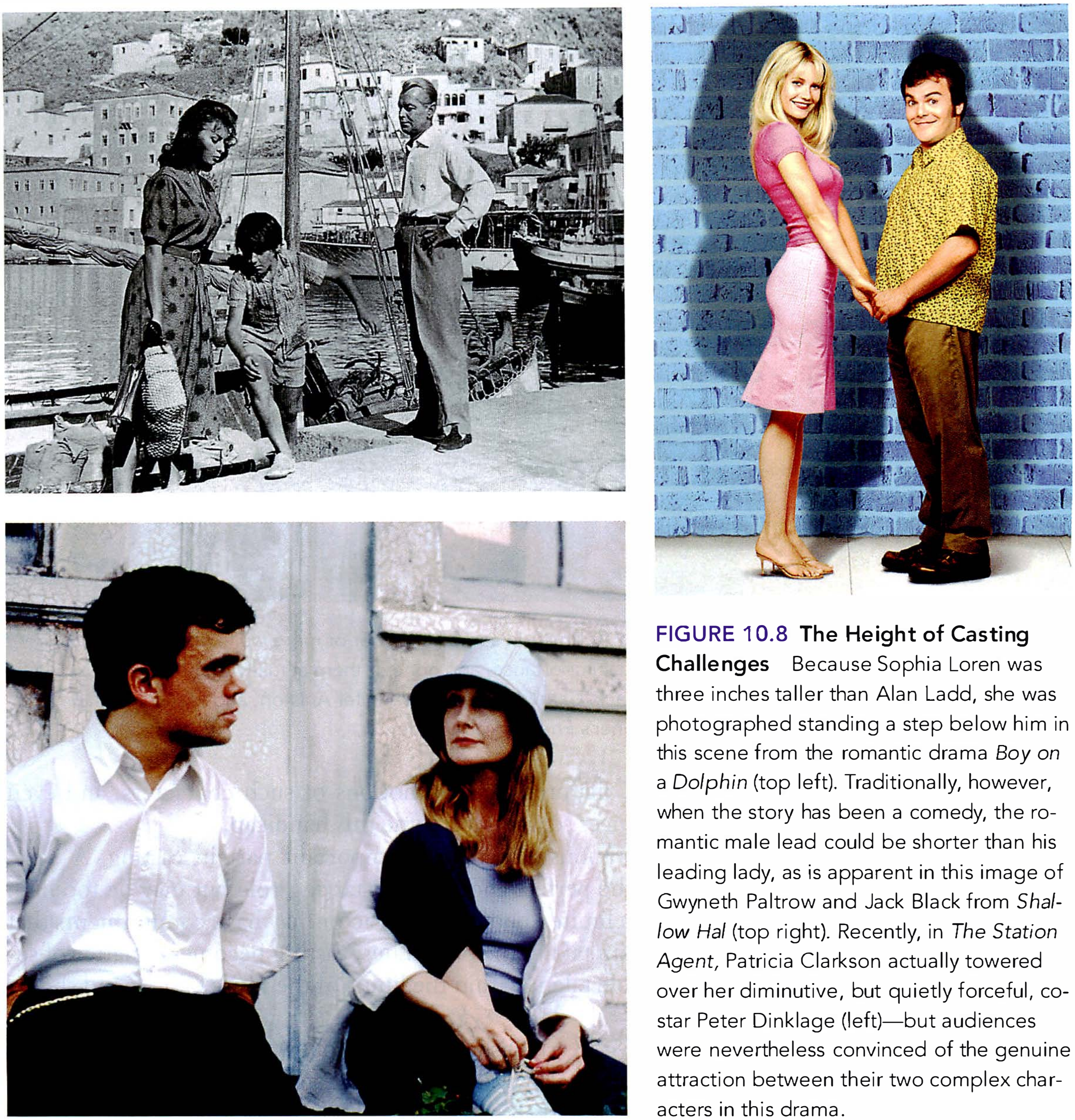


FIGURE 10.8 The Height of Casting Challenges Because Sophia Loren was three inches taller than Alan Ladd, she was photographed standing a step below him in this scene from the romantic drama *Boy on a Dolphin* (top left). Traditionally, however, when the story has been a comedy, the romantic male lead could be shorter than his leading lady, as is apparent in this image of Gwyneth Paltrow and Jack Black from *Shallow Hal* (top right). Recently, in *The Station Agent,* Patricia Clarkson actually towered over her diminutive, but quietly forceful, costar Peter Dinklage (left)—but audiences were nevertheless convinced of the genuine attraction between their two complex characters in this drama.

than the Woody Allen/Mia Farrow combination). The simple truth, however, is that real he/she chemistry is very rare, and few combinations in recent years have been strong enough to endure very long.

Physical characteristics and natural personality traits are especially important when members of the audience are likely to have clear mental images of the character before they see the movie, as in films about familiar historical figures or films based on popular novels. We often have a difficult time believing

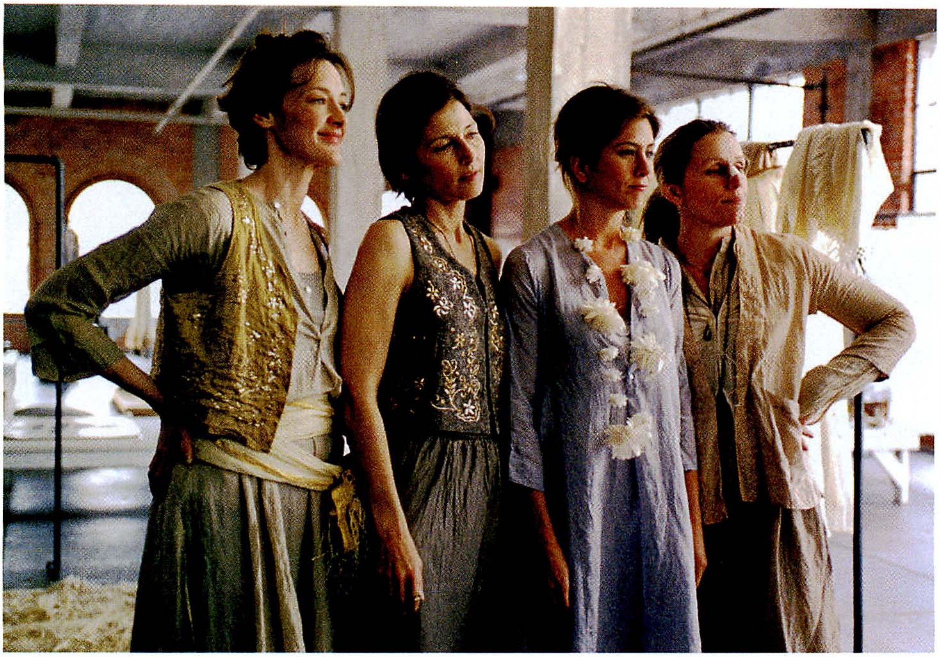


FIGURE 10.9 Ensemble Acting In some films, four or more well-known actors may be cast in roles of almost equal importance, and none of them actually dominates the movie. Shown here are Joan Cusack, Catherine Keener, Jennifer Aniston, and Frances McDormand in director Nicole Holofcener's *Friends With Money*.

in actors who violate our preconceived notions of such characters, and even outstanding performances seldom overcome this handicap.

Financial considerations also play an important part in casting. A well-known actor may be the perfect choice for a starring role but may be too high priced for a film with a limited budget. Or an actor may have commitments that prevent her or him from taking the part. Thus, casting becomes a matter of selecting the best available talent within the limits of the film's budget and shooting schedule.

For actors who have an established and loyal following, producers may take a chance and cast them in a role at odds with their established image, hoping that they will automatically draw their special fans. Thus, Mary Tyler Moore was cast as the cold mother in *Ordinary People*, Robin Williams in *The World According to Garp*, *Dead Poets Society*, and *Insomnia*, Steve Martin in *Pennies From Heaven* and *Parenthood*, Jim Carrey in *The Truman Show*, and Charlize Theron in *Monster*.

Billy Wilder's methods of casting were perhaps unique because Wilder wrote many of the stories he directed, but he does provide an excellent example of the importance of casting. Instead of selecting a cast to fit an existing story, Wilder often started with a story idea alone and then proceeded to select and sign up his cast. Only after the actors he wanted agreed to do the film did the

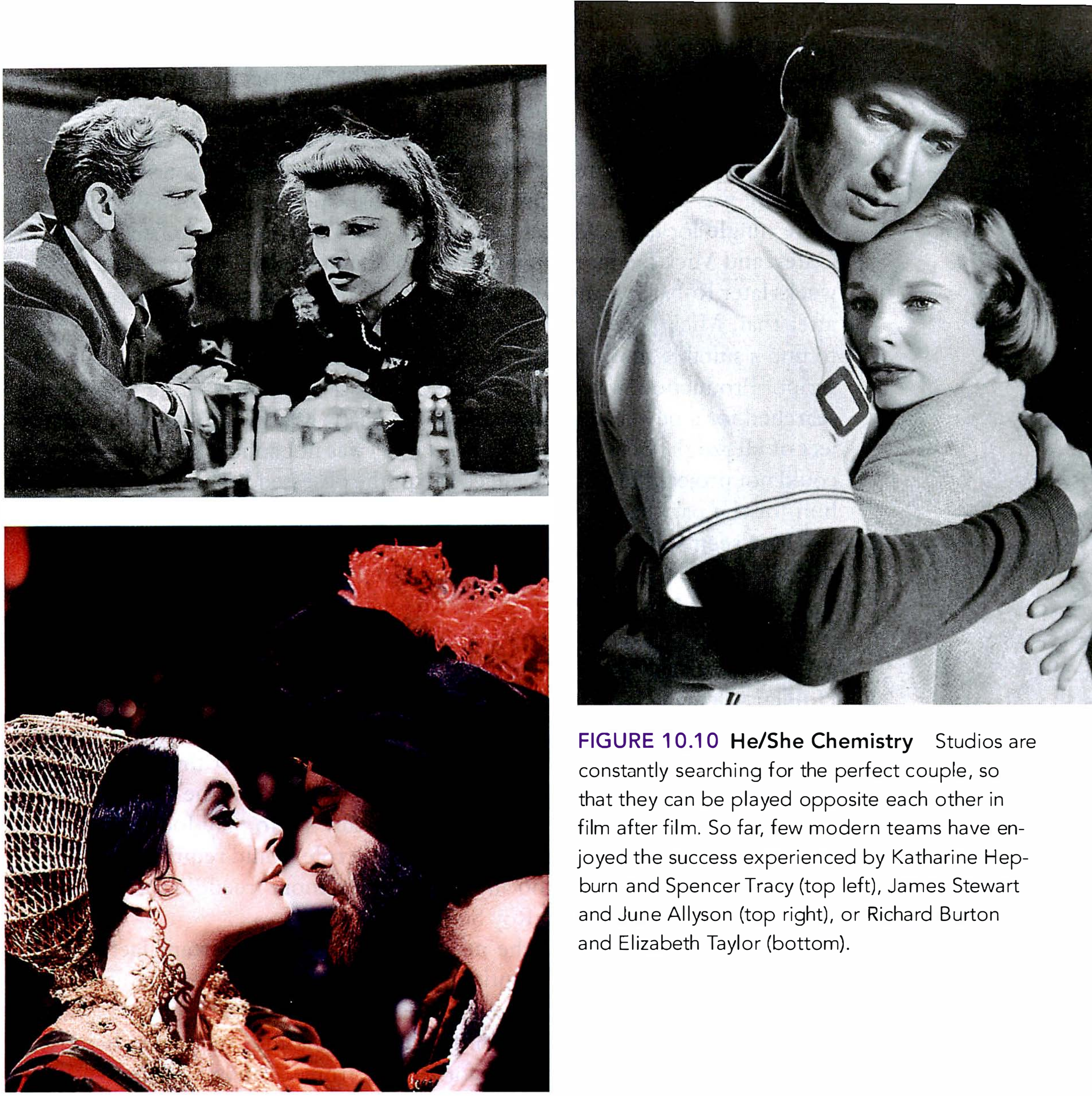


FIGURE 10.10 He/She Chemistry Studios are constantly searching for the perfect couple, so that they can be played opposite each other in film after film. So far, few modern teams have enjoyed the success experienced by Katharine Hepburn and Spencer Tracy (top left), James Stewart and June Allyson (top right), or Richard Burton and Elizabeth Taylor (bottom).

actual writing of the script begin. As Wilder put it, "What good is it to have a magnificent dramatic concept for which you must have Sir Laurence Olivier and Audrey Hepburn if they're not available?"[23]

Casting Problems

Casting a feature film is often a more difficult matter than just visualizing the right actor for the part and signing him or her to a contract. German director Werner Herzog's experiences with casting *Fitzcarraldo* are certainly not typical, but they do illustrate a variety of problems that can occur on almost any production. Jack Nicholson had originally expressed interest in playing the lead, but then lost interest. Later, Warren Oates agreed to play the title role. However, Oates, who had never signed a contract, backed out four weeks before shooting was to begin because he didn't relish spending three months in a remote jungle location. After a two-month delay, with Jason Robards replacing Oates, and Mick Jagger in a supporting role, shooting finally got under way. Six weeks later Robards came down with amoebic dysentery and flew home. Shortly after that, Mick Jagger had to drop out to honor other commitments. Unable to find a suitable replacement for Jagger, Herzog wrote his character out of the script. Production was then suspended for two months while the director searched for a new leading man. Although Klaus Kinski (subsequently the subject of Herzog's documentary *My Best Fiend*) was not an ideal choice because he could not project the warmth and charm of the obsessed Irishman, Herzog hired him for the part because further delay would certainly have killed the project.

Fate seems to play a hand in casting, for actors often become stars in roles that were turned down by others. Robert Redford got the part of the Sundance Kid only after Marlon Brando, Steve McQueen, and Warren Beatty had turned it down. During a very brief period, Montgomery Clift turned down four roles that virtually made stars of the actors who finally played the parts: the William Holden role in *Sunset Boulevard*, the James Dean role in *East of Eden*, the Paul Newman role in *Somebody Up There Likes Me*, and the Marlon Brando role in *On the Waterfront*. Gene Hackman was offered the part of the father in *Ordinary People* and wanted to do it, but he could not work out the kind of financial deal he wanted. Richard Dreyfuss was originally set to play Joe Gideon in *All That Jazz*, but he was afraid of the dancing the role would require and was used to working with directors who allowed the actor more freedom than Bob Fosse allowed. So the role went to Roy Scheider.

Although the names on the marquee are usually important factors in the success of a film, there are exceptions. *Midnight Express* is one. The film did not have any name stars, and the director, Alan Parker, had made only one film, so his name was not a household word either. Yet the film succeeded because its great intensity and excellent performances from relatively unknown actors stimulated audience interest. Likewise, Steven Soderbergh directed *sex, lies, & videotape* with a starless cast long before he became famous himself with *Erin Brockovich* and *Traffic*—and then returned to a completely starless cast in such independent, shot-on-digital-video features as *Bubble* (Figure 10.11).

The Typecasting Trap

Typecasting consigns an actor to a narrow range of almost identical roles. It is a natural result of two situations. First, the studios have a great deal of money invested in every film they do. Thus, they naturally want to cast an actor in the

FIGURE 10.11 The Starless Cast Occasionally, a movie can attract considerable attention even when all of the actors are completely unknown. An extreme example of this phenomenon involves *Bubble*, an independent film that director Steven Soderbergh created as part of his experimentation with conventional motion picture distribution patterns. The film, shot inexpensively on digital video, was released almost simultaneously on the screens of Mark Cuban's Landmark Theatre chain, on pay-per-view cable, and on sale in the DVD format. Its "stars," real-life citizens of the small town that served as the location for the movie's shooting (Misty Wilkins, Debbie Doebereiner, and Dustin James Ashley), had never acted in films before.

same kind of role that was successful before, in the hope of repeating the earlier success. Second, if an actor repeats a similar role two or three times, the qualities that the actor projected in the role may take on mythic proportions, and the actor may become a figure on which moviegoers hang their fantasies (Figure 10.12). If this happens, the moviegoing audience not only expects, but demands, that the role be repeated again and again, with only slight variations. To the fans, anything else is a betrayal, a personal affront to those who have developed what to them is a very personal relationship with a fictional character on the silver screen.

There is a real danger that an actor who is too convincing in an early role will be typecast for the rest of his or her career. For example, Sissy Spacek, early in her career, projected a fairly consistent screen image: a young, innocent, intelligent, sensitive, but somewhat unsophisticated small-town or country girl. She played Loretta Lynn so convincingly in *Coal Miner's Daughter* that people actually believe that Sissy Spacek *is* that character, "just plain folks," in real life. But the fact is that Sissy Spacek is an extremely versatile actress capable of playing practically any part. Her Oscar-nominated mature performance in *In the Bedroom* shows her versatility.

Robert De Niro created such a strong impression with his Georgia farm-boy Bruce in *Bang the Drum Slowly* that people were saying how sad it was that he had such a strong Georgia accent, for he'd be limited to roles that called for that kind

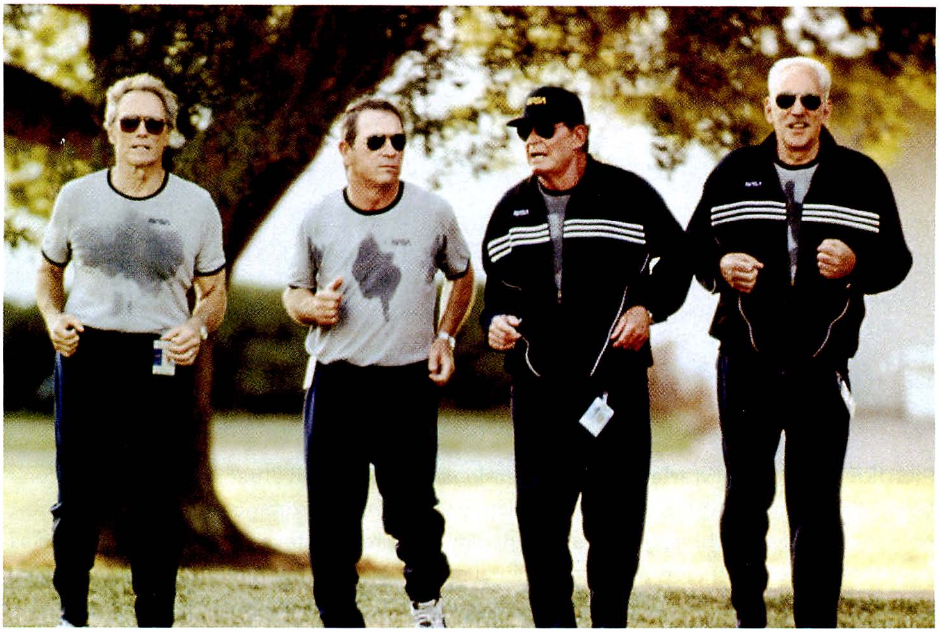


FIGURE 10.12 Typecasting In choosing actors for the four lead "senior" roles in *Space Cowboys*, director Clint Eastwood and casting director Phyllis Huffman obviously took full advantage of the personality types that Eastwood, Tommy Lee Jones, James Garner, and Donald Sutherland had respectively projected steadily in their roles as younger, popular actors.

of a character. De Niro, now well known for his meticulous research, had taken a tape recorder to Georgia to study the speech patterns of the residents so he could capture the dialect of the character he was cast to play. By carefully choosing his roles, De Niro has completely broken the typecasting trap. He has shown not only that he can play a variety of roles but that he can alter himself both mentally and physically to project entirely different qualities in each part he plays. In *Bang the Drum Slowly*, playing the second-rate big-league catcher with Hodgkin's disease, he projects a kind of fragile quality, a small man among giants. In *The Deer Hunter*, he stands tall and strong, a quiet, confident leader among men. In *Raging Bull*, he changes his image within the film itself, playing a young, trim, perfectly conditioned fighter (Jake La Motta) in the beginning and then ballooning his weight sixty pounds to play the middle-aged La Motta at the film's end. His transformations are so perfectly executed and his character is so completely transformed that we lose sight of the fact that we're seeing the same actor in all three roles. Dustin Hoffman too has this rare ability, as seen in his portrayal of extremely different characters in *The Graduate*, *Midnight Cowboy*, *Tootsie*, *Rain Man*, *Billy Bathgate*, *I ♥ Huckabees*, and *Meet the Fockers*, as does Ralph Fiennes in *Schindler's List*, *Quiz Show*, *The English Patient*, *Spider*, *The Constant Gardener*, and *The White Countess*. (Figure 10.13).

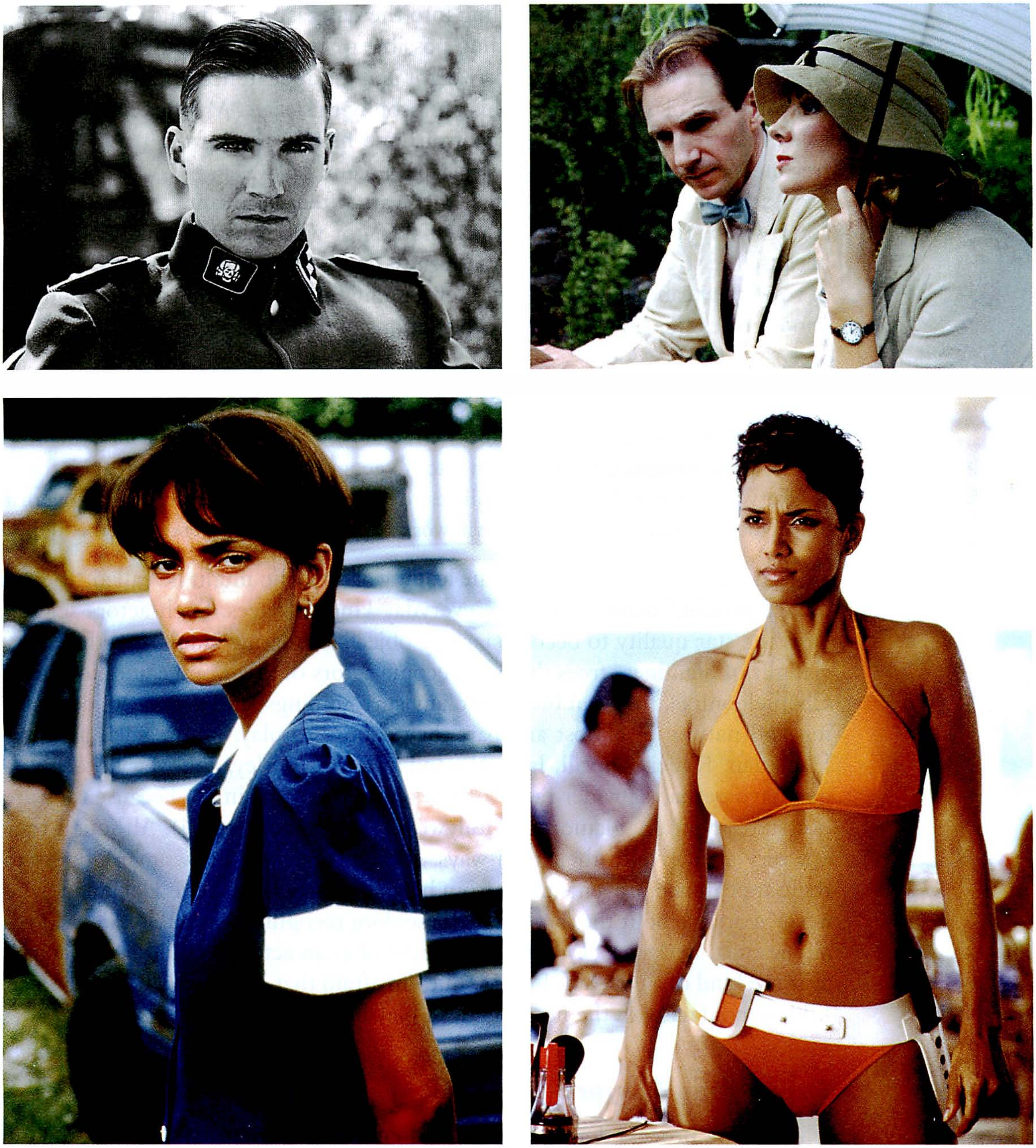


FIGURE 10.13 The Actor as Chameleon Without even the aid of special makeup, Ralph Fiennes transforms himself from the brutal SS officer Amon Goeth in *Schindler's List* (top left) into the gentle blind American diplomat and (later) club owner Todd Jackson in *The White Countess* (shown, top right, with Natasha Richardson). Similarly, Oscar-winner Halle Berry moves convincingly from her waitress character Leticia Musgrove in *Monster's Ball* (bottom left) to the sexy Jinx Jordan in *Die Another Day,* a James Bond adventure (bottom right).

Many actors are wary of falling into the typecasting trap and plan their careers accordingly, doing everything possible to avoid the dangers. Gary Busey, who like De Niro has altered his weight and his appearance greatly in some of the roles he's played, expresses his philosophy this way: "My idea is to look for roles that make right-angle turns from one film to the next. I try to bring a freshness and spontaneity to each part and scene I play."[24]

As far as casting is concerned, there are often disadvantages for the male actor who is too handsome or the female actor who is exceptionally beautiful, because the strength of their attractiveness cuts down somewhat on the number of roles they can play. Actor Paul Newman, in midcareer, said that his ability to choose roles was limited by the expectations of the audience:

> I think it's a combination of things. When I first started working in films, I think the audience allowed me greater leeway to experiment. For instance, I don't know that they would accept me as Rocky Graziano today. It's too bad, because there's no sense stretching yourself as an actor to go into a film if you know that by your very presence in that film you will destroy the picture, literally, that the image that audiences have created for you will work against whatever you bring to the film.[25]

There is a limited group of fine leading actors who might be called "the ordinary people," actors who have everyday kinds of faces. Such actors seldom have the star quality to become fantasy objects or matinee idols, but their special gift of blandness frees them to become actors of great range and flexibility. Chameleonlike, they can blend into any surroundings, and they seem convincing and natural in almost any part they choose to play. Actors such as Gene Hackman, Robert Duvall, Jane Alexander, Ben Kingsley, and Mary Steenburgen have perhaps a wider range of roles open to them simply because they are not stereotypically glamorous Hollywood stars (Figure 10.14). Although they are very attractive in their own ways, an everyman or everywoman quality to their appearance prevents them from becoming typecast. Gene Hackman, who never worries about the fact that he is seldom recognized in public, doesn't really want to be a star: "I like to be thought of as an actor. It could be conceived as some kind of a cop-out, I guess. But I'm afraid that if I start to become a star, I'll lose contact with the normal guys I play best."[26]

Supporting Players

The casting process does not begin and end with the selection of stars for the leading roles. Almost as important as the leading players in any production are the supporting players. Although they may not provide the box-office draw of the big names, the supporting players may be even less interchangeable from movie to movie than the major stars. For example, George Raft was originally chosen to play Sam Spade in *The Maltese Falcon*, and it is fairly easy to imagine

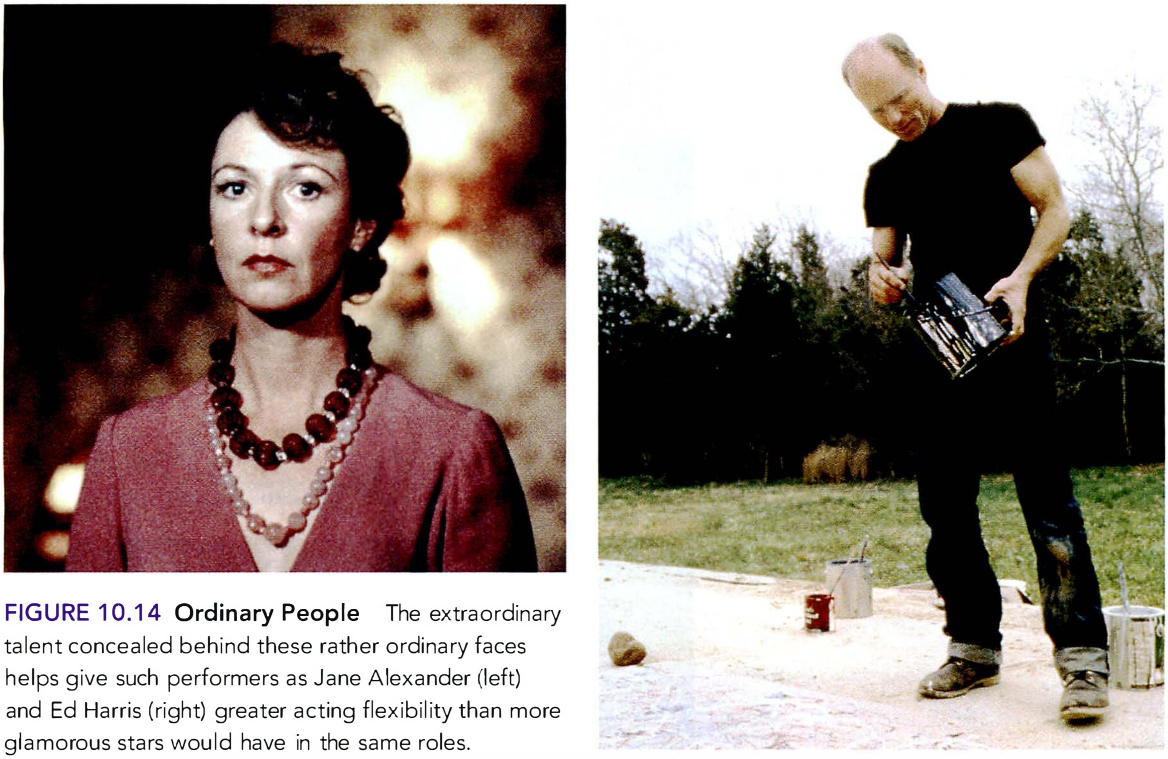


FIGURE 10.14 Ordinary People The extraordinary talent concealed behind these rather ordinary faces helps give such performers as Jane Alexander (left) and Ed Harris (right) greater acting flexibility than more glamorous stars would have in the same roles.

him in the role. But could anyone other than Peter Lorre play the idiosyncratic part of Joel Cairo?

Supporting players do exactly that—*support* the major roles. The major stars play off them, as friends, adversaries, employers, employees, leaders, or even **foils** (contrasting characters that serve to clearly define the personality of the main character). Supporting players make the stars shine brighter, sharper, and more clearly, providing a sounding board that both helps to bring out all the dimensions of the star's character and makes the most important facets stand out in bold relief.

But supporting players often do much more. Sometimes they create characters that are brilliant in their own right. Although their glow may be less radiant than that of the star players they support, the supporting players often create, usually with (but often without) the star, some of the most memorable moments in film. Consider the contributions of Gene Hackman, Estelle Parsons, Dub Taylor, Gene Wilder, and Michael J. Pollard to *Bonnie and Clyde*, Butterfly McQueen to *Gone With the Wind*, Thomas Mitchell to *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington* and *Stagecoach*, Sterling Hayden and Slim Pickens to *Dr. Strangelove*, Ben Johnson to *The Last Picture Show*, Strother Martin to *True Grit*, *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid*, and *Cool Hand Luke*, Thelma Ritter to

FIGURE 10.15 Supporting Players
By interacting with the stars playing leading roles and each other, supporting players help define the most important aspects of the stars' characters and in the process may create some of the most memorable moments in film. Pictured here are Thelma Ritter ministering to James Stewart in *Rear Window* (top) and Steve Buscemi and Peter Stomare cutting a nasty deal in *Fargo* (bottom).

practically anything, Lucille Benson to *Slaughterhouse Five* and *Silver Streak*, Paul Dooley to *Popeye* (as Wimpy) and to *Breaking Away* (as the father), Scatman Crothers to *Silver Streak*, *The Shining*, and *One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest*, John Goodman to *Everybody's All-American*, *Sea of Love*, and *Always*, Martin Landau to *Tucker*, *Crimes and Misdemeanors*, and *Ed Wood*, and Steve Buscemi to *Fargo* and many other independent films. These great performances highlight how important a contribution supporting actors make to the overall quality of any film (Figure 10.15).

With the possible exception of Macaulay Culkin, Haley Joel Osment, and Dakota Fanning, the modern film has not had child stars of the magnitude of Shirley Temple, Judy Garland, or Mickey Rooney. Children still make important contributions in supporting roles and often steal the show from the starring actors. Most of these young actors seem to have a gift for projecting the naturalness and sincerity so essential for film acting. Remarkable performances by child actors in films like *E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial*, *Sleepless in Seattle*, *The Black Stallion*, *Witness*, *Cinema Paradiso*, *Once Upon a Time in America*, *Forrest Gump*, *The Piano*, *Jerry Maguire*, *The Sixth Sense*, *Ponette*, *The Butcher Boy*, and *War of the Worlds* (2005) indicate the quality that can be achieved with careful casting (Figure 10.16).

Special Casting Challenges

An unusual kind of casting problem exists when a film must follow a character throughout many years of his or her life. If only two periods are featured—in youth and in maturity, for example—casting directors can easily hire two different actors. In *Titanic*, the major young character played by Kate Winslet thus becomes the elderly one portrayed by Gloria Stuart. A number of superb illustrations of how well this ploy can work appear in *Once Upon a Time in America*, in which Scott Schutzman seamlessly becomes Robert De Niro, Jennifer Connelly believably transforms into Elizabeth McGovern, and Rusty Jacobs ages smoothly into James Woods. Not quite so credible, for most viewers, is the metamorphosis of the character Toto in *Cinema Paradiso*. From mischievous tot (Salvatore Cascio), Toto becomes a handsome teenager and young man (Mario Leonardi), and finally a suave middle-aged filmmaker (Jacques Perrin). In the film, such characteristics as facial and cranial structure, teeth, hair, and skin tones do not match especially well. In one remarkable case, though, Steven Soderbergh's *The Limey* (1999), the match was perfect: The older actor Terence Stamp actually played himself as a young man via brief scenes from his 1967 film *Poor Cow* that were intercut with those shot in the late '90s. (Ironically, Soderbergh, in his DVD commentary about the film, observes that this was the only "young" performance by Stamp that he could use, for all of the actor's other early characters were "strange" looking or acting, in one way or another.)

Usually, when such movement within a character occurs after maturity, directors elect to use makeup techniques for the job, as Ron Howard did in *A Beautiful Mind*, in which John and Alicia Nash (Russell Crowe and Jennifer Connelly) age from young lovers to old ones. In *Iris*, director Richard Eyre needed to follow the celebrated British novelist Iris Murdoch from her early professional years down to her death from Alzheimer's disease, so he chose two different accomplished actresses, Kate Winslet (again, in one part of a dual role) and Judi Dench. Although the women never shot scenes at the same time, somehow they nevertheless managed to create, through a little research by each and much intuition, a magnificent symbiosis of character (Figure 10.17). Director Stephen Daldry, in *The Hours*, tried to use this same approach with the character Laura, played by Julianne Moore, who develops from a young wife and mother to an elderly woman. At first, after he had used Moore in all of the earlier, longer scenes, he hired a much older actress for the continuation of

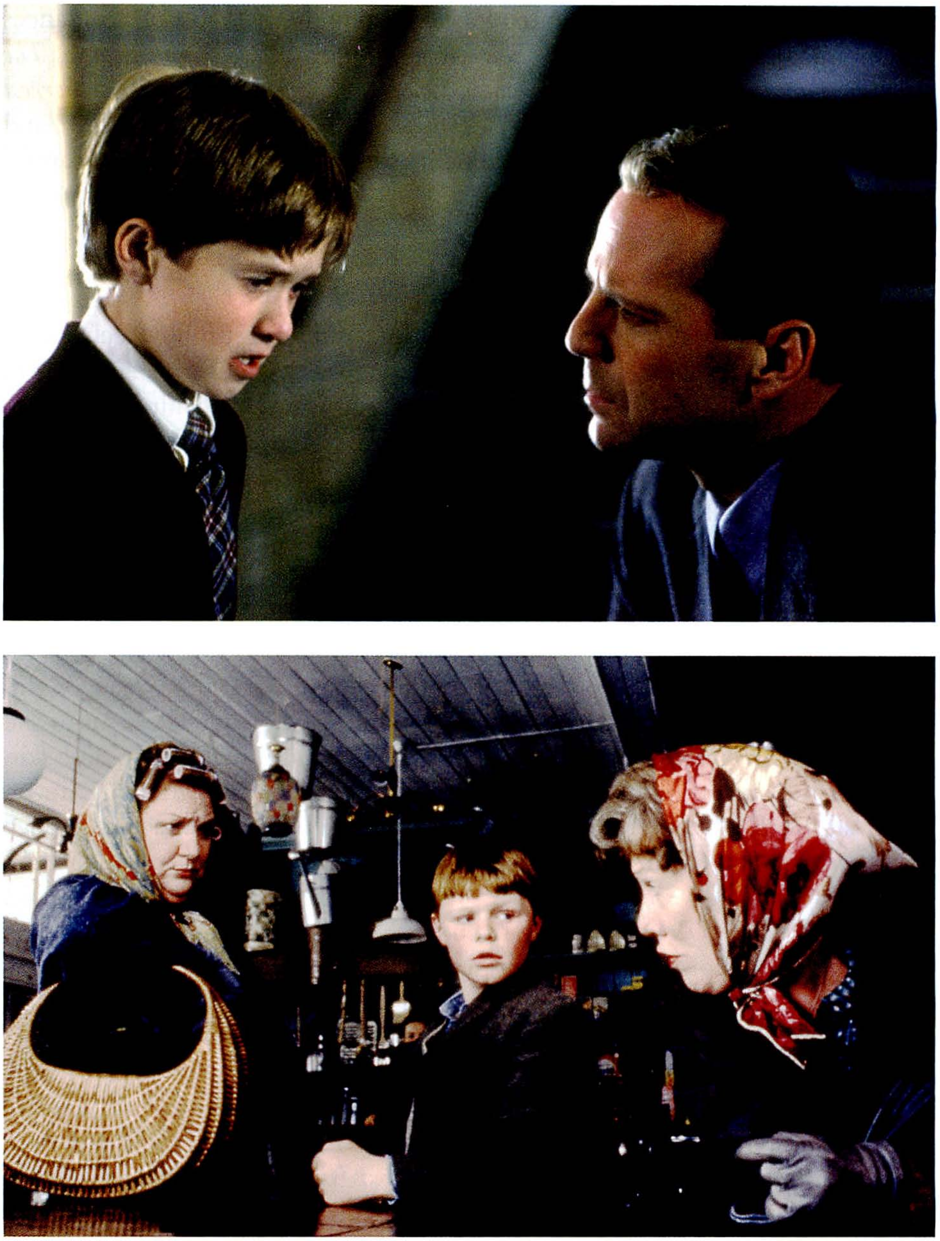


FIGURE 10.16 **The Tender Years** The enormous success of *The Sixth Sense* owed much to the convincing performance by the young actor Haley Joel Osment (shown in the top photo with his co-star Bruce Willis). Perhaps the most impressive achievement in Neil Jordan's *The Butcher Boy* is twelve-year-old Eamonn Owens's extraordinary portrayal of Francie Brady, the title character (bottom).

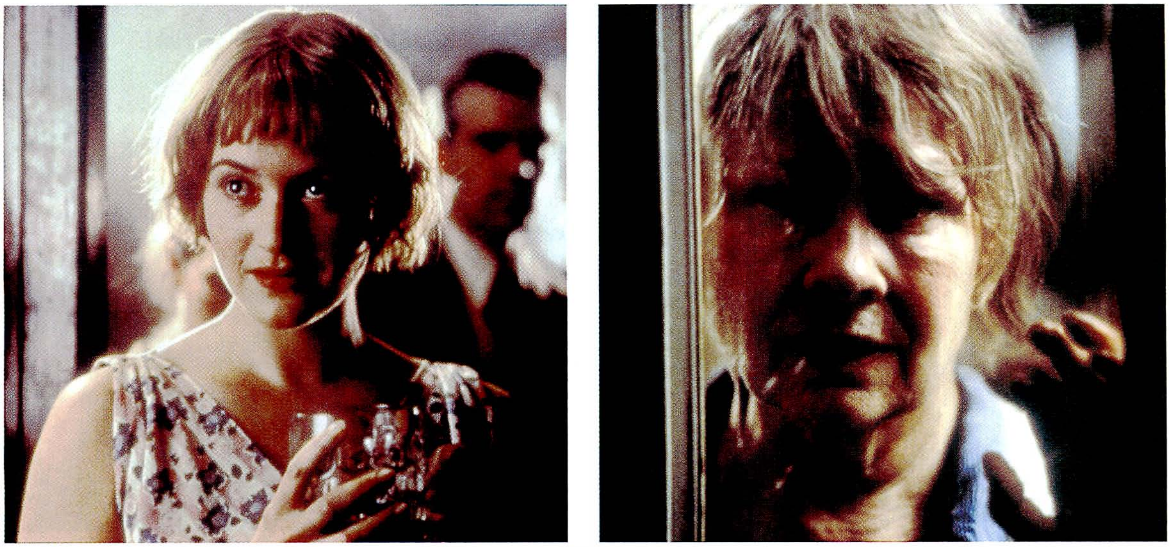


FIGURE 10.17 Growing Up Great care is usually taken in casting younger versions of characters who will mature during a film's story. This illustration suggests the superb choices of Kate Winslet (left) and Judi Dench (right) to become the early and later incarnations of the English novelist Iris Murdoch in Richard Eyre's *Iris*.

the role and photographed her in one later, very dramatic scene. Ultimately, though, after his film had essentially been completed, Daldry watched the results and concluded that only Moore, aged through makeup and prosthetics, could capture the quality and texture of personality that was needed consistently throughout the role. He reshot the later scene to accommodate this casting.

Extras and Small Parts

The casting of extras is another important consideration, for extras are often called on to perform some very important scenes. If they are not reacting properly, if their faces do not show what is being called for by the scene they are in, the scene may be ruined. Extras are, in a sense, actors in their own right, not just background for the story. For that reason studios hire casting directors to hire extras to fit the film's requirements. Often this job is done on the actual shooting location. The extras casting director goes to the location in advance of the crew and spends a great deal of time finding the right faces, backgrounds, and personalities to fit the story.

Jody Hummer, location casting director for *The River* (1984), starring Mel Gibson, needed two different sets of extras for that film. One group consisted of farmers, who were to assemble at an auction of a farm that had to be sold. Many of the farm extras in the scene had been through such an auction themselves

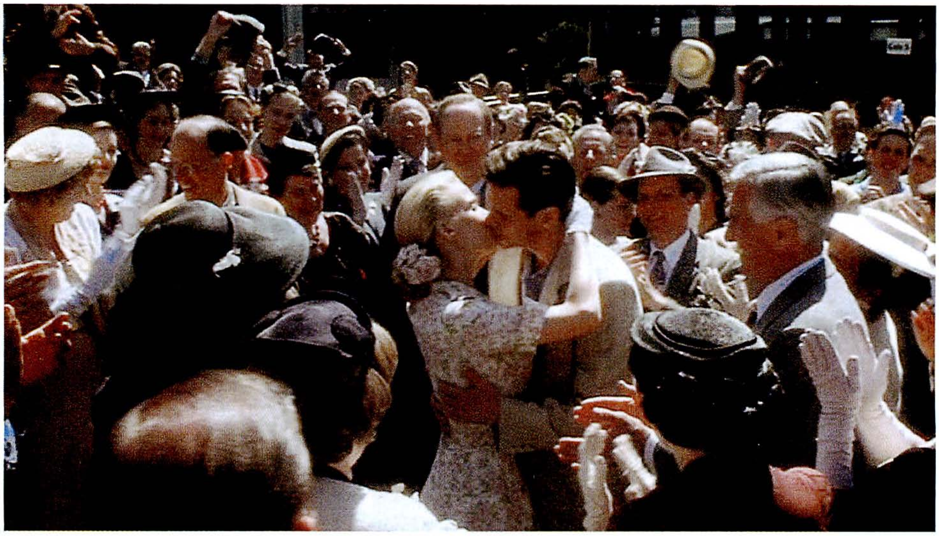


FIGURE 10.18 Extras In *The Majestic,* director Frank Darabont selected a whole town full of distinctive-looking extras to back up his central actors Jim Carrey, Martin Landau, Laurie Holden, and David Ogden Stiers.

and responded with great sadness and even tears, and their sincerity showed on the screen. A second set of extras was needed to play a group of drifters hired by the film's villain to break down the levee protecting the riverside farms from flooding. For the drifters, Hummer assembled a group of rough-looking unemployed men who appeared desperate enough to take any kind of a job.

In the casting of extras, each face must be right, matching our preconceived notions of what a farmer looks like, what a truck driver looks like, or what a drifter looks like. Each extra should fit the type but look different from every other individual in the group. An impression is thus created of a representative sampling of the particular group (Figure 10.18).

Extras are not always cast only on the basis of appearance, because their part may require a special skill. Even in the brief moment they are on-screen, they must do their assigned tasks with naturalness, a lack of self-consciousness, and a competence that shows. Bob Fosse demanded absolute realism in his films. If a scene called for waiters to serve drinks, instead of actors he used real waiters because they knew the proper way to put a glass down on a table.

Movies are actually a series of brief moments woven into a whole by the editing process. Great movies are therefore movies that achieve as many great moments as possible, and those great moments in many cases are created not by the stars but by the supporting players or the extras. If we are so dazzled by the performance of the stars that we fail to be fully conscious of the rich moments provided by the supporting actors, bit players, and extras, we miss an important part of the film experience. In Zeffirelli's *The Taming of the Shrew,* for example, the screen is packed with fascinating faces, from the major supporting roles to the briefest appearance by an extra. In a well-cast movie there are no weak links. Each member of the cast contributes significantly to the film, whether he or she is on the screen for five seconds, five minutes, or two hours.

ACTORS AS CREATIVE CONTRIBUTORS

Alfred Hitchcock supposedly felt that actors should be treated like cattle, and he came to production with a complete, detailed plan for every shot. Other directors, like Elia Kazan, came to view actors as collaborators in the development of a film. This attitude is best illustrated in Kazan's retelling of the events leading to the famous "I coulda been a contender" scene in *On the Waterfront* (Figure 10.19):

> I've been highly praised for the direction of this scene, but the truth is I didn't direct it. By the time [cinematographer] Boris [Kaufman] and I had figured out what to do with the set, the morning was gone and Brando was leaving at four; there was nothing to do except put the actors in their places—who on which side of the seat? did it matter?—and photograph them. By that time in the schedule, Brando and Steiger knew who they were and what the scene was about—they knew all that better than I did by then—so I didn't say anything to them.
>
> But of course the extraordinary element in that scene and in the whole picture was Brando, and what was extraordinary about his performance, I feel, is the contrast of the tough-guy front and the extreme delicacy and gentle cast of his behavior. What other actor, when his brother draws a pistol to force him to do something shameful, would put his hand on the gun and push it away with the gentleness of a caress? Who else could read "Oh, Charlie!" in a tone of reproach that is so loving and so melancholy and suggests that terrific depth of pain? I didn't direct that; Marlon showed me, as he often did, how the scene should be performed. I could never have told him how to do that scene as well as he did it.[27]

The modern trend has been more and more toward allowing actors a significant role in determining the nature of their characters and giving them a great deal of input into the total creative process. After directing Susan Sarandon in *The Tempest*, director Paul Mazursky paid tribute to her value as a collaborator: "In working on *Tempest*, Susan helped make the character more dimensional than the one I wrote. She had a lot of good criticisms, and I did some rewriting because of her input. . . . Susan would often say to me, 'There's something wrong here; I really think this is a cliché.' She was usually right." Sarandon enjoys a lively give-and-take with her directors, preferring to act in films where "whatever comes into your head you can express. I don't think I've ever worked on a film where I haven't also worked on rewriting the script—except maybe *The Front Page*. Billy Wilder has a very set idea of a film, and everything has to be done to the letter, to the comma."[28]

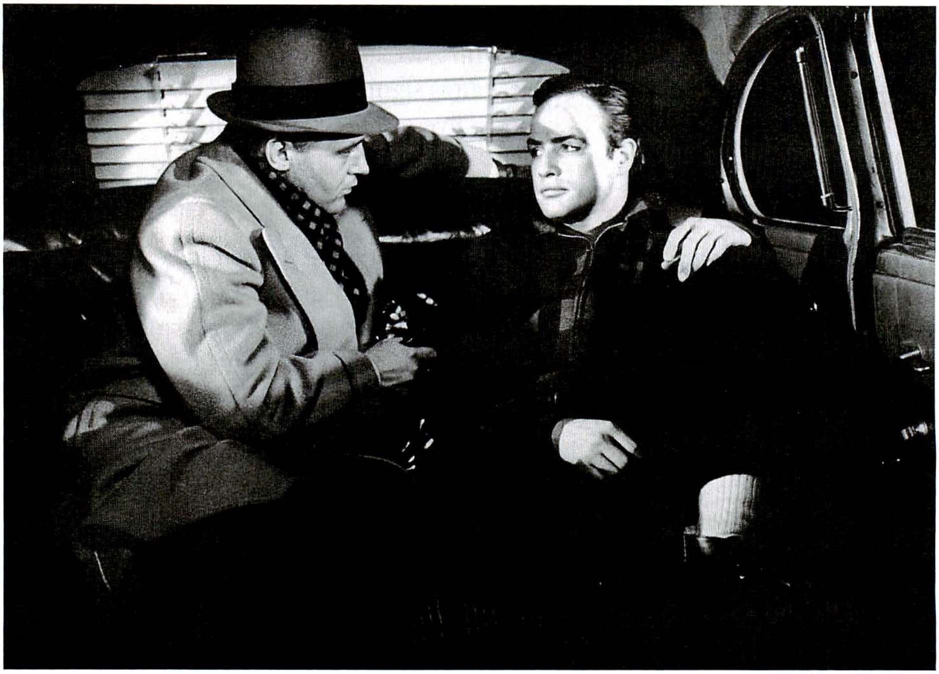


FIGURE 10.19 Crediting the Actor Director Elia Kazan credits Marlon Brando for directing himself in this memorable scene (with Rod Steiger) from *On the Waterfront*.

Dustin Hoffman, who is credited by director Mike Nichols with making several significant contributions to his character in *The Graduate*, believes that the relationship between the actor and the director should be "a real partnership, not the classically imagined situation where a supposedly 'solid, objective' director simply 'handles' a 'neurotic, subjective' actor." As Hoffman explains it:

> I think that some directors are closed minded about what an actor can contribute. You'll hear directors say sometimes "Yes. I got a performance out of that actor: I had to push him. I had to push him further than he thought he could go." Well, there are probably a lot of uncredited occasions where actors have pushed directors into areas that they haven't gone into before, and I think there have been more than a few occasions where a picture is better because of the actor who is in it. They will say, "The actor is subjective—only cares about his own part." Not so. An actor is as capable of considering "the whole" as the director, and often does. Sure we care about our own parts, but we have a responsibility to the entire film also, and I don't think many of us ignore that responsibility.[29]

Hoffman's problems with director Sydney Pollack on *Tootsie* have been well documented. In his struggle with Pollack over who had final control over *Tootsie*, Hoffman, who conceived the idea for the film and wanted to produce it, finally worked out a bargain with the director, giving Pollack the ultimate power of **final cut** (final edited version). But Hoffman maintained script and cast approval as well as the right to go into the cutting room, watch the film being edited, and disagree and show alternatives before the final cut was made.

Actress Emma Thompson (who won an Academy Award for her acting in *Howards End*) wrote the Oscar-winning screenplay for the film adaptation of *Sense and Sensibility*, but this fact did not make her major performance in the Ang Lee–directed movie any easier, apparently. In the production diary that she published along with her screenplay, Thompson gives her reader an excellent sense of the day-to-day pressures with which a working actor (even one who happens to be a star) must cope. Near the end of the shoot, when she is called upon to do a demanding emotional scene, Thompson records her intimate observations about the whole process:

> Interesting and difficult scene this—getting the level of Elinor's [her character's] explosion just right. The level of control. I rely entirely on Ang—I can't quite get outside it. Pleased so far and hope I can hit it again this p.m. Barely able to eat, stomach knotted. We shoot largely out of sequence, of course—so I've already done the loss of control in the last scene, which I tried to make as involuntary as possible. A case of the diaphragm taking over. I remembered going to the bank shortly after my father died to try and sort through his papers. I was feeling perfectly calm and sat in the office talking to the manager when suddenly my diaphragm lurched into action and I was unable to do anything but sob helplessly. Walked home, shoulders heaving, thinking, This is weird, because I couldn't stop, there was no possibility of controlling it. It's never happened before or since and was as though the emotion was quite disconnected from actual thought. That was what I wanted to duplicate for the scene when Elinor finds out Edward [the man she loves] isn't married [as she had thought]. *This* moment, though, is much more one of anger—which I've always found very difficult. It's a hotness that's hard to simulate, a sharp heat. She's furious with Marianne [Elinor's younger sister] but hates feeling the anger and doesn't know quite what to do with it. Like watching someone trying to bottle a genie. In the event I play it several different ways so that during the editing Ang has plenty of choices. He won't know what the right note is until he sees it in context. This is the real bugger with film—sometimes you cannot tell where to pitch an emotion and the only safe course is to offer up as many alternatives as possible.[30]

Perhaps the most extreme example of an actor's influence on the overall direction of a film is that of Jon Voight's creative input in *Coming Home.* After two days of shooting, director Hal Ashby, recognizing the impact of Voight's interpretation of his character, threw out the first script. From that point on, the script was written as they shot. Ashby described the process:

> I would talk with the actors the night before and say, "Here's what I think we ought to do tomorrow," and give the reasons why I thought we should do it. And they'd all come in with their lines, and they were great. They were terrific. And

> that all was guided by Jon's character—I threw out a screenplay because of where he was. That man received incredible amounts of resistance—down to everybody, including Jane Fonda, wanting him to play it more macho.

And all of this creative input came from the actor for whom Ashby had to fight United Artists to cast. When told by Ashby that he wanted Voight in the cast, producer Mike Medavoy simply said, "No way. Absolutely. The man has no sex appeal." He then proceeded with "a whole big line of reasons not to cast Jon Voight in the role."[31] Voight won an Academy Award for the part.

SUBJECTIVE RESPONSES TO ACTORS

Our response to actors is very subjective and personal, and often our views are diametrically opposed to those of our friends or our favorite critics. Critics themselves disagree violently in their personal response to acting performances. Meryl Streep, an actor to whom people respond in various ways, summarized this problem herself:

> Once a year I come out in a film and go around and listen to people or read people who tell me what they think of me. It's a revelation. I have too many mannerisms . . . or not enough mannerisms . . . to become a real movie star. Someone says I don't put enough of my own character into my roles.[32]

Those who think she has too many mannerisms apparently see them as acting gimmicks, techniques that make the viewer aware she is acting. Others accept the mannerisms (her nervous tics or twitches) as perfectly natural for the character and accept her as the perfect embodiment of the personality of the character she is playing. Whether Streep's acting style works or not may be a matter of casting. Her mannerisms seemed to fit perfectly in *Still of the Night*, where the audience suspected her all along of being a murderer. The nervous mannerisms made us suspect that the *character* she played was acting as she tried to deceive Roy Scheider (playing a psychiatrist). But *Time* critic Richard Schickel objected to her technique in *Silkwood:*

> She is an actress of calculated effects, which work well when she is playing self-consciously intelligent women. But interpreting a character who abandoned three children, shares a house with a rather shiftless boyfriend and a lesbian, and shows her contempt for authority by flashing a bare breast at its representative, she seems at once forced and pulled back.[33]

Although some actors seem to create a wide range of responses, most stars project some essential image, some profound quality of their personality that comes through on the screen in every role they play (Figure 10.20). These are basic qualities that cannot be changed, and intelligent casting will never ask this kind of star to move outside his or her essential being. Director Sidney Lumet made this point in discussing the special essence of Montgomery Clift (Figure 10.21):

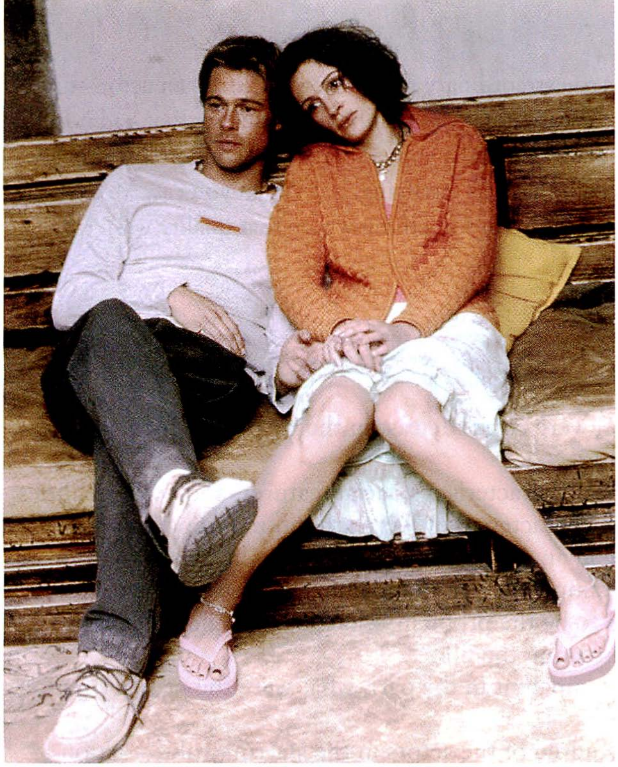


FIGURE 10.20 **What Stars Project** Most movie stars continually project essential qualities of their personalities on the screen. This axiom seems to apply even in films that may toy with altering those celebrated traits. Case in point: Julia Roberts and Brad Pitt as sometime lovers in *The Mexican*.

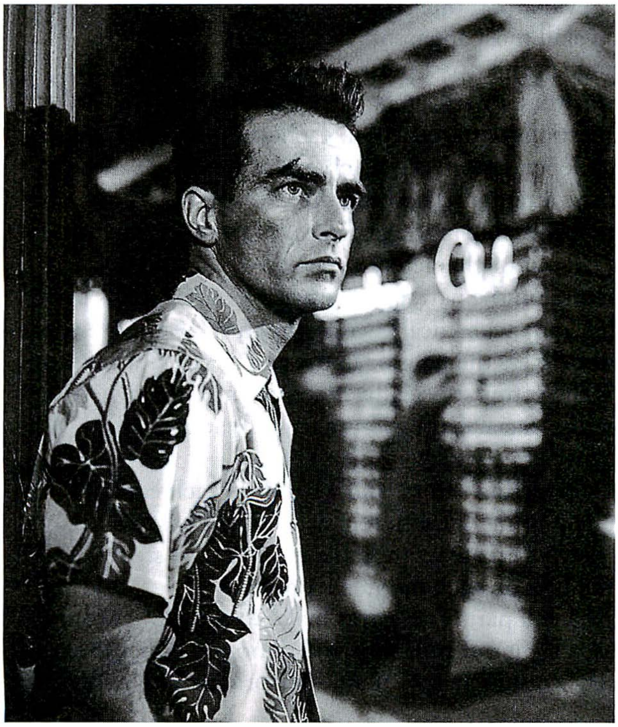


FIGURE 10.21 **Special Qualities** Montgomery Clift, shown here in his unforgettable portrayal of the strong-willed bugler Robert E. Lee Pruitt in *From Here to Eternity*, projected an unusual sense of vulnerability and "an almost masochistic receptivity to pain that was terrifying."

> One of the things that was so extraordinary about Monty Clift as an actor—and he was certainly one of the great ones—was that he had a quality that had nothing to do with his talent as an actor. He had a vulnerability, an openness, an almost masochistic receptivity to pain that was terrifying. . . . When you cast Monty, you would have been foolish to put him in something where that quality wasn't what you were going for.[34]

ANALYZING ACTING

1. Which actors did you feel were correctly cast in their parts? Which actors were not cast wisely? Why?
2. How well were the physical characteristics, facial features, and voice qualities of the actors suited to the characters they were attempting to portray?
3. If a performance was unconvincing, was it unconvincing because the actor was miscast, or did he or she simply deliver an incompetent performance?
   a. If faulty casting seems to be the problem, what actor would you choose for the part if you were directing the film?
   b. If the actor proved incompetent in the part, what were the primary reasons for his or her failure?
4. What kind of acting is required of the actors in the starring roles—action acting or dramatic acting? Are the actors well suited to the type of acting demanded by the roles they play? If not, why not? Where are their weaknesses or limitations most evident? If they are well suited, in what scenes is their special type of acting skill most apparent?
5. Drawing on your knowledge of their past performances, classify the actors in the major roles as impersonators, interpreters, or personalities.
6. Consider the following questions with respect to each of the starring actors:
   a. Does the actor seem to depend more on the charm of his or her own personality, or does he or she attempt to become the character?
   b. Is the actor consistently believable in the portrayal of the character, or does he or she occasionally fall out of character?
   c. If the actor seems unnatural in the part, is it because he or she tends to be overdramatic or wooden and mechanical? Is this unnaturalness more apparent in the way the actor delivers the lines or in the actor's physical actions?
7. In which specific scenes is the acting especially effective or ineffective? Why?
8. In which scenes are the actors' facial expressions used in reaction shots? What reaction shots are particularly effective?
9. How strong is the cast of supporting actors, and what does each contribute to the film? How does each help bring out different aspects of the star's personality? Do the supporting players create memorable moments or steal the show in spots? If so, where in the film do such moments occur?
10. What contributions do the small parts and extras make to the film? Are the faces and bodies well chosen to fit our preconceived notions of what they should look like? Are their "working tasks," if any, performed with confidence and naturalness?

VIDEO EXERCISES

Instructions for locating specific sequences are given on page 86.

1. Watch the "Scar Competition" scene from *Jaws* [4655 to 5020; 1:26:03 to 1:32:53]. What do the following factors contribute to the power of this sequence: character interaction, voice qualities, reaction shots, camerawork, and lighting?
2. Watch the "Group Captain Mandrake Tries to Call the White House" sequence from *Dr. Strangelove* [3820 to 3980; 1:08:48 to 1:12:32]. Identify specific factors in the performances of Peter Sellers and Keenan Wynn that contribute to the effectiveness and believability of this scene.
3. Watch the "Ma Joad Burns the Souvenirs" sequence from *The Grapes of Wrath* [1965 to 2080; 0:29:14 to 0:31:08]. Carefully note each item Ma Joad examines; then watch her reaction and describe what her face reveals about her feelings connected with that item. Turn the sound off and watch the sequence again. Is the sequence more powerful with or without the music? Why? What role does the lighting play in this sequence?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE I

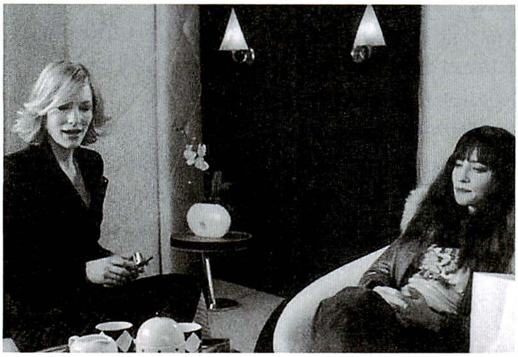
An adaptation of a novella by Jerzy Kosinski (who wrote the screenplay), the darkly satiric drama *Being There* (1979) was the undervalued American director Hal Ashby's last significant work. And it also contains the final substantive movie performance by a superb actor, Peter Sellers (of *Pink Panther* and *Dr. Strangelove* fame).

Scrutinize the 27-minute sequence that commences this film. Begin by following the character Chance's awakening with the credits and stop only after he has left the safe seclusion of his urban (Washington, D.C.) refuge (Chapters 1–6 of the DVD version). In other words, watch the film from its introduction of softly played classical music until just past its use of the majestic (and loud) strains of Richard Strauss's "Also Sprach Zarathustra," music familiar to viewers of *2001: A Space Odyssey* as the apt theme for entering any "brave new world."

Between these musical cues, look for on-screen evidence that a master actor is at work. Contemporary reviewers of the film alternately praised Sellers for the nuances of his portrayal of the "special person" Chance and condemned him for giving what they called a "one-note performance." As an individual viewer, what value do you find in Sellers's acting in this "mini-movie"?

In interviews, Sellers spoke of modeling his character's voice on memories of having heard the speaking tones of comedian Stan Laurel. Does this observation taint the performance for you, or heighten it?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE II



Jim Jarmusch is surely the most *independent* film writer-director actually working in American film today. Although he has created such fascinating, critically-acclaimed, low-budget features as *Stranger Than Paradise*, *Down by Law*, *Night on Earth*, *Ghost Dog*, and *Broken Flowers*, he has steadfastly refused to accept domestic studio funding, and he continues to own completely the rights to all his films. Sporadically, during a more than seventeen-year period when he was producing his full-length works, he also made *Coffee and Cigarettes* (2004), which might, in some ways, be considered an extended "home movie," starring a host of his famous friends and colleagues, including Bill Murray, Roberto Benigni, Steve Buscemi, Alfred Molina, Steve Coogan, Meg and Jack White, and Iggy Pop. The results of this experimentation in black and white are eleven brief dialogues that, by most accounts, are wildly uneven in their accomplishments. But one sequence that constitutes a sparkling demonstration of the nuanced art of acting presents Cate Blanchett in two roles, "the actress herself" and her "cousin Shelley," who are clearly very dissimilar individuals and appear, through a polished bit of camera trickery, simultaneously on screen throughout the mini-movie's 11-minute running time.

Check out the double dose of Blanchett on the *Coffee and Cigarettes* DVD. First, observe how smoothly the whole unified piece works. Then, examine more closely the skillful manner in which this talented actress differentiates between her own amusing version of her famous-actress self (perhaps uneasy with fame and wealth) and her poor-relation, slightly-flaky, passive-aggressive, aspiring "industrial-rock" singer cousin. Consider, of course, the contrasts in clothing, hair color and style, and makeup that Jarmusch manipulates. But look at and listen to, even more carefully, the delightful choices that Cate Blanchett has made in conveying sensibility and thought via body posture, stance, and movement, and also her control of voice timbre, diction, and accent. The actress's "natural" calculation here may be just as impressive, if not so sustained, as in her Oscar-winning channeling of "Katharine Hepburn" in Martin Scorsese's *The Aviator*.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

The Graduate (Special Edition):
The extensive interview "One on One with Dustin Hoffman" on this DVD presents, from a unique angle, the art of casting and acting in classic film comedy.

Carrie (Special Edition):
Here, a forty-five-minute documentary, "Acting Carrie," provides reflections of both a personal and professional nature from stars Sissy Spacek, Amy Irving, Betty Buckley, and others (but not John Travolta), including director Brian De Palma (who also presents on the disc a lengthy documentary called "Visualizing Carrie").

Shadow of the Vampire:
Interviews with actor Willem Dafoe and director E. Elias Merhige reveal the secrets of bringing both Max Schreck and his faux Dracula, Count Orlock, back to life.

Unfaithful:
"The Charlie Rose Show" hosted director Adrian Lyne and actors Richard Gere and Diane Lane in a discussion of this film's dramatic effects, and that program is included on this DVD. The disc also contains a telling conversation with veteran film editor Anne V. Coats, who has worked to present the performances of many actors in the best possible light, including those by Peter O'Toole in *Lawrence of Arabia*, Anthony Hopkins and John Hurt in *The Elephant Man*, and Julia Roberts in *Erin Brockovich.*

Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon:
Asian action star Michelle Yeoh states in an interview on this DVD, "I had no doubt that [director] Ang Lee would bring me to another level as an actress" in her role in the film, which she characterizes as "a martial arts *Sense and Sensibility.*"

Dr. Strangelove:
During the early 1960s, when Stanley Kubrick made this film, studios often provided split-screen interviews (one side of the frame photographed, the other blanked out) with the stars of their pictures. Local television stations could then insert their own questioners, who worked from the original script. It is fascinating to see both George C. Scott and Peter Sellers play that game here. But the greatest incentive to watch this footage is to observe—and hear—Sellers's brilliant demonstration of numerous British accents, one after another, without even taking a deep breath.

Deliverance:
Perhaps the short documentary "The Dangerous World of *Deliverance*" on this DVD will convince some performers and most movie watchers of the potential harm the art of acting can wreak. Years before Tom Cruise was hailed for

shooting the opening of *Mission Impossible II* on the face of a real cliff, Jon Voight, Burt Reynolds, Ned Beatty, and Ronny Cox were doing their own perilous stunts in John Boorman's film. Shades of Harold Lloyd in his famous silent picture *Safety Last!*

American Graffiti:
Director and producer George Lucas, producer Francis Ford Coppola, and cinematographer Haskell Wexler are among the many artists interviewed for "The Making of *American Graffiti*," the documentary on this disc. One of the most interesting topics discussed is the adventure of the picture's casting. Many of the film's stars are also interviewed, and numerous "never-before-seen" screen tests are provided.

Love and Basketball:
This DVD reproduces audition tapes of scenes from the script by actors Omar Epps and Sanaa Lathan. Viewers are able to compare the acting, early and late, by toggling between these tests and the corresponding finished scenes in the film.

The Godfather DVD set:
James Caan's screen test for Sonny Corleone shows up as an Easter egg (see Marc Salzman's *DVD Confidential*).

Forrest Gump (Special Collector's Edition):
Screen tests for Robin Wright and Haley Joel Osment appear on disc two.

Disney's The Kid:
Spencer Breslin, the "Kid" star of this film, conducts interviews with Jon Turteltaub (his director), Bruce Willis (his co-star/alter ego), and his own mother (among others) in explaining what it's like to overcome great casting odds and become a well-paid actor at such a young age. His screen test, with Willis, is charming and very "unactorish."

Amores Perros:
Animals can often be actors, too, as in the case of the dogs in this popular Mexican film (whose title may be translated "Love Is a Bitch"). Director Alejandro Gonzalez Inarritu and his producers undoubtedly had an ulterior motive for including the feature "Los Perros de *Amores Perros*" on this DVD: Parts of the film itself involve characters who conduct dog fights, and the incendiary nature of this topic may be extinguished by emphatic documentary assurances that no canines were ever even *touched* in this production. But the first line of dialogue from the dogs' trainer is "The dogs in this film are *actors*," and we may easily believe him after seeing their thoughtful and tender "coaching" demonstrated.

Cast Away (Special Edition Two-Disc Set):
Probably the most appealing extensive featurette of the many on these discs is called "Wilson: The Life & Death of a Hollywood Extra." It details the acting experience of a world-traveling volleyball. However, if, as a viewer, you lack the sense of humor that is obviously shared by Wilson's *accidental* creators

(including director Robert Zemeckis), then your focus on acting strategies may better be served by watching Tom Hanks's visit to "The Charlie Rose Show" for this movie.

Being John Malkovich (Special Edition):
Most of the extras on this DVD version of Spike Jonze's picture are tongue-in-cheek (or tongue-*out*-of-cheek, in the case of the director's brief, in-car interview feature, which seems to open seriously enough, but ends with his having to exit the vehicle rather swiftly, head first . . .). Nevertheless, like the film itself, "An Intimate Portrait of the Art of Puppeteering" may begin to make an eloquent case for accepting marionettes as authentic actors. (Perhaps Alfred Hitchcock would have approved the notion, with no strings attached.)

Star Wars, Episode II: Attack of the Clones:
An "all-new, full-length documentary," "From Puppets to Pixels," is a major part of the feature package on this DVD. In it, George Lucas and his filmmakers reveal the intricate process through which some of his series characters have evolved from Muppets to multi-dimensional "created actors." Beyond a digital Yoda, of course, stands a superiorly digitized Gollum (in *Lord of the Rings: The Two Towers*) amid talk of a Best Supporting Actor nomination—and in *The Hulk* (2003), director Ang Lee insisted upon "directing" his green CGI creature as if it were indeed a human actor.

Garbo: The Signature Collection:
This boxed set of nine DVDs, which include all of Greta Garbo's major sound films (e.g., *Anna Christie*, *Ninotchka*, *Anna Karenina*) and many of her silents, also presents *Garbo*, the original Turner Classic Movies documentary, narrated by Julie Christie, that offers "analysis and reminiscences" by friends and colleagues who knew her best.

The Chaplin Collection, Volumes I and II:
A treasure trove of film acting, both in its silent and talking forms, Warner Brothers' two boxed sets give us the very best of the little tramp and beyond—in the very best sharp, remastered form. Also in the second package, and especially noteworthy, is a disc containing the entertaining and superbly helpful documentary produced, written, and directed by the critic Richard Schickel called "Charlie: The Life and Art of Charles Chaplin."

FILMS FOR STUDY

Acting

Adam's Rib (1949)
The African Queen (1951)
The Apostle (1997)
As Good As It Gets (1997)
Becket (1964)
Brokeback Mountain (2005)
Capote (2005)
Cinderella Man (2005)
Crash (2005)
Driving Miss Daisy (1989)
The Elephant Man (1980)
Fargo (1996)
From Here to Eternity (1953)
Good Night, and Good Luck (2005)

The Grapes of Wrath (1940)
The Great Santini (1979)
A History of Violence (2005)
La Strada (1954)
Midnight Cowboy (1969)
Modern Times (1936)
Mrs. Henderson Presents (2005)
My Left Foot (1989)
Napoleon Dynamite (2004)
Nell (1994)
North Country (2005)
On the Waterfront (1954)
Out of Africa (1985)
The Pianist (2002)
The Piano (1993)
Raging Bull (1980)
Rain Man (1988)
Reality Bites (1994)
Schindler's List (1993)
Sense and Sensibility (1995)
Sexy Beast (2001)
Sling Blade (1996)
A Streetcar Named Desire (1951)
Syriana (2005)
Taxi Driver (1976)
The Trip to Bountiful (1985)
Walk the Line (2005)
Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf? (1966)
Wonder Boys (2000)

Silent Film Acting

The Birth of a Nation (1915)
Broken Blossoms (1919)
City Lights (1931)
The General (1927)
The Gold Rush (1925)
The Great Train Robbery (1903)
Greed (1925)
Intolerance (1916)
The Last Laugh (1924—Germany)
Modern Times (1936)
Napoleon (1927—France)
Nosferatu (1922—Germany)
Potemkin (1925—Russia)
Safety Last (1923)
Sherlock, Jr. (1924)
Sunrise (1927)
The Temptress (1926)
The Wind (1928)

11

The DIRECTOR'S STYLE

Actually, everything a director puts up on the screen is revelatory. Don't you really know all about John Ford from his films? Or Hitchcock, or Howard Hawks? If I reveal a character on the screen, I am necessarily also revealing myself, whether it's Treplev in The Seagull *or Sean Connery in* The Hill. *I think I have an idea of what my work is about, but I'm not interested in articulating it in words.*

—SIDNEY LUMET, DIRECTOR

In his book of interviews *Who the Devil Made It*, Peter Bogdanovich, accomplished filmmaker (*The Last Picture Show*, *What's Up, Doc?*, *Paper Moon*, *Mask*) and writer about films and their creators, tries at the outset to define the role of the movie director:

> In 1915, when President Wilson was asked for his reaction to [film pioneer D. W.] Griffith's new picture—*The Birth of a Nation* was the first film ever shown at the White House—the president is recorded as having said: "It is like writing history with lightning." This was a particularly apt description for more than one reason: lightning not only has enormous powers, it is accidental. When I once repeated to Welles Mr. [John] Ford's comment about "most of the good things in pictures" happening "by accident," Orson leapt on it right away. "Yes!" he said. "You could almost say that a director is a man who *presides* over accidents."[1]

Welles's "almost" is very important here, because he was well aware that every director needs as many good helpers as he or she can possibly manage in taking full advantage of these "accidents." Director Sidney Lumet, in *Making Movies*, provides an illustration of this wisdom:

> On my second picture, *Stage Struck*, a scene between Henry Fonda and Christopher Plummer took place in Central Park. I had shot most of the scene by lunchtime. We broke for an hour, knowing that we had just a few shots to do after lunch to finish the sequence. During lunch, snow started to fall. When we came back, the park was already covered in white. The snow was so beautiful, I wanted to redo the whole scene. Franz Planner, the cameraman, said it was impossible because we'd be out of light by four o'clock. I quickly restaged the scene, giving Plummer a new entrance so that I could see the snow-covered park; then I placed them on a bench, shot a master and two close-ups. The lens was wide open by the last take, but we got it all. Because the actors were prepared, because the crew knew what it was doing, we just swung with the weather and wound up with a better scene. Preparation allows the "lucky accident" that we're always hoping for to happen. It has happened many times since: in a scene between Sean Connery and Vanessa Redgrave in the real Istanbul for *Murder on the Orient Express;* in a scene between Paul Newman and Charlotte Rampling in *The Verdict;* and in many scenes with Al Pacino and various bank employees in *Dog Day Afternoon.* Because everyone knew what he or she was doing, practically all of the improvisation wound up in the finished movie.[2]

A motion picture, then, is always a cooperative effort, a joint creative interaction of many artists and technicians working on diverse elements, all of which contribute to the finished film. Because of the technical and physical complexity of filmmaking and the large number of people involved, it might seem misleading to talk of any single individual's style. The director, however, generally serves as the unifying force and makes the majority of the creative decisions, so it is perhaps proper to equate the film's style with the director's style.

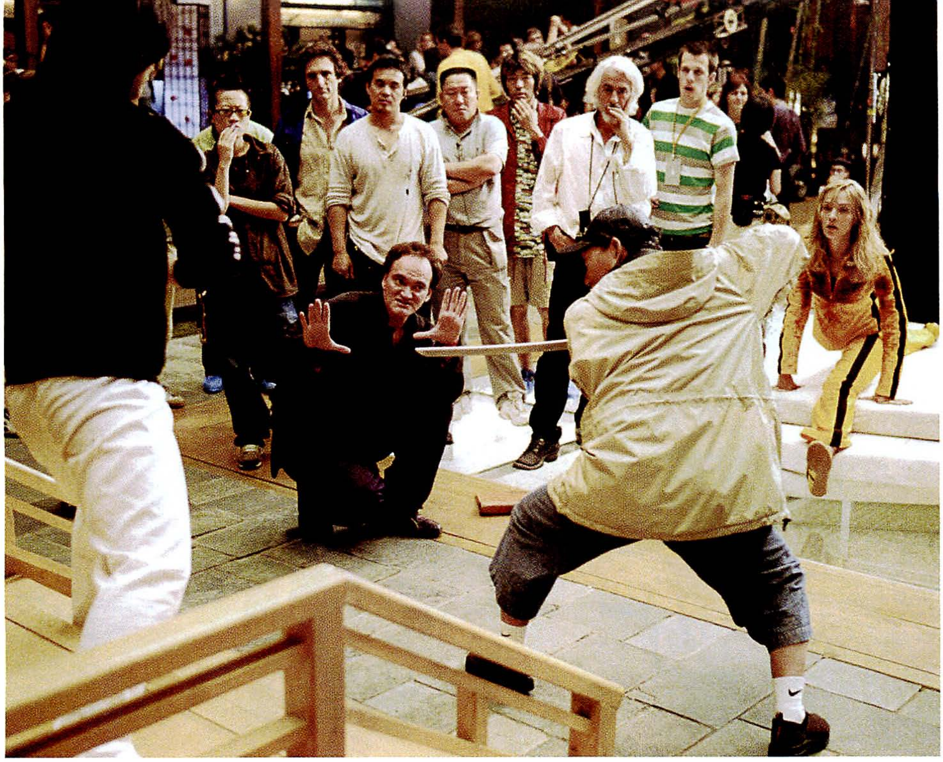


FIGURE 11.1 A Contemporary American *Auteur*? Filmmaker Quentin Tarantino has been a multiple-threat operator in late twentieth- and early twenty-first-century American film. Celebrated for beginning his public movie life as an amazingly knowledgeable video store clerk, he has produced a relatively small body of feature-film work so far (including *Reservoir Dogs*, *Pulp Fiction,* and *Jackie Brown*), but his movies have brilliantly showcased him as writer, actor, director, producer, and even career guru (notably for John Travolta in that popular actor's later career). In this production still, the director is rehearsing his actors for a scene in *Kill Bill* (a long film that was ultimately released in two parts, *Volumes I* and *II*).

The actual amount of control that directors have varies widely. At one extreme is the director who functions primarily as a hireling of a big studio. The studio buys a story or an idea, hires a scriptwriter to translate it into film language, and then assigns the script to a director who more or less mechanically supervises the shooting of the film. At the other extreme is the concept of the director as *auteur*, or author, of the film. An ***auteur*** is a complete filmmaker. He or she conceives the idea for the story, writes the script or the screenplay, and then carefully supervises every step in the filmmaking process, from selecting the cast and finding a suitable setting down to editing the final cut. The Swedish director Ingmar Bergman and the American director Orson Welles are viewed by many as the ultimate *auteurs*. Among current directors, Quentin Tarantino might have the qualifications (Figure 11.1).

Most directors fall into the gray area between those two extremes, for the degree of studio involvement or control and the director's dependence on other

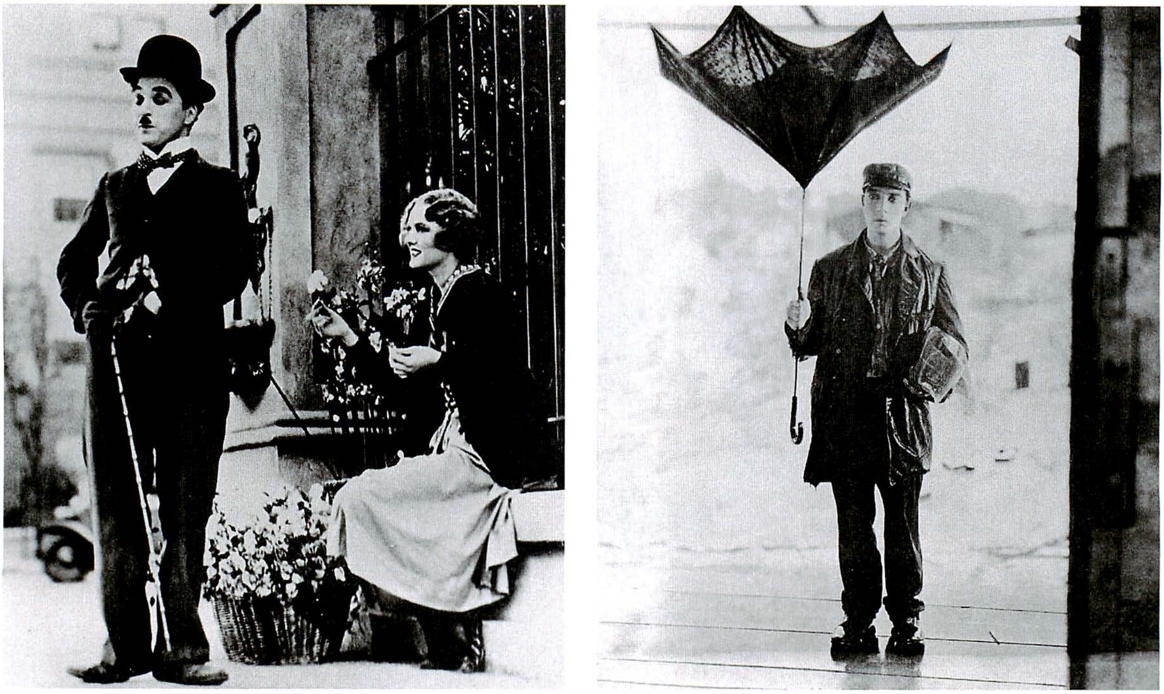


FIGURE 11.2 The Price of Perfection Without Words In this scene from *City Lights* (1931) (left), a blind flower girl believes the tramp to be a tycoon, sells him a flower for his last coin, and keeps the change. Director/actor Charlie Chaplin had a problem figuring out why the blind girl would assume the tramp was a rich man. He finally solved it by having the tramp wander through heavy traffic and then walk onto the sidewalk through the back doors of a limousine parked at the curb. The blind girl, hearing the heavy door close, assumed that the "tycoon" was getting out of an expensive car. To achieve the exact effect he wanted, Chaplin shot 342 takes of this scene. In contrast to Chaplin, Buster Keaton (right photo), another great silent comedy creator, seemed to have minimal interest in receiving both acting and directing credits. Although his name appears as director on such great works as *The General* (1927) and *Sherlock, Jr.* (1924), many films that he essentially directed (including *Steamboat Bill, Jr.*, and *The Cameraman*, both 1928) were actually attributed to others.

creative personalities can vary considerably. But regardless of the actual degree of control, the director has the greatest opportunity to impart a personal artistic vision, philosophy, technique, and attitude into the film as a whole, thereby dictating or determining its style. In analyzing or evaluating a director's style, therefore, we assume that the director has exercised aesthetic control over at least the majority of complex elements that make up a finished film (Figure 11.2).

A meaningful assessment of any director's style requires the careful study of at least three of his or her films, concentrating on those special qualities of the work that set the individual apart from all other directors. The study of six or more films may be necessary to characterize the style of directors who go through a long evolutionary period of stylistic experimentation before they arrive at anything consistent enough to be called a style.

THE CONCEPT OF STYLE

A director's style is the manner in which the director's personality is expressed through the language of the medium. A director's style is reflected in almost every decision the director makes. Every element or combination of elements may reveal a unique creative personality that shapes, molds, and filters the film through intellect, sensibility, and imagination. If we assume that all directors strive to communicate clearly with the audience, then we can further assume that directors want to manipulate our responses to correspond with their own, so that we can share that vision. Thus, almost everything directors do in making a film is a part of their style, because in almost every decision they are in some subtle way interpreting or commenting on the action, revealing their own attitudes, and injecting their own personality indelibly into the film.

Before examining the separate elements that reveal style in film, it is worthwhile to make some observations about the film as a whole. In this general analysis, we might consider whether the film is

intellectual and rational	*or*	emotional and sensual
calm and quiet	*or*	fast-paced and exciting
polished and smooth	*or*	rough and crude-cut
cool and objective	*or*	warm and subjective
ordinary and trite	*or*	fresh and original
tightly structured, direct, and concise	*or*	loosely structured and rambling
truthful and realistic	*or*	romantic and idealized
simple and straightforward	*or*	complex and indirect
grave, serious, tragic, and heavy	*or*	light, comical, and humorous
restrained and understated	*or*	exaggerated
optimistic and hopeful	*or*	bitter and cynical
logical and orderly	*or*	irrational and chaotic

An accurate assessment of these values is a good first step toward an analysis of the director's style. A complete analysis must examine his or her treatment of subject matter, cinematography, editing, and other individual film elements.

SUBJECT MATTER

Perhaps no other element reveals more about a director's style than the choice of subject matter. For a director who is truly an *auteur*—a person who conceives the idea for a film and then writes the script or supervises the writing to conform to his or her own vision—the subject is an essential aspect of style. Directors who are not *auteurs* but are free to choose the stories they want to film

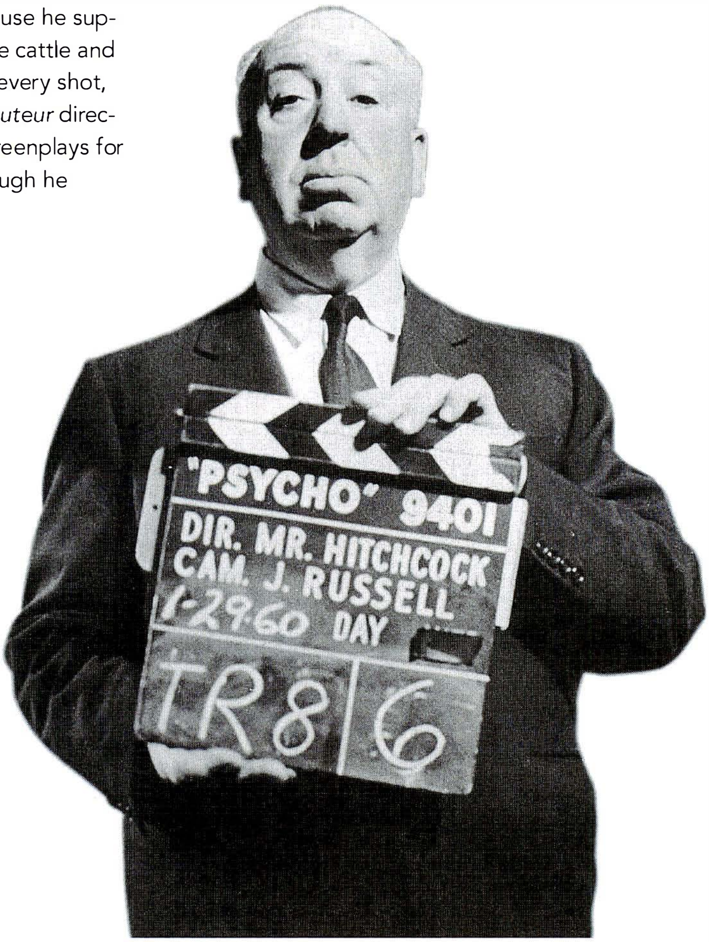


FIGURE 11.3 Master of Suspense Because he supposedly felt that actors should be treated like cattle and came to production with a detailed plan for every shot, Alfred Hitchcock gained a reputation as an *auteur* director. Hitchcock, however, did not write the screenplays for the major American films he directed—although he worked closely with his writers.

also express their style by their choice of subject matter. Even studio assignments may reveal a director's style if they call for the director to make a film that is similar to films that he or she has already made.

An examination of subject matter might begin with a search for common themes running through all the films under study. One director may be concerned primarily with social problems, another with men's and women's relationship to God, and yet another with the struggle between good and evil. Directors' choices of subject matter may be related to their tendency to create similar emotional effects or moods in everything they do. Alfred Hitchcock, for example, is clearly identified with the terror/suspense film, in which the mood becomes a kind of theme (Figure 11.3). Some directors specialize in a genre such as the western, historical pageant, or comedy. Others specialize in adapting novels or plays to film.

A director's personal background may be a significant influence on the kind of stories he or she is drawn to. For example, Martin Scorsese, who grew up in

FIGURE 11.4 Tackling New Subjects Steven Spielberg, known for his fantasy films, took a dramatic turn in choice of subject matter with *Schindler's List,* and, later, he continued his journey into realism by directing *Saving Private Ryan,* starring Tom Hanks (shown here). Between these two films, he directed Morgan Freeman and Anthony Hopkins in *Amistad,* about the consequences of a slave ship revolt. In 2005, Spielberg examined politics and morality in *Munich.*

New York City, often uses his old neighborhood and his old haunts as his setting, and seems to focus on types of characters he has known. Scorsese is a very personal filmmaker. Steven Spielberg (Figure 11.4), in contrast, was a child of the suburbs and is more inclined toward fantasy bigger-than-life stories and characters. Spielberg describes the different subjects that appeal to him and Scorsese:

> [W]e all do different things. I could never make *Raging Bull.* I don't think Marty could have made, let's say, *Close Encounters*, in the same way. He'd have made a wonderful and interesting *Close Encounters.* I don't think I would have made a wonderful or interesting *Raging Bull!* Marty likes primal life, he likes the primal scream. He's the best director of the primal scene in film history. The primal scream scares the stuff out of me, and I've been avoiding it all my life. And so I make movies that are a little bit above life, or below life, but not real life! Beyond real life. And those are the kinds of films that have always attracted me.[3]

That both directors are capable of tackling new subject matter, however, is clearly evidenced by some of their recent achievements: Spielberg's brutally realistic docudrama on Jewish persecution during World War II, *Schindler's List*, and Scorsese's richly textured study of the manners and mores of upper-crust New York society in the 1870s, *The Age of Innocence*—not to mention his exploration of the mystical traditions and tragic history of Tibet in *Kundun*.

The types of conflicts that directors choose to deal with constitute an important thematic thread. Some directors lean toward a serious examination of subtle philosophical problems concerning the complexities of human nature, the universe, or God. Others favor simple stories of ordinary people facing the ordinary problems of life. Still others prefer to treat physical conflict such as occurs in action/adventure films.

The subjects that a director chooses may also show some consistency with respect to the concepts of time and space. Some directors prefer a story in which the action takes place in a very short time period—a week or less. Others prefer historical panoramas spanning a century or more. Spatial concepts may be equally diverse. Some directors specialize in epic films, with casts of thousands and a broad, sweeping landscape as a canvas. Others restrict themselves to a limited physical setting and keep the number of actors in the cast to a bare minimum. Screenwriters like to know who is going to direct the script they are writing, so they can tailor the script to fit that particular director's strengths and limitations. As William Goldman tells it:

> You absolutely tailor toward a director's strength. You absolutely do. If you were writing an Alfred Hitchcock picture, you knew you didn't want to give him scope. He couldn't shoot scope. And if you have David Lean, you don't give David Lean a scene in a room. You give David Lean scope and he can *shoot* it. He's willing to, and he has the skill and brilliance to shoot it. Hitchcock, no. And I use those examples of two extraordinary directors that do different things. Directors *do* different things well.[4]

In some cases, study of a director's typical subject matter may reveal a unified worldview, a consistent philosophical statement on the nature of man and the universe. Even the use of **irony**—the juxtaposition of opposites—can take on philosophical implications reflecting the director's worldview if he or she uses it enough (see the section on irony in Chapter 3). Most directors, however, aren't consciously striving to express or develop a unified worldview, possibly because doing so would stifle their creativity. But that doesn't mean that philosophical patterns don't emerge, as Sydney Pollack (*Tootsie*, *Out of Africa*) explains:

> As I've gotten older and done more films, it's something I read more and more often about my own work. I would constantly read articles—at first they were only from Europe, but now they tend to be written in America, too—that would say, for instance, all my films are "circular." And I kept saying, what the hell is "circular"? Then I started looking at my films, and, by God, they are circular. But what does that mean? I don't know what it means. Then the articles began to say Pollack's films are all concerned with culture clashes, or they're all concerned with destiny,

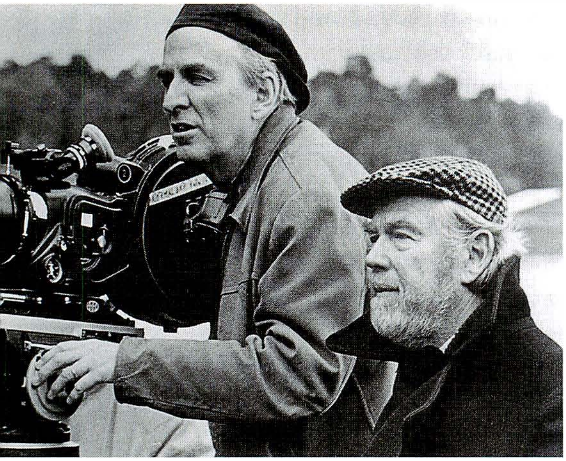
> or so and so. And I think all those things are true, and that's fair to say and I'm fascinated to hear about this. But this is not something I set out consciously to do.
>
> When you direct a picture you may be concentrating on a particular task at hand, which taps all sorts of areas in your unconscious that you're not aware of. Those areas seep into the work itself. If I took a love scene from any one of my pictures, or anybody else's, and set it up as a hypothetical experiment and had, let's say, Frankenheimer direct it, myself, Coppola, Mark Rydell—five or six or ten directors—you would get that many different love scenes. The same scene, same actors. You'd get a lyrical love scene, an erotic love scene, a tender love scene, a cynical love scene, a sophisticated love scene. Not in what they say, but in the actual handling of the actors—how do you place them, are they standing or seated, what's the lighting? Is it all in one shot and does the camera keep moving around them? Is it staccato and in cuts? Is the camera focusing only on eyes, or is it details of hands and skin? Now, in the doing of that, you take a kind of lie-detector test; you can't lie, something of who you are and what you believe in gets in there.[5]

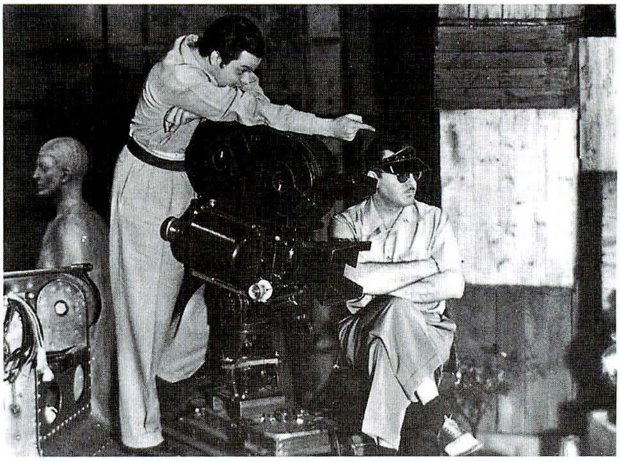
CINEMATOGRAPHY

The cinematographer oversees the camerawork and plays a significant role in the conceptualizing and treatment of the visual elements. But how can we accurately assess the cinematographer's contribution to the director's style? We weren't present on the set, and we lack important inside information. We cannot really know how much of the visual style of *The Birth of a Nation* was the work of Billy Bitzer, how much imagery in *Citizen Kane* was conceived by Gregg Toland, or how much of *The Seventh Seal* resulted from the creative vision of Gunnar Fischer. Because directors usually choose the cinematographer they want, we can assume their selections are based on a compatibility of visual philosophies, and for simplicity's sake we usually attribute the film's visual style to the director (Figure 11.5).

In analyzing visual style, we must first consider the composition. Some directors use composition formally and dramatically; others prefer an informal or low-key effect. One director may favor a certain type of arrangement of people and objects in the frame; another may place special emphasis on one particular type of camera angle. Important differences may also be noted in "philosophies of camera." For example, some directors stress the **objective camera** (a camera that views the action as a remote spectator); others lean toward the **subjective camera** (a camera that views the scene from the visual or emotional point of view of a participant). Other marks of cinematic style include the consistent use of certain devices—such as unusual camera angles, slow or fast motion, colored or light-diffusing filters, or distorting lenses—to interpret the visual scene in some unique way.

Lighting also expresses directorial style. Some directors prefer to work with low-key lighting, which creates stark contrasts between light and dark areas and leaves large portions of the set in shadow. Others favor high-key





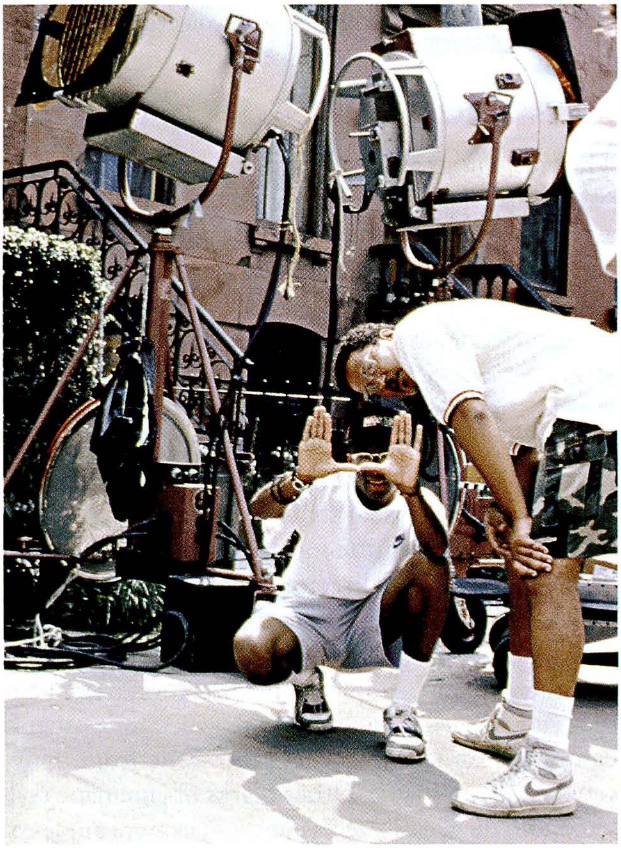


FIGURE 11.5 The Ultimate *Auteurs* Swedish director Ingmar Bergman, shown here (left) with his frequent cinematographer Sven Nykvist (in a checkered cap), is generally considered the ultimate *auteur* because his work over the years has projected a strong personal artistic vision. Orson Welles (in the top right photo, seen shooting *Citizen Kane* with his cameraman Gregg Toland, who is sitting at right) sometimes played this role in America. In contemporary filmmaking, the director who gives each of his films the distinctly proprietary label "A Spike Lee Joint," uses great originality and control in creating his works. At right, director/writer/producer/actor Lee appears with cinematographer Ernst Dickerson on the set of *Do the Right Thing*.

lighting, which is more even and contains many subtle shades of gray. Even the character of the lighting contributes greatly to the director's visual style, because a director may favor harsh, balanced, or diffused lighting throughout a series of films.

Likewise, treatment of color may be an element of cinematic style. Some directors use sharp, clear images dominated by bright, highly contrasting hues. Some favor soft, muted, pastel shades and dim or even blurred tones.

Camera movement reveals a director's style, as well. The possibilities range from favoring the static camera, which moves as little as possible, to favoring the fixed camera, which creates a sense of movement through panning and tilting. Another choice is the "poetic" mobile camera, whose slow, liquid, almost floating movements are achieved by mounting the camera on a dolly or boom crane. And although one director may favor the freedom and spontaneity of the jerky handheld camera, another may make great use of the zoom lens to simulate movement into and out of the frame. The type of camera movement that directors favor is an important stylistic element, for it affects a film's sense of pace and rhythm and greatly affects the film's overall impression.

Some directors are especially concerned with achieving three-dimensionality in their images, and the techniques they use to achieve this effect become an integral part of their visual style.

EDITING

Editing is an important stylistic element because it affects the overall rhythm or pace of the film. The most obvious element of editorial style is the length of the average shot in the film. Generally the longer the time between editorial cuts, the slower is the pace of the film.

Editorial cuts that make time/place transitions may take on a unique rhythmic character. One director may favor a soft, fluid transition, such as a slow dissolve, where another would simply cut immediately from one sequence to the next, relying on the soundtrack or the visual context to make the transition clear. David Lynch (*The Straight Story*, *Mulholland Dr.*) believes that a subtle balance between slow and fast pacing is essential:

> I think that pacing is extremely important. . . . It shouldn't be boring, but fast pacing doesn't make interesting or good. It may jar you, but it's the feeling of the story that you want and it wants to be told in a certain way and pull you. And a certain slowness, not boring, but a certain slowness contrasted with something fast is very important. It's like music. If music was all just fast it would be a bummer. But symphonies and stuff are built on slow and fast and high and low, and it thrills your soul. And film is the same way.[6]

When editorial juxtapositions are used creatively, the director's style may be seen in the relationships between shots. Directors may stress an intellectual relationship between two shots by using ironic or metaphorical juxtapositions, or they may emphasize visual continuity by cutting to similar forms, colors, or textures. They might choose to emphasize aural relationships by linking two shots solely through the soundtrack or the musical score.

Other special tricks of editing, such as the use of parallel cutting, fragmented flash cutting, and dialogue overlaps, are also indicators of style. Editing may also be characterized by whether it calls attention to itself. One director may lean toward editing that is clever, self-conscious, and tricky, whereas another may favor editing that is smooth, natural, and unobtrusive. The use of montages and the nature of the images used also help to characterize editing style.

SETTING AND SET DESIGN

Closely related to the choice of subject matter is the choice of setting and the degree to which it is emphasized. The visual emphasis placed on the setting may be an important aspect of the director's style. One director may favor settings that are stark, barren, or drab; another may choose settings of great natural beauty. Some may use setting to help us understand character or as a powerful tool to build atmosphere or mood; others may simply allow setting to slide by as a backdrop to the action, giving it no particular emphasis at all.

By choosing to photograph certain details in the setting, the director may stress either the sordid and the brutal or the ideal and the romantic. This type of emphasis may be an important aspect of the director's style, for it may indicate an overall worldview. Other factors of setting that may reflect the director's style are which social and economic classes the director focuses on, whether the settings are rural or urban, and whether the director favors contemporary, historical past, or futuristic time periods. Also, when elaborate or unusual sets have been constructed especially for a film, the director's taste is often apparent in the set design.

SOUND AND SCORE

Directors make use of the soundtrack and the musical score in unique and individual ways. Whereas one may simply match natural sounds to the corresponding action, another may consider sound almost as important as the image and use off-screen sound imaginatively to create a sense of total environment. Yet another director may use sound in an impressionistic or even symbolic manner; still another might stress the rhythmic and even musical properties of natural sounds and use them instead of a musical score.

With respect to screen dialogue, some directors want every word to be clearly and distinctly heard, and they record with this aim in mind. Others allow—even encourage—overlapping lines and frequent interruptions because of the realism these effects produce.

Loudness or softness of the soundtrack as a whole may also reflect something of a director's style. One director may employ silence as a sound effect, whereas another may feel a need to fill every second with some kind of sound. Similarly, some may use a minimum of dialogue, whereas others fill the soundtrack with dialogue and depend on it to carry the major burdens of the film's communication.

Directors also may vary greatly in their utilization of the musical score. One director may be completely dependent on music to create and sustain mood; another may use it sparingly. One may use music to communicate on several levels of meaning, whereas another may use music only when it reinforces the rhythms of the action. One director may desire the music to be understated or even completely inconspicuous, so we are not even aware of the score; another may employ strong, emotional music that occasionally overpowers the visual elements. Some favor music scored expressly for the film; others employ a variety of familiar music as it fits their purpose. Instrumentation and size of orchestra are also elements of style. Some directors prefer a full symphony sound; others find a few instruments or even a single instrument more effective. For *Match Point*, Woody Allen made the idiosyncratic (but highly effective) choice of antique recordings of opera arias. More and more, younger directors are using the work of soloists and groups from the contemporary popular music scene to help create their movies' appeal. Sam Mendes, for example, in *Jarhead*, set during 1993, utilizes Public Enemy, T. Rex, and Social Distortion (among others)—in addition to a unique orchestral score composed by Hollywood favorite Thomas Newman.

CASTING AND ACTING PERFORMANCES

Most directors have a hand in selecting the actors they work with, and it must be taken for granted that they can have a strong influence on individual acting performances. In the choice of actors, one director may take the safe, sure way by casting established stars in roles very similar to roles they have played before. Another may prefer to try relatively unknown actors who do not already have an established image. Another may like to cast an established star in a role entirely different from anything he or she has played before. Some directors never work with the same actor twice; others employ the same stable of actors in almost every film they make. Working frequently with the same actors can greatly increase a director's efficiency. Knowing the strengths and weaknesses of the cast and having already established rapport with them, the director can concentrate on getting high-level performances. The downside of such familiarity is the danger that the director and cast will slip into comfortable patterns and repeat themselves in films that seem too much alike.

In their choice of actors, directors may also reveal an emphasis on certain qualities. A director can have a remarkable feel for faces and choose stars and

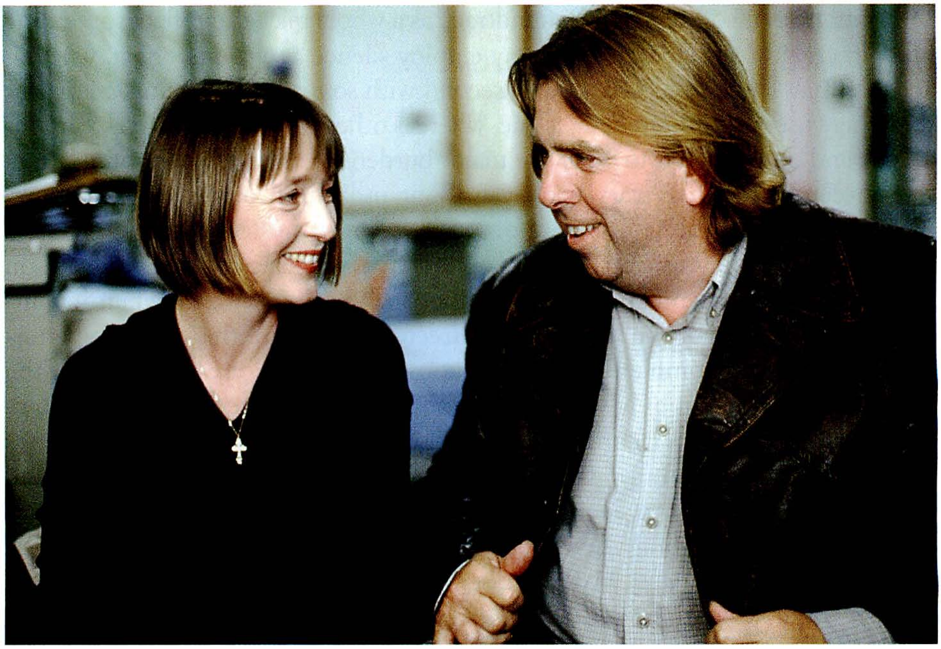


FIGURE 11.6 Repeated Directions Some directors choose to hire certain distinctive-looking and -acting performers more than once, thus contributing to a kind of filmmaking repertory company of their own. One such artist is the British director Mike Leigh (*Secrets and Lies, Vera Drake*), famous for the unusual rehearsal time and improvisational power he allows his actors. Leigh has worked with Timothy Spall (right) at least three times and with actress Lesley Manville (left) twice. They are shown here in their Leigh collaboration *All or Nothing.*

even bit players who have faces with extremely strong visual character—that is, faces that may not be beautiful or handsome but are strikingly powerful on the screen (Figure 11.6). Or a director may prefer to work with only the "beautiful people." One director may seem to stress the actors' voice qualities, and another may consider the total body or the physical presence of the actor more important.

The director may have a tremendous influence on the acting style of the cast, although the extent of this influence may be difficult to determine even in a study of several films. Almost every aspect of an actor's performance can be influenced by the director—the subtlety of the facial expressions, the quality of the voice and physical gestures, and the psychological depth of the interpretation of the role. Thus, an actor who has a tendency to overplay for one director may show more subtlety and restraint with another. Whether a director has the ability to influence the acting style of each actor under his or her direction is, of course, impossible to detect, but in some cases the director's influence may be obvious. When asked about his technique for rehearsing actors, Orson Welles replied,

> It depends on the actors. I think a director oughtn't to have a method he imposes on actors. I think the *actors* impose the method by their personalities, characteristics, and everything else. There are some actors who are unhappy and insecure unless you come on very strong, very firm, and give them an enormous amount of information. And others who are much better in a party, where you just kind of slip free information into their minds while nobody's looking. . . . One tries to ["sense the different actors"]. I think that separates the boys from the men in directors. There *are* fine directors who are so much themselves that the actors have to toe the line and follow them. But I've always thought . . . that the job of the director is slightly overrated, overinflated, and I think the director must think of himself as the servant of the actors and the story—even when he wrote the story. Really, the big thing is what the actors are going to do—not that the actors are going to do what *you* want. It's to find out what they're going to do and bring it out of them. And I think you have to feel it sincerely—not just pretend that's what you think; you must mean it. I think you have to make an actor believe that he's better than he is. That's the biggest job. . . . There are so many ways of doing it, and it's dictated by the material itself and by the actor. It's so much a question of personality and mood.[7]

SCREENPLAYS AND NARRATIVE STRUCTURE

The way a director chooses to tell the story—the narrative structure—is also an important element of style. A director may choose to build a simple, straightforward, chronological sequence of events, as in *Shane* or *High Noon*, or a complex elliptical structure, jumping back and forth in time, as in *Pulp Fiction* or *Citizen Kane*. A director may choose to tell a story objectively, putting the camera and the viewer in the vantage point of a sideline observer, bringing the action just close enough so that we get all the necessary information without identifying with any single character. Or a director may tell the story from the viewpoint of a single character and manipulate us so that we essentially experience the story as that character perceives it. Although the camera does not limit itself to subjective shots, we emotionally and intellectually identify with the **point-of-view character** and see the story through his or her eyes. A director may structure the film so that we get multiple viewpoints, seeing the same action repeated as it is perceived from the different viewpoints of several characters. Along the way, there may be side trips into the characters' minds, into fantasies or memories as in *Midnight Cowboy*, *The World According to Garp*, *Annie Hall*, *Out of Sight* (1998), and *Proof.*

Sometimes there may be some confusion about whether what we are seeing is reality or illusion. The dividing line between those two may be clear or blurred. Time may be compressed in montages or clever transitions that jump huge segments of time. Changing time frames may be made clear with newsreel inserts, TV news segments, or popular music on radio, phonograph, or tape or CD players.

Unusual techniques, like the witnesses in *Reds*, may be inserted into the narrative to provide both background information and varying viewpoints. Voice-over narration may be provided from the point-of-view character to set up a frame at beginning or end and to fill in gaps in the filmed narrative. Or voice-over narration may be employed not just to help structure the film but to provide style and humor (as in *Forrest Gump*) or the sense of an author telling the story (as in *American Splendor*).

Beginnings may be slow and leisurely; the director may prefer to establish characters and exposition before conflict develops. Or he or she may prefer exciting, dynamic *in medias res* beginnings, where conflict is already developing when the film opens. Some directors may prefer endings in which the tying up of all loose ends provides a sense of completeness. Others may prefer endings without a clear-cut resolution—endings that leave questions unanswered and give us something to puzzle about long after the film is over. Some directors prefer upbeat endings—that is, endings on a heroic note, with strong, uplifting music. Some prefer downbeat endings that offer little or no hope. There are spectacular endings, quiet endings, happy endings, and sad endings. Some directors may use trick endings, withholding information from the audience until the end and devising strange and unusual plot twists to produce endings for which we're not prepared.

Some directors create a tight structure so that every single action and every word of dialogue advance the plot. Others prefer a rambling, loosely structured plot with side trips that may be interesting but actually have little or nothing to do with the stream of the action. Some structures let the audience in on the secrets but keep the characters guessing, creating a sense of dramatic irony. Other structures withhold information from the audience and create suspense with mystery. Repeated patterns of character are often used. The entire film may end with the resolution of one problem and establish the fact that the character has taken on another similar problem at the end, so that we get a sense that the character has not really learned anything from the experience but will continue going about his or her crazy business (as in *Breaking Away*).

Directors also differ in the way they handle films with multiple narrative levels. Complex plots, with several lines of action occurring simultaneously at different locations, can be broken into fragments jumping quickly back and forth from one developing story to another (Figure 11.7). Or each stream of action can be developed rather completely before switching to another stream of narrative.

One director may prefer a lazy, slow-paced, gradual unfolding of character or information, focusing on each single detail. Another director may prefer

FIGURE 11.7 Focused Fragments Director Robert Altman, supremely celebrated for his improvisational work with actors, is also remarkable for the large canvases on which he works. Often (as in *Nashville, Short Cuts, The Player,* and *Gosford Park*), he deals with multiple characters and storylines, ultimately creating coherence out of apparent fragmentation. A younger director who emulates Altman is Paul Thomas Anderson (*Boogie Nights*). In *Magnolia*, illustrated in these two photographs, Anderson follows several different narrative strands, including one involving characters played by Julianne Moore and Jason Robards (right) and another focused on William H. Macy's former television quiz kid (with Henry Gibson here) (left).

compressed, machine-gun dialogue and quick images to get exposition out of the way as quickly as possible and introduce characters quickly so that he or she can use more time later to focus on the most dramatic scenes.

What actually carries the narrative forward may also vary greatly from one director to the next. Some may provide dialogue for the most important bits of story and action, and others may prefer to tell the story in strictly visual terms with a bare minimum of dialogue. Some narrative structures use traditional formulas for beginnings and endings, emphasizing set patterns like the hero arriving at the beginning and leaving at the end. Others use a structure in which the characters of the story are already present in the beginning, and at the end the camera leaves them to continue their lives. We leave and they stay, but we leave with a strong sense that their story goes on, their lives continue.

The sense of what makes a story and how to tell it, of course, is often determined by the screenwriter, but it should be remembered that many directors simply view the screenplay as a rough outline for a movie and impose their own feel for narrative structure on it, expressing themselves creatively in their fashioning of the film's overall shape and form.

For decades in the Hollywood system of making movies the greatest power typically resided with the producers, who called all the shots, at least in a financial sense. Near the middle of the twentieth century, as the studio system was broken down by antimonopoly legislation and the popularity of television,

FIGURE 11.8 Respected Interpreter Sidney Lumet, shown here directing *The Fugitive Kind,* is widely admired not only for the quality of his diverse films but also for his ability to write about the movie industry, as in his popular book *Making Movies.*

among other influences, the seat of power shifted: Directors came to have more clout, initiating and sustaining projects. Only late in the twentieth century did screenwriters truly begin to be recognized, through sometimes spectacular remuneration, for their contributions (see "Flashback: The Writer's Place in Hollywood" in Chapter 13). Frequently, now, writers boldly challenge how directors handle their scripts. But in discussing screenwriters' power, director Sidney Lumet (Figure 11.8) appears to seek a certain balance:

> Movie-making works very much like an orchestra: the addition of various harmonies can change, enlarge, and clarify the nature of the theme. In that sense, a director is "writing" when he makes a picture. But I think it's important to keep the words specific. Writing is writing. Sometimes the writer includes directions in the script. He gives long descriptions of characters or of physical settings. Close-ups, long shots, and other camera directions may be written into the script. I read these carefully, because they are reflections of the writer's intention. I may follow them literally or find a completely different way of expressing the same intention. Writing is about structure and words. But the process I've been describing—of the sum being greater than the parts—that's shaped by the director.[8]

As we observed in Chapter 3, the struggle between director and writer is essentially the very basic conflict between kinds of language—literary versus cinematic.

But Lumet is also emphasizing the film director's necessary talent for seeing the big picture. In observing director Ang Lee's work on her film *Sense and Sensibility*, screenwriter-actor Emma Thompson says that "he's very interesting on the flow of energy in a film. Always thinks of everything in its widest context." And later, in keeping a daily chronicle of her thoughts, actions, and emotions while making the film, she notes,

> We seem to feel our way into the shots. Ang's style of leadership is somehow to draw us all to him silently and wait for things to happen. He has the shape of shots in his head always and will stand for silent minutes on end thinking through the flow of the scenes to see if what we're doing will fit his vision. I find it very inspiring but it's quite different to being told what to do. More collaborative.[9]

EVOLVING STYLES AND FLEXIBILITY

Some directors do not arrive at a static mature style but continue to evolve and experiment throughout their careers. Several prominent directors are examples of constant experimentation and artistic growth. Robert Altman is perhaps one of the most experimental. A certain freedom of form and an emphasis on texture permeate everything he does, but the films Altman has directed have little in common in subject matter, worldview, or even visual style: *M*A*S*H; Buffalo Bill and the Indians; Nashville; 3 Women; A Wedding; McCabe & Mrs. Miller; Popeye; Come Back to the Five and Dime, Jimmy Dean, Jimmy Dean; Vincent & Theo; The Player; Short Cuts; Ready to Wear; Cookie's Fortune; Gosford Park; The Company*; and *A Prairie Home Companion.*

Woody Allen has also experimented with a wide variety of styles. Although his most successful films have focused on the familiar Allen persona (*Take the Money and Run*, *Bananas*, *Sleeper*; and *Annie Hall*), experimentation and artistic growth are evident in such works as *Interiors*, *Manhattan*, *Stardust Memories*, *Zelig*, *Hannah and Her Sisters*, *Crimes and Misdemeanors*, *Husbands and Wives*, *Manhattan Murder Mystery*, *Bullets Over Broadway*, *Mighty Aphrodite*, *Everyone Says I Love You*, *Deconstructing Harry*, *Celebrity*, *Sweet and Lowdown*, *Small Time Crooks*, *Melinda and Melinda*, *Match Point*, and *Scoop*.

Francis Ford Coppola, Mike Nichols, Alan Parker, Martin Scorsese, and Stanley Kubrick are also experimental directors who do films with entirely different kinds of subject matter and narrative structure (Figure 11.9). As the careers of such innovators progress, the films that they direct may become more formal or less formal, more serious or less serious. A filmmaker who directs a comedic farce after having directed a serious drama has not taken a stylistic step backward. Growth results from taking on a new kind of challenge, tackling an entirely new genre, or perhaps even bringing new styles to bear on a familiar genre. Or a director may simply break out of genre films altogether.

Innovative directors are often Hollywood outsiders (Figure 11.10) who maintain a high degree of independence, perhaps because they also write and

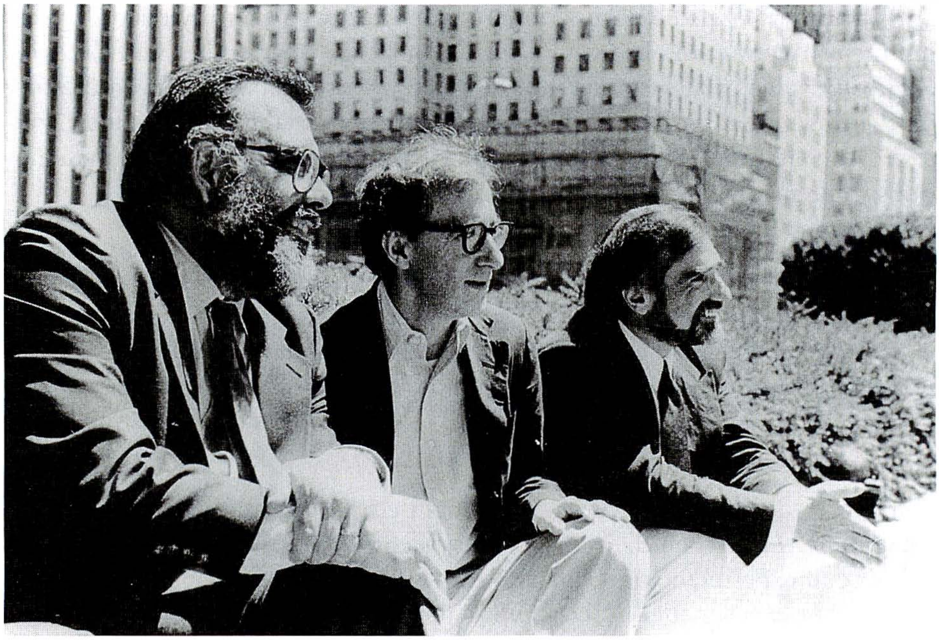


FIGURE 11.9 Coppola, Allen, and Scorsese—Three *Auteurs* for the Price of One
An excellent opportunity to study directing style is provided by *New York Stories*, a feature-length anthology of three comedies: *Life With Zoe* (directed by Francis Ford Coppola, left), *Oedipus Wrecks* (Woody Allen, center), and *Life Lessons* (Martin Scorsese, right).

produce. Or they are filmmakers who have achieved such financial success that they can afford a gamble or two and put their own money into their experiments. Such experiments, however, often are not well received by the public. Audiences were so enamored of the familiar Woody Allen persona that they were unable to accept the Bergmanesque *Interiors*, for which Allen served as director only and attempted to make a serious and profound art movie. Audiences did accept the serious art of *Manhattan*, mainly because it featured the familiar Allen persona and its humor did not take it too far from the popular *Annie Hall*. It is perhaps much easier for a director like Alan Parker to avoid the trap of audience expectations, because all of the films he has directed have been radically different kinds of stories with very different styles.

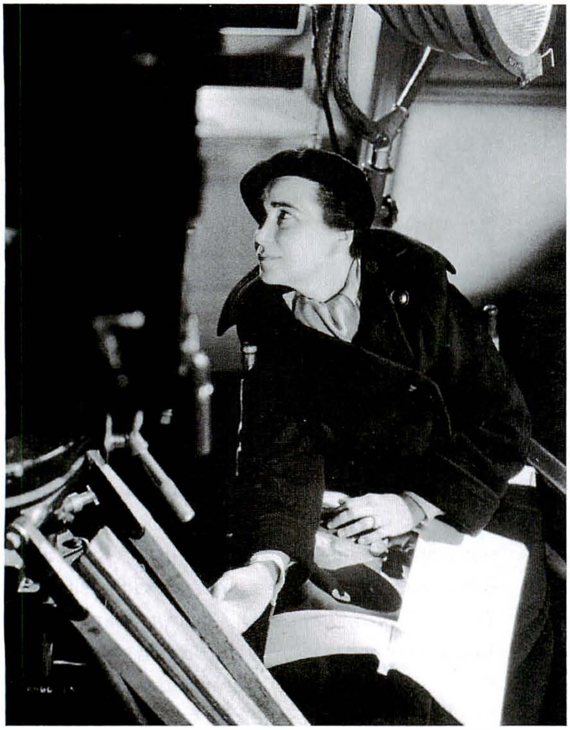
Directors must guard against typecasting as carefully as actors do—for practically the same reasons: (1) the expectations of moviegoers who feel betrayed if a director does not continue to deliver the same kind of popular fare that they associate with his or her name; and (2) conservative thinking by studios, production companies, and financial backers that are unwilling to gamble huge amounts of money on a director who wants to stretch his or her creative wings (Figure 11.11). Getting financing for a director to do the tried-and-true

FIGURE 11.10 Cultural Perceptiveness Among directors whose first language was not English, these three have shown extraordinary perception in making films about American and British cultures: Ang Lee (*Sense and Sensibility, The Ice Storm, Brokeback Mountain*), from Taiwan (top left); John Woo (*Broken Arrow, Face/Off, Windtalkers*), from China (top right); and Milos Forman (*Ragtime, Taking Off, One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest, Hair, The People vs. Larry Flynt, Man on the Moon, Amadeus*) from Czechoslovakia (bottom).

for which he or she has a proven track record is much easier than finding investors willing to risk money on a more speculative project. One wonders not only whether even Alfred Hitchcock could have succeeded with a film like *Interiors*, or with any other film that did not contain the suspense element that audiences grew to expect from him in film after film after film, but also whether Hitchcock would have been allowed to direct it.

SPECIAL EDITION: THE DIRECTOR'S CUT

A studio or releasing company may be persuaded to re-release a film in a special director's edition if the film does extremely well at the box office or if the director has considerable clout because of the reception accorded his or her entire body of work. Some directors are frustrated when their film is first released because the studio insisted that they shorten the work to about two hours to conform to standard theater showing schedules. The re-released film, or **director's cut,** includes footage that the director felt should never have been dropped.



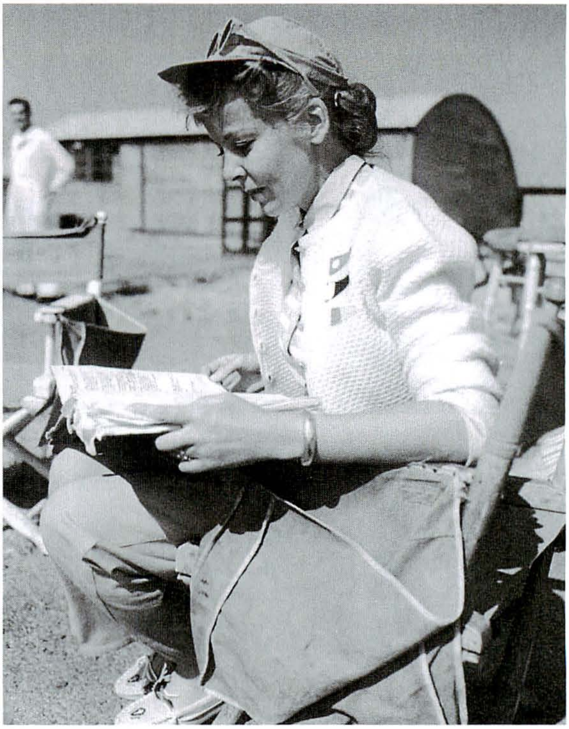
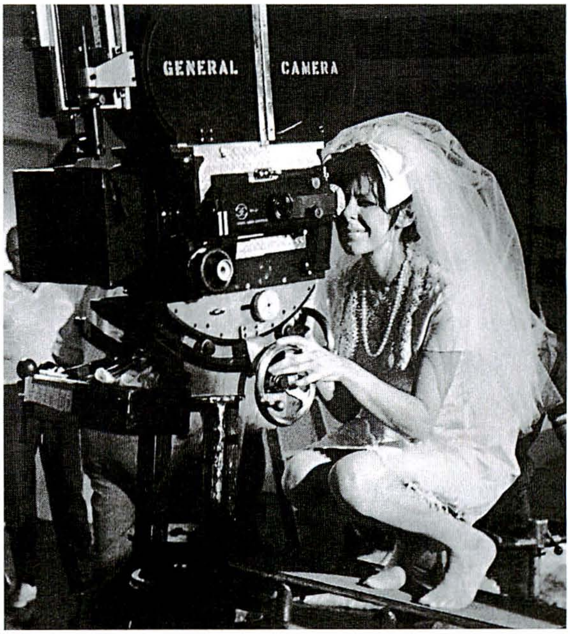


FIGURE 11.11 Stretching Her Creative Wings Of all filmmaking categories, feature directing, the almost-exclusive domain of men for many decades, was perhaps the hardest for women to enter. These three women, though, were American pioneers: Dorothy Arzner (top left), who directed her first film in 1927 and later became the first female member of the Directors Guild of America; Ida Lupino (top right), who moved beyond acting into directing and producing in the early 1950s with such hits as *The Hitch-Hiker* (1953); and Elaine May (bottom), who forged a path for women directors in comedy and satire with *The Heartbreak Kid* (1972). Now, worldwide, more and more films are being made by directors who happen to be women. Among the most active and accomplished are Allison Anders, Jane Anderson, Jane Campion, Niki Caro, Lisa Cholodenko, Martha Coolidge, Julie Dash, Claire Denis, Nora Ephron, Marleen Goris, Lee Grant, Mary Harron, Amy Heckerling, Nicole Holofcener, Agnieszka Holland, Miranda July, Diane Keaton, Diane Kurys, Alison Maclean, Penny Marshall, Nancy Meyers, Mira Nair, Claire Peploe, Nancy Savoca, Penelope Spheeris, Barbra Streisand, Betty Thomas, Liv Ullmann, Agnes Varda, Claudia Weill, and Lina Wertmuller.



Director's cuts of David Lean's *Lawrence of Arabia*, Francis Ford Coppola's *Apocalypse Now*, Sergio Leone's *Once Upon a Time in America*, Oliver Stone's *JFK*, James Cameron's *The Abyss*, and Paul Haggis's *Crash* (2005), for example, have been released. One of the most drastically changed films was Ridley Scott's *Blade Runner*; re-released with some additional footage (including a dream of a unicorn) and a new soundtrack but without the voice-over narration that accompanied the original version.

A most unusual "director's cut" was released in 1998 for *Touch of Evil*, a *film noir* (see Chapter 14 for a definition) first seen in 1959. The film's director (and one of its stars), Orson Welles, lost creative control of the work after shooting had ceased, so Universal Studios formulated its own final cut. But more than ten years after Welles's death, the accomplished film editor Walter Murch (*The Godfather I–III*, *The Conversation*, *Apocalypse Now*, *The English Patient*, *The Talented Mr. Ripley*, *Cold Mountain*, *Jarhead*) became aware of a fifty-eight-page memorandum that Welles had written to promote his own plans for re-editing the film—a scheme that had never come to fruition. Ultimately, and ironically, Universal itself financed Murch's new version of the film to fit Welles's blueprint. Among the most radical changes that Murch made involved excising the now-famous music Universal had commissioned Henry Mancini to write for the beginning title sequence. Like Welles, Murch believed that the celebrated, spectacularly sustained one-shot that opened the film should not be diluted with an overlay of either titles or musical score. Thus, he used, as Welles had instructed, only the ambient music and other sounds that would have occurred naturally in the scene. Seamlessly, the camera winds its complex way through extreme close-ups and multiple long shots down the night streets of a Mexican border town. (For more on this extraordinary story, consult Michael Ondaatje's book *The Conversations: Walter Murch and the Art of Editing Film* [Knopf, 2002]).

Steven Spielberg's rationale for his "Special Edition" of *Close Encounters of the Third Kind* and his description of the changes provide some interesting insights into the process:

> I . . . cut part of Richard Dreyfuss's crazy "gardening" in the backyard— . . . because I always felt the second act was the weakest area of my movie, and I tried very, very hard to fix the second act after the first sneak preview—but I simply didn't have the time, because my sneak was very late and the movie was already committed to hundreds of theaters across the nation. There was just no time—it was a work-in-progress that I literally had to abandon. And, despite the phenomenal success of the film, I had no satisfaction, as a filmmaker; that was not the movie I had set out to make. So when the film was a big hit, I went back to Columbia and said, "Now I want to make the movie the way I would have if I'd had those few extra months. I need another million dollars to shoot some added footage." Those added scenes were in the original script, by the way, not just scenes I concocted for the Special Edition, but they were scenes that became

> expendable when the budget became inordinate. The scenes . . . that were deleted were compromises that I believe thoroughly balance the second act, creating more of a rhythmic parallel between the François Truffaut story and the Richard Dreyfuss story. Almost every other scene is a juxtaposition between the domestic suburban story and the government cover-up story.[10]

Spielberg contradicts himself in two separate interviews on the addition of the scenes inside the mother ship. In 1982, he told Judith Crist that those scenes were something he himself was curious about so he had the set built. In a 1990 interview with Gene Siskel, he claimed that the studio would not have given him another million dollars without some kind of "real hook to be able to justify re-releasing the film." Whatever the reason for including those scenes, Spielberg never thought they worked and says he would cut them if he had a *Special* Special Edition.

Regardless of one's reaction to Steven Spielberg's indecision, we obviously must consider it in the context of the enormous financial burdens of modern filmmaking. It seems as if every person in Los Angeles is writing a screenplay, and every successful actor and screenwriter has ambitions to direct. Few are hired, however. In the title of his book about Hollywood, journalist Billy Frolick satirizes this phenomenon: *What I Really Want to Do Is DIRECT.* Frolick's subtitle is *Seven Film School Graduates Go to Hollywood*, and he emphasizes in his commentary the serendipity, the accidental nature, of not only directing, but of getting to direct a film. As part of his conclusion, he writes:

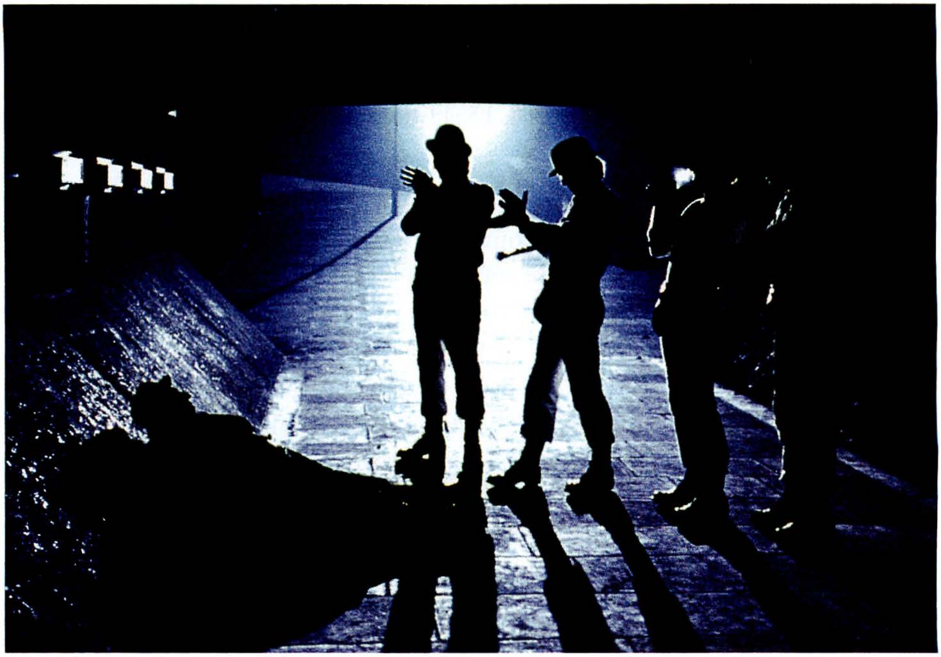
> In a 1994 *New Yorker* interview, [the influential film critic] Pauline Kael was asked what kind of person it takes to become a movie director.
>
> "Let's be brutal," Kael answered. "It takes a person who can raise the money to make a movie."
>
> Kael's response *was* brutal—brutally accurate. However, funding features no longer means raising millions of dollars. In the past four years *Clerks*, *Crumb*, *El Mariachi*, *The Brothers McMullen*, and many other acclaimed movies costing well under $100,000 have heralded a golden age of guerrilla narrative and documentary filmmaking. This generation's credo may well be, "Forget the car for graduation, Mom and Dad—finance my directorial debut."
>
> Sadly, though, as instant auteurs emerge regularly from the independent scene, opportunities at the studio level continue to shrink. [Such inspiring films as] *Taxi Driver*, *Badlands*, [and] *Scarecrow* . . . would have slim chances of being produced today.[11]

A PORTFOLIO OF FOUR DIRECTORS

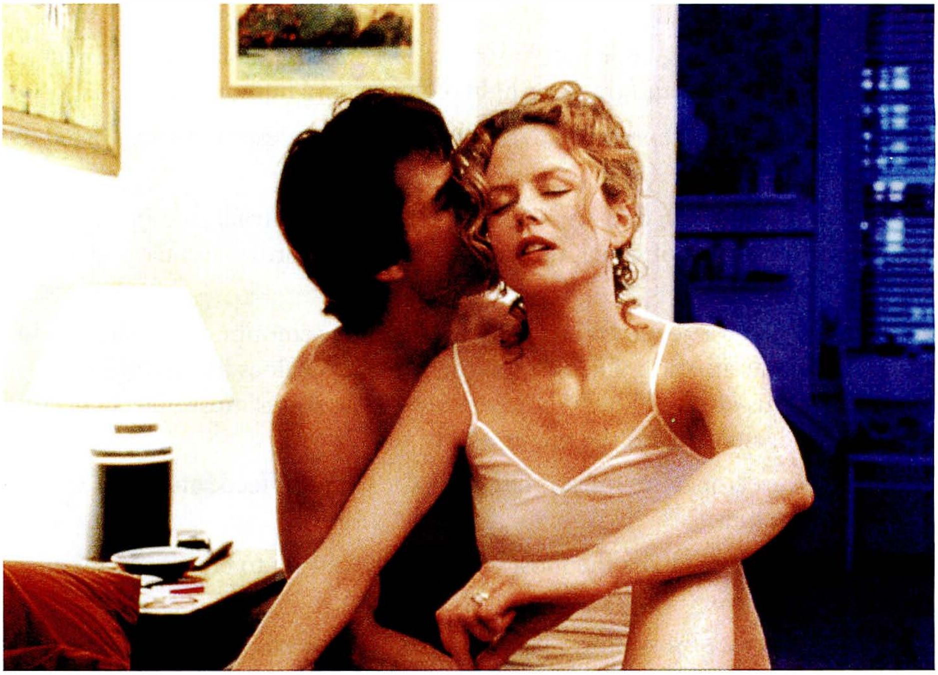
The pictures that follow represent films by four different directors: Stanley Kubrick, Steven Spielberg, Federico Fellini, and Alfred Hitchcock. Although it is very difficult (perhaps impossible) to capture a director's visual style in a limited number of still photographs like these (or even in frames from the films themselves), the pictures reproduced here contain strong stylistic elements. Study the following figures—Figure 11.12 (Kubrick), Figure 11.13 (Spielberg), Figure 11.14 (Fellini), and Figure 11.15 (Hitchcock)—and consider these questions about each director.

1. What does each set of pictures reveal about the director's visual style as reflected by such elements as composition and lighting, philosophy of camera or point of view, use of setting, methods of achieving three-dimensionality, and choice of actors?
2. The pictures represent four films by each director. Study the photos *from each film*, and see what you can deduce about the nature of the film.
   a. What do the pictures reveal about the general subject matter of the film or the kind of cinematic theme being treated?
   b. Characterize as clearly as possible the mood or emotional quality suggested by the still from each film.
   c. If you are familiar with other films by the same director, how do these thematic concerns and emotional qualities relate to those other films?
3. Considering all the stills from each director, indicate whether each director is
   a. intellectual and rational *or* emotional and sensual
   b. naturalistic and realistic *or* romantic, idealized, and surreal
   c. simple, obvious, and straightforward *or* complex, subtle, and indirect
   d. heavy, serious, and tragic *or* light, comical, and humorous
4. Which directors represent *extremes* of each of the descriptive sets listed in question 3?
5. The films of which director seem most formal and structured in composition? The films of which director seem most informal and natural in composition?
6. Which director seems to be trying to involve us emotionally in the action or dramatic situation portrayed in the stills? How does he attempt to achieve this effect? Which director's viewpoint seems most objective and detached, and why do the pictures have that effect?
7. Which director relies most on lighting for special effects, and what effects does he achieve?
8. Which director places the most emphasis on setting to create special effects or moods?
9. What general observations, based on your answers to all the preceding questions, can you make about each director's style?

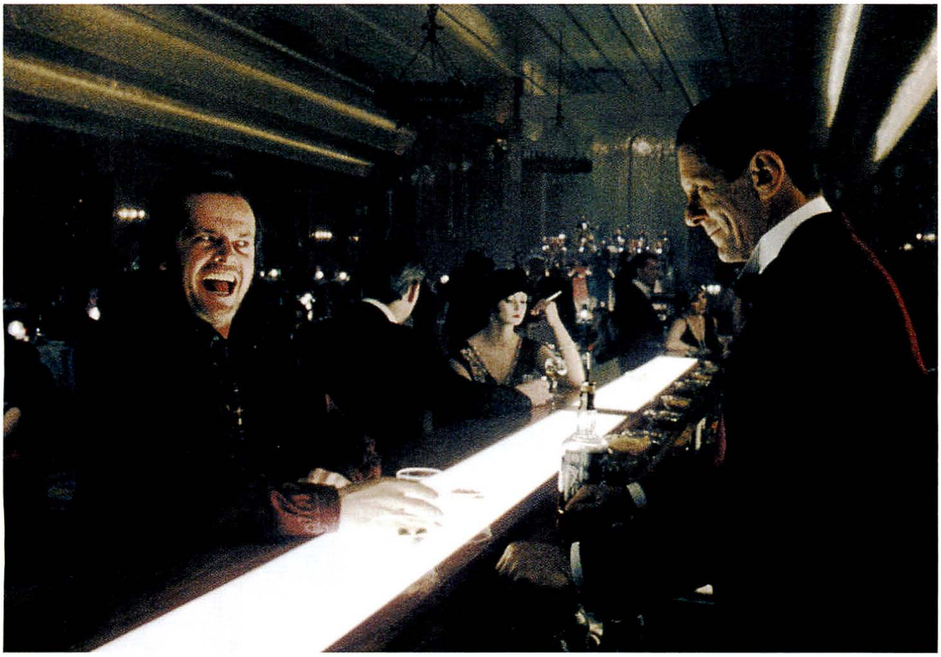
FIGURE 11.12 **Stanley Kubrick**



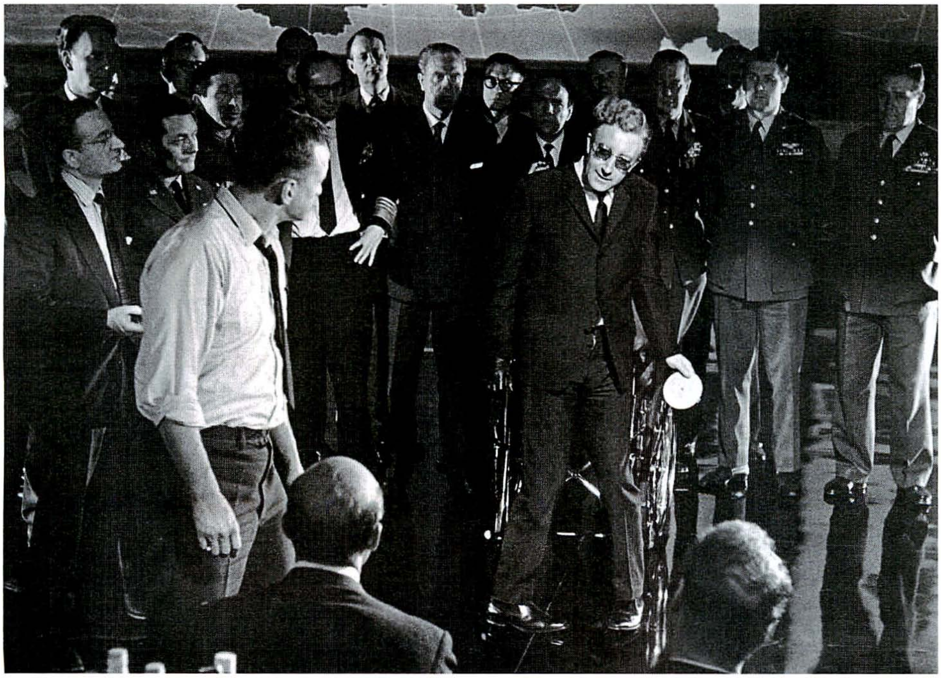
a. *A Clockwork Orange*



b. *Eyes Wide Shut*

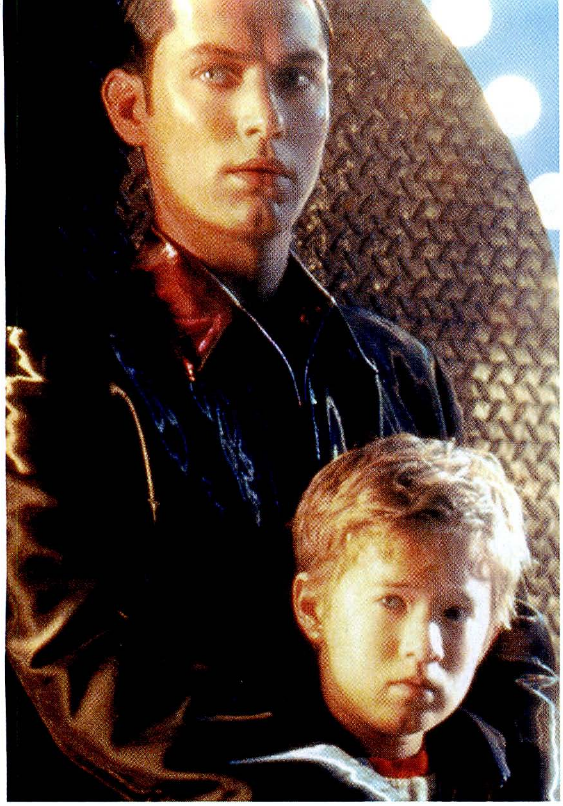


c. *The Shining*



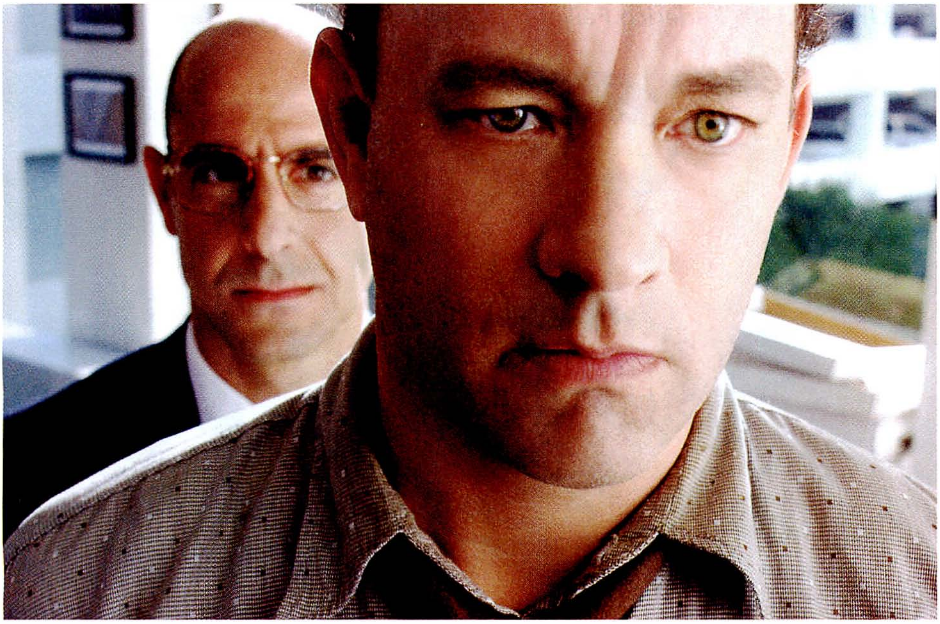
d. *Dr. Strangelove*

FIGURE 11.13 **Steven Spielberg**

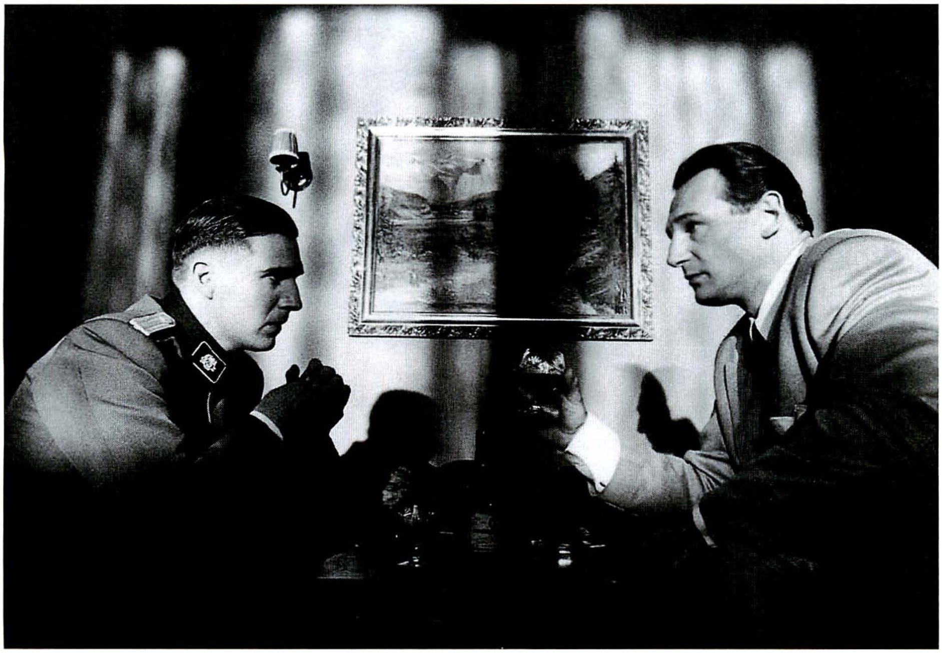


a. *A.I. Artificial Intelligence*

b. *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*

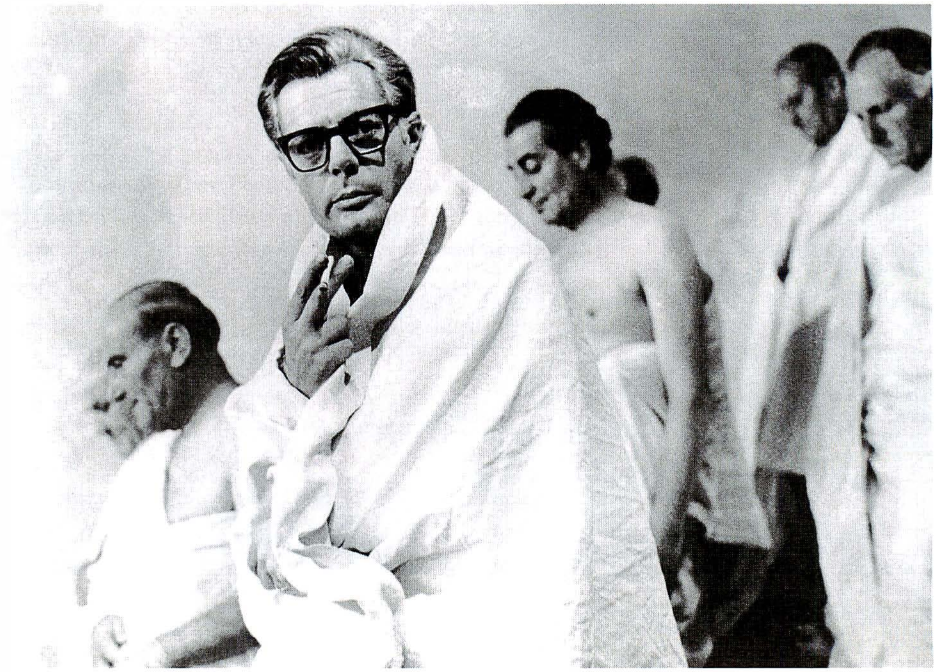


c. *The Terminal*

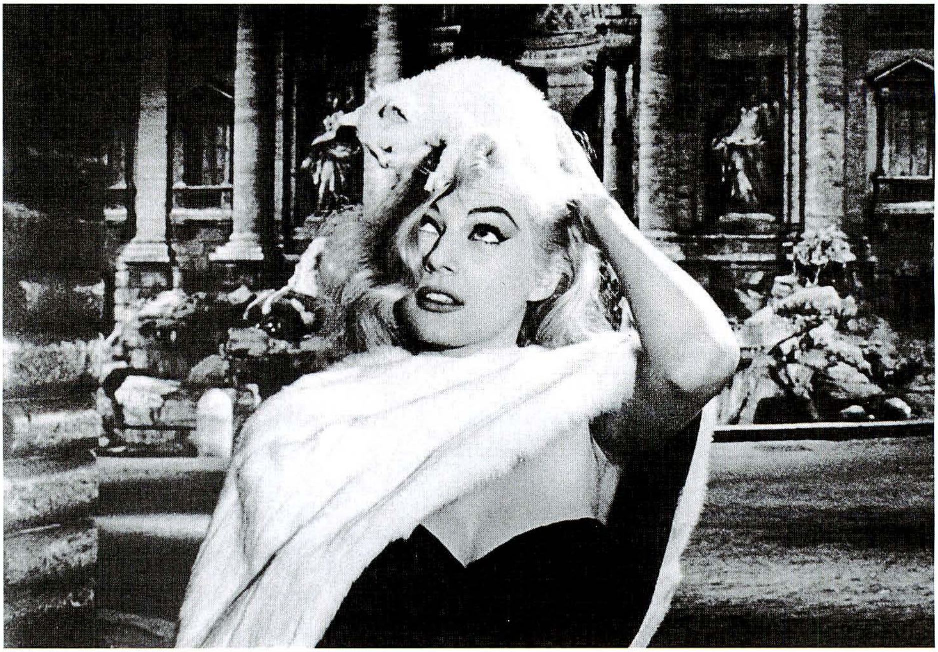


d. *Schindler's List*

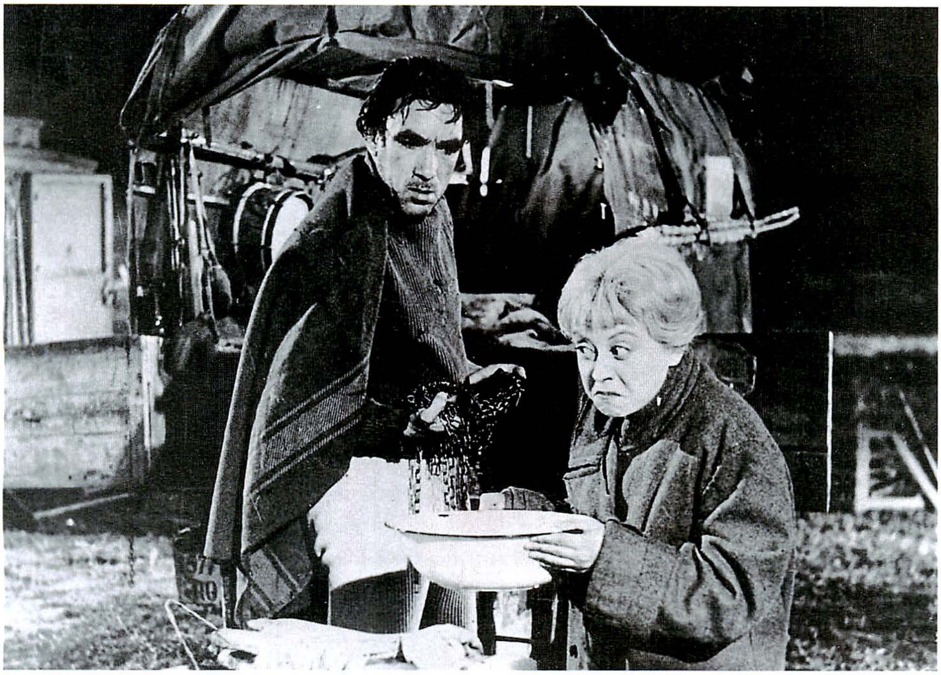
FIGURE 11.14 *Federico Fellini*



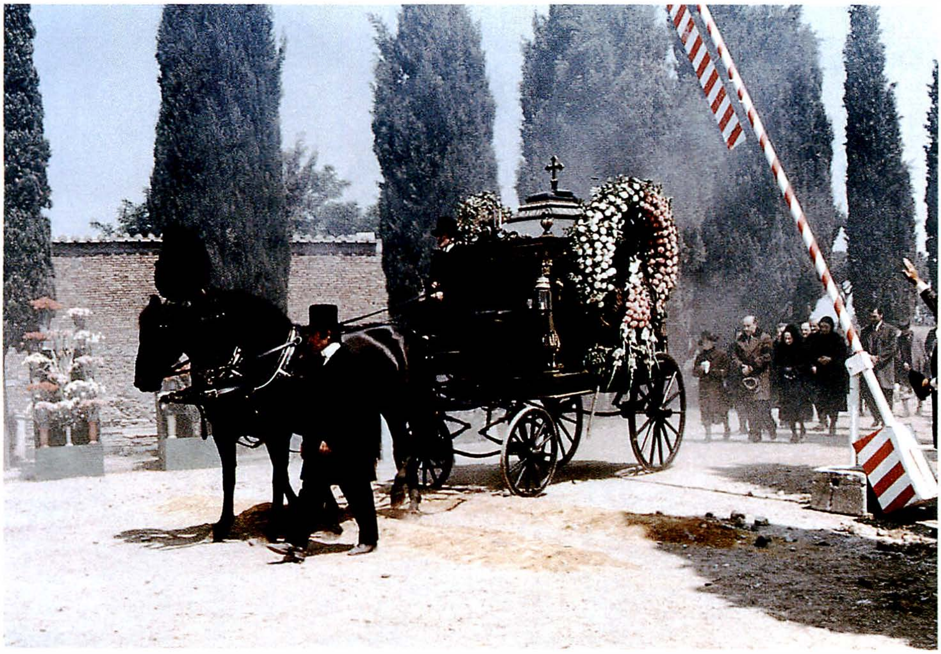
a. *8½*



b. *La Dolce Vita*

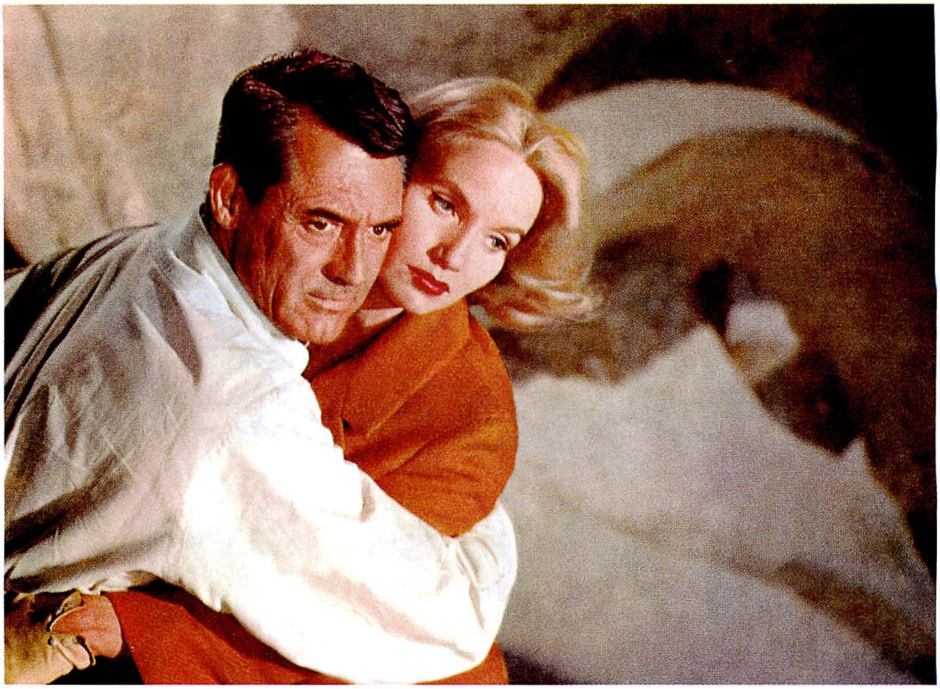


c. *La Strada*

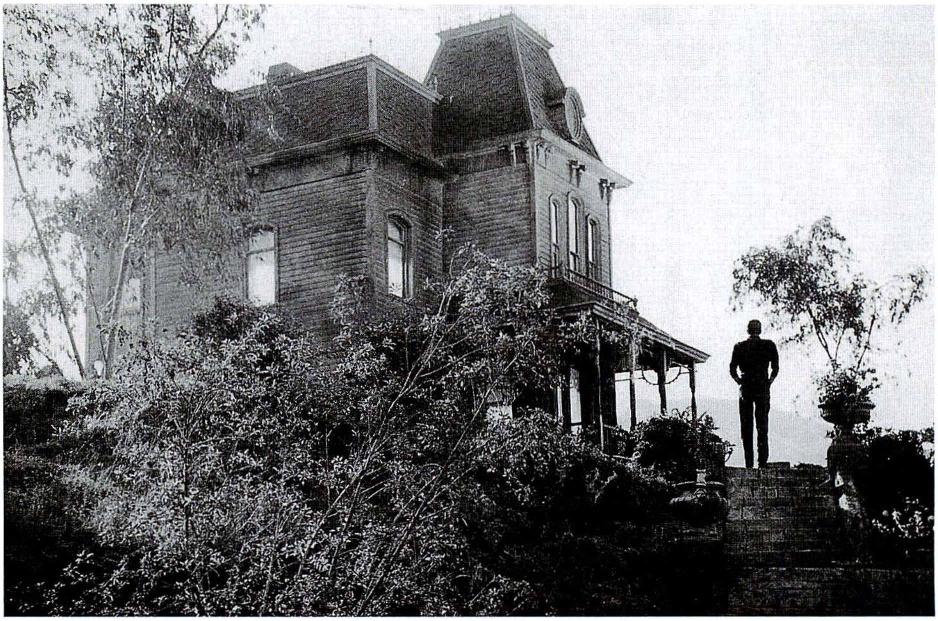


d. *Amarcord*

FIGURE 11.15 *Alfred Hitchcock*



a. *North by Northwest*



b. *Psycho*

c. *Rear Window*

d. *Vertigo*

ANALYZING A DIRECTOR'S STYLE

1. After viewing several films by a single director, what kinds of general observations can you make about his or her style? Which of the adjectives listed below describe his or her style?
   a. intellectual and rational *or* emotional and sensual
   b. calm and quiet *or* fast-paced and exciting
   c. polished and smooth *or* rough and crude-cut
   d. cool and objective *or* warm and subjective
   e. ordinary and trite *or* fresh and original
   f. tightly structured, direct, and concise *or* loosely structured and rambling
   g. truthful and realistic *or* romantic and idealized
   h. simple and straightforward *or* complex and indirect
   i. grave, serious, tragic, and heavy *or* light, comical, and humorous
   j. restrained and understated *or* exaggerated
   k. optimistic and hopeful *or* bitter and cynical
   l. logical and orderly *or* irrational and chaotic
2. What common thematic threads are reflected in the director's choice of subject matter? How is this thematic similarity revealed in the nature of the conflicts the director deals with?
3. In the films you have seen, what consistencies do you find in the director's treatment of space and time?
4. Is a consistent philosophical view of the nature of man and the universe found in all the films studied? If so, describe the director's worldview.
5. How is the director's style revealed by composition and lighting, philosophy of camera, camera movement, and methods of achieving three-dimensionality?
6. How does the director use special visual techniques (such as unusual camera angles, fast motion, slow motion, and distorting lenses) to interpret or comment on the action, and how do these techniques reflect overall style?
7. How is the director's style reflected in the different aspects of the editing in the films, such as the rhythm and pacing of editorial cuts, the nature of transitions, montages, and other creative juxtapositions? How does the style of editing relate to other elements of the director's visual style, such as the philosophy of camera or how the point of view is emphasized?
8. How consistent is the director in using and emphasizing setting? What kind of details of the natural setting does the director emphasize, and how do these details relate to his or her overall style? Is there any similarity in the director's approach to entirely different kinds of settings? How do the sets constructed especially for the film reflect the director's taste?
9. In what ways are the director's use of sound effects, dialogue, and music unique? How are these elements of style related to the image?
10. What consistencies can be seen in the director's choice of actors and in the performances they give under his or her direction? How does the choice of actors and acting styles fit in with the style in other areas?
11. What consistencies do you find in the director's narrative structure?

12. If the director seems to be constantly evolving instead of settling into a fixed style, what directions or tendencies do you see in that evolution? What stylistic elements can you find in all his or her films?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

Frank Capra's 1934 film *It Happened One Night*, often called the original screwball comedy, was the first movie to win all five of the major Academy Awards: Best Picture, Best Actress (Claudette Colbert), Best Actor (Clark Gable), Best Screenplay (Robert Riskin), and Best Director. Like Capra's later sleeper, *It's a Wonderful Life* (1946), this film was not particularly well received by the reviewers when it was released, but it obviously built its audience. And perhaps its popular appeal can be identified in part by examining this director's cinematic style.

Practice what you have learned about analyzing the elements of a director's style by watching Chapter 18 ("Hitchhiker's Guide") of the DVD version of *It Happened One Night*. Clark Gable plays an opportunistic journalist who needs a hot story; coincidentally, he meets Claudette Colbert, a runaway heiress who could provide him one. But, of course, they fall in love—after a sufficient number of scenes in which they drive each other half mad. In this famous "self-contained" sequence, may they simply be viewed as Man and Woman in eternal conflict? Can Capra's own attitudes about gender be found in this entertaining contest of ingenuity? What do Capra's choices involving such topics as camera placement, shot types, focal distances, lighting, and sound effects tell us about his style as a director?

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

On the Waterfront (Special Edition):

"A Conversation with Elia Kazan" stresses the importance of this acclaimed director's collaboration with actor Marlon Brando, writer Budd Schulberg, and producer Sam Spiegel. Kazan relates how the latter two honed the screenplay together and served as what he terms "Persistence" (Schulberg) and "Insistence" (Spiegel) on the project.

"The Making of *The Portrait of a Lady*" inexplicably never appeared on the DVD of director Jane Campion's adaptation of the Henry James novel. But the fifty-five-minute documentary can be found as a feature on one whole side of the disc *Short Cinema Journal I: 2 (Dreams)* (also reissued as simply *Short 2*). There, it is described as "an intimate study of an auteur at the height of her powers. . . . Directed by Peter Long and Kate Ellis, this glimpse into the creative process prevails as a work of art in its own right." Along with Campion at work, we see Nicole Kidman, John Malkovich, Barbara Hershey, and Richard Grant, and the production scenes that involve the use of the veteran star Shelley Winters are riveting and heartrending.

Unforgiven (Two-Disc Special Edition):

Numerous substantial filmmaking features enrich this set. On disc two, find the lengthy career profile *Eastwood on Eastwood*, created by *Time* reviewer and film historian/producer Richard Schickel.

Collateral:

On this DVD, director-producer Michael Mann has included a fascinating section entitled "Mann Rehearsing [Tom] Cruise and [Jamie] Foxx." In it, the viewer is able to experience the intense initial read-through of the script by these actors, while in many instances being permitted simultaneously to examine, split-screen fashion, the finished scene that developed from it. Another part of the disc, "Special Delivery," demonstrates how "Tom Cruise Gets into Character."

Matchstick Men:

The extras available on the DVD version of this generally underappreciated movie starring Nicolas Cage create a marvelous behind-the-scenes adventure for film lovers. In three detailed documentaries ("Preproduction" [including casting] [:25]; "Production" [:28]; and "Postproduction" [:18]), team members from every level appear in and comment especially about the "crowded" but controlled chaos that surrounds the director-producer, Ridley Scott (*Alien*, *Blade Runner*; *Gladiator* [2000]), who created the caper comedy while planning a more expansive adventure film. The movie's editor, Dody Dorn, admiringly insists upon Scott's professional openness and wonderfully collaborative spirit.

Diva:

Director Jean-Jacques Beineix talks here about his colorful, elegant, and quirky film.

Pulp Fiction (Collector's Edition) and *Pollock (Special Edition):*

The director of each of these films (Quentin Tarantino and Ed Harris, respectively) appears in a substantial interview from PBS's "The Charlie Rose Show."

Memento:

Elvis Mitchell, a reviewer for the *New York Times* and a host on IFC (Independent Film Channel), discusses this enigmatic film with its director, Christopher Nolan.

The Limey:

Within the "Filmmakers' Commentary" on the disc, director Steven Soderbergh and screenwriter Lem Dobbs conduct a sometimes rather combative dialogue about creative decisions about the film. At one point (in Chapter 11) Dobbs identifies "the root of our main argument" as originating in criticism of "the lack of character detail in human relationships." "When I read reviews that say [the film consists of] style over substance," he charges, "I blame Steven Soderbergh!" The director himself suggests that he wanted a cleaner narrative line, without the possible distractions of many of the details and subplots in versions of Dobbs's shooting script.

The Widow of St. Pierre:
This DVD contains an interview with director Patrice Leconte.

The Others (Dimension Collector's Series):
A valuable feature portrait of Alejandro Amenábar on disc two of this set is especially telling in its scenes that present the director working with the film's key child actors.

Titus (Special Edition):
Disc two offers not only a forty-nine-minute production documentary, but also a Q&A session with director Julie Taymor.

Eat Drink Man Woman and *Brokeback Mountain:*
This first DVD captures an intriguing early interview with director Ang Lee; the second, called "Directing from the Heart: Ang Lee," focuses on his later work.

Amélie:
The two-disc set features two separate Q&A segments with the film's co-writer and director as well as "An Intimate Chat with Director Jean-Pierre Jeunet."

Lumiere & Company: Forty Intriguing Films from the World's Leading Directors:
This DVD takes full advantage of what is called "high concept" in Hollywood. Forty world-class film directors—including Spike Lee, Wim Wenders, Zhang Yimou, John Boorman, Peter Greenaway, Liv Ullmann, Lasse Hallstrom, James Ivory, Costa Gavras, and Arthur Penn—were invited to use a restored 100-year-old silent camera to make a single one-minute film each. A century before, the famous Lumière Brothers had utilized this same instrument to create their first motion pictures. The running time of the disc is eighty-eight minutes, so each director also gets approximately one minute of interview time about his or her original movie, in many cases while the shooting is taking place. A highlight of the program is David Lynch's mysterious, intriguing distillation of what may seem to be his whole body of film work, including his later cinematic puzzle *Mulholland Dr.*

Landmarks of Early Film:
Films that the Lumière Brothers made between 1895 and 1897 are also featured on this compilation of early motion pictues. In addition, the disc includes such famous shorts as Thomas Edison's momentary documentary "The Kiss," Méliès's brief fantasy "A Trip to the Moon" (1902), and Edwin Porter's ten-minute, hand-tinted western "The Great Train Robbery" (1903).

Unknown Chaplin: The Master at Work:

In three separate, hour-long programs ("My Happiest Years," "The Great Director," and "Hidden Treasures"), celebrated writer and producer Kevin Brownlow presents a wealth of new images by and information about one of America's greatest directors, the Brit Charles Chaplin. The second part is especially noteworthy for including, via newly unearthed home movie footage, the only extant film of Chaplin directing while in his Little Tramp costume, during the production of *City Lights*. A special feature on this DVD (released in 2005) finds Brownlow meticulously recounting the steps of his amazing archival discoveries (with the late historian David Gill). The actor James Mason laconically narrates the 1983 documentary.

George Stevens: A Filmmaker's Journey:

Director George Stevens's wide interests and multiple talents were suggested in the variety within the titles of some of his most famous works: *Alice Adams* (a domestic romance), *Swing Time* (an Astaire and Rogers musical), *Gunga Din* (an action-adventure tale), *Shane* (a western), *Giant* (a star-driven epic). Through interviews with scores of famous actors who worked with the director, this fine documentary, "produced, written, directed, and narrated by" his son, George Stevens, Jr., honors both the film professional and the man.

FILMS FOR STUDY

Woody Allen

Sleeper (1973)
Annie Hall (1977)
Manhattan (1979)
Stardust Memories (1980)
Zelig (1983)
The Purple Rose of Cairo (1985)
Hannah and Her Sisters (1986)
Crimes and Misdemeanors (1989)
Everyone Says I Love You (1996)
Deconstructing Harry (1997)
Celebrity (1998)
Sweet and Lowdown (1999)
Small Time Crooks (2000)
The Curse of the Jade Scorpion (2001)
Melinda and Melinda (2005)
Match Point (2005)
Scoop (2006)

Robert Altman

*M*A*S*H* (1970)
Nashville (1975)
3 Women (1977)
Popeye (1980)
Vincent & Theo (1990)
The Player (1992)
Short Cuts (1993)
Kansas City (1996)
Cookie's Fortune (1999)
Gosford Park (2001)
The Company (2003)
A Prairie Home Companion (2006)

Ingmar Bergman

Smiles of a Summer Night (1955)
Wild Strawberries (1957)
The Seventh Seal (1957)
Through a Glass Darkly (1961)
Persona (1966)
Cries and Whispers (1972)
The Magic Flute (1974)
Autumn Sonata (1978)
Fanny and Alexander (1983)
Saraband (2005)

Jane Campion

Sweetie (1989)
An Angel at My Table (1990)
The Piano (1993)
The Portrait of a Lady (1996)
Holy Smoke (1999)
In the Cut (2003)

Frank Capra

It Happened One Night (1934)
Mr. Deeds Goes to Town (1936)
Lost Horizon (1937)
Mr. Smith Goes to Washington (1939)
Meet John Doe (1941)
It's a Wonderful Life (1946)

Joel and Ethan Coen

Blood Simple (1984)
Raising Arizona (1987)
Miller's Crossing (1990)
Barton Fink (1991)
The Hudsucker Proxy (1994)

Fargo (1996)
The Big Lebowski (1998)
O Brother, Where Art Thou? (2000)
The Man Who Wasn't There (2001)
Intolerable Cruelty (2003)
The Ladykillers (2004)

Francis Ford Coppola

The Rain People (1969)
The Godfather (1972)
The Conversation (1974)
The Godfather Part II (1974)
Apocalypse Now (1979)
Rumble Fish (1983)
Tucker (1988)
The Godfather Part III (1990)
Bram Stoker's Dracula (1992)
The Rainmaker (1997)

Federico Fellini

I Vitelloni (1953)
La Strada (1954)
La Dolce Vita (1960)
8½ (1963)
Juliet of the Spirits (1965)
Fellini Satyricon (1970)
Amacord (1974)

George Roy Hill

Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid (1969)
Slaughterhouse-Five (1972)
The Sting (1973)
The World According to Garp (1982)

Alfred Hitchcock

Rear Window (1954)
The Trouble With Harry (1955)
Vertigo (1958)
North by Northwest (1959)
Psycho (1960)
The Birds (1963)
Marnie (1964)
Torn Curtain (1966)
Topaz (1969)
Frenzy (1972)
Family Plot (1976)

Agnieszka Holland

Europa Europa (1991)
Olivier Olivier (1992)
The Secret Garden (1993)
Total Eclipse (1995)
Washington Square (1997)
Copying Beethoven (2006)

Stanley Kubrick

Paths of Glory (1957)
Lolita (1962)
Dr. Strangelove (1964)
2001: A Space Odyssey (1968)
A Clockwork Orange (1971)
Barry Lyndon (1975)
The Shining (1980)
Full Metal Jacket (1987)
Eyes Wide Shut (1999)

Akira Kurosawa

Rashomon (1950)
The Seven Samurai (1954)
Throne of Blood (1957)
Yojimbo (1961)
Kagemusha (1980)
Ran (1985)
Akira Kurosawa's Dreams (1990)

Spike Lee

She's Gotta Have It (1986)
Do the Right Thing (1989)
Mo' Better Blues (1990)
Malcolm X (1992)
Clockers (1995)
Get on the Bus (1996)
He Got Game (1998)
Summer of Sam (1999)
Bamboozled (2000)
25th Hour (2002)
She Hate Me (2004)
Inside Man (2006)

Louis Malle

Murmur of the Heart (1971)
Lacombe, Lucien (1974)
Atlantic City (1980)
My Dinner With Andre (1981)
Au Revoir, Les Enfants (1987)
Vanya on 42nd Street (1994)

Mira Nair

Salaam Bombay! (1988)
Mississippi Masala (1991)
The Perez Family (1995)
Kama Sutra (1996)
Monsoon Wedding (2001)
Vanity Fair (2003)
The Namesake (2006)

John Sayles

Return of the Secaucus Seven (1980)
Lianna (1983)
The Brother From Another Planet (1984)
Matewan (1987)
Eight Men Out (1988)
The Secret of Roan Inish (1994)
Lone Star (1996)
Men With Guns (1998)
Limbo (1999)
Sunshine State (2002)
Casa de los Babys (2003)
Silver City (2004)

Martin Scorsese

Mean Streets (1973)
Taxi Driver (1976)
Raging Bull (1980)
The King of Comedy (1983)
The Last Temptation of Christ (1988)
GoodFellas (1990)
The Age of Innocence (1993)
Casino (1995)
Kundun (1997)
Gangs of New York (2002)
The Aviator (2004)
The Departed (2006)

Steven Spielberg

The Sugarland Express (1974)
Jaws (1975)
Close Encounters of the Third Kind (1977)
Raiders of the Lost Ark (1981)
E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial (1982)
The Color Purple (1985)
Jurassic Park (1993)
Schindler's List (1993)
Amistad (1997)
Saving Private Ryan (1998)
A.I. Artificial Intelligence (2001)
Minority Report (2002)
Catch Me If You Can (2002)
The Terminal (2004)
War of the Worlds (2005)
Munich (2005)

Zhang Yimou

Red Sorghum (1987)
Ju Dou (1989)
Raise the Red Lantern (1991)
The Story of Qiu Ju (1992)
To Live (1994)
Shanghai Triad (1995)
Hero (2002)
House of Flying Daggers (2004)
Curse of the Golden Flower (2006)

12

ANALYSIS *of the* WHOLE FILM

[O]f all the duties required of the professional critic, perhaps the least important—certainly the least enduring—is the delivery of a verdict. I am always sorry to hear that readers were personally offended, even scandalized, that my opinion of a film diverged from theirs. I wish I could convince them that I am merely stating an argument, as everyone does over dinner, or in a crowded bar, after going to see a film, and that their freedom to disagree is part of the fun. The primary task of the critic . . . is the recreation of texture—not telling moviegoers what they should see, which is entirely their prerogative, but filing a sensory report on the kind of experience into which they will be wading, or plunging, should they decide to risk a ticket.

—ANTHONY LANE, FILM CRITIC, *THE NEW YORKER*

In the previous chapters, we broke the film down into its separate parts. Now we attempt to put the separate parts together, to relate them to one another, and to consider their contribution to the film as a whole.

THE BASIC APPROACH: WATCHING, ANALYZING, AND EVALUATING THE FILM

When we enter the theater to watch the film, we need to keep certain things in mind. We cannot freeze the film for analysis—only in its continuous flowing form is it truly a motion picture. Therefore, we must concentrate most of our attention on responding sensitively to what is happening on the screen—the simultaneous interplay of image, sound, and motion. Yet at the same time, in the back of our minds, we must be storing up impressions of another sort, asking ourselves How? Why? and How effective is it? about everything we see and hear. We must make an effort to become immersed in the reality of the film, while at the same time maintaining some degree of objectivity and critical detachment.

If we can see the film twice, our analysis will be a much easier task. The complexity of the medium makes it difficult to consider all the elements of a film in a single viewing; too many things happen on too many levels to allow for a complete analysis. Therefore, we should try to see the film twice whenever possible. In the first viewing, we can concern ourselves primarily with plot elements, the total emotional effect, and the central idea or theme. Ideally, after the first viewing, we will have some time to reflect on and clarify the film's purpose and theme. Then, in the second viewing, because we are no longer caught up in the suspense of what happens, we can focus our full attention on the hows and whys of the filmmaker's art. The more practice we have in the double-viewing technique, the easier it will become for us to combine the functions of both viewings into one.

It is sometimes possible in film classes to view the entire film and then screen selected segments that illustrate the function and interrelationship of the different elements to the film as a whole. Then the film can be viewed again in its entirety so that the parts can be seen in the continuous stream of the whole. Use of a VCR or laserdisc or DVD player makes the process even simpler. This practice can be very helpful in developing the habits and skills needed for film analysis. Double-viewing not only helps with our analysis but, in the case of exceptional films, also increases our appreciation. For example, critic Dwight Macdonald wrote, in regard to Fellini's *8½*, "The second time I saw *8½*, two weeks after the first, I took more notes than I had the first time, so many beauties and subtleties and puzzles I had overlooked."[1]

Regardless of which option we have, single-viewing, double-viewing, or breaking the film into segments, we can use basically the same procedure in approaching the film for analysis.

Theme

The first step in analysis should be to get a fairly clear idea of the film's **theme**—its unifying central concern. Is the element that unifies the work its plot, a single unique character, the creation of an emotional mood or effect, or the creation of a certain style or texture? Or is the film designed to convey an idea or make a statement? Once we have identified the central concern, we can move on to a clearer and more specific statement of theme. What we really want to ask is this: *What is the director's purpose or primary aim in making the film? What is the true subject of the film; and what kind of statement, if any, does the film make about that subject?* (Figure 12.1.)

The Relationship of the Parts to the Whole

Once we have tentatively identified the film's theme and have stated the theme as concisely and precisely as possible, we should move on to see how well our decisions stand up under a complete analysis of all film elements. After we have tried to answer all the applicable and relevant questions relating to each separate element, we are prepared to relate each element to the whole. The basic question is this: *How do all the separate elements of the film relate to and contribute to the theme, central purpose, or total effect?* Answering this question involves at least some consideration of all the elements in the film, although the contribution of some is much greater than the contribution of others. Every element should be considered at this point: story, dramatic structure, symbolism, characterization, conflict, setting, title, irony, cinematography, editing, film type and size, sound effects, dialogue, the musical score, the acting, and the film's overall style.

If we can see clear and logical relationships between each element and the theme or purpose, then we may assume that our decision about the film's theme is valid. If we cannot see these clear relationships, we may need to reassess our initial understanding of the theme and modify it to fit the patterns and interrelationships we see among the individual film elements.

Once our analysis at this level is complete and we have satisfied ourselves that we understand the film as a unified work of art, ordered and structured around a central purpose of some kind, we are almost ready to move on to an evaluation process.

The Film's Level of Ambition

Before beginning an objective evaluation, we must consider the film's level of ambition. It is grossly unfair to judge a film that seeks only to entertain as though it were intended as the ultimate in serious cinematic art. Thus we must adjust our expectations to what the film aims to do. Renata Adler describes the need for this adjustment:

FIGURE 12.1 Interpreting Themes The task of articulating a central theme is relatively easy with some films. With others, such as Robert Altman's complex "western," *McCabe & Mrs. Miller* (starring Julie Christie and Warren Beatty, top), and Martin Scorsese's expansive *Gangs of New York* (starring Daniel Day-Lewis and Leonardo DiCaprio, bottom), accurately identifying the filmmakers' central concerns may be more challenging.

> If a movie stars Doris Day, or if it is directed by John Wayne, the reviewer tries to put himself in a Day or Wayne sympathetic frame of mind and argue, on other grounds, that the film is better Day or lesser Wayne, but once the ingredients are fairly named, the reader knows and is freed to his taste. The same with Luis Buñuel—and comparable situations with great directors do arise—the critical inventory part gets complicated.
>
> I think it is absolutely essential in a review to establish the level of ambition that a film is at, to match it, if possible with the level of your own, and then to adjust your tone of voice. There is no point in admiring an Elvis Presley film in the same tone as a George C. Scott—or in treating simple lapses of competence with the same indignation one has for what seem to be failures of taste and integrity.[2]

This is not to say that we should give up our own standards or ground rules. But we should try to judge the film in terms of what the director appears to be trying to do and the level at which he or she was trying to communicate, before we apply our own yardsticks of evaluation. Therefore, before we make any kind of objective evaluation, we must consider this question: *What is the film's level of ambition?* (See Figure 12.2.)

Objective Evaluation of the Film

Once we have clearly established the theme and the level of ambition and have seen how the elements function together to contribute to the theme, we are ready to begin our objective evaluation. The overall question to consider is simply this: *Given the film's level of ambition, how well does the film succeed in what it tries to do?* After considering this question, we must review our earlier assessment of the effectiveness of all individual film elements to determine the effect each element has on our answer. Once we have done this, we can proceed to the next question: *Why does the film succeed or fail?*

In attempting to answer this question, we should be as specific as possible, determining not only Why? but Where? We should look into individual elements for strengths and weaknesses, deciding which parts or elements contribute the most to the film's success or failure: *Which elements or parts make the strongest contribution to the theme and why? Which elements or parts fail to function effectively? Why do they fail?* We must be careful to weigh each strength and weakness in terms of its overall effect on the film, avoiding petty nitpicking such as concentrating on slight technical flaws.

Because we are making an objective evaluation, we should be prepared to defend each decision with a logical argument based on or supportable by our analysis as a whole. We must explain *why* something works well or *why* a given scene fails to achieve its potential. Every part of this evaluation should be as logical and rational as possible, and we should be able to defend each judgment with a just argument based on a viable framework of critical standards.

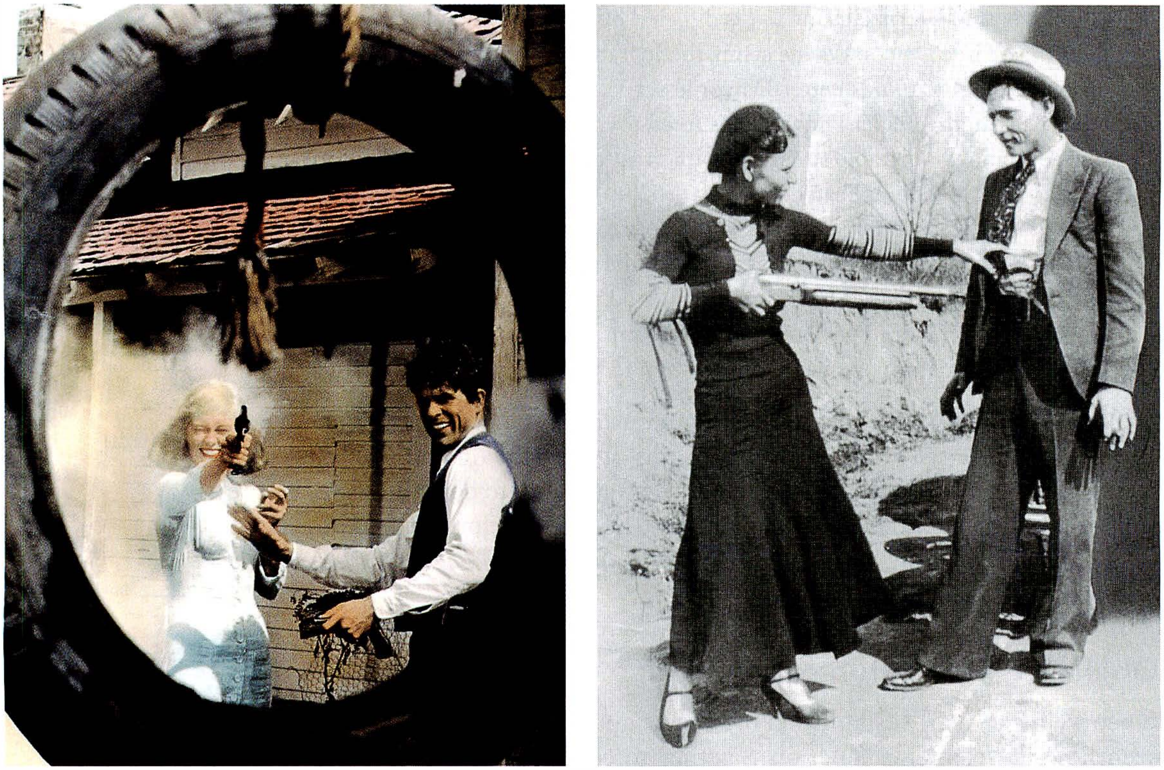


FIGURE 12.2 From Real to Reel Movie watchers must attempt to gauge the level of a film's ambitions. For example, one should be aware that the makers of *Bonnie and Clyde* were at least as interested in depicting the legend of the criminals as in presenting them with full historical accuracy. Thus, they deliberately glamorized the images of Bonnie Parker and Clyde Barrow (Faye Dunaway and Warren Beatty, left). The real Bonnie and Clyde appear here in a vintage photograph at the right.

Subjective Evaluation of the Film

Up to this point, we have been using a systematic and reasonable critical method. But we have done so with the full awareness that we cannot reduce art to reason or make it as simple as 2 + 2 = 4. Our reaction to films is much more complex than this, for we are human beings, not computers, and we know that much of art is intuitive, emotional, and personal. Thus, our reaction to it will include strong feelings, prejudices, and biases. It will be colored by our life experiences, by our moral and social conditioning, by our degree of sophistication, by our age, by the time and place in which we live, and by every unique aspect of our personality.

Having completed our objective analysis and evaluation, we are ready to allow ourselves the luxury of leaving the rationally ordered framework to describe the nature and intensity of our own response to the film: *What is our personal reaction to the film? What are our personal reasons for liking or disliking it?*

OTHER APPROACHES TO ANALYSIS, EVALUATION, AND DISCUSSION

Once we have completed our personal and subjective evaluation, we may want to approach the film from several rather specialized angles or critical perspectives. These exercises in criticism might be especially meaningful as guidelines for classroom discussion. Each approach has its own focus, bias, perspective, and intentions, and each looks for something a little different in the film.

The Film as Technical Achievement

If we have sufficient understanding of the film medium and the techniques of filmmaking, we may want to focus on the technical devices that the filmmaker uses and the importance of these techniques to the film's overall impact. In evaluating the film in this manner, we are more concerned with *how* the director communicates than with *what* he or she communicates or *why*. By these standards, the most nearly perfect film is the one that best utilizes the potential of the medium. Films such as *Citizen Kane* and *2001: A Space Odyssey* both rate very high in this respect. Here are some questions that we should consider with this kind of focus in mind:

- How well does the film utilize the full potential of the medium?
- What inventive techniques are employed, and how impressive are the effects they create?
- Judged as a whole, is the film technically superior or inferior?
- Technically speaking, what are the film's strongest points and what are its weakest?

The Film as Showcase for the Actor: The Personality Cult

If our primary interest is in actors, acting performances, and screen personalities, we may want to focus on the performances of the major actors in the film, especially the established stars or film personalities. Taking this approach, we assume that the leading actor has the most important effect on the quality of the film, that he or she carries the film because of his or her acting skill or personality. Judged through this framework, the best film is one in which the basic personality, acting style, or personal idiosyncrasies of the leading actor in the cast are best projected. In this approach, then, we look on the film as a showcase for the actor's talent and think of it as a Meryl Streep, Jack Nicholson, Humphrey Bogart, Katharine Hepburn, Tom Hanks, Reese Witherspoon, or

Tom Cruise movie. To give this approach validity, we must be familiar with a number of other films starring the same actor so that we can evaluate the performance in comparison with the roles played by the actor in the past. To evaluate a film through this approach, we might consider these questions:

- How well are the actor's special personality traits or acting skills suited to his or her character and to the action of the film?
- Does this role seem tailored to fit the actor's personality and skills, or does the actor bend his or her personality to fit the role?
- How powerful is the actor's performance in this film compared with his or her performance in other starring roles?
- What similarities or significant differences do you see in the character the actor plays in this film and the characters he or she played in other films?
- Compared with past performances, how difficult and demanding is this particular role for the actor?

The Film as Product of a Single Creative Mind: The *Auteur* Approach

In this approach we focus on the style, technique, and philosophy of the film's dominant creative personality—the director, the *auteur*, the complete filmmaker whose genius, style, and creative personality are reflected in every aspect of the film. Because all truly great directors impose their personalities on every aspect of their films, the film in this approach is viewed not as an objective work of art but as a reflection of the artistic vision or style of the person who made it. A good movie, according to *auteur* theory, is one whose every element bears the director's trademark—the story, the casting, the cinematography, the lighting, the music, the sound effects, the editing, and so on (Figure 12.3). And the film itself must be judged not alone but as part of the director's whole canon. In using this approach to evaluate a film, we should consider these questions:

- Judging from this film and other films by the same director, how would you describe the directorial style?
- How does each element of this film reflect the director's artistic vision, style, and overall philosophy of film or even his or her philosophy of life itself?
- What similarities does this film have to other films by the same director? How is it significantly different?
- Where in the film do we get the strongest impressions of the director's personality, of his or her unique creativity shaping the material?
- What is the special quality of this film as compared with other works in the director's canon? As compared with those other films, how well does

FIGURE 12.3 The *Auteur* Approach For many admiring students of film, Ingmar Bergman's *Persona* (starring Bibi Andersson and Liv Ullmann) is a disturbing but celebratory demonstration of a strong director's artistry and power.

this film reflect the philosophy, personality, and artistic vision of the person who made it?

- Does this film suggest growth in some new direction away from the other films? If so, describe the new direction.

The Film as Moral, Philosophical, or Social Statement

In this approach, often called the *humanistic approach*, we focus attention on the statement the film makes, because the best films are built around a statement that teaches us something. In this kind of evaluation, we must determine whether the acting and the characters have significance or meaning beyond the context of the film itself—moral, philosophical, or social significance that helps us gain a clearer understanding of some aspect of life, human nature, or the human condition. We judge the film as an expression of an idea that has intellectual, moral, social, or cultural importance and the ability to influence our lives for the better. Acting, cinematography, lighting, editing, sound, and so on are all judged in terms of how effectively they contribute to the communication of the film's message, and the overall value of the film depends on the significance of its theme. We might consider these questions when using the humanistic approach to evaluate a film:

- What statement does the film make, and how significant is the truth we learn from it?
- How effectively do the different film elements communicate the film's message?
- How does the film attempt to influence our lives for the better? What beliefs and actions does it attempt to change?
- Is the message stated by the film universal, or is it restricted to our own time and place?
- How relevant is the theme to our own experience?

The Film as Emotional or Sensual Experience

In this approach, which is the opposite of the more intellectual humanistic approach, we judge a film by the reality and intensity of its impact on the viewer. The stronger the emotional or sensual experience provided by the film, the better the film is. Generally, with this approach the preference is for films that stress fast-paced action, excitement, and adventure. Because a strong physical or visceral response is desired, a film is judged favorably if it is simply hard hitting and direct, like a punch in the jaw.

Those who favor this approach show an anti-intellectual bias. They want no message in their films, no significance beyond the immediate experience. They prefer pure action, romance, excitement, and the simple, direct, unpretentious telling of a story. If the experience provided by the film is extremely realistic, vivid, and intense, the film is considered good (Figure 12.4). In evaluating a film by these standards, we might consider these questions:

- How powerful or intense is the film as an emotional or sensual experience?
- Where in the film are we completely wrapped up and involved in its reality? Where is the film weakest in emotional and sensual intensity?
- What role does each of the film elements play in creating a hard-hitting emotional and sensual response?

The Film as Repeated Form: The Genre Approach

A **genre film** is a film based on subjects, themes, or styles that have become familiar because they have been used often. Audiences who watch genre films (discussed in detail in Chapter 14)—westerns are one example—know what sorts of characters, settings, plots, and so on to expect. In the genre approach, we judge a film according to how it fits into a body of films having essentially

FIGURE 12.4 The Emotional or Sensual Approach *Chocolat* (2000) clearly invites a viewer to take comfort and delight in the emotional appeal of Juliette Binoche and Lena Olin's own enjoyment of their sweet life as candy purveyors/magicians.

the same setting, characters, conflict, resolution, and/or values. We begin our analysis and evaluation by determining in what ways the film conforms to the standards of the genre it represents, as well as how it deviates from them.

Because we probably have seen a great many films of this genre before viewing the film under present study, we have clear expectations. As we watch the film, we will be disappointed if our expectations are not fulfilled. At the same time, we should look for variations and innovations that make this film different from others in the genre, for we will be disappointed if the film offers no variety or innovation. A good genre film not only fulfills our expectations by following the traditional patterns and providing satisfying resolutions, but provides enough variations to satisfy our demand for novelty. Because genre films are made for a truly mass audience and reinforce the values and myths sacred to that audience, we might also consider how well any American genre film reflects and reinforces basic American beliefs. We might consider these questions in evaluating a genre film:

- What are the basic requirements for this particular genre, and how well does this film fit them?
- Does the film work in such a way that all our expectations for films of this type are fulfilled (Figure 12.5)?

FIGURE 12.5 The Genre Approach Even an elementary knowledge of the 1940s *film noir* genre (see Chapter 14) will facilitate a moviegoer's appreciation of Lawrence Kasdan's *Body Heat*. The 1981 homage stars Kathleen Turner as a deliciously evil, manipulatory temptress and William Hurt as her gullible lover.

- What variations and innovations are present in the film? Are these variations fresh enough to satisfy our need for novelty? What variations make the film stand out from other films of the same genre?
- What basic regional or national beliefs, values, and myths are reflected and reinforced by the film? Are these beliefs, myths, and values outdated, or are they still relevant?

The Film as Political Statement

Film may reflect a variety of political stances. For example, one perspective that has been significant might be called Marxist. For some analysts the work of Karl Marx has become an important filter through which to view cinema. Marxist criticism is based on the premise that film—as well as literature and other forms of artistic expression—is a passive product of the economic aspects of a culture and that all movies are ultimately statements about the struggle for power between economic classes. The Marxist approach may include consideration of racial issues, because minority groups are often forced into lower socioeconomic classes by the dominant racial and economic group. To evaluate a film from the Marxist perspective, we might consider these questions:

- What is the socioeconomic level of the main character? Do statements in the script indicate the answer, or do the film's costumes and setting imply the answer?
- How do members of the various social classes interact?
- Is any sort of pattern evident in the types of actors cast in supporting and bit parts? For example, is there a relationship between the race and class of the characters and where they fall on the good guy/bad guy scale?
- Are ambition and the acquisition of wealth and material goods (climbing the social ladder) important to the characters? Does the film present ambition positively or negatively? What factors are important in determining success or failure?
- Does the film seem to celebrate a traditional value system, or does it question the mainstream view?

The Film as Gender Statement

To focus, in any manner, on gender in films is to view them through another kind of political filter. In fact, one might argue that virtually any controversial group (especially minority group) may be at the thematic center of the political approach to movies. Critical reactions—both popular and professional—to modern films have demonstrated the possibilities. Quentin Tarantino's use and treatment of African Americans in *Jackie Brown* (not to mention *Pulp Fiction*), for instance, has raised the ire of Spike Lee. Evangelical Christians have questioned some of the central characterizations in Robert Duvall's *The Apostle.* The elderly, and others, have wondered about the iconic value of Hume Cronyn's aged character in *Marvin's Room. Shallow Hal*, some observers have maintained, risked offending the obese. Long before political correctness, critics noted that Natalie Wood was not Hispanic and asked why she dared pretend to be so in *West Side Story. Rain Man*, *Forrest Gump*, *Sling Blade*, and *I Am Sam* have all elicited charges of possible exploitation of blessedly "different" people. And evolving gay, lesbian, queer, bisexual, and transgender criticism has scrutinized such films as *The Object of My Affection*, *The Opposite of Sex*, *Flawless*, and *Transamerica* for their political gender statements (or lack thereof) (Figure 12.6).

Similarly, and perhaps more broadly, the feminist approach rests on the assumption that art not only reflects but influences the attitudes of a culture. Feminist film critics attempt to show audiences how traditional cinematic language and symbolism reflect a masculine ideology. They encourage proportionate representation of women in film and urge that female characters not be relegated to traditional, stereotyped roles. Feminist analysis also considers the gender of directors and screenwriters and how it affects the presentation of the material.

To evaluate a film from the gender perspective, we might consider these questions:

FIGURE 12.6 The Gender Approach Early in *The Crying Game*, Stephen Rea's character (right) hears from his prisoner (Forest Whitaker) about the latter's sweetheart. Much later, when Rea manages to meet this beloved person, the movie begins to pose some intriguing questions about gender.

- Are the main characters male or female? Was the decision about their gender made by the filmmakers based on the requirements of the story, or do the role assignments reflect gender-based stereotypes?
- How are women or gays portrayed in the film? Are they passive, victimized, or ornamental, or are they active, assertive, and important to the development of the story?
- Who made the film? Do you think the gender of the filmmakers influenced their treatment and presentation of the story?
- Did the film seem to advocate any specific political ideas about the rights and equality of women or gays (workplace discrimination, harassment, abortion or adoption rights, and so on)? Were these issues central to the story, or did their inclusion seem halfhearted?

The Film as Insight to the Mind: The Psychoanalytical Approach

Freudian Criticism Advocates for the interpretation of film from a Freudian perspective believe that a movie is an expression of the filmmaker's psyche and that a film's meaning lies beneath the obvious images on the screen. Knowing how the unconscious mind of a neurotic disguises secret thoughts in dream stories or bizarre actions, Freudian critics believe that directors (and screenwriters) rely heavily on symbols and purposely cloak or mystify events and ideas in images that require interpretation for true understanding. They tend to view a film as a kind of fantasy, dream, or daydream, and they use psychoanalysis to provide insights into the mind of the *auteur* who produced it. Recently, there has been a shift away from the analysis of the film's creator and toward the analysis of the film's audience—on the way the film appeals to *our* neuroses by tapping

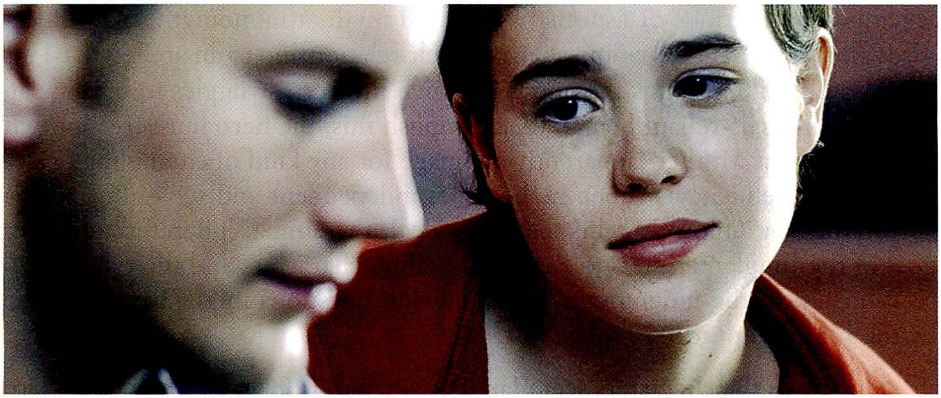


FIGURE 12.7 The Psychoanalytical Approach The exceedingly strange "relationship" forged between the characters played by Patrick Wilson and young Ellen Page in David Slade's disturbing film *Hard Candy* virtually demands that the viewer supply a psychoanalytical reading of the film.

into *our* unconscious, repressed wishes, fantasies, and dreams. When examining the film from a Freudian perspective, one might consider these questions:

- What particular qualities of the film suggest that its true meaning lies beneath the surface and requires psychological analysis to unravel? Where in the film does the director seem to cloak and mystify events and ideas?
- Do you find any of the basic concepts usually associated with Freud suggested or symbolized in this film: the Oedipus complex, the ego, the id, the superego, the libido, unconscious desires, or sexual repression? What insights do they provide into the director's psyche? (Figure 12.7.)
- What other symbols do you find in the film, and what is your interpretation of them? What do they reveal about the director's psyche?
- Which of the symbols discussed in the previous two questions strike responsive chords in you personally? Do you think your responses to these symbols and images are unique to your personality, or are they universal audience responses? If your responses were unique, what kinds of insights or self-discovery resulted from them?

Jungian Criticism The Jungian critic begins with some important basic assumptions. The first of these is that all human beings share a deep psychological bond, a collective unconscious, a kind of shadowy imprinting of universal images, patterns, and life experiences known as archetypes. These archetypes exist beneath the surface and are discernible only in fragments that surface as archetypal images, or shadows. One goal of the Jungian critic is to get a sense of the underlying archetypes suggested by the surface images evident in a film's characters, plot, and iconography. Carl Jung also believed that all stories and legends are variations or aspects of a central myth, a monomyth, that undergirds all archetypal images and suggests their relationship to an archetype. This all-encompassing myth is the quest, in which the hero struggles to become an independent, self-reliant being. To accomplish this, the hero must free himself from the Great Mother (apparently an image for any kind of entangling or debilitating dependency). When he becomes independent and self-sufficient, he is rewarded by union with his feminine ideal, the anima. Therefore, another goal of the Jungian critic is to analyze the film's characters and their actions in relationship to the monomyth. The following questions might be considered by the Jungian approach:

- Do any of the characters seem familiar beyond ordinary stereotyping? Do they possess universal qualities to such a degree that they might be the surface shadows of archetypes? What aspects or qualities of the characters seem strikingly familiar or universal? What archetypes might these qualities suggest?
- Examine the possible relationships of the story's characters, conflicts, and resolutions to the quest monomyth. Do we have a male hero struggling for freedom from some kind of dependency? Is there a character or concept in the film that could be related to the Great Mother image? Does the hero become a separate, self-sufficient being? Does the resolution of the film's story include the hero's union with his ideal feminine other?
- What other films can you think of which reflect the general universal patterns of the quest monomyth? In what important ways do the universal patterns in these films differ from those in the film under analysis?
- Back off mentally from the specific characters, conflicts, actions, and images of the film, and try to view them as abstractions: broad, general patterns and concepts. Does generalizing and abstracting story elements in this way make the film's images seem more clearly archetypal?

The Eclectic Approach

To analyze every film from the narrow critical framework drawn from one or another of the approaches discussed so far would severely hamper our evaluation. To be fair, we must consider the director's intentions and choose an approach that complements them. Consider the result, for example, of applying the humanistic approach to a James Bond film or an Alfred Hitchcock film.

Vincent Canby's *New York Times* review of Hitchcock's *Frenzy* demonstrates the difficulty of judging a Hitchcock film from a humanistic frame of reference:

> Alfred Hitchcock is enough to make one despair. After 50 years of directing films, he's still not perfect. He refuses to be serious, at least in any easily recognizable way that might win him the Jean Hersholt Award, or even an Oscar for directorial

FIGURE 12.8 The Eclectic Approach Often, the best critical approach to a film involves a synthesis of several possibilities. Arguably, Ang Lee's *The Ice Storm* (starring Sigourney Weaver and Kevin Kline) could be interpreted using multiple approaches, including some of those highlighted in Figures 12.3 through 12.7

> excellence. Take, for example, his new film, "Frenzy," a suspense melodrama about a homicidal maniac, known as the Necktie Killer, who is terrorizing London, and the wrong man who is chased, arrested and convicted for the crimes. What does it tell us about the Human Condition, Love, the Third World, God, Structural Politics, Environmental Violence, Justice, Conscience, Aspects of Underdevelopment, Discrimination, Radical Stupor, Religious Ecstasy or Conservative Commitment? Practically nothing.
>
> It is immensely entertaining, yet it's possible to direct at "Frenzy" the same charges that have been directed at some of his best films in the past, meaning that it's "not significant," that "what it has to say about people and human nature is superficial and glib," that it "does nothing but give out a good time," that it's "wonderful while you're in the theater and impossible to remember 24 hours later."[3]

Because Hitchcock is a strong personality and a strong director who imposes his own stylistic trademark on every film he makes, his films can be profitably discussed from the *auteur* viewpoint (although he did not write his major American films) and, perhaps more appropriately, can be analyzed as emotional or sensual experiences. Because he stresses the subordinate role of the actor to the film, the personality cult approach is worthless, and, as Vincent Canby's remarks indicate, the humanistic approach leads nowhere. The most valid approach is the one that best matches the director's stated and demonstrated interests (Figure 12.8).

But one approach to film evaluation seems more valid than any of the others described so far. The eclectic approach acknowledges that all approaches have some validity, and it selects the aspects of each approach that are appropriate and useful. In an eclectic evaluation, we might begin by asking whether the film is good and then try to support our opinion with answers to several of these questions:

- How technically sound and sophisticated is the film, and how well does it utilize the full potential of the medium?
- How powerful is the star's performance?
- How well does the film reflect the philosophy, personality, and artistic vision of the director?
- How worthwhile or significant is the statement made by the film, and how powerfully is it made?
- How effective is the film as an emotional or sensual experience?
- How well does the film conform to the patterns of its genre, and what variations or innovations does it introduce into that format?

REREADING THE REVIEWS

We have seen the film, analyzed it, and interpreted it for ourselves. We have formed our own opinions about its worth and have noted our own personal and subjective reactions to it. Now we are ready to return to the reviews. At this point, we should read the review in an entirely different way from that in which we read it before seeing the film. Now we can read all parts of the review in depth, entering into a mental dialogue (perhaps even an argument) with the reviewer as we compare our mental notes and opinions on the film with the written review.

We may agree with the critic on many points and disagree completely on others. Reader and critic may analyze or interpret the film in the same way and yet reach opposite conclusions about its worth. In essence, what results here is a learning experience. Two separate minds—the reader's and the critic's—come together on the same work, seeking agreement perhaps but also relishing argument. Although we should be open-minded and try to see the critic's point of view and understand his or her analysis, interpretation, or evaluation, we must be independent enough not to be subservient.

EVALUATING THE REVIEWER

We might evaluate the reviewers we read, determining how well we think they have carried out their duties. The key function of the reviewer is to lead us toward a better understanding or a keener appreciation of specific films and of the medium in general. After rereading the review in depth, we might first ask ourselves how well the reviewer succeeds in carrying out this function. In other words: *Does the critic succeed in helping us understand more about the film than we could see for ourselves? Does he or she make the film medium itself seem exciting, so that we want to experience its art more deeply and intensely?*

After answering these basic questions, we can move on to a thorough evaluation of the review by considering these questions:

- In what parts of the review is the critic merely providing factual information, things that cannot possibly be argued with? How thorough is this information, and how clear an idea does it give of the nature of the film?
- In what parts of the review does the critic serve as an objective interpreter or guide by pointing out film elements that are worthy of special attention, by placing the film in context, or by describing the techniques employed? Does the critic try to analyze or interpret the film objectively?
- In what part of the review does the critic make relatively objective value judgments about the film's worth? How does the critic support judgments with critical ground rules? Does the critic make these critical ground rules clear? Does the critic provide a logical, convincing argument in support of the evaluation, or does he or she judge the film dogmatically?
- Where in the review does the critic reveal his or her subjectivity, prejudices, and biases? How much does the critic reveal about his or her own personality in this part of the review? How valuable are these subjective parts of the review in stimulating interest in the film or providing material for mental dialogue or argument? What critical weaknesses, limitations, or narrow attitudes are reflected in this review? Does the critic bother to warn us about his or her prejudices?
- Which critical method or approach does the critic emphasize? Does he or she place emphasis on how the film was made (film as technical achievement), on who stars in the film (film as showcase for the actor), on who made the film (the *auteur* approach), on what the film says (the humanistic approach), on the reality and intensity of the experience of the film (the film as an emotional or sensual experience), or on how well the film conforms to or introduces variations on a more or less conventionalized form (the genre approach)? Does the critic focus on political or economic issues (the Marxist approach), or on issues of gender (the feminist approach), or on symbolic interpretation (the psychoanalytical approach)?
- Does the critic carefully consider the level of ambition of the film and then select an approach to adjust for this expectation? If not, how does this shortcoming affect the review?

So that we are not overly influenced by critics' opinions, we need to develop the discipline of independent thinking, which requires confidence in our skills of observation and analysis and some degree of faith in our own critical judgment. This discipline is extremely important as we develop the confidence to know what we like and the ability to explain why we like it.

Above all, we must develop enough confidence in our own taste, our own insight, our own perception, and our own sensitivity so that, although we may be influenced by critics' opinions or arguments, we are never intimidated by them. We must continually question and weigh every opinion the critics state, and we may question their intelligence, emotional balance, judgment, and even their humanity. For the fact is that, despite the critics' valuable services, criticism remains a secondary and subjective art. No work of criticism has ever provided the last word on film, and none should be accepted as such.

DEVELOPING PERSONAL CRITERIA

To achieve confidence in our critical abilities, it might be helpful to develop some personal criteria for film evaluation. The difficulty of this task is illustrated by the fact that few professional critics have a hard-and-fast set of rules by which they judge films. Dwight Macdonald discusses the difficulty of defining general principles in the introduction to his collected reviews, *On Movies:*

> I know something about cinema after forty years, and being a congenital critic, I know what I like and why. But I can't explain the *why* except in terms of the specific work under consideration, on which I'm copious enough. The general theory, the larger view, the gestalt—these have always eluded me. Whether this gap in my critical armor be called an idiosyncrasy or, less charitably, a personal failing, it has always been most definitely there.
>
> But people, especially undergraduates hot for certainty, keep asking me what rules, principles or standard I judge movies by—a fair question to which I can never think of an answer. Years ago, some forgotten but evidently sharp stimulus spurred me to put some guidelines down on paper. The result, hitherto unprinted for reasons which will become clear, was:
>
> 1. Are the characters consistent, and in fact, are there characters at all?
> 2. Is it true to life?
> 3. Is the photography cliché, or is it adapted to the particular film and therefore original?
> 4. Do the parts go together; do they add up to something; is there a rhythm established so that there is a form, shape, climax, building up tension and exploding it?
> 5. Is there a mind behind it; is there a feeling that a single intelligence has imposed its own view on the material?
>
> The last two questions rough out some vague sort of meaning, and the third is sound, if truistic. But I can't account for the first two being here at all, let alone in the lead-off place. Many films I admire are not "true to life" unless that stretchable term is strained beyond normal usage: *Broken Blossoms*, *Children of Paradise*, *Zero de Conduite*, *Caligari*, *On Approval*, Eisenstein's *Ivan the Terrible.* And some have no "characters" at all, consistent or no: *Potemkin*, *Arsenal*, *October*; *Intolerance*, *Marienbad*, *Orpheus*, *Olympia.* The comedies of Keaton, Chaplin, Lubitsch, the Marx Brothers and W. C. Fields occupy a middle ground. They have "consistent" characters all right, and they are also "true to life." But the consistency is always extreme and sometimes positively compulsive and obsessed (W. C., Groucho,

> Buster), and the truth is abstract. In short, they are so highly stylized (cf. "the Lubitsch touch") that they are constantly floating up from *terra firma* into the empyrean of art, right before my astonished and delighted eyes. . . .
>
> Getting back to general principles, I can think offhand (the only way I seem able to think about general principles) of two ways to judge the quality of a movie. They are rules of thumb, but they work—for me anyway:
>
> A. Did it change the way you look at things?
> B. Did you find more (or less) in it the second, third, *N*th time?
>
> (Also, how did it stand up over the years, after one or more "periods" of cinematic history?)
>
> Both rules are *post facto* and so, while they may be helpful to critics and audiences, they aren't of the slightest use to those who make movies. This is as it should be.[4]

Although Macdonald has little faith in *rigid* principles or guidelines, guidelines of some sort seem necessary for a foundation from which to watch, analyze, interpret, and evaluate films. The basic problem with ground rules, however, is that they tend to be inflexible and fail to expand or contract to fit the work being evaluated. What is needed is a general but flexible set of guidelines or critical principles that apply to most films but provide for exceptions. A groundbreaking film that conforms to none of the basic guidelines, even though it is a great film, may come along. Flexible critical guidelines, which see absolute consistency of approach as neither necessary nor desirable, will let us evaluate such a film. Because we are constantly experiencing new types of films, our guidelines must be constantly changing and growing to meet our needs.

In developing personal criteria for film evaluation, we (like Macdonald) might begin by trying to formulate a series of questions to ask about each movie that we see. Or we might simply try to list the qualities we think are essential to any good movie. Whichever course we choose, the task is not easy, but just making the effort should add to our understanding of why some movies are better than others. Even if we do come up with a set of guidelines that we consider adequate, we should resist the temptation to carve them into stone. The cinema is a dynamic, evolving art form, always capable of providing us with new films that won't fit the old rules. And it is equally important that we keep our minds and eyes open for discovering new things in old films.

Perhaps most important of all, we must keep our hearts open to films of all sorts so that we can continue to respond to movies emotionally, intuitively, and subjectively. Watching films is an art, not a science. The analytical approach should complement or deepen our emotional and intuitive responses, not replace or destroy them. Used properly, the analytical approach will add rich, new levels of awareness to our normal emotional and intuitive responses and help us become more proficient in the art of watching films.

On the Basic Approach: Watching, Analyzing, and Evaluating the Film

1. What seems to be the director's purpose or primary aim in making the film?
2. What is the true subject of the film, and what kind of statement, if any, does the film make about that subject?
3. How do all the separate elements of the film relate to and contribute to the theme, central purpose, or total effect?
4. What is the film's level of ambition?
5. Given the film's level of ambition, how well does the film succeed in what it tries to do? Why does it succeed or fail?
6. Which elements or parts make the strongest contribution to the theme and why? Which elements or parts fail to function effectively? Why do they fail?
7. What were your *personal* reactions to the film? What are your *personal* reasons for liking or disliking it?

On Evaluating the Reviewer

1. Of what film reviewers in the popular press (newspapers and magazines, local and beyond) are you aware? Do you read their work regularly? If not, choose one critic whose writing is available to you and read carefully at least five of his or her reviews. Can you discern a pattern of central expectations upon which this reviewer's observations are based? Attempt to record them succinctly.
2. Choose two of the nationally known film critics listed below. Then, make a comparative study of their work by locating, through research, each reviewer's opinions of three of your favorite movies. Use the questions on page 421 to guide your evaluations. Some influential film reviewers: Anthony Lane or David Denby (*The New Yorker*), A. O. Scott, Stephen Holden, or Manohla Dargis (*The New York Times*), Stanley Kauffmann (*The New Republic*), Roger Ebert (*Chicago Sun-Times*), Richard Schickel or Richard Corliss (*Time*), David Ansen (*Newsweek*), Kenneth Turan (*Los Angeles Times*), Joseph Morgenstern (*The Wall Street Journal*), Peter Travers (*Rolling Stone*), and Owen Gleiberman or Lisa Schwarzbaum (*Entertainment Weekly*).*

On Developing Personal Criteria

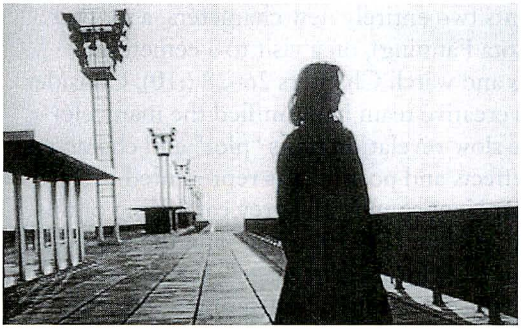
1. Try to construct a set of five to ten questions that you think you should answer when judging the merits of a film, or list five to ten qualities that you think are essential to a good movie.
2. If you fall short on the preceding question or lack confidence in the validity of the qualities you've listed as essential, try another approach: List your ten all-time favorite films. Then answer these questions about your list, and see what your answers reveal about your personal criteria for film evaluation:

---

*For reviewers published on the Internet, consult www.imbd.com (click on "External Reviews" on the individual film's home page) or www.rottentomatoes.com.

a. Consider each film on your list carefully, and decide what three or four elements you liked best about it. Then decide which of these played the most important role in making you like or respect the film.
b. How many of the films on your list share the qualities that most appeal to you? Which films seem to be most similar in the characteristics you like best?
c. Do the qualities you pick show an emphasis on any single critical approach, or are your tastes eclectic? To decide this, answer the following:
   (1) How many of the films on your list do you respect primarily for their technique?
   (2) Do several of the films on your list feature the same actor?
   (3) How many of your favorite films are made by the same director?
   (4) Which of the films on your list make a significant statement of some kind?
   (5) Which of the films have a powerful, intense, and very real emotional or sensual effect?
   (6) Which of the films on your list could be classified as genre films, and how many of them belong to the same genre?
   (7) Which films deal with basic conflicts between the "haves" and "have nots"?
   (8) Which films show women (and members of minority groups) breaking out of traditional, stereotypical roles?
   (9) Which of the films on your list rely heavily on complex symbols that require interpretation?
d. What do your answers to questions (1) through (9) reveal about your personal preferences? Do your tastes seem restricted?
e. How does your list of favorite films measure up against your first attempt to establish personal criteria for evaluation? How can your standards be changed, perhaps added to, in order to better match your list of film favorites?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE I



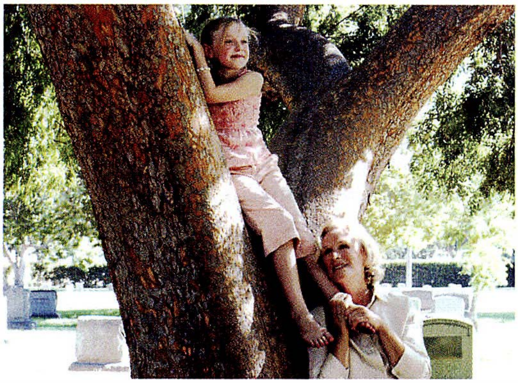
A blurb on the DVD packaging for *Short Cinema Journal/I: 2 (Dreams)* describes one of the films it contains, Chris Marker's *La Jetée* ("The Pier"), as "universally acclaimed . . . a bona fide masterpiece of world cinema."

Test this proclamation by attempting to examine very carefully all elements of the twenty-eight minute science fiction film: its plot, themes, visual design, photography, editing, hues, sound effects, music, acting, and "director's style."

(Note: Marker himself supposedly produced two versions of this film's soundtrack, one in French, the other in English; this disc provides an English narration. *La Jetée* was the inspiration for director Terry Gilliam's 1995 feature *Twelve Monkeys*, starring Bruce Willis and Brad Pitt.)

(This DVD was originally part of a video periodical three-disc series. The works were later reissued under the rubric *Short* and expanded to include a total of at least eleven available discs. The subtitle of each issue suggests its central theme: 1: Invention; 3: Authority; 4: Seduction; 5: Diversity; 6: Insanity; 7: Utopia; 8: Vision, 9: Trust; 10: Chaos; and 11: Ecstasy.)

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE II



Nine Lives, an emotionally moving 2005 film by writer-director Rodrigo Garcia, may be viewed either as one loosely integrated, but thoughtfully arranged, work of film narrative or as simply a compilation of individual short works. All of its nine sections are formally noteworthy, though, because each is photographed in "real time," i.e., in one smooth (yet technically intricate) 11- to 14-minute take or "long shot," using a Steadicam and digital video. In each of the nine, a woman's name serves as a title—and as a guide to its central focus: "Sandra" (Elpidia Carrillo), "Diana" (Robin Wright Penn), "Holly" (Lisa Gay Hamilton), "Sonia" (Holly Hunter), "Samantha" (Amanda Seyfried), "Lorna" (Amy Brenneman), "Ruth" (Sissy Spacek), "Camille" (Kathy Baker), and "Maggie" (Glenn Close).

Although any one of these mini-movies might well serve as a worthy "text" for an examination of all of its literary and cinematic elements, "Maggie" is perhaps the one best suited for this exercise. The whole film's first eight separate sections each connect to at least one other because it contains a "repeated" character. This final story, however, presents two entirely new characters, a mother (Close) and her young daughter (Dakota Fanning), on a visit to a cemetery.

Obtain a DVD copy of *Nine Lives* and watch Chapters 26–28 (:10). Consider carefully how Rodrigo Garcia and his creative team have unified the many elements of this film. Note especially the slow revelation of its "plot" and characters. Also consider the symbolic *cinematic* effects and possibilities represented by each of these elements: the setting and its ambient sounds; the grey cat ("King of the Hill"); the dialogue, such as the daughter's line "I need to pee" and the mother's "We go on. . . . Everyone here went on . . . with their baggage"; action and objects (climbing a tree, playing a hand-clap game, "serving" a bunch of grapes); camera movement (including a 360-degree pan); and a musical cue for solo piano.

Now, return to the opening seven questions above (pp. 424–25) and use them to study this work even more completely.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

Citizen Kane:

This DVD, like the earlier laserdisc version, encompasses a wide variety of approaches for film study. The auxiliary platter in the two-disc set provides the documentary "The Battle Over Citizen Kane," which puts the movie into social, historical, and political contexts. The main disc gives us a newly remastered picture and sound, and, among other elements, two feature-length audio commentaries: one by film critic Roger Ebert and the other by director/Welles biographer Peter Bogdanovich. (As Marc Saltzman points out in *DVD Confidential*, the set also contains several "Easter eggs," including an interview with actor Ruth Warrick, who plays Kane's first wife, and a dialogue between Ebert and editor/[later] director Robert Wise.)

Dark City:

So far, Roger Ebert has chosen to record DVD commentaries for very few movies. Before he bestowed this honor upon *Citizen Kane*, his enormous admiration for Alex Proyas' film *Dark City* led him to lend his voice to support it—even though, as he has indicated, he had never even met or talked with the director. In this commentary, film students can find a wide-ranging affirmation of the overall quality and unity of the movie's components.

Pulp Fiction (Collector's Edition):

Here, a student interested in comparing the stated judgments of several writers about the same film can find multiple "Reviews and Articles Analyzing the Film" on disc, with two of them also printed on the brochure provided. Reviewers include Janet Maslin (*New York Times*), Richard Corliss (*Time*), Roger Ebert (*Chicago Sun-Times*), Anthony Lane (*The New Yorker*), J. Hoberman (*Village Voice*), Owen Gleiberman (*Entertainment Weekly*), Elizabeth Pincus (*L.A. Weekly*), Julie Burchill (*London Times*), and Alexander Walker (*Evening Standard*). Also, a special edition of the television review program "Siskel and Ebert & the Movies" called "Pulp Faction: The Tarantino Generation" is made available in its entirety.

The Stunt Man (Limited Edition):

The full story of the development, making, "selling," and delayed distribution of this seldom-seen comedy/drama/action thriller is told by director Richard Rush, who acts as on-screen host throughout the two-DVD set. On disc two, Rush presents a 114-minute documentary that he wrote and directed; it includes interviews with principal actors Peter O'Toole, Steve Railsback, and Barbara Hershey.

Project Greenlight (including the feature film *Stolen Summer*):

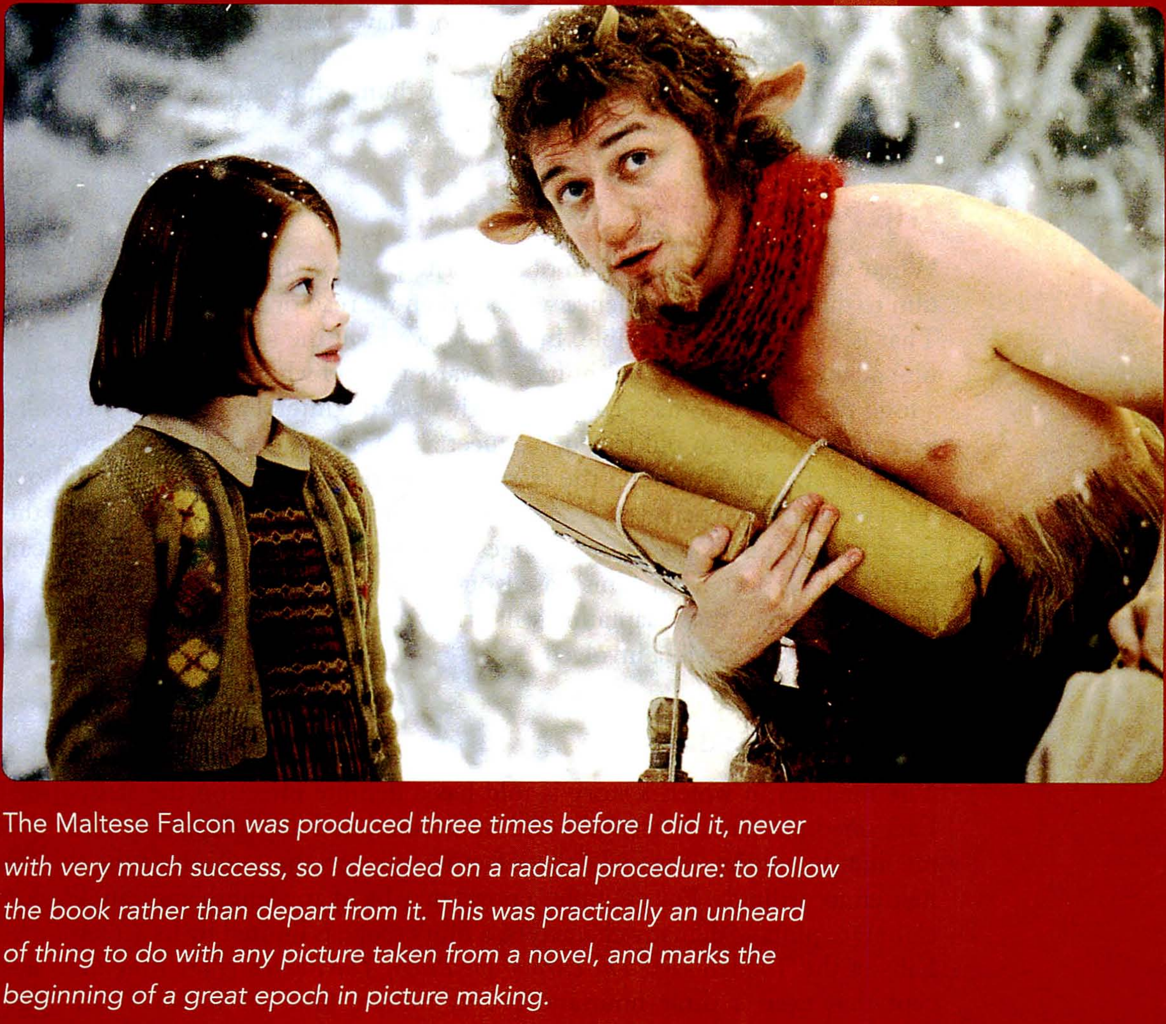
Actors-screenwriters Ben Affleck and Matt Damon, and their friend producer Chris Moore, persuaded HBO to create a series called "Project Greenlight" that would encourage young filmmakers. From thousands of applicants who responded to their invitation, they chose five directors who desired to make a film with funding from HBO of $1 million. This four-DVD set records the outcome of that first contest, tracking Pete Jones, their final choice, as he develops and shoots his first feature, *Stolen Summer*. Surely the pains and pleasures of independent filmmaking have never been more fully documented. As you watch these discs, fasten your seatbelts: it's going to be a bumpy night through twelve angst-filled episodes.

FILMS FOR STUDY

2001: A Space Odyssey (1968)
8½ (1963)
Angels and Insects (1995)
Bloody Sunday (2002)
Body Heat (1981)
Bonnie and Clyde (1967)
Brokeback Mountain (2005)
Brothers of the Head (2006)
Citizen Kane (1941)
Crash (2005)
The Crying Game (1992)
The Da Vinci Code (2006)
The Deer Hunter (1978)
The Devil Wears Prada (2006)
Diary of a Mad Black Woman (2005)
Gangs of New York (2002)
Girlfight (2000)
Gods and Monsters (1998)
The Ice Storm (1997)
Little Miss Sunshine (2006)
Lovely and Amazing (2002)
McCabe & Mrs. Miller (1971)
Nacho Libre (2006)
One Hour Photo (2002)
The Opposite of Sex (1998)
Ordinary People (1980)
Persona (1966)
A Scanner Darkly (2006)
Secrets & Lies (1996)
United 93 (2006)

13

ADAPTATIONS



> The Maltese Falcon *was produced three times before I did it, never with very much success, so I decided on a radical procedure: to follow the book rather than depart from it. This was practically an unheard of thing to do with any picture taken from a novel, and marks the beginning of a great epoch in picture making.*
>
> —JOHN HUSTON, DIRECTOR

An **adaptation** is a film based on another work. A significant percentage of Hollywood films are adaptations, and in fact publishers routinely send advance copies of their books to agents in the hopes of landing a lucrative film deal. Although the original work is typically a novel, short story, play, or biography, adaptations have been made from television series (*Miami Vice*), computer games (*Tomb Raider*), graphic novels (*A History of Violence*), children's books (*Shrek*), and magazine articles (*The Fast and the Furious*). Adaptations range from the close or faithful adaptation, in which the filmmaker translates nearly every character and scene from page to screen, to the loose adaptation, in which many elements from the original work have been dropped and many new elements added. By comparing a film adaptation and its source, we can learn a great deal about what is unique to each medium while experiencing different interpretations of the story.

THE PROBLEMS OF ADAPTATION

When we see a film adaptation of a favorite book or show, we may expect the film to duplicate the experience we had when we read or saw the original work. That is, of course, impossible. In a sense, we have the same reaction to many film adaptations that we might have toward a friend whom we haven't seen for a long time and who has changed greatly over the intervening years. Mentally prepared to meet an old friend, we meet a stranger and take the changes as a personal affront, as though the friend has no right to undergo them without our knowledge or permission. The changes involved in taking a work to the screen are as inevitable as the changes brought by age. To know what we can reasonably expect from films based on other works requires insight into all kinds of changes that adaptation will bring, as well as an understanding of the differences in the media involved.

Change in Medium

The medium in which a story is told has a definite effect on the story itself. Each medium has its strengths and limitations, and any adaptation from one medium to another must take these factors into account and adjust the subject matter accordingly. For example, a novel may be of any length and can develop elaborate plots with many characters; a film's scope is limited by its screen time. Fans of the Tolkien saga *The Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King* must accept that even a three-hour-and-twenty-minute film has to leave out large chunks of the lengthy novel. The audience's point of view when watching a play is limited by the position of the seats and stage, but watching a film we can view an interior room one minute and an aerial view of the city the next. Audiences in the Broadway production of *Chicago* experienced the thrill of watching a live performance; film audiences can enjoy the musical's fast-paced rhythms and

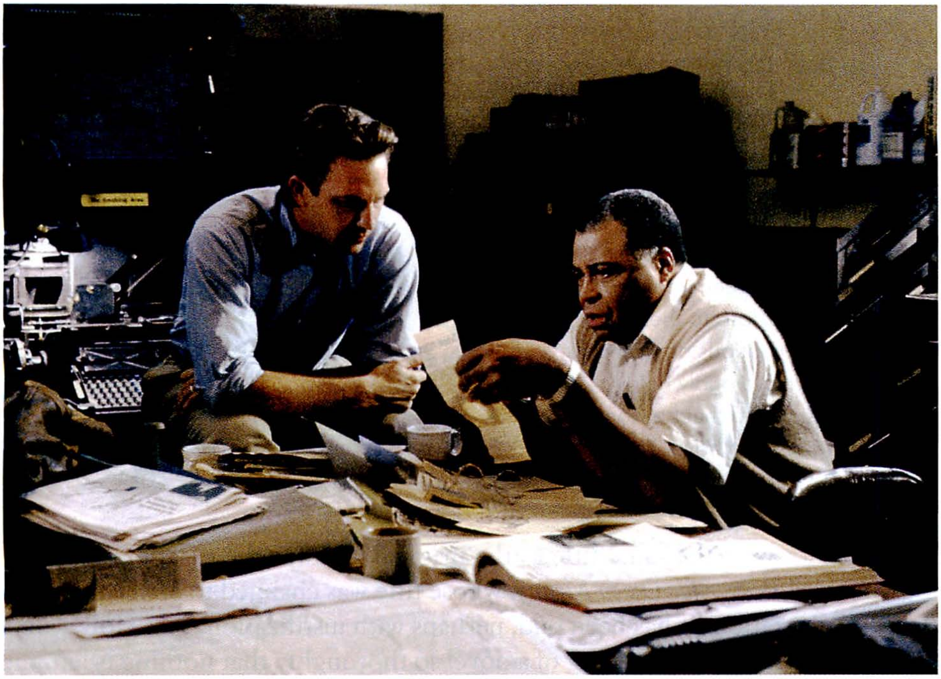


FIGURE 13.1 Objection Sustained Sometimes problems arise that are totally beyond the screenwriter or director's control. Fifties novelist J. D. Salinger became a fascinating fictional character in W. P. Kinsella's fantasy novel, *Shoeless Joe*. Salinger, however, objected to his name being used for the character, so when the film version (*Field of Dreams*) came out, the character had become a black novelist/civil rights fighter from the sixties played by James Earl Jones, shown here with Kevin Costner.

star close-ups. If we are to judge a film adaptation fairly, we should recognize that although a novel, a play, or a film can tell the same story, each medium is a work of art in its own right, with its own distinctive techniques and conventions. Just as an oil painting has a different effect than a statue depicting the same subject, a film adaptation has a different effect than its literary source.

Change in Creative Artists

In our analysis we certainly must consider the influence that any change in creative talents has on a work of art. No two creative minds are alike, and when the reins are passed from one creative hand to another, the end product changes. Some kind of creative shift occurs in almost any kind of adaptation. As filmgoers, we must develop an equally tolerant attitude toward all film adaptations and freely grant the new creative talents some artistic license (Figure 13.1).

Of course, there are limits to which artistic license can justifiably be carried. If a work is changed so much that it is almost unrecognizable, it should

FIGURE 13.2 Literature Meets Cinema Although conventional wisdom dictates that successful writers most often seem to resent what Hollywood does to their literary works, exceptions do occur. Here, John Irving proudly holds the Academy Award that he won for adapting his own novel *The Cider House Rules* for the screen.

probably not bear the same title as the original—as was the case for John Irving's novel *A Prayer for Owen Meany*, whose title was changed to *Simon Birch* for the film adaptation. It has been said, perhaps with justification, that Hollywood frequently distorts the meaning of a novel so thoroughly that nothing is left but the title. Two brief examples may illustrate the validity of that statement.

John Ford, when asked about his indebtedness to the novel in making *The Informer*, supposedly replied, "I never read the book." In a similar vein, playwright Edward Albee was once asked whether he was pleased with the screen adaptation of *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* He replied ironically that, although it omitted some things he felt were important, he was rather pleased with the adaptation, especially in light of the fact that a friend had called him to pass on the rumor that the filmmakers were seeking someone to cast in the role of George and Martha's nonexistent son. (Screenwriter Ernest Lehman's first draft included a real son who had committed suicide, but director Mike Nichols would not accept that radical change.) Many screenwriters, however, aim to remain true to the original work, and on occasion the original writer may even be hired to write the adaptation (Figure 13.2).

Cinematic Potential of the Original Work

Renata Adler has observed, "Not every written thing aspires to be a movie." And, indeed, some works are more adaptable to the film medium than others. Much of the humor in the film *Adaptation* comes from the screenwriter character's frustration at not being able to find "the story" in the book he has been hired to adapt. The style in which a work is written also affects its adaptability to film. The many adapters of Henry James's short stories and novels, perhaps drawn to his work by its complex characters, moral dilemmas, and visual possibilities, have had to contend with a prose style that is abstract, analytical, and some say, convoluted. Consider these opening sentences from James's *The Golden Bowl:*

> The Prince had always liked his London, when it had come to him; he was one of the modern Romans who find by the Thames a more convincing image of the truth of the ancient state than they had left by the Tiber. Brought up on the legend of the City to which the world paid tribute, he recognized in the present London much more than in contemporary Rome the real dimensions of such a case. If it was a question of *Imperium*, he said to himself, and if one wished, as a Roman, to recover a little the sense of that, the place to do so was on Hyde Park Corner.[1]

In contrast, the concrete, sensuous prose style of Ernest Hemingway, as in the first two paragraphs of "The Battler," is clearly more cinematic:

> Nick stood up. He was all right. He looked up the track at the lights of the caboose going out of sight around the curve. There was water on both sides of the track, then tamarack swamp.
>
> He felt of his knee. The pants were torn and skin was barked. His hands were scraped and there were sand and cinders driven up under his nails. He went over to the edge of the track down the little slope to the water and washed his hands. He washed them carefully in the cold water, getting the dirt out from the nails. He squatted down and bathed his knee.[2]

Although the problems of adapting a play to the screen are not generally as great as those presented by James, playwrights also have styles that affect the ease with which their plays can be adapted to film. Tennessee Williams, for example, uses concrete and sensual verbal imagery, and his plays contain speeches—such as the one describing Sebastian's death in *Suddenly, Last Summer*—that lend themselves to visual flashbacks.

ADAPTATIONS OF PROSE FICTION

The general elements just discussed influence our reactions to film adaptations of any type of work. A more complete understanding requires a deeper examination of the specific challenges posed by each medium. To better understand what is involved in translating a work of prose fiction into film, we will look at certain characteristics of novels, novellas (short novels), and short stories.

Literary Versus Cinematic Points of View

In literature, point of view refers to the vantage point from which the author presents the action of the story. In film, the term "point of view" is generally used in connection with a type of shot taken from the place where the character's eyes would be, but it can also apply to how the entire film's story is told.

FIGURE 13.3 From Voice on the Page to Character on the Screen The first-person narrator of *Jesus' Son* by Denis Johnson becomes the main character played by Billy Crudup (shown here with Samantha Morton) in Alison Maclean's film adaptation.

A filmmaker who attempts to translate a novel into film must decide how to adapt the novel's point of view. It is useful, then, to be familiar with the main types of **literary point of view.**

1. **First-Person Point of View.** A character who has participated in or observed the action of the story gives us an eyewitness or firsthand account of what happened and his or her responses to it (Figure 13.3). A series of first-person narrators tell the story of Russell Banks's *The Sweet Hereafter;* here school bus driver Dolores Driscoll begins to describe the accident that killed many of her town's children:

   > A dog—it was a dog I saw for certain. Or thought I saw. It was snowing, pretty hard by then, and you can see things in the snow that aren't there, or aren't exactly there, but you also can't see some things that are there, so that by God when you do see something, you react anyhow, erring on the distaff side, if you get my drift. That's my training as a driver, but it's also my temperament as a mother of two grown sons and wife to an invalid, and that way when I'm wrong at least I'm wrong on the side of the angels.[3]

   Most first-person narrators use "I," although some writers have experimented with "you," as in Jay McInerney's *Bright Lights, Big City:*

   > You are not the kind of guy who would be at a place like this at this time of the morning. But you are, and you cannot say that the terrain is entirely unfamiliar, although the details are fuzzy. You are at a nightclub talking to a girl with a shaved head.[4]

2. **Third-Person Narrator Point of View.** A narrator who is not a character or participant in the story's events tells the tale. The narrator can be "omniscient," or all-seeing, all-knowing, and capable of reading the

thoughts of all the characters, as in this excerpt from Toni Morrison's *Beloved:*

> 124 was spiteful. Full of a baby's venom. The women in the house knew it and so did the children. For years each put up with the spite in his own way, but by 1873 Sethe and her daughter Denver were its only victims. The grandmother, Baby Suggs, was dead, and the sons, Howard and Buglar, had run away by the time they were thirteen years old—as soon as merely looking into a mirror shattered it (that was the signal for Buglar); as soon as two tiny hand prints appeared in the cake (that was it for Howard).[5]

A third-person narration can also be "limited," that is, it can focus on the thoughts and emotions of a single character within the story. This character's thoughts are extremely important, for they become the central manner through which we view the action. The narration of Virginia Woolf's novel *Orlando,* for example, follows the main character's life from his adolescence in Elizabethan England, through his transformation into a woman, to the year 1928. Throughout this fictional biography, the narrator may guess at other characters' motivations, but Orlando's actions are authoritatively explained to us:

> Orlando had inclined herself naturally to the Elizabethan spirit, to the Restoration spirit, to the spirit of the eighteenth century, and had in consequence scarcely been aware of the change from one age to the other. But the spirit of the nineteenth century was antipathetic to her in the extreme, and thus it took her and broke her, and she was aware of her defeat at its hands as she had never been before.[6]

3. **Stream of Consciousness or Interior Monologue.** Woolf and other writers of her generation also pioneered the "stream of consciousness" or "interior monologue," which is a combination of third-person and first-person narrative, although the participant in the action is not consciously narrating the story. What we get instead is a unique kind of inner view, as though a microphone and a movie camera in the fictional character's mind were recording for us every thought, image, and impression that passes through the character's brain, without the conscious acts of organization, selectivity, or narration, as in these lines from William Faulkner's *The Sound and the Fury:*

> *Stay mad. My shirt was getting wet and my hair. Across the roof hearing the roof loud now I could see Natalie going through the garden among the rain. Get wet I hope you catch pneumonia go on home Cowface. I jumped hard as I could into the hog-wallow the mud yellowed up to my waist stinking I kept on plunging until I fell down and rolled over in it.* "Hear them in swimming, sister? I wouldn't mind doing that myself." If I had time. When I have time. I could hear my watch. *Mud was warmer than the rain it smelled*

THE WRITER'S PLACE IN HOLLYWOOD

At once indispensable and invisible, writers have historically had a complicated relationship with other parts of the film industry. Lacking the glamour and box office appeal of the starring actors and the power of producers, writers frequently portray themselves in films as marginalized and victimized by producers and directors who use their talents but quickly drop them once their services are no longer needed. The painful tenuousness of the screenwriter's position in Hollywood can even affect actors playing the role of a screenwriter.

In the late 1970s, when Allen Goorwitz was shooting his scenes for *The Stunt Man* (1980), the actor was apparently suffering an identity crisis. Although he was already well known under his stage name, Allen Garfield, for feature roles in such films as Francis Ford Coppola's *The Conversation* (1974), he suddenly began using his birth name professionally. Perhaps his shift was somehow apt, though, considering that he was playing a screenwriter in *The Stunt Man*, a movie presenting the microcosmic world of filmmaking. Just as Peter O'Toole portrayed a stereotypically manipulative, god-like film director (Eli Cross) in the film, Goorwitz's Sam was clearly meant to represent the archetypal Hollywood author—an "insecure" human being who complains loudly that "Everybody wants to take things away from me!"

Among all the variations of iconic images of movie writers within films themselves, none is more searing than the figure of the hack screenwriter (played by William Holden) at the center of Billy Wilder and Charles Brackett's classic *Sunset Boulevard* (1950). Here, with operatic gestures, Gloria Swanson's faded, mad silent movie star, Norma Desmond, appears to consume this "mere" writer in much the same fashion in which the hungry industry itself has earlier devoured her.

Filmic representations of the screenwriter's experience in Hollywood draw heavily on reality. D. W. Griffith, the essential and controversial "father of American film," approached the world of silent movies after a very brief and unsuccessful career as a playwright. Although the dramatic skills that he had honed served him well in helping to create the first extended film narratives, and he would write or co-script most of his celebrated works, including *Birth of a Nation* (1915) and *Intolerance* (1916), the prototypical urge to direct soon seized him. Thus, he managed quickly to rise above the curse of being a "mere" writer in Hollywood. With Charlie Chaplin, Mary Pickford, and Douglas Fairbanks, Griffith in 1919 established United Artists, an independent production and distribution company that ultimately helped lead to the powerful studio filmmaking system of the 1930s, '40s, and '50s. There, generally, producers ruled the magic realms, and scriptwriters, who sometimes were manipulated to compete unknowingly against each other, filled the dungeons of the creative hierarchy.

Near the height of the studio system's power, the novelist Raymond Chandler published a critical essay in the *Atlantic Monthly* (November 1945) in which he recounted his own adventures in the screenwriting trade, expressing feelings of hurt for his treatment. Although his first film was nominated for an Academy Award, he was never invited to premiere screenings, and his name barely appeared in print advertising and posters. Although he attempted to see the big picture, his analysis of the talented writer's fate in Hollywood is bleak: "The challenge of screenwriting," he wrote, "is to say much in little and then take half of that little out. . . ." But given the studio's power, Chandler observed,

> [T]here is no such thing as an art of the screenplay . . . for it is the essence of this system that it seeks to exploit a talent without permitting it the right to be a talent. . . . This

> means both personal and artistic subordination, and no writer of quality will long accept either without surrendering that which made him a writer of quality. . . .

During the four- or five-decade reign of the studio system, various novelists and (especially) playwrights were, in fact, publicly recognized for their scriptwriting contributions. Among those who won Academy Awards for either original or adapted screenplays were the "outside" artists Sidney Howard (*Gone With the Wind*, 1939), Robert E. Sherwood (*The Best Years of Our Lives*, 1946), and Budd Schulberg (*On the Waterfront*, 1954). But even the most famous novelists who served tours of duty in Hollywood, William Faulkner and F. Scott Fitzgerald, obtained little recognition for their work. Fitzgerald received only one screen credit for all of his extended, resident efforts (*Three Comrades*, 1938), and Faulkner garnered only four (including *To Have and Have Not*, 1944, and *The Big Sleep*, 1946) during his two major periods of employment in L. A.

Labeled as "mere" writers by Hollywood big shots, screenwriters often struggled to step into other roles that would give them more recognition for their work and more power and control over the scripts they wrote. During the 1940s, a few talented screenwriters such as Preston Sturges (*Sullivan's Travels*, 1941) and John Huston (*The Maltese Falcon*, 1941), managed to become successful directors. Later, Francis Ford Coppola (*The Godfather* saga) and Lawrence Kasdan (*The Big Chill*, 1983) accomplished similar feats. But in the 1960s, 1970s, and 1980s, writing Oscars went to more "outside" workers, including William Inge (*Splendor in the Grass*, 1961), John Osborne (*Tom Jones*, 1963), Robert Bolt (*Doctor Zhivago*, 1965; *A Man for All Seasons*, 1966), Peter Shaffer (*Amadeus*, 1984), Ruth Prawer Jhabvala (*A Room With a View*, 1986), John Patrick Shanley (*Moonstruck*, 1987), and Alfred Uhry (*Driving Miss Daisy*, 1989).

By the 1970s, when the monopoly of the studio system began to give way to independents, some directors finally did take on major power in Hollywood. Writers, however, did not attain a remunerative symbol of their own worth until 1990, when, as the Internet Movie Database notes, Joe Eszterhas received a "$3 million paycheck for 'Basic Instinct'"—"the highest amount of money ever paid for a screenplay at that time." Later, Shane Black was paid $4 million (*The Long Kiss Goodnight*, 1996), and M. Night Shyamalan, $5 million (*Signs*, 2002). But by 2005 Black (like Shyamalan) apparently found that his screenwriting efforts alone did not sustain him; he both wrote and directed the neo-noir film *Kiss Kiss Bang Bang.* In the last paragraph of his "Writers in Hollywood" essay, Raymond Chandler may have anticipated this move: "For the very nicest thing Hollywood can possibly think of to say to a writer is that he is too good to be only a writer."

If screenwriters-turned-directors are relatively rare, role-shifting in another direction became increasingly common in the mid-1990s when actors, participants already within the picture-making system and unintimidated by the specters of early Orson Welles (*Citizen Kane*, 1941) and Woody Allen (*Annie Hall*, 1977), emerged as winners in the writing sweepstakes: Emma Thompson (*Sense and Sensibility*, 1995); Billy Bob Thornton (*Sling Blade*, 1996); and Ben Affleck and Matt Damon (*Good Will Hunting*, 1997) all won screenwriting Oscars. In 2005, an actor, Dan Futterman, wowed both reviewers and movie-goers with his non-fiction adaptation script for *Capote.* At the end of the 1990s, Tom Stoppard (*Shakespeare in Love*, 1998) and John Irving (*The Cider House Rules*, 1999) brought acclaim back to playwrights and novelists.

The screenwriter's gravest examination of the profession's generic identity crisis can surely be found in the script for director Spike Jonze's film *Adaptation* (2002). Ostensibly a work based on a non-fiction book by Susan Orlean, this wildly creative movie seems, in fact, to profess the true madness of its writer, Charlie Kaufman (*Being John Malkovich*), whose feelings of inadequacy are tattooed on every frame. The clever device—both literary and cinematic—that Kaufman conjures up to objectify his position is an immensely commercially successful script-writing twin, Donald Kaufman. By contrast, Charlie, the poor "insecure" schlub, can get no respect from anyone in Hollywood. Ultimately, Charlie Kaufman and his fictional brother Donald were both nominated for real Oscars. And neither won.

Sources: Chandler: Later Novels & Other Writings; Cinemania 97; David Thomson's *New Biographical Dictionary of Film;* Ira Konigsberg's *Complete Film Dictionary;* Academy Awards Web site; imdb.com.

> *awful. She had her back turned I went around in front of her. You know what I was doing? She turned her back I went around in front of her the rain creeping into the mud flatting her bodice through her dress it smelled horrible. I was hugging her that's what I was doing. She turned her back I went around in front of her. I was hugging her I tell you. I don't give a damn what you were doing.*[7]

4. **Dramatic** or **Objective Point of View.** We are not conscious of a narrator, for the author does not comment on the action but simply describes the scene, telling us what happens and what the characters say, so we get a feeling of being there, observing the scene as we would in a play. This is also known as the *concealed*, or *effaced, narrator point of view.* Here it is seen in the opening paragraphs of "The Killers," by Ernest Hemingway:

> The door of Henry's lunchroom opened and two men came in. They sat down at the counter.
>
> "What's yours?" George asked them.
>
> "I don't know," one of the men said. "What do you want to eat, Al?"
>
> "I don't know," said Al. "I don't know what I want to eat."
>
> Outside it was getting dark. The street light came on outside the window. The two men at the counter read the menu. From the other end of the counter Nick Adams watched them. He had been talking to George when they came in.
>
> "I'll have a roast pork tenderloin with apple sauce and mashed potatoes," the first man said.
>
> "It isn't ready yet."
>
> "What the hell do you put it on the card for?"
>
> "That's the dinner," George explained. "You can get that at six o'clock."
>
> George looked at the clock on the wall behind the counter. "It's five o'clock."
>
> "The clock says twenty minutes past five," the second man said.
>
> "It's twenty minutes fast."
>
> "Oh, to hell with the clock," the first man said. "What have you got to eat?"[8]

The dramatic or objective point of view is the only literary viewpoint that can be directly translated into cinema. Few if any novels, however, are written from the strict dramatic point of view, because it requires so much of the reader's concentration; the reader must infer between the lines for significance or meaning. This viewpoint is usually restricted to short stories.

Third-Person Point of View: Challenges

Omniscient, third-person limited, and stream of consciousness points of view all stress the thoughts, concepts, or reflections of a character—elements that are difficult to depict cinematically. These points of view have no natural cinematic equivalents. George Bluestone discusses this problem in *Novels into Film:*

> The rendition of mental states—memory, dream, imagination—cannot be as adequately represented by film as by language. . . . The film, by arranging external signs for our visual perception, or by presenting us with dialogue, can lead us to *infer* thought. But it cannot show us thought directly. It can show us characters thinking, feeling, and speaking, but it cannot show us their thoughts and feelings. A film is not thought; it is perceived.[9]

The usual solution to such problems is to ignore the novel's point of view, ignore the prose passages stressing thought or reflection, and simply duplicate the most dramatic scenes. However, the prose passages and the point of view often constitute much of the novel's essence. This means that filmmakers cannot always capture a novel's essence cinematically. They can attempt to suggest thoughts, emotions, and moods through cinematic elements—through the actors' expressions and gestures, through the *mise-en-scène*, through music, and through dialogue. These make for a different, but not necessarily diminished, experience than the story or novel.

First-Person Point of View: Challenges

The first-person point of view has no true cinematic equivalent. The completely consistent use of the **subjective camera** (a camera that records everything from the point of view of a participant in the action) does not work effectively in film. Even if it did, the cinematic subjective point of view is not really equivalent to the literary first-person viewpoint. The subjective camera lets us feel that we are involved in the action, seeing it through a participant's eyes. But the literary first-person point of view does not equate reader with participant. Instead, the narrator and the reader are two separate entities. The reader listens while the first-person narrator tells the story.

In novels with a first-person point of view, such as Mark Twain's *Huckleberry Finn* and J. D. Salinger's *The Catcher in the Rye*, the reader has an intimate relationship with the narrator, who tells the story as a participant in the action. The writer speaks directly to the reader and forms emotional ties with him or her. The reader feels that he or she knows the narrator, that they are intimate friends. This bond between narrator and reader is much closer than any tie that a remote, unseen director—who shows the story through pictures—might strive to create with a viewer. The intimacy of the warm, comfortable relationship between a first-person narrator and reader can rarely be achieved in film, even with the help of voice-over narration.

Furthermore, the unique personality of the narrator is often extremely important in the first-person novel. Much of this personality, however, may be impossible to show in action or dialogue, for it is the aspect of personality revealed by the way the narrator tells a story, not the way the narrator looks, acts, or speaks in dialogue, that comes across in the novel. This quality, which would certainly be missing from the film, might be called the *narrator's essence*, a quality of personality that gives a certain flair or flavor to the narrative style and that, though essential to the tone of the book, cannot really be translated into film.

Consider, for example, the verbal flow of Holden Caulfield's first-person narration from *The Catcher in the Rye:*

> Where I want to start telling is the day I left Pencey Prep. Pencey Prep is this school that's in Agerstown, Pennsylvania. You probably heard of it. You've probably seen the ads, anyway. They advertise in about a thousand magazines, always showing some hotshot guy on a horse jumping over a fence. Like as if all you ever did at Pencey was play polo all the time. I never once saw a horse anywhere near the place. And underneath the guy on the horse's picture, it always says: "Since 1888 we have been molding boys into splendid, clear-thinking young men." Strictly for the birds. They don't do any damn more molding at Pencey than they do at any other school. And I didn't know anybody there that was splendid and clear thinking at all. Maybe two guys. If that many. And they probably came to Pencey that way.[10]

It is virtually impossible to imagine a film version of *The Catcher in the Rye* without a great deal of voice-over narration running throughout the film. Although such approaches have been tried in film (in adaptations of Nick Hornby's *High Fidelity* and Henry Miller's *Tropic of Cancer*, for example), for the most part filmmakers avoid the extensive use of this device because it interferes with the illusion of naturalism (Figure 13.4).

One fairly successful attempt in which the flavor of the first-person narrator was suggested by the voice-over narration was *To Kill a Mockingbird.* The voice-over, however, was used with restraint, so that the feeling of unnaturalness that often results when someone tells us a story while we are watching it unfold was avoided. And the personality of the narrator here was not as unique as Holden Caulfield's in *The Catcher in the Rye* or that of Miller's narrator in *Tropic of Cancer*, so the burden of style and tone did not rest so much on the narrator's verbal essence. Especially in films that come from original scripts rather than novels, voice-over narration is best used *only* as a method for conveying style and the tone of personality (as in the case of *Taxi Driver*, *Days of Heaven*, and *The Opposite of Sex*; see Chapter 8).

The Problem of Length and Depth

Because of the rather severe limitations imposed on the length of a film and on the amount of material it can successfully treat, a film is forced to suggest pictorially a great many things that a novel can explore in more depth. Novelist/screenwriter William Goldman sums up the problem this way:

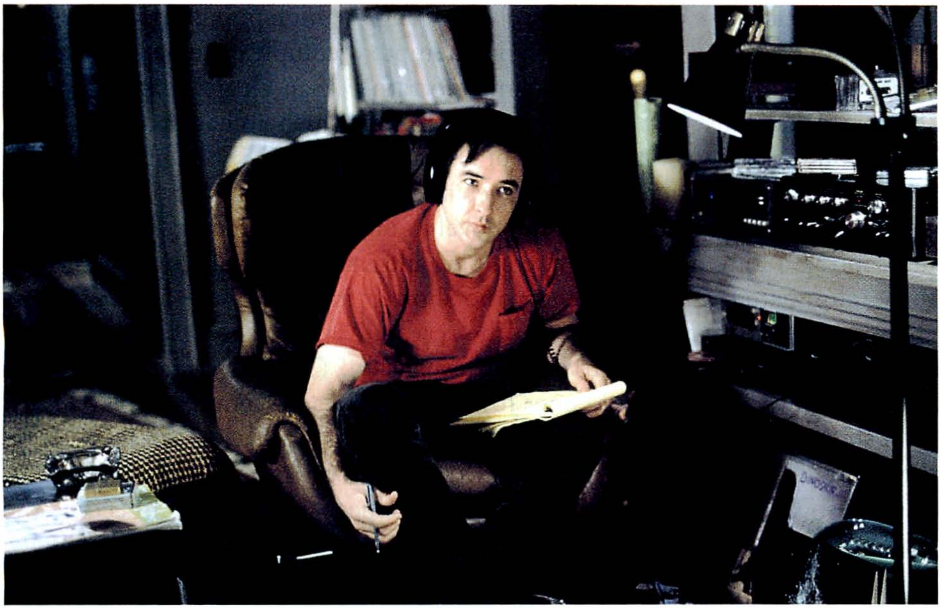


FIGURE 13.4 Sustained "Fourth Wall"-Breaking Voice-Over In Stephen Frears' *High Fidelity,* the protagonist, a record store proprietor played by John Cusack, spends much of his time bursting through what, in theater, is called the "fourth wall." Frequently, throughout the movie, he looks straight into the camera and speaks directly to the audience—sometimes, even, while he is simultaneously carrying on a conversation with another of the narrative's characters.

> When people say, "Is it like the book?" the answer is, "There has never in the history of the world been a movie that's really been like the book." Everybody says how faithful *Gone with the Wind* was. Well, *Gone with the Wind* was a three-and-a-half-hour movie, which means you are talking about maybe a two-hundred-page screenplay of a nine-hundred-page novel in which the novel has, say, five hundred words per page; and the screenplay has maybe forty, maybe sixty, depending on what's on the screen, maybe one hundred and fifty words per page. But you're taking a little, teeny slice; you're just extracting little, teeny *essences* of scenes. All you can ever be in an adaptation is faithful in spirit.[11]

At best, the film version can capture a small fraction of the novel's depth. It is doubtful that it can ever capture much of what lies beneath the surface. The filmmaker, nevertheless, must attempt to suggest the hidden material. The filmmaker's task is eased a bit if he or she can assume that viewers have read the novel. But we still must accept the fact that some dimensions of the novel are inaccessible to film.

A long novel creates an interesting dilemma: Should the filmmaker be satisfied with doing only part of the novel, dramatizing a single action that can be thoroughly treated within cinematic limits? Or should the filmmaker attempt to capture a sense of the whole novel by hitting the high points and leaving the gaps unfilled? If the latter strategy is attempted, complex time and character relationships may wind up being implied rather than clearly stated. Usually the filmmaker must limit not only the depth to which a character can be explored but also the actual number of characters treated. This limitation may give rise to the creation of composite characters, embodying the plot functions of two or more characters from the novel in one film character. Furthermore, in adapting a long novel to film, complex and important subplots might have to be eliminated. Generally, then, the shorter the novel, the better are the chances for effective adaptation to the screen. Many short stories have been translated into film with little or no expansion. (To many readers/viewers, John Huston's adaptation of James Joyce's "The Dead" seems exemplary. Even with short stories, though, the sense of loss in film adaptation can be great, as the short story–to-film video series *The American Short Story* repeatedly demonstrates.) Occasionally, a very popular but superficial novel will become the source for a much more substantial film, such as *The Bridges of Madison County*.

Philosophical Reflections

Often, the most striking passages in a novel are those in which we sense an inner movement of the author's mind toward some truth of life and are aware that our own mind is being stretched by his or her contemplation and reflection. Such passages do not stress external action but rather lead to an internal questioning of the meaning and significance of events, taking the reader on a kind of cerebral excursion into a gray world where the camera cannot go (Figure 13.5). The following passage from Robert Penn Warren's novel *All the King's Men*, for example, could not be effectively treated in film:

> Two hours later, I was in my car and Burden's Landing was behind me, and the bay, and windshield wipers were making their busy little gasp and click like something inside you which had better not stop. For it was raining again. The drops swung and swayed down out of the dark into my headlights like a bead portiere of bright metal beads which the car kept shouldering through.
>
> There is nothing more alone than being in a car at night in the rain. I was in the car. And I was glad of it. Between one point on the map and another point on the map, there was the being alone in the car in the rain. They say you are not you except in terms of relation to other people. If there weren't any other people there wouldn't be any you, and not being you or anything, you can really lie back and get some rest. It is a vacation from being you. There is only the flow of the motor under your foot spinning that frail thread of sound out of its metal gut like a spider, that filament, that nexus, which isn't really there, between the you which you have just left in one place and the you which you will be when you get to the other place.

WILLIE
STARK
GOVERNOR
WILLIE!

FIGURE 13.5 ***All the King's Men* (1949)—Change of Focus** Because Robert Penn Warren's powerful novel centers on a first-person narrator addicted to philosophical reflection, Robert Rossen's film version shifts its focus to the man of action, politician Willie Stark (Broderick Crawford).

> You ought to invite those two you's to the same party some time. Or you might have a family reunion for all the you's with barbecue under the trees. It would be amusing to know what they would say to each other.
>
> But meanwhile, there isn't either one of them, and I am in the car in the rain at night.[12]

Because *All the King's Men* is full of such passages, this one could not be singled out for treatment in voice-over narration. It is also highly improbable that the dramatic scene described here (the narrator, Jack Burden, driving alone in the rain at night) could suggest his thoughts even to a viewer who had read the novel.

When a visual image in a novel is more closely related to a philosophical passage and serves as a trigger to a reflection, there is a greater probability that the filmmaker will be able to suggest the significance of the image to those who have read the novel, but even this is by no means certain. The first of the following two passages from *All the King's Men* gives us a rather clear visual image and could be effectively treated on film. The second is primarily the narrator's reflection on the significance of the visual image and could at best be only suggested in a film:

> In a settlement named Don Jon, New Mexico, I talked to a man propped against the shady side of the filling station, enjoying the only patch of shade in a hundred miles due east. He was an old fellow, seventy-five if a day, with a face like sun-brittled leather and pale-blue eyes under the brim of a felt hat which had once been black. The only thing remarkable about him was the fact that while you looked into the sun-brittled leather of the face, which seemed as stiff and devitalized as the hide on a mummy's jaw, you would suddenly see a twitch in the left cheek, up toward the pale-blue eye. You would think he was going to wink, but he wasn't going to wink. The twitch was simply an independent phenomenon, unrelated to the face or to what was behind the face or to anything in the whole tissue of phenomena which is the world we are lost in. It was remarkable, in that face, the twitch which lived that little life all its own. I squatted by his side, where he sat on a bundle of rags from which the handle of a tin skillet protruded, and listened to him talk. But the words were not alive. What was alive was the twitch, of which he was no longer aware. . . .
>
> We rode across Texas to Shreveport, Louisiana, where he left me to try for north Arkansas. I did not ask him if he had learned the truth in California. His face had learned it anyway, and wore the final wisdom under the left eye. The face knew that the twitch was the live thing. Was all. But, having left that otherwise unremarkable man, it occurred to me, as I reflected upon the thing which made him remarkable, that if the twitch was all, what was it that could know that twitch was all? Did the leg of the dead frog in the laboratory know that the twitch was all when you put the electric current through it? Did the man's face know about the twitch, and how it was all? Ah, I decided, that is the mystery. That is the secret knowledge. That is what you have to go to California to have a mystic vision to find out. That the twitch can know that the twitch is all. Then, having found that out, in the mystic vision, you feel clean and free. You are at one with the Great Twitch.[13]

Summarizing a Character's Past

In the novel, when a character first appears, the novelist often provides us with a quick thumbnail sketch of his or her past, as illustrated by the summary of the origins and history of Billy, the deaf-mute boy from Larry McMurtry's novel *The Last Picture Show:*

> While the boys worked Sam stood by the stove and warmed his aching feet. He wished Sonny weren't so reckless economically, but there was nothing he could do about it. Billy was less of a problem partly because he was so dumb. Billy's real father was an old railroad man who had worked in Thalia for a short time just before the war: his mother was a deaf and dumb girl who had no people except an aunt. The old man cornered the girl in the balcony of the picture show one night and begat Billy. The sheriff saw to it that the old man married the girl, but she

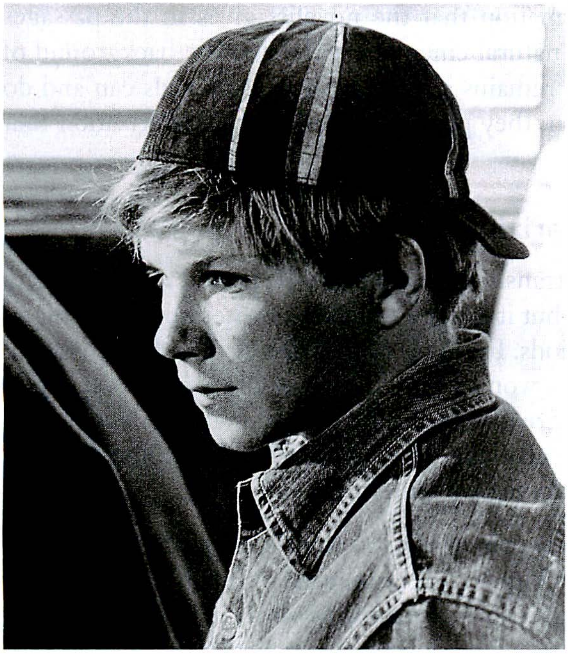


FIGURE 13.6 **Character Without a Past** Sam Bottoms as Billy, the deaf-mute boy in *The Last Picture Show*.

> died when Billy was born and he was raised by the family of Mexicans who helped the old man keep the railroad track repaired. After the war the hauling petered out and the track was taken up. The old man left and got a job bumping cars on a stockyards track in Oklahoma, leaving Billy with the Mexicans. They hung around for several more years, piling prickly pear and grubbing mesquite, but then a man from Plainview talked them into moving out there to pick cotton. They snuck off one morning and left Billy sitting on the curb in front of the picture show.
>
> From then on, Sam the Lion took care of him. Billy learned to sweep, and he kept all three of Sam's places swept out: in return he got his keep and also, every single night, he got to watch the picture show. He always sat in the balcony, his broom at his side: for years he saw every show that came to Thalia and so far as anyone knew, he liked them all. He was never known to leave while the screen was lit.[14]

McMurtry summarizes a character's whole background in two brief paragraphs. In the film version, no background on Billy is provided whatsoever (Figure 13.6). Such information could not be worked into the film's dialogue without bringing in an outsider, some character who didn't know Billy, to ask about his past. But having characters spend a great deal of time talking about the backgrounds of other characters does not make for good cinema—it becomes too static, too talky. The only alternative is to dramatize such paragraphs visually. But this type of material not only lacks the importance to justify such treatment but would have to be forced into the main plot structure in a very unnatural manner.

The kind of background information that the novelist gives in the passages above is simply not suited to a natural cinematic style, and the background of many film characters therefore remains a mystery. Because novels can and do provide this kind of information, they possess a depth in characterization that films usually lack.

The Challenge of Summarizing Events

Film is capable of making clear transitions from one time period to another and suggesting the passage of time, but it is not as effective as literature in filling in the events between the two periods. In *All the King's Men*, Robert Penn Warren summarizes seventeen years of a woman's life in two of the novel's 602 pages; this summary could make an entire film by itself if treated in detail. As you read Warren's summary, consider the challenge it would present to a filmmaker who needed to present this information in a few moments only:

> As for the way Anne Stanton went meanwhile, the story is short. After two years at the refined female college in Virginia, she came home. Adam by this time was in medical school up East. Anne spent a year going to parties in the city, and got engaged. But nothing came of it. After awhile there was another engagement, but something happened again. By this time Governor Stanton was nearly an invalid, and Adam was studying abroad. Anne quit going to parties. . . . She stayed at home with her father, giving him his medicine, patting his pillow, assisting the nurse, reading to him . . . , holding his hand in the summer twilights or in the winter evenings . . . . It took him seven years to die. After the governor had died . . . Anne Stanton lived in the house fronting the sea, with only the company of Aunt Sophonisba, . . . an old colored woman . . . . Then Aunt Sophonisba died, too, and Adam came back from abroad, loaded with academic distinctions and fanatically devoted to his work. Shortly after his return, Anne moved to the city to be near him. By this time she was pushing thirty.
>
> She lived alone in a small apartment in the city. Occasionally she had lunch with some woman who had been a friend of her girlhood but who now inhabited another world. Occasionally she went to a party, at the house of one of the women or at the country club. She became engaged for a third time, this time to a man seventeen or eighteen years older than she, a widower with several children, a substantial lawyer, a pillar of society. . . . But she did not marry him. More and more, as the years passed, she devoted herself to sporadic reading . . . and to work without pay for a settlement house and an orphanage. She kept her looks very well and continued, in a rather severe way, to pay attention to her dress. . . . Occasionally in a conversation she seemed to lose track and fall into self-absorption, to start up overwhelmed by embarrassment and unspoken remorse. Occasionally, too, she practiced the gesture of lifting her hands to her brow, one on each side, the fingers just touching the skin or lifting back the hair, the gesture of a delicate distraction. She was pushing thirty-five. But she could still be good company.[15]

FIGURE 13.7 Cinematic Past Tense In *Little Big Man,* Dustin Hoffman was made up to look 121 years old to portray Jack Crabb, the sole survivor of Custer's Last Stand. As the film begins, the old man is being interviewed by a historian. As Crabb recounts his adventures, the film flashes back to scenes from his youth like this one, in which Faye Dunaway is bathing the young Crabb.

Literary Past Tense Versus Cinematic Present Tense

Regardless of the point of view, most novels are written in the past tense, giving the reader a definite sense that the events happened in the past and are now being remembered and recounted. For the novelist there is a distinct advantage to using the past tense. It gives a clear impression that the novelist has had time to think about the events, measure their importance, reflect on their meaning, and understand their relationship to one another.

In contrast, even though a film may be set in the past or take us into the past by way of flashback, a film unfolds before our eyes, creating a strong sense of present time, of a here-and-now experience. The events in a film are not things that once happened and are now being remembered and recalled—they are happening right now as we watch. Various techniques have been employed to overcome this limitation. Special filters have been used to create a sense of a past time, as with the Rembrandt effect in *The Taming of the Shrew*, the hazy and rather faded memory images from *Summer of '42*, or the sepia-tone snapshot stills in *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid* and *Bonnie and Clyde*. In *Little Big Man*, voice-over narration is used to capture the past tense, the sense of experience remembered: the main character recalls significant events of his long life (Figure 13.7). *Lord of War* begins and ends with Nicolas Cage, as an international arms dealer, speaking directly to the camera while he contemplates his career and his life.

Another important distinction is the amount of time a reader spends in experiencing a novel versus the amount of time a viewer spends in watching a film. If the novel is long, readers may linger in its world for days or even weeks. They can control the pace and stretch the experience out as much as they like; they can even reread passages that interest them. And readers can take time out from the reading process, stopping or freezing the novel's flow to reflect on the writer's ideas at a certain point. In film, however, the pace is predetermined. The visual flow, the sparkling stream of images moves on. Beautiful images, significant truths, strong lines of dialogue cannot be replayed. Thus, the very quickness with which a film sweeps by—its quality of cinematic restlessness—distinguishes it from the novel. (Of course, segments of a film can be replayed on a VCR, laserdisc, or DVD player, but breaking the visual flow significantly alters the viewing experience.)

Other Factors Influencing Adaptations of Fiction

Commercial considerations play a role in determining whether and how a novel is made into a film. A best-seller with a built-in audience makes an attractive project for film producers. It will also influence the filmmaker's approach to the adaptation—if filmmakers know that much of their audience will be coming to the film as loyal fans of the book, they are likely to aim for a close adaptation. Creative tampering with the plot will be kept to a minimum, and the most important characters will be left unchanged and carefully cast. In the best adaptations, no matter how well known the source, the director will attempt to capture the overall emotional spirit or tone of the literary work. If creative and selective choices reflect a true understanding and appreciation of the novel or short story, the filmmaker can remind viewers who have read the book of the rich emotional and philosophical material beneath the surface and make them feel its presence. Outstanding films, such as *The English Patient*, *The World According to Garp*, *The Sweet Hereafter*, and *Sideways* (Figure 13.8), may even be able to suggest to those who haven't read the book the meaning that lies beneath the surface.

Some filmmakers seem to assume that very few filmgoers will know the novel. These filmmakers disregard the basic spirit of the novel in adapting it to film, thus destroying the film completely for those familiar with the book. In such cases, the film must be judged as a completely distinct work of art. This type of film, a very loose adaptation, actually may be better suited to the medium than is the close adaptation. Ironically, a loose adaptation may seem a better film to those who are not familiar with the novel than to those who have read and loved it. Thus, a viewer who read the book before seeing the film may have a distinct advantage when the film depends on the viewer's knowledge of the book. But when the filmmaker so deviates from the essence of the novel as to create an entirely different work, reading the novel before seeing the film is

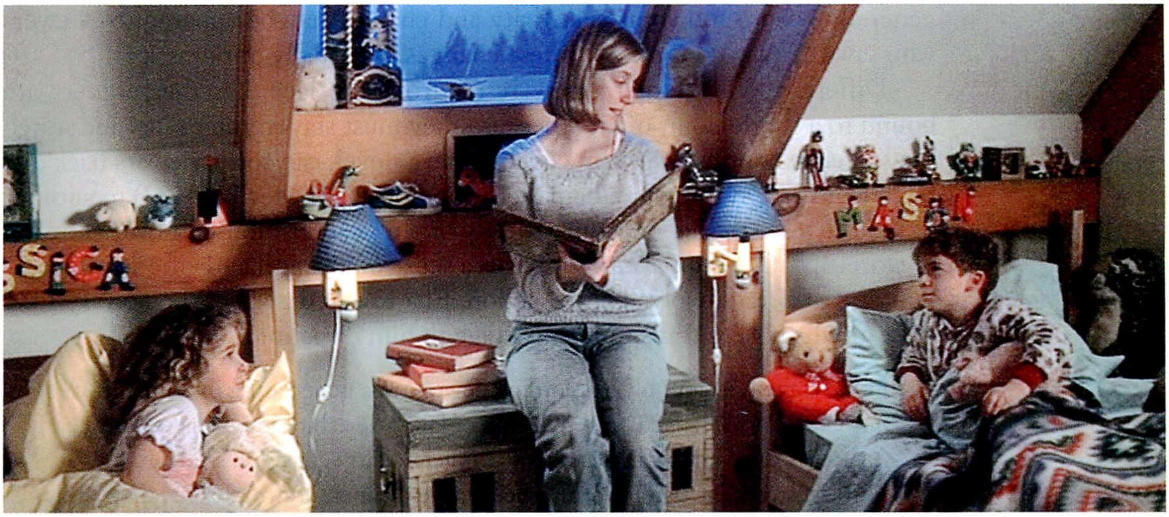


FIGURE 13.8 See the Book, Read the Movie The film *The Sweet Hereafter* independently manages to capture the essential spirit of Russell Banks's emotionally-charged novel—even though screenwriter/director Atom Egoyan jettisoned the immensely "cinematic" ending of the literary work and added a very "literary" device to the movie. In this scene, a central character, babysitter Nicole Burnell (Sarah Polley), reads Robert Browning's "The Pied Piper of Hamelin" as a bedtime story to her charges.

a real disadvantage for the viewer. Already familiar with the novel, the filmgoer will not be able to judge the film as a film without preconceived notions.

It is sometimes advantageous, then, to see the film before reading the book. The film may aid our visual imagination, and we may later read the novel with relatively clear-cut ideas of how the characters look and sound. And certainly if the film is less successful in its own language than its novel source, then such a choice may be wise. For instance, one should probably experience Clint Eastwood's movie version of *Midnight in the Garden of Good and Evil* before reading the immensely popular nonfiction novel upon which it is based. On the other hand, seeing a film first may restrict much of our imaginative participation in reading the book; our brains lock in the screen's particular images of the book's characters forever.

ADAPTATIONS OF PLAYS

The similarity between the film adaptation of a play and the play itself is likely to be greater than the similarity between the film adaptation of a novel and the novel itself. The problems of length and point of view are minimized. The actual running time for a play (not including time between acts or scenes) is seldom longer than three hours. Although some cutting for the film version generally occurs and some selectivity and change may be apparent to viewers who saw the play on the stage, these changes are usually not drastic.

Differences in point of view result from the fact that theatergoers are bound to a single point of view because they must stay in their seats and watch the stage. In contrast, the film version, like a novel, can spirit viewers back and forth from one of the four cinematic viewpoints (see pages 126–133) to another so that they see the action from a variety of physical positions. Through the use of close-ups, the filmmaker can give us a sense of physical and emotional closeness and of being involved in the action. Elia Kazan describes the power of the close-up during his transition from stage to film directing:

> [T]he camera is not only a recording device but a penetrating instrument. It looks *into* a face, not *at* a face. Can this kind of effect be achieved on stage? Not nearly! A camera can even be a microscope. Linger, enlarge, analyze, study. It is a very subtle instrument, can make any face heavier, leaner, drawn, flushed, pale, jolly, depraved, saintly. . . . The close-up underlines the emotional content. There is no technique on stage to match it except an exaggerated hot light or bringing an actor downstage and turning him or her straight out to the audience.
>
> . . . But above all it keeps the story's progress clear. We see in close-up that a person is undecided: the "tight shot" shows the indecision on the person's face, we can read it as clearly as if it were spelled out in words—but with all the values of ambivalence. Then we see the decision being made and the new course of action taken. Except for that close-up, the change of intent or direction would be inexplicable. Because of it, the progression of the story, the "inner line," is kept clear.[16]

This kind of closeness can sometimes be achieved in the small or intimate theater, but the point of view and the physical distance between theatergoer and actors remain essentially the same throughout the play.

In both media the director is able to comment on or interpret the action for the audience, but the film director probably has more options and techniques available for expressing subjective and interpretive views. Stage directors must rely primarily on lighting for these effects; screen directors have at their command additional techniques such as fast motion, slow motion, distorting lenses, changes from sharp to soft focus, and music. Some carry-over exists between the two media, however, for some stage productions simulate certain cinematic effects. For example, a flashing strobe light on actors in motion gives the effect of the fast, jerky motion of the early silent comedies and is used by stage directors to create this effect.

Structural Divisions

Unlike films, plays have clear-cut structural divisions—acts or scenes—that influence the positioning of peaks of dramatic power and intensity. The end of an act may build to a roaring emotional peak, setting up a strong dramatic echo to carry over into the next act. Film has **sequences,** which roughly correspond to acts in plays, but one continuous sequence flows smoothly into the next. Sometimes there are similarities even here, however, for the **freeze frame** gives a sequence a sense of ending much as the conclusion of an act might do. The cinematic device also approximates the effect of the **tableau,** a technique in which actors onstage held dramatic postures for a few seconds before the curtain fell in order to etch the scene deeply in the audience's memory.

Such structural divisions may in some cases work well in both media, but sometimes the end of a stage act builds up to a pitch that is too high for a cinema sequence, where its power would seem unnatural or out of place. Perceptive critics spot such problems. Renata Adler described them in her review of *The Lion in Winter*: "The film is far too faithful to the play. It divides neatly into acts, has a long sag in the middle, is weakest in its climaxes."[17] Neil Simon, who adapts his own plays for the screen, describes the difference this way:

> The curtain doesn't come down; and there are no particular breaks—but it does have a rhythm of its own. You set up the problem, which is the first act; the second act is the complication of the problem; and the third act is the working out of the problem. So it has to have a certain harmony to it, like a piece of music; but I don't have to look for a curtain line in a screenplay as I would with a play.[18]

Sense of Space

The change most certain to occur in a film adaptation of a play is the breaking out of the tight confining physical bonds and limitations imposed by the stage setting. Some kind of movement in space is almost essential to film, and to keep the image moving, the filmmaker usually expands the concepts of visual space involved (Figure 13.9). He or she may find some excuse to get the action moved outdoors for a while at least or may decide to introduce as much camera movement and as many editorial cuts between different viewpoints as possible to keep the image alive.

In *The Sound of Music* screenwriter Ernest Lehman found himself with a special problem. The "Do, Re, Mi" song had been performed on the stage in its entirety in the living-room set and ran a total of 11½ minutes. Knowing that a sequence of this length confined in a room would create a claustrophobic effect, Lehman wrote it as a montage sequence, cutting to various locations with the children in different costumes as the song progressed. The impression thus created was that the sequence covered a period of weeks. This solution also made it more convincing that Maria had established a better relationship with the children. Some of the children had obviously grown to like her during the montage. An additional bonus was that director Robert Wise was able to use some of the beautiful scenery around Salzburg.

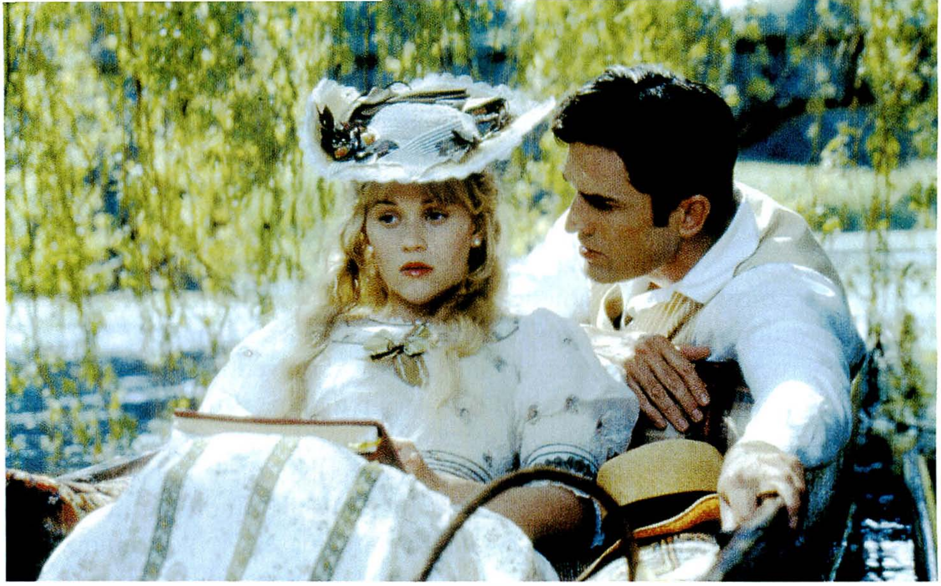


FIGURE 13.9 "Opening Up" a Famous Play The 2002 movie *The Importance of Being Earnest* (starring Reese Witherspoon and Rupert Everett) insisted upon taking its characters and action outside the confined sets of Oscar Wilde's best comic drama. Director Oliver Parker's version of "nature" is pretty to see, but it may manage to help distract many viewers from the playwright's brilliant dialogue and tone.

In the film version of *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* Mike Nichols moved the camera about constantly, dollying it down hallways and around corners for cinematic effect. He also extended space by adding the scene in the roadhouse, which required a wild car ride to get there and back (in the play, this scene was confined to the living-room set). The film of *Long Day's Journey Into Night* did not go to such extremes, but it employed camera movement and editing to keep the image alive in what was a very confining set—down to the final set-up. Sidney Lumet observes that, in the playwright's work,

> [t]he characters are on a downward spiral of epic, tragic proportions. To me, *Long Day's Journey* defies definition. One of the nicest things that ever happened to me happened on that picture: the last shot. The last shot of the movie is of Katharine Hepburn, Ralph Richardson, Jason Robards, and Dean Stockwell sitting around a table. Each is lost in his or her own addictive fantasy, the men from booze, Mary Tyrone from morphine. A distant lighthouse sweeps its beam across the room every forty-five seconds. The camera pulls back slowly, and the walls of the room gradually disappear. Soon the characters are sitting in a black limbo, getting tinier and tinier as the light sweeps across them. Fade out. After he saw the movie, Jason told me that he had read a letter of Eugene O'Neill's in which he describes his image of his family "sitting in blackness, around the table-top of the world." I hadn't read that letter. My heart leapt with happiness. That's what happens when you let the material tell you what it's about. But the material had better be great.[19]

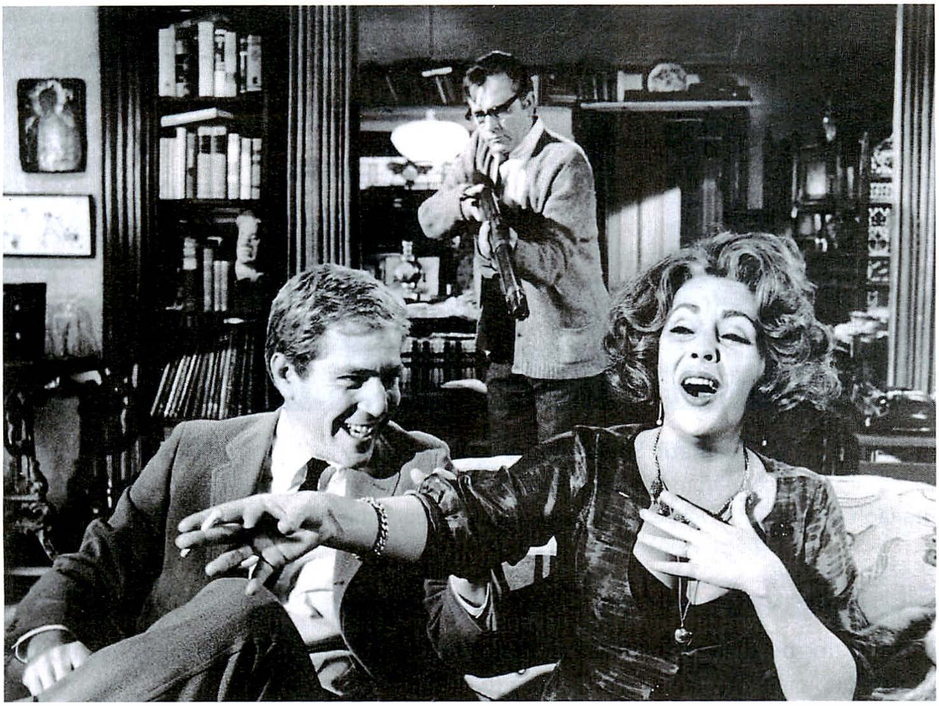


FIGURE 13.10 Characters on a Powder Keg The tightly confined set of *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* makes the psychological conflicts especially explosive.

Such changes may alter a play's total effect significantly. Narrowly confined, restricted movement in a play may serve a powerful dramatic end. By keeping the physical action and movement static, by narrowing the physical boundaries in which the characters operate and bottling up the dramatic scene, the director is often able to intensify the conflict. Dramatic tension created by psychological conflicts and developed through verbal means often seems more potentially explosive when its physical setting is narrow and confined (Figure 13.10). In the stage version of *Virginia Woolf* the guests, Nick and Honey, are virtual prisoners in the home of George and Martha. The narrow confines of the set stress their trapped feeling. Although the trip to the roadhouse in the film version adds a cinematic quality, it also relaxes the tension of confinement to some degree.

Film is simply better and more naturally suited to action and movement, the kind provided by physical conflicts on an epic scale. The restless need for motion built into the film medium makes it difficult to cope with static, confined dramatic tension. Film builds its tension best through rhythmic physical action and especially by physical movement toward resolution. Film is also better equipped to portray physical conflict than the stage. Camera angles, sound effects, and the ability to draw the viewer into close emotional involvement make a fistfight on film much more real than it could ever appear onstage.

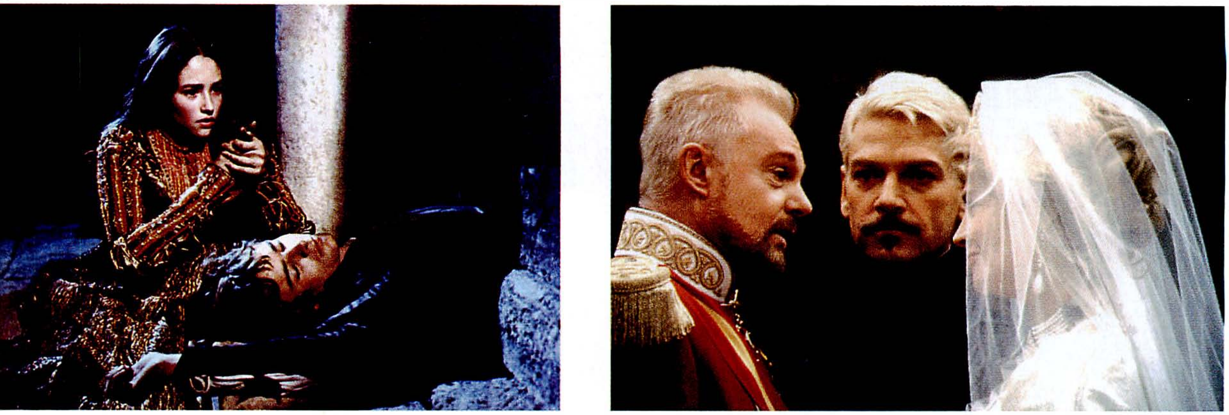


FIGURE 13.11 Cinematic Shakespeare Olivia Hussey as Juliet and Leonard Whiting as Romeo in a scene from Franco Zeffirelli's version of *Romeo and Juliet* (left). Kenneth Branagh (shown with Derek Jacobi and Julie Christie) in his uncut *Hamlet* (1996).

Film Language Versus Stage Language

Film dialogue differs from stage dialogue. Generally, film dialogue is simpler than that used on the stage. Language that is too refined, too elaborate, and too poetic is generally out of place and unnatural in film. Poetic dialogue is usually better suited to the stage. If film is to speak poetically, it must do so not with words but with its primary element—the image. Director Nicholas Ray observed:

> In the theatre, words are eighty to eighty-five percent of the importance of what is happening to you for your comprehension. In film, words are about twenty percent. It's a different figure, but it's almost an opposite ratio. For the words are only a little bit of embroidery, a little bit of lacework.[20]

Because the visual image carries so much more weight in film than on the stage, much that might require dialogue on the stage is shown pictorially in film. Filmmakers generally prefer to advance the action by showing what happens rather than by having someone—a character or narrator—tell what happens.

Filmmakers who have attempted to bring Shakespeare to the screen have had to contend with works that are defined by their highly verbal and poetic texts. Director Baz Luhrmann chose to foreground the jarring differences between poetic language and cinematic imagery in his surreal *Romeo + Juliet*. Director Franco Zeffirelli offered a naturalistic version of the tragedy, capturing the spirit of Shakespeare's love story without using the entire text (Figure 13.11). Actor/director Kenneth Branagh appears intent upon settling for no less than the integration of the fully cinematic and the literary in his *Henry V*, *Much Ado About Nothing*, *Hamlet* (unabridged), and *Love's Labour's Lost*.

Stage Conventions Versus Cinema Conventions

Certain conventions that are perfectly acceptable on the stage cannot always be reproduced cinematically. Among these is the Shakespearean soliloquy. In Sir Laurence Olivier's adaptation of *Hamlet*, for example, the "Frailty, thy name is woman" soliloquy is filmed in the following manner: Through some parts of the speech, Hamlet's face is pictured in tight close-up without lip movement while Olivier's voice speaks the lines on the soundtrack as an interior monologue. At times, Hamlet's lips move, perhaps to show the intensity of his thought. Whatever the intention, the Shakespearean soliloquy, with its ornate, poetic language and structure, does not translate effectively as a cinematic interior monologue, and it seems equally artificial if done as it would be on the stage. Theatergoers accept, even expect, such artificiality. Generally, however, viewers of movies have been programmed to think of film as a more realistic medium.

There is also the problem of whether to leave space for laughter in the screen version of a comedy. On the stage, the actors can simply wait for laughter to subside before resuming. But Neil Simon says that laughter is too unpredictable to leave space for it in the screenplay:

> Well, you can't really. First of all, you don't know when it's going to come. If you have ten people in the movie theater that day—as opposed to a thousand—and if you leave the space, that gap is going to seem like an hour because you won't get that kind of laughter. What I try to do is cover it with some sort of business. If you think something is a really big funny moment, it's always safe to cover it with something visual and not come in with another line right on top of it.[21]

Surrealistic and expressionistic stage sets also cause difficulties in translation to film. To some degree, they can be represented or suggested through the use of special camera techniques, such as unusual camera angles and distorting lenses. But for the most part we expect the physical setting and background in film to be realistic. For example, today we would probably reject as noncinematic the kind of distorted, expressionistic set used in *The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari*, made in 1919. If *Caligari* were remade, it would probably achieve its strange effects solely through the use of special filters and distorting lenses (Figure 13.12). Again, whereas the stage audience expects the stage set or some part of it to suggest or represent reality without being real, the modern film audience is conditioned to expect real settings and will accept no substitute. This observation is equally true of other aspects of stagecraft as they are translated into film. For example, when Peter Shaffer's *Equus*, a play about a disturbed stable boy who mutilates the eyes of horses, was produced on the stage, it utilized actors dressed in stylized wire armatures to represent its horses. But in Sidney Lumet's film version, real horses were thought necessary, and the effect of the violence shifted radically from mainly symbolic to horrifically realistic (Figure 13.13).

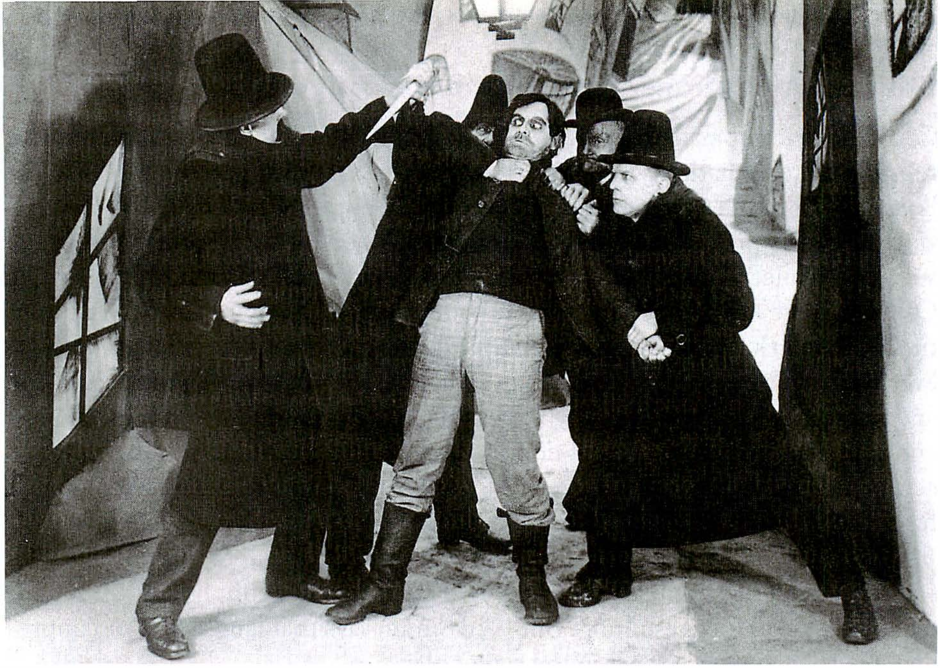


FIGURE 13.12 Expressionistic Distortion of the Set Robert Wiene's *The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari* (1919).

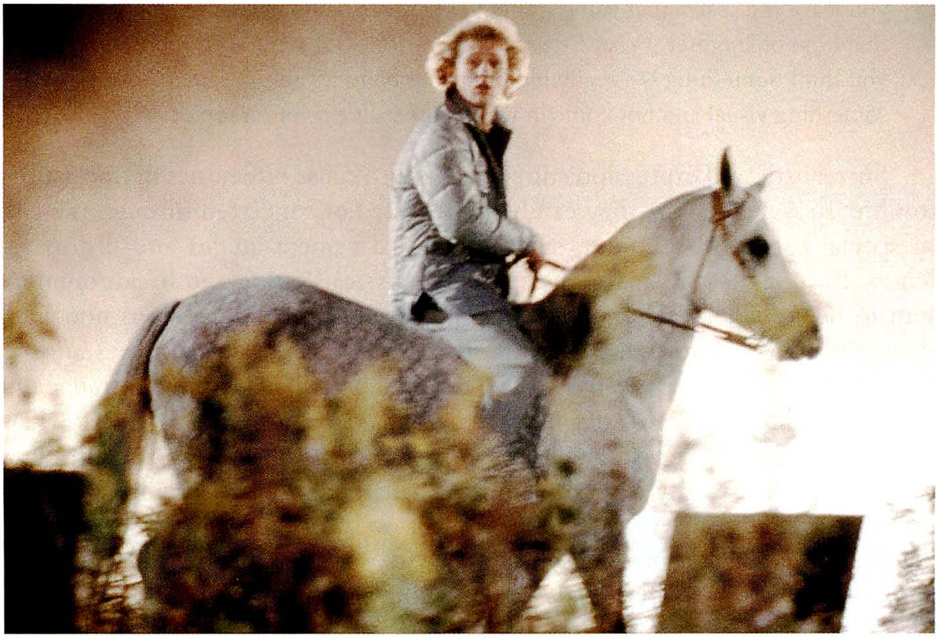


FIGURE 13.13 Real Horses In the film *Equus*, a stable boy (Peter Firth) is accused of blinding the horses in his care. Here, the animals are very real; in the original stage production on which the film is based, the horses were stylized and representational, formed of wire frames upon actors' bodies, and their effect on the audience was radically different.

Other Changes

Other types of change can be expected in an adaptation of a play. Even if the original stage actors of a successful play are available, the screen version may not feature them, either because some of the stage actors will not be convincing in front of the camera or because a bigger name is needed as a box-office attraction. Thus, Audrey Hepburn was hired to play Eliza Doolittle in the film *My Fair Lady*, rather than the less-celebrated Julie Andrews (who, ironically, earned an Oscar within the year for her title role in *Mary Poppins*). Kathy Bates, when she was known mainly as an excellent stage actor, lost a central role in *'Night, Mother* to Sissy Spacek for the same reason and, later, a role in *Frankie and Johnny* to Michelle Pfeiffer for slightly different ones. At the time of Pfeiffer's casting, much was made in the press about the cruel employment contrast between the brilliant but "stout" brunette stage actress and the miscast slender blonde movie star. Of course, Bates soon settled that score with an Oscar of her own for film acting in *Misery*.

In the past, the big-city theater audience was assumed to be more sophisticated than the nationwide movie audience, and changes to the play were made with this difference in mind. An effort was usually made to simplify the play in the film version, and harsh language was censored to some degree. Endings were even changed to conform to the expectations of the mass audience. The stage version of *The Bad Seed* (1956), for example, ends chillingly with little Rhoda, the beautiful but evil child-murderer who has killed at least three people, alive and well, still charming her naive and unsuspecting father. In the ending of the film version, Rhoda is struck by lightning; in this way the demands of the mass audience for poetic justice are satisfied (Figure 13.14). Such changes, of course, are less frequent since the Motion Picture Rating System went into effect in the late 1960s. A modern version of *The Bad Seed* would probably keep Rhoda alive for a possible sequel.

FROM FACT TO FILM: REALITY TO MYTH

Controversies about the factual or fictional nature of some films showcase another problem for the filmgoer, a problem similar in some ways to those presented by adaptations of novels or plays. Whether Jerry Lee Lewis really torched a piano, as portrayed in *Great Balls of Fire*, is not an earthshaking question. But when events of recent history of a magnitude sufficient to be memorable to many people are twisted and distorted or ignored by filmmakers, the issue of factual accuracy versus creative license raises some genuine concern (Figure 13.15).

The mixture of fictional materials with a factual background has always brought some confusion to filmgoers. As we noted in Chapter 11, President Woodrow Wilson was so impressed with D. W. Griffith's *The Birth of a Nation* that he called it "history writ with lightning." Although Griffith's story focused on the Civil War and its aftermath in the South during Reconstruction, he

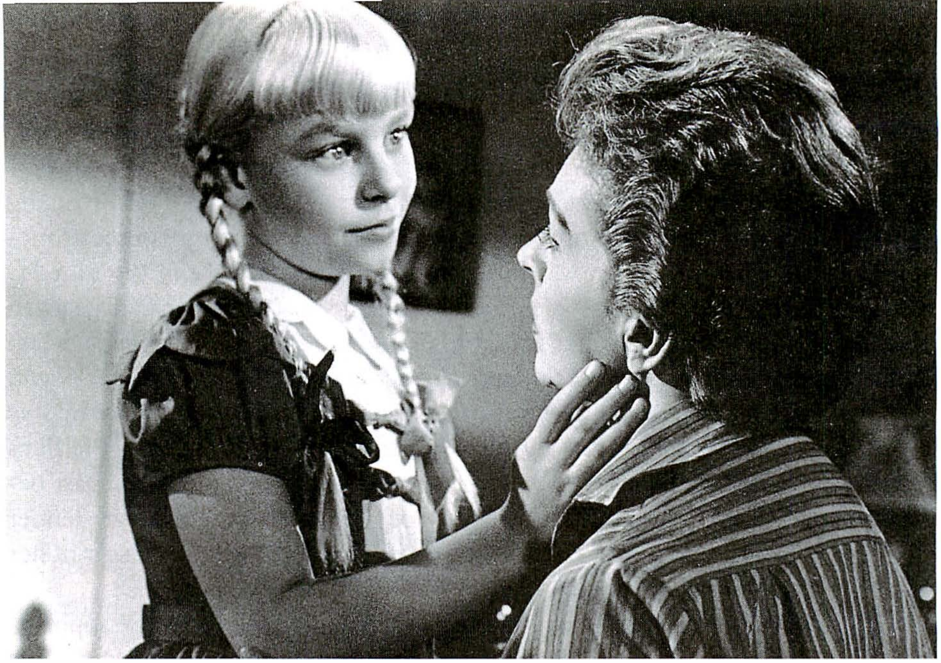


FIGURE 13.14 Poetic Justice Sweet little Rhoda (Patty McCormack), shown here charming her mother (Nancy Kelly) in a scene from the film version of *The Bad Seed,* died at the end of the film but survived in the play.

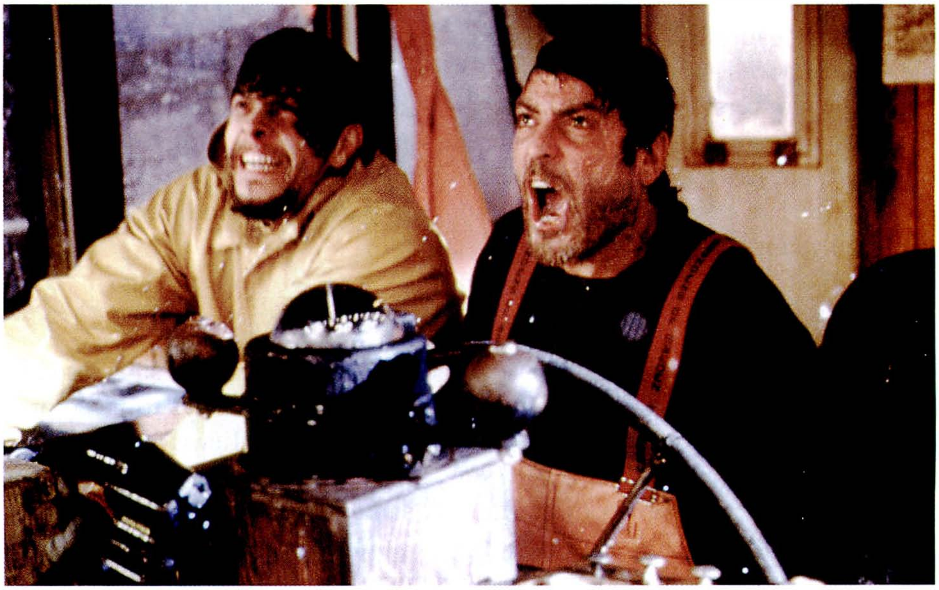


FIGURE 13.15 Perfectly True? In *A Perfect Storm*, director Wolfgang Petersen and screenwriter Bill Wittliff transformed Sebastian Junger's speculative account of what happened on the *Andrea Gail* fishing boat into a Hollywood story. In the book, the boat's demise is caused by forces outside the crew's control, but in the movie, the men's actions lead to disaster.

based his film on a sentimental and highly racist novel, *The Clansman,* and did not even attempt to pass it off as factual. Yet some of the devices he used to establish the setting for certain scenes gave the film an aura of authenticity. For example, a still frame sets up a tableau of the South Carolina state legislature in session with the following detailed caption:

> The negro party in control of the State House of Representatives, Columbia, South Carolina. 101 blacks against 23 whites.—An historical facsimile of the actual photographed scene.

Alan Parker's *Mississippi Burning* takes its title from the official FBI file on the case that it portrays. *Time* critic Richard Corliss described the problem raised by Parker's approach to the subject:

> *Mississippi Burning* is a fiction based on fact; it invents characters and bends the real-life plot; it colors in the silhouette of events with its own fanciful strokes and highlights. In focusing on the agents, Parker and screenwriter Chris Gerolmo italicize the gumshoe heroism of white officials while downplaying the roles of black and white visionaries who risked, and sometimes lost, their lives to help fashion a free America.
>
> At issue is the freedom of a filmmaker—or any artist—to twist the facts as they are recalled, to shape the truth as it is perceived. May a movie libel the historical past? And has *Mississippi Burning* done so? Artistic liberty vs. social responsibility: the stakes are high. The memories are indelible. The battle lines are drawn.[22]

Similar charges of excessive cinematic license have been made against the adaptation of Sylvia Nasar's biography of John Forbes Nash, Jr., *A Beautiful Mind.* The filmmakers leave out significant aspects of Nash's life that do not fit with their theme of the triumph of the human spirit or that paint a less than sympathetic portrait of their hero. Writing for salon.com, critic Charles Taylor explains his objection to this kind of adaptation:

> "A Beautiful Mind" is a typical example of Hollywood's chickening out on chancy material, softening the edges of a story and characters, and shoehorning things into a tidy inspirational package. . . . It's just not our emotions that are being played on here, it's not just our intelligence being insulted because of Ron Howard and Akiva Goldman's presumption that we won't have any interest in a character whom it's not always possible to like. It's John Nash's life, being turned into an Oscar machine and an easy way to jerk tears.[23]

When Robert Redford directed *Quiz Show,* he was "accused of hedging the truth to improve the story of the movie and boost box office receipts." The film's critics charged that

> both the [real] game show and "Quiz Show" seem to dodge the truth and create clear heroes and villains for popularity's sake. . . .

> From invented dialogue to fabricated court transactions, "Quiz Show" often takes broad dramatic license. Because the film uses the names of real people (some still living) and has been positioned by its makers as a righteous statement on ethics and morality, the "Quiz Show" deviations raise provocative questions about Hollywood's conscience—or its lack of one.
>
> "If Robert Redford had taken this movie and had changed the names, then I would have no argument," says Don Enright, whose father, Dan, produced "Twenty-One" and is vilified in "Quiz Show."
>
> "But as this movie sits, it is now a half-truth, and a half-truth is the blackest of lies, because it's based on fact and it's impossible to fight."[24]

The real problem with films like *Mississippi Burning*, *A Beautiful Mind*, and *Quiz Show* is that the viewers have no way of knowing how the factual material has been handled or distorted. The confusion can be cleared up with the simple addition of a disclaimer. If films can protect themselves by declaring that the events and characters depicted are completely fictitious, they should perhaps be required to inform viewers of how fact and fiction are blended. A disclaimer shown before both episodes of the ABC miniseries *Small Sacrifices* (starring Farrah Fawcett) provides a clear solution to the problem (the story was based on the true story of a mother convicted of shooting her three children):

> The following dramatization is based on the book *Small Sacrifices* by Ann Rule. It contains composite changes, name changes and the resequencing of events. Some dramatic license has been taken in the resequencing of events.

Another approach is the disclaimer appearing before the opening credits for *Walking Tall* (1973):

> A motion picture suggested by certain events in the life of Buford Pusser, Sheriff of McNary County, Tennessee . . . a living legend.

Even though the parallels between *Citizen Kane* and the life of William Randolph Hearst are obvious, *Kane* keeps enough distance from the Hearst story to qualify as a fictionalized biography: The names are changed; the mistress is an opera singer, not an actress; and so on. The RKO legal department, however, was concerned enough to insert the following disclaimer at the film's beginning:

> This is not the story of any man be he living or dead. This is the story of the power and strength which impels the lives of many great men seen through the eyes of little men.

When Orson Welles learned of the statement, he was furious about its content (possibly because he had not written it) and replaced it with his own version:

> *Citizen Kane* is an examination of the personal character of a public man, a portrait according to the testimony of the intimates of his life. These, and Kane himself, are wholly fictitious.

Later the disclaimer was dropped.

Hoffa, which plays fast and loose with the disappearance of Jimmy Hoffa because nobody really knows what ultimately happened to the former Teamster boss, includes an almost illegible disclaimer at the end of the credits. However, the holes in the factual record were important to Jack Nicholson in his performance.

> It's not a biography, it's a portrait, and there is a difference. Because no one really knows what happened to Hoffa, it gives you license to do a lot of guessing with other things too. I had a certain amount of license in my job as an actor to have an inside interpretation of the guy.[25]

It may be a bit more difficult to take liberties with the accepted facts about a personality with Mount Rushmore status, as the Merchant-Ivory team found with their release of *Jefferson in Paris*.

Oliver Stone's *JFK* has seemed to many to be the most arrogant of the fact-to-film efforts, largely because of the docudrama techniques used (newsreel footage, excerpts from the famous Zapruder film showing the assassination of the president, and familiar real names of those involved in later investigations), a clear antigovernment bias, a far-fetched conspiracy theory, and the lack of any kind of disclaimer. (Later, Stone's *Nixon* created a similar controversy.) *Executive Action*, a 1973 conspiracy film focusing on the many inconsistencies in the official explanation of the events in Dallas, used a beginning-of-the-film disclaimer that would have made *JFK* more acceptable:

> Although much of this film is fiction, much of it is also based on documented historical fact. Did the conspiracy we described actually exist? We do not know. We merely suggest that it could have existed.

Otherwise, however, *JFK* is much superior in its filmmaking to *Executive Action*, which is rated in Leonard Maltin's indispensable *Movie & Video Guide* as a "BOMB."[26]

We should approach any fact-based film with care, therefore, and not assume that everything on film represents the truth. At the same time, however, we can take advantage of the opportunities film presents to imagine the past and experience it through the filmmaker's vision (Figure 13.16).

Sometimes, even fiction films must follow these necessities. Although director Stephen Daldry's *The Hours* is definitely not a nonfiction work, one of its three main characters (women from different times and environments during the twentieth century) attempts to recapture a factual person: Virginia Woolf, the celebrated English novelist and critic. Indeed, the most minute historical details of Woolf's suicide in 1941 are reproduced in both this film and in the Pulitzer Prize–winning novel from which it was adapted by the playwright David Hare. Michael Cunningham, the novel's author, took great literary care to honor the historical truth of Virginia Woolf's death. But he also sought to

FIGURE 13.16 Historical Accuracy With the exception of some too-modern exploding cannonballs, *Glory* has been praised as one of the most historically accurate Civil War films. Denzel Washington, pictured here, won an Academy Award as best supporting actor in that film. Likewise, *Saving Private Ryan,* starring Tom Hanks and Matt Damon, was considered to be meticulous in its depiction of the visual details of World War II.

bring the texture of her thematic truth to the fictional characters he was inspired to create by her extraordinary life and work.

For most novelists, one witty contemporary American author once observed, the ideal relationship with filmmakers would involve a book's being "optioned" but never getting produced. In this scenario, of course, the novelist would receive considerable remuneration but would not have to endure the stereotypical pain of seeing his or her child displayed—cosmetically and even genetically altered—at the local multiplex. Upon watching the film version of his novel, though, Michael Cunningham was almost apologetic in his enthusiastic embrace of the finished work. In an essay written for *The New York Times* when the film went into wide release in 2003, Cunningham announced, "I find myself in an enviable if slightly embarrassing position as one of the only living American novelists happy about his experience in Hollywood." But he reached this conclusion only after examining the film with the vivid awareness of how it was couched in a language very different from that of his novel. When Cunningham had visited the set of the film, he had observed the work of Nicole Kidman (as Woolf), Julianne Moore, and Meryl Streep, and, as he tells us, he

> understood that what you lose in turning fiction into film—the ability to enter your characters' minds, and to scan their pasts for keys to their futures—can be compensated for by actors. You lose interiority. You gain Ms. Streep's ability to separate an egg with a furious precision that communicates more about [her character's] history and present state of mind than several pages of prose might do. You gain Ms. Moore's face when she looks at her son with an agonizing mix of adoration and terror, knowing she will harm him no matter what she does.
>
> Actors, too, if they're this good, can introduce details you can't convey on paper, if only because by writing them down you'd render them too obvious. Actors have the incidental at their disposal. Ms. Streep's [character] is stunningly complex, in part because she creates a whole person out of movements, expressions and inflections. . . . If there's a way to do things like that on paper, I haven't found it. . . . It's no wonder we love the movies as much as we do.[27]

Finally, any true twenty-first-century literature *and* movie lover would like to think it was no accident that, in the same issue of the *Times* containing this paean by Michael Cunningham, a similar essay by novelist Louis Begley appeared. In contrast to *The Hours*, a rather "faithful" film adaptation, *About Schmidt*, starring Jack Nicholson, radically transformed its source material. In this case, the filmmakers even transfigured the protagonist from a "fancy New York lawyer" to an Omaha actuary. Nevertheless, while noting the changes, Begley called his reaction to the film "atypically benevolent," observing that "for all the . . . changes in the plot and milieu, my most important themes were treated with great intelligence and sensitivity. . . . I was able to hear them rather like melodies transposed into a different key."[28]

ANALYZING ADAPTATIONS

On Adaptations of Novels

After reading the novel, but before seeing the film, consider these questions concerning the novel.

1. How well is the novel suited for adaptation to the screen? What natural cinematic possibilities does it have?
2. Judged as a whole, does the novel come closer to stressing a sensuous and emotional rendering of experience (as in the Hemingway excerpts) or an intellectual analysis of experience (as in the James excerpt)?
3. How essential is the author's verbal style to the spirit or essence of the novel? Could this verbal style be effectively translated into a pictorial style?
4. What is the novel's point of view? What will necessarily be lost by translating the story into film?

5. If the novel is written from the first-person point of view (as told by a participant in the action), how much of the spirit of the novel is expressed through the narrator's unique narrative style—that is, the particular flair or flavor built into his or her *way of telling* the story rather than the story itself? Could this verbal style be suggested through a minimum of voice-over narration on the soundtrack, so that the device would not seem unnatural? Is the feeling of a warm, intimate relationship between reader and narrator established by the novel, as though the story is being told by a very close friend? How could this feeling be captured by the film?
6. Is the novel's length suited to a close adaptation, or must the novel be drastically cut to fit the usual film format? Which choice would seem most logical for the filmmaker in adapting the novel:
   a. Should he or she try to capture a sense of the novel's wholeness by hitting the high points without trying to fill in all the gaps? What high points do you think must be dramatized?
   b. Should the filmmaker limit himself or herself to a thorough dramatization of just part of the novel? What part of the novel could be thoroughly dramatized to make a complete film? What part of the story or what subplots should be left out of the film version?
7. How much of the novel's essence depends on the rendition of mental states: memories, dreams, or philosophical reflections? How effectively can the film version be expected to express or at least suggest these things?
8. How much detail does the author provide on the origins and history of the characters? How much of this material can be conveyed cinematically?
9. What is the total time period covered by the novel? Can the time period covered be adequately compressed into a normal-length film?

After seeing the film version, reconsider your answers to the questions listed above, and also answer the following.

10. Is the film version a close or a loose adaptation of the novel? If it is a loose adaptation, is the departure from the novel due to the problems caused by changing from one medium to another or by the change in creative personnel?
11. Does the film version successfully capture the spirit or essence of the novel? If not, why does it fail?
12. What are the major differences between the novel and the film, and how can you explain the reasons for these differences?
13. Does the film version successfully suggest meanings that lie beneath the surface and remind you of their presence in the novel? In which scenes is this accomplished?
14. Did reading the novel enhance the experience of seeing the film, or did it take away from it? Why?
15. How well do the actors in the film fit your preconceived notions of the characters in the novel? Which actors exactly fit your mental image of the characters? How do the actors who don't seem properly cast vary from your mental image? Can you justify, from the director's point of view, the casting of these actors who don't seem to fit the characters in the novel?

On Adaptations of Plays

1. How does the film version differ from the play in its concept of physical space? How does this difference affect the overall spirit or tone of the film version?
2. How cinematic is the film version? How does it use special camera and editing techniques to keep the visual flow of images in motion and to avoid the static quality of a filmed stage play?
3. What events that are only described in dialogue during the play does the filmmaker show happening? How effective are these added scenes?
4. Are the play's structural divisions (into acts and scenes) still apparent in the film, or does the film successfully blend these divided parts into a unified cinematic whole?
5. What stage conventions employed in the play are not translatable into cinematic equivalents? What difficulties and changes does this bring about?
6. How does the acting style of the film differ from that of the play? What factors account for these differences?
7. What basic differences can be observed in the dialogue in the two versions? Are individual speeches generally longer in the play or in the film? In which version is the poetic quality of the language more apparent?
8. What other important changes have been made in the film version? Can you justify these in terms of change in medium, change in creative personnel, or differences in moral attitudes and sophistication of the intended audience?

From Fact to Film

1. How does the film story differ from the true story or historical event on which it is based?
2. Can these changes be justified for dramatic purposes?
3. Do the changes significantly distort the essence of the story and the characters involved? How?
4. Was any disclaimer provided to warn viewers that the film was not completely factual? Was there any reason for viewers to believe they were watching a completely factual story?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

Obtain a copy of Ernest Hemingway's early story "Hills Like White Elephants." It should be easy to locate in either its original publication source—the author's short fiction collection *Men Without Women*—or in anthologies of the author's work.

After reading the exceedingly brief story several times, find and watch a videocassette version of the made-for-HBO film, directed by Tony Richardson (*Tom Jones*), that was based upon it. (The movie, part of a grouping of short films called *Women & Men: Stories of Seduction*, has still not been made available on DVD; it stars James Woods and Melanie Griffith.)

The screenwriters on this project were the married team of Joan Didion and John Gregory Dunne, who are well known, separately and together, for both

fiction and nonfiction. Note carefully how Didion and Dunne have adapted Hemingway's celebrated story from the page to the video screen. Identify and catalog their cinematic deductions from and additions to the narrative—no matter how small they may seem. Finally, attempt to gauge the effects, both positive and negative, that this literary/cinematic math appears to create in us as readers/watchers of this metamorphosis.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

The Sweet Hereafter:

For students of the prose fiction-to-film adaptation process, this DVD is extraordinarily valuable. Not only do both director Atom Egoyan and novelist Russell Banks participate in full audio commentary, but they also appear together in a video discussion of the book and movie. And a considerable portion of the included Charlie Rose interview with Egoyan focuses upon the director's model-breaking experiences in adapting the script himself—and upon the creative trust and certification he received from Banks. In addition, this disc provides the full text (with illustrations) of the Robert Browning poem "The Pied Piper of Hamelin" that Egoyan grafted into the script.

Minority Report:

On disc two in this two-disc set, Steven Spielberg presents a substantial documentary called "*Minority Report* from Story to Screen," which is divided into the sections "The Story/The Debate" and "The Players." Screenwriter Jon Cohen comments upon his decisions and experiences in adapting the Phillip K. Dick story to motion picture form.

Secret Window:

In a nineteen-minute feature called "From Book to Film," screenwriter/director David Koepp discusses his experiences in adapting one of the stories in Stephen King's collection *Four Past Midnight* for film. Actors Johnny Depp, John Turturro, Charles S. Dutton, Timothy Hutton, and Maria Bello also talk on camera about the process.

The War of the Worlds (2005): Two-Disc Limited Edition:

Three descendants of novelist H. G. Wells speak with Steven Spielberg about the author's probable reactions to how this director and his screenwriters (Josh Friedman and David Koepp) have handled the famous science fiction work. Spielberg seems fascinated that Wells "was a scientist who allowed himself to have an imagination."

The Constant Gardener:

A special featurette, "John Le Carré: From Page to the Screen," provides not only interviews with director Fernando Meirelles and producer Simon Channing-Williams, but also a statement from the novelist, who examines his expectations for Hollywood's treatment of his work. Le Carré announces, "The job of the movie . . . is to take the minimum intention of the novel and illustrate it with the maximum of freedom in movie language, in movie drama. There's hardly a line left, there's hardly a scene intact in the movie that comes from my novel. Yet, I don't know of a better translation from novel to film."

Memento:

The most "useful" part of this disc for adaptation study is its full-text inclusion of the original short story "Memento Mori" by Jonathan Nolan, the director/screenwriter's brother. From this narrative Christopher Nolan created his shooting script. Here, the story is presented on fifty attractive, easy-to-read screen "pages." (Note: Although this feature is clearly indicated in the disc's on-screen menu, no mention is made of it on the DVD box's packaging. Also, one should not confuse this DVD, which sports photos of the film's Polaroids on its cover, with a later "Special Edition" that plays mind games with its users but also allows them to rearrange the original film's reversed-order segments into chronological form.)

The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring (Special Extended DVD Edition):

Four discs compose this immensely elaborate version of the film and the history of its making. See especially the third one, labeled "The Appendices: Part One: From Book to Vision," which provides sections marked "J. R. R. Tolkien, Creator of Middle-Earth," "From Book to Script," and "Storyboard and Pre-Viz: Making Words into Images."

The Count of Monte Cristo (2002):

In a special feature on this disc, screenwriter Jay Wolpert discusses his experiences in adapting anew an old and popular literary classic.

Sleuth:

"A Sleuthian Journey with Anthony Shaffer" provides a twenty-three-minute feature that examines the process by which a playwright transforms his own successful stage work to fit the screen.

Hurlyburly:

Dramatist David Rabe adapted his own play for the movies, too. Here, his voice may be heard on two separate full-length DVD commentaries—one with director Anthony Drazan, another with actor Sean Penn, composer David Baerwald, and critic Janet Brown "on the issues and themes of the story."

Gods and Monsters:

"Written for the screen and directed by" is the credit that Bill Condon receives for his multiple creative roles in this film, which was based on the biography *Father of Frankenstein* by Christopher Bram. Besides the audio commentary that

Condon provides on this DVD, he also makes available a feature called "The World of Gods and Monsters: A Journey with James Whale," narrated by the novelist Clive Barker.

Midnight in the Garden of Good and Evil (Special Edition): John Berendt's tremendously best-selling nonfiction narrative about friendship, social conventions, murder, and voodoo in the Deep South formed the basis for John Lee Hancock's film adaptation. Director Clint Eastwood, in producing this disc, made certain to include the documentary "The Real People in the Garden, an Interactive Tour of Savannah with Historical Notes and Interviews with People Depicted in the Book and Film!"

FILMS FOR STUDY

(The author of the original work is noted after the film date. See also the Web site for *The Art of Watching Films* for an extensive list of more adaptation films for study.)

Novels and Stories Into Films

Being Julia (2004); *Theatre*, W. Somerset Maugham
Cold Mountain (2003); Charles Frazier
The Constant Gardener (2005); John Le Carré
The Door in the Floor (2004); *A Widow for One Year*, John Irving
Le Divorce (2003); Diane Johnson
Girl With a Pearl Earring (2003); Tracy Chevalier
Hellboy (2004); graphic novel *The Dark Horse*, Mike Mignola
A Home at the End of the World (2004); Michael Cunningham
House of Sand and Fog (2003); Andre Dubus III
The Human Stain (2003); Philip Roth
In the Cut (2003); Susanna Moore
Master and Commander: The Far Side of the World (2003); Patrick O'Brian
Matchstick Men (2003); Eric Garcia
Million Dollar Baby (2004); F. X. Toole
Mystic River (2003); Dennis Lehane
The Notebook (2004); Nicholas Sparks
The Phantom of the Opera (2004); Gaston Leroux
The Polar Express (2004); children's book, Chris Van Allsburg
Secret Window (2004); "Secret Window, Secret Garden," Stephen King
A Series of Unfortunate Events (2004); children's books, Lemony Snicket
Sideways (2004); Rex Pickett
Sin City (2005); graphic novel, Frank Miller
Spider-Man 2 (2004); graphic novels, Stan Lee
Vanity Fair (2004); William Makepeace Thackeray
A Very Long Engagement (2004); Sébastien Japrisot
War of the Worlds (2005); H. G. Wells

Plays Into Films

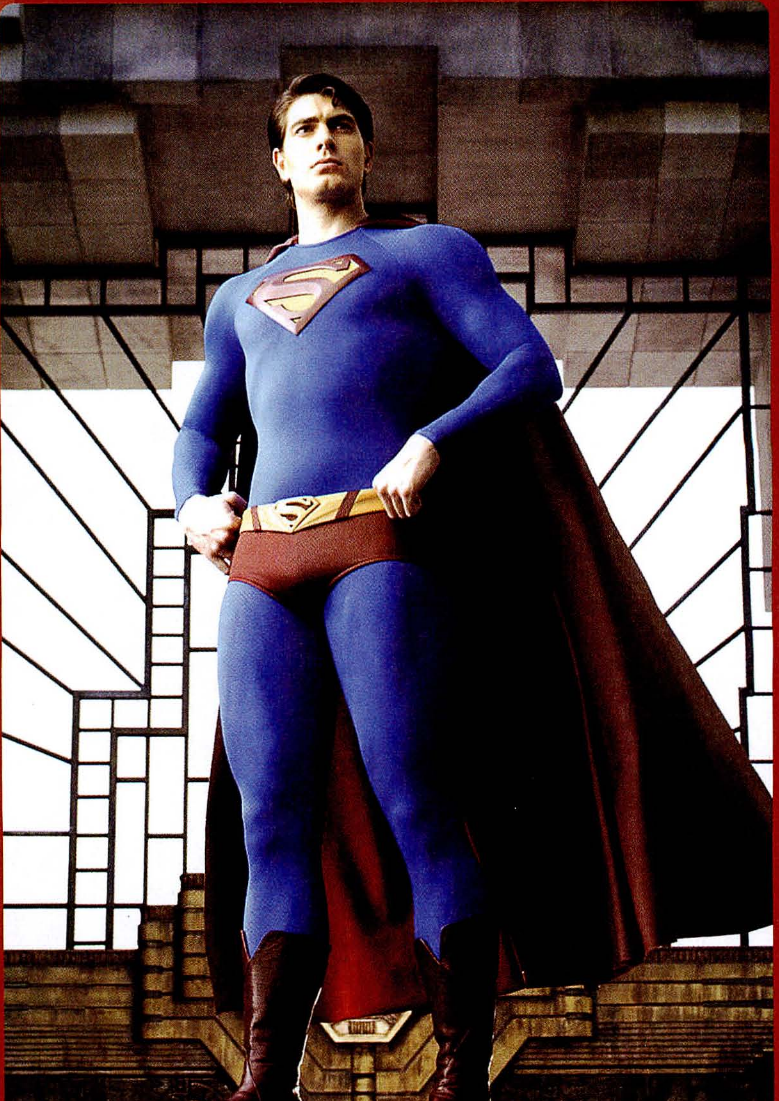
Closer (2004); Patrick Marber
Finding Neverland (2004); *The Man Who Was Peter Pan,* Alan Knee
Of the Map (2005); Joan Ackermann
The Merchant of Venice (2004); William Shakespeare
Stage Beauty (2004); *Compleat Female Stage Beauty*, Jeffrey Hatcher
The Woodsman (2004); Steven Fechter

Fact-Based Films

American Splendor (2003); graphic novel, Harvey Pekar
Capote (2005); Gerald Clark
Flags of Our Fathers (2006); William Broyles, Jr. and Ron Powers
Syriana (2005); *See No Evil*, Robert Baer
We Don't Live Here Anymore; Andre Dubus
The Wild Parrots of Telegraph Hill (2005); Mark Bittner

14

GENRE FILMS, REMAKES, *and* SEQUELS



Hollywood does not simply lend its voice to the public's desires, nor does it simply manipulate the audience. On the contrary, most genres go through a period of accommodation during which the public's desires are fitted to Hollywood's priorities (and vice versa). Because the public doesn't want to know that it is being manipulated, the successful . . . "fit" is almost always one that disguises Hollywood's potential for manipulation while playing up its capacity for entertainment. Whenever a lasting fit is obtained . . . it is because a common ground has been found, a region where the audience's ritual values coincide with Hollywood's ideological ones.

—RICK ALTMAN, CRITIC

GENRE FILMS

The term **genre film** has very often been used to describe film stories that have been repeated again and again with only slight variations, following the same basic pattern and including the same basic ingredients. Setting, characters, plot (conflict and resolution), images, cinematic techniques, and conventions are, then, considered practically interchangeable from one film to another in the same genre—much as the parts for Henry Ford's Model T were interchangeable from one car to another.

This narrow definition of *genre* focuses exclusively upon the formula film, but the term is also used broadly to refer to films dealing with a common subject matter or style. For example, Rex Reed said in his review of *Patton* and *M*A*S*H* that those films "raise the artistic level of the war-movie genre."[1] As the critic Stephen Schiff wrote in *Film Comment* in 1982,

> There was a time when the development of genre was relatively predictable. When moviegoing was an American habit, genre films begat genre films. If a movie did well at the box office, the studios churned out more of the same. In fact, the more commercial a national cinema became, the more diverse and profound its genres, which is why the American film industry has produced such an embarrassment of riches. . . . Genre used to be integral to the studio system. . . . For a fine director like Howard Hawks . . . , directing a genre film was probably like being a blues musician who could wring sublimity out of three chords and a standard 4/4 groove. The director of a Western had certain costumes and settings, character types, and even themes to play with, for those were what the audience expected to see. It was a tiny arena, and a real artist could load a great deal into it.[2]

Schiff continued, "People went to a genre movie because of its movieness, because they knew it would make them feel happy or sad or just plain entertained in a way that only a certain kind of movie could."[3] And, in noting how moviemaking was changing radically in the past few years, he bemoaned the loss of "simple pleasures." Schiff concluded that "directors of the Auteur Age no longer worked *within* the old genres, they worked *on* them."[4] By 1994, in providing the "Preface" for a collection of reviews of genre films, Schiff observed a kind of resurgence of some genres, with the westerns *Dances With Wolves* (1990) and *Unforgiven* (1992) having won best picture Oscars, for example. And he seemed mildly puzzled by the "recombinant genres" phenomenon (the "most boggling of all, perhaps [being] . . . the Teenage Mutant Ninja Turtle films: chopsocky-cartoon-animal-monster-boys'-book-sci-fi-beauty-and-the-beast-buddy fantasies").[5] More recently, writers have remarked upon the difficulty of defining *genre*—in part because of this overlap present in many less exotic films.

Close observers of the form have long called for much more inclusive definitions. Two decades ago, for example, the theorist Rick Altman, in a groundbreaking and much anthologized essay, "A Semantic/Syntactic Approach to

Film Genre," tried to mediate various conceptions of genre study by showing how two basic types *must* be synthesized. Altman insisted upon our using this method as an "ability to account for the numerous films that innovate by combining the syntax of one genre with the semantics of another."[6] More recently, Steve Neale, in *Genre and Hollywood*, has concluded that "genre . . . has been used in different ways in different fields, and . . . many of its uses have been governed by the history of the term within these fields—and by the cultural factors at play within them—rather than by logic or conceptual consistency." He insists that we must "rethink" genres "as ubiquitous, multifaceted phenomena rather than as one-dimentional entities to be found only within the realms of Hollywood cinema or of commercial popular culture."[7]

So we are now led to see that there is

> . . . less of a difference between genre films and other forms of cinema at least in terms of the basic processes of communication and reading. All communicative forms, including all films, are underpinned by systems—arguably modelled on language—against which they acquire their significance and meaning.[8]

It is not difficult to understand how genre films came into being or why they have enjoyed such success. Because of the expense of film production, the studios wanted to create films that would draw a large audience, so that they could realize a substantial profit. The reaction of the mass audience flocking to westerns, gangster movies, *film noir*, war stories, horror pictures, science fiction or fantasy films, screwball romantic comedies, and musicals, for instance, let the studios know what people wanted (and expected), and the studios responded to the great success of these films by repeating the genres, remaking successful pictures, and producing sequels.

As the success of genre films inspired frequent repetition of the basic types, their popularity presented the studios and the directors assigned to direct them with an interesting challenge. So that the public would not become bored, they were forced to introduce variations and refinements while keeping enough of the essence intact to please audiences.

In *Film Genre 2000: New Critical Essays*, editor Wheeler Winston Dixon emphasizes the importance of our continuing to respect and study genre films:

> With genre filmmaking . . . constituting the bulk of film production, and with the pervasiveness of mainstream cinema at an all-time intensity . . . more than ever [we must try] to understand precisely how contemporary genre cinema shapes and mirrors our collective dreams and desires. . . . [O]ne thing is certain: genre cinema will continue to be the dominant force in American cinema, if only because it is a tried and tested commodity that can reliably be called upon to entertain and satisfy.[9]

Values

The popularity of genre films has always been at least partly due to their ability to reinforce basic American beliefs, values, and myths. The Motion Picture

Production Code, which was enforced from the early 1930s until around 1960, encouraged all American films to reflect and reinforce middle-class American institutions, values, and morality. The sincerity of most genre films, however, seems to indicate that, generally, the studio heads and directors probably shared those values. In any case, the audience obviously took great pleasure in seeing their values threatened and then triumphant, for the triumph reinforced people's belief in the strength and validity of their values and made them feel secure in Truth, Justice, and the American Way. Early genre films usually fulfilled their expectations with easy, complete, and totally satisfying resolutions.

The Strengths of Genre Films

For the director, there were certain advantages to working within a given genre. Because the characters, the plot, and the conventions were already established, they provided the director with a kind of cinematic shorthand that greatly simplified the task of storytelling. The best directors, however, did not simply copy the conventions and string together a predictable pattern of stock situations and images. Accepting the limitations and formal requirements of the genre as a challenge, directors such as John Ford provided creative variations, refinements, and complexities that imprinted each film they directed with a rich and distinctive personal style.

The genre film simplifies film watching as well as filmmaking. In a western, because of the conventions of appearance, dress, manners, and typecasting, we recognize the hero, sidekick, villain, and female lead, etc., on sight and assume they will not violate our expectations of their conventional roles. Our familiarity with the genre makes watching not only easier but in some ways more enjoyable. Because we know and are familiar with all the conventions, we gain pleasure from recognizing each character, each image, each familiar situation. The fact that the conventions are established and repeated intensifies another kind of pleasure. Settled into a comfortable genre, with our basic expectations satisfied, we become more keenly aware of and responsive to the creative variations, refinements, and complexities that make the film seem fresh and original, and by exceeding our expectations, each innovation becomes an exciting surprise.

Basic Genre Conventions—And Their Variations

Although each genre has its own conventions, it is perhaps easier to recognize a genre film than it is to delineate clearly all its ritual elements. The basic elements may seem simple when viewed from the distance of memory, but observation reveals that the variations are almost infinite. The five rudimentary conventions of a genre are setting, characters, conflict, resolution, and values reaffirmed.

Genre films were viable over a fairly long period of time and offered directors enough flexibility to create many interesting innovations on the standard elements. But changes in social values, the advent of television, and a changing movie audience made some of the conventions much too limiting. Thus, movies like *Shane* and *High Noon* introduced complex new elements, and the western began to break away from the traditional formula. And the gangster film evolved from *Little Caesar* to *Bonnie and Clyde* to *Kill Bill*, *Vol. I*, and *Vol. II*, to *The Departed* in its transformation.

Two elements are probably more important than any of the others in keeping the basic forms viable: the personal code of the hero and the values reaffirmed at the end of the film. When the hero's code is significantly altered and the basic social values are no longer reaffirmed, the essence vanishes. The early western and the gangster film depend on good triumphing over evil, on law and order conquering chaos, on civilization overcoming savagery, and on justice prevailing. When these concepts are brought into question, when shades of gray replace clear distinctions between black and white, when the complexities of reality replace the simplicity of myth, the core is destroyed. In like manner, if the western hero becomes an antihero and is cruel, petty, and overly vengeful, our expectations for the hero are not satisfied—or they become satiric (Figure 14.1).

However, if these changes reflect changes within the society and its value system, and new heroic codes are established, new rituals may rise from the ashes of the old, and they will be repeated as long as the new values and heroic codes prevail. But they will ultimately constitute very different genres.

The following discussion attempts to crystallize the basic elements of westerns, gangster movies, *film noir*, war stories, horror pictures, sci-fi and fantasy films, screwball romantic comedies, and musicals—and to suggest how these genres have changed in recent decades.

The Western The action in the traditional western takes place in the American West or Southwest, west of the Mississippi River, usually at the edge of the frontier, where civilization encroaches on the free, untamed land beyond. The time span is usually between 1865 and 1900.

The original western hero is a rugged individualist, a natural man of the frontier, often a mysterious loner. Somewhat aloof and very much his own man, he acts in accordance with his personal code, not in response to community pressures or for personal gain. His personal code emphasizes human dignity, courage, justice, fair play, equality (the rights of the underdog), and respect for women. Intelligent and resourceful, he is also kind, honest, firm, and consistent in his dealings with others, never devious, cruel, or petty. Even-tempered and peaceable by nature, he does not seek violent solutions but responds with violent action when the situation demands it. Extraordinarily quick *and* accurate with pistol or rifle, he is also adept at horsemanship and barroom brawling and is quietly confident of his own abilities. He can act as a capable leader or alone, as the situation requires. As a loner, he stands apart from the community but

GENERAL STORE
MARTINSVILLE SPEEDWAY
NASCAR NEXTEL CUP SERIES
Advance Auto Parts 500
Old Spice
wonder

FIGURE 14.1 **Genre-Based Satire** Much of the humor in modern parodies of film genres is based on our familiarity with basic plots, conventions, and characters. Films like *Blazing Saddles* (westerns) (top right), *Talladega Nights: The Ballad of Ricky Bobby* (sports obsessions) (bottom right), *Scary Movie* (horror fests) (bottom left), and *Naked Gun* (police procedurals) (top left) first build on our habitual expectations for their genres and then violate them. Because each of these films incorporates the essential elements of dozens of films, they can be helpful in studying the genres they satirize.

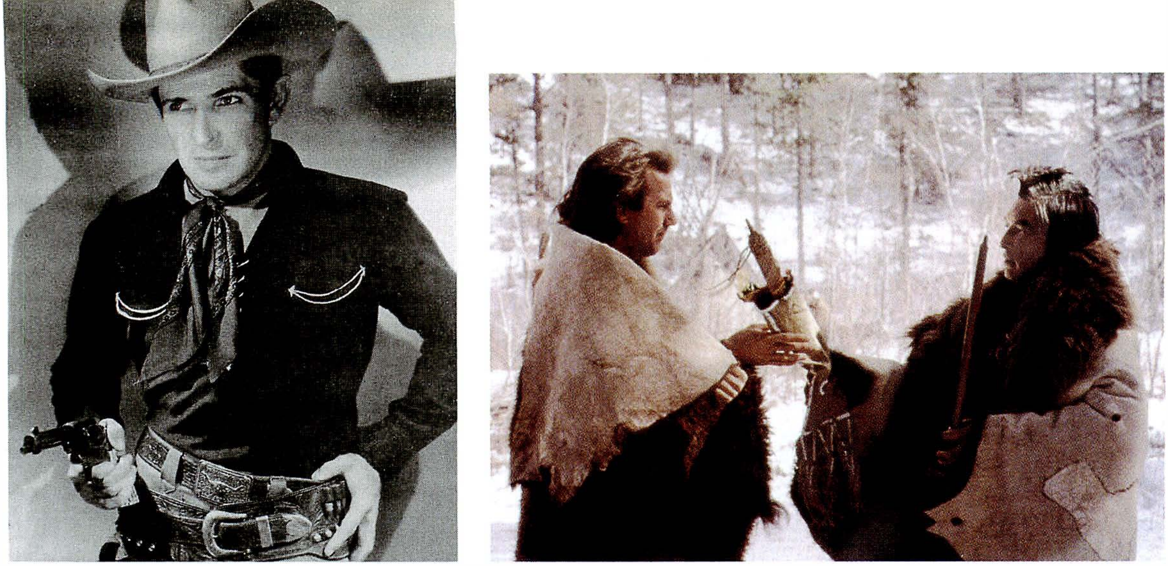


FIGURE 14.2 The Western Hero One of the most durable of American heroic types is the western or cowboy hero. He represented essentially the same code and values in hundreds of films over a span of four decades. Bob Steele, a typical western hero of the 1940s, is pictured here (left). Contrast this heroic type with that played by Kevin Costner (shown here with Graham Greene) in *Dances With Wolves* (right).

believes in and fights to preserve its values. His lack of community ties (he usually has no job, no ranch or possessions, no wife or family) gives him the freedom and flexibility for full-time heroics. As a lawman or cavalry officer, however, his independence diminishes. Peace makes him restless. With order restored, he moves on to discover another troubled community (Figure 14.2).

Two categories of villain seem to prevail. The first includes outlaws (the uncivilized elements of the untamed frontier) who bully, threaten, and generally terrorize the respectable elements of the frontier community, trying to take what they want by force: rustling cattle, robbing banks or stages, or attacking stagecoaches, wagon trains, forts, or ranches. Stereotypically, Native Americans often fall into this first category. Real motives for their hostility are seldom developed. They are viewed not as individuals but en masse as innately savage and cruel. Sometimes they are led by crazed chieftains seeking vengeance for past crimes against their tribe, or they are manipulated by renegade whites to facilitate their own evil purposes.

Villains in the second category work under the guise of respectability: crooked bankers, saloon owners, and sheriffs, or wealthy ranchers, all motivated by greed for wealth or lust for power. Slick, devious, and underhanded in their methods, they may hire or manipulate "savages" and outlaws to obtain their goals (Figure 14.3).

Villains not killed in the gunfights are frightened off or imprisoned. With the society in decent, just, and capable hands, the hero is free to move on. Jus-

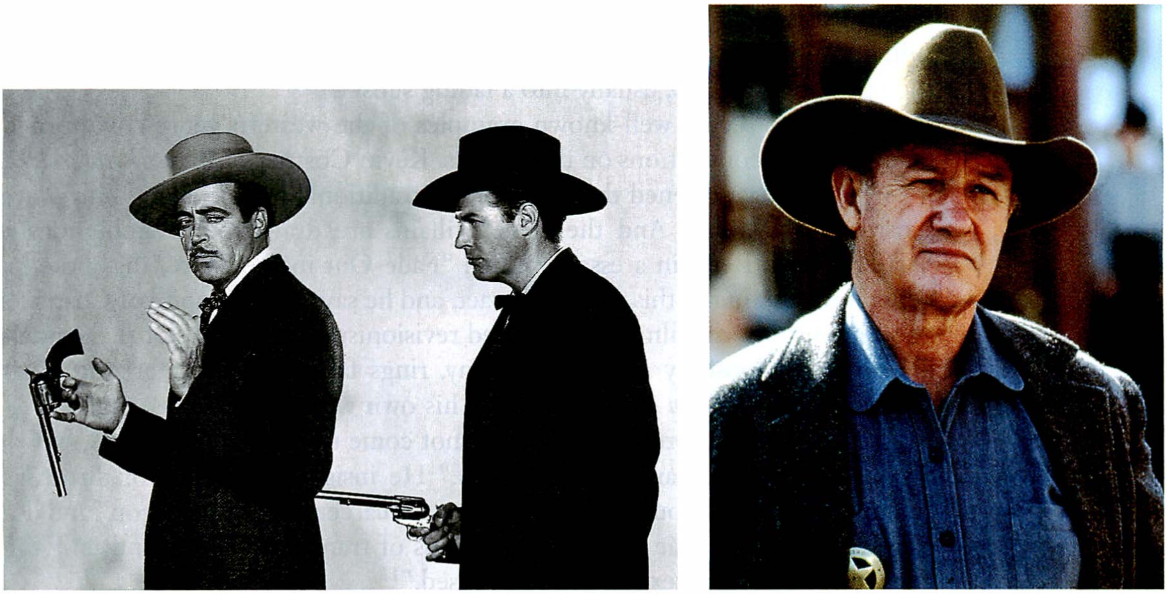


FIGURE 14.3 **The Western Villain** One typical western villain operates under the guise of respectability. His dress is impeccable (maybe *too* impeccable). But if there's any doubt, check the mustache and the steely-eyed glare. Sometimes in modern westerns, though, as with Gene Hackman's sheriff in *Unforgiven*, great ambiguity resides in such characters.

tice prevails, civilization conquers savagery, and good triumphs over evil. Law and order are restored or established, and progress toward a better life on the frontier may resume.

The conventions of the early western are so familiar that they need little description. There is a clear and simple definition of character types by conventions of costume and grooming. The hero wears a white or light-colored hat, the villain a black hat. Heroes are clean-cut and clean-shaven. Mustaches are reserved for villains. Sidekicks and villains may have beards, but sidekicks' beards are gray and rustic, and villains' beards are black and impeccably groomed.

In addition to conventions of appearance, there are conventions of action. Most westerns have one or more of the following: a climactic shootout between the hero and villain in the town's only street or among the rocks of a canyon, a prolonged chase on horseback (usually accompanied by shooting), a knock-down drag-out barroom brawl (with a scared bartender periodically ducking behind the bar), and a cavalry-to-the-rescue scene.

Although a love interest may develop between hero and heroine, and the attraction may be apparent, it never reaches fruition and the hero moves on at the end. To create tension and direct attention to the love interest, the heroine often misunderstands the hero's motives or his actions until the final climax, when he regains her trust and respect before good-byes are said.

At least one convention is structural. Many westerns begin with the hero riding into view from the left side of the screen and end with him riding off in the opposite direction, usually into a fading sunset.

The most recent well-known examples of the western genre have turned many of these conventions on their heads. Kevin Costner's *Dances With Wolves*, for instance, has softened the edges of the traditional hero, making him more sensitive to Woman. And the "true" villains are drawn more ambiguously. Writer Chuck Berg, in a essay entitled "Fade-Out in the West," has noted a general weakening in this genre's impact, and he says that "in spite of Costner's good intentions, the film's rose-colored revisionism, the erasure of the genocidal forces let loose by Manifest Destiny, rings false."[10] Characterizing Clint Eastwood's *Unforgiven* as "a critique of his own western persona" and "dark," Berg observes that here "Eastwood has not come to praise the western, but to deconstruct and deglamorize its myths." He insists that the actor/director's "mannerist endgame puts the mirror up to his career as a western icon" and declares, finally, that "the western as a means of transmitting epic and unifying tales of the American experience has passed."[11]

The Gangster Film The classic gangster film usually takes place in the concrete jungle, among the endless streets and crowded buildings of a decaying older part of the modern city. Much of the action occurs at night, and rain is often used to add atmosphere. In the rural-bandit gangster film, the action takes place in a rural setting with small depressed towns, roadhouses, and filling stations.

The gangster hero is a brutal, aggressive, lone-wolf type. He is cocky and ambitious, the self-made man who fought his way up from nothing and graduated from the school of hard knocks (Figure 14.4).

Women, generally, are sexual ornaments, symbols of the hero's status. They are cheap, mindless, and greedy, fascinated by the hero's cruelty and power. Sometimes a decent, intelligent woman associates with the hero early in the film but soon discovers his true nature and abandons him. The gangster's mother and sister are civilized and social women with traditional values; the mother is respected, the sister protected.

On the most abstract level, the basic conflict is the anarchy of the gangsters versus the social order. Because the police represent the social order, the conflict also involves cops versus robbers. There is usually a conflict of robbers versus robbers, with the struggle involving leadership of the gang or a territorial-rights gang war against a rival mob. An internal conflict within the hero is also probable, with his latent good or social instincts struggling for expression against his essentially cruel and selfish nature.

The classic gangster "hero" achieves success temporarily but eventually meets his deserved end. Although he may be given a chance for reform and redemption, the criminal side of his nature is too strong to be denied. He often

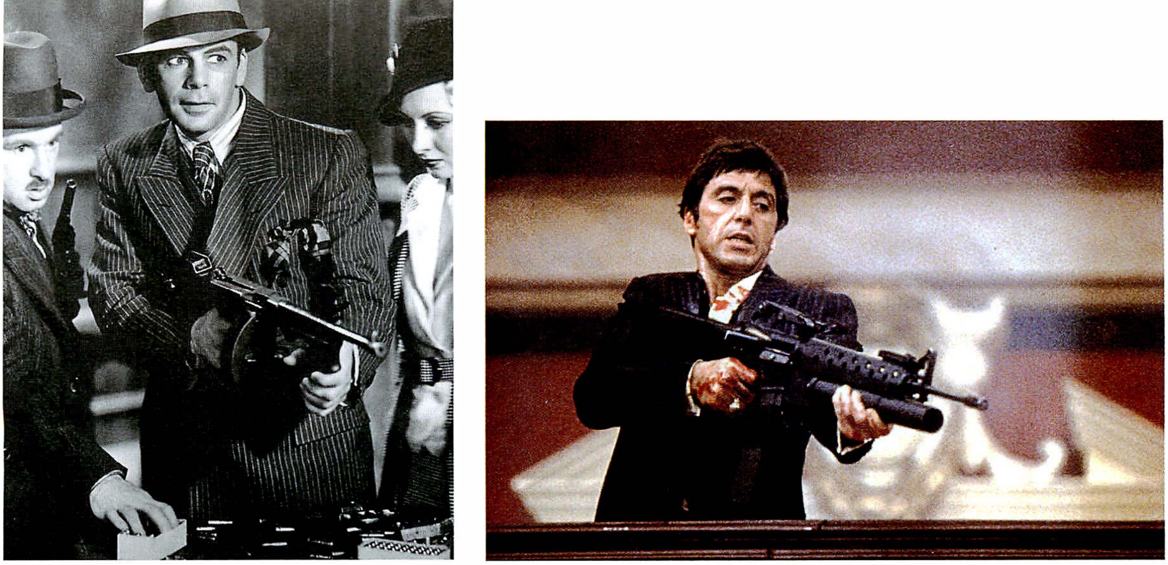


FIGURE 14.4 The Gangster Hero Both Paul Muni (left), in 1932, and Al Pacino (right), in 1983, played the protagonist of *Scarface*, each fitting practically every definition of the gangster hero formula. But during the sixty years between the original and remake, the story's language changed radically.

dies in the gutter, in a cowardly, weak manner. His dignity and strength are gone—everything we admired about him is destroyed. The other gang members are either killed or jailed, and the social order is restored.

Justice prevails, good conquers evil, or evil destroys itself. Crime does not pay, and the weeds of crime bear bitter fruit. Civilized values of human decency, honesty, and respect for law and order are reaffirmed.

Machine guns, pistols, and bombs are standard weapons. Machine guns are often carried in violin cases. At least one chase scene, with passengers in each car exchanging gunfire, seems required. Whiskey and cigars are necessary props for every interior scene. Speakeasies and posh nightclubs are common sites for conducting business. Montage sequences are frequently used for violent action. They feature fast editing, compression of time, and explosive sound effects (machine-gun fire or bombings).

Unlike westerns, gangster films have remained popular and potent. One observer of the genre, Ron Wilson, suggests that part of this hardiness may be attributed to the modern way in which "gangster films appear to us on an aesthetic level, because their characters are driven by success within the *business* of crime itself." Further, he notes, "The 'classic' gangster-film narrative typically revolved around the rise and fall of the gangster hero, . . . [who] was often portrayed as an almost Shakespearean tragic figure, whose inevitable downfall was documented in near-Aristotelian terms." By contrast, according to Wilson, films such as the Coen brothers' *Miller's Crossing*, Martin Scorsese's *Casino*, and Mike Newell's *Donnie Brasco* "often look . . . at the lower echelons of the corporate

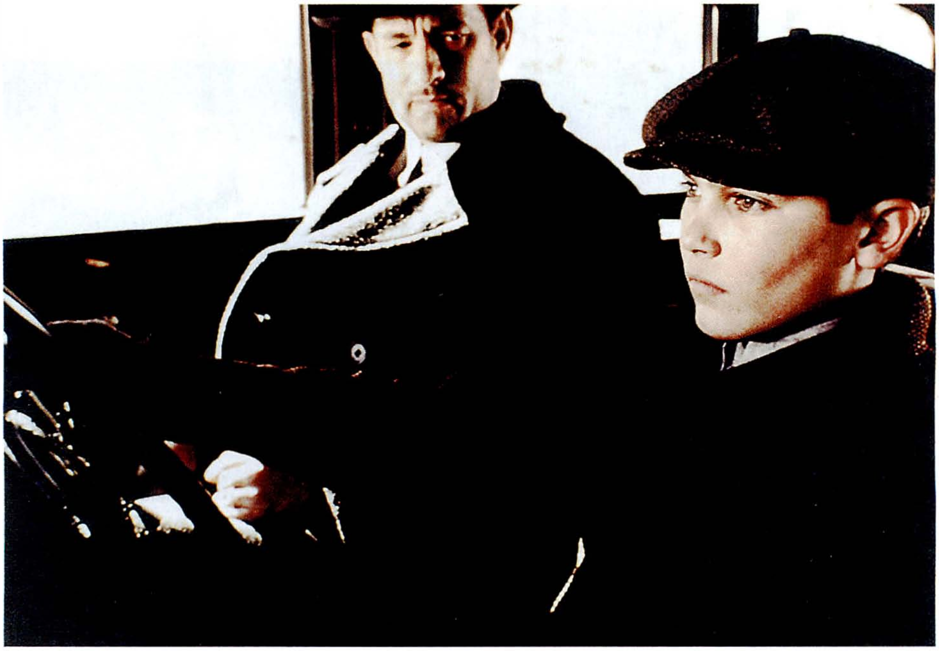


FIGURE 14.5 Conflicted Criminal Sam Mendes's *The Road to Perdition* focuses upon a man named Michael Sullivan (Tom Hanks, shown here with Tyler Hoechlin, who plays one of his sons), a new-style gangster who feels great emotional and moral tension between protecting his biological family and paying appropriate fealty to his boss, an old-style gangster (Paul Newman) who is also his "family."

ladder, at small-time hoods who also are striving for success but on a smaller perspective."[12]

Director Sam Mendes's *The Road to Perdition*, a recent gangster-film adaptation of a popular graphic novel, seemingly attempts to combine these two types of gangster protagonists. On the one hand, the older, "aristocratic" character played by Paul Newman epitomizes the classic gangster hero; on the other, his protégé, portrayed by Tom Hanks, represents the newer type—one imbued with the modern moral ambiguity of a business/family man (Figure 14.5). But at least some of the film's critical and commercial acclaim may be attributable to the bizarre combination of old-movie and new-film "recklessness" embodied by actor Jude Law. His wicked character Maguire is fleshed out in bold strokes of cold, maniacal violence accompanied with a very contemporary-appearing, psychic kind of impunity.

Film Noir Although the *film noir* genre flourished in America in the 1940s and 1950s and then seemed to die out, the form has continued in the hearty *noir* resonances of many movies in more recent decades. Foster Hirsch, one of the genre's earliest and most ardent admirers, has attempted a comprehensive definition of the type:

> *Film noir* is a descriptive term for the American crime film. . . . From stylized versions of the city at night to documentary-like reports of the city at mid-day, from the investigations of the wry, cynical sleuth to the "innocent" man momentarily and fatally tempted by luxury, to the desperate flailing of the confirmed and inveterate criminal, the genre covers a heterogeneous terrain. In range of theme and in visual style, it is both varied and complex, and in level of achievement it is consistently high. *Film noir* is one of the most challenging cycles in the history of American films.[13]

Eddie Muller, another observer, defines it more poetically: "*Film noirs* were distress flares launched onto America's movie screens by artists working the night shift at the Dream Factory."[14]

Lovers of *film noir* have embraced the resurgence of its popularity in the neo-*noir* movies of the '60s, '70s, '80s, '90s, and into the twenty-first century (see "Films for Study" at the end of the chapter), but they appear unable to agree about their relative merits. For example, some fans of Lawrence Kasdan's impressive debut film, *Body Heat* (1981), claimed that it surpassed its models—such classics of the genre as Billy Wilder's *Double Indemnity* (1944) and Jacques Tourneur's *Out of the Past* (1947) (Figure 14.6). Since the mid-1970s, critics have maintained that Roman Polanski and Robert Towne's *Chinatown* opened new territory for the genre.[15] But others claimed that these newer films were merely perverse, pale copies. In 1997 this same kind of disagreement arose about the value of Curtis Hanson's *L.A. Confidential.* Although a majority of the critics praised the Oscar-winning film, James Naremore, in his *More Than Night: Film Noir in Its Contexts*, calls it "a big-budget, highly publicized, and critically overrated feature that begins in darkly satiric fashion and then segues into crowd-pleasing melodrama."[16]

The noted American director and screenwriter Paul Schrader has observed that "for a long time film noir, with its emphasis on corruption and despair, was considered an aberration of the American character. The western, with its moral primitivism, and the gangster film, with its Horatio Alger values, were considered more American than the film noir."[17] Meanwhile, the movie that Schrader called "film noir's epitaph," Orson Welles's *Touch of Evil*, starring Charlton Heston, Janet Leigh, and Welles himself, was triumphantly re-released in 1998 in a re-edited version based on a long memo that the director wrote after his studio refused him final cut.[18] *Film noir*, then, is one genre that refuses to die.

War Films Dying and refusing to die are staples of another resurgent genre, the war movie. Many filmmakers—including Richard Rush in *The Stunt Man*

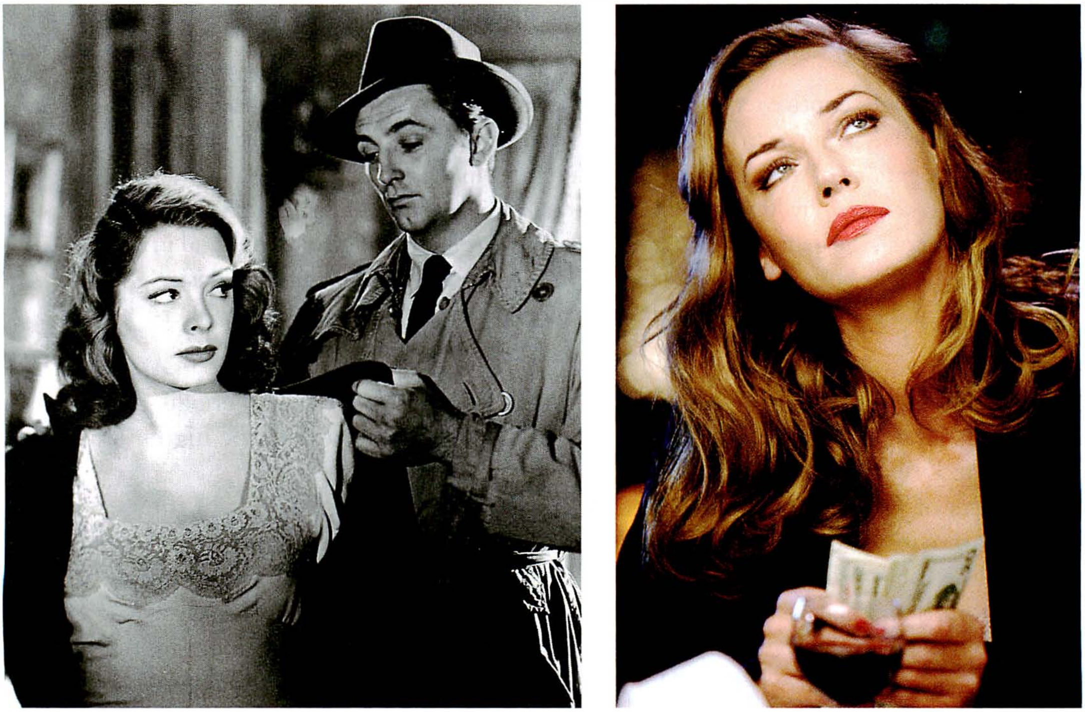


FIGURE 14.6 ***Femmes Fatales*** Frequently in classic *film noir* of the 1940s, women proved extremely dangerous to the gullible men who desired them. Jane Greer, in Jacques Tourneur's *Out of the Past,* attempted to outtalk and manipulate Robert Mitchum (left). In the neo-*noir* films of the 1970s, '80s, '90s, and after, women characters (such as Connie Nielsen's Renata in Harold Ramis's *The Ice Harvest,* right) could remain just as coldly calculated as their earlier sisters.

and, most famously, perhaps, François Truffaut—have observed that it is probably impossible to make a genuine antiwar film. For the medium, with its glittering, large-screen images, is ever glorifying its subject. But, during an era when both Steven Spielberg's *Saving Private Ryan* and Terrence Malick's *The Thin Red Line* (the former a closely observed account of the D-Day Invasion of Normandy, the latter a long lyric poem based on the James Jones novel set on Guadalcanal) were released within a six-month period, directors obviously continued to fight the good fight, cinematically. Although Spielberg's somber effort was rewarded with both box-office and critical acclaim, more cynical critics insisted that "*Saving Private Ryan* isn't . . . any different from most other Hollywood war movies,"[19] including, one must assume, both gung ho military films and earnest portrayals such as *The Patriot* and, conceivably, international classics such as Jean Renoir's *Grand Illusion* (Figure 14.7). War may still be hell, but movie war is, still and always, profitable for the cinematic troops. In con-

FIGURE 14.7 The Appeal of War Because the film medium inherently glorifies its subject matter, viewers must constantly scrutinize their motives for watching all war pictures, regardless of how different they may appear in their similar narratives. Compare Roland Emmerich's 18th-century American military epic *The Patriot* (2000) (right) with Steven Spielberg's *Saving Private Ryan* (left). Does each condemn battle or subtly celebrate it?

suming war films, then, we must be eternally aware of the complexity of our reasons for watching.

Horror Films "The presiding irony of horror," Anthony Lane writes in *The New Yorker*;

> . . . is that while no genre offers more imaginative license, few of the directors—or, indeed, the novelists—who turn to it have more than a thimbleful of imagination in the first place. (They have a sweet tooth for the fantastic and the glutinous, which is hardly the same thing.) When visionaries and obsessives deign to frighten us, on the other hand, the results can be spectacular: look at Murnau's "Nosferatu," Dreyer's "Vampyr," or Karloff's "Frankenstein" pictures (which redefined horror as a species of warped romance).[20]

Lane's dissatisfaction with the genre, however, does not appear to stem from the frequent charge that such "romantic" horror films as John Carpenter's *Halloween* turned viewers away from classic movies like *Frankenstein* and *The Wolf Man* and opened the floodgates for teen-aged terror in so-called slasher horror films. In fact, Lane believes "Carpenter's achievement was to suggest that there was nothing exotic about horror; that it is more inbred than outlandish; and that it was best considered as the evil twin of what one might call the lyrical conservatism of American movies"[21] (Figure 14.8).

And far beyond the domain of mere slasher flicks are the later films of director Wes Craven (for example, *The People Under the Stairs*, *Scream*, *Scream 2*, and *Scream 3*), who adds what is, for some viewers, a delightfully self-conscious

FIGURE 14.8 Scared Unconscious The horror film genre relishes the almost unbearable psychological tension generated through such memorable characters as Norman Bates (Anthony Perkins) in Alfred Hitchcock's *Psycho*. Two recent attempts to recapture this scariness are *The Ring* (with Naomi Watts) and *The Ring Two*—the first a remake of a Japanese movie hit (*Ringu*), the second a sequel to the American version.

wit to the mayhem. However, consciousness, self or otherwise, is not truly part of the classic horror genre formula.

Science Fiction and Fantasy Films Cultural critic Bruce Kawin has analyzed the way that "particular genre forms appeal psychologically to their audiences." He "defines the audience's experience with horror and science fiction in terms of myths and dreams" and observes that "one goes to the horror film in order to have a nightmare . . . a dream whose undercurrent of anxiety both presents and masks the desire to fulfill and be punished for certain conventionally unacceptable impulses." Kawin distinguishes between science fiction films and horror films by maintaining that these "appeal to different mental activities: 'Science fiction appeals to consciousness, horror to the unconscious.'"[22]

J. P. Telotte, in *Replications: A Robotic History of the Science Fiction Film*, adds, "Certainly, the contemporary science fiction film invites us to catalogue our culture's major anxieties" (including race, gender, and sexuality, as evident in such films as *Blade Runner* and *Aliens*). But Telotte also concludes that "the genre has obviously staked out as its special territory the latest possibilities of artifice . . . through the very latest of technological developments of the cinema. . . . And yet artifice finally seems to be less its end than its method, like our films, simply a most effective way we have developed for gauging the human."[23] Perhaps, then, we should not be surprised to find in such radically different science fiction films as Alex Proyas's expensive, luxurious *Dark City* and Darren Aronofsky's cheaply made and stark-looking *Pi* multiple visual and thematic patterns of the spiral, signifying the chain of human life (Figure 14.9).

Traditional wisdom suggests that the fantasy genre may be the hardest to define—the one whose boundaries are most difficult to survey. Certainly, what is fantastical appears to permeate several realms, including those of horror and sci-fi. As *New York Times* reviewer A. O. Scott has written, "Fantasy literature . . . depends on patterns, motifs and archetypes. It is therefore hardly surprising that the most visible modern variants of the ancient genres of saga, romance and quest narrative are so richly crosspollinated." Their key characters, "following a convention so deep it seems to be encoded in the human storytelling genre," are "orphans, summoned out of obscurity to undertake a journey into the heart of evil that will also be a voyage of self-discovery." In observing how Hollywood, "perhaps more than ever before," has currently become "an empire of fantasy," Scott focuses upon Frodo Baggins, Luke Skywalker (Figure 14.10), Harry Potter, and Peter Parker (Figure 14.11), movie protagonists whose celluloid universes combined recently "have earned more than $1 billion in domestic ticket sales." For Scott, one way to explain the enduring popularity of fantasy films involves examining their essential nature: "Unlike virtually everything else in the irony-saturated, ready-to-recycle cosmos of postmodern pop culture, [fantasy] stories don't seem to date." And their "appeal is perennial because it fulfills the widespread and ever-renewing desire for a restoration of innocence."[24]

Upon the release of the second installment of Peter Jackson's film trilogy of J. R. R. Tolkien's *The Lord of the Rings*, Lev Grossman, writing in *Time*, also sought to fathom the world's, and especially America's, contemporary voracious appetite for all narratives fantastic (movies, books, and, especially, games)—as opposed to those strictly sci-fi:

> [W]e are seeing what might be called the enchanting of America. A darker, more pessimistic attitude toward technology and the future has taken hold, and the evidence is our new preoccupation with fantasy, a nostalgic, sentimental, magical vision of a medieval age. The future just isn't what it used to be—and the past seems to be gaining on us.

Grossman discovers darker motivations, though. He suggests that "sometimes fantasies tell us less about who we are than who we wish we were." Like A. O. Scott, he expresses reservations about the genre's obsession with Caucasian

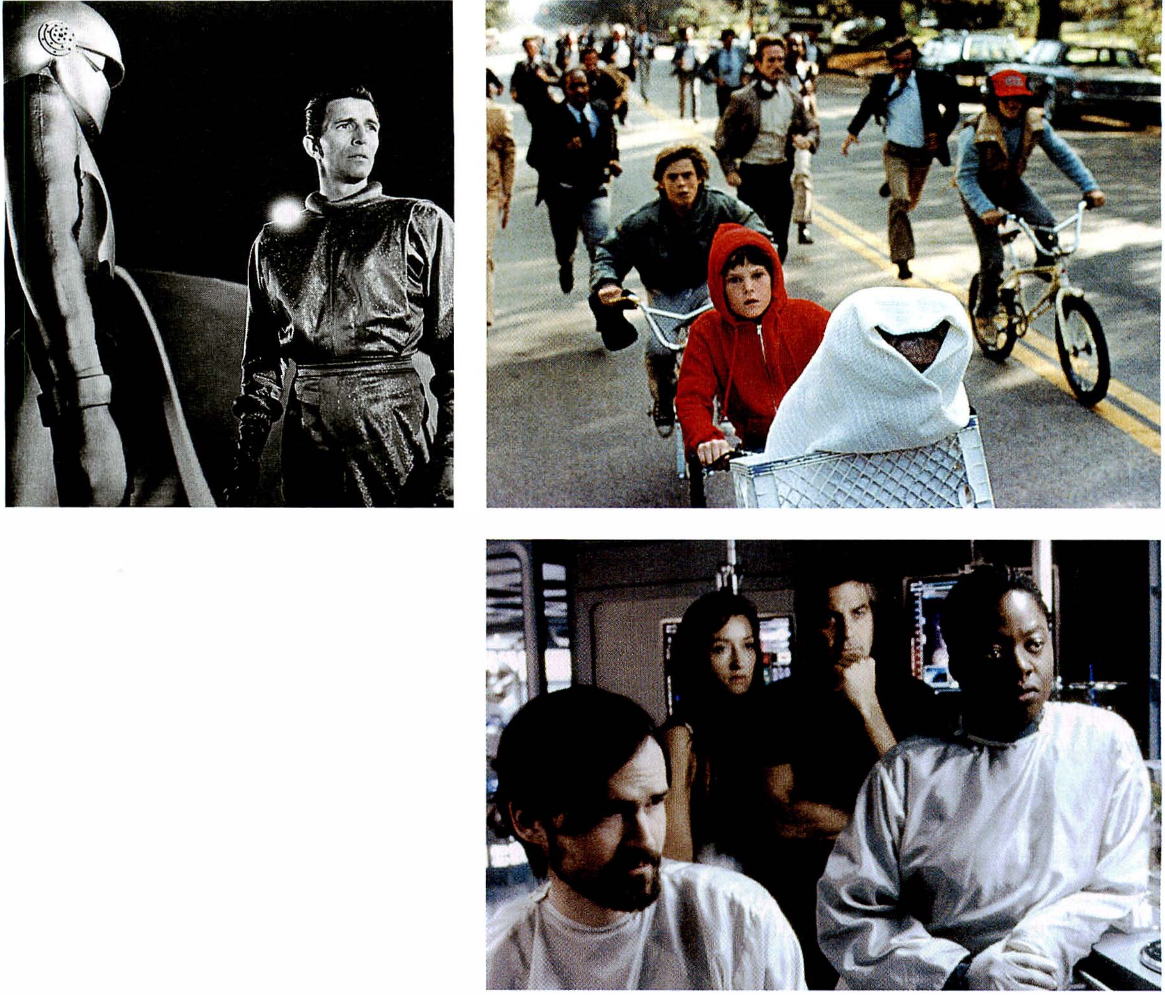


FIGURE 14.9 Sci-Fi Consciousness Steven Spielberg's *Close Encounters of the Third Kind* (1977) seemed remarkable in part because of its friendly aliens. Other science fiction films before and since—including Robert Wise's *The Day the Earth Stood Still* (1951, with Michael Rennie) (top left), Spielberg's *E. T. The Extra-Terrestrial* (1982, featuring Henry Thomas) (top right), and Robert Zemeckis's *Contact* (1997)—have also posited benevolent beings from other realms. In *Solaris* (2002), Steven Soderbergh's remake of a 1972 Russian film by Andrei Tarkovsky, characters played by George Clooney and Natascha McElhone (in the background of the bottom photo, with Viola Davis and Jeremy Davies) leave the viewer asking intriguing questions about alien intentions. But in 2005 Spielberg created scary metallic monster aliens in *War of the Worlds.*

male protagonists, wondering aloud whether we should "worry about all these strapping men poking each other with sharpened phallic symbols." Grossman agrees with Scott about our seeming desire to recapture a lost innocence—up to a point: "The clarity and simplicity of Middle-earth are comforting, but there's also something worryingly childish, even infantile, about it. Things are

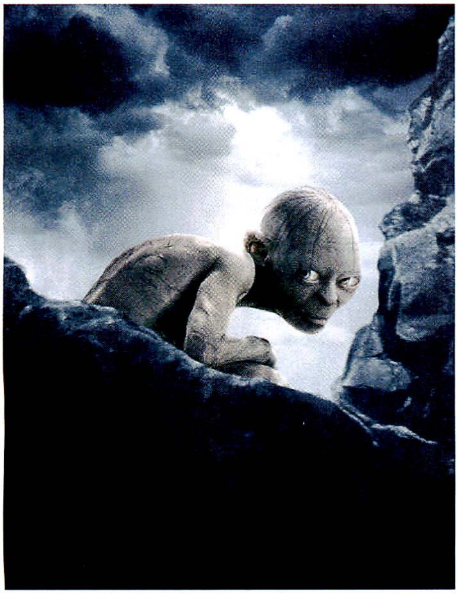


FIGURE 14.10 Fantasy Voyages of Self Discovery Among the most intensely vivid figures in recent fantasy films is Gollum (acted and voiced by Andy Serkis, left), one of the CGI marvels in the second and third parts of *The Lord of the Rings.* He combines the haunted whine of classic horror actor Peter Lorre and the tormented schizoid temperament of Norman Bates. Very strangely, poor Gollum repulses us and makes us faintly sympathetic to equal degrees. In *Star Wars Episode II: Attack of the Clones*, Padme (the former Queen of Naboo, played by Natalie Portman) and Anakin Skywalker (Hayden Christensen) appear, by comparison, almost to inhabit a fantasy world of comfortable familiarity (below).

too simple there . . . either good or evil, with no messy gray area in between." However, his exposition turns circular, finally . . . or, once again, spiral-shaped, perhaps. He asks, "Are we running away from reality when we indulge in fantasy? Or are we escaping reality just to find it again and wrestle with it in disguise? Not everything is as simple as it looks" in reel fantasy or in real life.[25]

Screwball Comedies The iconic spirals of sci-fi and fantasy films can have more than one frame of reference, of course. The image is a staple, too, in the classic romantic comedies of the 1930s and 1940s called screwball. According

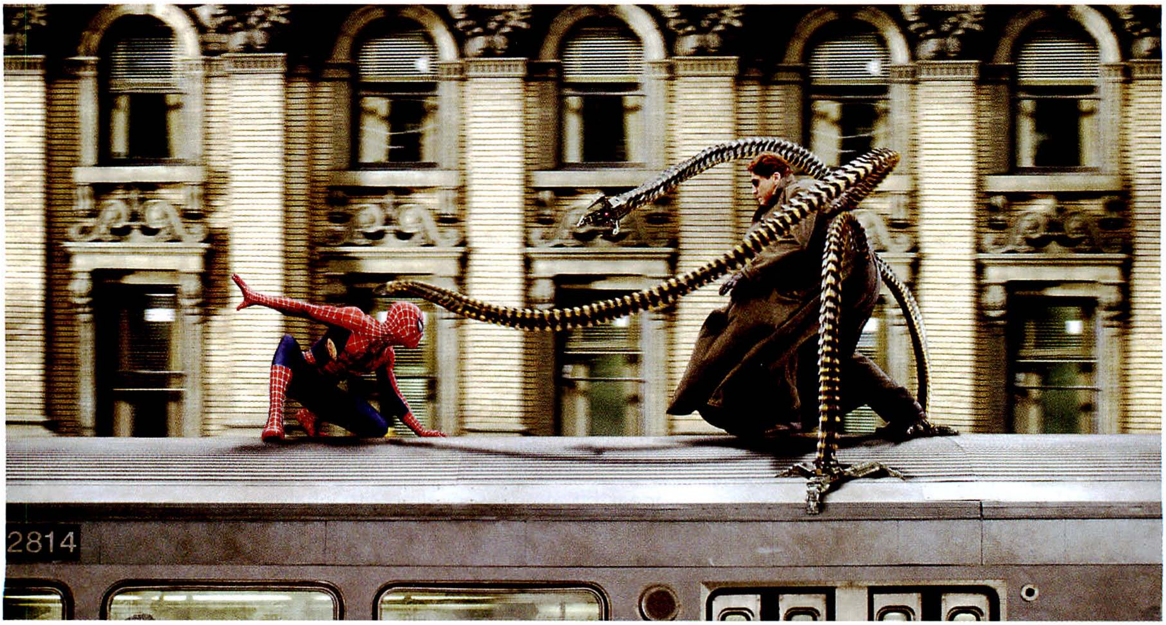


FIGURE 14.11 Graphic Combat In this action scene from *Spider-Man 2,* our hero (Tobey Maguire as Peter Parker) risks being squeezed to death by his nemesis Dr. Octopus, or Doc Ock (Alfred Molina).

to Ed Sikov, one of the most authoritative and wittiest writers about the genre, "Screwball comedies play with a funny contradiction: they tantalize us with sumptuous romantic ideals even while they horrify us with the farce lurking underneath."[26] The exact nature of this "horror" may differ greatly between early classic "couple" comedies such as *Nothing Sacred* and *It Happened One Night*, on the one hand, and modern romantic farces such as *My Best Friend's Wedding* and (in the genre's most extreme mix of conservatism and outrageousness) *There's Something About Mary*, on the other. But these films contain an underlying sameness (and universality) that is, finally, humanly comforting (as well as hilarious) (Figure 14.12).

Film Musicals The film historian and theorist Rick Altman has called the American film musical "the most complex art form ever devised."[27] Yet, another critic, Jane Feuer, points out that

> twenty-five years ago most film buffs would have scoffed at the idea that serious books could be written about John Wayne bang-bang Westerns and Rock Hudson kiss-kiss weepies. It was only when Hollywood genre films began to be seen from the perspective of their ideological and cultural meanings (rather than as star vehicles or "pure entertainment") that Westerns, melodramas and *films noirs* became

FIGURE 14.12 Wacky Couples Romantic screwball comedies originated in the 1930s with such now-classic hilarious duos as Katharine Hepburn and Cary Grant (in Howard Hawks's *Bringing Up Baby,* 1938) (right). Although the genre's comedy has either evolved or disintegrated (depending upon one's perspective) into the raucous ribaldry of the Farrelly Brothers' *There's Something About Mary* (1998, with Cameron Diaz and Ben Stiller) (left), the form has still retained its "old-fashioned" romantic focus.

> accessible to critical inquiry. Yet the genre most of us think of as quintessentially Hollywood was the only one not fertilized by the new interest in film as ideology. Westerns might now be seen as a conflict between chaos and civilization, but Fred Astaire remains ineffable.[28]

But Feuer insists that "the musical is Hollywood writ large" and, like Altman, believes that it is worthy of our attention.

For his analysis, Altman classifies film musicals into three categories: the fairy tale musical, the show musical, and the folk musical. The first type includes such titles as *Top Hat*, *The Wizard of Oz*, Disney's *Cinderella*, *An American in Paris*, *Hair*, and *Annie*. Illustrations of the show musical type begin with cinema's first talkie, *The Jazz Singer* (1927), encompass what many call the epitome of the form, *Singin' in the Rain*, and extend to the dark visions of Bob Fosse's *Cabaret* and *All That Jazz*. The third type, the folk musical, includes *Rose-Marie*, *Meet Me in St. Louis*, *Show Boat*, *Oklahoma!*, *Porgy and Bess*, *West Side Story*, *Woodstock*, *Nashville*, and *Yentl*.[29]

In this new century, some observers have expressed great hopes for a revival of musical films. So far, Lars von Trier's *Dancer in the Dark* (2000), Baz Luhrmann's *Moulin Rouge!* (2001), Rob Marshall's *Chicago* (2002), and Chris Columbus's *Rent* (2005) have tried to nourish that dream (Figure 14.13).

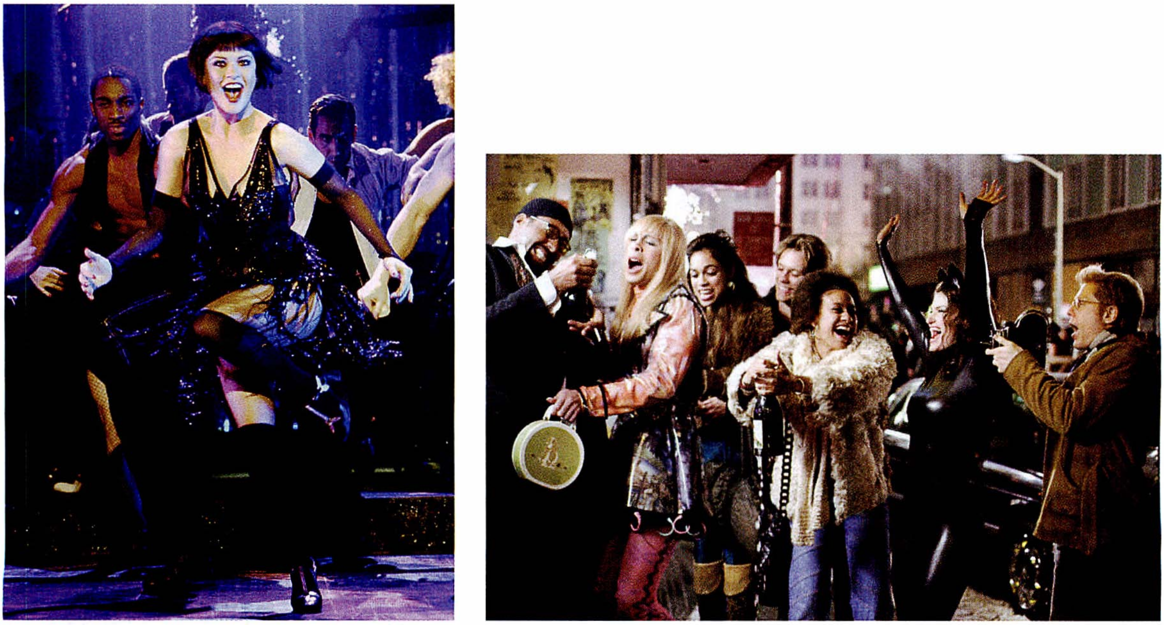


FIGURE 14.13 Film Musical Types—Sugar-Coated or Bitter Many viewers believe that the traditional film musical genre reached its apex in *Singin' in the Rain* (1952, starring Gene Kelly), whose comedy and romance sweetly and joyfully recaptured the silent movie days of the late 1920s, when movie sound was just beginning to make a noise in Hollywood. During recent decades the genre has mainly been dormant, moribund, or considerably transformed in its conventions. Two remarkable examples of later musical film experimentation, though, are Bob Fosse's brilliantly cynical *Cabaret* (1972, starring Liza Minnelli) and Herbert Ross and Dennis Potter's riveting, flawed, bleak *Pennies From Heaven* (1981, with Steve Martin)—both set in the early 1930s. Recently, independently-produced, high-profile musicals are beckoning to Hollywood again. At left, Oscar-winner Catherine Zeta-Jones cracks open the cynically exuberant *Chicago* by singing and dancing "All That Jazz." On the right, the cast of *Rent* parties hard in the face of individual and communal problems.

REMAKES AND SEQUELS

Remakes and sequels are nothing new in the motion picture industry, as this picture caption from Kevin Brownlow's *Hollywood: The Pioneers* tells us:

> Violence was discouraged by the Hays Office, but this scene had strong precedents. Fannie Ward had been branded in *The Cheat* (1915), Pola Negri in the 1922 remake, Barbara Castleton in *The Branding Iron* (1920) and now Aileen Pringle in the remake of that, *Body and Soul.*[30]

Although remakes and sequels occur throughout film history, there have been periods of peak production. The industry's most recent obsession with redoing the tried and true began during the early 1970s and has intensified since. Although it may seem strange for Hollywood to rely on remakes and sequels in a period when the number of feature films being released each year is declining drastically, there is solid support for this kind of filmmaking.

The primary reason for Hollywood's reliance on remakes and sequels has to do with increases in the cost of producing motion pictures. As movies become more expensive to make, the gamble becomes much greater. Running a movie studio may be compared to running an aircraft factory that continually builds new models with new configurations, with untested control and power systems, and with $10 million to $200 million invested in each plane. When finished, each plane taxis to the runway, develops tremendous speed, and tries to get off the ground. There is no turning back. If it flies, it flies; but if it crashes, most of the investment is lost. Aircraft executives operating such a business would be very careful with the planes they designed, and the equivalent of a great many remakes and sequels would be turned out.

Of course the aircraft industry doesn't really operate this way. New models are tested for long periods, with very little risk. Miniatures can be tested in a wind tunnel and then flown before the full-size prototype takes to the air. Some reliable constants also provide security: The laws of physics and aerodynamics do not change; they are constant and predictable.

In the motion picture industry, there is no way to test miniature versions of a film in a wind tunnel. A film's success (its ability to fly) is based not on predictable constants like the laws of physics and aerodynamics but on the unpredictable and whimsical laws of human likes and dislikes. Remakes and sequels bring at least a degree of predictability to the marketplace.

Most remakes and sequels are based on movies that, if they are not film classics, have proved by their continuing popularity that they really don't need to be remade at all and usually don't beg for a sequel. Therefore, the studios that remake films are guaranteeing themselves a strange combination of success and failure. Just out of curiosity, the mass audience will go to see remakes of movies they know and love. The urge to make a critical judgment about the remake of any well-known film is almost irresistible—it is probably one of the few laws of human behavior that the studios can predict and trust. The better the original and the more popular it is, the greater is the number of people who can be counted on to see the remake or sequel. Thus, remakes and sequels guarantee a financial return. They also, however, guarantee a kind of failure, for the better the original, the higher are the expectations of the audience for the remake or sequel, which almost always fails to meet those expectations. (A natural human law governs audience response to remakes and sequels: The higher expectations are, the greater the disappointment.) Although there are rare exceptions, remakes and sequels generally lack the freshness and creative dynamics of the original, so the disappointment is usually justified.

Taking for granted that the prime motivation for producing remakes and sequels is profit and the improved odds of betting on a proven winner, we should also admit that there are valid reasons for producing remakes and sequels, and there is a creative challenge involved. Directors of remakes have been clear about that point: They want to make creative changes in new versions—they never attempt to make a photocopy. These creative changes take different forms and are justified in different ways. A startling exception to this observation came in 1998, when director Gus Van Sant (*Drugstore Cowboy*, *My Own Private Idaho*, *To Die For*; *Good Will Hunting*, *Elephant*, *Last Days* [2005]), created a poorly received remake of Alfred Hitchcock's *Psycho.* He first made the announcement that he would utilize the same script and shooting schedule as the 1960 film. Then he insisted that the characters would be adjusted slightly to fit the film's modern audience. Finally, he shot in color and pronounced his movie "an anti-remake film," adding, "I don't have much faith in Hollywood's ability to do remakes. There's a remake curse." Still, after making his movie, he indicated that he'd "be interested in redoing 'Psycho' again."[31]

Remakes

Paul Schrader, director for the 1982 remake of *Cat People* (1942), looks on most remakes with contempt:

> The whole remake trend is an indication of cowardice, obviously. Remakes, sequels, parodies are what I call "back born" movies. They come off something else. With the cost of movies being such, everybody's trying to protect their jobs. For an executive to redo *Animal House* or *Jaws* is clearly a much safer decision.[32]

A reasonably long period of time usually elapses between different versions of the same film, so one of the most frequently used justifications for remaking a film is to update it. Filmmakers have their own ways of explaining what their goal is in updating a film. In their view, they are usually improving the original work by giving it a more contemporary quality or providing a new sensibility for modern audiences. A movie can be updated in a variety of ways:

- **Important changes in style—updating to reflect social change, cinematic styles, lifestyles, or popular tastes:** *Heaven Can Wait* (1978)—a remake of *Here Comes Mr. Jordan* (1941); *A Star Is Born* (1954/1976)—new music, new lifestyle, a whole new ambience for an old story; *The Wizard of Oz/The Wiz* (1939/1978)—modern music and a black cast, a filmed version of a Broadway show; *The Getaway* (1972/1994)—new star couple.
- **Changes in film technology—updating to take advantage of new potential in the art form:** *Stagecoach* (1939/1966)—color, wide screen, stereophonic sound; *Ben-Hur* (1926/1959)—color, wide screen, stereophonic sound (1926 version was silent); *King Kong* (1933/1976/2005)—color, wide screen, stereophonic sound, sophisticated animation techniques; *The Thing* (1951/1982)—color, wide screen, stereophonic sound, special

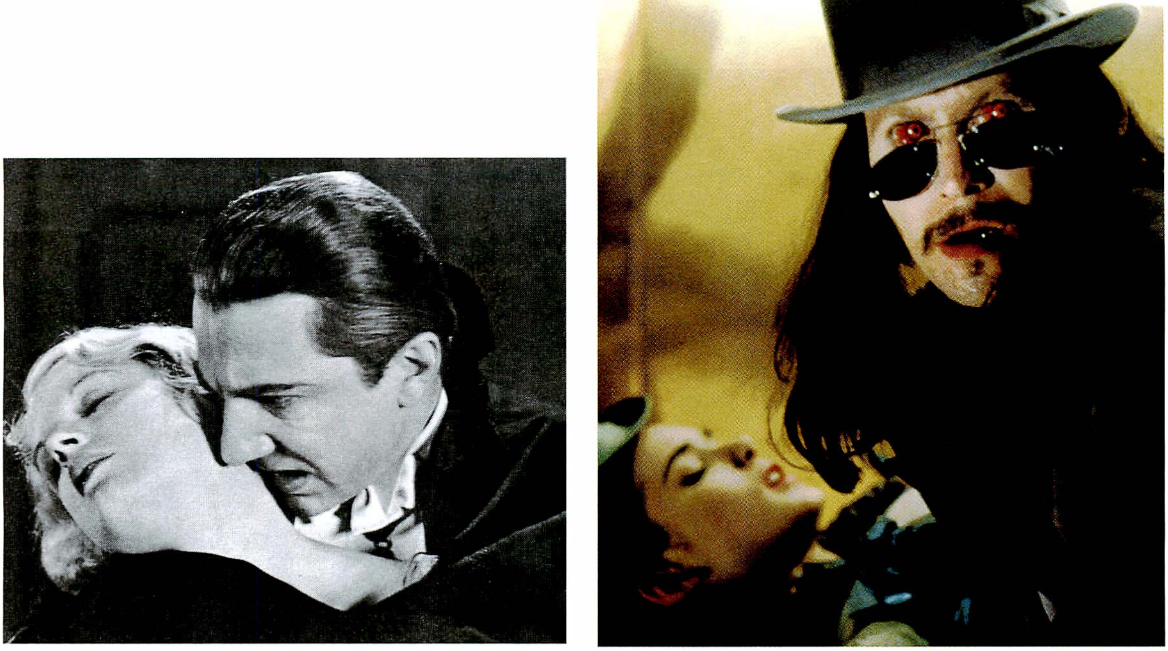


FIGURE 14.14 Popular Subject The human vampire legend has inspired a large number of films since German director F. W. Murnau's 1922 film version of the Dracula story, *Nosferatu*. Pictured here are Bela Lugosi and Helen Chandler in Tod Browning's 1931 *Dracula* (left) and Winona Ryder and Gary Oldman in Francis Ford Coppola's 1992 *Bram Stoker's Dracula* (right).

effects; *A Guy Named Joe/Always* (1943/1989)—color, wide screen, stereophonic sound; *Dracula/Bram Stoker's Dracula* (1931/1992)—color, wide screen, stereophonic sound, special effects (Figure 14.14); *Frankenstein/Mary Shelley's Frankenstein* (1931/1994)—color, wide screen, stereophonic sound.

- **Changes in censorship:** *The Postman Always Rings Twice* (1946/1981)—explicit treatment of steamy passions; *The Blue Lagoon* (1949/1980)—emphasis on sexual awakening of young couple; *Cape Fear* (1962/1991).
- **New paranoias:** *Invasion of the Body Snatchers* (1956/1978)—from subconscious fears of communist takeover in the original to fears of Moonie takeover in the remake.
- **The musical version:** A type of remake that usually provides a greater challenge and greater creative freedom for the filmmaker is the translation of the film into a musical version, where words and music must be integrated into the dramatic framework of the original. Examples: *Oliver Twist* (1948) to *Oliver!* (1968); *A Star Is Born* (1937 drama to 1954 musical); *The Philadelphia Story* (1940) to *High Society* (1956); *Lost Horizon* (1937 drama to 1973 musical); *Anna and the King of Siam* (1946 drama) to *The King and I* (1956 musical); and *Pygmalion* (1938 drama) to *My Fair Lady* (1964 musical).

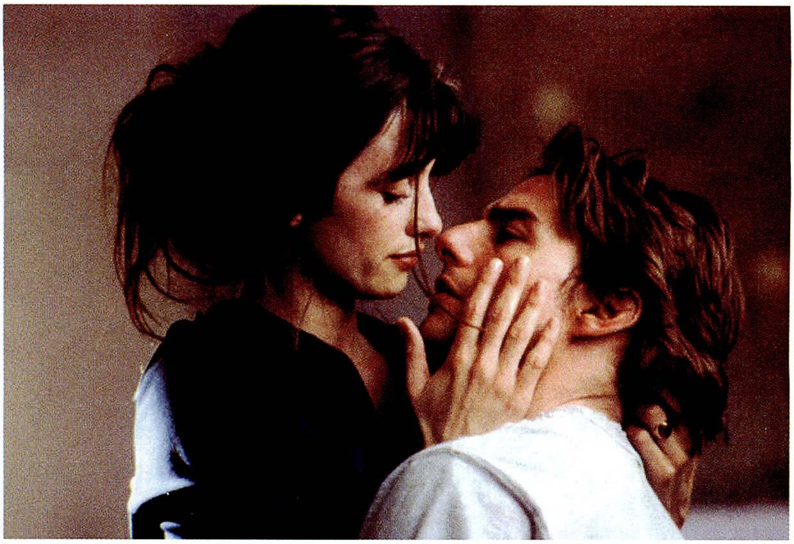


FIGURE 14.15 Linguistic, Cultural, and Geographical Transmigration Influential producers seldom appear completely willing merely to accept successful foreign language films for wide distribution in America. Rather, they somehow must always remake them, in English. Thus, *La Cage aux Folles* had to move from France to America and become *The Birdcage*, directed by Mike Nichols and starring Robin Williams. *Bob Le Flambeur* was obligated to transform into *The Good Thief*, starring Nick Nolte. And *Abre Los Ojos* (*Open Your Eyes*) was fated to metamorphose into *Vanilla Sky*. At least this last-named movie kept its original leading lady, Penélope Cruz (shown here with Tom Cruise); and its director, Aleajandro Amenábar, in the process of turning the reins over to Cameron Crowe, acquired *Vanilla Sky*'s leading man, Cruise, as his producer for a new project (in English, of course): *The Others*.

- **Change in format—the TV version:** Television movies have gotten into the remake business, with the following contributions: *Of Mice and Men*, *The Diary of Anne Frank*, *All Quiet on the Western Front*, *From Here to Eternity*, *In Cold Blood*, *The Shining*, *Rear Window*, and *David and Lisa*.
- **Remakes of international films:** The creative challenge of transplanting a film from one culture to another has produced some interesting results. *The Seven Samurai* (Japan, 1954) became *The Magnificent Seven* (USA, 1960). *Smiles of a Summer Night* (Sweden, 1955) became first a Broadway show and later the film *A Little Night Music* (USA, 1978). *Breathless* (France, 1959) was remade in the United States in 1983. The 1983 *Breathless* changes the setting from Paris to Los Angeles and reverses the nationalities of the principal characters. *The Return of Martin Guerre* (France, 1982) became *Sommersby* (USA, France, 1993). *The Vanishing* (France, Netherlands, 1988) was remade in the United States in 1993. *Insomnia* (2002) substituted American stars for Norwegian actors; *Vanilla Sky* (2001)

> evolved from the Spanish film *Open Your Eyes* (1998) (Figure 14.15); and *La Femme Infidele* (France, 1969) became *Unfaithful* (USA, 2002).

Finally, the critic Leo Braudy has noted that

> the remake resides at the intersection of the genetic and the generic codes. In even the most debased version, it is a meditation on the continuing historical relevance (economic, cultural, psychological) of a particular narrative. A remake is thus always concerned with what its makers and (they hope) its audiences consider to be unfinished cultural business.[33]

Sequels

> *People love sequels—they wait for them, read about them, and usually see them more than once. But in a town where executives make a habit of looking over their shoulders, selling something already regarded as a sure hit creates a tremendous burden. Movies are not necessarily better the second time around.*[34]
>
> —BETSY SHARKEY, ENTERTAINMENT WRITER

Remakes generally allow the original to age for a while (sometimes long enough for a whole new generation or two to come along who may not know the original). Sequels have the best chance of success when they follow the original quickly, so that they can capitalize on the original's success. Audiences attend sequels for the same reason they go to remakes. If they enjoyed the original, they go seeking more of the same, and they are curious to see how well the sequel stands up to the original. The motivation for shooting sequels is similar to that for shooting remakes—profit. But the thinking is a little different. With the remake it's a case of "They liked it once; let's make it again." With the sequel, it's a matter of "We've got a good thing going; let's get all the mileage out of it we can." Occasionally, "prequels" (works whose action occurs *before* the original film's) attempt to create this same type of success (Figure 14.16).

There are relatively few good reasons for making a sequel other than to realize the profit potential. Nevertheless, there are some very natural sequels—made simply because there was more story to tell—and these sequels can match the original in quality if the story is continued. First-class sequels have been made of *The Godfather* (*The Godfather Part II*), of *The French Connection* (*The French Connection II*), and in the *Harry Potter* and *The Lord of the Rings* series. And expectations are high for the series that started with *The Chronicles of Narnia: The Lion, The Witch, and The Wardrobe* (2005) and the first two *Pirates of the Caribbean* films (Figure 14.17). Most sequels, however, do not have the natural relationship to their original that these do.

Because sequels don't try to tell the same story but can build on characters already established in the original, they give the filmmakers much more room

FIGURE 14.16 Hopeful Prequels Successful films (particularly those in which central characters die) sometimes inspire attempts to account for time and events set before their action. Called "prequels," such movies rarely manage to capture the invention or energy that made their originals work. For example, the makers of the excellent *Gettysburg* (1993), with the considerable aid of Ted Turner's enthusiasm and funding, released *Gods and Generals* (starring Robert Duvall as General Robert E. Lee) in 2003. Their efforts produced poor box office and utterly dismal reviews, but continuing devotion from many Civil War buffs (including those who value its accurate attention to historic details, excepting those who accuse it of purveying a distasteful pro-Confederate bias).

for creative freedom than remakes do. As long as they pick up some characters from the original, maintain a certain degree of consistency in the treatment of those characters, and retain something of the style of the original, sequels can take off in almost any direction they want to go. A good example of flexibility in sequels can be seen in the sequels to James Whale's original *Frankenstein* (1931). It was followed by *Bride of Frankenstein* (1935), in which Whale introduced odd baroque elements and black humor, and by a kind of combo-sequel, *Frankenstein Meets the Wolf Man* (1943). The parody/sequel *Young Frankenstein* (1974) combines elements of both of the original Frankenstein films and succeeds largely because it lovingly recaptures the style of the original (Figure 14.18).

Much more important than the potential within the original story for a sequel is the audience's response to the original characters. If it becomes clear that a large film audience is fascinated with the cast of the original and would love to see those actors together again, we can be reasonably sure that a sequel will soon be in the making. On any film where the profit potential looks good enough to inspire a sequel, studio contracts will obligate actors to do the sequel. The continuity provided by keeping the actors of the original in the sequel is tremendously important to box-office appeal. Roy Scheider, Lorraine

FIGURE 14.17 **Natural Genre Extensions** In 2003, the great commercial success of the character-driven adventure *Pirates of the Caribbean: The Curse of the Black Pearl,* starring Johnny Depp and Keira Knightley, virtually guaranteed that sequels would be produced. Indeed, with director Gore Verbinski continuing to pilot two vessels at once, *Pirates of the Caribbean: Dead Man's Chest* created even bigger box-office numbers in 2006, and *Pirates of the Caribbean: At Worlds End* followed in 2007.

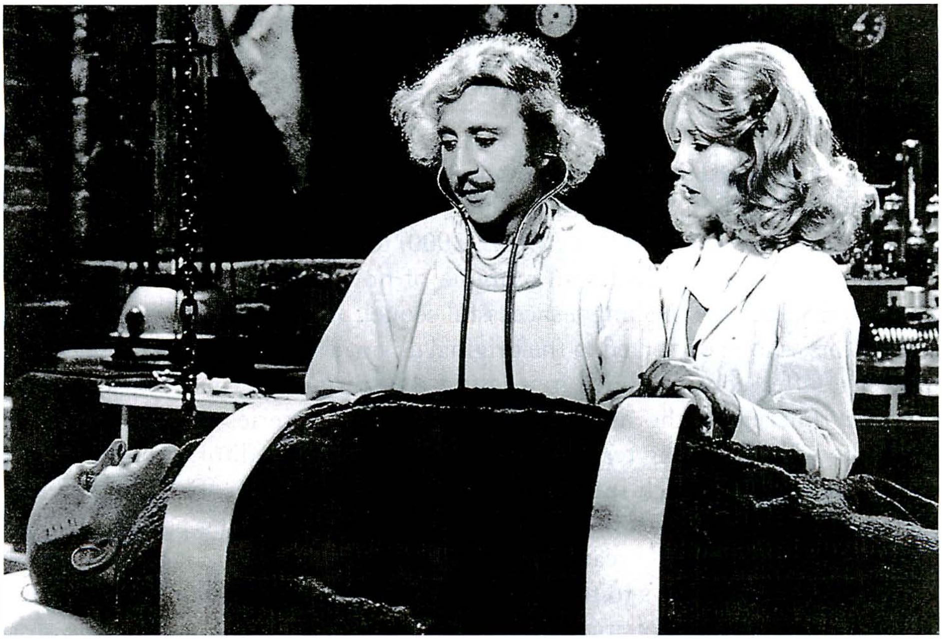


FIGURE 14.18 **Parody/Sequel** One of the most successful film parodies ever is Mel Brooks's *Young Frankenstein,* starring Peter Boyle, Gene Wilder, and Teri Garr. Through striking black-and-white cinematography and attention to details of setting and atmosphere, the film captures the style so well that it pays homage to the original.

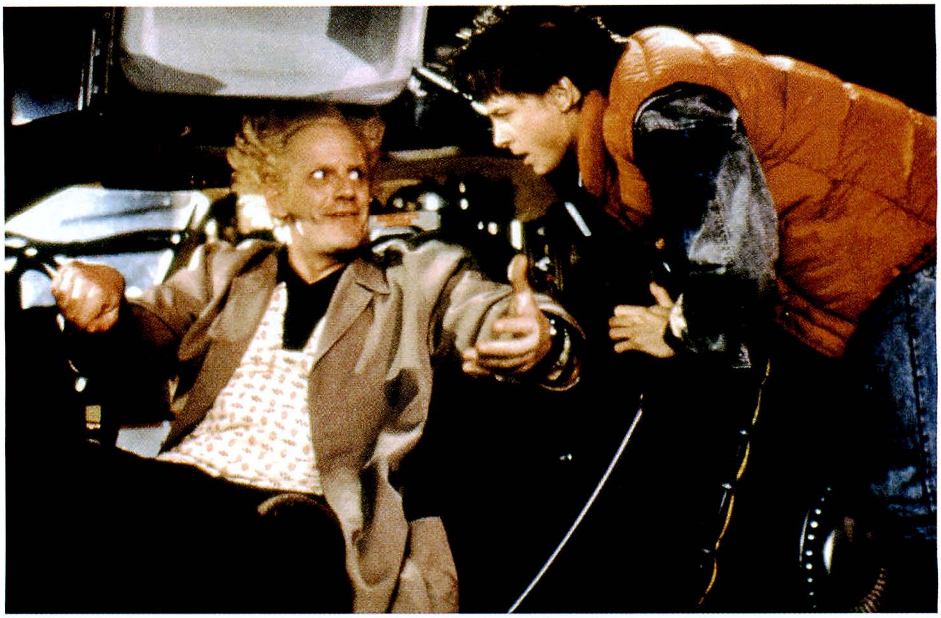


FIGURE 14.19 Continuity in the Sequel For the sequels to *Back to the Future,* the producers signed director Robert Zemeckis and actors Michael J. Fox, Christopher Lloyd (shown here), and Lea Thompson. To carry the continuity one step further and increase cost-efficiency, they filmed *II* and *III* at the same time, as, later, did Peter Jackson in his *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy and the Wachowski brothers in *The Matrix Reloaded* and *The Matrix Revolutions.*

Gary, and Murray Hamilton, for example, served as important links between *Jaws* and *Jaws 2;* Ben Stiller, Robert De Niro, and Blythe Danner were essential for the move from *Meet the Parents* (2000) to *Meet the Fockers* (2004).

But *Jaws 2* also provides an example of how important the behind-the-camera people are to making a successful sequel. When the writers, directors, and editors who participated in the original do not participate in the sequel, the film can suffer considerably, often losing the spirit, style, and impact of the original. Therefore, the most successful sequels (or series of sequels) result when the whole winning team (actors, director, writers, editor, producers, and so on) stays pretty much intact throughout (Figure 14.19). The phenomenal success of the *Rocky* series was probably due to the continuing participation of most of the original *Rocky* team.

Similar in some ways to the *Rocky* and *Superman* sequels, but very different from the ordinary exploitation-of-a-smash-hit sequel, is the character series. The character series can be developed from a series of novels featuring the same character or characters (Tarzan, James Bond, and Sherlock Holmes), or it can be developed around a character or combination of characters appearing in a single film. If a character or combination of characters has tremendous audience ap-

FIGURE 14.20 **The Long-Running Character Series** Chief Inspector Jacques Clouseau, the character played by Peter Sellers in the Pink Panther series, enjoyed a long and prosperous life, even after the great comic actor's death. When Sellers died after completing five Pink Panther films, director Blake Edwards put together a sixth, *The Trail of the Pink Panther,* made up of outtakes (unused footage) from the earlier films woven into a new story featuring some of the series actors. Arnold Schwarzenegger, seen here with Edward Furlong in *Terminator 2: Judgment Day,* continued his action-adventure journey in *Terminator 3: The Rise of the Machines.*

peal, a series of films may be structured around the character or characters—for example, Nick and Nora Charles (William Powell and Myrna Loy, *The Thin Man* series), Abbott and Costello, Crosby and Hope (the "Road" series), Peter Sellers as Inspector Clouseau (the "Pink Panther" series, Figure 14.20), and Percy Kilbride and Marjorie Main as Pa and Ma Kettle. *Raiders of the Lost Ark*, *Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom*, and *Indiana Jones and the Last Crusade* show that American audiences are still responsive to character series (Figure 14.21). The 1989–1997 Batman series (*Batman*, *Batman Returns*, *Batman Forever*; and *Batman & Robin*) seemingly changed focus from the hero to fascinating villains, even to the point of trading actors playing the caped crusader (George Clooney for Val Kilmer for Michael Keaton) in midstream. Recently, *Batman Begins* placed Christian Bale back at the vigilante hero's starting point.

In a character series, continuation of the actors from one film to the next is essential, but so is good writing built around consistency of character. The

FIGURE 14.21 New Character The addition of Indiana's father (Sean Connery) to the cast of *Indiana Jones and the Last Crusade* provided a delightful interplay between the characters that became the highlight of the whole film. Many viewers hope that synergy will continue in any additional sequel (long discussed by the series creators).

overall style of the series should be consistent so that the expectations of the audience are satisfied, guaranteeing their return to the next film in the series. The need of the audience for the predictable, for seeing familiar faces in familiar kinds of film story formats extends beyond the satisfaction provided by weekly situation comedies and dramatic series on television.

In rare cases, a series of films are designed as parts of a preconceived larger whole. Although each film can stand on its own as a unified work, each is linked by characters, setting, and events to a larger whole. George Lucas's *Star Wars* (1977), *The Empire Strikes Back* (1980), and *Return of the Jedi* (1983) were designed as a trilogy, and now *The Phantom Menace* (1999), *Attack of the Clones* (2002), and *Revenge of the Sith* (2005) create another trilogy, set in an earlier time. Although the profit motive might also be involved in such plans, the writing and dramatic power should be superior to the "Hey! That one made money! Let's whip out another and another!" kind of afterthought, which often seems to impel Hollywood sequels (as in the case of much in the *Planet of the Apes* series—before the 2001 Tim Burton remake).

Critic Wheeler Dixon observes that current "remakes of genre classics seek to obscure their humble, or perhaps more accurately, populist origins with a panoply of expensive sets . . . , all to justify the price of an increasingly expensive admission ticket." He continues:

> What is happening here is a return to the past, but with a new series of values imposed on source material that was once upon a time more in tune with average audience/consumer expectations. Thus, the new versions of these films are triumphs of style over substance. . . . The day of the modestly budgeted genre film is a memory. . . . [T]he implicit message in contemporary genre films is rarely that which is signified by film's external or even internal narrative structure.[35]

He extends his argument further, suggesting that recent "American genre cinema . . . seems, in many respects, more formulaic than ever, even if it is presented with a fine sheen thanks to digital special effects." Still, he admits, "there is nevertheless a core of meaning embedded in even the most desultory entertainments"—mentioning such movies as *The Rock*, *Starship Troopers*, and *Pocahontas.* Many critics may well disagree with what they might term Dixon's still "limited" definition of genre, but few, surely, would deny his conclusion that "for better or worse, American genre cinema dominates the globe."

ANALYZING GENRE FILMS, REMAKES, AND SEQUELS

On Genre Films

1. Study three films by the same director in one genre, along with at least two films in the same genre by different directors. Are three different directorial styles apparent, or are the styles indistinguishable? Consider the three films by the same director in chronological order. Does the director incorporate personal stylistic trademarks into each of the films? What are those trademarks, and what makes them stand out?
2. What innovations or refinements on the genre does the director introduce as he or she moves from one film to another? Are these innovations and refinements superficial and cosmetic, or are they significant enough to stretch the genre, creating a strain or tension against the outer boundaries of its form? Does the director seem to learn something new with each film and build on that in the next? Do we see changes in the director's personal vision or worldview from one film to another? How are those changes reflected? (For example, does the director seem to grow more serious or less serious, more pessimistic or more optimistic?)
3. Compare and contrast the styles of two directors working within the same genre. Examine at least two films by each director, and decide how their styles create important differences within the same genre. (For example, how is a Frank Capra screwball comedy different from a Preston Sturges screwball comedy?)

On Remakes

1. Was the remake really necessary? Why is the older version outdated? Why do modern audiences need the story retold? What aspects of the original film are inaccessible to modern audiences? Are these inaccessible aspects so important as to make the film incomprehensible to contemporary filmgoers or are they relatively insignificant?
2. What important changes were made in the remake? Why were they made? Which changes are improvements over the original and which are only changes for the sake of novelty?
3. Which is the better film? Does the remake have the freshness and the creative dynamic of the original? Were you disappointed in the remake? Why or why not?

4. How is the remake like the original? Is an effort made through casting, cinematic style, and so on to capture the spirit and flavor of the original? Do these efforts succeed?
5. What advantages does the remake have over the original in terms of freedom from censorship and new technology in the medium? How does it make use of these advantages?
6. If the remake involves a foreign original, how does a change of setting, language, or cultural values affect the remake?

On Sequels

1. Does the sequel grow naturally out of the original? In other words, was there enough story left over from the original to make a natural sequel?
2. How many important members of the original cast and of the behind-the-scenes team were involved in the sequel? If some characters had to be recast, how did that change affect the quality of the sequel?
3. Does the sequel build on the original in such a way that it seems incomplete unless you've seen the original, or is it complete enough to stand on its own as a separate, unified work?
4. Does the sequel capture the flavor and spirit of the original in story and visual style? Is it equal in quality to the original in every aspect? Where does it surpass the original and where is it weaker?
5. If the sequel becomes a character series, what are the qualities of the characters that make them wear well? Why do we want to see them again and again? Are the writers able to keep their characters consistent in film after film? How consistent are the other stylistic elements from one film to another?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

Director Tim Burton has built his colorful career upon the creation of remakes, sequels, and genre films. His techno-savvy *Planet of the Apes* (2001) attempts to reimagine the 1968 original. His dark *Batman Returns* (1992) was the first sequel to his own more arresting *Batman* (1989). His other genre films—including the giddy horror picture *Beetlejuice* (1988), the lyrically romantic oddity *Edward Scissorhands* (1990), and the all-star sci-fi spoof *Mars Attacks!* (1996)—also either emanate from cartoon sources or seem to possess a comic book sensibility. And they usually function simultaneously as loving homage and bold satire: They operate both as replicative remembrances of cinema past and chic, visually witty parodies.

Burton's first live-action film, a short called *Frankenweenie* (1984), was a sure foreshadowing of his later works. This "children's film" (which the Disney studio financed but never gave a general theatrical release) captures all that is best in its model, the 1931 horror film *Frankenstein.* But it establishes, too, a wickedly amusing tone that proffers a sly wink to watchers of all ages. The movie's basic narrative is not original, but its canine-monster transference is at least very clever. For true newness in plot and image, one need only focus upon a film whose story, characters, and design Burton "merely" thought up, and whose screen arrival he produced—*The Nightmare Before Christmas,* directed by Henry Selick (see the "Animated SF/X Films" section of Chapter 5).

However, locate a copy of the DVD *The Nightmare Before Christmas (Special Edition)* and you will find there, among other extra features, two early Burton films. "Vincent," his first work, is a very brief animated act of admiration for Vincent Price and his screen world, narrated by Price himself. "Frankenweenie" appears in its thirty-six-minute "director's cut" and stars Shelley Duvall, Daniel Stern, and Barret Oliver. Watch the latter. Pay special attention to those elements of Burton's burgeoning artistry that help him to walk that fine line between embracing and poking fun at the genres in which he is working: the camera angles, the lighting placement, the choice of black-and-white film, the editing style, the musical scoring.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

American Cinema: One Hundred Years of Filmmaking:
Over nine hours of movie history, documentary, and criticism make up this invaluable two-disc set (first shown on PBS). Among its narrators are directors Spike Lee, George Lucas, Martin Scorsese, Steven Spielberg, Oliver Stone, and Quentin Tarantino, and actors Julia Roberts and Harrison Ford. Its substantive episodes scrutinize, along with many other topics, four specific film genres: the western, the combat film, *film noir*; and the romantic (including "screwball") comedy.

The Godfather DVD [Five-Disc] *Collection:*
This DVD set is, quite simply, an offer you can't (of course) refuse: the mother, aunt, and stepsister of all latter-day gangster films, in pristine, wide-screen form—plus three hours' worth of filmmaking extra features.

Sleepless in Seattle (Special Edition):
"Love in the Movies," a thirteen-minute feature, presents on-screen observations from stars Meg Ryan and Tom Hanks, producers Lynda Obst and Gary Foster, and director and co-writer Nora Ephron, who insists that "what we feel about love we've learned from movies." The disc's segment also includes comments from Delia Ephron, who, like her sister Nora, became a writer in part because she grew up in a household with screenwriter parents. And for full measure (good or ill), interviews are also thrown in with the hosts of cable television's "Loveline," Dr. Drew Pinsky and comedian Adam Corolla.

Carnival of Souls (1962) *(Criterion Collection):*
Despite how expensive this special two-disc set may initially seem, movie lovers who cherish cheaply made B-movie horror will embrace its wealth of special

features. Included are two versions of the celebrated black-and-white flick, a documentary covering the 1989 reunion of cast and crew, and multiple examinations of its eerie Saltair resort setting in Salt Lake City.

Jaws (Anniversary Collector's Edition):
This DVD's "Spotlight on Location" feature demonstrates that trying to walk on water might have been easier than trying to shoot a suspense movie on water . . . *and* appease a most uncooperative title actor.

Signs:
According to the cover copy on this DVD, suspense writer, producer, and director M. Night Shyamalan "takes you on a journey of filmmaking in an exclusive, six-part [hour-long] documentary exploring *Signs* from the birth of the idea, to writing the script, to building the sets, to realizing the creature and other effects, to the scoring [by James Newton Howard] and innovative marketing of the film."

Joyride (Special Edition):
Alfred Hitchcock often asserted that precise timing through editing could make or break a thriller. One might begin to test this theory by studying the relative effectiveness of four alternative endings to John Dahl's genre movie. They are made available on a twenty-nine-minute "extras" section of the DVD.

Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon:
The making of Ang Lee's intensely "original" genre film is recorded in a Bravo channel special on the DVD: "Unleashing the Dragon."

Back to the Future: The Complete Trilogy:
Film directors and producers who sought to present their works in DVD format have long assumed that including scenes shot for, but not used in, the theatrical versions of movies is an especially popular (and relatively inexpensive) way to please buyers. Then, in a study released on July 17, 2002, the Video Software Dealers Association confirmed this DVD extra as the favorite of consumers. In the feature-rich, three-disc set for the *Back to the Future* trilogy, director Robert Zemeckis and producer Bob Gale make available sixteen such bonus (new or extended) scenes: eight for *Back to the Future*, seven for *Back to the Future II*, and, for *Back to the Future III*, the single segment that was deleted. Gale explains in his commentary for the scene that he and Zemeckis agreed its solitary portrayal of violent death broke the gentler tone otherwise sustained throughout the sci-fi trilogy. Elsewhere on the disc, Zemeckis also defends his apparent mixing of genres in Part III, saying that the film "is not really a western."

The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring (Special Extended DVD Edition):
Choose the disc marked "The Appendices: Part Two: From Vision to Reality." Select "Filming . . ." from the menu. Learn the true meaning of "genre-fealty" by listening to the conversational tattoos of "The Fellowship of the Cast."

The Wizard of Oz:
If merely watching the extensive documentary hosted by Angela Lansbury on this classic fantasy-genre disc does not convince one of its worth, then

discovering the very special "outtake musical numbers" included undoubtedly will.

Cabaret (Special Edition):

Two documentaries on this DVD provide details about the creation of director/choreographer Bob Fosse's influential musical film set in 1931 Berlin: "*Cabaret:* A Legend in the Making" (1979) and "The Recreation of an Era" (1972).

Nashville:

When the long-awaited wide-screen video version of this 1975 musical drama finally arrived in DVD form, it contained not only an audio commentary track by Robert Altman, but also an "exclusive interview" with the much-loved, much-criticized maverick director.

(NOTE: See also the DVD Filmmaking Extras section for Chapter 9: The Musical Score.)

Twelve Monkeys (Collector's Edition):

This "science fiction thriller" remake is actually a feature film "inspired by" *La Jetée*, the classic short work by Chris Marker (see Mini-Movie Exercise I for Chapter 12: Analysis of the Whole Film). The DVD includes a full-length (1:27) "making of" film, "The Hamster Factor and Other Tales of *Twelve Monkeys*," which sometimes uses Monty Pythonesque animation to make its points. (The filmmakers here are Keith Fulton and Louis Pepe, the same documentarians who, in 2003, released in theaters their *Lost in la Mancha*, an extraordinary record of director Terry Gilliam's disastrous efforts to make a movie about Don Quixote.) Everyone from star Bruce Willis to the production designer attests to the independent-minded Gilliam's long-running, continuing battle with the Hollywood system. The film emphatically states his lack of belief in the reliability of audience "test screenings" and "focus groups" to predict the success of this genre film. The set decorator explains how, against the impossible demands of the film's relatively low budget, he had to use "found objects" and shooting locales (including an old abandoned power station) serendipitously. Perhaps most fascinating is Gilliam's amusing tale of how he inadvertently captured *Twelve Monkeys'* last splendid, expensive shot *because* he sought revenge for what he characterized as producer Charles Roven's needless demands for photographic "coverage."

Spy Kids 2: The Island of Lost Dreams:

The DVD for this first sequel to the popular kids-adventure movie contains a valuable instructive segment from its director: "Robert Rodriguez's Ten-Minute Film School."

FILMS FOR STUDY

Westerns—and Antiwesterns

Blazing Saddles (parody, 1974)
Cimarron (1931)
Dances With Wolves (1990)
Fort Apache (1948)

Heaven's Gate (1980)
High Noon (1952)
Little Big Man (1970)
The Long Riders (1980)
Lust in the Dust (parody, 1985)
McCabe & Mrs. Miller (1971)
My Darling Clementine (1946)
Once Upon a Time in the West (1968)
Open Range (2003)
Red River (1948)
Ride the High Country (1962)
Rio Bravo (1959)
The Searchers (1956)
Shane (1953)
She Wore a Yellow Ribbon (1949)
Stagecoach (1939; remade in 1966)
Tumbleweeds (1925)
Unforgiven (1992)
The Wild Bunch (1969)

Gangster Films

The Asphalt Jungle (1950)
Badlands (1973)
The Big Heat (1953)
Bonnie and Clyde (1967)
Bugsy (1991)
The Departed (2006, remake of *Infernal Affairs*, Hong Kong, 2002)
The Godfather (1972; sequels: *Part II*, 1974, and *Part III*, 1990)
GoodFellas (1990)
Key Largo (1948)
Kill Bill, Vol. I (2003), and *Vol. II* (2004)
Kiss of Death (1947)
Little Caesar (1930)
The Maltese Falcon (1941)
Mean Streets (1973)
Miller's Crossing (1990)
Natural Born Killers (1994)
Prizzi's Honor (1985)
The Public Enemy (1931)
Pulp Fiction (1994)
Reservoir Dogs (1992)
The Road to Perdition (2002)
Scarface (1932; remade in 1983)
Sexy Beast (2001—British)
The Untouchables (1987)
The Usual Suspects (1995)
White Heat (1949)

Film Noir and Neo-Noir

The Big Clock (1948; remade as *No Way Out* in 1987)
The Big Sleep (1946)
Blood Simple (1984)
Body Heat (1981)
Chinatown (1974; sequel: *The Two Jakes*, 1990)
Dead Again (1991)
Dead Men Don't Wear Plaid (parody, 1982)
Detour (1945; remade in 1992)
Devil in a Blue Dress (1995)
D.O.A. (1950; remade in 1988)
Double Indemnity (1944)
Gilda (1946)
The Grifters (1990)
The Ice Harvest (2005)
The Killers (1946)
A Kiss Before Dying (1956; remade in 1991)
Kiss Me Deadly (1955)
Kiss Kiss Bang Bang (2005)
L.A. Confidential (1997)
The Lady From Shanghai (1948)
The Last Seduction (1994)
Laura (1944)
Memento (2001)
Murder, My Sweet (1944; remade in 1975 as *Farewell, My Lovely*)
The Naked City (1948)
The Naked Kiss (1964)
Night and the City (1950; remade in 1992)
One False Move (1992)

Out of the Past (1947; remade in 1984 as *Against All Odds*)
Pickup on South Street (1953)
The Postman Always Rings Twice (1946; remade in 1981)
Sin City (2005)
Sunset Boulevard (1950)
They Live by Night (1949)
To Have and Have Not (1944)
Touch of Evil (1958; re-edited from Orson Welles's notes in 1998)

War Films

All Quiet on the Western Front (1930)
Apocalypse Now (1979)
Battleground (1949)
Black Hawk Down (2001)
The Bridge on the River Kwai (1957)
Das Boot (1981—German)
The Deer Hunter (1978)
The Dirty Dozen (1967)
The Eagle Has Landed (1977)
Flags of Our Fathers (2006)
Full Metal Jacket (1987)
Glory (1989)
Grand Illusion (1937—French)
*M*A*S*H* (1970)
Paths of Glory (1957)
The Patriot (2000)
Patton (1970)
Pearl Harbor (2001)
Platoon (1986)
Saving Private Ryan (1998)
Stalag 17 (1953)
The Story of G.I. Joe (1945)
They Were Expendable (1945)
The Thin Red Line (1998; remake of 1964 film)
Three Kings (1999)
The Victors (1963)

Horror Films

Alien (1979; sequels: *Aliens*, 1986, *Alien*^{3}, 1992, and *Alien Resurrection*, 1997)
The Birds (1963)
The Blair Witch Project (1999)
The Cabinet of Dr. Caligari (1919—German)
Carrie (1976)
Cat People (1942; remade in 1982)
Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde (1932; remade in 1941)
Eraserhead (1978)
The Exorcist (1973; followed by two sequels; remade *twice* in 2004 (by Renny Harlan and Paul Schrader)
The Fly (1958; remade in 1986)
The Fog (1980; remade in 2005)
Frankenstein (1931; sequels include *Bride of Frankenstein*, 1935; remakes: *Mary Shelley's Frankenstein*, 1994, the parody/sequel *Young Frankenstein*, 1974, and *The Bride*, 1985)
Freaks (1932)
Friday the 13th (1980; multiple sequels)
Halloween (1978; numerous sequels)
Hannibal (2001)
The Innocents (1961)
The Lair of the White Worm (1988)
The Mummy (1932) (remade in 1999; sequels: *The Mummy Returns*, 2001, and *The Scorpion King*, 2002)
A Nightmare on Elm Street (1984; many sequels)
Night of the Living Dead (1968; remade in 1990; sequels: *Dawn of the Dead*, 1978, *Day of the Dead*, 1985)
Nosferatu (1922; remakes include *Dracula*, 1931, *Nosferatu*, 1979, and *Bram Stoker's Dracula*, 1992)
The Omen (1976; three sequels; remade in 2006)
The Others (2001)
Psycho (1960; several sequels; remade in 1998)

Red Dragon (2002; remake of *Manhunter*, 1986)
The Ring (2002; sequel: *The Ring Two*, 2005)
Saw (2004; sequel: *Saw II*, 2005)
Scream (1996; sequels: *Scream 2*, 1997; *3*, 2000)
Shadow of the Vampire (2000)
The Shining (1980/1997 for TV)
Signs (2002)
The Silence of the Lambs (1991)
Spider (2003)
Suspiria (1977—Italian)
The Wolf Man (1941)

Science Fiction and Fantasy Films

2001: A Space Odyssey (1968; sequel: *2010*, 1984)
A.I. Artificial Intelligence (2001)
Alphaville (1965—French)
Blade Runner (1982)
Brazil (1985)
The Brother From Another Planet (1984)
Close Encounters of the Third Kind (1977)
Contact (1997)
Daredevil (2003)
Dark City (1998)
The Day After Tomorrow (2004)
The Day the Earth Stood Still (1951)
Dune (1984)
E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial (1982)
eXistenZ (1999)
Fahrenheit 451 (1966)
Fantastic Voyage (1966)
The Fifth Element (1997)
Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone (2001; sequels: *The Chamber of Secrets*, 2002, *The Prisoner of Azkaban*, 2004, and *The Goblet of Fire*, 2005)
Highlander (1986; sequels in 1991 and 1994)
The Incredible Shrinking Man (1957; sequel/parody: *The Incredible Shrinking Woman*, 1981)
Invasion of the Body Snatchers (1956; remade in 1978 and in 1994 as *Body Snatchers*)
The Invisible Man (1933; numerous sequels, including *Memoirs of an Invisible Man* in 1992)
The Island (2005)
Island of Lost Souls (1933; remade in 1977 and 1996 as *The Island of Dr. Moreau*)
La Jetée (1962 short; inspired *Twelve Monkeys*, 1995)
The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring (2001; sequels: *The Two Towers*, 2002, and *The Return of the King*, 2003)
The Man Who Fell to Earth (1976)
The Matrix (1999; two sequels, 2003)
Metropolis (1926)
Minority Report (2002)
Pi (1998)
Planet of the Apes (1968; four sequels; plus remake, 2001)
Seconds (1966)
Soylent Green (1973)
Spider-Man (2002; sequel: *Spider-Man 2*, 2004)
Star Trek—The Motion Picture (1979; followed by several sequels)
Star Wars (1977; sequels in 1980, *The Empire Strikes Back*, and 1983, *Return of the Jedi;* prequels in 1999, *Episode I: The Phantom Menace*, 2002, *Episode II: Attack of the Clones*, and 2005, *Episode III: Revenge of the Sith)*
The Terminator (1984; sequels: *2*, 1991; *3*, 2003)
Them! (1954)
The Thing (1951; remade in 1982)
THX 1138 (1971)
A Trip to the Moon (1902, Mèliés short)
The Wizard of Oz (1939)
X-Men (2000, plus sequels in 2003 and 2006)

Romantic Screwball Comedies

Adam's Rib (1949)
The Awful Truth (1937)
Ball of Fire (1941)
The Break-Up (2006)
Bringing Up Baby (1938; remade in 1972 as *What's Up, Doc?*)
Easy Living (1937)
His Girl Friday (1940; remake of *The Front Page*, 1931; remade in 1974 and, as *Switching Channels*, in 1988)
Holiday (1938)
It Happened One Night (1934)
The Lady Eve (1941)
Mr. Deeds Goes to Town (1936; remake: *Mr. Deeds*, 2002)
My Best Friend's Wedding (1997)
My Big Fat Greek Wedding (2002)
My Man Godfrey (1936)
Nothing Sacred (1937)
The Palm Beach Story (1942)
The Philadelphia Story (1940; remade as *High Society*, 1956)
Sweet Home Alabama (2002)
There's Something About Mary (1998)
The Thin Man (1934; plus a series of sequels)
Tin Cup (1996)
Topper (1937; sequels)
Twentieth Century (1934)
Unfaithfully Yours (1948; remade in 1984)

Musicals

42nd Street (1933)
All That Jazz (1979)
An American in Paris (1951)
Cabaret (1972)
Chicago (2002)
Dancer in the Dark (2000)
De-Lovely (2004)
Dreamgirls (2006)
Everyone Says I Love You (1996)
Fame (1980)
Fiddler on the Roof (1971)
Footloose (1984)
Funny Girl (1968; sequel: *Funny Lady*, 1975)
Gold Diggers of 1933 (1933; also 1935 and 1937)
Grease (1978)
Guys and Dolls (1955)
Hair (1979)
A Hard Day's Night (1964)
Hedwig and the Angry Inch (2001)
Jailhouse Rock (1957)
The Jazz Singer (1927; remade in 1953 and 1980)
The King and I (1956; remake of *Anna and the King of Siam*, 1946)
Love Me or Leave Me (1955)
Mary Poppins (1964)
Meet Me in St. Louis (1944)
Moulin Rouge! (2001)
The Music Man (1962)
My Fair Lady (1964)
Nashville (1975)
New York, New York (1977)
O Brother, Where Art Thou? (2000)
Oklahoma! (1955)
Oliver! (1968; remake of *Oliver Twist*, 1948)
One Hundred Men and a Girl (1937)
Pennies From Heaven (1981; remake of a British TV series)
The Producers (2005)
Rent (2005)
Road to Singapore (1940; first in a series)
The Rocky Horror Picture Show (1975)
Rose-Marie (1936; remade in 1954)
Singin' in the Rain (1952)
The Sound of Music (1965)
A Star Is Born (1954; a remake of a 1937 drama; remade in 1976)
Swing Time (1936)

Top Hat (1935)
Topsy-Turvy (2000)
The Umbrellas of Cherbourg (1964—French)
West Side Story (1961)
The Wizard of Oz (1939; remade in 1978 as *The Wiz*)
Yentl (1983)

Other Remakes

Alfie (1966/2004)
Ben-Hur (1926/1959)
Cape Fear (1962/1991)
Clueless (1995/*Emma*, 1996)
Death Takes a Holiday (1934/*Meet Joe Black*, 1998)
Doctor Dolittle (1967/1998)
Down and Out in Beverly Hills (1986/*Boudu Saved From Drowning*, 1932—French)
Father of the Bride (1950; sequel: *Father's Little Dividend*, 1951/1991; sequel: *Father of the Bride Part II*, 1995)
The Getaway (1972/1994)
Godzilla (1954—Japanese/1998—plus many mutations)
Great Expectations (1934/1946/1974/1998)
A Guy Named Joe (1943/*Always*, 1989)
Hamlet (includes versions in 1948, 1969, 1990, and 1996)
Insomnia (1997—Norwegian/2002)
King Kong (1933/1976/2005)
La Cage aux Folles (1978—French-Italian—plus two sequels/*The Birdcage*, 1996)
La Femme Nikita (1990—French-Italian/*Point of No Return*, 1993)
The Ladykillers (1955—British/2004)
Les Liaisons Dangereuses (1960—French/*Dangerous Liaisons*, 1988/*Valmont*, 1989/*Cruel Intentions*, 1999)
Little Women (1933/1949/1978 for TV/1994)
Lolita (1962/1997)
Lord of the Flies (1963/1990)
Love Affair (1939/*An Affair to Remember*, 1957/*Love Affair*, 1994)
The Man Who Knew Too Much (1934—British/1956, both directed by Alfred Hitchcock)
A Midsummer Night's Dream (1935/1968/1999)
Mighty Joe Young (1949/1998)
Moby Dick (1930/1956/1998 for TV)
The Nutty Professor (1963/1996; sequel: *II: The Klumps*, 2000)
Ocean's Eleven (1960/2001; sequels: *Twelve*, 2004, and *Thirteen*, 2007)
Of Mice and Men (1939/1992)
Open Your Eyes (1998—Spanish/*Vanilla Sky*, 2001)
The Pink Panther (1964; several sequels; remade in 2006)
The Poseidon Adventure (1972/*Poseidon*, 2006)
Purple Noon (1960—French/Italian/*The Talented Mr. Ripley*, 1999)
Ransom (1956/1996)
The Return of Martin Guerre (1982—French/*Sommersby*, 1993)
Romeo and Juliet (1936/1954/1966/1968; *William Shakespeare's Romeo + Juliet*, 1996)
The Seven Samurai (1954—Japanese/*The Magnificent Seven*, 1960)
The Shop Around the Corner (1940/*In the Good Old Summertime*, 1949/*You've Got Mail*, 1998)
Solaris (1972—Russian/2002)
The Stepford Wives (1975/2004)
The Taming of the Shrew (1929/1967/*10 Things I Hate About You*, 1999)

The Thomas Crown Affair (1968/1999)
The Time Machine (1960/2002)
To Be or Not To Be (1942/1983)
The Vanishing (1988—French-Dutch/1993—both directed by George Sluizer)
Wings of Desire (1988—West German–French; sequel: *Faraway, So Close!*, 1993/*City of Angels*, 1998)

Other Sequels

Babe (1995—Australian/*Babe: Pig in the City*, 1998—Australian)
Back to the Future (1985/*Part II*, 1989/*Part III*, 1990)
Barbershop (2002; *2*, 2004)
Batman (1989/*Batman Returns*, 1992/*Batman Forever*; 1995/*Batman & Robin*, 1997)
Bridget Jones's Diary (2001/*Bridget Jones: The Edge of Reason*, 2004)
The Decline of the American Empire (1986—Canadian/*The Barbarian Invasions*, 2003)
Die Another Day (2002) (Bond prevails.)
Die Hard (1988/*Die Hard 2*, 1990/*Die Hard With a Vengeance*, 1995)
The French Connection (1971/*The French Connection II*, 1975)
Here Comes Mr. Jordan (1941/*Heaven Can Wait*, 1978)
Home Alone (1990/*Home Alone 2: Lost in New York*, 1992/*Home Alone 3*, 1997)
Jaws (1975/*Jaws 2*, 1978/*Jaws 3-D*, 1983/*Jaws the Revenge*, 1987)
Jean de Florette (1986—French; sequel: *Manon of the Spring*, 1986)
The Last Picture Show (1971/*Texasville*, 1990)
Lethal Weapon (1987/*Lethal Weapon 2*, 1989/*Lethal Weapon 3*, 1992/*Lethal Weapon 4*, 1998)
Meet the Parents (2000/*Meet the Fockers*, 2004)
Mission: Impossible (1996/*II*, 2000/*III*, 2006)
My Father's Glory (1990—French; sequel: *My Mother's Castle*, 1990)
Pirates of the Caribbean: The Curse of the Black Pearl (2003/*Dead Man's Chest*, 2006)
Raiders of the Lost Ark (1981/*Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom*, 1984/*Indiana Jones and the Last Crusade*, 1989)
Rocky (1976/*II*, 1979/*III*, 1982/*IV*, 1985/*V*, 1990/*Rocky Balboa*, 2006)
Smiles of a Summer Night (1955—Swedish/inspired *A Little Night Music*, 1978, and *A Midsummer Night's Sex Comedy*, 1982)
Superman (1978/*II*, 1980/*III*, 1983/*IV*, 1987; remade as *Superman Returns*, 2006)

15

FILM *and* SOCIETY

A movie is a kind of séance, or a drug, where we are offered the chance to partake in the lifelike. No, it's not life: we will never meet Joan Crawford or Clark Gable. Yet we are with them. It is surreptitious; it is illicit, if you like, in the sense of being unearned or undeserved. It is vicarious, it is fantastic, and this may be very dangerous. But it is heady beyond belief or compare. And it changed the world. Not even heroin or the supernatural ever went so far.

—DAVID THOMSON,
FILM HISTORIAN AND CRITIC

Most Americans have grown up with movies, both in the theater and on television. We're so familiar with genre films, remakes, and sequels that we experience them as easily as drawing a breath. They are part of our natural environment. But sometimes we are not very comfortable with foreign language, silent, and documentary films, because they seem to be products of other cultures, other lifestyles, other sensibilities, or other generations. The "strangeness" of these kinds of films can pose formidable challenges to appreciation and understanding. In addition, in our culture we often have difficulty dealing with feature films whose main significance may involve our focusing on social problems or whose apparent aim is to stretch the boundaries of our culture's standards regarding censorship issues. However, if we make a conscious effort to overcome these obstacles, we will be amply rewarded by the worlds of experience awaiting in movies that help us to define ourselves and our society.

FILM FOREIGNNESS

As we have seen in Chapter 6, the language problem is one obstacle for Americans in understanding and appreciating international films. Another factor that influences our responses is editing rhythm. The editing rhythms of international films differ from those of American films. Whether these filmic differences reflect the different pace of life in other countries would certainly make an interesting study. But, whatever the cause, there are differences. Italian films, for example, average about fifteen seconds per running shot, whereas American films average about five seconds per shot. This difference makes Italian films seem strange to American viewers, and there is danger that American viewers will be bored by the film without knowing why. In addition, a typical (sometimes stereotypical) observation about differences is that American films tend to be plot based whereas European films are usually character based.

The musical scores to many international films, especially Italian and French films, have often seemed dated, like American music of an earlier era. Swedish and Danish films, particularly, use little or no music, a fact that also takes getting used to. In some cases, the music may be present to trigger responses that are particular to that culture, to which we simply have not been conditioned to respond.

Other important cultural differences may limit or distract our response. A story about a Russian attempt to use *The Grapes of Wrath* as a propaganda tool against the United States in the late 1940s indicates that cultural differences have a profound effect on how a film is received. Russian officials viewing *The Grapes of Wrath* had seen in it an example of the exploitation of migrant workers by the capitalistic ranch owners. The officials started showing the film to Russians in order to demonstrate how terrible life in America was and to convince them of the evils of capitalism. The idea backfired when the peasants

FIGURE 15.1 Cultural Differences An American audience might have difficulty understanding the symbolic importance of class distinctions in a French film like Jean Renoir's *Grand Illusion* (left, with Marcel Dalio and Jean Gabin) or an Italian film such as Lina Wertmuller's *Swept Away . . .* (1975) (right, with Mariangelo Melato and Giancarlo Giannini).

responded not with contempt for the capitalists but with envy for the Joads, who owned a truck and had the freedom to travel across the country.

Similarly, American audiences might miss some of the nuances of a French film like Jean Renoir's classic *Grand Illusion* or of an Italian film like Lina Wertmuller's *Swept Away* . . . (Figure 15.1), a film narrative operating on several different levels. On a very basic level, *Swept Away* . . . is an allegory about the never-ending battle between the sexes. The principal characters, a deckhand (Giancarlo Giannini) and a yacht owner's wife (Mariangela Melato), are shipwrecked on an island. The couple are opposites in a variety of ways. He is dark haired and dark skinned; she is fair skinned and blonde. He is a southern Italian and lower class; she is a northern Italian and upper class. Politically, she is a capitalist; he is a social democrat. As the male/female battle is waged, a very Italian class and political struggle is also being waged, with levels of meaning beyond the understanding of the average American viewer. Although we can catch the broad outlines of these symbolic levels, the fine nuances and subtleties are lost to us. This is not to say that we cannot enjoy the film, but we must face the fact that we are not really seeing quite the same film that a native Italian would see. The battle of the sexes and the love story it evolves into are universal and clearly understood. The north/south conflict and the political/class struggle are less familiar to an American, in the same way that an Italian would lack an intimate understanding of our basic myths of North/South differences, political parties, black/white social problems, our particular American concept of social status, or American democracy. (Perhaps ironically, the critically pummeled

2002 English remake of *Swept Away . . .* , directed by Guy Ritchie and starring Madonna and the son of the original film's male star, somehow managed to be both tone-deaf and intensely confusing on multiple cultural and gender levels.)

Sometimes, Europeans appreciate certain aspects of American films that Americans cannot see. For example, French critics were much more lavish in their praise of *Bonnie and Clyde* than were American critics. A foreign director's cinematic style may have greater power and fascination because of its strangeness to viewers who are not moved in the same way by the home-grown styles they have become accustomed to. Surely this concept begins to explain the immense popularity in America of such exotic and powerful talent as the Spanish director Pedro Almodóvar (*Women on the Verge of a Nervous Breakdown*, *All About My Mother*; *Talk to Her*; *Volver*).

Foreign films offer us the opportunity to experience customs, moral attitudes, and codes of behavior very different from our own. Mira Nair's *Monsoon Wedding*, for example, offers American audiences a glimpse of Indian wedding rituals, class differences, and beliefs about romantic love, arranged marriage, and the importance of family, while also showing the influence of Western culture in contemporary Indian life. The bride-to-be's cousin in *Monsoon Wedding*, for example, dresses and wears her hair in a looser style than the other women, suggesting her rebellion against traditional sex roles in Indian society. Although foreign films may demand more of us as audiences, they can also take us beyond an American view of the world.

"Strange" Silents

A category of films that may seem as foreign to Americans as works of another country is the silent film. Part of the "silent" film's "strangeness" arises because its name is something of a misnomer. In fact, these films were intended to be shown with a musical accompaniment. Sometimes a complete score was distributed along with the film and played by a large orchestra, as was the case with *The Birth of a Nation* (1915). Usually, a single piano or organ player simply improvised as the film was shown. Such music filled a definite vacuum, and the silent film without it has a ghostly kind of incompleteness. Many of the silent film's best moments lose their impact for modern viewers when their rhythmic qualities and emotional moods are not underscored musically as was intended.

Accustomed to the levels of communication conveyed by the sound film, and conditioned to half-watch everything by the ever-present television, we may have lost our ability to concentrate on purely visual elements, as in a silent film. If we are to fully appreciate the silent film, we must master a new set of watching skills and become more sensitive to the essentially nonverbal language of the earlier form. Because silent films are the product of another age, they must be judged, at least to some extent, as reflections of the society and culture of that day. Although these films adequately expressed the sensibility of their own times, some of the best ones have survived until our own era because of their universal themes.

In the past, modern viewers seldom have had the opportunity to see silent films as they were intended to be seen; instead, we have watched copies that are dead, decayed, and corrupted, with much of their original brightness and impact lost forever. But now the DVD is helping to rescue our cinematic past by preserving these films for current and future generations.

If we carefully study silent films, we can learn to appreciate the effectiveness of narrative told clearly and quickly through purely pictorial means (or with a minimum of subtitles). The absence of dialogue can actually make us more sensitive to the film's visual rhythmic qualities. And, as we have noted earlier (see the Chapter 10 "Flashback" feature on the history of silent film acting, p. 330), in rising above the formidable barrier of language differences, silent film has a unique ability to speak a universal language.

DOES AMERICAN FILM SHAPE OR REFLECT SOCIAL AND CULTURAL VALUES?

No art form exists in a vacuum. The more popular an art is, and the wider its appeal to all segments of the population, the more closely it is tied to the social values, mores, and institutions of its audience. As both an extremely popular medium and an industry involving great financial risk and profit potential, the American film naturally must be responsive to social and economic pressures. Therefore, a complete understanding of many American films requires an analysis of the social and economic pressures that have affected the final products seen on the screen.

So film is not an independent entity but an integrated part of the social fabric, for its very survival depends on maintaining and continuing its popularity. To achieve real popularity, a movie must, first, be believable. Its action must take place in an environment that has credibility, and its story must reflect the common truths of the society in which it is made, or at least mirror people's hopes, dreams, fears, and inner needs. When real life does not fulfill these needs, people are primed to respond sympathetically to an artistic expression of them in film.

Film does not create *new* truths for society. It cannot reshape a society that is not ready for change. But this fact does not mean that film is not a powerful instrument of social change. The motion picture's power as a social force comes from its ability to pick up, amplify, and spread to society as a whole currents that already exist among segments of the population. Film also speeds popular acceptance of social change. The dramatically powerful presentation of new ways of thinking and behaving on screens twenty feet high in thousands of movie theaters across the country gives those new ways a significant seal of approval.

FIGURE 15.2 The Changing Face of Censorship Producer/director Howard Hughes filmed *The Outlaw* in 1941 and released it in 1943. The Motion Picture Association of America later withdrew its seal of approval and local community pressure caused many theaters to cancel its showing. Although the Doc Holliday/Billy the Kid story featured starlet Jane Russell showing more cleavage and passion than the code allowed, the film would receive a ho-hum PG rating if released today.

It is because of film's potential for legitimizing new standards of behavior—and for inspiring imitation of that behavior, especially by young members of its audience—that most systems of censorship or control have originated. In fact, the way systems of censorship develop usually follows a pattern that goes something like this. A traumatic event disrupts the stability of the social structure (some past examples: World War I, the Depression, World War II, the Vietnam War, the women's movement, the sexual revolution, the drug revolution, the civil rights movement, "9/11/01"). This event causes a significant shift in moral values and codes of behavior within certain segments of the population. Such changes create pressure for the entertainment media to reflect the truth of the new attitudes and standards of behavior. But a conservative element within the society vigorously resists the changes and demands that films be controlled or censored to prevent the spread of the shocking behavior and ensure that movies reflect the truths of society as the conservative element believes they *should be*. Most censorship within the film industry reflects an uneasy compromise between advocates of change and supporters of the status quo (Figure 15.2).

THE MOTION PICTURE PRODUCTION CODE, 1930–1960

In the decades following World War I, Hollywood films began reflecting a change in moral standards. Sex, seduction, divorce, drinking, and drug use—new symbols of the sophisticated life—all became standard film fare. In 1922 public outrage against this change led a frightened film industry to organize the

Motion Picture Producers and Distributors of America, Inc. They hired Postmaster General Will B. Hays to front the organization, which became known as the Hays Office. Hays and his staff first reacted to state and local censorship by codifying the most frequent objections to film content and advising member companies on what to avoid. By 1930, the organization (now known as the MPAA—Motion Picture Association of America) had published an official Motion Picture Production Code and set up a Production Code Administration to enforce its rulings.

Members of the MPAA agreed not to release or distribute a film without a certificate of approval. In addition, they were required to submit copies of all scripts under production, and each completed film had to be submitted for viewing by the Production Code board before it was sent to the laboratory for printing. A $25,000 penalty for producing, distributing, or exhibiting any film without the seal encouraged member companies to comply with the agreement. Through voluntary compliance, this industry-imposed regulation served to control the moral standards of the American film for the next three decades.

Although the code had strong ties with the Catholic Church, its practical rules did not reflect any single theology. Translated into simplest terms, the code and its rules were designed to require motion pictures to reflect, respect, and promote the institutions and moral values of the American middle class.

Excerpts of the code are reprinted in Box 1. Evident throughout the document is a belief in the powerful influence that movies can exert on the moral standards of an audience. Most of the code deals with the dangers of film as a corrupting influence, but film is also shown to have tremendous potential for good:

> If motion pictures consistently *hold up for admiration high types of characters* and present stories that will affect lives for the better, they can become the most powerful natural forces for the improvement of mankind.

The writers of the code believed that if the motion picture's creative energies were correctly channeled (through conformity to the code), film would become a supermedium—fighting for truth, justice, and the American way.

The fact that film is a mass medium available to children as well as adults was a major concern. In fact, the code can best be understood by relating it to the industry's concern with the "twelve-year-old mind." It was this young, highly impressionable age group—in the process of forming its values and its moral sense and picking its role models—that the code was determined to protect.

It may be difficult for modern film students to take the code seriously. However, an in-depth study of any complex realistic or naturalistic novel of the period and the film based on that novel will illustrate the effect of the code on such adaptations. The profound influence of the code on the American film

Box 1

Excerpts From the Motion Picture Production Code*

Reasons Supporting Preamble of Code

1. Theatrical motion pictures . . . are primarily to be regarded as ENTERTAINMENT. . . .
   The MORAL IMPORTANCE of entertainment is something which has been universally recognized. It enters intimately into the lives of men and women and affects them closely; it occupies their minds and affections during leisure hours; and ultimately touches the whole of their lives. A man may be judged by his standard of entertainment as easily as by the standard of his work. . . .

   > *Correct entertainment raises* the whole standard of a nation.
   > *Wrong entertainment lowers* the whole living conditions and moral ideals of a race.
   >
   > *Note,* for example, the healthy reactions to healthful sports, like baseball, golf; the unhealthy reactions to sports like cockfighting, bullfighting, bear baiting, etc.
   > *Note,* too, the effect on ancient nations of gladiatorial combats, the obscene plays of Roman times, etc.

2. Motion pictures are very important as ART.
   Though a new art, possibly a combination art, it has the same object as the other arts, the presentation of human thought, emotion, and experience, in terms of an appeal to the soul through the senses.
   Here, as in entertainment,
   Art *enters intimately* into the lives of human beings.
   Art can be *morally good,* lifting men to higher levels. This has been done through good music, great painting, authentic fiction, poetry, drama. . . .
   It has often been argued that art in itself is unmoral, neither good nor bad. This is perhaps true of the THING which is music, painting, poetry, etc. But the thing is the PRODUCT of some person's mind, and the intention of that mind was either good or bad. . . . Besides, the thing has its EFFECT upon those who come into contact with it. . . . In the case of the motion pictures, this effect may be particularly emphasized because no art has so quick and so widespread an appeal to the masses. . . .

*Editor's Note: To simplify the reader's task, some parts of the code have been re-ordered so that all materials relating to a given topic appear together. As originally presented, the code consisted of two parts. The first part began with the section "Preamble," which was followed, in sequence, by the sections "General Principles" and "Particular Applications." The second part consisted of "Reasons Supporting" or "Reasons Underlying" each of the "Particular Applications." Here, the sections have been rearranged so that the supports or reasons appear beneath the particular application to which each pertains.

Box 1 (continued)

3. The motion picture . . . has special MORAL OBLIGATIONS.
   A. Most arts appeal to the mature. This art appeals at once *to every class*. . . .
   B. By reason of the mobility of a film and the ease of picture distribution . . . this art *reaches places* unpenetrated by other forms of art.
   C. Because of these two facts, it is difficult to produce films intended for only certain classes of people. . . . Films, unlike books and music, can with difficulty be confined to certain selected groups.
   D. The latitude given to film material cannot . . . be as wide as the latitude given to *book material*. . . .
      a. A book describes; a film vividly presents. One presents on a cold page; the other by apparently living people.
      b. A book reaches the mind through words merely; a film reaches the eyes and ears through the reproduction of actual events.
      c. The reaction of a reader to a book depends largely on the keenness of the reader's imagination; the reaction to a film depends on the vividness of presentation. . . .
   E. Everything possible in a *play* is not possible in a film:
      a. Because of the *larger audience of the film*, and its consequential mixed character. Psychologically, the larger the audience, the lower the moral mass resistance to suggestion.
      b. Because through light, enlargement of character, presentation, scenic emphasis, etc., the screen story is *brought closer* to the audience. . . .
      c. The enthusiasm for . . . *actors* and *actresses*, developed beyond anything of the sort in history, makes the audience largely sympathetic toward the characters they portray and the stories in which they figure. Hence the audience is more ready to confuse actor and actress and the characters they portray. . . .

Particular Applications: Crimes Against the Law

The technique of murder must be presented in a way that will not inspire imitation. . . .
Revenge in modern times shall not be justified. . . .
Methods of crime should not be explicitly presented. . . .
The illegal drug traffic must not be portrayed in such a way as to stimulate curiosity concerning the use of, or traffic in, such drugs; nor shall scenes be approved which show the use of illegal drugs, or their effects. . . .
The use of liquor . . . when not required by the plot . . . will not be shown. . . .
There must be no display, at any time, of machine guns, submachine guns, or other weapons generally classified as illegal weapons in the hands of gangsters . . . and there are to be no off-stage sounds of the repercussions of these guns. There must be no new, unique or trick methods shown for concealing guns. . . .

Box 1 (continued)

Pictures dealing with criminal activities, in which minors participate, or to which minors are related, shall not be approved if they incite demoralizing imitation. . . .

Particular Applications: Sex, Costume, and Dance

Sex

The sanctity of the institution of marriage and the home shall be upheld. Pictures shall not infer that low forms of sex relationship are the accepted or common thing. . . . Out of regard for the sanctity of marriage and the home, the *triangle,* that is, the love of a third party for one already married, needs careful handling. The treatment should not throw sympathy against marriage as an institution. . . . Excessive and lustful kissing, lustful embraces, suggestive postures and gestures are not to be shown . . . passion should be treated in such a manner as not to stimulate the lower and baser emotions. . . . Many scenes cannot be presented without arousing dangerous emotions on the part of the immature, the young or the *criminal classes.* . . .

Costume

The fact that the nude or semi-nude body may be *beautiful* does not make its use in the films moral. For, in addition to its beauty, the effect of the nude or semi-nude body on the normal individual must be taken into consideration.

Nudity or semi-nudity used simply to put a *"punch"* into a picture comes under the head of immoral actions. . . . Nudity can never be permitted as being *necessary for the plot.* . . .

Transparent or *translucent materials* and silhouettes are frequently more suggestive than actual exposure. . . .

Dance

Dancing in general is recognized as an *art* and as a *beautiful* form of expressing human emotions. . . . But dances which suggest or represent sexual actions, whether performed solo or with two or more; dances intended to excite the emotional reaction of an audience; dances with movement of the breasts, excessive body movement while the feet are stationary, violate decency and are wrong.

Particular Applications . . . Profanity

No approval by the Production Code Administration shall be given to the use of words and phrases . . . including, but not limited to, the following: Alley cat (applied to a woman); bat (applied to a woman); broad (applied to a woman); Bronx cheer (the sound); chippie; cocotte; God, Lord, Jesus, Christ (unless used reverently); cripes; fanny; fairy (in a vulgar sense); finger (the); fire, cries of; Gawd; goose (in a vulgar sense); "hold your hat" or "hats"; hot (applied to a woman); "in your hat"; louse, lousy; Madam (relating to prostitution); nance; nerts; nuts (except when

Box 1 (continued)

meaning crazy); pansy; razzberry (the sound); slut (applied to a woman); S.O.B.; son-of-a; tart; toilet gags; tom cat (applied to a man); traveling salesman and farmer's daughter jokes; whore; damn, hell (excepting when the use of said last two words shall be essential and required for portrayal, in proper historical context, of any scene or dialogue based upon historical fact or folklore, or for the presentation in proper literary context of a Biblical, or other religious quotation, or a quotation from a literary work provided that no such use shall be permitted which is intrinsically objectionable or offends good taste). . . .

Particular Applications: Miscellaneous

Religion
No film or episode may throw *ridicule* on any religious faith. . . .

Locations
The treatment of bedrooms must be governed by good taste. . . .

National Feelings
The use of the flag shall be consistently respectful. . . .

product can also be seen by studying a relatively small number of American films produced between 1934 and 1966.

One of the clearest examples of the Motion Picture Production Code's effect on the medium is the case of *On the Waterfront* (1954), which would have been quite a different movie if the Code had not forced its director, Elia Kazan, to alter the ending. As actor Rod Steiger tells it:

> I remember a magazine review of *On the Waterfront* that called Brando's fight at the end of the picture a March to Calvary and analyzed the entire film in terms of how Kazan had been influenced by the life of Christ. Actually, the scene didn't appear in the original ending of the picture. It was to have concluded with a shot of the dead boy floating down the river. But the Hays Office had called up and said, "Wait a minute. We have a rule: crime cannot triumph in films." Okay, they had a point. A lot of young people were going to see the picture. So in the middle of making the film, Kazan had to improvise a new ending. March to Calvary? We were just trying to get out of a hole.[1]

In his spinoff novel *Waterfront*, published a year after the film was released, screenwriter Budd Schulberg returned to his original ending, which gave the story what one critic called the "substance impossible in a movie." In the novel, after testifying against Johnny Friendly at the Crime Commission Hearings, Terry Malloy (played in the film by Marlon Brando) sees Friendly on a street corner and attacks him verbally. But there is no terrible beating at the hands of Friendly's men by the dockside tool shed, no courageous, painful walk by Terry leading the men up to the loading dock. Friendly simply gives his henchmen "the slightest nods" because "Johnny had already passed down the execution order. 'He's got to go.'" Here is how the novel ends:

> Three weeks later the remains of a human being were found in a barrel of lime that had been tossed on one of the multi-acre junk heaps in the Jersey swamps. The coroner's report after the inquest attributed death to twenty-seven stab wounds, apparently inflicted with an icepick. No next of kin came forward. The lime-mutilated corpse was never identified. But the boys along River Street, pro mob and anti, knew they had seen the last of a pretty tough kid.[2]

The power of the Production Code Administration diminished slowly from 1952, when Otto Preminger released *The Moon Is Blue* without a seal of approval (but *with* box-office success), until 1966, when Jack Valenti was named president of the Motion Picture Association of America. At that time, machinery for developing a new method of control was set into motion, resulting in the MPAA Rating System of 1968.

CENSORSHIP IN TRANSITION, 1948–1968

The Production Code Administration controlled the American film product with an iron hand until 1948, when an important Supreme Court antitrust decision (*U.S.* v. *Paramount Pictures*) ruled that the major production companies could no longer own large theater chains. As a result, thousands of theaters across the country were no longer obligated to show any film, regardless of its quality, just because the parent company had produced it, and the major studios lost control of a large captive audience. The Supreme Court decision also opened the door for independently produced movies to be distributed without a code seal.

As early as 1949, Samuel Goldwyn recognized that the industry would have a monumental fight on its hands "to keep people patronizing our theaters in preference to sitting at home and watching a program of entertainment" on television.[3] By 1954, movie attendance had dropped to half of what it had been in 1946. When this decline in attendance continued in spite of the industry's technical innovations such as Cinemascope, Cinerama, 3-D, and stereophonic sound, filmmakers recognized that they would have to handle more mature subjects than were being treated on television if they hoped to lure audiences back into the theaters.

Changes were made in the code to allow more flexibility. In 1956, the code was amended to allow themes of miscegenation, prostitution, and narcotics. In

FIGURE 15.3 Provocative Foreign Films The code-bound American films of the 1950s and early 1960s seemed bland and antiseptic when compared to powerful imports like *La Dolce Vita* (1960—Italy).

1961 discreet treatments of homosexuality and other "sexual deviations" were permitted.

In the 1950s and early 1960s, a number of powerful foreign films shown in large cities were having an important influence on American audiences. Strong, provocative films like *The Seventh Seal*, *The Virgin Spring*, *The Lovers*, *La Dolce Vita*, and *Hiroshima, Mon Amour* made code-approved American products seem bland, antiseptic, and dull by comparison. American filmmakers were inspired to take some chances and push for more artistic freedom (Figure 15.3).

By the mid-1960s the industry had begun to accept the idea that not all movies should be made for one mass audience. *Lolita* (1962) was given a seal despite its theme of a middle-aged man's obsessive love for an adolescent. *The Pawnbroker* (1965) was approved despite two nude scenes (Figure 15.4). *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* (1966) won a seal despite clear violations in theme and language, and *Alfie* (1966) was cleared despite its frank treatment of sex and abortion. With the approval of the last two films, the Production Code Administration made a significant move toward the present rating system. Warner Brothers agreed to restrict attendance to *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?* to adults eighteen and older, and Paramount agreed to advertise *Alfie* as "recommended for mature audiences."

In 1966, the code was simplified, and the Code Administration divided approved films into two categories. The first category included films that presented no problems for the mass audience. The second category was labeled "Suggested for Mature Audiences." The label was advisory only; there were no enforced restrictions.

Two important court decisions in April 1968 forced the industry to provide a clearer system of classification. In *Ginsburg* v. *New York* the court ruled that

FIGURE 15.4 American Breakthrough Rod Steiger gave a touching performance as a middle-aged man haunted by memories of his experiences in a Nazi concentration camp in *The Pawnbroker* (1965). The film was granted an MPAA seal of approval despite two nude scenes, both crucial to understanding the story.

material protected by the Constitution for adults could still be considered obscene for minors. In *Interstate* v. *Dallas* the court invalidated a city classification ordinance because its standards of classification were vague, but the court indicated that more tightly drawn standards of classification could be constitutional. To prevent state and local classification boards from springing up in response to this ruling, the film industry hurriedly tightened its own classification system and announced the MPAA Movie Rating System to the public six months after the *Dallas* decision. That rating system, with slight modifications, remains in effect today.

THE MPAA RATING SYSTEM

The new rating system was announced to the public on October 7, 1968, and went into effect on November 1. Like the Motion Picture Production Code, which it was designed to replace, the MPAA Rating System is a form of self-regulation put into operation to guard against government, state, and local control. By 1966 it was clear that American society had outgrown the moral standards that governed the 1930 code, and honest, realistic films could no longer be produced in conformance with its prohibitions. The new system was conceived as a system of classification rather than as censorship, and each film rated by the Rating System board was (and still is) classified in terms of its suitability for children (Figure 15.5). The board does not prohibit or ban the production or distribution of any motion picture. Its responsibility is limited to the classification of films, to labeling each film clearly so that theater managers can control the audience for each picture in accordance with its classification.

FIGURE 15.5 A Profoundly Significant G Rating A common misconception about the MPAA Rating System is that G always signifies a children's film. It often does, but an occasional "profoundly significant film" like *The Straight Story*, a moving drama starring Richard Farnsworth and Sissy Spacek, fits the "General Audiences" classification. Of course, in this case, the film's director, David Lynch, is notorious otherwise for barely being able to obtain an R rating for his pictures (including *Mulholland Dr.*).

Since November 1968, practically every motion picture exhibited in the United States has carried a rating. Slight modifications have been made in the wording and symbols to clarify misunderstood points, but the rating system in use today is essentially the same one introduced in 1968. As it now stands, the MPAA Rating System classifies films in the manner described in Box 2.

Perhaps the simplest explanation of the first MPAA Rating System (and a fairly accurate one) was found in an old joke: "In a G- or PG-rated movie, the guy in the white hat gets the girl. In an R-rated movie, the guy in the black hat gets the girl. In an X-rated movie everybody gets the girl." The joke accurately reflects the stigma attached to the X rating, which became synonymous with pornography. TV stations and newspapers would not advertise X-rated films; most theaters wouldn't show them. In the fall of 1990, the MPAA moved to counteract that image by changing the X designation to NC-17 (no one 17 and under admitted). The change was brought about by industry pressure to give serious "adults only" films such as *Henry & June* a fair chance in the marketplace, but few NC-17 films are released, for this same stigma remains, essentially. Some producers and directors choose, instead, to use the designation NR ("Not Rated"). In recent years, for example, such sexually explicit works as *Intimacy* (starring the Shakespearean actor Mark Rylance), *Fat Girl*, *The Brown Bunny*, and *Shortbus* have taken this path. In 2006, the French war film *Joyeux Noël* was given an R rating, but that was unaccountably changed to a PG-13 after critics Roger Ebert and Richard Roeper complained about the R rating on their syndicated movie review television program.

Box 2

Motion Picture Association of America Voluntary Movie Rating System

G	GENERAL AUDIENCES	All ages admitted.
PG	PARENTAL GUIDANCE SUGGESTED	Some material may not be suitable for children.
PG-13	PARENTS STRONGLY CAUTIONED	Some material may be inappropriate for children under 13.
R	RESTRICTED	Under 17 requires accompanying parent or adult guardian.
NC-17	NO ONE 17 AND UNDER ADMITTED	

SOURCE: http://www.mpaa.org/movieratings/content.htm

A brochure published when the rating system was introduced in 1968 included a list of eleven Standards for Production, but that list provides no help whatsoever in determining how films are actually classified. The biggest problem was the confusion the system caused parents of children sixteen or younger. Most of the confusion was spawned by the PG category, those films that anybody could see with "parental guidance suggested." Although television had certainly made the modern child a more sophisticated viewer than his or her pretelevision counterpart, there is a great difference between the maturity of an eight-year-old and that of a sixteen-year-old. Many parents were not sure what to expect in a PG movie and whether to allow their eight-year-old or twelve-year-old to go alone on a Saturday afternoon to see one.

An attempt to solve this problem was first made in 1972, when the industry added this caution to its PG rating: "Some material may not be suitable for children." Although some pressure was applied to encourage the MPAA to follow the example of the European systems, which distinguish between children (up to twelve) and teenagers (thirteen to sixteen), there was no move to do so until the summer of 1984.

When *Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom* and *Gremlins* came out in June 1984, there was an immediate negative reaction from critics and parents alike to the amount and intensity of violence portrayed in both films. A new rating called PG-13 (to cover the gray area between the PG and the R ratings) was instituted on July 1, 1984. Its purpose is to warn parents to use extra caution in allowing young children to attend such films (Figure 15.6).

FIGURE 15.6 Too Intense for Young Children Steven Spielberg's *Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom* and Joe Dante's *Gremlins* drew so much criticism for the intensity of their violence that the industry instituted a new PG-13 rating for such films.

Because theater owners do not want to enforce a second restrictive rating, PG-13 puts the burden of control squarely on parents, a philosophy very much in tune with the MPAA's stated policies since 1968. Despite the confusion over the PG rating, nationwide surveys prior to 1980 indicated that the public was reasonably well satisfied with the MPAA rating system—three out of five parents approved of it. And the PG-13 rating seems to be eliminating the gray area between the PG and R ratings. However, some critics of the system believe otherwise. When *Austin Powers in Goldmember* was released in July 2002, *Time* magazine reviewer Richard Corliss published an essay that protested the stupidity and vulgarity with which the MPAA had awarded the film a PG-13 rating. Using both conviction and vivid facetiousness, Corliss wrote, "Crude humor and violence used to earn films R ratings. These days, to get an R, you need to show something really outrageous, like a naked woman." And he concluded that

> the easy, sleazy PG-13 rating makes truly adult movies an endangered species. If even our most powerful filmmakers are afraid to make an R-rated film, how will American movies ever mature? And what will the preteens raised on *Austin Powers* have to watch—or want to watch—when they grow up?[4]

Behind the scenes, the power that the board exercises over the film industry still constitutes a form of censorship, for the board continues to interfere with the creative process. The rating that a film is given exercises a tremendous influence on a film's potential for commercial success. An R rating reduces the potential audience for a film by 20 percent, and an NC-17 rating eliminates 50 percent of the potential audience. To guard against the automatic elimination of potential audience, studio contracts with producers and directors specify that an NC-17 rating must be avoided or that a film must be granted a G or PG rating before it shall "be deemed to have been delivered."[5] Such contracts obligate the producer to make whatever changes are necessary to obtain a desirable rating. If the producer cannot secure an acceptable rating, the studio has two options. It can refuse to accept delivery of the picture (and presumably refuse to pay the producer or director for his or her efforts), or it may accept the film and exercise the right to make "such changes, alterations, or deletions . . . as may be necessary or desirable"[6] for achieving an acceptable rating. Thus the producer and director lose creative control if they do not secure the specified rating *before* the film is delivered to the studio.

To prevent the loss of creative control at this late stage of production, producers and directors often submit scripts to the MPAA Code and Rating Administration for approval ahead of time, so that rating problems can be solved before shooting begins. The Code and Rating Administration, in advising what changes have to be made, enters into the filmmaking process itself by editing both scripts and finished films. Although the pressures causing this censorship are economic rather than social, they are nevertheless very real and constitute a form of censorship not totally unlike that of the 1930 Motion Picture Production Code.

A filmmaker who has not secured a satisfactory rating does have the option of appealing the Code and Rating Administration's decision. The MPAA Code and Rating Appeals Board meets in New York; it is separate from the Code and Rating Administration. When a film's rating is appealed, the appeals board screens the film; then before voting, it hears arguments from both the company challenging the rating and the Code and Rating Administration. Ratings are rarely reversed. During the first three years of the MPAA Rating System, only ten of thirty-one appeals were successful. Between 1974 and 1980, around 2,500 films were rated, and only seven appeals were successful.

Perhaps the most successful appeal yet heard by the board involved David Lean's *Ryan's Daughter*, an MGM film. When the film received an R rating, the studio threatened to pull out of the MPAA and claimed that an R rating would so limit the audience for this then-expensive ($10 million) film that the studio's very life was at stake. Under this considerable pressure from a great and historic motion picture institution, the board changed its rating of *Ryan's Daughter* to a PG so they would not have the demise of a major studio on their conscience. Paramount was in serious financial trouble also when it made a similar appeal for *Paint Your Wagon*, but the board twice refused its appeal for a G rating.

The ratings for other important films have been changed. *Midnight Cowboy*, rated X when it came out in 1969, was re-rated to an R with only the omission of several seconds of violence. Likewise, *A Clockwork Orange*, initially rated X, became an R after a few seconds of violent action were cut (but for many years the film could not legally be exhibited in England). *Saturday Night Fever*, originally shown as an R, was edited to remove objectionable language and redistributed

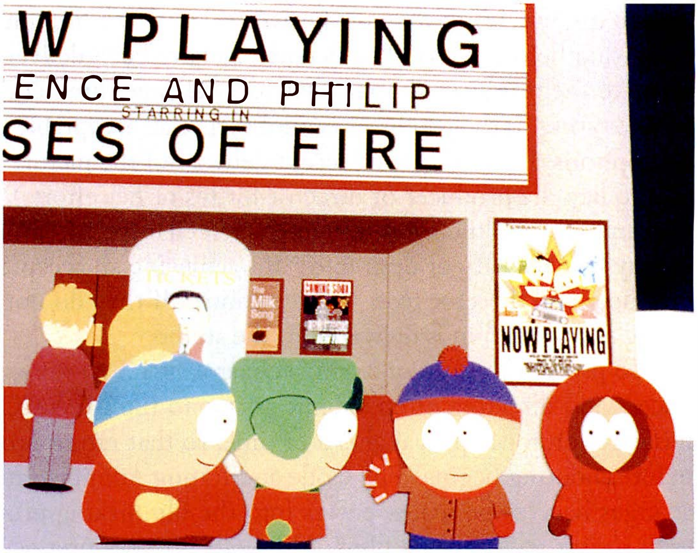


FIGURE 15.7 Uh Oh, Kenny May Die of Embarrassment! Some viewers and reviewers labeled the popular, animated, R-rated feature *South Park: Bigger, Longer & Uncut* vile, vile, vile. Probably nothing could have made its creators, the movie mavericks Trey Parker and Matt Stone, any happier, happier, happier.

as a PG to take advantage of its appeal to the "under-seventeen" crowd. *Last Tango in Paris*, released in theaters as an X, has been cut and re-released for cable television as an R but without the impact of the original.

More recently, Steven Spielberg's appeal to change the R rating on *Poltergeist* to a PG was granted, and *Lone Wolf McQuade*, which received an R rating for violence, received a PG from the board after actor Chuck Norris appealed that the violence in *McQuade* "was of a stylized nature similar to that in John Wayne westerns." Brian De Palma fought long and hard and cut some violent scenes to prevent his *Scarface* from getting an X rating. And De Palma waged a similar struggle with the ratings board to receive a PG-13, rather than an R, rating for *Snake Eyes*, starring Nicolas Cage, because he was contractually obligated to deliver a film with the lower rating to Paramount Studios. When the board rejected *South Park*'s original subtitle as too risqué, the film's creators attained a kind of revenge by getting a possibly racier one naively approved: *Bigger, Longer & Uncut* (Figure 15.7).

In its effort to adjust to changing parental attitudes in our society, the rating board has indicated in recent years that it has become harder on violence and softer on nudity and sensuality. In the words of Richard D. Heffner, former chairman of the Classification and Rating Administration:

> A moment of nudity that automatically drew an R years back may be PG-rated today, while violence is often rated R now that was not restricted before. It's a result of what we perceive to be changing parental attitudes toward these subjects.[7]

But Kirby Dick's crafty 2006 documentary film about the MPAA ratings board, *This Film Is Not Yet Rated*, suggests otherwise.

As long as the rating board remains responsive to shifts in parental attitudes, it will continue to function as the effective instrument of industry control it was designed to be. However, some filmmakers and studios have learned to take full advantage of the constantly changing makeup of the board. Independent director and writer Neil LaBute, whose R-rated first film *In the Company of Men* created much controversy among viewers and critics, received an NC-17 rating for his second feature, *Your Friends & Neighbors.* Most unhappy with this label, LaBute says, he and his financial backers just "waited out that group, and a new one came through and we got an R. The new system is to go early and wait out the tenure of that group and try again."[8]

CENSORSHIP AND FILMS ON TELEVISION

Censorship has caused problems for many feature films shown on television. In the past, objectionable segments were simply cut out so they would not be seen by the television audience. Some experiments have been made with shooting two versions of the same film: one for the theater market, which can restrict its audience through the movie rating code, and a precensored version for the television market, which cannot restrict its audience. The television version of a film may differ radically from the theater version in its treatment of sexual material, nudity, coarseness of language, and violence. Plot changes may be so extensive that the two versions have little in common.

Today such extreme changes are not common, but when a feature film with definite network potential is in production, "cover shots" are often filmed to substitute for shots that are sexually explicit or contain strong language. In this way, a mild version of the film can be created for network TV. The original R-rated version of *Saturday Night Fever* that was re-edited in 1979 and given a PG rating was not only rerun in theaters but also shown on TV.

When the networks feel that parents should exercise special care in allowing young children to watch certain films, special warnings are provided concerning language or mature subject matter, along with one of the television ratings symbols, such as "TVMA." But as a general rule, no film appears on network television until it is edited to at least a PG level (Figure 15.8). The real problem occurs when network greed overcomes good sense and an R-rated movie that does not lend itself to PG editing is scheduled. By the time *Serpico* had been edited to eliminate coarse language, the raw thrust of the movie was gone, and the plot was almost incoherent (Figure 15.9). The ribald *Animal House* was totally fragmented by the necessary butchering, which left eleven minutes of its running time on the cutting-room floor (Figure 15.10). However, more recently, heated competition from controversial popular shows on cable channels (such as HBO's *Oz*, *Six Feet Under*, and *The Sopranos*, and Showtime's *Queer as Folk* and *Weeds*) has begun to force major changes in network standards for series and feature films alike.

FIGURE 15.8 **From G to Network—A Few Choice Words** In *True Grit*, just before taking the reins in his teeth for his headlong charge toward Lucky Ned Pepper (Robert Duvall) and his gang, Rooster Cogburn (John Wayne) yells a challenge containing an unkind reference to the villainous Pepper's mother. An early 1970s showing on NBC bleeped the epithet—a 1995 showing on TNT left it in.

FIGURE 15.9 **From R to Network—A Great Many Choice Words** The script of *Serpico*, starring Al Pacino as an honest policeman in a corrupt system, was so loaded with four-letter words that the cutting necessary for network television completely destroyed the grim, realistic power of the original.

FIGURE 15.10 **Censoring Sex and Ribald Humor** The eleven minutes cut from *Animal House* for its initial network TV showing practically destroyed the film's ribald humor and left its plot almost incoherent.

BEYOND THE CODE AND RATING SYSTEM

The motion picture industry has attempted to enforce codes and ratings to offset demands for some form of censorship, but certain segments of society do not always agree that the codes and ratings fulfill their intent. Films that touch on religious matters often seem to generate the most impassioned criticism by the viewing audience. Religious leaders and their supporters have at times managed to impose an unofficial censorship through their condemnation of a particular film. An example of this type of censorship is the 1988 reaction to Martin Scorsese's *The Last Temptation of Christ* (Figure 15.11).

The movie, which presents a less-than-perfect Christ, enraged Christian fundamentalists, who protested and boycotted theaters that planned to show the film. As a result of those protests, many theaters pulled the film from their schedules. Several states in the Bible Belt had no commercial showings of the movie. In their violent antipathy to the film, many protesters charged the Jewish leadership of Universal Pictures with plotting an attack on Christianity and called for a boycott of all Universal productions. The release of the film to video retailers across the country was done quietly without the advertising hoopla that usually surrounds new releases. Although many retailers purchased the videocassette version for subsequent rental and resale, they kept it under the counter in an attempt to forestall public outcry in their communities.

The Scorsese film, rated R, did not receive any formal or codified form of censorship, but its reception is an example of the unofficial censorship that operates in the United States. An unwritten code applies to films that offend the moral sensibilities of the population or at least segments of the population. In many areas, community leaders and theater owners often agree not to show NC-17–rated films or other controversial motion pictures, to avoid protests or more official types of censorship.

Protests have occurred in recent years, though. And Charles Lyons, in an essay titled "The Paradox of Protest," has written that both freedom from censorship and "rules" are necessary for a balanced "cultural climate":

> Debates over film censorship from 1980 to 1992 reflected a culture in conflict over sex, race, family values, and homosexuality. They also demonstrated that political struggles were being fought in a cultural arena. Similar conflicts within society and art have existed throughout history. . . . Among the groups that have protested against movies—antipornography feminists, Asian Americans, and gays and lesbians on the left, and religious groups on the right—the only ones to achieve censorship . . . were associated with the new Christian right.

Lyons later observes, however,

> After Asian Americans and homosexual groups protested against *Year of the Dragon* and *Basic Instinct*, respectively, these constituencies found Hollywood more willing to listen to them. . . . While groups may wave placards and chant against any

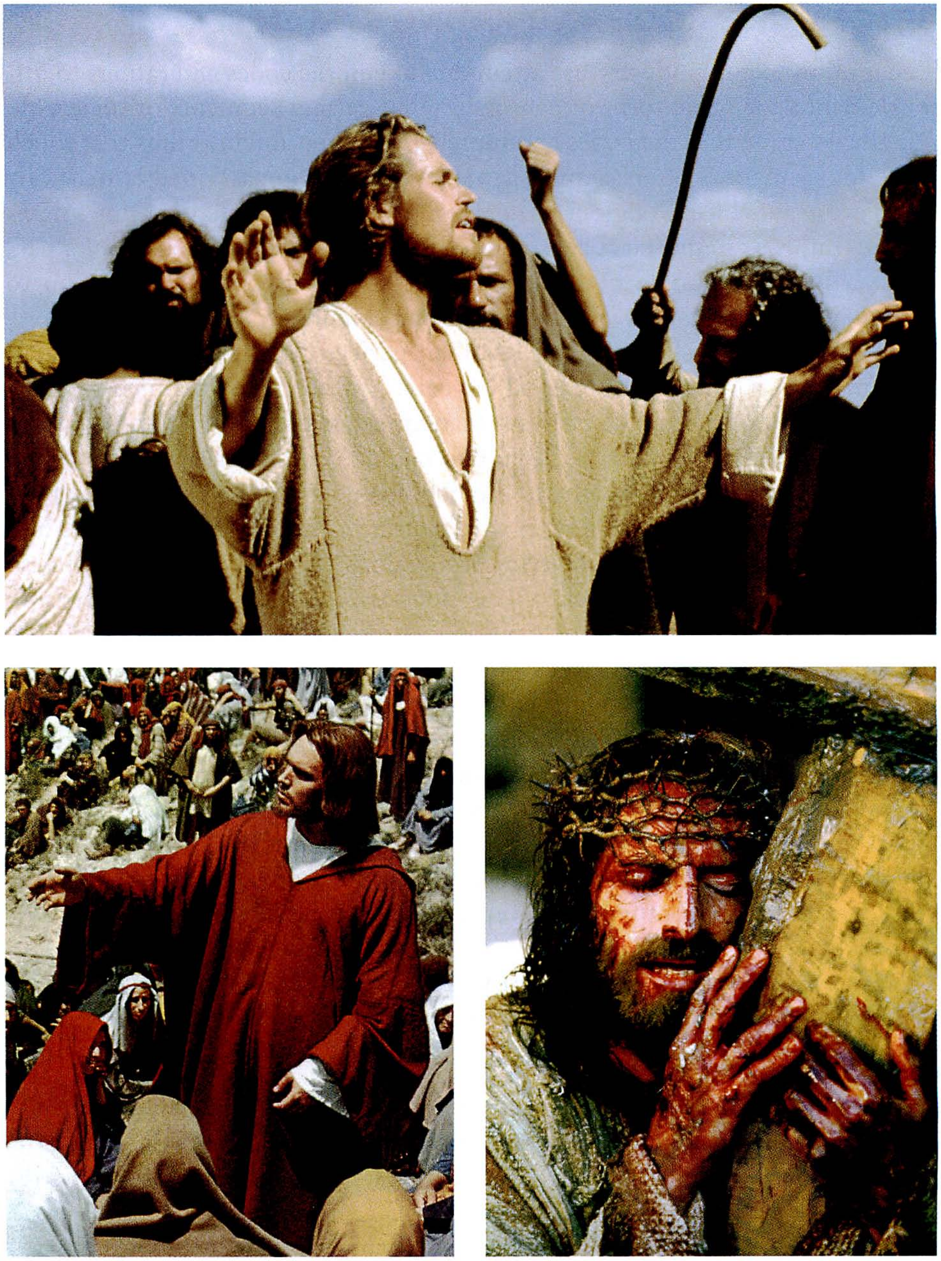


FIGURE 15.11 Unofficial Censorship Martin Scorsese's *The Last Temptation of Christ* (1988) (with Willem Dafoe as Jesus, top) offended fundamentalist religious groups across the country because it portrayed a very human Jesus struggling with temptation. Nicholas Ray's *King of Kings* (1961) (starring Jeffrey Hunter, left) had presented a more traditional picture of Jesus, and no feathers were ruffled. In 2004, Mel Gibson's *The Passion of the Christ* (with Jim Caviezel, right) actually used traditional Christian organizations as a major component of its marketing network—even though the ultraviolent film carried an R rating.

movie they choose, it is evident that protests can produce unanticipated effects. Some protests, such as those from the religious right, result in recognizable acts of censorship; others, such as those from left groups, create an environment that legitimizes suppression and encourages self-censorship.[9]

CHANGING FORMULAS FOR THE TREATMENT OF SEX, VIOLENCE, AND LANGUAGE

Contrary to popular belief, the motion picture did not invent violence, sex, or even rough language. Fiction and drama were making use of such materials long before the first movie was shot. Each art form, with or without a formal code of censorship, has its own standards of what's acceptable and what's not at any given time. Standards of acceptability reflect what might be called the fashion of the day. They give rise to formulas for realism, which are determined much as the proper length for hemlines is determined—by what everyone else is doing. Thus, to a degree, violence, sex, and rough language appear in movies not just for their shock value but because their appearance is fashionable. If it were not, we would be offended by what we see and would stop going to movies altogether.

Formulas for realism do change. When a breakthrough film becomes a popular success, it sets new fashions and imitators begin to treat it as a standard. Consider, for example, how the formula for realism has evolved in the treatment of death by gunshot. In *Birth of a Nation*, men shot during the Civil War battles typically threw their arms skyward and fell sideways to the ground. By the 1940s, a cowboy shot in a grade B western clutched one hand to his chest (usually where cowboys were wounded) and crumpled forward. In the 1950s, *Shane* established a new style when the impact of the bullet from villain Jack Palance's gun knocked his victim ten feet backward into a mud puddle. In the 1960s, *Bonnie and Clyde* introduced the slow-motion dance of death, with bullets exploding holes through clothing. When a sensational new effect is introduced in a milestone film like *Bonnie and Clyde* or *Natural Born Killers*, audiences feel cheated if the same sense of heightened reality is not achieved in the films they see after it.

Similar changes can be traced in the way sexual intimacy is suggested, from *Tarzan, the Ape Man* (1932) to *Last Tango in Paris* (1973) to *Brokeback Mountain* (2005); and in the way rough language is treated, from *Gone With the Wind* (1939) to *Scarface* (1983) to *The Aristocrats* (2005). Still, there are clearly limits to modern American culture's apparent permissiveness regarding cinema. Todd Solondz's controversial *Happiness* (1998), which includes a father who is a child molester, and his later *Palindromes* (2005), were released without an MPAA rating (as Solondz had anticipated). And Adrian Lyne's $50 million 1997 remake of Stanley Kubrick's *Lolita* never obtained general theatrical release in the United States—settling instead, ironically, for screenings on cable television's

FIGURE 15.12 **Subjective Damnation** Sometimes subject matter alone (pedophilia, for instance), not mainly treatment, damns a film to censorship—either active or passive—or faint praise. Two exemplary cases: Todd Solondz's *Happiness* (starring Dylan Baker as a father/psychiatrist/child abuser) and Adrian Lyne's film version of Vladimir Nabokov's novel *Lolita*, starring Jeremy Irons as Humbert Humbert and Dominique Swain as the young object of his obsession (pictured here).

Showtime, which suggests in advertisements for itself that only Showtime has the fearlessness to be both gritty and good in American movie entertainment (Figure 15.12). However, the dramatic 2001 film *L.I.E.*, starring the distinguished actor Brian Cox as a charming sexual predator of teenage boys, was released with relatively little controversy and an NC-17 rating (Figure 15.13).

Multiple controversies involving censorship issues in cinema continue to brew, of course. For example, one independent filmmaker, Doug Atchison (2006's *Akeelah and the Bee*, rated PG), writing in *MovieMaker* magazine about his own experiences and, especially, those of producer Eric Watson in making Darren Aronofsky's *Requiem for a Dream*, charges that the MPAA practices a kind of monetary and perceived-power bias. At the end of his article, Atchison insists that "the real problem lies with the secretive, inconsistent and confusing manner in which the MPAA Rating Board assesses motion pictures." And he quotes Watson, who questions why "'morally bankrupt studio films will continue to be released unscathed due to their financial and political muscle,

FIGURE 15.13 Balance Matters In this still from *L. I. E.*, a student played by Paul Franklin Dano reclines very tentatively on a railing over the Long Island Expressway near where he lives with his dysfunctional natural father. In his young life, he stands precariously between that familial chaos and the adoptive, dangerous order offered by a seemingly admirable stranger.

while independent films dealing with powerful moral themes are going to be scapegoated.'"[10]

During 2003, a major film censorship argument flourished between a group of eight Hollywood studios and various private entrepreneurs over whether anyone has the legal rights to alter, repackage, and sell videocassettes and DVDs that have been "sanitized" for a ready-made (often religion-based) audience. Like similar confrontations that occurred during the 1980s about companies' freedom to "colorize" films originally shot in black and white, this battle ultimately may just lose momentum rather than reveal a victor. Meanwhile, organizations such as CleanFlicks and Trilogy Studios have aggressively promoted their own special edits of films. In addition, they have marketed such software as "MovieMask" and "ClearPlay" that allows viewers, they suggest, to avoid sex, violence, and all the other "sinful" pleasure *and* unpleasantness that reel life may possibly ape from real life.[11] But in early July 2006, a U.S. district court judge in Colorado ruled that such companies must immediately stop their commercial "sanitizing" activities. For parents who desperately seek guidance in locating films they deem suitable for viewing by their children, one alternative solution may be found in the attempts at "objective" descriptions on such Web sites as screenit.com.

However, the most basic challenge of movie censorship issues may still appear to reside not in questions of public morality or even legality, but in the realm of individual taste, aesthetic or otherwise. A case in point: critical reaction to the immensely controversial filmmaker Larry Clark's (*Kids*) unrated, violent, and sexually explicit movie *Bully*, starring the young actors Nick Stahl, Bijou Phillips, Rachel Miner, and Brad Renfro. In considering the film's achievement, Roger Ebert awarded it his highest rating, four stars, and called the work "a masterpiece on its own terms, a frightening indictment of a society that offers absolutely nothing to some of its children—and an indictment of the children, who lack the imagination and courage to try to escape."[12] In radical contradiction to this judgment, Lou Lumenick, in the *New York Post*, pronounced *Bully* "a truly repulsive piece of trash that says far more about the absence of values from contemporary filmmaking than the waywardness of teens." He then added, "I'm no prude, but it almost made me wish the old Legion of Decency [a Catholic censorship board that was created in 1934 and operated for just over thirty years] were still around to give Mr. Clark a thrashing."[13]

SOCIAL PROBLEM FILMS

A category of special interest to the serious student encompasses social problem films, which are difficult to evaluate, for their aging can occur very rapidly. A film can become not only dated but completely irrelevant within society in just a few years. This happens when the problem attacked by the film is eliminated or corrected. In a sense the social problem film can enjoy a long life only by failing in its purpose, for its impact is generally lost as soon as the problem portrayed no longer exists. This is especially true of a film that treats a narrow, topical, and very contemporary problem. The more general the problem, the more widespread its effects; and the more resistant it is to reform, the longer is the life span of the social problem film directed against it. As long as the social problem exists, the film has relevance. Thus, a film such as *The Snake Pit* (1948), starring Olivia de Havilland, will retain much of its impact as long as our society continues to stigmatize mental illness and its treatment. And, in the face of continued drug and alcohol abuse within our culture, Otto Preminger's *The Man With the Golden Arm* (1955) and Billy Wilder's *The Lost Weekend* (1945), though dated, continue to disturb and shock us despite more recent and graphic takes on the problems, including *Traffic* (2000), *Trainspotting* (1996) (Figure 15.14), and *Leaving Las Vegas* (1995).

Once in a while, if a social problem film is artistically done, it becomes more than a mere vehicle to encourage social reform, and it may outlive the problem it attacks. Strong, memorable characters and a good story give social problem films durability even after the specific problem dealt with no longer has relevance. In its specific references, of course, John Ford's magnificent adaptation of John Steinbeck's *The Grapes of Wrath* (1940) is a perfect example of such a film. Other recent films to which the "social problem" label might be applied, such as *Smoke Signals* (Figure 15.15), an examination of contemporary Native American life, and *The Fast Runner (Atanarjuat)* (Figure 15.16), a representation of the Inuit culture, often appear to be more purely descriptive than argumentative about difficulties in their subjects' worlds.

As we observed earlier in this chapter, formulas for realism do change in American society. This fact must surely begin to account for much of the intense interest that moviegoers have shown, belatedly, in the past few years, in tasting the formerly exotic fruits of documentary filmmaking. As standards of

FIGURE 15.14 **Energetic Ennui** In Danny Boyle's social problem film *Trainspotting*, Ewan McGregor and his mates dive with dirty vigor into the drug-infested underground of Edinburgh, Scotland.

FIGURE 15.15 **Historic Native American Cinema** *Smoke Signals*, a dramatic comedy written by poet and fiction writer Sherman Alexie and directed by Chris Eyre, became, in 1998, the first feature film created exclusively by Native American artists.

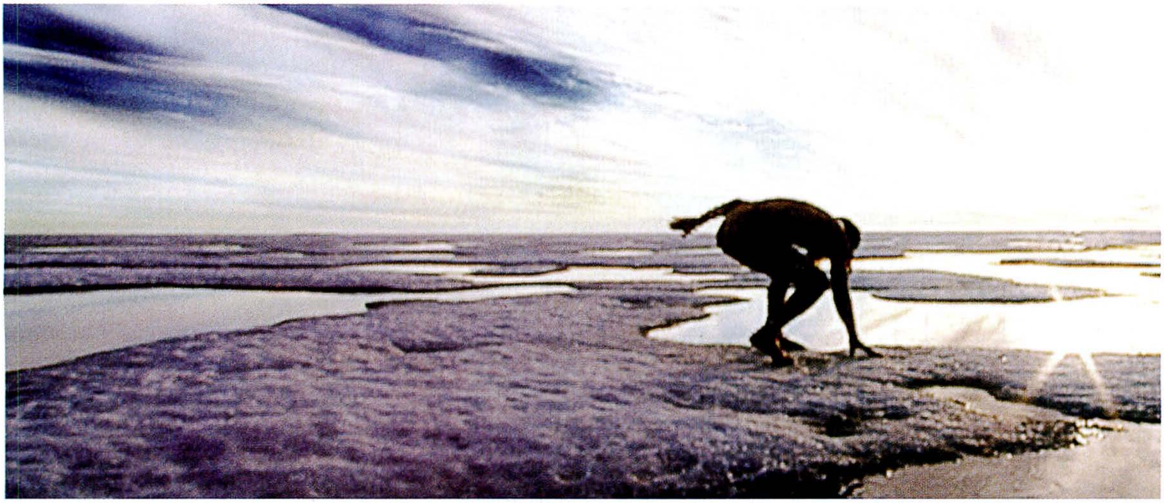


FIGURE 15.16 Inuit Adventure Here is the most vividly iconic image associated with director Zacharias Kunuk's unique *The Fast Runner* (*Atanarjuat*), a film about Inuit culture that is not quite documentary and yet clearly much more than fiction.

privacy have shifted, audiences in many areas of our culture have become more and more fascinated with the "realistic" manner in which this voyeuristic form can closely examine individual lives both famous and "ordinary." And, of course, by the broadest possible definition, virtually all documentary films are inherently "social problem" works.

Erik Barnouw, in *Documentary: A History of the Non-Fiction Film*, maintains that "true documentarists have a passion for what they *find* in images and sounds—which always seems to them more meaningful than anything they can invent."[14] Barnouw defines the roles of the documentarist as those of prophet, explorer, chronicler, painter, and catalyst (among others), suggesting that the method by which such an artist decides to utilize these discovered "images and sounds" varies enormously. Although there are, in fact, many possibilities for the treatment of documentary evidence, two techniques exemplify the opposite ends of the spectrum: Either the filmmaker can present a clearly articulated thesis about the documentary's subjects, or the filmmaker can assiduously avoid all such insistence.

The first type, the thesis documentarist, is perhaps most graphically illustrated by the creator of propaganda. For instance, Leni Riefenstahl, the official filmmaker for Adolf Hitler, made movies on a grand scale, including *Triumph of the Will* (1935), documenting Hitler's rallies in Nuremberg in 1934, and *Olympia* (1936), recording at great length and in magnificent style the 1936 Berlin Olympics. At least in their original versions, these films attempted to leave no doubt in the viewer's mind about the worthiness of the Third Reich.

Although much critical controversy exists about the true effects of such propaganda, the intentions of these two films are self-evident. Nevertheless, Riefenstahl herself, although sometimes admitting a certain naiveté, steadfastly maintained that her interests were purely artistic, not political. Interestingly, she most vociferously asserts her innocence in a film—Ray Muller's *The Wonderful, Horrible Life of Leni Riefenstahl* (1993)—that is, in turn, an example of a thesis documentary.

Other excellent models of this type include Michael Moore's *Roger & Me* (1989), which examines the relationship between General Motors and its former workers in Flint, Michigan, and Barbara Kopple's Oscar-winning *Harlan County, U.S.A.* (1977), which portrays the seemingly eternal union struggles of mine workers in eastern Kentucky. Although Kopple's later *American Dream* (1989), also an Academy Award winner, seems by comparison more complicated in its narrative point of view than *Harlan County, U.S.A.*, it nevertheless demonstrates obviously the pain and losses of all parties involved in a Hormel meat-packing company strike in Minnesota. Roger Ebert writes that, in *American Dream*, "the people . . . are so real they make most movie characters look like inhabitants of the funny page."[15]

The antithetical type of documentary tries very hard to avoid judging its subject, attempting instead simply to describe it. Among its best examples—at least outside the confines of experimental films like *Koyaanisqatsi* (1983)—are the works of Frederick Wiseman. In such documentaries as *Public Housing* (1997), about the Ida B. Wells development in Chicago, and *Titicut Follies* (1967), about the inmates of a mental hospital in Massachusetts, this prolific documentarist has used the **direct cinema** method of shooting, giving his viewers an objective view and understanding of worlds that they are rarely permitted to enter. Erik Barnouw has noted, however, that

> one of the problems hanging over observer-documentarists was the extent to which the presence of the camera influenced events before it. Some practitioners—[Stephen] Leacock, [Louis] Malle—worried about this. Others—[Arthur] Mayles, Wiseman—tended to minimize it. Some filmmakers, notably Jean Rouch, held still another view. Rouch maintained that the presence of the camera made people act in ways truer to their nature than might otherwise be the case.[16]

Michael Apted's remarkable series of films about the developing lives of British children—*7 Plus 7*, *21*, *28*, *35 Up*, *42 Up*, *49 Up*—seems to demonstrate the truth of Rouch's theory, especially in Apted's later interviews. There, he uses a **cinéma vérité** technique, which is supposedly "objective unstaged, non-dramatized, non-narrative."[17] Sometimes, though, his very presence seems to incite action from his subjects, rather than merely to observe and record it.

Most documentary filmmakers use a mixture of these extreme approaches. One of the best-received documentaries, Terry Zwigoff's *Crumb* (1994), seems,

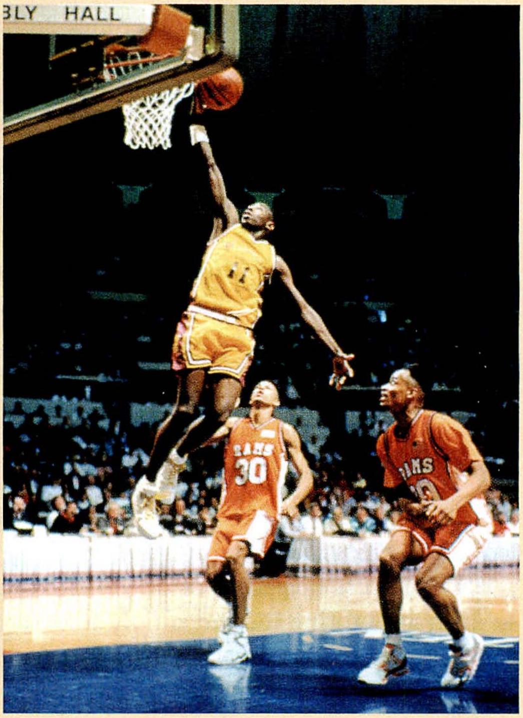
REALLY REEL LIFE

Today, when we consider the documentary film form, we must acknowledge that it is both elemental *and* unique. In fact, even the earliest films emanated from what we could call the documentary urge of their creators, who wished, quite simply, to document life. But documentary films, as a type, have traditionally been the most underfinanced, underpublicized, underreviewed, and underattended of all movies widely available for viewing.

Certainly, the video revolution has helped to improve this situation. The critically acclaimed *Hoop Dreams* (1994), directed by Steve James, for example, has been seen on video by millions of enthusiastic viewers—regardless of whether they are fans of high school basketball.

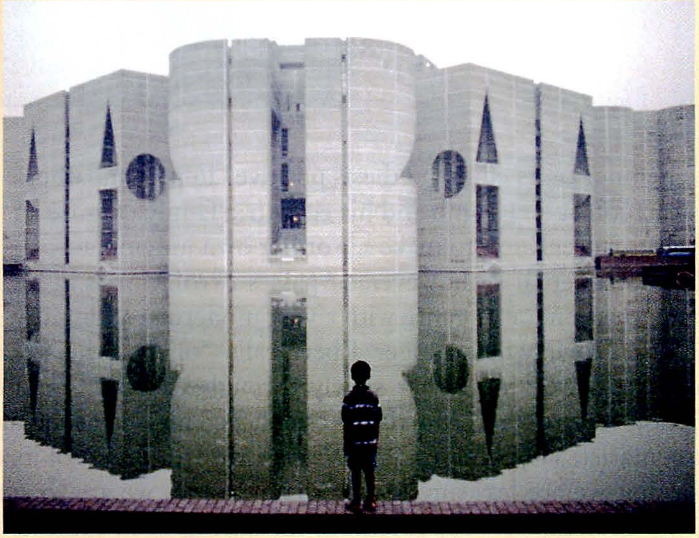
Still, documentary films remain an orphan genre in the eyes of the general public, in part, because they perceive them to be less enjoyable than fiction films. Likewise, in the annual Academy Awards competition, filmmakers themselves further minimize the documentary film's popularity and significance by their sometimes careless and irresponsible treatment of the selection process. Such movie bias is unfortunate, because the documentary film has the capability of achieving greatness. When it is working at its optimal level, the film type cannot only gather, articulate, and preserve "reality" but also be superbly entertaining. But the watcher of documentary films also naturally comes to the screen with a different set of expectations than does the casual viewer of fictional movie narratives. In other words, more is demanded of the documentary form at the same time that its art is generally ignored.

The term *documentary* may itself be misleading, for it belies the complexity that potentially resides in the form. Since it was coined by the English filmmaker John Grierson in the 1930s to describe a type of film that focused on social realities, the word has broadened its connotations to include an emphasis on its aesthetic aspects. The most celebrated early practitioner of the art, Robert Flaherty, in such films as *Nanook of the North* (1922) and *Moana* (1925) (about Eskimo and Polynesian life, respectively), examined alien cultures from a sociological perspective. But Flaherty came to understand that moving pictures, even documentary ones, do not merely record objective reality. Like nonfiction literature, nonfiction film *inevitably* presents the subjective vision of its maker as well. Grierson, too, finally admitted clearly the genre's need to break free of the boundaries of didacticism, the need to teach a lesson, observing,



> The documentary idea, after all, demands no more than that the affairs of our time shall be brought to the screen in any fashion which strikes the imagination and makes observation a little richer than it was. At one level the vision may be journalistic; at another it may rise to poetry and drama. At another level, again, its artistic quality may lie in the mere lucidity of its exposition.

Documentary makers have often reinterpreted "the affairs of our times," and they have, simultaneously, extended the traditional expeditions into modern subcultures. Stacy Peralta's *Dogtown and Z-Boys*, for example, takes us into the world of the Zephyr Skating Team, a group of Southern California teenagers who brought surfing moves to skateboarding and transformed the sport in the early 1970s. David and Albert Maysles' *Grey Gardens* (1976) enters and patiently ex-



amines the fascinating, complex lives of Edith Bouvier Beale and her adult daughter "Little Edie," refugees from East Hampton aristocracy, living in a decaying-mansion squalor. Errol Morris's documentary *Gates of Heaven* (1978) introduces us to the animal mortuary business through two California pet cemeteries, their owners and clients. Frederick Wiseman's classic but highly controversial *Titicut Follies* shows us the world inside an institution for the mentally ill. And Nathaniel Kahn's *My Architect* (2003) takes us on a magnificent film journey on which an illegitimate son tries to recapture the personal and professional essence of his world-famous father, Louis I. Kahn. Werner Herzog's *Grizzly Man* (2005) places its viewer on the very brink of being eaten alive by a ferocious bear. While fictional film narratives may explore similar terrain (surfers in *Blue Crush;* the mentally ill in *One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest*, for example), the experience of hearing real people tell their stories is extraordinarily compelling.

Source: Bluem, A. William. *Documentary in American Television: Form, Function, Method.* New York: Hastings House, 1965.

FIGURE 15.17 A Documentary Mix The eccentric appeal of the underground cartoonist R. Crumb and his strange family is perfectly captured in the documentary film *Crumb* (1994), even though viewers are left to draw their own conclusions about the filmmakers' intentions.

in the manner of its editing, "thesis positive" in its sympathetic approach to famous cartoonist R. Crumb and his eccentric family (Figure 15.17). Yet, finally, the viewer is freely left to make his or her own judgments.

No documentarist, however, surpasses Errol Morris in his insistence upon injecting this venerable genre with a very modernist ambiguity. Beginning with *Gates of Heaven*, which Roger Ebert calls "one of the greatest films ever made,"[18] and working rather slowly through six other carefully constructed nonfiction feature films, Morris has established himself as the most visible artist documentarist. Watching *Gates of Heaven*, we are certain of its enormous good humor, but we are less sure about what attitudes we are to construct from it. *The Thin Blue Line* (1988) is famous for having been the catalyst that freed a man wrongly convicted of murder, but in its artful reconstructions of the crime and its utilization of an eerie Philip Glass score, among other techniques, the film's intentions are otherwise ultimately unclear.

"Constructed" documentaries such as *The Thin Blue Line* have always been useful for the information they present about the past. Two other works that admirably illustrate the type are *When We Were Kings* (1996) and *Theremin* (1993). The former examines the heavyweight title fight between Muhammad Ali and George Foreman in Zaire, twenty-one years after its original photography; the latter celebrates the inventor of electronic music. *Theremin*, like Morris's *The Thin Blue Line*, also solves a mystery: It finally explains, after decades of uncertainty, the disappearance of its title character, Professor Leon Theremin.

Two other films by Errol Morris contain more mixtures of his characteristic earnestness and humor: *A Brief History of Time* (1992) scrutinizes theoretical physicist Stephen Hawking; and *Fast, Cheap & Out of Control* (1997) is an intense meditation upon the subtly interconnected lives of a lion trainer, a topiary artist, a rodent scientist, and a robot designer. In these works, and in *Vernon, Texas* (1981), *Dr. Death* (1999), and *The Fog of War* (2003), Morris continues to extend his general desire to make the documentary form as complex and fascinating as the fiction feature film.

One method documentary filmmakers have frequently utilized to add complexity and fascination to their work is to star in their own movies. Sometimes, a double narrative occurs through their examining stories within stories. In a review of Kevin MacDonald and Mark Cousins's *Imagining Reality: The Faber Book of the Documentary*, Ian Christie observes that

> Al Pacino's recent Shakespearean documentary, *Looking for Richard*, belongs to a distinctive vein of cinematic non-fiction, in which the film-maker appears on-screen and becomes, in effect, the protagonist of a drama—which is the making of the film we are watching.[19]

Christie also mentions other excellent models for this type, including Moore's *Roger & Me* and Orson Welles's *F for Fake* (1974), and, at least in spirit, he might well have added *Hearts of Darkness: A Filmmaker's Apocalypse* (1991) and *Marlene* (1984), even though these two films' show business subjects did not actually direct the works. *Hearts of Darkness*, directed by Fax Bahr and George Hickenlooper (with the valuable assistance of Eleanor Coppola, who had shot documentary footage of her husband in the Philippines), records Francis Ford Coppola's struggle in making *Apocalypse Now*. *Marlene* is actor Maximilian Schell's attempt to let us see (in the sense of "understand") as well as hear the aging Marlene Dietrich, who refused to be photographed for it and would only allow audiotaped interviews. Both films were enriched and also made more problematically complicated by the direct (in Dietrich's case) or subtle (in Coppola's) manipulation of the filmmakers by their subjects.*

In 1998 Barbara Kopple, a director best known for documenting labor disputes in America (*Harlan County, U.S.A.*), shifted to show business and released *Wild Man Blues*, an energetic *cinéma vérité* account of clarinet player Woody Allen's tour of European concerts with his Dixieland jazz band, his sister, and his soon-to-be-wife, whom he introduces facetiously at one point as "the notorious Soon-Yi Previn." Although Allen specifies clearly that he intends the film's audience to be primarily interested in his music, he repeatedly undercuts this stance by providing spontaneous one-liners, which Kopple and her

---

*A magnificent precedent for *Hearts of Darkness* exists in Les Blank's documentary *Burden of Dreams* (1982), which chronicles the director Werner Herzog's obsession with making the film *Fitzcarraldo*, itself an examination of obsessive behavior.

FIGURE 15.18 Three Sides to Every Story In the documentary film *The Kid Stays in the Picture*, legendary producer Robert Evans (*Chinatown, Rosemary's Baby, Love Story, The Godfather*), shown here with director Roman Polanski, narrates the story of his career with this caveat: "There are three sides to every story: My side, your side, and the truth."

crew eagerly record. In the documentary's final, splendid scene, which takes place back in New York in the apartment of Allen's aged parents, the comedian/filmmaker, through calculated quips, also helps Kopple create a hilarious, incendiary ending for her film.

It is noteworthy that most of the accomplished documentaries mentioned above are also *about* filmmakers and the art of cinematic illusion (Figure 15.18). And it should not surprise us that many directors of fiction films have dreamed of creating documentary works. For example, Nicca Ray, the daughter of Nicholas Ray, who directed *Rebel Without a Cause*, starring James Dean, tells us that her father's fondest hope, late in his life, was to complete a documentary.[20] Other directors who do not seize the opportunity to work in the form in its ill-financed state—who, instead, continue to make fiction films—nevertheless find ways to play out their documentary urge.

Perhaps the most famous use of documentary elements in modern fiction film has involved James Cameron's techniques in his immensely popular *Titanic* (1997). In this film, the director's own documentary urge was so intense that he created new diving and photographic equipment—at extraordinary expense for his studio—to achieve textural (if not plot) authenticity by recording and presenting the eighty-five-year-old wreck of his subject.[21] *Titanic*, then, like so many other fiction films, pays the ultimate compliment to the documentary form: Cameron uses the real thing to inform his reel thing.

ANALYZING FILMS IN SOCIETY

On Censorship

1. Study three or more films with censorable subject matter made under the Motion Picture Production Code (prior to 1950), and answer these questions:
   a. Where in these films do you find obvious examples of code-caused suppression and restraint?

   b. How would these films be different if they were being made today? Which film (or films) could be significantly improved by being made today with a PG or R rating? How or why would they be improved?
   c. Do the films studied seem too mild mannered to have much impact, or do they effectively suggest such things as violence and sexuality in ways acceptable to the code?
   d. Do these films seem to go out of their way to promote traditional American values? Are American values or institutions questioned in any of these films? If so, how and where are such questions dramatized, and how are such problems resolved?
2. Examine three or more films with censorable subject matter made during the transitional period (1948–1968) and consider the questions above. What evidence do you find of the code's being stretched or disregarded? How do the films of the transitional period differ from those made before 1950?
3. Examine a film made under the Motion Picture Production Code and compare it with its remake produced under the MPAA Rating System. Possible choices include *Scarface*, 1932/1983; *The Postman Always Rings Twice*, 1946/1981; *Here Comes Mr. Jordan*, 1941, remade as *Heaven Can Wait*, 1978; *Godzilla*, 1954/1998; *The Thomas Crown Affair*, 1967/1999; and *Mr. Deeds Goes to Town*, 1936/*Mr. Deeds*, 2002. To what degree are these films different because of the difference in censorship restrictions? Where are the differences most obvious, and how is the overall effect of the film changed by the differences? Which of the two is the better film? Why?
4. Examine four films currently playing at your local theaters or on video: a film rated G, a film rated PG, a film rated PG-13, and a film rated R. What distinguishes a G film from a PG film, what separates a PG from a PG-13, and what differentiates a PG-13 from an R? Are these distinctions very clear?
5. Make an attempt to trace the evolution of the MPAA Rating System's classification decisions by comparing films rated PG and R at ten-year intervals. Use films released in 1976, 1986, 1996, and 2006. Can you discern any patterns of change affecting where the dividing line is drawn? If so, what do these patterns indicate?
6. Examine several films from each decade from the 1930s to the present, and try to describe the fashion of the age in terms of each decade's formulas for sexual intimacy, death scenes, and rough language. What other changing patterns or fashions are apparent in the films you viewed?

On Social Problem Films

1. Does the social problem attacked by the film have a universal and timeless quality, affecting all people in all time periods, or is it restricted to a relatively narrow time and place?
2. Is the film powerful enough in terms of a strong storyline, enduring characters, good acting, artistic cinematography, and so on, to outlive the social problem it is attacking? In other words, how much of the film's impact is caused by its relevance to a current problem and its timing in attacking the problem?
3. If the immediate social problems on which the film focuses were permanently corrected tomorrow, what relevance would the film have to the average viewer twenty years from now?

On Documentary Films

1. Has the documentary director apparently attempted to create a thesis type of film? If so, what clearly articulated statement does the film make? Do all elements of the filmmaking clearly support this thesis?
2. Has the direct cinema or the *cinéma vérité* technique of shooting been used? Has the presence of the documenting camera altered reality—or heightened it?
3. If the film obviously tries to avoid presenting a thesis, what methods has the director chosen to ensure "objectivity"? Has factual material been presented chronologically or thematically, without editing or artful rearrangement?
4. Does the documentary film reinforce the stereotypes about this form, or does it seem to suggest, through its example, that the genre can be as vital, entertaining, and complex as fiction films?

MINI-MOVIE EXERCISE

Like the American David Lynch, Mexican director Alfonso Cuarón is extremely versatile in his artistic tastes and talents. Although Lynch is most celebrated for his habitual wanderings into forbidden cinematic territories (*Eraserhead*, *Blue Velvet*, *Mulholland Dr.*), he was also capable of surprising all his critics by directing a respected G-rated drama, *The Straight Story*. Cuarón first became famous in the United States for his delicate and artful 1995 remake of *The Little Princess*, also rated G, and he was chosen to direct the third installment of the *Harry Potter* movie series, *The Prisoner of Azkaban* (2004). But in 2002 his highly acclaimed coming-of-age film *Y Tu Mamá También* was released without an MPAA rating because of its explicit language and strong sexuality.

As *Y Tu Mamá También* appears on DVD (also unrated), its disc contains a short work directed by the feature film's writer, Carlos Cuarón, Alphonso's brother. This *La Ronde*–like (i.e., structurally circular) twelve-minute film is called *Me La Debes* ("You Owe Me One"). Like its full-length companion, it is a narrative at least nominally about the sensual side of life, and hence potentially controversial. However, the film is beautifully photographed, economically written and edited, very witty, and abundant in its earthy and laconic humor.

Seek out and watch *Me La Debes*. Considering what you have learned in this chapter about the standards apparently utilized by the MPAA system, attempt to assign an appropriate rating label to this mini-movie. Be prepared specifically to justify your choice.

DVD FILMMAKING EXTRAS

A veritable seminar in the art of silent-film music appears in special sections of these DVDs:

The Harold Lloyd Comedy Collection
The four discs in this boxed set admirably cover the career of silent film's "third comic genius." Volume two, disc two, contains a substantial featurette called "Scoring for Comedy: Movie Music in the Silent Era." In it, Carl Davis, the esteemed composer for restored silent films, and one of his younger colleagues, Robert Israel (who created scores for twenty of the Lloyd movies in this collection), offer cogent observations, general and specific, about their work.

Greta Garbo: The Signature Collection
For several years, Turner Classic Movies has conducted an annual "Young Film Composers Competition." The contest for 2004, in which one artist won the right to create a soundtrack for Garbo's seldom-seen silent *The Temptress*, is wonderfully documented in the feature "Settling the Score."

Sunrise
On this DVD presentation of one of silent film drama's greatest triumphs, a viewer/listener can examine director F. W. Murnau's work in two musical settings: one with the original "movietone" score in mono, the other with a modern stereophonic recording by the Olympic Chamber Orchestra.

Dressed to Kill (Special Edition):
Brian De Palma's controversial violent and erotic thriller serves to demonstrate, through two featurettes on this DVD, the differences between "Unrated," "R-Rated," and "TV Rated" edits. One section simply presents scene-specific illustrations. The other, called "Slashing *Dressed to Kill*," gives the viewer a fascinating and revealing set of interviews, including observations by director De Palma; actors Angie Dickinson, Nancy Allen, and Keith Gordon; editor Jerry Greenburg; and producer George Litto.

Storytelling:
The DVD of this recent, controversial drama by Todd Solondz (who had earlier become celebrated as a rule-breaking director with *Welcome to the Dollhouse* and *Happiness*) offers the film not only in its R-rated theatrical-release form, but in an unrated version as well. (At the end of his review of *Storytelling*, published in the *Chicago Sun-Times* on February 8, 2002, Roger Ebert added this emphatic "Note": "During the sex scene between the professor and his student, a bright red quadrangle obscures part of the screen. When I saw the movie in Cannes, the audience could see the two characters—graphically, but not in explicit pornographic detail. The MPAA refused to give the film an R rating because of that scene. Solondz refused to cut it, and used the red blocking as a way of

underlining the MPAA's censorship. Good for him. And one more reminder that the MPAA and Jack Valenti oppose a workable adult rating for America.")

The Fast and the Furious (Collector's Edition):
In a brief but "exclusive" featurette here, director Rob Cohen talks to the viewer directly on-camera as he and editor Peter Honess calculate what individual frames of film must be cut to obtain a desired PG-13 rating. At one point, Cohen explains that "we've mitigated the intensity of violence on [one] sequence" because the ruling by the MPAA is "very important to this film commercially"—i.e., so that it will be permitted, officially, to reach its young target audience.

Kissing Jessica Stein:
Many reviewers of this film, which is a comedic examination of various gender issues, identified it as a notable "date movie." Originally, it had a different ending—one that seemingly attempted to treat the politics of "sexual preferences" more straightforwardly than does its final version. Compare that alternative conclusion (to be found in the "Deleted Scenes" section of this DVD) with the "finished" equivalent.

Bamboozled:
Director Spike Lee baffled many of his most fervent fans with this incendiary 2000 "joint" (his term for a Lee picture) about the history of racism as observed in American popular culture. On the DVD of his film, he has included a "Making of . . ." documentary that obviously is meant, at least in part, to answer some of his critics. Early in the piece, historian Clyde Taylor observes that this is Lee's "best film. It's not a fine, interesting movie with some social issues; it's a very hard-hitting satire. . . ." And the famous novelist and screenwriter Budd Schulberg appears at length, calling the film "witty, entertaining, *and* thoughtful." Critic Stanley Crouch certifies "how well Lee understands the prison of stereotypes" that the director portrays within the film and television industries. According to archivist Judy Aley, who conducted the search for assorted images of "mammies," "Uncle Toms," "Stepin Fetchits," and watermelon-eating "pickaninnies" that Lee used in the film, the annals of entertainment record a most cruel brand of "censorship" involving black performers. Included in the fifty-three-minute documentary are interviews with most of *Bamboozled*'s stars (Damon Wayans, Savion Glover, Jada Pinkett Smith, Michael Rapaport), its production designer (Victor Kempster), its editor (Sam Pollard), and its director of cinematography (Ellen Kuras). (Of interest to some viewers of this DVD might be an Easter egg on another: Under the channel changer icon on *Network* is a hidden explanation of the Nielsen rating system for television.)

Hedwig and the Angry Inch:
Undoubtedly, some "accidental" viewers of this film by writer/director/star John Cameron Mitchell will feel alienated from and seek to "censor" the musical drama and its bizarre, almost-transgendered protagonist. Perhaps they should watch the eighty-five-minute feature on this disc called "Whether You

Like It or Not: The Story of Hedwig." In it, one of the filmmakers asserts the universality of the movie's title character, insisting that all of us should note, "I have everything *in common* with Hedwig." Even more convincing for the skeptical may be the fond interview segments with the creator's parents, U.S. Army Major General John Mitchell and Mrs. Mitchell.

All About My Mother:

In "An Intimate Conversation with Pedro Almodóvar," the Spanish Oscar-winner, a controversial and popular *auteur*; speaks on-camera with Columbia University film professor Annette Insdorf about the origins and development of this film and others.

A History of Violence (New Line Platinum Series):

David Cronenberg has often filled his films (such as *The Fly* [1986] and *Crash* [1996], not to be confused with Paul Haggis's 2005 Oscar-winner with the same title) with grotesque violence. Yet in his 2005 drama *A History of Violence*, whose title appears straightforwardly to announce this characteristic subject, Cronenberg chose to delete an expensively made dream scene that showcased the movie's most "grotesque" element. On this DVD, while he includes the footage and an intriguing featurette, "The Unmaking of Scene 44," the director uses good humor to express his ultimate doubt about the scene's becoming a kind of "homage to myself." He also gives the viewer a brief but telling glimpse into the process necessary for both creating an "international version" and satisfying the MPAA for American audiences (he "softened" only two shots, removing a little blood and toning down some loud sounds of pain). Elsewhere on the disc, in an hour-long documentary called "Acts of Violence," Cronenberg presents some remarkably valuable and entertaining lessons in modern filmmaking. Virtually every key creative person on the project—including the actors, the director himself, the producer, the scriptwriter, the director of photography, the composer, the special effects director, the production designer, the makeup supervisor, "the gun wrangler," and William Hurt's "Philly" dialogue coach—appears on camera in the documentary and discusses his or her work while in the process of actually making the film. Denise Cronenberg, the costume designer, offering practical wisdom for anyone who must furnish clothing for actors "when there's shooting," advises, "Get six of everything!" Perhaps the titles given this feature's eight "acts" could economically serve as guidelines for identifying and discussing the movie's major themes involving violence: 1. "Random"; 2. "American Hero"; 3. "Bully"; 4. "Eye for an Eye"; 5. "Lies"; 6. "Gangster Sex"; 7. "Sibling Rivalry"; and 8. "Hope."

FILMS FOR STUDY

Censorship

8 Mile (2002)
Alfie (1966—Britain)
Austin Powers in Goldmember (2002)
Bamboozled (2000)
Basic Instinct (1992)
The Believer (2002)

Bonnie and Clyde (1967)
Breaking the Waves (1996—Denmark)
Bully (2001)
City of God (2002)
A Clockwork Orange (1971)
Eros (2004)
Eyes Wide Shut (1999)
Fat Girl (2001—France/Italy)
Femme Fatale (2002)
Gremlins (1984)
Happiness (1998)
Henry & June (1990)
A History of Violence (2005)
Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom (1984)
Intimacy (2001)
La Dolce Vita (1960—Italy)
Last Tango in Paris (1973—France/Italy)
The Last Temptation of Christ (1988)
L.I.E. (2001)
Lolita (1962—Britain; 1997)
The Lovers (1958—France)
Midnight Cowboy (1969)
The Moon Is Blue (1953)
Napoleon Dynamite (2004)
National Lampoon's Animal House (1978)
Natural Born Killers (1994)
On the Waterfront (1954)
The Outlaw (1943)
The Pawnbroker (1965)
The Postman Always Rings Twice (1946, 1981)
The Prize Winner of Defiance, Ohio (2005)
Requiem for a Dream (2000)
Saturday Night Fever (1977)
Scarface (1932, 1983)
Serpico (1973)
Shortbus (2006)
South Park: Bigger, Longer & Uncut (1999)
Spanking the Monkey (1994)
Storytelling (2002)
The Straight Story (1999)
Team America: World Police (2004)
The Virgin Spring (1960—Sweden)
Where the Truth Lies (2005—Canada)
Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf? (1966)
Year of the Dragon (1985)
Your Friends & Neighbors (1998)

Silent Films

(See p. 362 for lists of silent films.)

Social Problem Films

Dead Man Walking (1995)
Do the Right Thing (1989)
Falling Down (1993)
Far from Heaven (2002)
The Fast Runner (2002)
The Grapes of Wrath (1940)
Guess Who's Coming to Dinner (1967)
Happiness (1998)
The Ice Storm (1997)
Igby Goes Down (2002)
In the Company of Men (1997)
In the Heat of the Night (1967)
Kids (1995)
Leaving Las Vegas (1995)
The Lost Weekend (1945)
Manny & Lo (1996)
Margaret's Museum (1995—Canada)
Natural Born Killers (1994)
Norma Rae (1979)
North Country (2005)
Philadelphia (1993)
Sling Blade (1996)
Smoke Signals (1998)
The Snake Pit (1948)
Traffic (2000)
Trainspotting (1996—Britain)
Wild in the Streets (1968)

Documentary Films

49 Up (2006)
Blind Spot: Hitler's Secretary (2002—Austria)
Bowling for Columbine (2002)
Burden of Dreams (1982)
Crumb (1994)
Dogtown and Z-Boys (2002)
Fahrenheit 9/11 (2004)
Fast, Cheap & Out of Control (1997)
The Fog of War (2003)
Gates of Heaven (1978)
The Gleaners & I (2002—France)
Grey Gardens (1976)
Grizzly Man (2005)
Harlan County, U.S.A. (1977)
Hearts of Darkness (1991)
Hoop Dreams (1994)
The Kid Stays in the Picture (2002)
Koyaanisqatsi (1983)
The Line King (1996)
Looking for Richard (1996)
Marlene (1984—Germany)
Murderball (2005)
My Architect (2003)
My Best Fiend (1999—Germany)
Olympia (1936—Germany)
Roger & Me (1989)
Shoah (1985)
The Thin Blue Line (1988)
This Film Is Not Yet Rated (2006)
Titicut Follies (1967)
Triumph of the Will (1935—Germany)
Vernon, Texas (1981)
When We Were Kings (1996)
Wild Man Blues (1998)
The Wild Parrots of Telegraph Hill (2005)
Woodstock (1970)

notes

Chapter 1

1. A. O. Scott, "The Lasting Picture Show," *The New York Times* (November 3, 2002), sec. 6, p. 41.
2. Ernest Lindgrin, *The Art of the Film* (New York: Macmillan, 1963), pp. 204–205
3. Aldous Huxley, *Brave New World* (New York: Harper, 1946), p. 23
4. Richard Dreyfuss, quoted in Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, new expanded ed. (New York: Continuum, 1991), p. 413.
5. David Cronenberg, "Last Rant," *IFCRant* (November/December 2002), p. 32.
6. Eugene Hernandez, Erin Torneo, "Back & Forth," *IFCRant* (November/December 2002), p. 5.
7. Peter M. Nichols, "From Directors, a Word, or Two," *The New York Times* (September 6, 2002), *www.nytimes.com/2002/09/06/movies/06VIDA.html*. For further consideration, see also Charles Taylor, "Will the DVD Save Movies?" *Salon.com* (November 14, 2002), *www.salon.com/ent/movies/feature/2002/11/14/dvd_era/index.html*.

Chapter 2

1. Sidney Lumet, *Making Movies* (New York: Knopf, 1995), p. 10.

Chapter 3

1. Cesare Zavattini, "Some Ideas on the Cinema," *Sight and Sound* (October 1953), p. 64.
2. Neil Simon, quoted in John Brady, *The Craft of the Screenwriter* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1981), p. 318.
3. Ernest Lehman, quoted in Brady, pp. 203–204.
4. Danny De Vito, quoted in Robert Seidenberg, "Funny as Hell," *American Film* (September 1989), p. 47.
5. Griffin Dunne, quoted in Anna McDonnell, "Happily Ever After," *American Film* (January--February 1987), p. 44.
6. Robert Penn Warren, "Why Do We Read Fiction?" in *An Approach to Literature*, edited by Cleanth Brooks et al. (New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1964), p. 866.
7. Frank Capra, quoted in *Directing the Film: Film Directors on Their Art*, edited by Eric Sherman (Los Angeles: Acrobat Books, 1976), pp. 308–309.
8. Paul Schrader, quoted in Brady, pp. 298–299.
9. Robert Towne, quoted in Brady, p. 394.
10. Tennessee Williams, *Suddenly, Last Summer*. Copyright © 1958 by Tennessee Williams. All rights reserved. All quotations reprinted by permission of New Directions Publishing Corporation.
11. Ernest Lehman, quoted in Brady, pp. 199–200.

Chapter 4

1. John Ford, quoted in *Film Makers Speak: Voices of Film Experience*, edited by Jay Leyda (New York: DaCapo Press, 1984), p. 145.
2. Peter Bogdanovich, quoted ibid., p. 40.
3. Nestor Almendros, *A Man With a Camera*, translated by Rachel Phillips Belash (Boston: Faber and Faber, 1984), p. 15.
4. Ibid., pp. 12–13.
5. Bart Mills, "The Brave New World of Production Design," *American Film* (January–February 1982), p. 40.
6. Paul Sylbert, quoted in Vincent LoBrutto, *By Design: Interviews With Production Designers* (Westport, CT: Praeger, 1992), p. 85.
7. Patrizia Von Brandenstein, quoted ibid., p. 186.
8. Paul Sylbert, quoted ibid., p. 82.
9. John Box, quoted in *Film Makers Speak*, p. 45.
10. Charles Rosher, quoted ibid., p. 404.
11. Tennessee Williams, *Suddenly, Last Summer*. Copyright © 1958 by Tennessee Williams. All rights reserved. Reprinted by permission of New Directions Publishing Corporation.
12. Chuck Rosen, quoted in Linda Gross, "On Golden River," *Los Angeles Times Calendar* (November 13, 1983), p. 22.
13. Kristi Zea, quoted in LoBrutto, p. 248.
14. Robert Boyle, quoted ibid., p. 16.
15. Mills, p. 45.
16. Edith Head, quoted in *Film Makers on Film Making: The American Film Institute Seminars on Motion Pictures*

and Television, vol. 2, edited by Joseph McBride (Los Angeles: J. P. Tarcher), p. 166.

17. Edith Head, quoted ibid., p. 167.
18. Edith Head, quoted ibid., p. 169.
19. Mary Astor, quoted in *Film Makers Speak*, p. 17.
20. Todd Rainsberger, *James Wong Howe: Cinematographer* (New York: A. S. Barnes, 1981), p. 75.
21. "Zsigmond," *American Film* (September 1982), p. 55.
22. "Almendros," *American Film* (December 1981), p. 19.

Chapter 5

1. Vilmos Zsigmond, "Dialogue on Film," *American Film* (June 1979), p. 41.
2. Alfred Hitchcock, quoted in Richard Dyer MacCann, ed., *Film: A Montage of Theories* (New York: Dutton, 1966), p. 57. From "Direction" by Alfred Hitchcock, in *Footnotes to the Film*, edited by Charles Davy; reprinted by permission of Peter Davies Ltd., publishers.
3. Alfred Hitchcock, quoted in *Directing the Film: Film Directors on Their Art*, edited by Eric Sherman (Los Angeles: Acrobat Books, 1976), pp. 254–255.
4. Nestor Almendros, *Man With a Camera*, translated by Rachel Phillips Belash (Boston: Faber and Faber, 1984), p. 14.
5. Quoted from program brochure obtained by the author.
6. Alan Dwan, quoted in *Directing the Film*, p. 108.
7. Frank Brady, *Citizen Welles: A Biography of Orson Welles* (New York: Doubleday, 1989), p. 257.
8. Lily Tomlin, as told to Jane Wagner, "Memoirs of an Usherette," *The Movies* (July 1983), pp. 41–42.
9. The American Film Institute, *Visions of Light: The Art of Cinematography*, written and directed by Todd McCarthy, 1993.
10. Peter Biskind, quoted in "Jungle Fever," *Premiere* (July 1993), p. 67.
11. David Ansen, quoted in David Ehrenstein, "One From the Art," *Film Comment* (January–February 1993), p. 30.
12. Anne Bancroft, quoted in "AFI's 100 Years . . . 100 Movies," *CBS Television* (June 16, 1998).
13. Richard Edlund, quoted in Vision Films/Smithsonian Video (DVD), *The Art of Illusion: One Hundred Years of Hollywood Special Effects*, 1990, rev. 1995.
14. *Baseline's Encyclopedia of Film*, "Animation," Microsoft Cinemania 97 (CD-ROM).
15. Nick Park, quoted in Kevin Macdonald, "A Lot Can Happen in a Second," *Projections 5: Filmmakers on Filmmaking*, edited by John Boorman and Walter Donahue (London: Faber and Faber, 1996), p. 91.
16. Jeffrey Katzenberg, quoted in "No Dancing Teapots in 'Prince of Egypt,'" *New York Times* (December 14, 1998), *www.nytimes.com/yr/mo/day/news/arts/prince-egypt-katzenberg/html.*
17. Richard Corliss, "Can a Prince Be a Movie King?" *Time* (December 14, 1998), p. 92.
18. Roger Ebert, *www.suntimes.com/output/ebert1/18prin.html.*

Chapter 6

1. V. I. Pudovkin, *Film Technique and Film Acting* (New York: Grove Press, 1976), p. 24.
2. Alfred Hitchcock, quoted in Richard Dyer MacCann, ed., *Film: A Montage of Theories* (New York: Dutton, 1966), p. 56.
3. Evan Lottman, quoted in Vincent LoBrutto, *Selected Takes: Film Editors on Film Editing* (Westport, CT: Praeger, 1991), p. 144.
4. Tom Rolf, quoted ibid., p. 90.
5. Ralph Winters, quoted ibid., p. 44.
6. Richard Marks, quoted ibid., pp. 181–182.
7. Alfred Hitchcock, quoted in *Directing the Film: Film Directors and Their Art*, edited by Eric Sherman (Los Angeles: Acrobat Books, 1976), p. 107.
8. Elia Kazan, *A Life* (New York: Doubleday, 1989), p. 380.
9. Ephraim Katz, *The Film Encyclopedia*, 3rd ed., revised by Fred Klein and Ronald Dean Nolan (New York: HarperPerennial, 1998), p. 718.
10. Sergei Eisenstein, *The Film Sense*, translated by Jay Leyda (New York: Harcourt, Brace and World, 1947), pp. 30–31.

Chapter 7

1. Lewis Jacobs, "The Mobility of Color," in *The Movies as Medium*, ed. Lewis Jacobs (New York: Farrar, Straus, and Giroux, 1970), p. 196.
2. Weldon Blake, *Creative Color: A Practical Guide for Oil Painters* (New York: Watson-Guptill, 1972), p. 14.
3. Robert Boyle, quoted in Vincent LoBrutto, *By Design: Interviews With Film Production Designers* (Westport, CN: Praeger, 1992), p. 7.
4. Mark Rydell, quoted in Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, new expanded ed. (New York: Continuum, 1991), p. 180.
5. Jonathan Baumbach, "From A to Antonioni," in *Great Film Directors: A Critical Anthology*, edited by Leo Brandy and Morris Dickstein (New York: Oxford University Press, 1978), p. 29.
6. Gerald Mast, *A Short History of the Movies* (Indianapolis: Bobbs-Merrill, 1981), p. 295.
7. Paul Schrader, quoted in John Brady, *The Craft of the Screenwriter* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1981), p. 302.
8. Michael Pye and Lynda Myles, *The Movie Brats: How the Film Generation Took Over Hollywood* (New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1979), p. 213.
9. Richard Corliss, "Extra! Dick Tracy Is Tops," *Time*, June 18, 1990, p. 76.
10. John Huston, *John Huston: An Open Book* (New York: Knopf, 1980), p. 211.

11. Laszlo Kovacs, "Dialogue on Film," *American Film* (June 1979), p. 43.
12. John Schlesinger, "Dialogue on Film," *American Film* (November 1987), p. 15.
13. John Huston, "Dialogue on Film," *American Film* (January–February 1984), p. 22.
14. "Almendros," *American Film* (December 1981), p. 19.
15. Editors of the Eastman Kodak Company, *More Joy of Photography*, rev. ed. (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1988), p. 50.
16. Martin Scorsese, quoted in Mary Pat Kelly, *Martin Scorsese: A Journey* (New York: Thunder's Mouth Press, 1991), p. 125.
17. Robert Edmond Jones, "The Problem of Color," in *The Emergence of Film Art*, 2nd ed., edited by Lewis Jacobs (New York: Norton, 1970), pp. 207–208.
18. Martin Scorsese, quoted in "State of the Art," *Dateline NBC* (June 28, 1998).

Chapter 8

1. Leonard Bernstein, *The Joy of Music* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1959), p. 66.
2. Frank Warner, quoted in Vincent LoBrutto, *Sound-on-Film: Interviews with Creators of Film Sound* (Westport, CT: Praeger, 1994), p. 36.
3. Ray Sawhill, "Pumping Up the Volume: Movie Sound Has Been Getting Better—and Louder," *Newsweek* (July 6, 1998), p. 66.
4. Skip Lievsay, quoted in LoBrutto, *Sound-on-Film*, p. 264.
5. Steven Spielberg, quoted in Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, new expanded ed. (New York: Continuum, 1991), p. 369.
6. Mark Mangini, quoted in LoBrutto, *Sound-on-Film*, p. 279.
7. Skip Lievsay, quoted ibid., p. 264.
8. Roger Ebert, "The Opposite of Sex," *Chicago Sun-Times* (June 19, 1998), *http://www.suntimes.com/ebert/*.
9. Renata Adler, A Year in the Dark (New York: Berkeley Medallion Books, 1971), pp. 158–159.

Chapter 9

1. Muir Mathieson, quoted in Roger Manvell and John Huntley, *The Technique of Film Music* (London: Focal Press, 1957), p. 210.
2. Quincy Jones, quoted in Fred Baker with Ross Firestone, "Quincy Jones—On the Composer," in *Movie People: At Work in the Business of Film* (New York: Lancer Books, 1973), p. 191.
3. Jerry Goldsmith, quoted in *Filmmakers on Filmmaking: The American Film Institute Seminars on Motion Pictures and Television*, vol. 2, ed. Joseph McBride (Los Angeles: J. P. Tarcher, 1983), pp. 136–137.
4. Frank Brady, *Citizen Welles: A Biography of Orson Welles* (New York: Doubleday, 1989), pp. 264–265.
5. Jonathan Demme, quoted in Roger Catlin (*Hartford Courant*), "The Perfect Soundtrack Is Music to a Director's Ears," *The* [Fort Wayne] *Journal Gazette* (April 11, 1998), p. 2D.
6. "Peter Weir, Reflecting on the Score for *The Truman Show*," *The Truman Show*, soundtrack compact disc notes, Milan Entertainment Inc., 1998.
7. Brady, p. 264.
8. John Badham, quoted in Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, new expanded ed. (New York: Continuum, 1991), pp. 420–421.
9. Jerry Bruckheimer, quoted in Ray Sawhill, "Pumping Up the Volume," *Newsweek* (July 6, 1998), p. 66.
10. Martin Scorsese, quoted in "About Elmer Bernstein," *The Age of Innocence*, soundtrack compact disc notes, Epic Soundtrax, 1993.
11. Terry Atkinson, "Scoring With Synthesizers," *American Film* (September 1982), p. 70.
12. Ibid., p. 68.
13. David Shire, quoted in Tony Thomas, *Music for the Movies*, 2nd ed. (Los Angeles: Silman-James Press, 1997), pp. 309–310, 311–312. Tony Thomas has also created (as writer and coproducer) the indispensable American Movie Classics documentary *The Hollywood Soundtrack Story* (1995). Hosted by composer Randy Newman, the film discusses and illustrates the careers of many noteworthy film composers, including the following: Elmer Bernstein (*The Ten Commandments*, *The Magnificent Seven*), Danny Elfman (*Batman*, *Edward Scissorhands*, *Men in Black*), Jerry Goldsmith (*Patton*, *Air Force One*), Bernard Hermann (*Citizen Kane*, *Psycho*), Maurice Jarre (*Lawrence of Arabia*, *Doctor Zhivago*), Erich Wolfgang Korngold (*The Adventures of Robin Hood*), Henry Mancini (*The Pink Panther*, *Breakfast at Tiffany's*), Alan Menken (*The Little Mermaid*, *Beauty and the Beast*), Alex North (*A Streetcar Named Desire*, *Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?*), Basil Poledouris (*Conan the Barbarian*), Rachel Portman (*Benny & Joon*, *Emma*), David Raksin (*Laura*), Leonard Rosenman (*East of Eden*), Miklos Rozsa (*The Last Weekend*, *Spellbound*), Marc Shaiman (*City Slickers*, *Sleepless in Seattle*), Max Steiner (*King Kong*, *Gone With the Wind*, *The Treasure of the Sierra Madre*), Dimitri Tiomkin (*High Noon*), Franz Waxman (*Sunset Boulevard*, *A Place in the Sun*), and John Williams (*Star Wars*, *E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial*, *Schindler's List*).

    Another very helpful and enjoyable video source about film music is the documentary/performance work *John Barry: Moviola*, which was first broadcast on the PBS series *Great Performances* in 1993 (Big Shot Films). Barry, the prolific composer of many of the James Bond film scores, is perhaps best known for the lyrical works in the films *Born Free*, *Midnight Cowboy*, *Somewhere in Time*, *Body Heat*, *Out of Africa*, *Dances With Wolves*, and *Chaplin*. In the documentary sections of this film, the extraordinary relationships between Barry and his movies' directors are examined through interviews with Kevin Costner, Sir Richard Attenborough, and Sydney Pollack.

14. Randy Newman, quoted in "Movie Music: Coupla White Guys Sitting Around Talking," *Premiere* (June 1989), p. 139.
15. Sidney Lumet, *Making Movies* (New York: Knopf, 1995), pp. 176, 178.
16. David Morgan, *Knowing the Score* (New York: HarperEntertainment, 2000), p. xii.

Chapter 10

1. Mark Rydell, quoted in "Dialogue on Film," *American Film* (June 1982), p. 23.
2. George R. Kernodle, *An Invitation to the Theatre* (New York: Harcourt, Brace and World, 1967), p. 259.
3. Alfred Hitchcock, quoted in Richard Dyer MacCann, ed., *Film: A Montage of Theories* (New York: Dutton, 1966), p. 57.
4. Rydell, "Dialogue on Film," p. 23.
5. Michael Caine, quoted in Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, new expanded ed. (New York: Continuum, 1991), p. 446.
6. Edward James Olmos, quoted in Linda Seger and Edward Jay Whetmore, *From Script to Screen: The Collaborative Art of Filmmaking* (New York: Henry Holt, 1994), p. 161.
7. Cliff Robertson, quoted in Crist, pp. 106–107.
8. Joanne Woodward, quoted ibid., p. 60.
9. Michael Caine, *Acting in Film: An Actor's Take on Movie Making*, revised expanded ed. (New York: Applause Theatre Books, 1997), pp. 88–89.
10. Elia Kazan, *A Life* (New York: Doubleday, 1989), p. 530.
11. Henry Fonda, as told to Howard Teichman, *Fonda: My Life* (New York: New American Library, 1981), p. 104.
12. Robert Shaw, quoted in "Ask Them Yourself," *Family Weekly* (June 11, 1972).
13. Julian Fast, *Body Language* (New York: M. Evans, 1970), p. 185.
14. Jack Kroll, "Robert De Niro," in *The National Society of Film Critics on the Movie Star*, edited by Elisabeth Weiss (New York: Viking Press, 1981), p. 198.
15. Béla Balázs, *Theory of the Film: Character and Growth of a New Art*, translated by Edith Bone (New York: Dover, 1970), p. 168.
16. Michael Caine, quoted in Crist, p. 445.
17. V. I. Pudovkin, *Film Technique and Film Acting*, memorial edition, translated and edited by Ivor Montagu (New York: Grove Press, 1958), p. 168.
18. Sergio Leone, quoted in David Morrison, "Leonesque," *American Film* (September 1989), p. 31.
19. Edward A. Wright and Lenthiel H. Downs, *A Primer for Playgoers* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1969), pp. 217–220.
20. Steven Spielberg, quoted in Crist, p. 371.
21. Sidney Lumet, *Making Movies* (New York: Knopf, 1995), p. 67.
22. Steven Spielberg, quoted in Crist, p. 377.
23. Billy Wilder, quoted in Tom Wood, *The Bright Side of Billy Wilder, Primarily* (New York: Doubleday, 1970), p. 140.
24. Gary Busey, quoted in Thomas Wiener, "Carny: Bozo Meets Girl," *American Film* (March 1980), p. 28.
25. Paul Newman, quoted in Crist, p. 64.
26. Gene Hackman, quoted in Robert Ward, "I'm Not a Movie Star; I'm an Actor!" *American Film* (March 1983), p. 42.
27. Kazan, p. 525.
28. Paul Mazursky, quoted in Stephen Farber, "Who Is She This Time?" *American Film* (May 1983), pp. 32–33.
29. Dustin Hoffman, quoted in "Dialogue on Film," *American Film* (April 1983), p. 27.
30. Emma Thompson, *The "Sense and Sensibility" Screenplay & Diaries: Bringing Jane Austen's Novel to Film* (New York: Newmarket Press, 1995), pp. 266–267.
31. Hal Ashby, quoted in "Dialogue on Film," *American Film* (May 1980), p. 55.
32. Meryl Streep, quoted in Richard Schickel, "A Tissue of Implications," *Time* (December 19, 1983), p. 73.
33. Schickel.
34. Sidney Lumet, quoted in Fred Baker with Ross Firestone, "Sidney Lumet—On the Director," in *Movie People: At Work in the Business of Film* (New York: Lancer Books, 1973), p. 58.

Chapter 11

1. Peter Bogdanovich, *Who the Devil Made It* (New York: Knopf, 1997), pp. 40–41.
2. Sidney Lumet, *Making Movies* (New York: Knopf, 1995), pp. 26–27.
3. Steven Spielberg, quoted in Rogert Ebert and Gene Siskel, *The Future of the Movies: Interviews with Martin Scorsese, Steven Spielberg, and George Lucas* (Kansas City: Andrews and McMeel, 1991), p. 71.
4. William Goldman, quoted in John Brady, *The Craft of the Screenwriter* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1981), p. 168.
5. Sydney Pollack, quoted in Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, new expanded ed. (New York: Continuum, 1991), pp. 213–214.
6. David Lynch, quoted in *Reel Conversations: Candid Interviews With Film's Foremost Directors and Critics*, edited by George Hickenlooper (New York: Carol Publishing Group, 1991), p. 103.
7. Orson Welles and Peter Bogdanovich, *This Is Orson Welles* (New York: HarperCollins, 1992), pp. 314–315.
8. Lumet, pp. 46–47.
9. Emma Thompson, *The "Sense and Sensibility" Screenplay & Diaries* (New York: Newmarket Press, 1995), pp. 236, 240.

10. Steven Spielberg, quoted in Crist, p. 362.
11. Billy Frolick, *What I Really Want to Do Is DIRECT: Seven Film School Graduates Go to Hollywood* (New York: Dutton, 1996), p. 347.

Chapter 12

1. Dwight Macdonald, *On Movies* (New York: Berkley Medallion Books, 1971), p. 15. Reprinted by permission of Dwight Macdonald. Copyright © 1969 by Dwight Macdonald.
2. Renata Adler, *A Year in the Dark* (New York: Berkley Medallion Books, 1971), p. 330.
3. Vincent Canby, "Hitchcock: The Agony Is Exquisite," *New York Times* (July 2, 1972). © 1972 The New York Times. Reprinted by permission.
4. Macdonald, pp. 9–12. Reprinted by permission of Dwight Macdonald. Copyright © 1969 by Dwight Macdonald.

Chapter 13

1. Henry James, *The Golden Bowl* (New York: Scribner, 1904; Penguin, 1966), p. 1.
2. Reprinted from "The Battler" by Ernest Hemingway with the permission of Charles Scribner's Sons.
3. Russell Banks, *The Sweet Hereafter* (New York: HarperCollins, 1991), p. 1.
4. Jay McInerney, *Bright Lights, Big City* (New York: Random House/Vintage, 1987), p. 1.
5. Toni Morrison, *Beloved* (New York: Knopf, 1987), p. 1.
6. Virginia Woolf, *Orlando* (New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, n. d.; originally published in 1928), p. 244.
7. Reprinted by permission of Random House, Inc., from William Faulkner, *The Sound and the Fury*. Copyright 1929 by William Faulkner. Copyright renewed 1956 by William Faulkner.
8. Reprinted from "The Killers" by Ernest Hemingway with the permission of Charles Scribner's Sons.
9. George Bluestone, *Novels Into Film* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1957), pp. 47–48.
10. J. D. Salinger, *The Catcher in the Rye* (New York: Bantam Books, 1951), p. 2.
11. William Goldman, quoted in John Brady, *The Craft of the Screenwriter* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1981), p. 163.
12. Excerpted from *All the King's Men*, copyright 1946, 1974 by Robert Penn Warren. Reprinted by permission of Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc. Excerpt appears on pp. 128–129 of the Bantam Books (1974) edition.
13. Excerpted from *All the King's Men*, copyright 1946, 1974 by Robert Penn Warren. Reprinted by permission of Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc. Excerpt appears on pp. 313–314 of the Bantam Books (1974) edition.
14. Excerpted from *The Last Picture Show* by Larry McMurtry (New York: Dell, 1966), pp. 8–9.
15. Excerpted from *All the King's Men*, copyright 1946, 1974 by Robert Penn Warren. Reprinted by permission of Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc. Excerpt appears on pp. 308–309 of the Bantam Books (1974) edition.
16. Elia Kazan, *A Life* (New York: Doubleday, 1989), p. 381.
17. Renata Adler, *A Year in the Dark* (New York: Berkley Medallion Books, 1971), p. 302.
18. Neil Simon, quoted in Brady, p. 342.
19. Sidney Lumet, *Making Movies* (New York: Knopf, 1995), pp. 15–16.
20. Nicholas Ray, quoted in *Directing the Film: Film Directors on Their Art*, edited by Eric Sherman (Los Angeles: Acrobat Books, 1976), p. 279.
21. Neil Simon, quoted in Brady, p. 341.
22. Richard Corliss, "Fire This Time," *Time* (January 9, 1989), pp. 57–58.
23. Charles Taylor, "A Beautiful Mind," *Salon.com* (December 21, 2001), *www.salon.com/ent/movies/review/2001/12/21/beautiful_mind*.
24. John Horn (Associated Press), "Redford Fudges Facts to Make Story Spicier," *The* [Fort Wayne] *Journal-Gazette* (October 7, 1994), p. 1D.
25. Jack Nicholson, quoted in Linda Seger and Edward Jay Whetmore, *From Script to Screen: The Collaborative Art of Filmmaking* (New York: Henry Holt, 1994), p. 159.
26. Leonard Maltin, *Movie & Video Guide* (New York: Signet, 2003), p. 424.
27. Michael Cunningham, "For 'The Hours,' an Elation Mixed With Doubt," *The New York Times* (January 19, 2003), *www.nytimes.com/2003/01/19/movies/19CUNN.html*.
28. Begley, Louis, "'About Schmidt' Was Changed, But Not Its Core," *The New York Times* (January 19, 2003), *www.nytimes.com/2003/01/19/movies/19BEGL.html*.

Chapter 14

1. "Rex Reed at the Movies: From Blood and Guts to Guts and Blood," *Holiday Magazine*, vol. 47, no. 4 (April 1970), p. 24. Permission to reprint granted by Travel Magazine, Inc., Floral Park, New York 11001.
2. Stephen Schiff, quoted in "Preface" of Richard Jameson, ed., *They Went* Thataway: *Redefining Film Genres* (San Francisco: Mercury House, 1994), p. xiv.
3. Ibid., pp. xviii–xix.
4. Ibid., pp. xv.
5. Ibid., p. 6.
6. Rick Altman, *Film/Genre* (London: British Film Institute, 1999), p. 221.
7. Steve Neale, *Genre and Hollywood* (London: Routledge, 2000), p. 28.
8. Tom Ryall, "Genre and Hollywood," in John Hill and Pamela Church Gibson, eds., *The Oxford Guide to Film Studies* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1998), p. 337.
9. Wheeler Winston Dixon, in Wheeler Winston Dixon, ed., *Film Genre 2000: New Critical Essays* (Albany: State University of New York Press, 2000), p. 11.

10. Chuck Berg, in Dixon, p. 217.
11. Berg, pp. 217, 224.
12. Ron Wilson, in Dixon, pp. 151, 152.
13. Foster Hirsch, *Film Noir: The Dark Side of the Screen* (New York: Da Capo Press, 1981), p. 21.
14. Eddie Muller, *Dark City: The Lost World of Film Noir* (New York: St. Martin's, 1998), p. 10.
15. See, for example, Jim Shephard's "'Chinatown': Jolting Noir With a Shot of Nihilism," in *The New York Times* (February 7, 1998), *www.nytimes.com/yr/mo/day/artsleisure/chinatown.film.html.*
16. James Naremore, *More Than Night: Film Noir in Its Contexts* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998), p. 275.
17. Paul Schrader, "Notes on Film Noir," in Barry Keith Grant, ed., *Film Genre Reader II* (Austin: University of Texas Press, 1995), p. 225.
18. Schrader is quoted in Jonathan Rosenbaum's *"Touch of Evil* Retouched," *Premiere* (September 1998), p. 81.
19. See Louis Menard, "Jerry Don't Surf," *The New York Review of Books* (September 24, 1998), p. 7.
20. Anthony Lane, *The New Yorker* (August 10, 1998), p. 78.
21. Ibid.
22. Bruce Kawin, quoted in Leo Braudy and Marshall Cohen, eds., *Film Theory and Criticism*, 5th ed. (New York: Oxford University Press, 1999), p. 610.
23. J. P. Telotte, *Replications: A Robotic History of the Science Fiction Film* (Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 1995), p. 195.
24. A. O. Scott, "A Hunger for Fantasy, an Empire to Feed It," *The New York Times* (June 16, 2002), *www.nytimes.com/2002/06/16/movies/16SCOT.html.*
25. Lev Grossman, "Feeding on Fantasy," *Time* (December 2, 2002), p. 91.
26. Ed Sikov, *Screwball: Hollywood's Madcap Romantic Comedies* (New York: Crown, 1989), p. 32.
27. Rick Altman, *The American Film Musical* (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1987), p. ix.
28. Jane Feuer, *The Hollywood Musical*, 2nd ed. (New York: Macmillan, 1993), p. ix.
29. Altman, pp. 371–378.
30. Kevin Brownlow, *Hollywood: The Pioneers* (London: Collins, 1979), p. 129.
31. Quoted in David Ansen, "'Psycho' Analysis," *Newsweek* (December 7, 1998), pp. 70–71.
32. Quoted in Stephen Rebello, "Cat People: Paul Schrader Changes His Spots," *American Film* (April 1982), pp. 40–43.
33. Leo Braudy, quoted in "Afterword" in Andrew Horton and Stuart Y. McDougal, eds., *Play It Again, Sam: Retakes on Remakes* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998), p. 331.
34. Betsy Sharkey, "The Return of the Summer Sequels," *American Film* (June 1989), p. 4.
35. Dixon, p. 7.

Chapter 15

1. Fred Baker with Ross Firestone, "Rod Steiger—On the Actor," in *Movie People: At Work in the Business of Film* (New York: Lancer Books, 1973), p. 146.
2. Budd Schulberg, *Waterfront* (New York: Random House, 1955), pp. 307–309.
3. Charles Champlin, *The Movies Grow Up, 1940–1980* (Chicago: Swallow Press, 1981), p. 46.
4. Richard Corliss, "This Essay Is Rated PG-13," *Time* (July 29, 2002), p. 70.
5. Stephen Farber, *The Movie Rating Game* (Washington, DC: Public Affairs Press, 1972), p. 117.
6. Ibid.
7. "What G, PG, R, and X Really Mean," *TV Guide* (October 4, 1980), p. 44.
8. Neil LaBute, quoted in "Rebel Yells: Vanguard Roundtable," *Premiere* (October 1998), p. 90. For a fascinating, illustrative discussion of the composition of a typical ratings board group, see "I Know It When I See It," *60 Minutes*, CBS television (October 28, 1990).
9. Charles Lyons, in Francis G. Covares, ed., *Movie Censorship and American Culture* (Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1996), pp. 309–311.
10. Doug Atchison, "Separate and Unequal? How the MPAA Rates Independent Films," in John Landis, ed., *The Best American Movie Writing 2001* (New York: Thunder's Mouth Press, 2001), p. 69.
11. See Rick Lyman, "Hollywood Balks at High Tech-Sanitizers," *The New York Times* (September 19, 2002), *www.nytimes.com/2002/09/19/movies/19CLEA.html.*
12. Roger Ebert, "Bully" (July 20, 2001), *www.suntimes.com/ebert/ebert_reviews/2001/07/072001.html.*
13. Lou Lumenick, "True Tale of Sex, Violence, Murder, and Horrible Filmmaking," *The New York Post* (July 13, 2001), *www.nypost.com/movies/29179.htm.*
14. Erik Barnouw, *Documentary: A History of the Non-Fiction Film*, 2nd rev. ed. (New York: Oxford University Press, 1993), p. 348.
15. Roger Ebert, *Roger Ebert's Video Companion, 1998 Edition* (Kansas City: Andrews and McMeel, 1997), p. 23.
16. Barnouw, pp. 251–253.
17. Ibid.
18. Ebert, p. 806.
19. Ian Christie, "Kings of Shadows," *Times Literary Supplement* (August 15, 1997), p. 19.
20. Nicca Ray, "A Rebel Because . . . ," *Icon* (December 1997), p. 109.
21. For a detailed account of the urgency of Cameron's photographic visit to the *Titanic*'s burial ground, see the early chapters of Paula Parisi's *"Titanic" and the Making of James Cameron* (New York: Newmarket Press, 1998).

Glossary

action acting The kind of acting seen in action/adventure films. It demands skill in facial reactions and body language, physical strength, and coordination but little subtlety or depth in communicating emotions or thoughts.

adaptation A film based upon a literary work.

advancing colors Colors that, when given high intensity and dark value, seem to advance toward the foreground and make objects seem larger and closer to the camera: red, orange, yellow, and lavender.

allegory A story in which every object, event, and person has an immediately discernible abstract or metaphorical meaning.

ambient sounds Off-screen sounds natural to any film scene's environment, such as telephones ringing in a busy office building or birds chirping in a forest.

analogous harmony The effect created by colors adjacent to each other on the integrated color wheel, such as red, red orange, and orange. Such combinations result in a soft image with little harsh contrast.

atmospheric color Color that is influenced by the various colors and light sources in a color-rich environment.

auteur Literally, the "author" of the film. *Auteur* film criticism holds that certain directors provide the controlling vision for their films, conceiving the idea for the story, writing the script, producing, directing, and closely supervising most other steps in the filmmaking process.

blue-screen process A special visual effects film technique by which actors who are photographed in front of a blue screen can later be inserted into various movie environments; a kind of **matte shot.**

caricature The exaggeration or distortion of one or more personality traits; a technique common in cartooning.

Cinemascope. *See* **wide screen.**

cinematic point of view. *See* **point of view, cinematic.**

cinéma vérité "The term means 'camera truth' in French and applies to . . . documentary films which strive for immediacy, spontaneity, and authenticity through the use of portable and unobtrusive equipment and the avoidance of any preconceived narrative line or concepts concerning the material. . . . A distinctive technique . . . is the filmmaker questioning and probing those interviewed" (Ira Konigsberg, *The Complete Film Dictionary*, 2nd ed. [New York: Penguin, 1997], p. 57). *See also* **direct cinema.**

climax The point at which the **complication** reaches its maximum tension and the forces in opposition confront each other at a peak of physical or emotional action.

close-up A close shot of a person or object; a close-up of a person generally focuses on the face only.

color A purely human perception of a radiant energy creating a visual quality distinct from light and shade.

colorization The computerized coloring of older black-and-white films for use on television and for sale and rental on videocassette.

color palette A limited number of specific colors used or emphasized throughout a film to subtly communicate various aspects of character and story.

color wheel A standard reference device that artists use to clarify the relationships that exist between primary and secondary hues.

commentators *See* **interpreters.**

complementary harmony The effect created by colors directly opposite each other on the integrated color wheel. Such colors react most vividly with each other, as in the case of red and green.

complication The section of a story in which a conflict begins and grows in clarity, intensity, and importance.

computer-generated images (CGI) Visual images that are created exclusively by computer commands rather than by standard live photography or **stop-motion animation.** This method has been widely used in many types of films, but only during the 1990s did entirely CGI features such as *Toy Story* and *A Bug's Life* appear.

cool colors Colors that seem to convey or suggest a cool temperature: blues, greens, and beiges.

dailies Unedited footage of a day's shooting that the director evaluates for possible inclusion in the final version of a film.

dead screen A frame in which there is little or no dramatically or aesthetically interesting visual information. *See also* **live screen.**

dead track The complete absence of sound on the soundtrack.

deep focus Special lenses allow the camera to focus simultaneously and with equal clarity on objects anywhere from two feet to several hundred feet away.

dénouement A brief period of calm following the **climax,** in which a state of relative equilibrium returns.

desaturated color A color of lowered intensity or value. A color is desaturated by being made lighter or darker than its normal value.

developing or dynamic characters Characters who are deeply affected by the action of the plot and who undergo some important change in personality, attitude, or outlook on life as a result of the action of the film. *See also* **static characters.**

digital sound Vastly improved quality sound reproduction in movie theaters that utilizes processes (such as Dolby and DTS) that convert standard optical sound to binary digital information.

direct cinema "A type of documentary that developed in America during the 1960s and was given this name by filmmaker Albert Maysles to suggest its direct, immediate, and authentic approach to the subject matter. A planned narrative and approach are avoided. . . . Events seem recorded exactly as they happened without rehearsal and with minimal editing. People are allowed to speak without guidance or interruption. . . . The zoom lens focuses directly on subjects, waiting for them to expose themselves. . . . Direct Cinema and ***cinéma vérité***, which developed in France at the same time and employs many of the same techniques and . . . equipment, have been confused . . . , but ***cinéma vérité*** is quite distinct, with the filmmaker's voice intruding into the film, interviewing and probing the subject with questions in order to elicit the truth and create the dramatic exposure and situation" (Konigsberg, p. 96).

director's cut A special version of a motion picture that differs from its theatrical-release form. It most often appears on videocassette, laserdisc, or DVD under the personal supervision of its director, whose right of final edit may originally have been superseded by the film's producers or studio.

director's interpretive point of view *See* **point of view, cinematic.**

dissolve The gradual merging of the end of one shot with the beginning of the next, produced by superimposing a fade-out onto a fade-in of equal length or by imposing one scene over another.

Dolby-Surround Sound A multitrack stereophonic system for theaters that employs an encoding process to achieve a 360-degree sound field—thus creating the effect of more speakers than are actually present.

dramatic acting Acting that requires emotional and psychological depth, usually involving sustained, intense dialogue without physical action.

dramatic point of view *See* **point of view, literary.**

editing patterns *See* **inside/out editing; outside/in editing.**

ensemble acting A performance by a group of actors whose roles are of equal importance.

establishing shot A beginning shot of a new scene that shows an overall view of the new setting and the relative position of the actors in that setting.

exposition The part of a story that introduces the characters, shows some of their interrelationships, and places them within a believable time and place.

expressionism A dramatic or cinematic technique that attempts to present the inner reality of a character. In film, there is usually a distortion or exaggeration of normal perception to let the audience know that it is experiencing a character's innermost feelings.

external conflict A personal and individual struggle between the central character and another character or between the central character and some nonhuman force such as fate, society, or nature.

extrinsic metaphor *See* **metaphor, visual.**

eye-line shot A shot that shows us what a character is seeing.

fade-out/fade-in A transitional device in which the last image of one scene fades to black as the first image of the next scene is gradually illuminated.

fast motion The frantic, herky-jerky movement that results when a scene is filmed at less-than-normal speed (24 frames per second) and then projected at normal speed.

film noir "A term coined by French critics to describe a type of film that is characterized by its dark, somber tone and cynical, pessimistic mood. Literally meaning 'dark (or "black") film,' the term . . . was coined to describe those Hollywood films of the 40s and early 50s which portrayed the dark and gloomy underworld of crime and corruption. . . . The *film noir* characteristically abounds with night scenes, both interior and exterior, with sets that suggest dingy realism, and with lighting that emphasizes deep shadows and accents the mood of fatalism" (Ephraim Katz, *The Film Encyclopedia*, 3rd ed. [New York: HarperPerennial, 1998], p. 456). **Neo-*film noir*** refers to any film made after the mid-1960s that attempts to replicate many of these characteristics.

final cut A film in its finished form. A guarantee of final cut assures the filmmaker or producer that the film will not be tampered with after he or she approves it.

first-person point of view *See* **point of view, literary.**

fish-eye lens A special type of extreme wide-angle lens that bends both horizontal and vertical planes and distorts depth relationships.

flashback A filmed sequence that goes back in time to provide expository material—either when it is most dramatically appropriate and powerful or when it most effectively illuminates the theme. *See also* **flash forward.**

flash cuts Fragmented bursts of images used to compress action.

flash forward A filmed sequence that moves forward in time—the visual scene jumps from the present into the future.

flat characters Two-dimensional, predictable characters who lack the complexity and unique qualities associated with psychological depth. *See also* **round characters.**

flip frame A transitional device in which the entire frame seems to flip over to reveal a new scene—an effect very similar to turning a page.

foils Contrasting characters whose behavior, attitudes, opinions, lifestyle, physical appearance, and so on are opposites and thus serve clearly to define their personalities.

Foley artist A film sound technician who is responsible for adding **visible sounds** (such as walking, fighting, or falling) to enhance a soundtrack after the primary production has been completed.

forced perspective A production design technique that physically distorts certain aspects of the set and diminishes the size of objects and people in the background to create the illusion of greater foreground-to-background distance.

form cut A transition accomplished by framing objects or images of similar contour in two successive shots, so that the first image flows smoothly into the second.

freeze frame An effect, achieved in the laboratory after the film is shot, whereby a frame is reprinted so many times on the film strip that when the film is shown, the motion seems to stop as though frozen. *See also* **thawed frame.**

generalized score A musical score that attempts to capture the overall emotional atmosphere of a sequence and the film as a whole, usually by using rhythmic and emotive variations on only a few recurring motifs or themes. Also called *implicit score.*

genre film A motion picture (such as a western, a gangster film, a musical, or a *film noir*) that plays on the expectation of the audience regarding familiar plot structures, characters, setting, and so on. More broadly, the terms *genre* and *subgenre* are used to refer to various film types.

glancing rhythms The built-in sense of excitement or boredom created by fast or slow editing. Slow editing simulates the glancing rhythms of a tranquil observer; quick cutting simulates the glancing rhythms of a highly excited observer.

glass shot A cinematic technique that involves photographing live action through a scene painted on glass. In such celebrated films as *Gone With the Wind* and *Ben-Hur*, **glass shots** have been used to integrate characters and stories into landscapes that would have been either impossible or too costly to construct in three-dimensional form. Increasingly, **CGI** techniques are being used to enhance or replace glass shots in contemporary filmmaking.

high-angle shot A shot made with the camera above eye level, thereby dwarfing the subject and diminishing its importance. *See also* **low-angle shot.**

high-key lighting Lighting that results in more light areas than shadows; subjects are seen in middle grays and highlights, with little contrast. *See also* **low-key lighting.**

hue A synonym for color.

impersonators Actors who have the talent to leave their real identity and personality behind and assume the personality and characteristics of a character with whom they may have little in common.

implicit score *See* **generalized score.**

indirect-subjective point of view *See* **point of view, cinematic.**

in medias res A Latin phrase meaning "in the middle of things" that refers to a method of beginning a story with an exciting incident that, chronologically, occurs after the complication has developed.

inside/out editing A dynamic editing pattern in which the editor takes us suddenly from a line of action that we understand to a close-up of a detail in a new setting. Because this detail is not shown in the context of a setting, we don't know where we are or what is happening. Then, in a series of related shots, the editor backs us off from the close-up to reveal the detail in relationship to its surroundings.

internal conflict A psychological conflict within the central character. The primary struggle is between different aspects of a single personality.

interpreters Actors who play characters that closely resemble themselves in personality and physical appearance and who interpret these parts dramatically without wholly losing their own identity. Also called *commentators.*

intrinsic metaphor *See* **metaphor, visual.**

invisible sound Sound emanating from a source *not* on the screen. *See also* **visible sound.**

irony A literary, dramatic, and cinematic technique involving the juxtaposition or linking of opposites.

jump cut The elimination of a strip of insignificant or unnecessary action from a continuous shot. The term also refers to a disconcerting joining of two shots that do not match in action and continuity.

leitmotif The repetition of a single phrase or idea by a character until it becomes almost a trademark for that character. In music, the repetition of a single musical theme to announce the reappearance of a certain character.

literary point of view *See* **point of view, literary.**

live screen A frame packed with dramatically or aesthetically interesting visual information, usually with some form of motion incorporated into the composition. *See also* **dead screen.**

local color Color seen in isolation from other colors in a totally white environment illuminated by a perfectly white light.

long shot A shot, taken from some distance, that usually shows the subject as well as its surroundings.

long take A continuous film shot that lasts for several minutes. Some directors (following the famous sustained opening movement in Orson Welles's *Touch of Evil*) have made a kind of game of creating such shots in their films. Notable examples include Martin Scorsese in *GoodFellas* (and other films), Paul Thomas Anderson in *Boogie Nights*, Brian De Palma in *The Bonfire of the Vanities*, and Robert Altman in *The Player* (in an opening scene that both parodies and competes with Welles's work in *Touch of Evil*).

look of outward regard An objective shot that shows a character looking off-screen and thereby cues us to wonder what the character is looking at.

low-angle shot A shot made with the camera below eye level, thereby exaggerating the size and importance of the subject. *See also* **high-angle shot.**

low-key lighting Lighting that puts most of the set in shadow and uses just a few highlights to define the subject. *See also* **high-key lighting.**

matte shot Any special visual effects technique that uses some type of visual mask to allow more than one image to be photographed on a single film frame.

metaphor, visual A brief comparison that helps us understand or perceive one image better because of its similarity to another image, usually achieved through the editorial juxtaposition of two images in two successive shots. Two types of visual metaphors are commonly used in films:

> **extrinsic** A metaphor that has no place within the context of the scene itself but is imposed artificially into the scene by the director.
>
> **intrinsic** A metaphor found within the natural context of the scene itself.

Mickey Mousing The exact, calculated dovetailing of music and action that precisely matches the rhythm of the music with the natural rhythms of the objects moving on the screen.

microcosm Meaning "the world in little," a special type of isolated, self-contained setting in which the human activity is actually representative of human behavior or the human condition in the world as a whole.

mise-en-scène "A French term meaning 'putting into the scene' that was originally used to describe the staging of a theater director, the way he or she arranged all the visual components on the stage. The term has become fashionable in film criticism and has taken on new meanings and connotations from its filmic context. *Mise-en-scène*, in discussions of film, refers to the composition of the individual frame—the relation of objects, people, and masses; the interplay of light and dark; the pattern of color; the camera's position and angle of view—as well as the movement within the frame" (Konigsberg, p. 240). "Andre Bazin, and subsequently other theoreticians and critics, have used [the term] to describe a style of film directing basically distinct from that known as montage. Whereas montage derives its meaning from the relationship between one frame to the next through editing, *mise-en-scène* emphasizes the content of the individual frame. Its proponents see montage as disruptive to the psychological unity of man with his environment and cite such films as Orson Welles's *Citizen Kane* with its **deep-focus** compositions . . . as examples to support their argument. The schism between *mise-en-scène* and montage is deeper in theory than in practice; most filmmakers employ both in directing their films" (Katz, p. 956). *See also* **montage.**

monochromatic harmony The effect created by variations in the value and intensity of a single color.

montage A series of images and sounds that derive their meaning from complex internal relationships to form a kind of visual poem in miniature. "The term . . . as it is generally understood today is associated with the work and theory of [Russian filmmaker] Sergei Eisenstein, in which it came to represent the rhetorical arrangement of shots in juxtaposition so that the clash between two adjoining images suggests a third, independent entity and creates a whole new meaning. Eisenstein's ideas of montage were inspired by the editing techniques of [pioneer American filmmaker] D. W. Griffith" (Katz, p. 965). *See also* ***mise-en-scène.***

motifs Images, patterns, or ideas that are repeated throughout the film and are variations or aspects of the film's theme.

muted color *See* **desaturated color.**

name typing The use of names possessing appropriate qualities of sound, meaning, or connotation to help describe a character.

objective camera A camera that views the action as a remote spectator. *See also* **point of view, cinematic, objective.**

objective point of view *See* **point of view, cinematic.**

omniscient-narrator point of view *See* **point of view, literary.**

opticals Effects created in the lab during the printing of the film. The primary image is superimposed on another image, and the two are composited onto one strip of film by an optical printer. Modern optical printers are guided by computer, affording precise matching of a tremendous number of different images.

outside/in editing The traditional editing pattern in which the editor begins with an establishing shot of the new setting—to help the audience get its bearings—and then follows with shots that gradually take us farther into the setting. Only after we are completely familiar with our surroundings does the editor focus our attention on details.

painterly effects The effects created by filmmakers who are consciously trying to imitate certain looks achieved by painters.

Panavision *See* **wide screen.**

panning Moving the camera's line of sight in a horizontal plane to the right and left.

panning and scanning A technique used to transfer films shot in **wide screen** to a format that will fill a traditional television screen. The lateral movement of the reproducing camera that allows this process to occur also generally ruins the original composition and pacing created by directors and cinematographers.

parallel cuts Shots that quickly alternate back and forth between two actions taking place at separate locations, creating the impression that the two actions are occurring simultaneously and will possibly converge.

period piece A film that takes place not in the present but in some earlier period of history.

personality actors Actors whose primary talent is to be themselves. Although personality actors generally possess some dynamic and magnetic mass appeal, they are incapable of assuming any variety in the roles they play, for they cannot project sincerity and naturalness when they attempt to move outside their own basic personality.

Peter-and-the-Wolfing Musical scoring in which certain musical instruments represent and signal the presence of certain characters.

point of view, cinematic Essentially, there are four points of view that may be employed in a film:

director's interpretive Using the special techniques of the medium, the director manipulates us so that we see the action or the character in the way the director interprets them.

indirect-subjective A viewpoint that brings us close to the action and increases our involvement. It provides us with the feeling and sense of immediacy of participating in the action without showing the action through a participant's eyes.

objective The viewpoint of a sideline observer, which suggests an emotional distance between camera and subject. The camera seems simply to be recording, as straightforwardly as possible, the characters and the actions of the story.

subjective The viewpoint of a character participating in the action. *See also* **point of view, literary.**

point of view, literary There are five viewpoints employed in literature:

dramatic or objective A viewpoint wherein we are not conscious of a narrator, for the author does not comment on the action but simply describes the scene, telling us what happens and what the characters say, so we get a feeling of being there, observing the scene as we would in a play.

first person An eyewitness gives a firsthand account of what happened as well as his or her response to it.

omniscient narrator, third person An all-seeing, all-knowing narrator, capable of reading the thoughts of all the characters and capable of being in several places at once if need be, tells the story.

stream of consciousness or interior monologue A third-person narrative that seems to incorporate the first-person form, although the participant in the action is not consciously telling the story. It is a unique inner view, as though a microphone and movie camera in the character's mind were recording every thought, image, and impression that passes through, without the conscious acts of organization, selectivity, or narration.

third-person selective or limited The narrator is omniscient except for the fact that his or her powers of mind reading are limited to or at least focused on a single character, who becomes the central figure through whom we view the action.

point-of-view character A film character with whom we emotionally or intellectually identify and through whom we experience the film. **Voice-over narration,** editing, and camera position may be employed for this effect.

rack focus Changing the focus setting on the camera during a continuous shot so that audience attention is directed deeper and deeper into the frame as viewers follow the plane of clearest focus. The technique can also be reversed so that the plane of clearest focus moves closer and closer to the camera.

reaction shot A shot that shows a character reacting rather than acting. The reaction shot is usually a close-up of the emotional reaction registered on the face of the person most affected by the dialogue or action.

receding colors Colors that seem to recede into the background, making objects appear smaller and more distant from the camera: green, pale blue, and beige.

Rembrandt effect The use of a subtle, light-diffusing filter to soften focus slightly and subdue the colors so that the whole film has the quality of a Rembrandt painting.

rough-grain film stock Film stock that produces a rough, grainy-textured image with harsh contrasts between blacks and whites and almost no subtle differences in contrast. *See also* **smooth-grain film stock.**

round characters Unique, individualistic characters who have some degree of complexity and ambiguity and who cannot easily be categorized. Also called *three-dimensional characters. See also* **flat characters.**

rushes. *See* **dailies.**

saturated color A strong, unadulterated, pure color. A saturated red cannot be made any redder.

scene A series of shots joined so that they communicate a unified action taking place at one time and place.

sequence A series of scenes joined in such a way that they constitute a significant part of a film's dramatic structure, like an act in a play.

setting The time and place in which the film's story takes place, including all of the complex factors that come packaged with a given time and place: climate, terrain, population density, social structures and economic factors, customs, moral attitudes, and codes of behavior.

shade Any color darker than its normal value. Maroon is a shade of red.

shot A strip of film produced by a single continuous running of the camera. After the editing and printing processes, a shot becomes the segment of film between cuts or optical transitions.

Skycam A small, computerized, remote-controlled camera that flies on wires at speeds of up to twenty miles per hour and can go practically anywhere that cables can be strung.

slow motion The effect of slowed action created by exposing frames in the camera at greater-than-normal speed and then projecting that footage at normal speed (24 frames per second).

smooth-grain film stock Film stock capable of reproducing an image that is extremely smooth or slick, registering a wide range of subtle differences between light and dark, and creating fine tones, artistic shadows, and contrasts. *See also* **rough-grain film stock.**

soft focus A slight blurring of focus for effect.

sound link A bridge between scenes or sequences created through the use of similar or identical sounds in both.

standard screen A screen whose width is 1.33 times its height.

star system An approach to filmmaking that capitalizes on the mass appeal of certain actors to increase the likelihood that a film will be a financial success.

static characters Characters who remain essentially the same throughout the film, either because the action does not have an important effect on their lives or because they are insensitive to the meaning of the action. *See also* **developing or dynamic characters.**

Steadicam A portable, one-person camera with a built-in gyroscope that prevents any sudden jerkiness and provides a smooth, rock-steady image.

stereotypes Characters who fit into preconceived patterns of behavior common to or representative of a large number of people (at least a large number of fictional people), allowing the director to economize greatly in treating them.

stills Photographs in which the image itself does not move. A sense of movement is imparted to the images by the camera zooming in or out or simply moving over their surface.

stock characters Minor characters whose actions are completely predictable or typical of their job or profession.

stop-motion animation A variation on drawn-animation techniques that uses puppets or other three-dimensional objects. To give the appearance of life on film when projected at the normal 24-frames-per-second speed, subjects are moved minimally between shots as they are being photographed.

stream of consciousness *See* **point of view, literary.**

subjective camera A camera that views the scene from the visual or emotional point of view of a participant in the action. *See also* **point of view, cinematic, subjective.**

subjective point of view *See* **point of view, cinematic.**

subtitling The method of providing visible words at the bottom of frames to translate the dialogue of films from one language into another. *See also* **voice dubbing.**

surrealism A dramatic or cinematic technique that uses fantastic imagery in an attempt to portray the workings of the subconscious. Surrealistic images have an oddly dreamlike or unreal quality.

symbol A literal element (such as an object, name, or gesture) in art, literature, and film that also stands for an abstract idea. This representation is established by triggering previously associated areas in the mind of the perceiver.

tableau A technique, used in melodrama, in which actors held dramatic postures for a few seconds before the curtain fell in order to etch the scene in the audience's memory.

take Variations of the same shot. In the cutting room, the editor assembles the film from the best take of each shot.

telephoto lens A lens that, like a telescope, draws objects closer but also diminishes the illusion of depth.

thawed frame An effect opposite to that of a **freeze frame**—the scene begins with a frozen image that thaws and comes to life.

theme The central concern around which a literary work or film is structured, its unifying focus. In film, theme can be broken down into five categories: plot, emotional effect or mood, character, style or texture, and ideas.

third-person limited point of view *See* **point of view, literary.**

three-dimensional characters *See* **round characters.**

tilting Moving the camera's line of sight in a vertical plane, up and down.

time-lapse photography An extreme form of fast motion in which a single frame is exposed at regular intervals (from a second to an hour or even longer) and then projected at normal speed (24 frames per second), thus compressing an action that usually takes hours or weeks into a few seconds on the screen.

tint Any color lighter than its normal value. Pink is a tint of red.

tinting The chemical coloring of film stock before the image is printed on it. When printed, the white portions of the image retain the color of the tint, resulting in an image composed of two colors—black and the color of the tint.

toning Adding dyes to the film emulsion so that the lines and tones of the image itself are colored.

traveling music Music that is employed almost as a formula to give the impression of various means of transportation.

triad harmony The effect created by the use of three colors equidistant from each other on the color wheel, such as the primary colors: red, yellow, and blue.

typecasting The tendency of major studios and some directors to lock certain actors into a narrow range of almost identical roles.

value The proportion of light or dark present in a given color.

visible sound Sound that would naturally and realistically emanate from the images on the screen. *See also* **invisible sound.**

voice dubbing The replacement of the dialogue soundtrack in a foreign language with an English-language soundtrack. Voices in English are recorded to correspond to the mouth and lip movements of the foreign actors. *See also* **subtitling.**

voice-over narration A voice off-screen that conveys necessary background information or fills in gaps for continuity.

warm colors Colors that seem to convey or suggest a warm temperature: red, orange, yellow, and lavender.

wide-angle lens A lens that takes in a broad area and increases the illusion of depth but sometimes distorts the edges of the image.

wide screen Known by many trade names such as Cinemascope, Panavision, and Vistavision, a screen whose width varies from 1.66 to 1.85 to 2.35 to 2.55 times its height (as compared with the standard 1.33 times).

wipe A transitional device in which a new image is separated from the previous image by means of a horizontal, vertical, or diagonal line that moves across the screen to wipe the old image away.

zoom lens A complex series of lenses that keep the image constantly in focus and, by magnifying the subject, give the camera the apparent power to vary movement toward or away from the subject without requiring any movement of the camera.

index

Page numbers in boldface denote glossary terms. Page numbers followed by *f* denote figures.

Abbott and Costello, 499
Abenábar, Alejandro, 399
About a Boy, 278*f*
About Schmidt, 463
Abyss, The, 163, 385
Act of Violence, 112
acting
  action, **329**
  directing and, 375–377
  dramatic, **329**
  ensemble, **336**
  film v. stage, 322–332
  importance of, 319
  showcasing, 409–410
  in silent films, 330
action, 46–47
  acting, **329**
  characterization through, 62–64
  external, 48*f*, 62
  internal, 49*f*, 62–64
  internal v. external, 47
  music and, 304–306
  slow motion and, 210–211
actors
  as creative contributors, 351–354
  goal of, 319–320
  personality, **333**
  subjective response to, 354–356
  supporting, 344–347
  types of, 332–333
acts, 55
Adaptation, 432–433, 437
adaptations, **430,** 447–448
  artists changes in, 431–432
  cinematic potential of, 432–433
  of fact, 457–463
  limitations of, 440–442
  literary past tense in, 447–448
  medium changes in, 430–431
  other factors influencing, 448–449
  philosophical reflections, 442–444
  of plays, 449–457
    sense of space, 451–453
    structural divisions, 450–451
  problems of, 430–433
  of prose fiction, 433–449
  stage conventions v. cinema conventions, 455
  stage language v. film language, 454
  summarizing characters in, 444–446
  summarizing events in, 446
Adler, Renata, 282–283, 405–407, 432–433, 451
ADR. *See* automatic dialogue replacement
Affleck, Ben, 427, 437
After Hours, 56–57
Age of Innocence, The, 275, 307, 369
A.I. Artificial Intelligence, 180, 288, 390*f*
Airport '77, 197
Akeelah and the Bee, 536
Akira Kurosawa's Dreams, 253
Aladdin, 169
Alambrista!, 151
Alba, Jessica, 251*f*
Albee, Edward, 178, 432
Alda, Alan, 65
Alexander, Jane, 344, 345*f*
Alexie, Sherman, 539*f*
Alfie, 524
Ali, Muhammad, 544
Alice Adams, 400
Alice in Wonderland, 169
Alien, 103
All About My Mother, 228*f*, 515, 551
All or Nothing, 376*f*
All Quiet on the Western Front, 494
All That Jazz, 87, 267–268, 287, 340, 489
All the King's Men, 53, 54*f*, 443*f*
All the King's Men (Warren), 442–444, 446
All the President's Men, 309–310
allegory, **70–71**
Allen, Dede, 188, 191–196*f*
Allen, Nancy, 548
Allen, Woody, 56, 59, 82, 165*f*, 186, 336–337, 381–382, 437, 545
  Annie Hall, 12*f*, 244, 246*f*
  Manhattan, 145*f*, 310
  Match Point, 212, 375
  New York Stories, 216, 382*f*
  Zelig, 164
Allyson, June, 336, 339*f*
Almendros, Nestor, 92–93, 117, 133, 247
Almodóvar, Pedro, 515, 551
Almost Famous, 32*f*
"Also Sprach Zarathustra," 357
Altered States, 162, 163
Altman, Rick, 470, 471–472, 489
Altman, Robert, 259, 272, 379*f*, 381
  McCabe & Mrs. Miller, 406*f*
  Nashville, 301
  3 Women, 239
Always, 293–294, 346, 493
Amadeus, 98–99
Amarcord, 393*f*
Amélie, 79, 79*f*, 399
Amenábar, Aleajandro, 494*f*
American Beauty, 179, 230*f*
American Cinema: One Hundred Years of Filmmaking, 503
American Dream, 541
American Film Institute, 252
American Gigolo, 307
American Graffiti, 31*f*, 296–297, 360
American in Paris, An, 489
American Movie Classics, 252
American Short Story, The, 442
American Splendor, 378
American Werewolf in London, An, 162, 162*f*
Amistad, 369*f*
Amores Perros, 360
"Amos 'n' Andy," 53
Anaconda, 160
analysis, 7
"Anatomy of a Scene," 219
Anchors Aweigh, 167
Anders, Allison, 384*f*
Anderson, Eric, 121
Anderson, Gillian, 231*f*
Anderson, Jane, 384*f*
Anderson, Wes, 121
Andersson, Bibi, 411*f*

"Andy Griffith Show," 64
Animal House, 531, 532*f*
animatics, 179
animation
  special effects and, 166–175
  stop-motion, 167–171
Animation Legend Winsor McCay, 181
Aniston, Jennifer, 338*f*
Anna and the King of Siam, 493
Anna Christie, 361
Anna Karenina, 361
Annie, 489
Annie Hall, 12*f*, 59, 186, 244, 246*f*, 250, 377, 382
Anthrax, 314
Antonelli, Laura, 284
Antonioni, Michelangelo, 236, 273
Antz, 181
Apocalypse Now, 79, 276, 277*f*, 385, 545
Apostle, The, 415
appearance, 60–61
Apted, Michael, 541
Argento, Dario, 240
Aristocrats, The, 535
Aristotle, 42
Aronofsky, Darren, 219, 485, 536
Arquette, Rosanna, 216
Arsenal, 422
art direction, 97. *See also* production design
Arthur, Jean, 74*f*, 155, 333
Arzner, Dorothy, 384*f*
"As Time Goes By," 293*f*
Ashby, Hal, 353–354, 357
Ashley, Dustin, 341*f*
aspect ratios, 12–14, **92–93**
  popular, 94*f*
Astaire, Fred, 66
Astor, Mary, 112
Atchison, Doug, 536
Atlantic Monthly, 436
Atwood, Colleen, 122
aural emphasis, 76
Austin Powers in Goldmember, 70*f*, 528
Auteuil, Daniel, 309*f*
auteur, **365**
  approach, 410–411
Auto Focus, 10
automatic dialogue replacement (ADR), 289
Avalon, 158
Avery, Tex, 167
Aviator, The, 358
awareness, growing, 31

Babe, 161*f*, 162, 172
Babe: Pig in the City, 172, 247*f*
Bacall, Lauren, 219–220
Bachman-Turner Overdrive, 314
Back to the Future (series), 180, 498*f*, 504
background, in motion, 136*f*
Bad News Bears, The (1976), 306
"Bad Reputation," 305*f*
Bad Seed, The, 457, 458, 458*f*
Badham, John, 304–305
Badlands, 279*f*, 386
Baerwald, David, 467
Bahr, Fax, 545
Bailey, John, 158
Baker, Dylan, 536*f*
Baker, George, 227
Baker, Kathy, 426
Baker, Rick, 122, 158
Balázs, Béla, 325
Bale, Christian, 499
Ballhaus, Michael, 107
Bamboozled, 550
Bancroft, Anne, 88, 165
Bang the Drum Slowly, 210–211, 341–342
Banks, Russell, 434, 449*f*, 466
Barber of Seville, The, 303*f*
Barker, Clive, 468
Barnouw, Erik, 540, 541
Barrow, Clyde, 408*f*
Barrymore, Drew, 145*f*
Bartkowiak, Andrzej, 118
Basic Instinct, 437, 533–534
Bassett, Angela, 177
Bates, Alan, 142
Bates, Kathy, 457
Batman, 97, 239–241, 240*f*, 502
Batman (series), 499
Batman Returns, 502
"Battler, The" (Hemingway), 433
Bay, Michael, 189
Beal, Edith Bouvier, 543
Beatty, Ned, 360
Beatty, Warren, 191–196*f*, 270, 272, 340, 408*f*
Beaty, Chris, 314
Beautiful Mind, A, 88, 122, 347, 459–460
Beauty and the Beast, 169, 182
Becky Sharp, 228
Bee Gees, The, 305
Beetlejuice, 502
Begley, Louis, 463
Beineix, Jean-Jacques, 312–313, 398
Being John Malkovich, 33*f*, 361
Being There, 357–358
Bell, Jamie, 32*f*
Bello, Maria, 466
Beloved, 296
Beloved (Morrison), 435
Ben-Hur (1926), 492
Ben-Hur (1959), 190, 228, 492
Benigni, Roberto, 358
Benny & Joon, 178
Benson, Lucille, 346
Berendt, John, 468
Berenson, Marisa, 202
Berg, Chuck, 478
Bergman, Ingmar, 7*f*, 58, 114, 365, 372*f*
  Cries and Whispers, 238
  Persona, 33*f*, 411*f*
Bergman, Ingrid, 35*f*
Bernstein, Elmer, 307
Bernstein, Leonard, 257
Berry, Halle, 343*f*
Bettany, Paul, 308*f*
Beverly Hills Cop, 307
Bierce, Ambrose, 287
Big Chill, The, 296, 336
Big Sleep, The, 219–220
Bigelow, Kathryn, 177, 197, 246
Billy Bathgate, 342
Billy Budd, 65*f*
Billy Elliot, 32*f*, 37
Biloxi Blues, 244
Binoche, Juliette, 309*f*, 413*f*
Birdcage, The, 494*f*
Birth of a Nation, The, 364, 371, 436, 457–459, 515, 535
Biskind, Peter, 163
Bitzer, Billy, 371
Björk, 118*f*, 179
black and white, color v., 91–92, 246–252
Black, Jack, 337*f*
Black, Karen, 80, 110
Black Rain, 187
Black, Shane, 437
Black Stallion, The, 347
Blade II, 180
Blade Runner, 97, 102, 108–109, 109*f*, 120, 163, 164, 276, 307, 385
Blanchett, Cate, 358
Blank, Les, 545
Blazing Saddles, 475*f*
Blood Work, 67*f*
Blow Out, 273
Blow-Up, 273
Blue Crush, 543
Blue Danube Waltz, The, 293
Blue Lagoon, The (1949), 493
Blue Lagoon, The (1980), 493
Blue Velvet, 233, 234*f*, 548
blue-screen process, **159**
Bluestone, George, 439
Bob le Flambeur, 494*f*
Body and Soul, 490
Body Heat, 66, 273, 414*f*, 481
Body Language (Fast), 325
Bogart, Humphrey, 35*f*, 59, 64, 148*f*, 164, 165*f*, 219–220
Bogdanovich, Peter, 92, 364, 427
Bolger, Ray, 235*f*
Bolt, Robert, 437
Bonnie and Clyde, 9, 10, 87, 131–132, 154–155, 188, 191–196*f*, 215, 271, 271*f*, 281, 302, 304, 345, 408*f*, 447, 474, 515, 535
Boorman, John, 155, 244, 254, 360, 399
Boston Strangler, The, 112, 113*f*
Bottin, Rob, 162–163, 181
Bottoms, Sam, 445*f*
Bowie, David, 308*f*
Box, John, 99
Boy on a Dolphin, 336, 337*f*
Boyle, Danny, 539*f*

Boyle, Peter, 497*f*
Boyle, Robert, 108, 229
Boys Don't Cry, 10
Bradbury, Ray, 315
Brady, Frank, 146–147, 302
Bram, Christopher, 467
Bram Stoker's Dracula, 160, 163, 164, 493, 493*f*
Branagh, Kenneth, 454, 454*f*
Branding Iron, The, 490
Brando, Marlon, 79, 166, 267, 267*f*, 277*f*, 340, 351–352, 351*f*, 397
  On the Waterfront, 29
Braudy, Leo, 495
Brave New World, 4
Brazil, 120
Breaking Away, 119, 303*f*, 346, 378
Breathless, 188, 494
Brenneman, Amy, 426
Breslin, Spencer, 360
Bretherton, David, 202
Bride of Frankenstein, 496
Bridges of Madison County, The, 51–52, 332, 442
Brief History of Time, A, 545
Bright Lights, Big City (McInerney), 434
Bringing Up Baby, 489*f*
Brokeback Mountain, 30*f*, 399, 535
Broken Blossoms, 227, 422
Broken Flowers, 325*f*, 358
Brooks, Mel, 165, 497*f*
Brothers McMullen, The, 386
Brown Bunny, The, 189, 526
Brown, Janet, 467
Brown, Nacio Herb, 315
Browning, Robert, 466
Brownlow, Kevin, 142, 227, 400, 490
Bruckheimer, Jerry, 307
Bubble, 104, 340, 341*f*
Buckethead, 314
Buckley, Betty, 359
budget, look and, 119
Buffalo Bill and the Indians, 381
Bug's Life, A, 182
Bullets Over Broadway, 381
Bully, 537–538
Burchill, Julie, 427
Burden of Dreams, 545
Burghoff, Gary, 65–66
Burstyn, Ellen, 156*f*
Burton, Richard, 339*f*
Burton, Tim, 171, 502–503
  Corpse Bride, 172
Burtt, Ben, 288
Burwell, Carter, 314
Buscemi, Steve, 346, 346*f*, 358
Busey, Gary, 344
Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid, 111, 212–213, 214*f*, 340, 345, 447
Butcher Boy, The, 294–295, 347, 348*f*
Butler, Bill, 153
Bwana Devil, 151
Caan, James, 360
Cabaret, 76, 100*f*, 202, 275, 301, 489, 490*f*, 505
Cabinet of Dr. Caligari, The, 422, 455, 456*f*
Caché, 309*f*
Cage, Nicolas, 276–277, 277*f*, 398, 530
Caine, Michael, 121, 137*f*, 320, 322, 327
"Call of the Faraway Hills, The," 296
camera. *See also* objective camera; subjective camera
  angles, 152–153, 154*f*
  apparent movement of, 144–145
  handheld, 151–152
  mobile, 141–143
  movement of, 143–144
Cameron, James, 165–166, 177, 385, 546
Campion, Jane, 384*f*, 397–398
Canby, Vincent, 418–419
Cannom, Greg, 122
Cape Fear (1962), 493
Cape Fear (1991), 329*f*, 493
Capote, 20
Capra, Frank, 56, 59, 259, 333, 397
caricature, **65**
Carillo, Elpidia, 426
Carmen, 306
Carnival of Souls, 503–504
Caro, Niki, 142, 384*f*
Carpenter, John, 272, 314, 483
Carr, Allan, 316
Carrey, Jim, 69*f*, 122, 338, 350*f*
Carrie, 359
Carringer, Robert, 75*f*
Cars, 172
Carter, Helena Bonham, 122
Carter, Rick, 121
Casablanca, 35, 35*f*, 64, 87, 120, 148*f*, 177
Cascio, Salvatore, 284, 347
Casino, 479
Cast Away, 59, 69*f*, 360–361
Castellaneta, Dan, 66
casting, 335–351
  challenges, 347
  directing and, 375–377
  extras, 349–351
  problems, 339–340
  small roles, 349–351
Castleton, Barbara, 490
Cat Ballou, 304
Cat People (1942), 162, 492
Cat People (1982), 307–308
Catch-22, 250
Catcher in the Rye, The (Salinger), 439–440
Celebrity, 381
Cell, The, 180
censorship, 517
  1948–1968, 523–525
  television and, 531
CGI (computer generated imagery), **4**, **159**, 161*f*
Chandler, Helen, 493*f*
Chandler, Raymond, 436–437
Chaney, Lon, Jr., 162, 162*f*
Channing, Stockard, 316
Channing-Williams, Simon, 467
Chaplin, Charlie, 330, 361, 366*f*, 400, 422, 436
Chaplin Collection, The, 361
Chapman, Michael, 238
character(s)
  in adaptations, 444–446
  becoming, 320–322
  developing, **68**, 69*f*
  flat, **70**
  flat *vs.* round, 70
  focus on, 22–23, 24*f*
  irony of, 82
  point-of-view, **377**
  round, **70**
  setting and, 101–102, 103*f*, 104*f*
  static, **69**
  static v. dynamic, 68–70
  stock, **67**
  three-dimensional, **70**
  value placed on objects by, 73
  varieties of, 67–70
characterization, 87
  through appearance, 60–61
  through caricature, 65–66
  through contrast, 64–65
  through dialogue, 61–62, 63*f*
  through external action, 62–64
  through internal action, 62
  through music, 298–301
  through name typing, 66–67
  through reactions of other characters, 64
Chariots of Fire, 203, 210–211, 212, 308
"Charlie Rose Show, The," 359, 361
Charly, 321
Chasing Amy, 336
Chayefsky, Paddy, 105
Cheat, The, 490
Chechik, Jeremiah, 178
Cheung, Maggie, 49*f*
Chicago, 9, 301, 430, 489, 490*f*
Chicago Sun-Times, 548
Chicken Little, 150–151
Chicken Run, 171, 182
Children of Paradise, 422
Chinatown, 88, 481
Chocolat, 121, 413*f*
Cholodenko, Lisa, 384*f*
Christensen, Hayden, 487*f*
Christie, Ian, 545
Christie, Julie, 157, 361, 406*f*, 454*f*
Christopher, Dennis, 303*f*
Chronicles of Narnia, The: The Lion, the Witch, and the Wardrobe, 495
Cider House Rules, The, 432*f*
Cinderella, 169, 489
Cinderella Man, 237*f*, 260
Cinema Paradiso, 284, 347
cinéma vérité, 541
Cinemascope, **93**, 94*f*, 95*f*, 260, 523

cinematic composition, elements of, 133–151
cinematic techniques, specialized, 151–158
cinematography, directing and, 371–373
Cinerama, 4–5, 150–151, 523
Citizen Kane, 69, 73, 75*f*, 87, 112–113, 146–147, 149–150, 153, 177, 212–213, 259–260, 270–271, 275, 287, 298, 300, 302–303, 371, 427, 460–461
City Lights, 330, 366*f*, 400
City Slickers, 328
Clansman, The, 459
Clark, Larry, 537
Clarkson, Patricia, 337*f*
Clash of the Titans, 171
CleanFlicks, 537
ClearPlay, 537
Clerks, 119, 386
Clift, Montgomery, 340, 354–356, 355*f*
climax, **55**
Clockwork Orange, A, 157, 307, 388*f*, 529
Clooney, George, 96*f*, 248, 306*f*, 486*f*, 499
Close Encounters of the Third Kind, 160, 385–386, 390*f*, 486*f*
Close, Glenn, 57, 334, 426
Close Shave, A, 171
close-ups, **136**
  extreme, 136, 136*f*
Coal Miner's Daughter, 341
Coates, Anne V., 359
Code and Rating Administration, 529
Coen Brothers, 248, 479
  O Brother, Where Art Thou?, 306
  Raising Arizona, 277*f*
Coen, Ethan, 178
Coen, Joel, 178
Coffee and Cigarettes, 358
Cohen, Jon, 466
Cohen, Rob, 189, 550
coherence, 190
Colbert, Claudette, 397
Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, 10*f*
collaboration, 6
Collateral, 398
color, **223**
  advancing, **229**
  advent of, 226–227
  atmospheric, **225**, 228*f*
  black and white v., 91–92, 246–252
  comic book, 240–241
  comic strip, 241–242, 243*f*
  cool, **231**
  depth and, 229
  desaturated, **224**
  diffusion and, 153–155
  effect of, 225–233
  expressionism and, 236–238
  harmony, 232–233
  irony and, 244, 245*f*
  leitmotifs and, 239–240
  lighting and, 136
  local, **225**
  mood and, 240
  muted, **224–225**
  painterly effects and, 242–244
  receding, **229**
  saturated, **224**
  special effects, 244–246
  symbolism and, 238
  as transitional device, 233–236
  warm, **229**
  wheel, **223**, 224*f*
color palette, **92**
Columbia University, 551
Columbus, Chris, 489
Come Back to the Five and Dime, Jimmy Dean, Jimmy Dean, 381
Coming Home, 296, 353–354
"coming of age" films, 31
Comingore, Dorothy, 270
commentators, 332–333
commercials, 248
communication
  symbols and, 72
  techniques, 50
Company, The, 381
complication, **55**
computer generated imagery. *See* CGI
Conan the Barbarian, 160, 162
conditioned responses, 301–302
Condon, Bill, 467–468
conflict, 57–59
  external, **58–59**
  internal, **59**, 60*f*
  physical v. psychological, 58
  symbolic values in, 78
Connelly, Jennifer, 347
Connery, Sean, 364, 500*f*
Constant Gardener, The, 26*f*, 342, 467
Contact, 158, 486*f*
context, 73–76
continuity, 190
contrast, high, 138*f*
Conversation, The, 152–153, 252, 266, 273, 274*f*, 310, 436
Coogan, Steve, 358
Cook, The Thief, His Wife, & Her Lover, The, 238
Cookie's Fortune, 381
Cool Hand Luke, 345
Coolidge, Martha, 384*f*
Cooper, Gary, 71*f*, 333
Cooper, Merian C., 159, 180
Coppola, Carmine, 314
Coppola, Eleanor, 545
Coppola, Francis Ford, 360, 381, 437, 493*f*, 545
  Apocalypse Now, 277*f*, 385
  Bram Stoker's Dracula, 164
  Conversation, The, 152–153, 266, 273, 310, 436
  Godfather, The, 204–209*f*, 314
  New York Stories, 216, 382*f*
Corliss, Richard, 175, 189, 427, 459, 528
Corpse Bride, 172
Costa Gavras, 399
Costanza, Marko, 289
Costner, Kevin, 476*f*, 478
costume design, 110–114
Count of Monte Cristo, The (2002), 288, 467
Cousins, Mark, 545
Cox, Brian, 536
Cox, Ronny, 360
Coyote, Peter, 137*f*
Crash (1996), 551
Crash (2005), 26*f*, 385
Craven, Wes, 483
Crawford, Broderick, 443*f*
Cries and Whispers, 238
Crimes and Misdemeanors, 346, 381
Crist, Judith, 386
Cronenberg, David, 551
  on DVDs, 14
Crosby, Bing, 499
Cross, Eli, 436
Crothers, Scatman, 346
Crouch, Stanley, 550
Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon, 5*f*, 359, 504
Crowe, Cameron, 105, 189, 494*f*
Crowe, Russell, 29*f*, 122, 237*f*, 347
Crowley, Nathan, 178
Crudup, Billy, 182
Cruise, Tom, 105, 180, 242*f*, 359–360, 398, 494*f*
Crumb, 386, 541–542, 544*f*
Crumb, R., 544*f*
Cruz, Penélope, 494*f*
Crying Game, The, 416*f*
Crystal, Billy, 315
Cuarón, Alfonso, 548
Cuarón, Carlos, 548
Culkin, Macaulay, 346
Cunningham, Michael, 461–463
Curse of the Were-Rabbit, The, 171, 171*f*
Curtis, Tony, 112, 113*f*
Cusack, Joan, 338*f*
Cusack, John, 441*k*
cuts
  flash, **201**
  jump, **202**
  parallel, **202**
Cutting Edge, The: The Magic of Movie Editing, 189
Cyrano de Bergerac, 300

Da Vinci Code, The, 96*f*
Dafoe, Willem, 68*f*, 359, 534*f*
Dahl, John, 504
Dahl, Roald, 171
dailies, **187**
Daines, Claire, 182
Daldry, Stephen, 301, 347–349, 461
Dalio, Marcel, 514*f*
Dallwitz, Burkhard, 300
Damon, Matt, 427, 437, 462*f*
Dancer in the Dark, 118*f*, 179, 489
Dances with Wolves, 471, 476*f*, 478

Danes, Claire, 108*f*
Danner, Blythe, 498
Dano, Paul Franklin, 537*f*
Danson, Ted, 66
Dante, Joe, 166, 528*f*
Darabont, Frank, 350*f*
Daredevil, 51*f*
Dark City, 97, 427, 485
Dark Passage, 165*f*
Darwell, Jane, 157
Das Boot, 260–261, 261*f*, 284
Dash, Julie, 384*f*
Daviau, Allen, 158
David and Lisa, 494
David Copperfield (novel), 66
Davies, Jeremy, 486*f*
Davies, Terence, 231*f*
Davis, Bette, 111
Davis, Carl, 548
Davis, Geena, 69*f*
Davis, Viola, 486*f*
Day After Tomorrow, The, 147*f*
day for night, **227**
Day of the Locust, 244
Day the Earth Stood Still, The, 45, 486*f*
Day-Lewis, Daniel, 406*f*
Days of Heaven, 106, 117, 252, 278, 279*f*, 287
de Havilland, Olivia, 538
De Niro, Robert, 66, 210, 234–236, 238, 239*f*, 258*f*, 269, 329–332, 329*f*, 334, 341–342, 347, 498
De Palma, Brian, 359, 530, 548
  Blow Out, 273
  Dressed to Kill, 64
Dead Man Walking, 28*f*
Dead Men Don't Wear Plaid, 164, 165*f*
Dead Poets Society, 203, 338
dead screen, **139–140**, 143, **270**
"Dead, The" (Joyce), 442
dead track, **281**
Deakins, Roger, 178, 253–254, 306
Dean, James, 340, 546
Deconstructing Harry, 381
"Deep Night," 304
Deer Hunter, The, 125, 342
Degus, Bob, 254
Del Toro, Benicio, 62
Deliverance, 27*f*, 244, 359–360
DeMille, Cecil B., 117
Demme, Jonathan, 300
Dench, Judi, 347, 349*f*
Deneuve, Catherine, 118*f*, 179
Denis, Claire, 384*f*
Dennis, Sandy, 336
dénouement, **55**
  fine tuning, 56–57
Depp, Johnny, 178, 497*f*
depth
  color and, 229
  illusion of, 143–151
  lighting for, 149*f*
  in sound, 259–262
Dern, Bruce, 80
DeVito, Danny, 56
DeWilde, Brandon, 64, 115
dialogue, 258–259
  characterization through, 61–62
  musical score and, 294–295
  sound effects and, 266–273
Diary of Anne Frank, The, 494
Diaz, Cameron, 489*f*
DiCaprio, Leonardo, 406*f*
Dick, Kirby, 530–531
Dick, Phillip K., 466
Dick Tracy, 241–242, 243*f*
Dickens, Charles, 66
Dickerson, Ernest, 157–158, 372*f*
Dickinson, Angie, 121, 548
Didion, Joan, 465–466
Die Another Day, 343*f*
Die Hard, 110
Dietrich, Marlene, 545
diffusion, 153–155
Dinklage, Peter, 337*f*
direct cinema, 541
directing
  acting and, 375–377
  casting and, 375–377
  cinematography and, 371–373
  flexibility, 381–383
  musical score and, 374–375
  production design and, 374
  setting and, 374
  structure and, 377–381
  style, 366–367
  stylistic evolution, 381–383
  subject matter, 367–371
"Direction" (Hitchcock), 128–129
director's cut, **383**–386
Disbelief, suspension of, 10*f*
Disney Studios, 168, 182
Disney, Walt, 167, 169, 181
Disney's The Kid, 360
Diva, 312–313, 398
Dixon, Wheeler Winston, 472, 500–501
Do the Right Thing, 28*f*, 157–158, 273
D.O.A. (1988), 233–234
Dobbs, Lem, 398–399
Docter, Peter, 315
Doctor Zhivago, 103, 157
Documentary: A History of the Non-Fiction Film (Barnouw), 540
Doebereiner, Debbie, 341*f*
Dog Day Afternoon, 364
Dogma 95, 118*f*
dogs, 360
Dogtown and Z-Boys, 542
Dolby-Surround Sound, **260**
Dollmaker, The, 203
Dooley, Paul, 346
Dorn, Dody, 398
Double Indemnity, 334*f*, 481
Douglas, Melvyn, 115
Douglas, Michael, 57
Down by Law, 358
Downfall, 100*f*
Downs, Lenthiel H., 332
Dr. Death, 545
Dr. Seuss' How the Grinch Stole Christmas, 122
Dr. Strangelove, 83, 87, 250, 293, 298, 345, 357, 359, 389*f*
Dracula, 493, 493*f*
Dragonslayer, 160
Drazan, Anthony, 467
Dreamworks, 174*f*, 175, 181, 182
Dressed to Kill, 64, 121, 548
Dreyfuss, Richard, 11, 272, 340, 385
Driver, Minnie, 182
Driving Miss Daisy, 43*f*
dubbing. *See* voice dubbing
Dubliners (Joyce), 253
Dullea, Keir, 228*f*
Dumbo, 169
Dunaway, Faye, 191–196*f*, 408*f*, 447*f*
Duncan, Michael Clarke, 122
Dunne, Griffin, 56
Dunne, John Gregory, 465–466
Dunst, Kirsten, 112
Durante, Jimmy, 293*f*
Dutton, Charles S., 466
Duvall, Robert, 52, 66, 334, 344, 415, 496*f*, 532*f*
Duvall, Shelley, 239, 503
DVD Confidential: Hundreds of Easter Eggs Revealed! (Saltzman), 316
DVDs, 5
  aspect ratio and, 13–14
  supplementary materials on, 14–15
Dwan, Allan, 144
Dying Gaul, The, 266*f*
Dykstra, John, 159

Earthquake!, 159, 260
Easmus, 82
East of Eden, 340
easter eggs, 316
Eastman Color, 228
Eastwood, Clint, 329–332, 329*f*, 342*f*, 449, 468
  Blood Work, 67*f*
Easy Rider, 34, 34*f*, 56
Eat Drink Man Woman, 399
Ebert, Roger, 175, 277, 427, 537, 541, 544–545, 548
  on *Auto Focus*, 10
Eckhart, Aaron, 63*f*
Ed Wood, 346
Edison, Thomas, 399
editing
  action v. dramatic, 198
  art of, 219
  directing and, 373–374
  inside/out, **197**, 199–200*f*
  movement and, 143
  outside/in, **197**
Edlund, Richard, 166

EDtv, 215
Edward Scissorhands, 45*f*, 502
Edwards, Blake, 499*f*
Edwards, Cliff, 315
Effect of Gamma Rays on Man-in-the-Moon Marigolds, The, 321
Egoyan, Atom, 449*f*, 466
Ehle, Jennifer, 63*f*
8½, 392*f*, 404
8 Mile, 48–49
Eisenstein, Sergei, 213, 227
    Strike, 78–79
Ejiofor, Chiwetel, 326*f*
El Mariachi, 386
Elephant, 189
Elephant Man, The, 112, 359
Elfman, Danny, 314
Elizabethtown, 189
Ellis, Kate, 398
Emmerich, Roland, 483*f*
emotion
    mixed, 23*f*
    score and, 53
    slow motion and, 203
    treatment of, 86–87
emotional atmosphere, 103
emotional restraint, 51–53
Empire Strikes Back, The, 160, 161*f*, 500
endings, 56–57
English Patient, The, 342, 448
Enrico, Robert, 287–288
Epps, Omar, 360
Equus, 455, 456*f*
Eraserhead, 548
Erin Brockovich, 61, 61*f*, 340, 359
Eszterhas, Joe, 437
E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial, 45, 137*f*, 158, 164, 313, 347, 486*f*
Evans, Robert, 546
Everett, Rupert, 57, 452*f*
Everybody's All-American, 346
"Everybody's Talkin' at Me," 304
Everyone Says I Love You, 381
Excalibur, 155, 159
Executive Action, 461
Exorcist, The, 272
expectations, 10–11
exposition, **55**
expressionism, **236–238**, 237*f*
Eyes Wide Shut, 388*f*
Eyre, Chris, 539*f*
Eyre, Richard, 347, 349*f*

F for Fake, 545
"Fade-Out in the West" (Berg), 478
Fahrenheit 451, 315
Fairbanks, Douglas, 436
"Fall of the House of Usher, The" (Poe), 102
Fallon, Jimmy, 145*f*
Family Plot, 79–80, 110–111
Fanning, Dakota, 242*f*, 326*f*, 346
Fantasia, 169
Fantasia 2000, 169
Fantastic Voyage, 163
fantasy films, 484–487
fantasy worlds, 108–109
Far from Heaven, 228, 307
Fargo, 61, 61*f*, 346, 346*f*
Farmer Takes a Wife, The, 324
Farnsworth, Richard, 526*f*
Farrelly Brothers, 122, 489*f*
Farrow, Mia, 337
Fast and the Furious, The, 430, 550
Fast, Cheap & Out of Control, 545
Fast, Julian, 325
fast motion, **157**
Fast Runner, The (Atanarjuat), 538, 540*f*
Fat Girl, 526
Fatal Attraction, 57
Father of Frankenstein (Bram), 467–468
Faulkner, William, 67, 435–438, 437
Fawcett, Farrah, 460
Fellini, Frederico, 58, 386–387, 392*f*, 404
Fellowes, Julian, 88
femmes fatales, 482*f*
Fernandez, Wilhelmenia Wiggins, 313
Feuer, Jane, 488–489
Fever Pitch, 145*f*
fiction, prose, 433–449
Fiddler on the Roof, 179
Field of Dreams, 431*f*
Field, Sally, 305–306
Fields, W.C., 422–423
Fiennes, Joseph, 245*f*
Fiennes, Ralph, 177, 342, 343*f*
Fifth Element, The, 102
Fight Club, 33*f*
film analysis, 404–409
    acting showcases and, 409–410
    auteur approach and, 410–411
    challenges of, 5–6
    developing personal criteria, 422–423
    eclectic approach, 418–420
    as emotional or sensual experience, 412, 413*f*
    Freudian approach, 416–417
    as gender statement, 415–416
    genre approach, 412–414
    humanistic approach, 411–412
    Jungian approach, 417–418
    level of ambition, 405–407
    literary analysis and, 41
    as moral, philosophical, or social statement, 411–412
    objective evaluation, 407
    as political statement, 414–415
    psychoanalytical approach to, 416–418
    subjective evaluation, 408–409
    subjectivity of, 10–11
    as technical achievement, 409
    value of, 6–9
Film Comment, 471
Film Encyclopedia, The (Katz), 202
Film Genre 2000: New Critical Essays (Ed. Dixon), 472
film musicals, 488–489
    types, 490*f*
film noir, 233–234, 241, 480–481
    femmes fatales, 482*f*
film stock, 93
    rough-grain, **93**
    smooth-grain, **93**
films. *See also* genre films
    becoming a receptive viewer, 9–11
    cinematic, 125–126
    deepening responses to, 17–18
    evaluating, 404–409
    foreign-language, 9
    love of, 8
    music and, 291
    preparing to see, 15–17
    social problem, 538–546
    uniqueness of, 3–5
    viewing environment, 11–15
final cut, **352–353**
Final Cut, The, 188
Final Fantasy, 174*f*
Fincher, David, 33*f*
Finding Nemo, 166, 172, 173*f*
Fine, Russell Lee, 178
Firth, Peter, 456*f*
Fischer, Gunnar, 371
Fisk, Jack, 106
F.I.S.T., 244
Fitzcarraldo, 340, 545
Fitzgerald, F. Scott, 437
Flaherty, Robert, 542
flashbacks, **56, 275**
flashforwards, **56**
Flawless, 415
Fleischer, Max, 167
Fleming, Victor, 324
Fletcher, Louise, 58*f*
flip frame, **190**
Fly, The, 162, 551
focal planes, 145
focus
    deep, **145–147**, 147*f*, 176
    in films
        on character, 22–23, 24*f*
        on ideas, 24–31
        on mood, 20–22
        on plot, 20, 21*f*
        on style, texture, and/or structure, 23, 25*f*
        theme and, 20–31
    rack, **145**, 145*f*
    sharpness of, 135, 135*f*
    soft, 153–155, **155**, **266**
Fog of War, The, 545
"Foggy Mountain Breakdown," 302
foils, **64**, 65*f*, **345**
foley artist, **257**
Fonda, Henry, 69, 157, 217–218*f*, 324, 333, 364

Fonda, Jane, 203, 354
Fonda, Peter, 202
forced perspective, **99**
Ford, Harrison, 47*f*, 106, 107*f*, 503
Ford, John, 91, 118, 127, 128, 215, 217–218*f*, 268–269, 333, 432, 538
foreign language films
  silence and, 513–516
  sound and, 281–286
Foreman, George, 544
foreshadowing, musical score and, 297–298
Forman, Milos, 383*f*
Forrest Gump, 121, 164–165, 166*f*, 179, 278, 280*f*, 289, 296, 347, 360, 378, 415
Forster, Mark, 314
40-Year-Old Virgin, The, 22*f*
42 Up, 541
Fosse, Bob, 100*f*, 202, 267–268, 350, 489, 490*f*, 505
Foster, Jodie, 334
Four Past Midnight (King), 466
Fox, Michael J., 498*f*
Fox, The, 231–232
Foxes, 307
Foxx, Jamie, 398
framing
  foreground, 136, 137*f*, 147, 148*f*
  menacing, 137*f*
Frankenstein, 83*f*, 483, 493, 496, 503
Frankenstein Meets the Wolf Man, 496
Frankenweenie, 502–503
Frankie and Johnny, 457
"Frasier," 66
Freed, Arthur, 315
Freeman, Morgan, 279
freeze frame, **211, 211–212, 451**
  ending, 214*f*
Freleng, Fritz, 167
French Connection II, The, 495
French Connection, The, 134*f*, 495
French New Wave, 188
Freud, Sigmund, 80
Frida, 24*f*
Friedkin, William, 272
Friends with Money, 338*f*
Frolick, Billy, 386
From Here to Eternity, 355*f*, 494
Front Page, The, 352
Fugit, Patrick, 32*f*
Fugitive Kind, The, 380*f*
Fulton, Keith, 505
Furlong, Edward, 499*f*
Furst, Anton, 97, 240–241
Future General Company, 159
F/X. *See* special effects

Gabin, Jean, 514*f*
Gable, Clark, 397
Galasso, Michael, 314
Gale, Bob, 504
Gallo, Vincent, 189
Gance, Abel, 142, 226, 331
Gandhi, 138*f*
Gangs of New York, 216, 406*f*
gangster films, 478–480
  heroes, 479*f*
Ganz, Bruno, 100*f*
Garbo, Greta, 361
Garbo: The Signature Collection, 361
Garcia, Rodrigo, 189, 426
Gardner, Ava, 295–296
Gardner, Tony, 122
Garfield, Allen, 436
Garland, Judy, 235*f*, 346
Garner, James, 342*f*
Garr, Teri, 497*f*
Gates of Heaven, 543, 544
Geffen, David, 175
General, The, 254
Genre and Hollywood (Neale), 472
genre films, **412, 471**. *See also specific genres*
  conventions, 473–489
  strength of, 473
  values and, 472–473
George Stevens: A Filmmaker's Journey, 400
Gere, Richard, 359
Gertie the Dinosaur, 167
Getaway, The (1972), 492
Getaway, The (1994), 492
Gettysburg, 496*f*
Ghost Dog, 358
Ghosts of Mars, 314
Giamatti, Paul, 122
Giannini, Giancarlo, 137*f*, 514, 514*f*
Giant, 400
Gibson, Henry, 301*f*, 379*f*
Gibson, Mel, 250, 285, 349–350, 534*f*
Gill, David, 400
Gilliam, Terry, 426, 505
"Gilligan's Island," 105
Ginsburg v. New York, 524–525
Girl with a Pearl Earring, 245*f*
Gish, Lillian, 330
Gladiator, 21*f*, 260, 314
Glass, Philip, 157, 300–301, 316, 544
Gleiberman, Owen, 427
Glory, 462*f*
Glover, Savion, 550
Godard, Jean-Luc, 188
Godfather, The, 69, 87, 202, 204–209*f*, 314, 360, 495
Godfather Part II, The, 495
Godfather, The (series), 503
Gods and Generals, 496*f*
Gods and Monsters, 467–468
Gold Rush, The, 330
Golden, Arthur, 313–314
Golden Bowl, The (James), 433
golden hour, 241*f*
"Golden Years," 308*f*
Goldman, William, 370, 440–441
Goldsman, Akiva, 88
Goldsmith, Jerry, 299–300
Goldwyn, Samuel, 523
Gone with the Wind, 159, 228, 252, 345, 441, 535
Good Girl, The, 287
Good Morning, Vietnam, 82
Good Night and Good Luck, 248, 296, 297*f*
Good Thief, The, 494*f*
Good Will Hunting, 53–54
GoodFellas, 106–107, 216
Goodman, John, 306, 315, 346
Goorwitz, Allen, 436
Gordon, Keith, 548
Goris, Marleen, 384*f*
Gosford Park, 88, 259, 381
Graduate, The, 88, 155, 274–275, 304, 334, 342, 352, 359
Graham, Martha, 322
Grand Day Out, A, 171
Grand Illusion, 482, 514, 514*f*
Grant, Cary, 489*f*
Grant, Hugh, 278*f*
Grant, Lee, 384*f*
Grant, Richard, 398
Grapes of Wrath, The, 34–35, 37, 69, 87, 118, 120, 149, 157, 176–177, 215–216, 217–218*f*, 268–269, 357, 513, 538
Grease, 316
Great Balls of Fire, 457
Great Santini, The, 66
Great Train Robbery, The, 188, 227, 399
Greed, 228
Greenaway, Peter, 238, 399
Greenburg, Jerry, 548
Greene, Graham, 476*f*
"Greensleeves," 312
Greer, Jane, 482*f*
Gremlins, 166, 527, 528*f*
Greta Garbo: The Signature Collection, 548
Grey Gardens, 542–543
Grierson, John, 542
Griffith, Andy, 64
Griffith, D.W., 158–159, 188, 364, 436, 457–459
  Intolerance, 49, 227
Gropman, David, 121
Grossman, Lev, 485–487
Guffey, Burnet, 155
Gunga Din, 400
Guy Named Joe, A, 493
Gyllenhaal, Jake, 30*f*, 147*f*

Haas, Lukas, 47*f*
Hackman, Gene, 266, 273, 274*f*, 280*f*, 340, 344, 345, 477*f*
Haggis, Paul, 385, 551
Hair, 489
Hall, Conrad, 179, 244
Halloween, 483
Hallstrom, Lasse, 399, 413*f*
Hamilton, Lisa Gay, 426
Hamilton, Murray, 496–498
Hamlet (1948), 249, 455
Hamlet (1990), 249–250

Hamlet (1996), 454, 454*f*
Hancock, John Lee, 468
Hanks, Tom, 59, 69*f*, 96*f*, 166*f*, 183, 280*f*, 361, 369*f*, 462*f*, 480, 480*f*
Hannah and Her Sisters, 381
Hannibal, 219
Hanson, Curtis, 481
Happiness, 535, 536*f*, 548
Happy Endings, 336
Hard Candy, 417*f*
Hard Day's Night, A, 315
Hardcore, 99, 149, 151*f*
Hare, David, 461
Harlan County, U.S.A., 541, 545
Harlow, Jean, 336
harmony
    analogous, **232**
    complementary, **232**
    monochromatic, **232**
    triad, **232**
Harold and Maude, 64–65
Harold Lloyd Comedy Collection, The, 548
Harper, Jessica, 490*f*
Harring, Laura Elena, 232*f*
Harris, Ed, 30*f*, 345*f*, 398
Harron, Mary, 384*f*
Harry Potter (series), 495
Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets, 160*f*
Harry Potter and the Prisoner of Azkaban, 548
Harryhausen, Ray, 171
Hawking, Stephen, 545
Hawks, Howard, 118, 219–220, 489*f*
Hayden, Sterling, 345
Haynes, Todd, 307
Hays Office, 490, 518
Hays, Will B., 518
HDTV, 13
Head, Edith, 110–112, 122
Hearst, William Randolph, 460
Heartbreak Kid, The, 384*f*
Heartbreakers, 280*f*
Hearts of Darkness: A Filmmaker's Apocalypse, 545
Heaven Can Wait (1978), 492
Heckerling, Amy, 384*f*
Hedwig and the Angry Inch, 550–551
Heffner, Richard D., 530
Heflin, Van, 74*f*, 271
Helgeland, Brian, 314
Hemingway, Ernest, 433, 438, 465–466
Henry & June, 526
Henry, O., 82
Henry V (1945), 249
Henry V (1989), 454
Hepburn, Audrey, 315, 457
Hepburn, Katharine, 75, 103*f*, 336, 339*f*, 452, 489*f*
Here Comes Mr. Jordan (1941), 492
heroes
    gangster, 479*f*
    western, 476*f*
Herrmann, Bernard, 300, 302–303, 315
Hershey, Barbara, 398, 427
Herzog, Werner, 340, 545
Heston, Charlton, 110, 481
Hickenlooper, George, 545
Hidalgo, 21*f*
High Fidelity, 440, 441*k*
High Noon, 71*f*, 105, 304, 474
High Society, 493
Hill, George Roy, 110–111
Hill, Walter, 269
"Hills Like White Elephants" (Hemingway), 465
Hiroshima, Mon Amour, 71*f*, 524
Hirsch, Foster, 480–481
History of Violence, A, 430, 551
Hitchcock, Alfred, 40, 79–80, 121, 128–129, 131, 186, 198–201, 319, 368*f*, 386–387, 394–395*f*, 418–419, 484*f*, 492, 504
    Family Plot, 110–111
    Psycho, 314–315
Hitch-Hiker, The, 384*f*
Hoberman, J., 427
Hoechlin, Tyler, 480*f*
Hoffa, 112, 461
Hoffa, Jimmy, 461
Hoffman, Dustin, 88, 155, 319–320, 334, 342, 352–353, 359, 447*f*
Holden, Laurie, 350*f*
Holden, William, 340, 436
Holland, Agnieszka, 104, 384*f*
Hollow Man, 180
Hollywood: The Pioneers (Brownlow), 490
Holofcener, Nicole, 384*f*
Homer, 56, 81
Honess, Peter, 550
Hoop Dreams, 542
Hope, Bob, 499
Hopkins, Anthony, 359
Hopper, Edward, 122, 244
Hopscotch, 305
Hornby, Nick, 440
horror films, 484
Hoskins, Bob, 167
Hospital, 105
Hoult, Nicholas, 278*f*
Hours, The, 30*f*, 112, 113*f*, 301, 347–349, 461–463
House of Flying Daggers, 136*f*
House of Mirth, The, 231*f*
Howard, James Newton, 288, 308–309, 316, 504
Howard, Ron, 122, 347
Howard, Sidney, 437
Howards End, 353
Howe, James Wong, 114, 115
Howling, The, 162, 162*f*
Howl's Moving Castle, 167, 170*f*
Huckleberry Finn (Twain), 439
Hud, 64, 69, 115, 250
Hudson Hawk, 110
hue, **223**
Huff, 531
Huffman, Felicity, 327*f*
Hughes, Howard, 517*f*
Hulk, The, 361
human dignity, struggle for, 27–30
human nature, 42–44
    truth of, 26–27
human relationships, complexity of, 30
Hummer, Jody, 349–350
Hunter, Holly, 426
Hunter, Jeffrey, 534*f*
Hurlyburly, 467
Hurt, John, 112, 359
Hurt, William, 414*f*, 551
Husbands and Wives, 381
Hussey, Olivia, 454*f*
Huston, Angelica, 67*f*
Huston, John, 243, 246, 429, 437, 442
Hutsching, Joe, 188
Hutton, Timothy, 466
Huxley, Aldous, 4
Hynek, Joel, 254

I ♥ Huckabees, 342
I Am Sam, 326*f*, 415
Ice Harvest, The, 22, 482*f*
Ice Storm, The, 419*f*
ideas, focus on, 24–31
IFCRant, 14–15
"I'll Fly Away," 306
ILM. *See* Industrial Light and Magic
image, projected, 95*f*
Imagining Reality: The Faber Book of the Documentary (MacDonald and Cousin), 545
impersonators, **332**
Importance of Being Earnest, The, 452*f*
In Cold Blood, 494
in medias res, **55–56**
In the Bedroom, 30*f*, 341
In the Company of Men, 531
In the Line of Fire, 332
In the Mood for Love, 47, 49*f*, 314
Inarritu, Alejandro Gonzalez, 360
Incredible Adventures of Wallace and Gromit, 182
Incredibles, The, 166, 172
Independence Day, 159
Independent Film Channel (IFC), 398
Indiana Jones and the Last Crusade, 499, 500*f*
Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom, 499, 527, 528*f*
Industrial Light and Magic, 159, 179, 180
Informer, The, 432
Inge, William, 437
inner story, musical score and, 295
innocence, loss of, 31
Insdorf, Annette, 551
Inside Man, 326*f*
Insider, The, 29*f*
Insomnia, 103, 178, 228*f*, 338, 494
intercutting, 202
interior monologue
    literary, 435–438
    music as, 304

Interiors, 186, 381–382
international films. *See* foreign language films
Internet Movie Database (www.imdb.com), 16–17, 437
interpreters, **332–333**
Interstate v. Dallas, 525
Interview with the Vampire, 112
Intimacy, 526
Intolerance, 49, 158–159, 188, 227, 422, 436
Invasion of the Body Snatchers (1956), 493
Invasion of the Body Snatchers (1978), 493
Invitation to the Theatre, An (Kernodle), 319
Iris, 347, 349*f*
Irons, Jeremy, 536*f*
irony, **80,** 80–84, 87, **370**
  of character, 82
  color and, 244, 245*f*
  cosmic, 83–84
  dramatic, 80–81
  of setting, 82, 83*f*
  of situation, 81–82
  sound and, 269
  of tone, 82–83
Irving, Amy, 359
Irving, John, 432, 432*f*, 437
Israel, Robert, 548
It Happened One Night, 397, 488
It's a Wonderful Life, 397
Ivan the Terrible, 422
Ivory, James, 399, 461
  Remains of the Day, 60*f*

Jackie Brown, 415
Jackson, Peter, 181, 316, 485, 498*f*
  King Kong, 258
Jacobi, Derek, 454*f*
Jacobs, Lewis, 223
Jacobs, Rusty, 347
Jagger, Mick, 340
James and the Giant Peach, 171
James, Henry, 397, 432–433
James, Steve, 542
Jarhead, 375
Jarmusch, Jim, 358
Jaws, 272, 334, 357, 498, 504
Jaws 2, 498
Jazz Singer, The (1927), 489
Jefferson in Paris, 461
Jerry Maguire, 347
Jeunet, Jean-Pierre, 79*f*, 399
JFK, 188, 385, 461
Jhabvala, Ruth Prawer, 437
Johannson, Scarlett, 245*f*
John Carpenter's The Thing, 162–163, 164, 181, 492
Johnson, Ben, 345
Johnson, Mike, 172
Jones, Chuck, 167, 181
Jones, James Earl, 431*f*
Jones, Pet, 428
Jones, Quincy, 290, 292
Jones, Robert Edmond, 222, 251
Jones, Tommy Lee, 342*f*
Jonze, Spike, 33*f*, 361, 437
Jordan, Neil, 294–295
Joyce, James, 253, 442, 482
Joyeux Noël, 526
Joyride, 504
Ju Dou, 228
July, Miranda, 384*f*
June Bug, 55*f*
Jung, Carl, 417–418
Junger, Sebastian, 458*f*
Jurassic Park, 14, 163
Jurassic Park III, 180

Kael, Pauline, 386
Kafka, 272–273
Kahn, Louis I., 543
Kahn, Michael, 189, 313
Kahn, Nathaniel, 543
Kalfus, Renee Ehrlich, 121
Kalmus, Herbert, 228
Kane, Carol, 268
Kane, Jon, 316
Kasdan, Lawrence, 414*f*, 437, 481
Katz, Ephraim, 202
Katzenberg, Jeffrey, 175
Kaufman, Charlie, 437
Kavner, Julie, 66
Kazan, Elia, 201, 267, 322, 351–352, 351*f*, 397, 450, 522–523
Keaton, Buster, 330, 422–423
Keaton, Diane, 12*f*, 145*f*, 336–337, 384*f*
Keaton, Michael, 158, 499
Keener, Catherine, 338*f*
"Keep on the Sunny Side," 306
Kelly, Gene, 167, 490*f*
Kelly, Nancy, 458*f*
Kempster, Victor, 550
Kernodle, George, 319
Kerr, Deborah, 336
Kid Stays in the Picture, The, 546
Kidman, Nicole, 98*f*, 112, 113*f*, 398, 463
Kids, 537
Kilbride, Percy, 499
Kill Bill, Vol. 1, 365*f*, 474
Kill Bill, Vol. 2, 66, 474
"Killers, The" (Hemingway), 438
Kilmer, Val, 499
King and I, The, 493
King, Henry, 227
King Kong (1933), 111*f*, 159, 160, 161*f*, 171, 180, 492
King Kong (1976), 492
King Kong (2005), 45, 181, 258, 308–309, 316, 492
King of Kings, 534*f*
King, Stephen, 466
Kingdom of Heaven, 180–181
Kingsley, Ben, 138*f*, 344
Kinsella, W.P., 431*f*
Kinski, Klaus, 340
Kiss Kiss Bang Bang, 437
Kiss, The, 399
Kissing Jessica Stein, 550
Kleiser, Randal, 316
Kline, Kevin, 419*f*
Knightley, Keira, 108*f*, 497*f*
Knight's Tale, A, 308*f*, 314
Knoll, John, 181
Knotts, Don, 64
Koepp, David, 466
Kopple, Barbara, 541, 545–546
Kovacs, Laszlo, 244
Koyaanisqatsi, 157, 316, 541
Kramer vs. Kramer, 117
Kroll, Jack, 325
Kubrick, Stanley, 9, 293, 359, 381, 386–387, 388–389*f*, 535
  Clockwork Orange, A, 157
  Dr. Strangelove, 250
Kuleshov, Lev, 328
Kundun, 369
Kunuk, Zacharias, 540*f*
Kuras, Ellen, 550
Kurosawa, Akira, 253, 256
Kurys, Diane, 384*f*

La Cage aux Folles, 494*f*
L.A. Confidential, 94*f*, 481
La Dolce Vita, 392*f*, 524, 524*f*
La Femme Infidele, 495
La Jetée, 213, 425–426
La Strada, 393*f*
LaBute, Neil, 63*f*, 531
Ladd, Alan, 74*f*, 271, 336, 337*f*
Lady and the Tramp, 169
Lady from Shanghai, The, 150
Lady in the Lake, 129
Lagaan, 241*f*
Lamarr, Hedy, 336
Landau, Martin, 346, 350*f*
Landmarks of Early Film, 399
Lane, Anthony, 189, 402, 427, 483
Lane, Diane, 359
Lang, Fritz, 159
Lange, Dorothea, 118
Lange, Jessica, 325*f*
Lansbury, Angela, 504–505
Lantz, Walter, 167
Lasseter, John, 172, 315
Last Days, 189
Last Days of Disco, The, 296
Last Emperor, The, 230*f*
Last of the Mohicans, The, 47, 48*f*
Last Picture Show, The, 43*f*, 92, 102, 296, 345, 445*f*
Last Picture Show, The (McMurtry), 444–445
Last Tango in Paris, 530, 535
Last Temptation of Christ, The, 533, 534*f*
Last Year at Marienbad, 56
Lathan, Sanaa, 360
Laughton, Charles, 150*f*
Lawrence, D.H., 231–232

Lawrence of Arabia, 103, 359, 385
Le Carré, John, 467
Leacock, Stephen, 541
Lean, David, 103, 385, 529
Leaving Las Vegas, 538
Leconte, Patrice, 399
Ledger, Heath, 30*f*, 308*f*
Lee, Ang, 5*f*, 359, 361, 381, 383*f*, 399, 419*f*, 504
Lee, Joanna, 314
Lee, Spike, 157–158, 263–264, 372*f*, 399, 415, 503, 550
Legends of the Fall, 103
Legion of Decency, 538
Lehman, Ernest, 54–55, 79–80, 88, 432, 451
Leigh, Janet, 153, 481
Leigh, Mike, 376*f*
leitmotifs, **66**, 67*f*, **299**
  color and, 239–240
Lelouche, Claude, 240
Lemmon, Jack, 66, 197
lens
  fish-eye, **155**, 156*f*
  telephoto, **155**, 156*f*
  wide-angle, **155**, 156*f*
Leonardi, Mario, 347
Leone, Sergio, 329–332, 385
Leung, Tony, 49*f*
Levinson, Barry, 158, 244
Lewis, Jerry, 515
Lewis, Jerry Lee, 457
Lewis, Juliette, 177
L.I.E., 536, 537*f*
Lievsay, Skip, 263–264
Life Is Beautiful, 276*f*
Life of an American Fireman, The, 188
lighting, 114–118
  color and, 136
  for depth, 149*f*
  direction of, 116*f*
  effects, 149
  high-key, **114**, 115*f*
  low-key, **114**, 115*f*
  natural, 118*f*
Lightman, Herbert A., 124
Limey, The, 347, 398–399
Lindley, John, 254
Linklater, Richard, 183
Lion in Winter; The, 451
Lion King, The, 169
literary analysis, 41
Little Big Man, 302, 447, 447*f*
Little Caesar; 474
Little Mermaid, The, 169
Little Night Music, A, 494
Little Princess, The, 548
Little Women, 112
Litto, George, 548
live screen, **143**
living spaces, 107–108
Lloyd, Christopher, 498*f*
Lloyd, Harold, 330, 548
location shooting, 105–106
Lockwood, Gary, 228*f*
Lolita, 524, 535, 536*f*
"Lone Ranger, The," 293
Lone Wolf McQuade, 530
Long Day's Journey into Night, A, 140, 452
Long, Huey, 53
Long, Peter, 398
Long Riders, The, 269, 270*f*, 287
look of outward regard, **129**
Looking for Richard, 545
Looney Tunes, 163–164
Lord of the Flies, 27*f*, 71, 105, 152
Lord of the Rings, The (trilogy), 45, 485–487, 487*f*, 495, 498*f*
Lord of the Rings, The: The Fellowship of the Ring, 179, 467, 504
Lord of the Rings, The: The Return of the King, 9, 10*f*, 162*f*, 430
Lord of the Rings, The: The Two Towers, 162*f*, 296, 361
Lord of War; 216–219, 447
Loren, Sophia, 336, 337*f*
Lorre, Peter, 263*f*, 345
Lost Horizon (1937), 493
Lost Horizon (1973), 493
Lost in La Mancha, 505
Lost Weekend, The, 538
Lost World, The: Jurassic Park, 163
Lottman, Evan, 186
Love and Basketball, 360
Love Story, 86
Love! Valour! Compassion!, 56
Lovers, The, 524
Love's Labour's Lost, 454
Lovesick, 336
Loy, Myrna, 499
Lubitsch, Ernst, 422–423
Lucas, George, 159, 179, 181, 189, 253, 360, 361, 500, 503
Lugosi, Bela, 493*f*
Luhrmann, Baz, 98*f*, 219, 454, 489
Lumenick, Lou, 538
Lumet, Sidney, 118, 310, 335, 354–356, 363, 364, 380, 380*f*, 452, 455
  Long Day's Journey into Night, A, 140
Lumiere & Company: Forty Intriguing Films fro the World's Leading Directors, 399
Lumière Brothers, 399
Lupino, Ida, 384*f*
Lynch, David, 373, 399, 526*f*, 548
  Blue Velvet, 233, 234*f*
  Mulholland Drive, 232*f*
Lyne, Adrian, 359, 535, 536*f*
Lynn, Vera, 83, 298
Lyons, Charles, 533

M, 263*f*
Ma, Yo-Yo, 314, 316
MacDonald, Dwight, 422–423
MacDonald, Kevin, 545
MacLachlan, Angus, 55*f*
MacLachlan, Kyle, 234*f*
MacLaine, Shirley, 325*f*
Maclean, Alison, 384*f*
MacMurray, Fred, 334*f*
Macy, William H., 379*f*
Made, 219
Madonna, 514–515
Magnificent Seven, The, 494
Magnolia, 379*f*
Maguire, Tobey, 488*f*
Mahoney, John, 66
Main Event, The, 249
Main, Marjorie, 499
Majestic, The, 350*f*
makeup design, 110–114
Making Movies (Lumet), 364, 380*f*
Malcolm X, 157–158
Malden, Karl, 267
Malick, Terrence, 106, 189, 279*f*, 482
Malkovich, John, 398
Malle, Louis, 541
Maltese Falcon, The, 344–345
Maltin, Leonard, 461
Mamoulian, Rouben, 228
Man and a Woman, A, 20, 154, 240
Man for All Seasons, A, 99
"Man of Constant Sorrow, A," 306*f*
Man Who Wasn't There, The, 178, 248
Man with the Golden Arm, The, 538
Mancini, Henry, 385
Mangini, Mark, 272–273
Manhattan, 59, 120, 145*f*, 186, 250, 310, 381–382
Manhattan Murder Mystery, 381
Mankiewicz, Joseph L., 110–111
Mann, Michael, 398
Mantovani, 312
Manville, Lesley, 376*f*
Manz, Linda, 278, 279*f*
March of the Penguins, 17*f*, 279
Marienbad, 422
Marker, Chris, 213, 425–426, 505
Marks, Richard, 198
Marlene, 545
Mars Attacks!, 502
Marshall, Frank, 288
Marshall, Penny, 384*f*
Marshall, Rob, 314, 489
Martin, Catherine, 98*f*, 219
Martin, George, 315
Martin, Steve, 164, 165*f*, 338, 490*f*
Martin, Strother, 345
Marvin's Room, 415
Marx Brothers, 422–423
Marx, Karl, 414
Mary Poppins, 457
Mary Shelley's Frankenstein, 493
*M*A*S*H*, 381, 471
"M*A*S*H" (series), 65–66
Maslin, Janet, 427
Mason, James, 400

Masterson, Mary Stuart, 178
Mastroianni, Marcello, 284
Match Point, 212, 375, 381
Matchstick Men, 398
Matilda, the Boxing Kangaroo, 249
Matrix (series), 163, 188, 498*f*
Matrix Reloaded, The, 164
Matrix, The, 45*f*, 179
Matthau, Walter, 66, 305
May, Elaine, 384*f*
Mayles, Arthur, 541
Maysles, Albert, 542–543
Maysles, David, 542–543
Mazursky, Paul, 352
McCabe & Mrs. Miller, 102, 154, 272, 381, 406*f*
McCay, Winsor, 167
McCormack, Patty, 458*f*
McDormand, Frances, 61, 61*f*, 338*f*
McDowell, Malcolm, 157
McDowell, Roddy, 112
McElhone, Natascha, 486*f*
McGovern, Elizabeth, 336, 347
McGregor, Ewan, 539*f*
McInerney, Jay, 434
McMurtry, Larry, 444–445
McQueen, Butterfly, 345
McQueen, Steve, 340
Me La Debes, 548
Medavoy, Mike, 354
Meet Me in St. Louis, 489
Meet the Fockers, 342, 498
Meet the Parents, 498
Meirelles, Fernando, 467
Melato, Mariangelo, 514, 514*f*
Méliès, Georges, 158, 399
Melinda and Melinda, 381
Melville, Herman, 65*f*
Memento, 9, 25*f*, 398, 467
Memoirs of a Geisha, 230*f*, 299*f*, 313–314
Memphis Belle, 163
Men in Black, 45*f*, 179, 219
Men in Black II, 121, 289
Men Without Women (Hemingway), 465
Mendes, Sam, 179, 375, 480, 480*f*
Menke, Sally, 188
Merchant, Ishmael, 461
Merhige, E. Elias, 68*f*, 359
metaphors, 78–79
    extrinsic, **79**
    intrinsic, **79**
    visual, **78,** 79*f*
Metropolis (1927), 97, 159
Metropolis (2002), 182
Mexican, The, 355*f*
Meyers, Nancy, 384*f*
MGM, 529
Miami Vice, 430
Micky Mousing, **294**
microcosm, **105**
Midnight Cowboy, 30, 37, 244, 304, 319–320, 342, 377, 529
Midnight Express, 307, 340
Midnight in the Garden of Good and Evil, 449, 468
Midsummer Night's Dream, A (stage), 323*f*
Midway, 260
Mighty Aphrodite, 381
Mighty Joe Young, 171
Miller, George, 172, 247*f*
Miller, Henry, 440
Miller's Crossing, 479
Millions, 44*f*
Miner, Rachel, 537
miniatures, 159*f*
Minnelli, Liza, 490*f*
Minority Report, 179, 466
Misery, 457
Mishima, 158
Mission: Impossible II, 180, 359–360
Mississippi Burning, 459–460
Mitchell, Elvis, 398
Mitchell, John Cameron, 550–551
Mitchell, Thomas, 345
Mitchum, Robert, 150*f*, 152, 482*f*
Miyazaki, Hayao, 167, 182
Moana, 542
"Modest Proposal, A" (Swift), 82
Molina, Alfred, 358, 488*f*
Monroe, Marilyn, 298
Monsoon Wedding, 515
Monster, 288, 338
Monster's Ball, 314, 343*f*
Monsters, Inc., 172, 315
montage, **213–215**
    ironic, 204–209*f*
Montgomery, Robert, 129
mood
    color and, 240
    focus on, 20–22
Moon Is Blue, The, 523
Moore, Chris, 427
Moore, Dudley, 336
Moore, Julianne, 347–349, 379*f*, 463
Moore, Mary Tyler, 336, 338
Moore, Michael, 541, 545
moral implications, 26
moral or philosophical riddles, 31, 33*f*
More than Night: Film Noir in Its Contexts (Naremore), 481
Morgan, David, 310
Moriarty, Michael, 211
Morris, Errol, 543, 544
Morrison, Phil, 55*f*
Morrison, Toni, 435
Mosjukhin, 328
motifs, **33**
Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA), 15
    rating system, 15, 457, 525–531
        beyond, 533–535
        changes in, 535–538
Motion Picture Producer and Distributors of America, Inc., 518
Motion Picture Production Code, 472–473, 518–523
    excerpts, 519–522
Moulin Rouge (1952), 243
Moulin Rouge! (2001), 97, 98*f*, 219, 252, 489
movement, 135
    apparent, 144–145
    of camera, 143–144
    editing and, 143
    fixed-frame, **138–139**
    of subject, 143
Movie & Video Guide (Maltin), 461
movie journals, 17–18
MovieMaker, 536
MovieMask, 537
Mr. Deeds Goes to Town, 259
Mr. Smith Goes to Washington, 44*f*, 59, 155, 215–216, 259, 345
Mrs. Dalloway, 202
Mrs. Henderson Presents, 10
Much Ado About Nothing, 454
Mulan, 169
Mulholland Drive, 232*f*, 399, 548
Mullally, Megan, 66
Muller, Eddie, 481
Muller, Ray, 541
Muller, Robbie, 179
Mulroney, Dermot, 57
Multiplicity, 158
Mummy, The, 180
Muni, Paul, 479*f*
Munich, 16*f*, 281, 369*f*
Murch, Walter, 385
Murder on the Orient Express, 144*f*, 364
Murnau, F.W., 99, 331, 493*f*, 548
Murphy, Eddie, 122
Murray, Bill, 325*f*, 358
music
    action and, 304–306
    characterization through, 298–301
    film and, 291
    as interior monologue, 304
    tone and, 303–304
    transitions and, 302–303
    traveling, **302**
musical emphasis, 76
musical imagery, 198–201
musical score
    balancing, 309–310
    to cover weaknesses, 307
    dialogue and, 294–295
    directing and, 374–375
    foreshadowing and, 297–298
    functions of, 292–294
    generalized, **294**
    implicit, 294
    importance of, 291–292
    inner story and, 295
    Mickey Mouse, **294**
    musical sounds as, 304
    special functions of, 294–307

musical score *(continued)*
  synthesizer, 307–309
  tension-building, 297–298
musicals. *See* film musicals
My Architect, 287, 543
My Best Friend, 340
My Best Friend's Wedding, 57, 488
My Big Fat Greek Wedding, 73, 119
My Fair Lady, 315, 457, 493
Myers, Mike, 70*f*

Nabokov, Vladimir, 536*f*
Nair, Mira, 228, 384*f*, 515
Naked Gun, 475*f*
name typing, **66**, 68*f*
Nanook of the North, 542
Napoleon, 142, 227, 331
Naqoyqatsi, 157, 316
Naremore, James, 481
narration. *See* voice-over narration
Nasar, Silvia, 459
Nash, John, 122, 459
Nashville, 272, 301, 301*f*, 381, 489, 505
Natural Born Killers, 535
Natural, The, 244, 310
Navigator; The: A Medieval Odyssey, 233
Neal, Patricia, 115
Neale, Steve, 472
Near Dark, 246
Negri, Pola, 490
Nelson, Tim Blake, 178, 306*f*
Nelson, Willie, 312
neorealism, Italian, 46
New World, The, 20, 189, 279*f*
New York Post, 538
New York Stories, 216, 382*f*
New York Times, The, 398, 418–419, 462, 485
New Yorker; The, 189, 386, 483
Newell, Mike, 479
Newman, Paul, 64, 69, 115, 210*f*, 214*f*, 340, 344, 364, 480, 480*f*
Newman, Randy, 310, 315
Newman, Thomas, 375
Newsweek, 261–262
Newton-John, Olivia, 316
Niccol, Andrew, 216–219
Nichols, Mike, 164, 250, 274, 352, 381, 432, 494*f*
Nichols, Peter M., 15
Nicholson, Jack, 58*f*, 112, 153*f*, 164, 239–241, 240*f*, 325*f*, 340, 461, 463
Nielsen, Connie, 482*f*
'Night, Mother, 457
Night of the Hunter; The, 150*f*, 152
Night on Earth, 358
Nightmare Before Christmas, The, 171, 503
Nine Lives, 189, 425
Ninotchka, 361
Nixon, 461
Nixon, Marnie, 315
Noiret, Philippe, 284
Nolan, Christopher, 9, 178, 398, 467
Nolan, Jonathan, 467
Nolte, Nick, 216, 494*f*
Norris, Chuck, 530
North by Northwest, 79–80, 394*f*
North Country, 142
Northam, Jeremy, 63*f*
Northfork, 102
Notebook, The, 22*f*
Nothing Sacred, 488
Novels into Films (Bluestone), 439
Nutty Professor; The, 158
Nutty Professor II: The Klumps, 122, 158
Nykvist, Sven, 372*f*

O, 178
O Brother; Where Art Thou?, 253–254, 306, 306*f*
Oates, Warren, 340
Object of My Affection, The, 415
objective camera, **371**
objectivity, 6
objects
  significant, 134–138
  size and closeness of, 135, 135*f*
O'Brien, Willis, 159, 171
Occurence at Owl Creek Bridge, An, 287–288
"Occurence at Owl Creek Bridge, An" (Bierce), 287
October, 422
Odd Couple, The, 66
Odyssey, 81
Oedipus Rex, 80–82
Of Human Bondage, 298
Of Mice and Men, 494
Off the Map, 22*f*
offices, 107–108
Oklahoma!, 489
Old Man and the Sea, The, 275–276
Oldman, William, 493*f*
Olin, Lena, 413*f*
Oliver!, 493
Oliver, Barret, 503
Oliver Twist, 493
Olivier, Laurence, 165–166, 249, 455
Olmos, Edward James, 321
Olympia, 422, 540
Olympic Chamber Orchestra, 548
On Approval, 422
On Movies (Macdonald), 422–423
On the Beach, 295–296
"On the Road Again," 312
On the Waterfront, 29, 34, 66, 257, 263, 267, 267*f*, 287, 340, 351–352, 351*f*, 397, 522–523
Once Upon a Time in America, 347, 385
Once Upon a Time in Mexico, 181
One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest, 58*f*, 346, 543
O'Neill, Eugene, 452
Open Your Eyes, 494*f*, 495
Opposite of Sex, The, 277, 278*f*, 287, 415
opticals, **190**
"Orange Blossom Special, The," 312
Ordinary People, 158, 338, 340
Orlando (Woolf), 435
Orpheus, 422
Osborne, John, 437
Osment, Haley Joel, 346, 348*f*, 360
Othello, 178
Others, The, 95*f*, 399
O'Toole, Peter, 152, 359, 427, 436
Out of Africa, 103
Out of Sight, 377
Out of the Past, 481, 482*f*
Outlaw, The, 517*f*
Owens, Eamonn, 348*f*
Oz, 531

Pachelbel's Canon, 306
pacing, 373
Pacino, Al, 29*f*, 69, 204–209*f*, 228*f*, 298, 364, 479*f*, 532*f*
Page, Ellen, 417*f*
Paint Your Wagon, 529
painterly effects, 242–244
Pakula, Alan J., 309–310
Pal, George, 171
Palance, Jack, 64, 328–329, 535
Palindrome, 535
Paltrow, Gwyneth, 63*f*, 122, 245*f*, 337*f*
Panavision, **93**, 94*f*, 95*f*
panning, **93**, **139–140**
panning and scanning, **12**
"Paradox of Protest, The" (Lyons), 533
Paramount Studios, 530
Parenthood, 338
Park, Nick, 171, 171*f*, 182
Parker, Alan, 340, 381–382
Parker, Bonnie, 408*f*
Parker, Oliver, 452*f*
Parker, Trey, 530*f*
Parsons, Estelle, 271, 271*f*, 345
Passion of the Christ, The, 285, 534*f*
Patriot, The, 482, 483*f*
Patton, 87, 215–216, 299–300, 471
Paull, Laurence G., 108–109, 109*f*
Pawnbroker; The, 524
Peck, Gregory, 52, 295
Peck, Jay, 289
Penn, Arthur, 154–155, 271, 399
Penn, Robin Wright, 360, 426
Penn, Sean, 153*f*, 326*f*, 467
Pennies from Heaven, 338, 490*f*
people and objects, arrangement of, 136, 137*f*
  three-dimensional, 147, 148*f*
People Under the Stairs, The, 483
Pepe, Louis, 505
Peploe, Claire, 384*f*
Peralta, Stacy, 542
Perfect Storm, The, 458*f*
period pieces, **106–107**, **272**
  costume design and, 111–112
Perkins, Anthony, 104*f*, 484*f*
Perlman, Itzhak, 314

Perrin, Jacques, 347
Persona, 33*f*, 411*f*
Peter Pan, 169
Peter-and-the-Wolfing, **299**
Peters, Bernadette, 490*f*
Petersen, Wolfgang, 260–261, 458*f*
Pfeiffer, Michelle, 457
Pfister, Wally, 178
Phantom of the Opera (1925), 228
Philadelphia Story, The, 493
Phillips, Bijou, 537
Pi, 485
Piano, The, 347
Pickens, Slim, 345
Pickford, Mary, 436
"Pied Piper of Hamelin, The" (Browning), 466
Pincus, Elizabeth, 427
Pink Panther, 357
Pink Panther (series), 499
Pinocchio, 169
Pirates of the Caribbean (series), 495
Pirates of the Caribbean: Dead Man's Chest, 497*f*
Pirates of the Caribbean: The Curse of the Black Pearl, 181
Pitt, Brad, 70*f*, 355*f*, 426
Pixar, 172, 182
Planet of the Apes (1968), 112
Planet of the Apes (2001), 122, 314, 502
Planet of the Apes (series), 500
Planner, Franz, 364
Play It Again, Sam, 59
Player, The, 272, 381
plays, 449–457
Pleasantville, 233, 236*f*, 254, 296
Pledge, The, 153*f*
plot
  focus on, 20, 21*f*
  story and, 42
  unified, 42
plot device, sound as, 273, 274*f*
Plummer, Christopher, 364
Pocahontas, 501
Poe, Edgar Allan, 48, 102
points of view, **126**, 126–133
  director's interpretive, **132–133**, 132*f*
  dramatic, 438
  first-person, 434
  indirect subjective, **130–132**, 131*f*
  literary, **434**
  literary v. cinematic, 433–438
  objective, **127**, 128*f*, 438
    sound and, **264**
  in sound, 264–266
  subjective, **128–130**, 129*f*
    sound and, **264**
  third-person, 434–435
    challenges, 438–439
Polanski, Roman, 481, 546
Polar Express, The, 183
Pollack, Sydney, 352–353, 370–371
Pollard, Michael J., 191–196*f*, 345
Pollard, Sam, 550
Polley, Sarah, 449*f*
Pollock, 398
Poltergeist, 530
Ponette, 347
Poor Cow, 347
Pop, Iggy, 358
Popeye, 346, 381
Porgy and Bess, 489
Porter, Edwin, 188, 227, 399
Portman, Natalie, 487*f*
Portman, Rachel, 296
Portrait of a Lady, 397–398
Possession, 63*f*
Postlethwaite, Pete, 138*f*
Potemkin, 227–228, 422
Potter, Dennis, 490*f*
Powaqqatsi, 157, 316
Powell, Eleanor, 315
Powell, William, 499
Powers, Mala, 300
Prairie Home Companion, A, 259, 381
Praise of Folly, The (Erasmus), 82
Prayer for Owen Meany, A (Irving), 432
prejudices, 18
Preminger, Otto, 523, 538
prequels, 495, 496*f*
Previn, Soon-Yi, 545
Pride & Prejudice (2005), 108*f*
Primer for Playgoers, A (Wright and Downs), 332
Prince of Egypt, The, 174–175, 174*f*
Princess Mononoke, 167, 182
Pringle, Aileen, 490
"Problem of Color, The" (Jones), 251
Producers, The, 20, 87
Production Code Administration, 518
production design, 97
  directing and, 374
  script and, 97–99
Project Greenlight, 427–428
Proof, 377
Proyas, Alex, 427, 485
Psycho (1960), 104*f*, 120, 131–132, 215, 314–315, 394*f*, 484*f*
Psycho (1998), 492
Psycho II, 104*f*
Public Enemy, 375
Public Housing, 541
Pudovkin, V.I., 186, 328
Pulp Fiction, 56, 57*f*, 121, 188, 398, 415, 427
Punchline, 305–306
Pygmalian, 493

Quaid, Dennis, 233–234
Queen, 308*f*, 314
Queer as Folk, 531
Quiet American, The, 137*f*
Quinn, Anthony, 29, 142
Quiz Show, 342, 459–460
Rabe, David, 467
Rachel, Rachel, 321
Radiers of the Lost Ark, 106, 107*f*
Radio Days, 244
Rafin Man, 43
Raft, George, 344–345
Raging Bull, 24*f*, 216, 234–236, 248–249, 257, 258*f*, 260, 269, 342
Ragtime, 310
Raiders of the Lost Ark, 37, 260, 499
Railsback, Steve, 427
Rain Man, 342, 415
Rainsberger, Todd, 114
Raise the Red Lantern, 228
Raising Arizona, 276–277, 277*f*, 287
Ralston, Ken, 179
Ramis, Harold, 482*f*
Rampling, Charlotte, 364
"Ransom of Red Chief, The" (Henry), 82
Rapaport, Michael, 550
rating system. *See* Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA)
Ray, 24*f*
Ray, Nicca, 546
Ray, Nicholas, 454, 534*f*, 546
Rea, Stephen, 416*f*
Ready to Wear, 381
Reality Bites, 336
Rear Window, 346*f*, 395*f*, 494
Rebel Without a Cause, 546
Red Desert, 236–238
Redford, Robert, 158, 214*f*, 340, 459–460
Redgrave, Vanessa, 364
Reds, 270, 378
Reed, Rex, 471
Reeves, Dianne, 297*f*
Reeves, Keanu, 164
reflections, 149–151, 151*f*
Reflections in a Golden Eye, 243
Reggio, Godfrey, 316
Register, John, 122
Reign of Fire, 261*f*
Remains of the Day, The, 47, 60*f*
remakes, 490–495
Rembrandt, 244
Rembrandt effect, 118, 447
Remington, Frederick, 118
Renfro, Brad, 537
Rennie, Michael, 486*f*
Renoir, Jean, 285, 482, 514*f*
Rent, 120, 489
repetition, 73, 74*f*
  for humor, 280*f*
Replications: A Robotic History of the Science Fiction Film (Telotte), 484–485
Requiem for a Dream, 156*f*, 219, 536
Requiem for a Heavyweight, 29
Reservoir Dogs, 56
Resnais, Alain, 56, 71*f*
Return of Martin Guerre, The, 494
Return of the Jedi, 160, 500
Return of the Secaucus Seven, 119

reviewers, evaluating, 420–422
reviews, 15–16
  rereading, 420
Reynolds, Burt, 360
Reynolds, Debbie, 315
rhythm, 190, 197–201
  glancing, **198**
  sound effects and, 281
Ricci, Christina, 277
Richards, Michael, 66
Richardson, Miranda, 343*f*
Richardson, Ralph, 452
Richardson, Tony, 465
Riefenstahl, Leni, 540–541
Right Stuff, The, 336
Ring 2, The, 484*f*
Ring, The, 484*f*
Ringu, 484*f*
Rio Bravo, 118
Riskin, Robert, 397
Ritchie, Guy, 514–515
Ritter, Thelma, 345–346, 346*f*
River Runs Through It, A, 70*f*
River, The, 106, 349–350
RKO, 460
Road to Perdition, The, 210*f*, 480, 480*f*
Road Warrior, The, 47, 103
Robards, Jason, 340, 379*f*, 452
Robbins, Tim, 136*f*, 242*f*
Robe, The, 260
Roberts, Julia, 57, 61, 61*f*, 355*f*, 359, 503
Robertson, Cliff, 321
Robinson, Edward G., 318
Rock, The, 501
Rockwell, Norman, 244
Rocky, 29, 215–216
Rocky (series), 498
Rocky II, 249
Rocky III, 249
Rocky IV, 230*f*
Rodriguez, Robert, 181, 189, 505
Roeper, Richard, 526
Roger & Me, 541, 545
Rolf, Tom, 187
Romeo + Juliet, 454
Romeo and Juliet, 454*f*
Rookie, The, 37
Room with a View, A, 241*f*
Rooney, Mickey, 346
Rose, Charlie, 466
Roseblum, Ralph, 185
Rose-Marie, 489
Rosemary's Baby, 45
Rosen, Chuck, 106
Rosen, Josh, 254
Rosenblum, Ralph, 186
Rosenthal, Elliott, 294–295
Rosher, Charles, 99
Ross, Herbert, 490*f*
Ross, Katharine, 155
Rosselini, Isabella, 234*f*
Rossen, Robert, 443*f*
Rota, Nino, 314
Roth, Cecilia, 228*f*
Roth, Tim, 122
Rotten Tomatoes (www.rottentomatoes.com), 16–17
Rouch, Jean, 541
Roven, Charles, 505
Royal Tenenbaums, The, 23*f*, 121
Rule, Janice, 239
Rules of the Game, The, 285
Rush, Richard, 152, 427
Russell, David O., 178
Russell, Jane, 517*f*
Russian Ark, 189
Ryan, Robert, 65*f*
Ryan's Daughter, 103, 529
Rydell, Mark, 231–232, 319, 320
Ryder, Winona, 493*f*
Rydstrom, Gary, 288
Rylance, Mark, 526

Sabiston, Bob, 183
"Sabre Dance, The," 306
Safety Last, 330
Saint, Eva Marie, 267
Salinger, J.D., 431*f*, 439
salon.com, 459
Salton Sea, The, 122
Saltzman, Marc, 316, 427
Saraband, 120
Sarandon, Susan, 69*f*, 352
Sartov, Hendrik, 227
satire, genre-based, 475*f*
Saturday Night Fever, 199–200*f*, 304–305, 529–530, 531
Saving Private Ryan, 369*f*, 462*f*, 482, 483*f*
Savoca, Nancy, 384*f*
"Scarborough Fair," 312
Scarecrow, 386
Scarface, 479*f*, 530, 535
Scary Movie, 475*f*
scene, **187**
Scheider, Roy, 268, 281, 340, 354, 496–498
Schell, Maximilian, 545
Schickel, Richard, 354, 361, 398
Schiff, Stephen, 471
Schindler's List, 248, 249*f*, 342, 343*f*, 369, 369*f*, 391*f*
Schlesinger, John, 244
Schoonmaker, Thelma, 216
Schrader, Paul, 66, 88, 238, 481, 492
  Auto Focus, 10
  Hardcore, 99, 151*f*
  Mishima, 158
Schulberg, Budd, 397, 437, 522–523
Schutzman, Scott, 347
Schwarzenegger, Arnold, 499*f*
science fiction, 484–487
Sciorra, Annabella, 245*f*
Scoop, 381
score, emotion and, 53
score. *See* musical score
Scorsese, Martin, 189, 252, 368–369, 381, 503
  Age of Innocence, The, 307
  Aviator, The, 358
  Casino, 479
  Gangs of New York, 406*f*
  Last Temptation of Christ, The, 533, 534*f*
  New York Stories, 216, 382*f*
  Raging Bull, 234–236, 248–249, 269
  Taxi Driver, 238
Scott, A.O., 3, 485
Scott, Campbell, 266*f*
Scott, George C., 149, 151*f*, 359
Scott, Ridley, 109, 109*f*, 385
Scream 2, 483
Scream 3, 483
screen format. *See* aspect ratios
screwball comedies, 487–488
scripts
  directing and, 377–381
  production design and, 97–99
Sea of Love, 346
Seabiscuit, 12
Secret Garden, The, 104
"Secret Life of Walter Mitty, The" (Thurber), 59
Secret Window, 466
Seinfeld, Jerry, 66
"Seinfield," 66
selectivity, 187–190
Selick, Henry, 171, 503
Sellers, Peter, 357–358, 359, 499, 499*f*
Sense and Sensibility, 53–54, 353, 381
Sensurround, 260
sequels, 490–492, 495–501
sequences, **187, 451**
Serkis, Andy, 487*f*
Serling, Rod, 287–288
Serpico, 531, 532*f*
setting, **101**
  composite, 107*f*
  as determiner of character, 101
  directing and, 374
  effects of, 101–105
  for emotional atmosphere, 103, 104*f*
  irony of, 82, 83*f*
  as microcosm, 105
  as reflection of character, 102, 103*f*
  as symbolism, 103–104
  for verisimilitude, 102
  for visual impact, 103, 104*f*
Seven Beauties, 137*f*
7 Plus 7, 541
Seven Samurai, The, 494
Seventh Seal, The, 7*f*, 71, 87, 371, 524
sex, 18
  MPAA rating system and, 535–538
sex, lies, & videotape, 119, 336, 340
Seyfried, Amanda, 426
shade, **223**
Shadow of the Vampire, 68*f*, 359
shadows, three-dimensional, 150*f*

Shaffer, Anthony, 467
Shaffer, Peter, 437, 455
Shakespeare in Love, 245*f*
Shallow Hal, 122, 337*f*, 415
Shane, 37, 64, 74*f*, 103, 120, 250, 271, 296, 328–329, 400, 474, 535
Shanley, John Patrick, 437
Sharkey, Betsy, 495
Shaw, Robert, 324
Sheen, Martin, 79, 276, 277*f*
Sherlock, Jr., 330
Sherwood, Robert E., 437
Shining, The, 22*f*, 103, 312, 346, 389*f*, 494
Ship of Fools, 105
Shire, David, 309–310
Shire, Talia, 204–209*f*
Shopgirl, 108*f*
Shore, Howard, 296, 316
Short Cinema Journal/I 2 (Dreams), 425
Short Cuts, 272, 381
shot(s), **134, 187**
  eye-line, **129**
  glass, **159**
  high-angle, **152**
  long, **143**
  low-angle, **152,** 153*f*
  matte, **159**
  reaction, **327,** 327*f*, 328
  single, 188
  two, 188
  wide, 188
Show Boat, 489
"Show Me," 315
Shrek, 166, 182, 289, 430
Shrek 2, 166
Shyamalan, M. Night, 288, 437, 504
Sideways, 448
Sigel, Newton Thomas, 178
Signs, 504
Sikov, Ed, 488
silence, as sound effect, 281
silent films, 330
Silver Streak, 346
Simon and Garfunkel, 312
Simon Birch, 432
Simon, Neil, 53, 451, 455
Simone, 174*f*
"Simpsons, The," 66
Sin City, 20, 250, 251*f*
Singin' in the Rain, 228, 301, 315, 489, 490*f*
Sinise, Gary, 165, 166*f*
Siskel, Gene, 386
Six Feet Under, 56, 531
Six Weeks, 336
Sixth Sense, The, 49, 288, 347, 348*f*
Sky Captain and the World of Tomorrow, 165–166
Sky Kids 2: The Island of Lost Dreams, 505
Skycam, **142**
Slaughterhouse Five, 346
Sleepless in Seattle, 293*f*, 312, 347, 503
Sleuth, 467
Sling Blade, 280*f*, 415
slow motion, **157,** 202–211, **203,** 210*f*
  sound, 269, 270*f*
Small Sacrifices, 460
Small Time Crooks, 381
Smiles of a Summer Night, 494
Smith, Jada Pinkett, 182, 550
"Smoke Gets in Your Eyes," 293–294
Smoke Signals, 538, 539*f*
smooth-grain film stock, **93**
Smrz, Brian, 180
Snake Eyes, 530
Snake Pit, The, 538
Snow, Mark, 308
Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs, 169, 182
Social Distortion, 375
social problems, 27, 28*f*
  films, 538–546
Soderbergh, Steven, 189, 340, 486*f*
  Bubble, 104
  Kafka, 272–273
  Limey, The, 347, 398–399
Sokurov, Alexander, 189
Solaris (2002), 486*f*
Solondz, Todd, 535, 536*f*, 548–549
Somebody Up There Likes Me, 340
Sommersby, 494
Sophie's Choice, 186, 234
Sophocles, 80
Sopranos, The, 531
Sorcerer, 307
sound, 14
  ambient, **272**
  depth in, 259–262
  distortion, 268
  emphasis on, 269–272
  foreign language films and, 281–286
  invisible, **262–264**
  irony and, 269
  links, **274**
  mechanical, 268–269
  modern film and, 257–258
  as plot device, 273, 274*i*
  slow motion, 269, 270*f*
  as transitions, 274–275
  visible, **262–264**
Sound and the Fury, The (Faulkner), 435–438
sound effects, 266–273
  rhythm and, 281
  silence as, 281
Sound of Music, The, 88, 451
"Sound of Silence, The," 304
South Park: Bigger, Longer & Uncut, 530, 530*f*
Southard, Michael, 254
Southwell, Tom, 122
Space Cowboys, 342*f*
Spacek, Sissy, 30*f*, 239, 341, 359, 426, 457, 526*f*
Spall, Timothy, 376*f*
special effects, 158–166
  animation and, 166–175
  color, 244–246
  miniatures, 159*f*
  novelty, 165*f*
Spencer, Thad, 314
Spheeris, Penelope, 384*f*
Spider, 342
Spider-Man, 21*f*, 180, 210
Spider-Man 2, 488*f*
Spielberg, Steven, 175, 180, 189, 313–314, 335, 368–369, 385–387, 390–391*f*, 486*f*, 503, 530
  A.I. Artificial Intelligence, 288
  Always, 293–294
  E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial, 158
  Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom, 528*f*
  Jaws, 272, 334
  Minority Report, 466
  Munich, 281
  Saving Private Ryan, 369*f*, 482, 483*f*
  Schindler's List, 248, 249*f*
  War of the Worlds, 181
Spirited Away, 167
Spy Kids 3D: Game Over, 150–151
Squid and the Whale, The, 21–22
Staenberg, Zach, 188, 216–219
Stage Struck, 364
Stagecoach (1939), 345, 492
Stagecoach (1966), 492
Stahl, Nick, 537
Stallone, Sylvester, 29
Stamp, Terence, 65*f*, 347
Stan Winston Studios, 180
Stand by Me, 287
standard screen, **93,** 94*f*, 95*f*
Stanley, Kim, 275
Stanwyck, Barbara, 333, 334*f*
Star is Born, A (1954), 492–493
Star is Born, A (1976), 492–493
star system, **333–335**
Star Trek, 160
Star Trek (series), 323*f*
Star Trek III: The Search for Spock, 159
Star Trek: The Wrath of Khan, 163
Star Wars, 47, 160, 164, 500
Star Wars (series), 253
Star Wars: Episode I - The Phantom Menace, 179, 500
Star Wars: Episode II - Attack of the Clones, 160, 161*f*, 288, 361, 487*f*, 500
Star Wars: Episode III - Revenge of the Sith, 160, 161*f*, 181, 500
Stardust Memories, 381
Starship Troopers, 501
Station Agent, The, 337*f*
"Staying Alive," 305
Steadicam, **142**
Steamboat Bill, Jr., 330
Steamboat Willie, 167
Steele, Bob, 476*f*
Steenburgen, Mary, 344
Steiger, Rod, 351–352, 351*f*, 522–523
Steinbeck, John, 538
stereophonic sound, 523

stereotypes, **68**
Stern, Daniel, 503
Stevens, George, 94*f*, 400
Stevens, George, Jr., 400
Stewart, James, 59, 155, 333, 336, 339*f*, 346*f*
Stewart, Patrick, 323*f*
Stier, David Ogden, 350*f*
Still of the Night, 281
Stiller, Ben, 489*f*, 498
stills, **213**
Sting, The, 111
Stockwell, Dean, 452
Stolen Summer, 427–428
Stomare, Peter, 346*f*
Stone, Matt, 530*f*
Stone, Oliver, 385, 461, 503
Stoppard, Tom, 437
Storaro, Vittorio, 241–242, 243*f*
story
    complexity, 48–51
    credibility of, 42–46
    elements of, 41–53
    emotional restraint and, 51–53
    interesting, 46–47
    plot and, 42
    simplicity, 48–51
Storytelling, 548–549
Straight Story, The, 526*f*, 548
Strange Days, 177, 197
Stranger Than Paradise, 358
Strauss, Richard, 357
stream of consciousness, 435–438
Streep, Meryl, 30*f*, 281, 334, 354, 463
Streisand, Barbra, 384*f*
Strike, 78–79
structure
    chronological, 54–55
    directing and, 377–381
    dramatic, 54–57, 87
    film analysis and, 7–8
    focus on, 23, 25*f*
    linear, 54–55
    nonlinear, 55–56, 57*f*
Stuart, Gloria, 347
studio shooting, 105–106
Stunt Man, The, 50*f*, 152, 427, 436
Sturges, Preston, 437
style, focus on, 23, 25*f*
subject, movement of, 143
subjective camera, **371**, 439
subjectivity, 10–11
subtitles, 9, 283–286
Sudden Impact, 329*f*
Suddenly, Last Summer, 74–75, 76–78, 103*f*, 104, 433
Summer of '42, 87, 120, 154, 213, 252, 275, 447
Sundance Channel, 219
Sunrise, 99, 331, 548
Sunset Boulevard, 111*f*, 122, 340, 436
Sunshine State, 102
Superman (1978), 80–81, 87, 163, 164, 210
Superman (series), 498
Superman Returns, 166
surprise endings, 49
surrealism, **238**
suspense, 46, 47*f*
Suspiria, 240
Sutherland, Donald, 108*f*, 342*f*
Swain, Dominique, 536*f*
Swanson, Gloria, 111*f*, 436
Sweet and Lowdown, 381
Sweet Hereafter, The, 448, 449*f*, 466
Sweet Hereafter, The (Banks), 434
Swept Away . . . (2002), 514–515
Swept Away . . . by an Unusual Destiny in the Blue Sea of August (1975), 71, 514*f*
Swift, Jonathan, 82
Swing Time, 400
Sword and the Sorcerer, The, 162
Sylbert, Paul, 97–98, 99
symbolism, 71–72, 87
    color and, 238
    conflict and, 78
    creating, 73–76
    overreading, 79–80
    patterns and, 76–78
    progression of, 76–78
    setting and, 103–104
symbols, **71**
    charging, 73–76
    communication and, 72
    natural, 72–73
    repetition of, 74*f*
    universal, 72–73
synthesizer scoring, 307–309
Syriana, 96*f*

T. Rex, 375
tableau, **451**
takes, **187**
Talk to Her, 515
Talladega Nights: The Ballad of Ricky Bobby, 475*f*
Taming of the Shrew, The, 118, 120, 154, 176, 244, 350–351, 447
Tarantino, Quentin, 56, 189, 365*f*, 503
    Jackie Brown, 415
    Kill Bill, Vol. 2, 66
    Pulp Fiction, 57*f*, 121, 398
Tarkovsky, Andrei, 486*f*
Tarzan, 182
Tarzan, the Ape Man, 535
Tate Audio, Ltd., 260
Tatou, Audrey, 79*f*, 96*f*
Taxi Driver, 66, 88, 238, 239*f*, 252, 287, 334, 386
Taylor, Charles, 459
Taylor, Clyde, 550
Taylor, Dub, 191–196*f*, 345
Taylor, Elizabeth, 77, 339*f*
Taymor, Julie, 399
Technicolor, 228
Technique of Film Music, The (Mathieson), 291
technology, 189
television
    censorship and, 531
    watching films on, 11–15
Telotte, J.P., 484–485
Tempest, The, 352
Temple, Shirley, 346
tempo, 197–201
Temptress, The, 548
Terminal, The, 391*f*
Terminator 2: Judgment Day, 163, 499*f*
Terminator 3: Rise of the Machines, 163, 499*f*
Terms of Endearment, 86, 176, 325*f*
test-marketing, 56
texture, focus on, 23, 25*f*
Tezuka, Osamu, 182
Thackeray, William Makepeace, 228
thawed frame, **212–213**
theaters, 11
Thelma & Louise, 69*f*
theme, **20**, **405**
    evaluating, 34–36, 37
    focus and, 20–31, 36
    identifying, 32–33, 36–37
Theremin, 544
Theremin, Leon, 544
There's Something About Mary, 488, 489*f*
Theron, Charlize, 142, 338
They Shoot Horses, Don't They?, 56
Thief, 307
Thin Blue Line, The, 544
Thin Man (series), 499
Thin Red Line, The, 279*f*, 482
Thing, The (1951), 492
35 Up, 541
This Film Is Not Yet Rated, 530–531
This Is Cinerama, 4–5, 260
Thom, Randy, 289
Thomas, Betty, 384*f*
Thomas, Henry, 137*f*, 486*f*
Thompson, Emma, 60*f*, 353, 381, 437
Thompson, Lea, 498*f*
Thomson, David, 512
Thornton, Billy Bob, 182, 280*f*, 437
Three Faces of Eve, 321
Three Kings, 178
3 Women, 239, 381
3-D, 150–151. *See also* depth
Thurber, James, 59
Thus Spake Zarathustra, 293
tilting, **140**
time
    control, 197–201
    expansion and compression of, 201–202
    musical score and, 296–297
    slow motion and, 211
Time, 189, 354, 485, 528
Time After Time, 164
Time Bandits, 159
Timecode, 289
time-lapse photography, **157**
tint, **223**

tinting, **227**
Tiomkin, Dimitri, 291, 300
Titanic, 347, 546
Titicut Follies, 541, 543
titles
  information in, 87
  significance of, 53–54
Titus, 399
To Kill a Mockingbird, 37, 52, 52*f*, 87, 120, 275, 440
Tol'able David, 227
Toland, Gregg, 118, 146–147, 153, 371, 372*f*
Tolkien, J.R.R., 179, 467
Tomb Raider, 430
Tomlin, Lily, 151
tone
  irony of, 82–83
  music and, 303–304
toning, **227**
Tootsie, 342, 352–353
Top Gun, 258
Top Hat, 489
Tora! Tora! Tora!, 159, 285
Torn Curtain, 315
Touch of Evil, A, 153, 385, 481
Toulouse-Lautrec, 243
Tourneur, Jacques, 481, 482*f*
Towne, Robert, 69–70, 88, 481
Toy Story, 172, 173*f*, 179, 182, 310
Toy Story 2, 172, 179, 182, 310
Tracy, Spencer, 276, 336, 339*f*
Traffic, 62, 340
Trail of the Pink Panther, 499*f*
Trainspotting, 538, 539*f*
Transamerica, 327*f*, 415
transitions, 190–197
  color as, 233–236
  music and, 302–303
  sound as, 274–275
Travolta, John, 57*f*, 199–200*f*, 316, 359
Trilogy Studios, 537
Trip to the Moon, A, 158, 399
Triplets of Belleville, The, 167, 170*f*
Triumph of the Will, 540
Tropic of Cancer, 440
True Grit, 103, 345, 532*f*
Truffaut, François, 315, 482
Truman Show, The, 69*f*, 300, 338
Trumbull, Douglas, 159
truths
  artistic semblance of, 44–46
  external, 42
  internal, 42–44
"Try a Little Tenderness," 298
Tucker, 346
Turner Classic Movies, 13, 361, 548
Turner, Kathleen, 414*f*
Turner, Lana, 336
Turteltaub, Jon, 360
Turturro, Jon, 306*f*, 466
Twain, Mark, 439
Twelve Monkeys, 213, 426, 505
28, 541
21, 541
"Twilight Zone, The," 287–288
Two Towers, The, 162*f*
2001: A Space Odyssey, 9, 228*f*, 252, 293, 312, 334, 357
typecasting, **340–344**

Uhry, Alfred, 437
Ulee's Gold, 202
Ullmann, Liv, 399, 411*f*
Under the Tuscan Sun, 102
Undertow, 31*f*
Unfaithful, 359, 495
Unforgiven, 332, 398, 471, 477*f*
United Artists, 354, 436
universality, **34**
Unknown Chaplin: The Master at Work, 400
Ustinov, Peter, 65*f*
Usual Suspects, The, 138*f*, 316

Valenti, Jack, 550
Vallee, Rudy, 304
value, **223**
values, 472–473
  social and cultural, 516–517
Van Sant, Gus, 189, 492
Vance, Marilyn, 110
Vangelis, 308
Vanilla Sky, 105, 494–495, 494*f*
Vanishing, The, 494
Vanity Fair, 228
Varda, Agnes, 384*f*
Vera Drake, 28*f*
Verbinski, Gore, 181
Verdict, The, 118, 364
verisimilitude, 102
Vernon, Texas, 545
Vertigo, 395*f*
Vicario, Marco, 284
villains, 477*f*
Vincent & Theo, 381
violence, 18
  MPAA rating system and, 535–538
Virgin Spring, The, 524
Visions of Light: The Art of Cinematography, 157
Visscher, Steve, 289
Vistavision, 93
visual emphasis, 76
visual image, importance of, 125
visual impact, 103, 104*f*
voice dubbing, **282–283**
  dubious, 284
voice-over narration, **275–279**
Voight, Jon, 353–354, 360
Von Brandenstein, Patrizia, 98–99
von Stroheim, Erick, 228
von Trier, Lars, 118*f*, 179, 489

Waking Life, 25*f*, 174*f*, 177, 183
Waking Ned Devine, 215
Walker, Alexander, 427
Walking Tall (1973), 460
Wallace, Dee, 137*f*
War, 314
War and Peace, 282
war films, 481–483
War of the Worlds, 45*f*, 136*f*, 181, 241, 242*f*, 296, 313, 347, 466, 486*f*
Ward, Fannie, 490
Ward, Vincent, 233, 242–243
Warner Brothers, 167
Warner, Frank, 257, 258*f*
Warren, Robert Penn, 54*f*, 57, 442–444, 443*f*, 446
Warrick, Ruth, 427
Wasco, David, 121
Washington, Denzel, 326*f*, 462*f*
Watanabe, Ken, 299*f*
Watson, Eric, 536
Watts, Naomi, 232*f*, 484*f*
Wayne, John, 82, 298, 333, 532*f*
Wayons, Damon, 550
"We Will Rock You," 308*f*
Weaver, Sigourney, 419*f*
Weaving, Hugo, 164
Wedding, A, 381
Weegee, 249
Weill, Claudia, 384*f*
Weir, Peter, 203, 300
Welch, Bo, 121
Welcome to the Dollhouse, 548
"We'll Meet Again Some Sunny Day," 83, 298
Welles, Orson, 69, 185, 315, 364–365, 372*f*, 377, 437, 481, 545
  Citizen Kane, 73, 112–113, 147, 259–260, 270–271, 275, 302–303, 460–461
  Lady from Shanghai, The, 150
  Touch of Evil, A, 153, 385
Wells, H.G., 164
Wells, Ida B., 541
Wenders, Wim, 399
Wepper, Fritz, 202
Werbowenko, Richard, 314
Wertmuller, Lina, 137*f*, 384*f*, 514, 514*f*
West Side Story, 415, 489
westerns, 474–478
  heroes, 476*f*
  villains, 477*f*
Wexler, Haskell, 178, 360
Whale, James, 496
Wharton, Edith, 231*f*
"What a Wonderful World" (song), 82
What Dreams May Come, 242–243, 245*f*, 254
What I Really Want to Do Is DIRECT (Frolick), 386
When a Stranger Calls, 268
"When Johnny Comes Marching Home," 293
When We Were Kings, 544
When Worlds Collide, 171
Whitaker, Forest, 416*f*

White Countess, The, 342, 343*f*
White, Jack, 358
White, Meg, 358
Whiting, Leonard, 454*f*
Whitlock, Albert, 181
Who Framed Roger Rabbit?, 167
Who the Devil Made It (Bogdanovich), 364
Who's Afraid of Virginia Woolf?, 178, 336, 432, 452–453, 453*f*, 524
"Why Do We Read Fiction?" (Warren), 57
wide screen, **93**, 94*f*, 95*f*
widescreen format, **12**
Widow of St. Pierre, The, 399
Wiene, Robert, 456*f*
Wifemistress, 284
Wild in the Streets, 34, 34*f*
Wild Man Blues, 545
Wilde, Oscar, 452*f*
Wilder, Billy, 334*f*, 338–339, 352, 481, 538
Wilder, Gene, 497*f*
Wilkins, Misty, 341*f*
Wilkinson, Tom, 30*f*
"Will and Grace," 66
William Tell Overture, 293
Williams, John, 272, 296, 313
Williams, Robin, 69, 188, 243, 245*f*, 338, 494*f*
Williams, Tennessee, 74, 104, 433
Willis, Bruce, 110, 251*f*, 348*f*, 360, 426, 505
Wilson, Patrick, 417*f*
Wilson, Ron, 479
Wilson, Woodrow, 457
Wind, The, 330
Windtalkers, 240
Winslet, Kate, 347, 349*f*
Winston, Stan, 180
Winters, Ralph, 190
Winters, Shelley, 398
wipe, **190**
Wise, Robert, 427, 451, 486*f*
Wiseman, Frederick, 541, 543
Witherspoon, Reese, 452*f*
Witness, 47*f*, 347
Wittliff, Bill, 458*f*
Wiz, The, 492
Wizard of Oz, The, 45, 228, 233, 235*f*, 489, 492, 504–505
Wolf, 162, 164
Wolf Man, The, 162*f*, 483
Wolpert, Jay, 467
Woman in the Dunes, 71
Women & Men: Stories of Seduction, 465
Women on the Verge of a Nervous Breakdown, 515
Wonderful, Horrible Life of Leni Riefenstahl, The, 541
Wong, Kar-Wai, 49*f*, 314
Woo, John, 180, 240, 383*f*
Wood, Natalie, 415
Woods, James, 347
Woodstock, 216, 489
Woodward, Joanne, 275, 321–322
Woolf, Virginia, 435, 461–463
word-of-mouth (WOM), 17*f*, 56
World According to Garp, The, 37, 69, 212, 312, 338, 377, 448
World Wide Web, 16–17
"Wouldn't It Be Loverly?", 315
Wray, Fay, 111*f*
Wright, Edward A., 332
Wrong Trousers, The, 171, 171*f*
Wynn, Keenan, 357

X-Files, The, 308

Y Tu Mamá También, 548
Year of the Dragon, 533–534
Yentl, 489
Yeoh, Michelle, 359
York, Michael, 202
"You Are My Lucky Star," 315
"You Are My Sunshine," 306
Young Frankenstein, 496, 497*f*
Young, Robert, 151
Your Friends & Neighbors, 531

Zavattini, Cesare, 46
Zea, Kristi, 106–107
Zeffirelli, Franco, 118, 154, 244, 249–250, 350–351, 454, 454*f*
Zegers, Kevin, 327*f*
Zelig, 164, 165*f*, 381
Zellweger, Renee, 237*f*
Zemeckis, Robert, 179, 361, 486*f*, 498*f*, 504
Zero de Conduite, 422
Zeta-Jones, Catherine, 490*f*
Zhang, Yimou, 228, 399
Zhang, Ziyi, 136*f*, 299*f*
Zimmer, Hans, 314
Zinneman, Fred, 112
zoom lens, **140–141**, 144–145
zooming, 141*f*
Zorba the Greek, 142
Zsigmond, Vilmos, 115–117, 125, 244
Zwigoff, Terry, 541–542

Credits

Text

Chapter 2 p. 20, from *Making Movies* by Sidney Lumet. Copyright © 1995 by Sidney Lumet. Reprinted by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, Inc.; **Chapter 3** pp. 53, 55, 69, Reprinted with permission of Simon & Schuster, Inc. from *The Craft of the Screenwriter* by John Brady. Copyright © 1981 by John Brady; p. 59, from *Directing the Film: Film Directors on Their Art*, edited by Eric Sherman. Reprinted by permission from Little, Brown, and Company; pp. 76, 77, from Tennessee Williams, *Suddenly, Last Summer.* Copyright © 1958 by Tennessee Williams. All rights reserved. All quotations reprinted by permission of New Directions Publishing Corporation; **Chapter 4** p. 98, from *By Design: Interviews with Production Designers*, Vincent LoBrutto, Praeger, 1992. Reproduced with permission of Greenwood Publishing Group, Inc., Westport, CT; **Chapter 5** p. 131, from *Directing the Film: Film Directors on Their Art*, edited by Eric Sherman. Reprinted by permission of Little, Brown and Company; **Chapter 6** pp. 186, 201, from *Selected Takes: Film Editors on Film Editing* by Vincent LoBrutto, Praeger, 1991. Reproduced with permission of Greenwood Publishing Group, Inc., Westport, CT.; p. 201, from *Directing the Film: Film Directors on Their* Art, edited by Eric Sherman. Reprinted by permission from Little, Brown and Company; **Chapter 7** p. 229, from *By Design: Interviews with Production Designers,* Vincent LoBrutto, Praeger, 1992. Reproduced with permission of Greenwood Publishing Group, Inc., Westport, CT; p. 231, from Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, Continuum, 1991. Reprinted with permission from the author; p. 328, Reprinted with permission of Simon & Schuster, Inc. from *The Craft of the Screenwriter* by John Brady, Copyright © 1981 by John Brady; **Chapter 8** pp. 264, 273, from *Sound-on-Film: Interviews with Creators of Film Sound* by Vincent LoBrutto, Praeger, 1994. Reproduced with permission of Greenwood Publishing Group, Inc., Westport, CT; **Chapter 9** p. 305, from Judith Christ, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, Continuum, 1991. Reprinted with permission from the author; p. 310, from *Making Movies* by Sidney Lumet. Copyright © 1995 by Sidney Lumet. Reprinted by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, Inc.; **Chapter 10** pp. 320, 321, 327, 344, from Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, Continuum, 1991. Reprinted with permission from the author; pp. 335, 354, from *Making Movies* by Sidney Lumet. Copyright © 1995 by Sidney Lumet. Reprinted by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, Inc.; **Chapter 11** pp. 364, 380, from *Making Movies* by Sidney Lumet. Copyright © 1995 by Sidney Lumet. Reprinted by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, Inc.; p. 370, Reprinted with permission of Simon & Schuster, Inc. from *The Craft of the Screenwriter* by John Brady. Copyright © 1981 by John Brady; from Judith Crist, *Take 22: Moviemakers on Moviemaking*, Continuum, 1991. Reprinted with permission from the author; **Chapter 12** pp. 404, 422, from Dwight MacDonald, *On Movies*, Berkeley, Medallion Books, 1971, p. 15. Copyright © 1969 by Dwight MacDonald. Reprinted by permission of the author; p. 418, from Vincent Canby, "Hitchcock: The Agony is Exquisite," *The New York Times*, July 2, 1972. Copyright © 1972 *The New York Times.* Reprinted by permission; **Chapter 13** pp. 441, 451, 455, Reprinted with permission of Simon & Schuster, Inc. from *The Craft of the Screenwriter* by John Brady. Copyright © 1981 by John Brady; pp. 422, 446, from *All the King's Men* by Robert Penn Warren. Copyright © 1946, 1974 by Robert Penn Warren. Reprinted by permission of Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Inc.; p. 452, from *Making Movies* by Sidney Lumet. Copyright © 1995 by Sidney Lumet. Reprinted by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, Inc.; p. 454, from *Directing the Film: Film Directors on Their Art*, edited by Eric Sherman. Reprinted by permission from Little, Brown and Company; p. 459, from Richard Corliss, "Fire This Time." *Time*, January 9, 1989. Copyright © 1989 Time, Inc. Reprinted by permission; p. 460, from John Horn, "Redford Fudges Facts to Make Story Spicier." Reprinted with permission from Associated Press.

Photo Credits

p. 2 © New Line Cinema/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 5 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 7 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 10 © New Line Cinema/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 13 © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 16 © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 17 © Warner Bros/Everett Collection; p. 19 © New Line Cinema/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 21M © Columbia Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 21B © Buena Vista Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 22TR © Manhattan Pictures/courtesy

Everett Collection; p. 22BL © New Line Cinema/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 22BR © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 23 © Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 24T © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 24BR © Miramax/ courtesy Everett; p. 25B © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved /courtesy Everett Collection; p. 26L Copyright © Lions Gate/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 26R Copyright © DreamWorks/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 27R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 28B © Fine Line Features/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 30TL © Paramount/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 30TR © Focus Films/Everett Collection; p. 30B © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 31L Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 31R © United Artists/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 32L © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 32R © DreamWorks/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 33B © USA Films/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 34L Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 40 © Miramax/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 44R © Fox Searchlight/ Everett Collection; p. 45TR Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 45BR © Paramount/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 49 © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 51 © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved /courtesy Everett Collection; p. 52 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 54 © Columbia Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 55 © Sony Pictures/Everett Collection; p. 60 © Columbia Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 61R © Universal/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 67 © Warner Bros./courtesy Everett Collection; p. 68 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 69TL © MGM/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 70L © New Line Cinema/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 70R © Columbia Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 71R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 79 © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 81 © Paramount/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 88 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 90 © Columbia Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 96T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 96B © Warner Bros/Everett Collection; p. 98 (c) The Kobal Collection/ 20th Century Fox, Adler, Sue; p. 100T © Newmarket Releasing/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 100B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 103 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 108L © Focus Films/ Everett Collection; p. 108R © Buena Vista Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 113TL Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 113TR © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 113BL Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 113BR © Paramount/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 118 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 121 Filmways/The Kobal Collection; p. 124 © Focus Films/ Everett Collection; p. 134 © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved /Everett Collection; p. 136L © Sony Pictures Classics/courtesy Everett Collection; 136R © Paramount/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 137T Cinema 5/Photofest; p. 137BL Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 137BR © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 138L © Columbia Pictures/ Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 138R © Gramercy Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 144 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 145L © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved /Everett Collection; p. 145R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 147 © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved/Everett Collection; p. 150 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 151 The Everett Collection; p. 159 Lucasfilm Ltd./Photofest; p. 160 © Warner Brothers/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 161C&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 162L Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 162R © New Line/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 165B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 166 © Paramount Pictures/ Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 169T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 169B © Walt Disney/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 170T © Buena Vista/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 170B © Sony Pictures Classics/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 171 © DreamWorks/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 172 © Warner Brothers/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 173T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 173B © Walt Disney/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 174T © DreamWorks/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 174BL © Columbia Pictures/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 174BR © New Line/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 177T&B © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved/Everett Collection; p. 185 © Focus Features/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 188 © Lions Gate/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 210 © DreamWorks/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 214 © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved/Everett Collection; p. 219 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 220 (c) Lions Gate/courtesy Everett collection; p. 222 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 227R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 228TL © Warner Brothers/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 228TR&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 228M © Lions Gate/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 230TL © Columbia/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 230TR © United Artists/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 230BL Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 232 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 234 © De Laurentis Group/ Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 235T&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 236 New Line/The Kobal Collection/Nelson, Ralph Jr.; p. 237 © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 239 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 240 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 241L © Cinecom International/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 241R Aamir Khan Productions/ The Kobal Collection/Singh Sachdev, Hardeep; p. 242 © Paramount/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 243 © Buena Vista Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 245BL © Lions Gate/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 245BR Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 246 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 247 © MCA Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 251 © Dimension Films/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 256 © Picturehouse/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 258 © United Artists/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 261T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 261B © Walt Disney/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 263 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 266 © Strand Releasing/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 270 © United Artists/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 271 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 274 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 276 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 277T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 278L Courtesy Everett

Collection; p. 278R © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 279TL&TR Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 279BR © New Line/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 280TL © Paramount Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 280TR&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 284 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 290 © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 297 Warner Independent/2929 Prod/The Kobal Collection/ Gordon, Melinda Sue; p. 299 © Columbia/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 301 Paramount/The Kobal Collection; p. 303 © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All Rights Reserved/Everett Collection; p. 305 DreamWorks LLC/The Kobal Collection; p. 308 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 309 © Sony Pictures Classics/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 318 © Sony Pictures Classics/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 323R Paramount/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 325R © Focus Features/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 326T © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 326B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 327 ©IFC Films/Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 329L&R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 337TR © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved./Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 337BL © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 338 © Sony Pictures Classics/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 339TL&TR Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 341 © Magnolia Pictures/Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 342 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 343TR © Sony Pictures Classics/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 343BL Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 343BR © MGM/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 345L © Warner Bros./courtesy Everett Collection; p. 345R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 346T&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 348T © Buena Vista Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 348B © Warner Bros./courtesy Everett Collection; p. 349L&R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 352 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 355T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 357 © United Artists/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 363 © Universal / courtesy Everett Collection; p. 365 © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 366R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 369 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 372B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 376 © United Artists/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 379L&R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 383TL © Focus Films/Everett Collection; p. 383TR © Paramount Pictures/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 384TR&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 388T&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 389T © Warner Brothers/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 389B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 390B © Columbia Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 391T © DreamWorks/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 391B © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 392T&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 393T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 394T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 395B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 403 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 406T Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 406B © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 408L&R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 413 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 414 © Warner Bros./Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 416 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 417 © Lions Gate/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 419 © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All Rights Reserved/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 426 © Magnolia Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 429 © Walt Disney/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 431 © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 432 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 436 © Columbia/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 441 © Buena Vista/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 447 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 454L&R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 456B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 458B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 462R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 470 © Warner Brothers/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 475TR&BL Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 475BR © Sony Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 476R © Orion Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 477L Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 479R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 482R © Focus Features/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 483R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 484R © DreamWorks/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 486TR Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 486B © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved/ courtesy Everett Collection; p. 487T © New Line/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 487B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 488 © Columbia/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 489L © 20th Century Fox Film Corp. All rights reserved/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 490L © Miramax/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 490R © Columbia/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 493R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 494 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 496 © Warner Brothers/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 497T © Walt Disney/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 498 © Universal/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 499L © United Artists/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 500 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 512 Herb Goro/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 514R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 528R Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 530 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 532TL&TR&B Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 534T © Universal Pictures/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 534BR © Newmarket/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 537 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 540 Courtesy Everett Collection; p. 542 © Fine Line Features/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 543T © Lions Gate/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 543B © New Yorker/courtesy Everett Collection; p. 544 Superior Pictures/The Kobal Collection; p. 546 Courtesy Everett Collection

Chapter Opener Photographs

Chapter 1: The Art of Watching Films, p. 2 Viggo Mortensen and Liv Tyler in *The Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King* (2003); **Chapter 2: Thematic Elements**, p. 19 Q'Orianka Kilcher and Colin Farrell in *The New World* (2005); **Chapter 3: Fictional and Dramatic Elements**, p. 40 Johnny Depp and Freddie Highmore in *Finding Neverland* (2004); **Chapter 4: Visual Design**, p. 90 Ziyi Zhang and Ken Watanabe in *Memoirs of a Geisha* (2005); **Chapter 5: Cinematography and Special Visual Effects**, p. 124 Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger in *Brokeback Mountain* (2005);

Chapter 6: Editing, p. 185 Rachel Weisz and Hubert Kounde in *The Constant Gardener* (2005); **Chapter 7: Color**, p. 222 Clark Gable and Vivien Leigh in *Gone with the Wind* (1939); **Chapter 8: Sound Effects and Dialogue**, p. 256 Garrison Keillor, Lily Tomlin, Meryl Streep and Lindsay Lohan in *A Prairie Home Companion* (2006); **Chapter 9: The Musical Score**, p. 290 Joaquin Phoenix and Reese Witherspoon in *Walk the Line* (2005); **Chapter 10: Acting**, p. 318 Philip Seymour Hoffman in *Capote* (2005); **Chapter 11: The Director's Style**, p. 363 Naomi Watts and Jack Black in *King Kong* (2005); **Chapter 12: Analysis of the Whole Film**, p. 403 Tim Robbins and Morgan Freeman in *Shawshank Redemption* (1994); **Chapter 13: Adaptations**, p. 429 Georgie Henley and James McAvoy in *The Chronicles of Narnia: The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe* (2005); **Chapter 14: Genre Films, Remakes, and Sequels**, p. 470 Brandon Routh in *Superman Returns* (2006); **Chapter 15: Film and Society**, p. 512 Edie Beale (aka 'Little Edie') in *Grey Gardens* (1975)